



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Acts**

**Version 66**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 66

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 41

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 40

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 2.1.29

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 0.29

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 33

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 36

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 18

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](https://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>16</b>
Acts	16
Introduction to Acts	17
Acts 1	20
Acts 2	99
Acts 3	235
Acts 4	306
Acts 5	391
Acts 6	478
Acts 7	514
Acts 8	665
Acts 9	746
Acts 10	830
Acts 11	924
Acts 12	973
Acts 13	1015
Acts 14	1140
Acts 15	1189
Acts 16	1272
Acts 17	1330
Acts 18	1374
Acts 19	1415
Acts 20	1481
Acts 21	1537
Acts 22	1601
Acts 23	1640
Acts 24	1685
Acts 25	1716
Acts 26	1747
Acts 27	1789
Acts 28	1842
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>1882</b>
Abstract Nouns	1883
Active or Passive	1885
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1888
Background Information	1892
Biblical Money	1895
Connect — Background Information	1897
Connect — Contrast Relationship	1900
Connect — Exception Clauses	1902
Connect — Factual Conditions	1904
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship	1906
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship	1909
Connect — Sequential Time Relationship	1912
Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship	1914
Copy or Borrow Words	1916
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1918
Double Negatives	1920



Doublet .....	1923
Ellipsis .....	1925
End of Story .....	1928
Euphemism .....	1930
Exclamations .....	1932
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' .....	1934
First, Second or Third Person .....	1936
Forms of You .....	1938
Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural .....	1939
Forms of 'You' — Formal or Informal .....	1941
Forms of 'You' — Singular .....	1943
Go and Come .....	1945
Hendiadys .....	1947
How to Translate Names .....	1950
Hyperbole .....	1954
Hypothetical Situations .....	1958
Idiom .....	1961
Imperatives — Other Uses .....	1963
Information Structure .....	1966
Introduction of a New Event .....	1968
Introduction of New and Old Participants .....	1971
Irony .....	1974
Kinship .....	1977
Litany .....	1979
Litotes .....	1982
Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit .....	1984
Merism .....	1986
Metaphor .....	1988
Metonymy .....	1994
Nominal Adjectives .....	1996
Numbers .....	1998
Order of Events .....	2001
Ordinal Numbers .....	2003
Parallelism .....	2006
Personification .....	2009
Poetry .....	2011
Politeness .....	2014
Possession .....	2015
Pronouns .....	2019
Pronouns — When to Use Them .....	2021
Quotations and Quote Margins .....	2024
Quote Markings .....	2026
Quotes within Quotes .....	2029
Reflexive Pronouns .....	2032
Rhetorical Question .....	2035
Simile .....	2038
Statements — Other Uses .....	2041
Symbolic Action .....	2043
Synecdoche .....	2045
Textual Variants .....	2047
Third-Person Imperatives .....	2049
Translate Unknowns .....	2050

Translating Son and Father .....	2053
Verbs .....	2055
Verse Bridges .....	2057
When Masculine Words Include Women .....	2059
When to Keep Information Implicit .....	2061
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words .....</b>	<b>2063</b>
Aaron .....	2064
Abraham, Abram .....	2065
accuse, accused, accuser, accusation .....	2066
admonish, warned, aware .....	2067
adversary, enemy .....	2068
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels .....	2069
afflict, affliction, distress .....	2070
age, aged .....	2071
alien, foreigner, sojourn .....	2072
alms .....	2073
altar .....	2074
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ... ..	2075
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather .....	2076
Andrew .....	2078
angel, archangel .....	2079
Annas .....	2081
anoint, anointed, anointing .....	2082
Antioch .....	2083
Apollos .....	2084
apostle, apostleship .....	2085
appoint, appointed .....	2086
Aquila .....	2087
Arabia, Arabian .....	2088
Asia .....	2089
asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless .....	2090
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community .....	2091
authority .....	2093
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance .....	2094
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian .....	2095
baptize, baptized, baptism .....	2096
Barnabas .....	2098
Bartholomew .....	2099
basket, basketfuls .....	2100
bear, bearer, carry .....	2101
beast .....	2102
beg, beggar, needy .....	2103
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief .....	2104
beloved .....	2107
Benjamin, Benjaminite .....	2108
Berea .....	2109
betray, betrayer .....	2110
bind, bond, bound .....	2111
blameless .....	2113
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous .....	2114
bless, blessed, blessing .....	2115
blood .....	2117

body .....	2119
bold, boldness, emboldened .....	2120
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee .....	2121
bread .....	2122
breath, breathe .....	2123
brother .....	2124
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances .....	2126
bury, buried, burial .....	2127
Caesar .....	2128
Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi .....	2129
Caiaphas .....	2130
call, call out .....	2131
Canaan, Canaanite .....	2133
cast out, driving out, throw out .....	2134
caught up .....	2135
centurion .....	2136
Chaldea, Chaldean .....	2137
chariot, charioteers .....	2138
children, child, offspring .....	2139
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect .....	2141
Christ, Messiah .....	2142
Christian .....	2144
church, Church .....	2145
Cilicia .....	2147
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision .....	2148
citizen, citizenship .....	2150
clean, wash .....	2151
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments .....	2153
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted .....	2154
command, commandment .....	2155
commander .....	2156
commit, committed, commitment .....	2157
condemn, condemned, condemnation .....	2158
confess, confession .....	2159
conscience .....	2160
Corinth, Corinthians .....	2161
Cornelius .....	2162
cornerstone .....	2163
corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness .....	2164
council .....	2165
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ... ..	2166
covenant .....	2168
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox .....	2170
Crete, Cretan .....	2171
crime, criminal .....	2172
crucify, crucified .....	2173
cry, cry out, outcry .....	2174
cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy .....	2175
curse, cursed, cursing .....	2177
Cyprus .....	2179
Cyrene .....	2180
Damascus .....	2181

darkness .....	2182
David .....	2183
day .....	2184
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh .....	2185
deceive, lie, deception, illusions .....	2186
declare, proclaim, announce .....	2187
defile, defiled, desecrate .....	2188
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue .....	2189
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit .....	2190
descend, descendant .....	2191
desert, wilderness .....	2192
desolate, desolation, alone, deserted .....	2193
die, dead, deadly, death .....	2194
discern, discernment, distinguish .....	2196
disciple .....	2197
discipline, self-discipline .....	2199
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious .....	2200
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer .....	2201
divine .....	2202
dream .....	2203
drunk, drunkard .....	2204
earth, land .....	2205
Egypt, Egyptian .....	2206
Elam, Elamites .....	2207
elder, older, old .....	2208
endure, endurance .....	2209
enslave, slave, bondservant, bound .....	2210
envy, covet .....	2211
Ephesus, Ephesian .....	2212
epistle, letter .....	2213
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .....	2214
Ethiopia, Ethiopian .....	2216
eunuch .....	2217
evangelist .....	2218
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	2219
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins .....	2221
exalt, exalted, exaltation .....	2222
exhort, exhortation .....	2223
exult, exultant .....	2224
face, facial .....	2225
faith .....	2227
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	2228
faithless, unfaithful, unfaithfulness .....	2230
false prophet .....	2231
family, household .....	2232
famine .....	2233
fast, fasting .....	2234
favor, favorable, favoritism .....	2235
fear, afraid, frighten .....	2236
fellowship .....	2237
filled with the Holy Spirit .....	2238
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot .....	2239

flesh	2240
flock, herd	2241
footstool	2242
foreknew, foreknowledge	2243
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	2244
found, founder, foundation	2246
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	2247
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	2249
Galatia, Galatians	2250
Galilee, Galilean	2251
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	2252
Gaza	2253
generation	2254
Gentile	2255
gift	2256
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ...	2257
glory, glorious, glorify	2258
God	2260
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	2262
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	2264
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	2266
gold, golden	2268
good news, gospel	2269
good, right, pleasant, better, best	2271
govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha	2273
grace, gracious	2274
grain, grainfields	2275
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	2276
Greece, Grecian	2277
Greek, Grecian, Hellenist	2278
groan	2279
Hades, Sheol	2280
hand	2281
Haran	2283
hard, harden, hardness	2284
head	2285
heart	2286
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	2287
Hebrew	2289
Herod, Herod Antipas	2290
high priest, chief priests	2291
Holy One	2293
holy place	2294
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	2295
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	2297
honor	2299
hope, hoped	2300
horseman	2301
hour	2302
hour, moment, immediately, for a while	2303
house, household	2304
household	2305

humble, humbled, humility .....	2306
Iconium .....	2307
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him .....	2308
inherit, inheritance, heir .....	2309
innocent .....	2311
instruct, instruction, instructors .....	2312
Isaac .....	2313
Isaiah .....	2314
Israel, Israelites .....	2315
it is written .....	2317
Jacob, Israel .....	2318
James (brother of Jesus) .....	2319
James (son of Alphaeus) .....	2320
James (son of Zebedee) .....	2321
jealous, jealousy .....	2322
Jerusalem .....	2323
Jesse .....	2325
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus .....	2326
Jew, Jewish .....	2328
John (the apostle) .....	2329
John (the Baptist) .....	2330
John Mark .....	2331
Joppa .....	2332
Joseph (OT) .....	2333
Joshua .....	2334
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad .....	2335
Judas Iscariot .....	2337
Judas son of James .....	2338
Judea, Judah .....	2339
judge .....	2340
judge, judgment .....	2341
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification .....	2343
kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman .....	2345
king, kingship .....	2346
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven .....	2347
kiss .....	2349
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish .....	2350
labor, laborer, work, hard work .....	2352
lamb, Lamb of God .....	2353
lament, lamentation .....	2355
lamp .....	2356
last day, latter days .....	2357
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God .....	2358
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness .....	2360
Levi, Levite .....	2362
life, live, living, alive .....	2363
light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten .....	2365
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if .....	2366
loins, waist .....	2367
lord, Lord, master, sir .....	2368
lots, casting lots .....	2370
Lystra .....	2371

Macedonia .....	2372
magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits .....	2373
magistrate .....	2374
majesty .....	2375
Mary, the mother of Jesus .....	2376
Matthew, Levi .....	2378
Mede, Medes, Media .....	2379
memorial, memorial offering .....	2380
Mesopotamia, Aram Naharaim .....	2381
Midian, Midianite .....	2382
might, mighty, mighty works .....	2383
miracle, wonder, sign .....	2384
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock .....	2386
Molech, Moloch .....	2387
month, monthly .....	2388
Moses .....	2389
Most High .....	2390
Mount of Olives .....	2391
multiply, multiplied, multiplication .....	2392
name .....	2393
nation .....	2394
Nazareth, Nazarene .....	2396
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring .....	2397
oath, swear, swearing, swear by .....	2398
obey, keep .....	2399
olive .....	2400
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor, dominate .....	2401
ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared .....	2402
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs .....	2403
oversee, overseer, keeper .....	2404
palace, house .....	2405
partial, partiality .....	2406
Passover .....	2407
patriarch .....	2409
Paul, Saul .....	2410
peace, peaceful, peacemakers .....	2412
Pentecost, Festival of Weeks .....	2413
people of God .....	2414
people, people group .....	2415
perfect, complete .....	2417
perish .....	2418
persecute .....	2419
perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, ... ..	2420
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas .....	2421
Pharaoh, king of Egypt .....	2422
Pharisee .....	2423
Philip, the apostle .....	2424
Philip, the evangelist .....	2425
Philippi, Philippians .....	2426
Phoenicia, Syrophoenician .....	2427
pierce, pierced .....	2428
Pilate .....	2429

Pontus .....	2430
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess .....	2431
power, powerful, powerfully .....	2432
praise, praised, praiseworthy .....	2434
pray, prayer .....	2435
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation .....	2437
precious, valuable, expensive, fine .....	2439
predestine, predestined .....	2440
priest, priesthood .....	2441
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ... ..	2443
Priscilla, Prisca .....	2444
prison, prisoner, imprison .....	2445
profane, profaned .....	2446
profit, profitable, unprofitable .....	2447
promise, promised .....	2448
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess .....	2449
prostrate, bow down, worship .....	2451
province, provincial .....	2452
provoke, provoked, provocation .....	2453
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished .....	2454
pure, purify, purification .....	2456
purple .....	2457
queen .....	2458
rage .....	2459
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up, .....	2460
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance .....	2462
redeem, redeemer, redemption .....	2464
reed .....	2465
reject, rejected, rejection .....	2466
remnant .....	2467
repent, repentance .....	2468
report, reported, tell, reputation .....	2470
rest, rested, restless .....	2471
restore, restoration .....	2472
resurrection .....	2473
return, turn back .....	2474
reveal, revealed, revelation .....	2475
reward, prize, deserve .....	2476
right hand .....	2477
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... ..	2479
Rome, Roman .....	2481
royal, royalty, king's, queen's .....	2482
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader .....	2483
run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows .....	2484
Sabbath .....	2485
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering .....	2487
Sadducee .....	2489
saint .....	2490
Samaria, Samaritan .....	2491
Samuel .....	2492
sanctify, sanctification .....	2493
sandal .....	2494



Satan, devil, evil one .....	2495
Saul (OT) .....	2497
save, saved, safe, salvation .....	2498
Savior, savior .....	2500
scribe .....	2501
sea of reeds, Sea of Reeds, Red Sea .....	2502
seed, semen .....	2503
seek, search, look for .....	2504
seize, seizure, capture .....	2505
self-control, self-controlled .....	2506
send, sent, send out .....	2507
serpent, snake, viper .....	2508
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women .....	2509
set apart .....	2511
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication .....	2512
shadow, overshadow, shade .....	2513
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach .....	2514
Shechem .....	2516
shepherd, herder, pastor .....	2517
Sidon, Sidonians .....	2519
sign, proof, reminder .....	2520
Silas, Silvanus .....	2522
silver .....	2523
Simon the Zealot .....	2524
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	2525
Sinai, Horeb .....	2527
sister .....	2528
slander, slanderers, revile, insult .....	2529
slaughter, slaughtered .....	2530
slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder .....	2531
soldier, warrior .....	2532
Solomon .....	2533
son .....	2534
Son of God, the Son .....	2536
Son of Man, son of man .....	2538
sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician .....	2539
soul, self, person .....	2540
spirit, wind, breath .....	2541
Stephen .....	2543
stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornness, hard of neck .....	2544
stone, stoning .....	2545
strength, strengthen, strong .....	2546
stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel .....	2548
suffer, suffering .....	2549
sword, swordsmen .....	2551
synagogue .....	2552
Syria, Ashur .....	2553
tabernacle .....	2554
Tarsus .....	2555
teach, teaching, untaught .....	2556
teacher, Teacher .....	2557
temple, house, house of God .....	2558

tent, tentmakers .....	2560
terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic .....	2561
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire .....	2562
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence .....	2563
tetrarch .....	2565
the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea .....	2566
the twelve, the eleven .....	2567
Thessalonica, Thessalonian .....	2568
Thomas .....	2569
throne, enthroned .....	2570
time, untimely, date .....	2571
Timothy .....	2572
to minister, ministry .....	2573
tongue, language .....	2574
tremble, stagger, shake .....	2575
trial, proving .....	2576
tribe, tribal, tribesmen .....	2577
tribulation, distresses, trouble .....	2578
Troas .....	2579
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity .....	2580
true, truth .....	2581
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness .....	2583
tunic .....	2584
turn, turn away, turn back, return .....	2585
twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes .....	2587
Tychicus .....	2588
Tyre, Tyrians .....	2589
understand, understanding, thinking .....	2590
unleavened bread .....	2591
vain, vanity .....	2592
virgin, virginity .....	2593
vision, envision .....	2594
voice .....	2595
vow .....	2596
walk, walked .....	2597
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware .....	2598
water, deep .....	2599
wheat .....	2600
will of God .....	2601
wise, wisdom .....	2602
wolf, wild dogs .....	2603
womb .....	2604
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ... ..	2605
work, works, deeds .....	2607
world, worldly .....	2608
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless .....	2609
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful .....	2610
year .....	2611
yoke, yoked, tied .....	2612
zeal, zealous .....	2613

<b>Contributors .....</b>	<b>2614</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors .....	2614

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors ..... 2620  
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors ..... 2621  
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors ..... 2622  
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors ..... 2622  
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors ..... 2623



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **Acts**

## Introduction to Acts

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of the book of Acts

The apostles spread the good news about Jesus in Jerusalem (1:1–6:7)  
The church expands into Judea and Samaria (6:8–9:31)  
The church expands to include Gentiles (9:32–12:24)  
Paul goes to Asia Minor as an apostle to the Gentiles (12:25–16:5)  
The church expands into the middle Mediterranean area (16:6–19:20)  
Paul reaches Rome, but as a prisoner and after several trials (19:21–28:31)

Luke makes transitional statements at 6:7, 9:31, 12:24, 16:5, and 19:20 to mark the movement from each major part of the book to the next part.

#### What is the book of Acts about?

The book of Acts tells the story of the early church. It relates how more and more people, from different backgrounds and in different parts of the Roman Empire, became believers in Jesus. It shows the power of the Holy Spirit helping the early Christians. The events in this book begin with the return of Jesus to heaven and they end about 30 years later.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “The Acts of the Apostles.” Or translators may choose a different title, for example, “The Acts of the Holy Spirit through the Apostles.”

#### Who wrote the book of Acts?

The author of this book does not give his own name. However, the book is dedicated to Theophilus, the same person to whom Luke dedicated his story of the life of Jesus, the Gospel of Luke. Also, in parts of this book, the author uses the word “we.” This indicates that the author traveled with Paul. Most scholars think that Luke was this person who traveled with Paul. Therefore, since early Christian times, most Christians have thought that Luke was the author of the book of Acts as well as the Gospel of Luke.

Luke was a medical doctor. His way of writing shows that he was an educated man. He was probably a Gentile. He personally witnessed many of the events that he describes in the book of Acts.

### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

#### What is the church?

The church is the community of people who believe in Jesus as their Lord and Savior. The church includes both Jewish and Gentile believers. The book of Acts shows God helping the church. It shows God doing signs and wonders to confirm the church’s testimony to Jesus, leading many people to have faith in Jesus, guiding the church about where and how to share the good news, and enabling believers to resolve conflicts and endure persecution.

## The kingdom of God

The “kingdom of God” is a major concept in the book of Acts, as it is in the Gospel of Luke. This concept is very rich in meaning. It includes the idea of eternal life in the presence of God, but it also includes the idea of what the earth will be like in the future when God rules everything, and the idea of life on earth right now, when and where God’s wishes are carried out fully. The unifying concept behind all of these ideas is that of God ruling and of people embracing God’s rule over their lives. Wherever the expression “the kingdom of God” occurs, translation notes will suggest communicating the idea behind the abstract noun “kingdom” with some phrase that uses the verb “rule.” UST models this approach consistently. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### Possible translation difficulties in the book of Acts

#### “to the same”

The phrase “to the same” occurs five times in this book (1:15, 2:1, 2:44, 2:47, 4:26). It is not entirely clear what this phrase means. In the first three instances it could mean “in the same place,” but it could also mean “in one accord,” that is, “in full agreement.” In 2:47 it seems to mean “to their group.” Paul uses the same phrase in 1 Corinthians 11:20 and 14:23, where it could mean “in the same place” or it could have the sense of full agreement and mean something like “in Christian fellowship.” That sense would fit Acts 2:47, where the phrase could be translated “to their Christian fellowship.” In 4:26 it could mean “to the same place,” but it could also mean “by agreement.” Notes will discuss the different possibilities in each case where the phrase could mean more than one thing.

#### “in/to/into the temple”

Luke uses this phrase many times in this book, but it does not refer to the temple building itself. Only priests were allowed to enter that building, so the phrase refers to the courtyard or area around the temple. The phrase “in the porch that is called Solomon’s” in 3:11 makes it clear that Peter and John and the crowd that gathered on the occasion that chapter describes were not inside the temple building. Notes will address this phrase to explain its meaning each time it occurs in the book.

### What are the major issues in the text of the book of Acts?

The following are the most significant textual issues in Acts. Notes will address them where they occur in the book.

First, there are some verses that are found in traditional versions of the Bible, but they are not found in the most accurate ancient manuscripts of the Bible. Some modern versions put these verses in square brackets [ ]. The ULT and UST also put them in brackets. If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider including these verses if that translation does. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you indicate in some way that these verses may not be original. You could put them in brackets, for example, or in footnotes. These verses are: - Acts 8:37, “Philip said, ‘If you believe with all your heart, you may be baptized.’ The Ethiopian answered, ‘I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.’” - Acts 15:34, “But it seemed good to Silas to remain there.” - Acts 24:6-8, “And we wanted to judge him according to our law. But Lysias, the officer, came and forcibly took him out of our hands, sending him to you.” - Acts 28:29, “When he had said these things, the Jews departed, having a great dispute among themselves.”

Second, in some verses, it is uncertain what the original text said. The ULT uses the first readings listed below, but it includes the second readings in footnotes. If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider following the same reading that it does. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you follow the same reading that ULT does. These verses are: - Acts 3:22, “the Lord our God.” Some versions read “the Lord your God,” and other versions read “the Lord God.” - Acts 7:46, “a dwelling for the

house of Jacob." Some versions read "for the God of Jacob." - Acts 10:19, "three men. Some versions read "two men" or "some men." - Acts 10:30, ""Four days ago, at this hour, I was praying at the ninth {hour} in my house." Some versions read, "From the fourth day until this hour, I was fasting, and at the ninth hour I was praying in my house." - Acts 12:25, "They returned from Jerusalem." Some versions read, "They returned to Jerusalem" (or "to there"). - Acts 13:18, "he put up with them." Some versions read, "he cared for them." - Acts 15:17-18, "This is what the Lord says, who has done these things that have been known from ancient times." Some older versions read, "This is what the Lord says, to whom are known all his deeds from ancient times."

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

# Acts 1

## Acts 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The UST has set the words “Dear Theophilus” apart from the other words. This is because English speakers often start letters this way. You may want to start this book in the way that people start letters in your culture.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the two quotations from the book of Psalms in 1:20.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The Ascension

This chapter records an event that is commonly known as the “Ascension.” That word describes how Jesus returned to heaven after he became alive again. In the future he will come back to earth again, and his return to earth is known as his “Second Coming.” (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [resurrection](#))

#### Baptism

Luke uses the word “baptize” with two different meanings in 1:5. In the first instance, it refers literally to the water baptism of John. In the second instance, it refers figuratively to people being filled with the Holy Spirit. Luke uses the term “filled” to mean this same thing in 2:4. (See: [baptize](#), [baptized](#), [baptism](#))

#### “He spoke things concerning the kingdom of God”

Some scholars believe that when Jesus spoke “things concerning the kingdom of God,” as Luke describes in 1:3, he explained to the disciples why the kingdom of God had not come while he was on earth the first time. Other scholars believe that the kingdom of God did begin while Jesus was on earth and that Jesus explained that it had come in a form different from the one the disciples had expected. Since Christians hold different views about the kingdom of God coming, translators should be careful to avoid letting how they understand that issue affect how they translate this verse.

### Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Long sentence

As was common in compositions of this time, for stylistic purposes Luke begins this book with a very long sentence. It goes from the beginning of 1:1 to the end of 1:3. ULT represents all of this as a single sentence. It may be helpful to your readers to divide it into several sentences, as UST does.

#### The details of the death of Judas

There are some differences in detail between the way Luke describes the death of Judas in the book of Acts and the way Matthew describes it in his gospel. Luke says that Judas used the money he got for betraying Jesus to buy a field; Matthew says that Judas returned the money to the Jewish leaders and that they bought the field with it. Luke



says that Judas killed himself by falling onto the field from a height; Matthew says that Judas hanged himself. Luke says that the field was named the “Field of Blood” because Judas died a bloody death there; Matthew says the field was given that name because it was purchased with “blood money,” that is, money paid to ensure someone’s death.

It is possible to reconcile many of these details. For example, the body of Judas may have fallen and split open on the field if he fell when he tried to hang himself. Luke may say that Judas bought the field because the Jewish leaders would not take back the money that they had paid him, and so in a sense it was still his money when the field was purchased with it.

But it would probably be best to avoid trying to reconcile these details within your translation. For example, when Luke says in [1:18](#) that Judas fell onto the field, instead of saying that he fell when he was trying to hang himself, you can let Luke and Matthew each tell the story the way they do. Then you can leave it up to preachers and teachers of the Bible to explain how their accounts are compatible.

## The 12 disciples

There is one small difference between the list of the 12 disciples that Matthew and Mark provide in their gospels and the list that Luke provides in his gospel and in the book of Acts.

All three writers list Simon Peter and his brother Andrew; James and John, the two sons of Zebedee; Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot. But Matthew and Mark say that the twelfth disciple was Thaddeus, while Luke says he was Judas the son of James. However, it is quite likely that Thaddeus was another name by which this other Judas was known.

Once again it is not necessary to try to reconcile these details within your translation. Specifically, in [1:13](#) instead of saying, “Judas the son of James, who was also known as Thaddeus,” you can let each of the biblical writers tell the story in the way that they do. Then you can leave it up to preachers and teachers of the Bible to explain how their accounts are compatible.



## **Acts 1:1**

## I made the first account

Luke assumes that Theophilus will know that by **the first account** he means the book that has become known as the Gospel of Luke. Since that book was not known by that title at this time, it would not be accurate to put the title in your translation as a name that Luke would have used to describe the book to Theophilus. However, you could explain this in a footnote and use another expression here. Alternate translation: "I wrote in my first volume" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> I made the first account, O Theophilus, about all that **Jesus** began both to do and **to teach**,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Dear Theophilus, In the first book that I wrote for you, I told about many of **Jesus'** actions and **teachings**.

## O Theophilus (ULT)

## Dear Theophilus (UST)

Here Luke is identifying and addressing the man for whom he compiled this account of the early church. Since this is like the salutation of a letter, in your translation you may wish to follow your culture's way of identifying and greeting the addressee of a letter. UST models this by saying "Dear Theophilus" and putting the phrase at the beginning of the sentence.

## Theophilus (ULT)

## Theophilus (UST)

**Theophilus** is the name of a man. It means "friend of God." It may be his actual name, or it may describe what this man was like. Most translations treat it as his name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## about all...that Jesus began both to do and to teach (ULT)

## about many of...many of...Jesus' actions and teachings (UST)

Luke is using the word **began** to indicate that Jesus had been doing something else (working as a carpenter) but then began to do something new when he started his ministry. In your language, it might not be necessary to translate the word **began**, since it might seem to convey redundant information that would be not be natural to express. Alternate translation: "all that Jesus both did and taught" (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

## about all...that Jesus began both to do and to teach (ULT)

## about many of...many of...Jesus' actions and teachings (UST)

This is a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "about some of the most important things that Jesus did and taught" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to teach](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [teachings](#)

## Acts 1:2

### until that day (ULT) I told you about those things} up to the moment when (UST)

While this did happen on a specific day, Luke is likely using the word **day** idiomatically to mean a specific time. Alternate translation: “up to the time when” (See: [Idiom](#))

### he was taken up (ULT) God took Jesus up to heaven (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “God took him up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### he was taken up (ULT) God took Jesus up to heaven (UST)

Luke is referring to Jesus being **taken up** into heaven. See the discussion of “Ascension” in the General Notes to this chapter. Alternate translation: “he was taken up into heaven” or “God took him up into heaven” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- day
- when...having given commands
- the Holy Spirit
- to...apostles
- he had chosen

### Translation Words - UST

- the moment
- Before Jesus went to heaven, he gave instructions
- his chosen
- to...Representatives
- the Holy Spirit

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> until that [day when](#) he was taken up, [having given commands](#) through the [Holy Spirit](#) to the [apostles](#) whom [he had chosen](#),

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> {I told you about those things} up to [the moment](#) when God took Jesus up to heaven. [Before Jesus went to heaven](#), [he gave instructions](#) to [his chosen Representatives](#) as the [Holy Spirit](#) guided him.



## **Acts 1:3**

**to whom also, after he had suffered, he presented himself living with many proofs (ULT)**

**Even though the Romans executed Jesus on a cross, God made him alive again. Jesus then went to his Representatives {and other disciples} and proved to them in many convincing ways that he truly was alive again (UST)**

As the General Notes to this chapter suggest, it be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Jesus also presented himself alive with many proofs to his apostles after he had suffered"

**after he had suffered (ULT)**

**Even though the Romans executed Jesus on a cross (UST)**

This refers to how Jesus suffered and died on the cross. Alternate translation: "after he had suffered and died on the cross" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**with many proofs (ULT)**

**in many convincing ways (UST)**

The word translated **proofs** describes items of evidence that are decisive and convincing. Alternate translation: "with many definitive proofs" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**appearing to them for 40 days and speaking (ULT)**

While the antecedent of **whom** is "the apostles whom he had chosen" in the previous verse, Jesus actually appeared to many other disciples besides his apostles. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "For 40 days he appeared to his apostles and many of his other disciples, and he spoke" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**things concerning the kingdom of God (ULT)**

**about how God would rule the lives of people everywhere (UST)**

See the discussion of the concept of the **kingdom of God** in Part 2 of the General Introduction to Acts. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **kingdom**, you could express this with a verb such as "rule," as UST does. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [had suffered](#)
- [living](#)
- [days](#)

## ULT

<sup>3</sup> to whom also, after he [had suffered](#), he presented himself [living](#) with many proofs, appearing to them for 40 [days](#) and speaking things concerning the [kingdom of God](#).

## UST

<sup>3</sup> [Even though the Romans executed Jesus on a cross, God made him alive again](#). Jesus then went to his Representatives {and other disciples} and proved to them in many convincing ways [that he truly was alive again](#). He met with them at different times over a period of 40 [days](#). He talked with them about how [God would rule the lives of people everywhere](#).



- kingdom of God

## Translation Words - UST

- Even though the Romans executed...on a cross
- God made him alive again...that he truly was alive again
- days
- God would rule the lives of people everywhere



## **Acts 1:4**

**not to depart from Jerusalem, but (ULT)**  
**I want you to stay here in the city of**  
**Jerusalem and (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **depart**. Alternate translation: “to remain in Jerusalem and” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**not to depart from Jerusalem (ULT)**  
**I want you to stay here in the city of**  
**Jerusalem (UST)**

The content of Jesus’ instructions to the apostles on this occasion begins here. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could translate and punctuate the material from here to the end of the verse as a direct quotation, as UST does. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**Jerusalem (ULT)**  
**the city of Jerusalem (UST)**

**Jerusalem** is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the promise of the Father (ULT)**  
**God our Father sends his Spirit to you...he promised that he would do that**  
**(UST)**

Jesus is referring figuratively to the Holy Spirit by association with the way God made a **promise** to send the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit, whom the Father promised” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of the Father (ULT)**  
**God our Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God. Alternate translation: “of God the Father” (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**which you heard from me (ULT)**  
**As I told you (UST)**

In keeping with his engaging storytelling style, Luke begins a quotation from Jesus here without introducing it with a formula such as “he said.” If it would be helpful to your readers, you could include an introductory formula in your translation. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “He said, ‘You heard about this from me’” or “He said, ‘I told you about this’” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**you heard (ULT)**  
**told you (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural because Jesus is speaking to the apostles, so use the plural form of “you” in your translation if your language marks that distinction. In 1:6, “you” is singular because Jesus alone is being addressed, so the

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> And [meeting together with them](#), he [commanded](#) them not to depart from [Jerusalem](#), but to await the [promise](#) of the [Father](#), “which you heard from me,

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> [One time while Jesus was with his disciples](#), he [told](#) them, “I want you to stay here in [the city of Jerusalem](#) and wait until [God our Father sends his Spirit to you](#). As I told you, he [promised that he would do that](#).”

singular form would be accurate there. In general these notes will not discuss whether **you** is singular or plural when this should be clear from the context, but they will address ambiguous cases where this may not be clear. (See: [Forms of You](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [meeting together with them](#)
- [he commanded](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [promise](#)
- [of...Father](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [One time while Jesus was with his disciples](#)
- [he told](#)
- [the city of Jerusalem](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [sends his Spirit to you...he promised that...would do that](#)



## **Acts 1:5**

**John (ULT)****John (UST)**

**John** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**John (ULT)****John (UST)**

Jesus is referring to the man who was known as John the Baptist because he baptized people. It may help to identify him if you use that title after his name in your translation. However, because the word “Baptist” is associated with a group of churches in many parts of the world, it may be helpful to your readers to use a different form of the word as a title, as UST does by saying “Baptizer.” Alternate translation: “John the Baptist” or “John the Baptizer” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> that **John** indeed **baptized with water**, but you **will be baptized** in the Holy **Spirit** after these not many **days**.”

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> **John** baptized people in water, but within a few **days** **God is going to baptize** you in the Holy **Spirit**.”

**you...will be baptized in the Holy Spirit (ULT)****you...God is going to baptize...in the Holy Spirit (UST)**

After describing earlier in the verse how John baptized people literally, Jesus is using baptism in this second instance as a metaphor. See the discussion in the General Notes to this chapter. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit will come and empower you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you...will be baptized (ULT)****you...God is going to baptize (UST)**

You may wish to retain the metaphor of baptism in your translation. If you do, and if your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you can say who will do the action. Alternate translation: “God will baptize” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**after these not many days (ULT)****within a few days (UST)**

Jesus is using a figure of speech that expresses a positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. Alternate translation: “just a few days from now” (See: [Litotes](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [John](#)
- [baptized](#)
- [will be baptized](#)
- [with water](#)
- [the...Spirit](#)
- [days](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [John](#)
- [baptized people](#)
- [God is going to baptize](#)



- in water
- days
- the...Spirit



## **Acts 1:6**

## They therefore having assembled, they were asking him

In the first instance, **they** describes Jesus and the apostles, while in the second instance, **they** refers to the apostles. (Other disciples could have been present on this occasion, but the instructions that Jesus gives about being “witnesses” in 1:8 apply specifically to the apostles, so it would be good to name them directly.) Alternate translation: “When the apostles were together with Jesus, the apostles were asking him” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## if you are restoring the kingdom to Israel at this time (ULT)

## will you now become our king so that we Israelite people will have our own king once again (UST)

This is an idiomatic way of asking a question. Alternate translation: “are you restoring the kingdom to Israel at this time” or “will you now restore the kingdom to Israel” (See: [Idiom](#))

## if...you are restoring the kingdom to Israel (ULT)

## will you...become our king so that...will have our own king once again...will you...become our king so that...we Israelite people...will have our own king once again (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **kingdom**, you could express the same idea with a noun such as “king.” Alternate translation: “are you going to give Israel its own king again” or “are you going to become the restored king of Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## to Israel (ULT)

## we Israelite people (UST)

**Israel** is the name of a nation. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [having assembled](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [to Israel](#)
- [time](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [One day when...were meeting together](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [will you...become our king so that...will have our own king once again](#)
- [now](#)
- [we Israelite people](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They therefore [having assembled](#), they were asking him, saying, “[Lord](#), if you are restoring the [kingdom to Israel](#) at this [time](#)?”

### UST

<sup>6</sup> [One day when](#) the Representatives [were meeting together](#) with Jesus, they asked him, “[Lord](#), [will you now become our king](#) so that [we Israelite people](#) will [have our own king once again](#)?”

## Acts 1:7

### It is not for you to know (ULT) You do not need to know (UST)

Jesus is saying implicitly by this response that he is not going to tell the apostles when the thing they are asking about will happen. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly in your translation. Alternate translation: "I am not going to tell you when that will happen, because it is not for you to know" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the times or the seasons (ULT) when that will happen (UST)

The words **times** and **seasons** could: (1) refer to different kinds of time. Alternate translation: "the general period of time or the specific date" (2) have similar meanings, being used together for emphasis. Alternate translation: "the exact time" (See: [Doublet](#))

### the Father (ULT) God my Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. Alternate translation: "God the Father" (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### by his own authority (ULT) alone (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **authority**, you could express the same idea with a verb such as "control." Alternate translation: "as the one who controls all things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- to know
- the times
- the seasons
- Father
- authority

## Translation Words - UST

- do...need to know
- when that will happen
- when that will happen
- God my Father
- alone

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But he said to them, "It is not for you to know the times or the seasons that the Father has set by his own authority."

### UST

<sup>7</sup> He replied to them, "You do not need to know when that will happen. God my Father alone has decided {when he will make me king}."



## **Acts 1:8**

## you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses (ULT)

Jesus is using the word translated **and** to describe a result. Alternate translation: “when the Holy Spirit comes upon you, then you will receive power to be my witnesses” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### power (ULT) powerfully (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **power**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as “powerful.” Alternate translation: “powerful ability” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Jerusalem...Judea...Samaria (ULT) the city of Jerusalem...nearby regions of Judea...Samaria (UST)

**Jerusalem** is the name of a city, and **Judea** and **Samaria** are the names of regions. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### to the end of the earth (ULT) all over the world (UST)

This is a reference to place, not to time. Jesus does not mean “until the world ends.” Alternate translation: “all over the world” or “to the places on the earth that are farthest away from here” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- you will receive
- power
- Holy Spirit
- witnesses
- Jerusalem
- Judea
- Samaria
- of...earth

### Translation Words - UST

- Holy Spirit
- he will enable you
- world
- to tell people about me...You will do this...You will do it...you will...do it
- powerfully
- the city of Jerusalem
- nearby regions of Judea
- Samaria

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses both in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth.”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> But when the Holy Spirit comes to you, he will enable you to tell people about me powerfully. You will do this here in the city of Jerusalem. You will do it in the nearby regions of Judea and Samaria. But you will also do it all over the world.



## Acts 1:9

### as they were looking (ULT) while they watched (UST)

Your language may require you to specify the object of **looking**. Alternate translation: “as they were looking at him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### he was raised up (ULT) he started to rise up {into heaven} (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who did the action. (See the discussion of “Ascension” in the General Notes to this chapter.) Alternate translation: “he rose up” or “God raised him up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### from their eyes (ULT) so that they could no longer see (UST)

Luke is using the **eyes** of the apostles figuratively to mean their capacity to see. Alternate translation: “from their sight” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And having said these things, as they were looking, he was raised up, and a cloud hid him from their eyes.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> After he said that, he started to rise up {into heaven} while they watched. But then a cloud blocked their view so that they could no longer see him.

## Acts 1:10

### they were looking intently into heaven (ULT) they were still staring toward the sky (UST)

Since a cloud was able to block the apostles' view, it is clear that Luke is using the word translated **heaven** here in one of its specific senses to mean "sky." It would be good to make clear that the apostles were not seeing into heaven itself. Alternate translation: "gazing at the sky" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### and behold, two men (ULT) suddenly two angels in human form (UST)

Luke is using the term **behold** to focus readers' attention on how suddenly these **two men** appeared. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: "just then two men" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### And (ULT)

Luke uses the word translated **And** to indicate that the event of the men appearing happened after the event of Jesus going up. Alternate translation: "Then" (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#))

### two men (ULT) two angels in human form (UST)

These were actually angels. Luke calls them **men** because they appeared in human form. Alternate translation: "two angels" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### white clothes (ULT) Their clothes...shone brightly (UST)

In this context, the word **white** likely has the specific sense of "bright" or "shining." Alternate translation: "bright clothes" or "shining clothes"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And while they were looking intently into [heaven](#) as he was going up, and behold, two men stood by them in white clothes.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> While they were still staring toward the [sky](#) as Jesus was going up, suddenly two angels in human form stood beside them. Their clothes shone brightly.



## **Acts 1:11**

**they...said (ULT)**  
**One of the angels...said (UST)**

This could mean: (1) one of the angels had spoken on behalf of both of them. Alternate translation: "one of them said" (2) the two angels had each said different parts of the quotation. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they...said (ULT)**  
**One of the angels...said (UST)**

If you retain the word **they** in your translation and if your language uses dual forms for verbs, it would be accurate to use the dual form here, since two men are speaking. (See: [Verbs](#))

**Men, Galileans (ULT)**  
**You men who come from Galilee (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: "You Galileans" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Men, Galileans (ULT)**  
**You men who come from Galilee (UST)**

**Galileans** are people who are from the region of Galilee. Alternate translation: "You men from Galilee" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**why do you stand looking into heaven (ULT)**  
**you do not need to look up at the sky any longer (UST)**

The angels are not looking for information. They are using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate their words as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "there is no reason for you to stand looking into heaven!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**why do you stand looking (ULT)**  
**you do not need to look up...any longer (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "why do you keep looking" or "there is no reason for you to keep looking" (See: [Idiom](#))

**who has been taken up from you into heaven...you saw him going into heaven (ULT)**  
**whom God took from you up into heaven...that you just now saw him go up to heaven (UST)**

In its second occurrence in this sentence, the term translated **heaven** likely means "the sky," as in the previous sentence and in the previous verse. However, in its first occurrence in this sentence, the term likely means "heaven"

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> And they said, "Men, **Galileans**, why do you stand looking into **heaven**? This **Jesus**, who has been taken up from you into **heaven**, thus will come, the way you saw him going into **heaven**."

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> One of the angels said, "You men **who come from Galilee**, you do not need to look up at the **sky** any longer! Someday this same **Jesus**, whom God took from you up into **heaven**, will come back {to earth}. He will return in the same way that you just now saw him go up to **heaven**."

itself. It would not be accurate to say that Jesus was just “taken up from you into the sky.” Alternate translation: “who has been taken up from you into heaven ... you saw him going into the sky” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **who has been taken up (ULT) whom God took...up (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who has done the action. Alternate translation: “whom God has taken up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## **the way (ULT) in the same way (UST)**

Alternate translation: “in the same way in which”

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [Galileans](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [heaven \(2\)](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [who come from Galilee](#)
- [sky](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [heaven \(2\)](#)
- [Jesus](#)



## **Acts 1:12**



## they returned (ULT) the Representatives returned (UST)

The word **they** refers to the apostles. Alternate translation: “the apostles returned” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## the hill that is called Olivet (ULT) the Mount of Olives (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “the hill that people call Olivet” or “the hill whose name is Olivet” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the hill that is called Olivet (ULT) the Mount of Olives (UST)

**Olivet** is the name of a hill. If your readers might recognize it better if you called it the Mount of Olives, you could use that name in your translation, as UST does. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## having a journey of a Sabbath (ULT) a short distance from Jerusalem (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “a Sabbath-day’s journey away” (See: [Idiom](#))

## having a journey of a Sabbath (ULT) a short distance from Jerusalem (UST)

The **journey of a Sabbath** was the distance that interpreters of the law of Moses had determined people could walk on the Sabbath without that being “work.” If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express the distance in the measurement that your culture uses. Alternate translation: “about a kilometer away” or “about half a mile away” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [they returned](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem \(2\)](#)
- [the hill that is called Olivet](#)
- [Olivet](#)
- [of a Sabbath](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [the Representatives returned](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [a short distance from Jerusalem \(2\)](#)
- [the Mount of Olives](#)
- [the Mount of Olives](#)
- [a short distance from Jerusalem](#)

## ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then [they returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#) from [the hill that is called Olivet](#), which is near [Jerusalem](#), having a journey [of a Sabbath](#).

## UST

<sup>12</sup> Then {after the two angels left}, [the Representatives returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#) from [the Mount of Olives](#), which is a [short distance from Jerusalem](#).



## **Acts 1:13**

**when they arrived (ULT)**  
**After they entered the city (UST)**

The previous verse explains that the apostles returned to Jerusalem. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that again explicitly here. Alternate translation: “when they arrived back in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they went up into the upper chamber where they were staying (ULT)**  
**they went into the upstairs room {in the house} where they were staying (UST)**

In this culture, in some houses, rooms were built on top of other rooms. The expression **upper chamber** describes such a room, which was reached by stairs. If your culture does not have houses like that, it may be helpful to explain the meaning of the expression in your translation. Alternate translation: “they climbed the stairs to the room where they were staying, which had been built on top of other rooms in the house” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> And when they arrived, they went up into the upper chamber where they were staying, both [Peter](#) and [John](#), and [James](#) and [Andrew](#), [Philip](#) and [Thomas](#), [Bartholomew](#) and [Matthew](#), [James of Alphaeus](#) and [Simon the Zealot](#), and [Judas of James](#).

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> After they entered the city, they went into the upstairs room {in the house} where they were staying. Those who were there included [Peter](#), [John](#), [James](#), [Andrew](#), [Philip](#), [Thomas](#), [Bartholomew](#), and [Matthew](#). They also included [another man named James, who was the son of Alphaeus](#); [Simon the Zealot](#); and [Judas, who was the son of yet another man named James](#).

**Peter..John...James...Andrew...Philip...Thomas...Bartholomew...Matthew (ULT)**  
**Peter..John...James...Andrew...Philip...Thomas...Bartholomew...Matthew (UST)**

These are the names of eight men. The name **James** is the Greek form of the Hebrew name Jacob. Some translators prefer to use the Hebrew form of the name for this man and for other men in the New Testament with the same name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**James of Alphaeus...Judas of James (ULT)**  
**another man named James, who was the son of Alphaeus...Judas, who was the son of yet another man named James (UST)**

These are two occurrences of an idiom. Alternate translation: “James the son of Alphaeus ... Judas the son of James” (See: [Idiom](#))

**James...of Alphaeus...Judas...of James (ULT)**  
**James...who was the son of Alphaeus...Judas...who was the son of yet another man named James (UST)**

These are the names of four men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Simon the Zealot (ULT)**  
**Simon the Zealot (UST)**

**Simon** is the name of a man, and **Zealot** is another name by which he was known. (1) **Zealot** could be a title that indicates that this man was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule.

Alternate translation: "Simon the Patriot" (2) **Zealot** could also be a description that indicates that this man was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "Simon the Passionate One" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- John
- Zealot
- Judas of James
- James
- Andrew
- Philip
- Thomas
- Bartholomew
- Matthew
- James of Alphaeus
- Simon the Zealot

## Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- John
- Zealot
- Judas, who was the son of yet another man named James
- James
- Andrew
- Philip
- Thomas
- Bartholomew
- Matthew
- another man named James, who was the son of Alphaeus
- Simon the Zealot

## Acts 1:14

### unanimously (ULT) together (UST)

The word **unanimously** indicates that the apostles and other believers shared a common commitment and purpose and that there was no strife among them. Alternate translation: “with one accord” or “harmoniously”

### the women (ULT) the women who had traveled with Jesus (UST)

Luke assumes that his readers will know he is referring to the women who accompanied Jesus and his disciples during his ministry. These women provided for them out of their own means, and they had traveled with them to Jerusalem. These women are described in [Luke 8:2–3](#) and [23:49](#). Alternate translation: “the women who had helped Jesus and his disciples during his ministry” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Mary (ULT) Mary (UST)

**Mary** is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### his brothers (ULT) his younger brothers (UST)

These were Jesus’ younger brothers. They were the sons of Mary and Joseph. Since the Father of Jesus was God, and their father was Joseph, they were actually his half-brothers. That detail is not normally translated, but if your language has a specific word for “younger brother,” you may wish to use it here. (See: [Kinship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- in prayer
- Mary
- of Jesus
- brothers

### Translation Words - UST

- prayed
- Mary
- Jesus
- younger brothers

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> They all were continuing unanimously **in prayer**, with the women and **Mary** the mother **of Jesus** and with his **brothers**.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> All these men **prayed** together regularly and frequently. Others who prayed with them included the women who had traveled with Jesus; **Mary**, who was **Jesus’** mother; and his **younger brothers**.



## **Acts 1:15**



**And in those days (ULT)**

Luke uses this phrase to introduce a new event in the story. The phrase refers to the period of time after Jesus ascended, when the disciples were meeting in the upper chamber. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**in those days (ULT)****At one of the meetings (UST)**

Luke is using the term **days** idiomatically to refer to a specific time. Alternate translation: “during that time” (See: [Idiom](#))

**having stood up (ULT)****stood up...because he was going to say something important (UST)**

Peter **stood up** to indicate that he had something important to say. Alternate translation: “having stood up to show that he had something important to say” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**of the brothers (ULT)****his fellow believers (UST)**

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. Alternate translation: “his fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of the brothers (ULT)****his fellow believers (UST)**

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, Luke is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say “brothers and sisters” to indicate this. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**and the multitude of names to the same was about 120 (ULT)****Now about 120 people were meeting together at that place (UST)**

Luke provides this background information to help readers appreciate what happens shortly afterwards in the story, when the church grows in one day to many times this size. It may be helpful to put this background information first in the verse as a separate sentence, in which case it would not have to be in parentheses. Alternate translation: “Now the number of people in that one place was about 120.” (See: [Background Information](#))

**the multitude of names (ULT)****people...meeting together (UST)**

Luke is using the term **names** figuratively to mean “people,” by association with the way that people have names. Alternate translation: “the number of people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> And in those **days** Peter, having stood up in the midst of the **brothers**, said (and the multitude of **names** to the same was about 120),

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> Now about 120 **people** were meeting together at that place. **At one of the meetings**, Peter stood up among his fellow **believers** {because he was going to say something important}. He said,

## **to the same (ULT) at that place (UST)**

See the discussion of this phrase in Part 3 of the Introduction to Acts. Alternate translation: “in that one place” or “in their Christian fellowship”

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- days
- Peter
- having stood up
- of...brothers
- of names

### **Translation Words - UST**

- people
- At one of the meetings
- Peter
- stood up...because he was going to say something important
- believers



## **Acts 1:16**

**Men, brothers (ULT)****You who believe as I do (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: “My brothers” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Men, brothers (ULT)****You who believe as I do (UST)**

See how you translated the term **brothers** in 1:15. Alternate translation: “My fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Men, brothers (ULT)****You who believe as I do (UST)**

If you decide to retain the metaphor of **brothers**, you could show that Peter is using the term in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “My brothers and sisters” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**it was necessary for the scripture to be fulfilled that the Holy Spirit spoke before by the mouth of David concerning Judas, who became a guide to the ones arresting Jesus (ULT)**

**there are words that King David wrote in the Scriptures long ago that had to happen as he said they would. The Holy Spirit, who knew that Judas would show Jesus' enemies where to find him and arrest him, inspired David to write those words (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could put the information that Peter provides to identify this **scripture** before his statement that it had to be **fulfilled**. It may be helpful to make that statement a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit spoke before by the mouth of David concerning Judas, who became a guide to the ones who arrested Jesus. It was necessary for that scripture to be fulfilled” (See: [Information Structure](#))

**it was necessary for the scripture to be fulfilled (ULT)**

**there are words that...wrote in the Scriptures...that had to happen (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “the things needed to take place that the scripture described” or, if you put the background information first as a separate sentence, “What that scripture described needed to take place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**spoke before (ULT)**

**long ago (UST)**

Alternate translation: “spoke beforehand” or “spoke in advance”

**ULT**

<sup>16</sup> “Men, **brothers**, it was necessary for the **scripture to be fulfilled** that the **Holy Spirit** spoke before by the mouth of **of David** concerning **Judas**, who became a guide to the ones arresting **Jesus**.”

**UST**

<sup>16</sup> “**You who believe as I do**, there are **words that King David wrote in the Scriptures** long ago that had **to happen** as he said they would. The **Holy Spirit**, who knew that **Judas** would show **Jesus'** enemies where to find **him** and arrest **him**, inspired **David** to write those words.”

**by the mouth of David (ULT)****King David...as he said they would...inspired David to write (UST)**

Peter is using the word **mouth** figuratively to refer to words that David spoke or sang using his mouth and that he recorded in the book of Psalms, as Peter indicates in [1:20](#). Alternate translation: “through the words of David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of David...Judas (ULT)****King David...David...Judas (UST)**

**David** and **Judas** are the names of two men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**who became a guide to the ones arresting Jesus (ULT)****would show Jesus' enemies where to find him and arrest him (UST)**

Peter is using the act of guiding **the ones arresting Jesus** to represent all of the things that Judas did to betray Jesus. This also included meeting beforehand with his enemies, receiving payment for the betrayal, and looking for the best opportunity to catch Jesus away from the crowds. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in more general terms. Alternate translation: “who betrayed Jesus to his enemies” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [brothers](#)
- [scripture](#)
- [to be fulfilled](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [of David](#)
- [Judas](#)
- [Jesus](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [You who believe as I do](#)
- [there are words that...wrote in the Scriptures](#)
- [King David...David](#)
- [to happen](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Judas](#)
- [Jesus...him...him](#)



## **Acts 1:17**



## For (ULT) But (UST)

Peter uses the word **For** to introduce the reason for a result that is described in [1:21–22](#), after Luke provides further background information and Peter quotes the scripture he referred to in [1:16](#). The overall meaning is, “Since Judas was one of us apostles, we need to replace him with another witness of the ministry of Jesus.” But since so much material comes between the reason and the result, it may be helpful to give an indication here that Peter has a response in mind. Alternate translation: “There is something important we need to do in response to this scripture being fulfilled, since” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> For he was numbered with us and received a share of this [ministry](#).”

### UST

<sup>17</sup> But Jesus had chosen Judas, along with the rest of us, to represent him. {[So we need to find someone else to take his place.](#)}

## he was numbered with us and received a share of this ministry (ULT) Jesus had chosen Judas, along with the rest of us, to represent him. {So we need to find someone else to take his place (UST)}

These two phrases mean similar things. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: “Jesus chose him to be an apostle along with us” (See: [Parallelism](#))

## he was numbered with us (ULT) Jesus had chosen Judas, along with the rest of us, to represent him (UST)

Peter is using the term **numbered** in one of its specific senses. Alternate translation: “he was considered to be one of us apostles”

## he was numbered with us (ULT) Jesus had chosen Judas, along with the rest of us, to represent him (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “he belonged to our group of apostles” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## with us (ULT) along with the rest of us (UST)

Although Peter is addressing a larger group of people, he is using the word **us** to refer only to himself and the other apostles. So if your language distinguishes between exclusive and inclusive “us,” it would be accurate to use the exclusive form here. Other languages may have other ways of indicating that **us** is exclusive here. Alternate translation: “with us apostles” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

## a share of this ministry (ULT) So we need to find someone else to take his place (UST)

Luke temporarily ends his quotation from Peter after this phrase so that he can provide further background information about Judas in [1:18–19](#). The quotation resumes in [1:20](#). If you are identifying quotations in your translation by putting them within quotation marks or by using some other punctuation or convention that your language uses, there should be an ending quotation mark or the equivalent after this phrase. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- of...ministry

## Translation Words - UST

- So we need to find someone else to take his place



## **Acts 1:18**

## Now indeed (ULT) This is how Judas died (UST)

Luke is using this expression to introduce further background information that he provides in this verse and the next one about how Judas died and about what people called the field where he died. This is not part of Peter's speech. You may want to indicate that by putting these verses in parentheses or by using the equivalent convention in your language. (See: [Background Information](#))

## this one (ULT) Judas...He (UST)

Luke is using the demonstrative adjective **this** as a noun to refer to a specific person, Judas. (ULT shows that by adding **one**.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could say "he" or use the name "Judas." (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## from the wage of unrighteousness (ULT) The Jewish leaders gave...money for betraying Jesus...used that money (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **unrighteousness**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as "unrighteous." Alternate translation: "with the money that he received for doing an unrighteous deed" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## from the wage of unrighteousness (ULT) The Jewish leaders gave...money for betraying Jesus...used that money (UST)

Luke is using the term **unrighteousness** figuratively to describe Judas betraying Jesus, by association with the way that was an unrighteous thing to do. Alternate translation: "with the money that he received for betraying Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## having fallen headfirst (ULT) He fell down onto that field from a high place (UST)

Be sure that it is clear in your translation that Judas did not fall down accidentally. Rather, he threw himself onto the field intentionally in order to kill himself. The implications are that he must have done this from a height. Alternate translation: "because he then threw himself down from a height onto that field" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## having fallen headfirst (ULT) He fell down onto that field from a high place (UST)

The word **headfirst** describes someone falling forward, as opposed to falling backwards. Alternate translation: "having fallen forward"

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> (Now indeed this one bought a field from the wage of **unrighteousness**, and having fallen headfirst, he burst open in the middle, and all his entrails were poured out.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> This is how Judas died. **The Jewish leaders gave Judas money for betraying Jesus.** He **used that money** to buy a field{and he went to that field to kill himself because he felt so badly about what he had done to Jesus}. He fell down onto that field from a high place and landed with such force that his abdomen burst open, and all his intestines spilled out.

**all his entrails were poured out (ULT)**  
**all his intestines spilled out (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "all his inward parts poured out" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of unrighteousness](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [The Jewish leaders gave...money for betraying Jesus...used that money](#)

## Acts 1:19

**it became known to all those living in Jerusalem (ULT)**

**The news about this spread widely among the people of Jerusalem (UST)**

The verb form is not passive here, since **known** is an adjective rather than a participle. Even so, it may be helpful to your readers to make **it** the object rather than the subject. Alternate translation: "all those living in Jerusalem heard about it"

**it became known to all those living in Jerusalem (ULT)**

**The news about this spread widely among the people of Jerusalem (UST)**

Luke says **all** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "it became well known to those living in Jerusalem" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**Therefore that field was called (ULT)**

**When they heard about it, they gave that field a new name (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "So they called that field" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Akeldama (ULT)**

**Akeldama (UST)**

**Akeldama** is an Aramaic word. Luke spells it out using Greek letters so his readers will know how it sounds, and then he says what it means, **Field of Blood**. In your translation you can spell it the way it sounds in your language and then explain its meaning. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [was called](#)
- [of Blood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Jerusalem](#)
- [they gave...a new name](#)
- [of Blood." {They gave it that name because it was where someone had died}](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And it became known to all those living [in Jerusalem](#). Therefore that field [was called](#) in their own language Akeldama, that is, [Field of Blood](#).)

### UST

<sup>19</sup> The news about this spread widely among the people [of Jerusalem](#). When they heard about it, [they gave](#) that field [a new name](#). In their Aramaic language it was Akeldama, which means "Field [of Blood](#)." {[They gave it that name because it was where someone had died](#).}





## **Acts 1:20**

**For it is written (ULT)**  
**Peter also said, “What happened to Judas is like what we read (UST)**

Luke now resumes his quotation of what Peter said on this occasion. If you are identifying quotations in your translation by putting them within quotation marks or by using some other punctuation or convention that your language uses, there should be an opening quotation mark or the equivalent before this phrase. It may also be helpful to indicate explicitly that the quotation resumes here. Alternate translation: “Peter went on to say, ‘For it is written’” (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**it is written...in the book of Psalms, ‘Let his habitation become desolate, and let not one dwelling be in it,’ and ‘Let another take his overseership (ULT)**

**what we read...in the book of Psalms: ‘May his home become empty, with no one living in it.’ These other words in the Psalms also refer to him: ‘Let someone else take over his work as a leader (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: “it is written in the book of Psalms that his habitation should be made desolate, with no one dwelling in it, and that another should take his overseership” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**it is written...in the book of Psalms (ULT)**  
**what we read...in the book of Psalms (UST)**

If it would be clearer in your language, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who did the action. Alternate translation: “David wrote in the book of Psalms” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Let his habitation become desolate, and let not one dwelling be in it (ULT)**  
**May his home become empty, with no one living in it (UST)**

If your language does not use the third-person imperative in this way, you can state this in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “May his habitation become desolate, and may no one be dwelling in it” or “His habitation should become desolate, and no one should be dwelling in it” (See: [Third-Person Imperatives](#))

**Let his habitation become desolate, and let not one dwelling be in it (ULT)**  
**May his home become empty, with no one living in it (UST)**

This is an imperative, but it communicates a request rather than a command. The psalmist is asking God to judge and punish the wicked. Use a form in your language that communicates a request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as “please” to make this clear. Alternate translation: “Please let his habitation become desolate, and please let no one be dwelling in it” or “Please may his habitation become desolate, and please may no one be dwelling in it” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> “For [it is written](#) in the book of Psalms, ‘Let his habitation become [desolate](#), and let not one dwelling be in it,’ and ‘Let another take his overseership.’

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> Peter also said, “What happened to Judas is like [what we read](#) in the book of Psalms: ‘May his home become [empty](#), with no one living in it.’ These other words in the Psalms also refer to him: ‘Let someone else take over his work as a leader.’”

**Let his habitation become desolate, and let not one dwelling be in it (ULT)**  
**May his home become empty, with no one living in it (UST)**

It may be more natural in your language to use the second person for this imperative. Alternate translation: “God, please make his habitation desolate, and please make no one dwell in it” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

**Let his habitation become desolate, and let not one dwelling be in it (ULT)**  
**May his home become empty, with no one living in it (UST)**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. However, if the repetition might be confusing, you could connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Or you could combine the phrases if you think that would be the clearest thing to do. Alternate translation: “Let his habitation be made desolate, yes, let no one dwell in it” or “Let his habitation be made completely desolate” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Let his habitation become desolate, and let not one dwelling be in it (ULT)**  
**May his home become empty, with no one living in it (UST)**

The word **habitation** likely refers to Judas’ home and is a metaphor for his family line. Alternate translation: “May he leave no descendants, none to continue his family line” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Let another take his overseership (ULT)**  
**Let someone else take over his work as a leader (UST)**

The word **overseership** refers to a position of leadership and supervision. It is the same term that Paul uses for a spiritual leader in [1 Timothy 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “Let someone else take his leadership position”

**Let another take his overseership (ULT)**  
**Let someone else take over his work as a leader (UST)**

If your language does not use the third-person imperative in this way, you can state this in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “May another take his overseership” or “Another should take his overseership” (See: [Third-Person Imperatives](#))

**Let another take his overseership (ULT)**  
**Let someone else take over his work as a leader (UST)**

This is an imperative, but it communicates a request rather than a command. The psalmist is continuing God to judge and punish the wicked. Use a form in your language that communicates a request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as “please” to make this clear. Alternate translation: “Please let another take his overseership” or “Please may another take his overseership” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

## **Let another take his overseership (ULT)**

## **Let someone else take over his work as a leader (UST)**

It may be more natural in your language to use the second person for this imperative. Alternate translation: “God, make another take his overseership” or “God, please give his overseership to another” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [it is written](#)
- [desolate](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [what we read](#)
- [empty](#)

## Acts 1:21

To help your readers understand Peter's main point in this verse and the next one, you could combine both verses into a verse bridge. You could put his main point in a first sentence and his further explanation in a second sentence. Alternate translation: "Therefore it is necessary for someone else to become a witness with us of Jesus' resurrection. It should be one of the men who accompanied us during all the time that the Lord Jesus came in and went out among us, beginning from the baptism of John until the day that he was taken up from us." (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

**us...us (ULT)**

**us...us (UST)**

In the first instance of **us**, Peter means himself and his fellow apostles, not everyone to whom he is speaking, so use the exclusive form of the word if your language marks that distinction. However, in the second instance of **us**, Peter could well mean himself and his entire audience, so use the inclusive form in that instance. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**the Lord Jesus came in and went out among us (ULT)**

**the Lord Jesus was with us (UST)**

Peter is speaking in an idiomatic way. Alternate translation: "the Lord Jesus lived among us" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the time](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the...time](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Therefore it is necessary, of the men who accompanied us during all [the time](#) in which the [Lord Jesus](#) came in and went out among us,

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> "So we need to identify all the men who were with us during the whole [time](#) when the [Lord Jesus](#) was with us.



## **Acts 1:22**

**beginning from the baptism of John (ULT)**  
**They need to have been with us} from the**  
**time when John the Baptizer began his work**  
**(UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **baptism**, you could express the same idea with a verb such as “baptize.” Alternate translation: “beginning from when John started baptizing people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**of John (ULT)**  
**John the Baptizer (UST)**

**John** is the name of a man. Peter means the man who was known as John the Baptist. See how you translated his name in 1:5. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the day on which (ULT)**  
**the day when (UST)**

While Jesus was taken up to heaven on a specific **day**, Peter may be using the word **day** idiomatically to mean a specific time. Alternate translation: “the time when” (See: [Idiom](#))

**he was taken up...of his resurrection (ULT)**  
**Jesus left...and rose up to heaven...and how God caused him to live again**  
**after he died (UST)**

The pronoun **he** refers to Jesus, not to John the Baptist. The pronoun **his** also refers to Jesus. For clarity, you may want to use the name Jesus instead of one or both of these pronouns. Alternate translation: “Jesus was taken up ... the resurrection of Jesus” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**he was taken up from us (ULT)**  
**Jesus left us and rose up to heaven (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “God took him up from us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**from us...with us (ULT)**  
**us...must {replace Judas and} join us (UST)**

When Peter says **from us**, he is referring to God taking Jesus from everyone to whom he is speaking. But when Peter says **with us**, he means only himself and the other apostles. So the word “us” would be inclusive in the first instance and exclusive in the second instance, if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> beginning from the [baptism of John](#) until the [day](#) on which he was taken up from us—one of these {is} to become a [witness](#) with us of his [resurrection](#).”

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> {They need to have been with us} from [the time when John the Baptizer began his work](#) until the [day](#) when Jesus left us and rose up to heaven. One such man must {replace Judas and} join us [in telling people about Jesus and how God caused him to live again after he died](#).”



**one of these (ULT)****One such man (UST)**

Peter is using the demonstrative adjective **these** as a noun to refer to specific people, the men whose qualifications he has just described. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could add the term "men" to clarify the meaning. Alternate translation: "one of these men is" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**of his resurrection (ULT)****and how God caused him to live again after he died (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **resurrection**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as "alive." Alternate translation: "that God made him alive again after he died" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [baptism](#)
- [of John](#)
- [day](#)
- [a witness](#)
- [of...resurrection](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the time when...began his work](#)
- [John the Baptizer](#)
- [day](#)
- [in telling people about Jesus](#)
- [and how God caused...to live again after he died](#)



## **Acts 1:23**

**they stood up two (ULT)**  
**the people who were meeting together**  
**suggested two men who could replace Judas**  
**(UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to all of the believers who were present on this occasion. This is the group that Luke describes as “the brothers” in 1:15. Alternate translation: “the believers stood up two” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**they stood up two (ULT)**  
**the people who were meeting together**  
**suggested two men who could replace Judas (UST)**

Luke is using the adjective **two** as a noun to refer to specific people, two men who met the qualifications Peter described. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could add the term “men” to clarify the meaning, and you could also describe these men more specifically. Alternate translation: “the believers stood up two men” or “the believers stood up two men who met the qualifications that Peter described” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**they stood up two (ULT)**  
**the people who were meeting together suggested two men who could**  
**replace Judas (UST)**

When the believers **stood up** these two men, that is, when they had them stand up within the group, this was a symbolic way of proposing them as candidates to replace Judas. Alternate translation: “the believers proposed two men who met the qualifications that Peter described” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Joseph...Barsabbas...Justus (ULT)**  
**One man was Joseph...the son of Sabbas...Justus (UST)**

**Joseph** is the name of a man, and **Barsabbas** and **Justus** are two other names by which he was known. **Barsabbas** is probably a patronymic, that is, an indication of who his father was. If your language and culture identify people by patronymics, it may be helpful to translate this name as “the son of Sabbas,” as UST does. **Justus** is a Roman name, and it may be a name that this man used for official purposes and in interactions with people who spoke Latin. (It would be like the name Paul, by which Saul of Tarsus was also known in the Roman Empire.) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**called Barsabbas, who was named Justus (ULT)**  
**the son of Sabbas, who also had the name Justus (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say both of these things with active forms. Alternate translation: “whom people called Barsabbas and whose other name was Justus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> And they stood up two, Joseph, **called** Barsabbas, who **was named** Justus, and Matthias.

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> So the people who were meeting together suggested two men who could replace Judas. One man was Joseph **the son of Sabbas**, who **also had the name** Justus. The other man was Matthias.

## **Matthias (ULT)**

### **The...man was Matthias (UST)**

**Matthias** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- called
- was named

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- the son of Sabbas
- also had the name



## **Acts 1:24**

Judas betrayed Jesus and abandoned his position as an apostle. The person who is praying says that in the next verse. As a result, the believers are asking God to show them whom he has chosen to replace Judas, as the person praying says in this verse. You could put the reason before the result by creating a verse bridge. UST provides a model for doing that. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

### praying, they said (ULT)

Together the words **praying** and **said** indicate that the believers said what they did while praying. Alternate translation: “they said in prayer” or “they prayed” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### praying, they said (ULT)

The pronoun **they** refers to all of the believers, but one of the apostles alone probably spoke these words on behalf of everyone.

Alternate translation: “as the believers were all praying together, one of the apostles said” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### You, Lord, heart-knower of all (ULT)

Alternate translation: “You, Lord, who know the hearts of all people”

### You, Lord, heart-knower of all (ULT)

Here, the **heart** figuratively represents the thoughts and motives. Alternate translation: “You, Lord, who know the thoughts and motives of all people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### You, Lord (ULT)

The word **you** is singular because the person who is praying is addressing God. If your language has a formal form of “you” that it uses to address a superior respectfully, you may wish to use that form in your translation. However, it might be more natural in your language for someone who has a good, close relationship with God to address God using the informal form of “you.” Use your best judgment about what form to use here. (See: [Forms of ‘You’ — Formal or Informal](#) )

### which one from these two you have chosen (ULT)

The person who is praying is using the adjective **two** as a noun to refer to specific people, the two men whom the believers have proposed. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could add the term “men” to clarify the meaning. Alternate translation: “which one of these two men” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [praying](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [you have chosen](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And [praying](#), they said, “You, [Lord](#), heart-knower of all, show which one from these two [you have chosen](#)

#### UST

<sup>24-25</sup> Then they prayed: “Lord Jesus, Judas stopped representing you as he should have. He has now gone to the place where he deserves to be. You know what every person thinks privately. So please show us which of these two men you have chosen to take the place of Judas as your Representative.”



## Translation Words - UST

- chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- pray, prayer

## Acts 1:25

### to take this place of ministry and apostleship (ULT)

The person who is praying is expressing a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **apostleship** identifies what kind of **ministry** this is. Alternate translation: “to take this place of apostolic ministry” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### from which Judas turned aside (ULT)

The expression **turned aside** figuratively means that Judas stopped performing this ministry. Alternate translation: “which Judas stopped fulfilling” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to go to his own place (ULT)

This phrase uses a mild expression to describe Judas’ death and likely also his judgment after death. Alternate translation: “and died under God’s judgment as a result” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of ministry](#)
- [apostleship](#)
- [Judas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [apostle, apostleship](#)
- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [Judas Iscariot](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> to take this place [of ministry](#) and [apostleship](#) from which [Judas](#) turned aside to go to his own place.”

### UST

<sup>24-25</sup> Then they prayed: “Lord Jesus, Judas stopped representing you as he should have. He has now gone to the place where he deserves to be. You know what every person thinks privately. So please show us which of these two men you have chosen to take the place of Judas as your Representative.”



## **Acts 1:26**

## And (ULT) Then (UST)

Luke uses the word translated **And** to introduce what the believers did as a result of Peter's speech. Alternate translation: "So" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

## they cast lots for them (ULT) they cast lots to choose between the two of them (UST)

The pronoun **they** refers to the believers and the pronoun **them** refers to Joseph and Matthias. You may want to specify that for clarity. (But if you decide to retain the pronoun **them** and if your language marks the dual form, **them** would be dual because it refers to those two men.) Alternate translation: "the believers cast lots to decide between Joseph and Matthias" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## they cast lots for them (ULT) they cast lots to choose between the two of them (UST)

The term **lots** describes objects with various markings on different sides that were used, most likely by dropping them on the ground, to select between possibilities. The belief was that God would control which way these objects fell and so guide the selection process. Alternate translation: "they threw marked objects on the ground, trusting that God would use these to guide them whether to choose Joseph or Matthias" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## the lot fell to Matthias (ULT) The lot indicated that Matthias was the one to replace Judas (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "the lot selected Matthias" (See: [Idiom](#))

## he was chosen together (ULT) he became a Representative (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the believers chose him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [lots](#)
- [lot](#)
- [the 11 apostles](#)
- [apostles](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [lots](#)
- [lot](#)
- [the 11 others](#)

## ULT

<sup>26</sup> And they cast [lots](#) for them, and the [lot](#) fell to Matthias, and he was chosen together with [the 11 apostles](#).

## UST

<sup>26</sup> Then they cast [lots](#) to choose between the two of them. The [lot](#) indicated that Matthias was the one to replace Judas. So he became a Representative along with [the 11 others](#).

- [others](#)

## Acts 2

### Acts 2 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set lines of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 2:17–21, 25–28, and 34–35.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the material that is quoted in 2:31.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Pentecost

The events described in this chapter took place on the day of Pentecost. That was a festival that the Jews observed each year 50 days after Passover. It was a harvest festival that celebrated the first produce from the fields. That produce was known as “firstfruits.” Many people believe that the church began to exist when the Holy Spirit came to live inside believers on this particular day of Pentecost. Those believers were the “firstfruits” of all those who would become part of the church down through the years.

##### Tongues

Luke uses the Greek word “tongues” to mean two different things in this chapter. In 2:3, Luke describes what came down from heaven as “tongues as if of fire.” A “tongue of fire” means a “flame of fire” (as in Isaiah 5:24, for example), so this means “something like flames of fire.” In 2:4, Luke uses the word “tongues” in the different sense of “languages” to describe the languages that the people spoke after the Holy Spirit filled them. For clarity, ULT translates the use in 2:3 as “tongues” and the use in 2:4 as “languages.”

##### Last days

In 2:17–21, Peter quotes a prophecy from Joel that describes something that will happen in the “last days.” Some scholars understand the “last days” to mean a time in the future just before Jesus returns. Other scholars understand the “last days” to mean the entire time from when Jesus first came to when he will return. Translators should be careful not to let how they understand this issue affect how they translate this expression where it occurs in 2:17. It may be best not to say more about this than ULT does. (See: [last day, latter days](#))

##### The prophecy of Joel

In 2:17–21, Peter quotes a prophecy of Joel about what would happen in the “last days.” Some of the things that prophecy describes did happen on the day of Pentecost, for example, the pouring out of the Spirit (2:17–18). Some other things did not happen, at least not literally, for example, the sun turning to darkness (2:20). Depending on how scholars understand the “last days,” they may say either that these other things await a literal future fulfillment or that they were fulfilled in some spiritual sense on the day of Pentecost. Once again it may be best not to say any more than ULT does and to allow preachers and teachers of the Bible to interpret and explain the meaning of Peter’s statement in 2:16, “this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel.” (See: [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#))

## Baptize

In this chapter, the word “baptize” refers to water baptism as an expression of faith in Jesus for the forgiveness of sins. That is how Luke uses the term in 2:38 and 2:41. Jesus did promise the disciples in 1:5 that they would be baptized in the Holy Spirit, and the events that Luke describes in 2:1-11 are the fulfillment of that promise. But Luke does not use the word “baptize” to describe those events in this chapter. (See: [baptize](#), [baptized](#), [baptism](#))

## Wonders and signs

These words refer to things that only God could do that showed that Jesus was who the disciples said he was. See the notes to this expression in 2:43.

## Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### “You killed” (2:23)

The Romans were the ones who killed Jesus, but they killed him because the Jews captured him, brought him to the Romans, and urged the Romans to kill him. For this reason Peter tells the people in the crowd on the day of Pentecost that they were guilty of killing Jesus. See the note to this phrase in 2:23 for suggestions about how to make clear in your translation what Peter means when he says this.

## Long sentences

There is a long sentence that goes from the beginning of 2:9 to the end of 2:11. ULT represents all of it as a single sentence. It may be helpful to your readers to divide it into several sentences, as UST does.

There is also a long sentence that goes from the beginning of 2:44 to the end of 2:47. Once again it may be helpful to your readers to divide it into several sentences, as UST does.

## Poetry

The quotations from the Old Testament in 2:17–21, 25–28, and 34–35 are poetry. For advice about how to represent this literary form in your translation, see: [Poetry](#).





## **Acts 2:1**

## And when the day of Pentecost was completely filled (ULT)

Luke uses this time reference to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

## when the day of Pentecost was completely filled (ULT) On the day when the Jews were celebrating the Pentecost festival (UST)

This is an idiomatic way of speaking about time. Alternate translation: “when the day of Pentecost had come” or, if your language does not speak of days “coming,” “on the day of Pentecost” (See: [Idiom](#))

## when the day of Pentecost was completely filled (ULT) On the day when the Jews were celebrating the Pentecost festival (UST)

Since this is an idiom, it would probably not be meaningful in most languages to use an active form of the verb “fill” in place of the passive form of that verb here. However, if your language does speak of someone or something “filling” days or times so that they arrive, but your language does not use passive verbal forms, you could use an active form of “fill” here. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the day of Pentecost (ULT) the day...the Pentecost festival (UST)

**Pentecost** is the name of a festival. It occurs 50 days after Passover. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## they were all together (ULT) the believers were all together (UST)

Here the word **they** refers to the apostles and the other 120 believers whom Luke mentions in [1:15](#). Alternate translation: “the apostles and all the other believers were together” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

## to the same (ULT) in one place {in the city of Jerusalem (UST)

See the discussion of this phrase in Part 3 of the Introduction to Acts. Alternate translation: “in the same place” or “in united Christian fellowship”

## Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)
- [of Pentecost](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And when the [day of Pentecost](#) was completely filled, they were all together to the same.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> On the [day](#) when the Jews were celebrating the [Pentecost festival](#), the believers were all together in one place {in the city of Jerusalem}.

## Translation Words - UST

- day
- Pentecost festival



## **Acts 2:2**

**from heaven (ULT)**  
**from the sky (UST)**

The word translated **heaven** could mean: (1) “the sky.” Alternate translation: “from the sky” (2) the sound came from **heaven** itself.

**as of a strong wind being borne along (ULT)**  
**that sounded like a wind blowing loudly (UST)**

Luke is using a simile to describe what this wind was like. You could use the same simile in your translation, or you could use a different comparison, to a similar loud sound that your readers would recognize. It may be helpful to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “It sounded like a strong wind being borne along” (See: [Simile](#))

**a strong wind being borne along (ULT)**  
**a wind blowing loudly (UST)**

Luke speaks figuratively of the wind as if it were being carried through the air. Alternate translation: “a mighty, rushing wind” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**it filled the whole house (ULT)**  
**Everyone in the entire house...heard the noise (UST)**

Luke speaks figuratively of this sound as if it **filled** the **house**. Alternate translation: “it could be heard throughout the house” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the whole house (ULT)**  
**in the entire house (UST)**

Luke may be using the word translated **house** in one of its specific senses to mean a building. So this could have been either a private home or a larger building. Alternate translation: “the entire building”

**where they were sitting (ULT)**  
**where they were sitting (UST)**

Luke may be using the term **sitting** idiomatically to mean “meeting.” Alternate translation: “in which they were meeting” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heaven](#)
- [as of](#)
- [house](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [sky](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> And suddenly a sound came from [heaven](#), [as of](#) a strong wind being borne along, and it filled the whole [house](#) where they were sitting.

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> Suddenly, they heard a noise coming from the [sky that sounded like](#) a wind blowing loudly. Everyone in the entire [house](#) where they were sitting heard the noise.

- that sounded like
- house



## Acts 2:3

### tongues as if of fire (ULT) what looked like burning flames (UST)

This phrase means “something like tongues of fire,” and a “tongue of fire” means a “flame of fire.” (The expression is used with that meaning in [Isaiah 5:24](#), for example.) This is not a simile. Luke is describing what these objects looked like. Alternate translation: “objects that looked like flames of fire”

### distributing themselves (ULT) These flames separated from one another (UST)

This means that the objects that looked like flames of fire spread out so that there was one on each person. Alternate translation: “spreading around”

### they sat upon each one of them (ULT) came to rest on each of the believers (UST)

The pronoun **they** refers to the objects, and the pronoun **them** refers to the disciples. Alternate translation: “one of the objects sat upon each one of the disciples” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### they sat upon each one of them (ULT) came to rest on each of the believers (UST)

Luke is using the word **sat** figuratively to indicate that the objects remained in one place once they had spread around. Alternate translation: “one of the objects remained on each one of the disciples” (See: [Metaphor](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [tongues](#)
- [as if](#)
- [of fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [what looked like](#)
- [burning](#)
- [flames](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And [tongues as if of fire](#) appeared to them, distributing themselves, and they sat upon each one of them.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Then they saw [what looked like burning flames](#). These flames separated from one another and came to rest on each of the believers.



## **Acts 2:4**

**they were all filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)**  
**all of the believers were filled with the Holy Spirit (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit filled them all” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were all filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)**  
**all of the believers were filled with the Holy Spirit (UST)**

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> And [they were](#) all filled with the Holy Spirit, and they began to speak in other languages, as the Spirit was giving them to speak out.

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> Then all of the believers [were filled with the Holy Spirit](#). They began to speak [in languages](#) they had never learned. The Spirit was making it possible for them to do that fluently.

Luke is speaking figuratively as if the believers were containers that the Holy Spirit **filled**. Alternate translation: “they were all inspired by the Holy Spirit” or “the Holy Spirit inspired them all” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they began to speak in other languages (ULT)**  
**They began to speak in languages they had never learned (UST)**

Luke is using the word **began** to indicate that the disciples had been doing something else (speaking in their own languages) but then began to do something new when the Holy Spirit filled them. It might not be necessary to translate the word **began**, since it may seem to convey redundant information that would be not be natural to express in your language. Alternate translation: “they spoke in other languages” (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

**they began to speak in other languages (ULT)**  
**They began to speak in languages they had never learned (UST)**

The implication, as [2:6-11](#) makes clear, is that the disciples were speaking languages that they did not know. Alternate translation: “they began to speak in languages that they did not know” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**as the Spirit was giving them to speak out (ULT)**  
**The Spirit was making it possible for them to do that fluently (UST)**

Here, **giving** has the sense of enabling. Alternate translation: “as the Spirit was enabling them to speak out”

**as the Spirit was giving them to speak out (ULT)**  
**The Spirit was making it possible for them to do that fluently (UST)**

The word translated **to speak out** means to speak clearly and articulately. To express this meaning, it may be helpful to make this a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “The Spirit was enabling them to speak these languages clearly and articulately”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they were...filled](#)
- [with the Holy Spirit](#)

- Spirit
- in...languages

## Translation Words - UST

- were filled
- with the Holy Spirit
- Spirit
- in languages

## Acts 2:5

### Now (ULT)

### At that time (UST)

Luke uses the word **Now** to introduce background information that will help readers understand what happens next. You can translate it with a word or phrase that serves the same purpose in your language. (See: [Connect — Background Information](#) )

### godly men (ULT)

### They were Jewish people who sincerely worshiped God (UST)

Luke is using the term **men** in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “godly people” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### every nation (ULT)

### many different countries (UST)

The word **every** is a generalization that emphasizes that the people came from many different nations. Alternate translation: “many different nations” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### under heaven (ULT)

### around the world (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “on earth” (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [nation](#)
- [heaven](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [many Jews](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [countries](#)
- [around the world](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Now there were [Jews](#) living in [Jerusalem](#), godly men, from every [nation](#) of those under [heaven](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> At that time [many Jews](#) were staying in [Jerusalem](#) {to celebrate the Pentecost festival}. They were Jewish people who sincerely worshiped God. They had come from many different [countries](#) [around the world](#).

## Acts 2:6

### was confused (ULT)

### The people in the crowd were amazed (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say what did the action. Alternate translation: “what they heard confused them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### each one was hearing them speaking in his own language (ULT)

### they were each hearing the believers speak in their own languages (UST)

The pronoun **them** refers to the believers and the pronoun **his** refers to each person in the multitude. Alternate translation: “each person in the multitude could hear one of the disciples speaking in that person’s own language” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sound](#)
- [came together](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [loud noise](#)
- [gathered {at the place where the believers were}](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And when this [sound](#) happened, the multitude [came together](#) and was confused, because each one was hearing them speaking in his own language.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> When they heard this [loud noise](#), a large crowd {of these Jews} [gathered {at the place where the believers were}](#). The people in the crowd were amazed because they were each hearing the believers speak in their own languages.





## **Acts 2:7**

**they were...amazed...and were marveling (ULT)**

**They were...completely amazed...They were...completely amazed (UST)**

The terms **amazed** and **marveling** mean similar things. Luke may be using the two terms together for emphasis. Alternate translation: "they were ... greatly amazed" (See: [Doublet](#))

**they were...amazed...all...and were marveling (ULT)**

**They were...completely amazed...They were...all...completely amazed (UST)**

The expression **were ... amazed** is not a passive verbal form. However, if your language does not use passive forms, it might be helpful to your readers to use an expression that does not seem to be a passive verbal form. Alternate translation: "this amazed all of them and they were marveling" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Behold (ULT)**

**Listen (UST)**

**Behold** is an expression that speakers use to focus the attention of their listeners on what they are about to say. Though it literally means "look" or "see," the term can be used figuratively to get people to pay attention. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use here in your translation. Alternate translation: "In fact" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**not...are...all these who are speaking Galileans (ULT)**

**have come from...all these people who are speaking...have come from...Galilee. {So they cannot possibly know our languages (UST)}**

The speakers are not looking for information. They are using the question form to express their amazement. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate their words as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "all of these people who are speaking are Galileans!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Galileans (ULT)**

**Galilee. {So they cannot possibly know our languages (UST)}**

See how you translated the name **Galileans** in [1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [they were...amazed](#)
- [were marveling](#)
- [Galileans](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [They were...completely amazed](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And [they were](#) all [amazed](#) and [were marveling](#), saying, "Behold, are not all these who are speaking [Galileans](#)?"

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [They were](#) all [completely amazed](#), and they said to each other, "Listen, all these people who are speaking have come from [Galilee](#). {[So they cannot possibly know our languages!](#)}

- They were...completely amazed
- Galilee. {So they cannot possibly know our languages

## Acts 2:8

### And how are we hearing, each in our own language in which we were born (ULT)

The speakers do not expect someone to be able to answer this question for them. Rather, they are using the question form to express their amazement. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you can translate their words as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "So we should not each be hearing them speak in our own languages in which we were born!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And how are we hearing, each in our own language in which we were born?

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> But all of us hear them speaking our own native languages!

### And (ULT)

### But (UST)

The speakers are using the word translated **And** to introduce the results of what the previous sentence described. Alternate translation: "So" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### how are we hearing, each (ULT)

Your language may require you to specify the object of **hearing**. Alternate translation: "how are we each hearing them speak" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### we...our (ULT)

### of us...our (UST)

The speakers are using the words **we** and **our** to refer to themselves and to their listeners, so use the inclusive forms of those words if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### in which we were born (ULT)

### native (UST)

The speakers say figuratively that they **were born** in these languages to mean that they learned them from birth. Alternate translation: "that we learned from birth" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### in which we were born (ULT)

### native (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. However, since this is a metaphor, it would be preferable to use another expression to explain its meaning, rather than to say something like "in which our mothers gave birth to us." Alternate translation: "that we learned from birth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Acts 2:9****Parthians...Medes...Elamites (ULT)  
Some of us are people from the regions of  
Parthia...Media...Elam (UST)**

These are names of three people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Mesopotamia, Judea...Cappadocia, Pontus...  
Asia (ULT)  
of Mesopotamia, Judea...Cappadocia, Pontus...  
Asia (UST)**

These are names of five areas. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Medes](#)
- [Elamites](#)
- [Mesopotamia](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Pontus](#)
- [Asia](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Media](#)
- [Elam](#)
- [Mesopotamia](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Pontus](#)
- [Asia](#)

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> Parthians and [Medes](#) and [Elamites](#), and those inhabiting [Mesopotamia](#), [Judea](#) and also Cappadocia, [Pontus](#) and [Asia](#),

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> Some of us are people from the regions of Parthia and [Media](#) and [Elam](#). Others of us are from the regions of [Mesopotamia](#), [Judea](#), Cappadocia, [Pontus](#), and [Asia](#).

**Acts 2:10**

**Phrygia...Pamphylia, Egypt...of Libya (ULT)**  
**There are some people here from the regions of Phrygia...Pamphylia, from the country of Egypt...Libya (UST)**

These are names of four areas. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Cyrene (ULT)**  
**the city of Cyrene (UST)**

**Cyrene** is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Romans visiting (ULT)**  
**There are...of us who are here visiting Jerusalem from Rome (UST)**

Here, **Romans** is a name for people who are from the city of Rome. Alternate translation: “visitors from Rome” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Egypt](#)
- [Cyrene](#)
- [Romans](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [from the country of Egypt](#)
- [the city of Cyrene](#)
- [from Rome](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> Phrygia and also Pamphylia, [Egypt](#) and the parts of Libya that {are} near [Cyrene](#), and [Romans](#) visiting,

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> There are some people here from the regions of Phrygia and Pamphylia, [from the country of Egypt](#), and from the regions in Libya that are near [the city of Cyrene](#). There are others of us who are here visiting Jerusalem [from Rome](#).

## Acts 2:11

### both Jews and proselytes (ULT)

**They include native Jews as well as non-Jews who have chosen to believe and practice what Jews believe (UST)**

The term **proselytes** describes converts to the Jewish religion. The phrase **both Jews and proselytes** could apply specifically to the visitors from Rome mentioned at the end of the previous verse, or it could apply to the whole list of people in 2:9-11. Alternate translation: "both Jews and converts to the Jewish religion"

### Cretans...Arabians (ULT)

**And others of us are from the island of Crete... from the region of Arabia (UST)**

These are names of two people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### in...tongues (ULT)

**languages (UST)**

As in 2:4, here the word **tongues** has the specific sense of "languages." Alternate translation: "languages"

### the great things of God (ULT)

**about the mighty works that God has done (UST)**

The speakers are using the adjective **great** as a noun. (The term is plural; ULT adds **things** to show this.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "the great things that God has done" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [Cretans](#)
- [Arabians](#)
- [in...tongues](#)
- [of God](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [They include native Jews](#)
- [And others of us are from the island of Crete](#)
- [from the region of Arabia](#)
- [languages](#)
- [that God has done](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> both [Jews](#) and proselytes, [Cretans](#) and [Arabians](#), we are hearing them speaking in our [tongues](#) the great things [of God](#)."

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [They include native Jews](#) as well as non-Jews who have chosen to believe and practice what Jews believe. [And others of us are from the island of Crete and from the region of Arabia](#). And yet we can hear these people speaking in all our different [languages](#) about the mighty works [that God has done!](#)"

**Acts 2:12**

**they were...amazed...all...and were perplexed (ULT)**

**wondered {about what was happening...The people...and did not know what to think {about it (UST)**

The words **amazed** and **perplexed** mean similar things. Luke is using them together to emphasize that the people could not understand what was happening. Alternate translation: "they were very perplexed" (See: [Doublet](#))

**they were...amazed...all...and were perplexed...saying (ULT)**

**wondered {about what was happening...The people...and did not know what to think {about it...So they asked (UST)**

These are not passive verbal forms. However, if your language does not use passive forms, it might be helpful to your readers to use an expression that does not seem to be a passive verbal form. Alternate translation: "this amazed and perplexed all of them, and they said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**What does this want to be (ULT)**

**What is happening here (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "What is the explanation for this" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they were...amazed](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [wondered {about what was happening](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> So [they were](#) all [amazed](#) and were perplexed, saying one to another, "What does this want to be?"

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> The people [wondered {about what was happening}](#) and did not know what to think {about it}. So they asked one another, "What is happening here?"



## Acts 2:13

### They are filled with sweet wine (ULT) they have drunk too much wine (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. However, it would be preferable to use an equivalent expression that conveys the meaning rather than to say something like "sweet wine has filled them." Alternate translation: "They have drunk their fill of sweet wine" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### They are filled with sweet wine (ULT) they have drunk too much wine (UST)

The implications of this statement are that the disciples have gotten drunk and are babbling and that this is the explanation for the languages the people think they are hearing. Alternate translation: "They have gotten drunk on sweet wine, and so what we are hearing is just drunken babbling" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### with sweet wine (ULT) wine (UST)

This refers to wine that is thicker and more intoxicating than ordinary wine. If your readers would not be familiar with this drink, you could use the name of another strong drink that they would recognize, or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: "with strong liquor" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [mocking](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [made fun of what they saw](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But others, [mocking](#), were saying, "They are filled with sweet wine."

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> But some of them [made fun of what they saw](#). They said, "{These people are talking like this because} they have drunk too much wine!"



## **Acts 2:14**

**But Peter, having stood with the eleven,  
raised up his voice (ULT)  
In response, Peter stood up with all the other  
Representatives and spoke loudly (UST)**

Peter **stood** to show that he had something important to say, and the other apostles **stood** with him to show their support for him as he spoke. You could indicate that in your translation, perhaps as a separate sentence, if it would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: “But Peter stood up to show that he had something important to say, and the other apostles stood with him to show their support for him as he spoke. Peter raised up his voice” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**the eleven (ULT)  
all the other Representatives (UST)**

Luke is using the adjective **eleven** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “the other 11 apostles” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**raised up his voice and spoke out to them (ULT)**

The idiom **raised up his voice** means that Peter spoke loudly. Alternate translation: “spoke out to them in a loud voice” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Men, Jews (ULT)  
You Jewish people (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: “My fellow Jews” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Men, Jews (ULT)  
You Jewish people (UST)**

Peter is using the term **men** in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you retain the idiomatic form of address in your translation, follow the convention in your language that indicates a mixed group of people. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**all who are inhabiting Jerusalem (ULT)  
all of you others who live here in Jerusalem (UST)**

This seems to mean implicitly people who are not Jews but who live in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “all of you non-Jews who are residents of Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> But **Peter**, having stood with the **eleven**, raised up his **voice** and spoke out to them, “Men, **Jews**, and all who are inhabiting **Jerusalem**, let this be known to you, and take my words into your ears.

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> In response, **Peter** stood up with **all the other Representatives and spoke loudly** to the crowd of people. He said, “You **Jewish people** and all of you others who live here **in Jerusalem**, listen to me and I will explain to you what is happening!

**let this be known to you (ULT)**  
**I will explain to you what is happening (UST)**

This expression means that Peter wants to explain the meaning of what the people are seeing and hearing. Alternate translation: “let me explain this to you” or “I am going to explain this to you”

**let this be known to you (ULT)**  
**I will explain to you what is happening (UST)**

If your language does not use the third-person imperative in this way, you can state this in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “may this be known to you” or “this should be known to you” (See: [Third-Person Imperatives](#))

**let this be known to you (ULT)**  
**I will explain to you what is happening (UST)**

The word translated **known** is an adjective, so this is not a passive verbal form. However, if your language does not use passive forms, it might be clearer for your readers if you use an expression that does not seem to be a passive verbal form. The adjective **known** expresses the result of action by a different agent (**you**), so you can use an active form with that agent as the implied subject. Alternate translation: “know this” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**and (ULT)**

Peter uses the word translated **and** to indicate what his listeners should do as a result of what he has just told them. Alternate translation: “so” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**take my words into your ears (ULT)**  
**listen to me (UST)**

Peter is using the term **words** figuratively to mean what he is about to say by using words, and he is using the term **ears** figuratively to mean the capacity for listening. Alternate translation: “listen carefully to what I am about to say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)
- [eleven](#)
- [voice](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)
- [all...other Representatives](#)
- [and spoke loudly](#)
- [Jewish people](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)



## **Acts 2:15**

**For (ULT)**

Peter says **for** in this first instance to introduce the reason why the crowd should listen to him. Alternate translation: “You should listen to me because” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**these (ULT)****we (UST)**

The demonstrative pronoun **these** refers to the disciples who are speaking different languages. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could add more information to clarify the meaning. Alternate translation: “these people who are speaking different languages” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**for (ULT)**

Peter says **for** in this second instance to introduce the reason why the people speaking different languages are not drunk. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “They are not drunk, because” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**it is...the third hour of the day (ULT)****It is...only nine o'clock in the morning{, and people here never get drunk at this time of the day (UST)**

In this culture, people began counting the hours each day beginning around daybreak at six o'clock in the morning. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express this in the way the people of your culture reckon time. Alternate translation: “it is nine o'clock in the morning”

**it is...the third hour of the day (ULT)****It is...only nine o'clock in the morning{, and people here never get drunk at this time of the day (UST)**

Peter assumes that his listeners will know that people do not get drunk that early in the day. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “it is only nine o'clock in the morning, and people do not get drunk that early” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) )

**the third hour of the day (ULT)****only nine o'clock in the morning{, and people here never get drunk at this time of the day (UST)**

If you decide to translate this in the way that the biblical culture reckoned time, but your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here. Alternate translation: “hour three of the day” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) )

**Translation Words - ULT**

- are...drunk
- as

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> For these are not drunk as you are assuming, for it is the third hour of the day.

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> Some of you think that we are drunk, but we are not drunk. It is only nine o'clock in the morning{, and people here never get drunk at this time of the day}!



- the...hour
- of...day

## Translation Words - UST

- Some of you
- are drunk, but we are...drunk
- only nine o'clock in the morning{, and people here never get drunk at this time of the day
- only nine o'clock in the morning...and people here never get drunk at this time of the day

**Acts 2:16**

**this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel (ULT)  
 what has happened to us is the {miraculous} thing that the prophet Joel wrote about {long ago}. He wrote (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who did the action. Alternate translation: "this is what God said through the prophet Joel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>16</sup> But this is what was spoken through the [prophet](#) Joel:

**UST**

<sup>16</sup> Instead, what has happened to us is the {miraculous} thing that the [prophet](#) Joel wrote about {long ago}. He wrote:

**this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel (ULT)  
 what has happened to us is the {miraculous} thing that the prophet Joel wrote about {long ago}. He wrote (UST)**

The implication is that God is now making happen what he said through Joel. Alternate translation: "you are seeing God make happen what he announced earlier through the prophet Joel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [prophet](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [prophet](#)



## **Acts 2:17**

## And it will be in the last days," God says, "I will pour out from my Spirit on all flesh (ULT)

The material in [2:17–21](#) contains a quotation within a quotation within a quotation. Luke is quoting Peter, Peter is quoting Joel, and Joel is quoting God. You could avoid having a third-level quotation by moving the phrase **God says** to before the quotation from Joel. (The phrase itself does not occur in the passage from Joel that Peter quotes. It appears to be something that Peter supplies within the quotation to show that God is the speaker. Since that is the case, putting it before the quotation would not change the actual biblical text.) Alternate translation: "God said, 'And it will be in the last days, I will pour out from my Spirit on all flesh'" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

## And it will be in the last days," God says, "I will pour out from my Spirit on all flesh (ULT)

You could also avoid having a second-level quotation by turning the direct quotation into an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "God said that in the last days he would pour out his Spirit on all flesh" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

## And it will be (ULT)

Alternate translation: "This is what will happen" or "This is what I will do"

## the last days (ULT)

## the last days (UST)

See the discussion of this phrase in the General Notes to this chapter, which recommend not interpreting or explaining it, but representing it simply as ULT does.

## I will pour out from my Spirit (ULT)

## I will give my Holy Spirit (UST)

God says figuratively that he will **pour out** his Spirit, as if the Spirit were a liquid, to mean that he will give the Spirit generously and abundantly. Alternate translation: "I will lavish my Spirit" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## on all flesh (ULT)

## to all kinds of people (UST)

God refers figuratively to **flesh** to mean people by association with the way that people are made of flesh. Alternate translation: "to all people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## and your sons and your daughters will prophesy and your young men will see visions and your old men will dream dreams (ULT)

If you have decided to turn Peter's quotation from Joel into an indirect quotation in order to avoid having a second-level quotation, also do that here in the rest of the verse. It may be helpful to make this a new sentence. Alternate

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> "And it will be in the [last days](#)," God says, "I will pour out from my [Spirit](#) on all [flesh](#), and your [sons](#) and your daughters [will prophesy](#) and your young men will see [visions](#) and your [old men will dream dreams](#)."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> 'During the [last days](#),' God says, 'I will give my [Holy Spirit](#) to all kinds of [people](#). Your [sons](#) and daughters [will tell people my messages](#). I will give [visions](#) to the young men, and I will give [inspired dreams](#) to the [old men](#).'

translation: "God said that our sons and our daughters would prophesy and our young men would see visions and our old men would dream dreams" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

## **your (ULT)**

## **Your (UST)**

If you turn the direct quotation into an indirect quotation and translate these instances of **your** as "our," use the inclusive form of the word "our" in each instance if your language marks that distinction, since Joel would be referring to himself and his listeners. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

## **young men...old men (ULT)**

## **to the young men...the old men (UST)**

God speaks separately of **sons** and **daughters** in this verse and of "male servants" and "female servants" in the next verse. But here the contrast is between **young** and **old**. So the word **men** could have a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: "young people ... old people" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [last days](#)
- [days](#)
- [dreams](#)
- [will dream](#)
- [God](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [sons](#)
- [will prophesy](#)
- [visions](#)
- [old men](#)

## **Translation Words - UST**

- [last days](#)
- [days](#)
- [old men](#)
- [God](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [people](#)
- [sons](#)
- [will tell people my messages](#)
- [I will give visions](#)
- [I will give inspired dreams to](#)
- [I will give inspired dreams to](#)

## Acts 2:18

### And even on my male servants and on my female servants in those days I will pour out from my Spirit, and they will prophesy (ULT)

You may have decided to turn Peter's quotation from Joel into an indirect quotation in order to avoid having a second-level quotation. Alternate translation: "God said that even on his male servants and on his female servants in those days he would pour out from his Spirit, and they would prophesy" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### on my male servants and on my female servants

If your language has masculine and feminine forms of the word "servant," it would be accurate to use those forms here. Other languages can indicate this distinction in other ways, as ULT does with the adjectives "male" and "female."

### in those days (ULT)

### During those days (UST)

Here, **days** idiomatically means a specific time. Alternate translation: "at that time" (See: [Idiom](#))

### on...on...I will pour out from my Spirit (ULT)

### to my servants, both men and women...to my servants, both men and women...I will give my Holy Spirit (UST)

See how you translated this in [2:17](#). Alternate translation: "to ... to ... I will give my Spirit abundantly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [male servants](#)
- [female servants](#)
- [days](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [they will prophesy](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [days](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [to my servants, both men and women](#)
- [to my servants, both men and women](#)
- [they can tell people my messages](#)

## ULT

<sup>18</sup> And even on my [male servants](#) and on my [female servants](#) in those [days](#) I will pour out from my [Spirit](#), and [they will prophesy](#).

## UST

<sup>18</sup> During those [days](#) I will give my [Holy Spirit](#) to my [servants, both men and women](#), so [they can tell people my messages](#).

## Acts 2:19

### And I will give (ULT)

You may have decided to turn Peter's quotation from Joel into an indirect quotation in order to avoid having a second-level quotation. Alternate translation: "God said that he would give" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### I will give wonders...And...signs (ULT)

Alternate translation: "I will show wonders ... and signs"

### in the heaven above (ULT) in the sky (UST)

Since God specifies in the next verse that these **wonders** will affect the sun and the moon, the word translated **heaven** likely has the specific sense of "sky." Alternate translation: "in the sky above"

### vapor of smoke (ULT)

### Here...there will be...smoke...everywhere (UST)

Here the possessive form describes **vapor** that looks smoky or that has **smoke** in it. Alternate translation: "smoky vapor" (See: [Possession](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [wonders](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [signs](#)
- [earth](#)
- [blood](#)
- [fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [things...that will make people marvel](#)
- [sky](#)
- [I will cause things to happen on the earth that will show that great events are going to take place](#)
- [earth](#)
- [blood](#)
- [fire](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And I will give [wonders](#) in the [heaven](#) above and [signs](#) on the [earth](#) below, [blood](#) and [fire](#) and vapor of smoke.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> I will cause [things](#) to happen in the [sky that will make people marvel](#). I will cause things to happen on the [earth that will show that great events are going to take place](#). Here on the [earth](#) there will be [blood](#), [fire](#), and smoke everywhere.





## **Acts 2:20**

**The sun will be turned to darkness, and the moon to blood before the great and remarkable day of the Lord comes (ULT)**  
**In the sky the sun will appear dark to people and the moon will appear red to them. Those things will happen before the momentous time when I, the Lord God, come to judge everyone (UST)**

You may have decided to turn Peter's quotation from Joel into an indirect quotation in order to avoid having a second-level quotation.

Alternate translation: "God said that sun would be turned to darkness, and the moon to blood before the great and remarkable day of the Lord came" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The sun will be turned to **darkness**, and the moon to **blood** before the great and remarkable **day of the Lord** comes.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> In the sky the sun will appear **dark** to people and the moon will appear **red** to them. Those things will happen before the momentous **time when I, the Lord God, come to judge everyone**.

**The sun will be turned to darkness (ULT)**  
**In the sky the sun will appear dark to people (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "I will turn the sun to darkness" or, if you are making this an indirect quotation, "God said that he would turn the sun to darkness" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**The sun will be turned to darkness (ULT)**  
**In the sky the sun will appear dark to people (UST)**

God is speaking figuratively as if he would change the **sun** into something else. Alternate translation: "The sun will become dark" or "The sun will no longer shine brightly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**The sun will be turned to darkness (ULT)**  
**In the sky the sun will appear dark to people (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **darkness**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as "dark." Alternate translation: "The sun will become dark" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**and the moon to blood (ULT)**  
**and the moon will appear red to them (UST)**

Here some words have been left out that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. You can supply these words from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: "and the moon will be turned to blood" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**and the moon to blood (ULT)**  
**and the moon will appear red to them (UST)**

If you decide to supply words as the previous note suggests, but your language does not use passive verbal forms, you can use an active form. Alternate translation: "and I will turn the moon to blood" or, if you are making this an indirect quotation, "and that he would turn the moon to blood" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**and the moon to blood (ULT)**  
**and the moon will appear red to them (UST)**

God is speaking figuratively as if he would change the **moon** into something else. Alternate translation: “and the moon will look like blood” or “and the moon will appear to be red” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**day...great and remarkable (ULT)**  
**time...the momentous (UST)**

The words **great** and **remarkable** mean similar things. They are being used together for emphasis. Alternate translation: “the very great day” or “the truly remarkable day” (See: [Doublet](#))

**day of the Lord comes (ULT)**  
**Those things will happen before...time when I, the Lord God, come to judge everyone (UST)**

This is an expression that many of the prophets use. It refers to the time when God will judge and punish people for their sins. Alternate translation: “the time when the Lord judges and punishes people for their sins” (See: [Idiom](#))

**day of the Lord comes (ULT)**  
**Those things will happen before...time when I, the Lord God, come to judge everyone (UST)**

In this expression, God is speaking of himself in the third person. If that would be confusing to your readers, you can use the first person in your translation. Alternate translation: “time arrives when I judge and punish people for their sins” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [darkness](#)
- [blood](#)
- [day](#)
- [day of the Lord](#)
- [of the Lord](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [dark](#)
- [red](#)
- [time](#)
- [time when I, the Lord God, come to judge everyone](#)
- [when I, the Lord God, come to judge everyone](#)



## **Acts 2:21**

**And it will be, everyone who may call on the name of the Lord will be saved (ULT)**  
**But even though I am coming to judge and punish sin, I will save all those who repent and ask me to forgive their sins (UST)**

You may have decided to turn Peter's quotation from Joel into an indirect quotation in order to avoid having a second-level quotation. Alternate translation: "And God said it would happen that everyone who called on the name of the Lord would be saved" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> And it will be, everyone who [may call on the name of the Lord will be saved.](#)"

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> But even though I am coming to judge and punish sin, [I will save all those who repent and ask me to forgive their sins.](#)"

**And it will be, everyone (ULT)**  
**But even though I am coming to judge and punish sin...all (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And this is what will happen: Everyone"

**everyone who may call on the name of the Lord will be saved (ULT)**  
**I will save all those who repent and ask me to forgive their sins (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "the Lord will save everyone who calls on his name" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**everyone who may call on (ULT)**  
**all those who repent and ask...to forgive their sins (UST)**

Here, **call on** is an idiom. Alternate translation: "everyone who may appeal to" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the name of the Lord (ULT)**  
**who repent and ask...me...to forgive their sins (UST)**

God is speaking of himself in the third person. If that would be confusing to your readers, you can use the first person in your translation. Alternate translation: "my name" or "me by name" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**the name of the Lord (ULT)**  
**who repent and ask...me...to forgive their sins (UST)**

Here, **name** figuratively represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: "the Lord" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the name of the Lord (ULT)**  
**who repent and ask...me...to forgive their sins (UST)**

The implication is that people would appeal to God to show them mercy and save them. Alternate translation: "the Lord for mercy and salvation" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**will be saved (ULT)****I will save (UST)**

This is the end of Joel's quotation of the Lord. If you chose to mark the Lord's words as a third-level quotation, indicate that ending here with a closing third-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of a quotation within a quotation within a quotation. It is also the end of Peter's quotation of Joel. If you chose to mark Joel's words as a second-level quotation, similarly indicate the ending of that quotation within a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [may call on](#)
- [name](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [will be saved](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [I will save](#)
- [who repent and ask...to forgive their sins](#)
- [who repent and ask...to forgive their sins](#)
- [me](#)





## **Acts 2:22**

**Men, Israelites (ULT)**  
**Peter continued speaking. He said,} “You Israelites (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: “My fellow Israelites” (See: [Idiom](#))

**hear these words (ULT)**  
**listen to me (UST)**

Peter is using the term **words** figuratively to mean what he is about to say. Alternate translation: “listen to what I am about to say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Jesus the Nazarene (ULT)**  
**When Jesus from Nazareth (UST)**

The word **Nazarene** describes someone who comes from the city of Nazareth. Alternate translation: “Jesus of Nazareth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**attested...by God (ULT)**  
**God proved...that he had sent...These showed that he was from God (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “whom God proved he had sent” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**with mighty works and wonders and signs (ULT)**  
**many amazing miracles (UST)**

The terms **mighty works**, **wonders**, and **signs** mean similar things. Peter is using them together for emphasis. Alternate translation: “by means of many great miracles” (See: [Doublet](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Israelites](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Nazarene](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [with mighty works](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [signs](#)
- [as](#)
- [you...know](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Israelites](#)

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> Men, [Israelites](#), hear these words: [Jesus](#) the [Nazarene](#) {was} a man attested to you by [God with mighty works](#) and [wonders](#) and [signs](#) that [God](#) did through him in the midst of you, [as](#) you yourselves [know](#).

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> {Peter continued speaking. He said,} “You [Israelites](#), listen to me! [When Jesus](#) from [Nazareth](#) lived among you, [God](#) proved to you that he had sent him [by enabling him to do many amazing miracles](#). These showed that he was [from God](#). You yourselves [know that this is true](#).”

- When Jesus
- You...know
- that this is true
- Nazareth
- God...from God
- by enabling...to do
- many amazing miracles
- many amazing miracles
- many amazing miracles



## **Acts 2:23**

## **This one (ULT) Jesus (UST)**

Peter is using the demonstrative adjective **this** as a noun to refer to a specific person, Jesus. (ULT shows that by adding **one**.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could specify whom Peter means. Alternate translation: "This Jesus" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## **given up by the determined counsel and foreknowledge of God (ULT) However, God had already planned for that to happen, and he knew what the results would be, so he allowed it (UST)**

The term translated **given up** is an adjective, not a passive verbal form, but even so you may wish to translate it with an active verbal form. Alternate translation: "whom God gave up by his determined counsel and foreknowledge" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## **by the determined counsel and foreknowledge of God (ULT) However, God had already planned for that to happen, and he knew what the results would be (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas behind the words **counsel** and **foreknowledge**, you could express the same ideas with verbs. Alternate translation: "as God had planned in a determined way for things he knew about ahead of time" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## **by the determined counsel and foreknowledge of God (ULT) However, God had already planned for that to happen, and he knew what the results would be (UST)**

The word **determined** is a passive verbal form that you could express with an active form. Alternate translation: "in a way that God had determined as he planned for things he knew about ahead of time" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## **you killed (ULT) Even though you knew that, you urged...to kill (UST)**

It was the Romans who literally killed Jesus, but Peter says figuratively that the Jewish people in the crowd killed him because their demands led to his death. Alternate translation: "you demanded to be killed" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## **by the hand of the lawless (ULT) people who do not obey God's law to take action (UST)**

Here, **hand** refers figuratively to actions. Alternate translation: "through the actions of the lawless" or "by what the lawless did" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### **ULT**

<sup>23</sup> This one, given up by the determined **counsel** and **foreknowledge of God**, you killed by **the hand of the lawless**, having fastened,

### **UST**

<sup>23</sup> Even though you knew that, you urged **people who do not obey God's law to take action** to kill Jesus. **They did that by nailing him to a cross**. However, **God had already planned for that to happen**, and **he knew what the results would be**, so he allowed it.

**of the lawless (ULT)**  
**people who do not obey God's law (UST)**

Peter is using the adjective **lawless** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can supply the word "people" to show this. Alternate translation: "lawless people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**of the lawless (ULT)**  
**people who do not obey God's law (UST)**

By **lawless**, Peter does not mean people who disregard the law and break the law. He is figuratively describing Gentiles (that is, people who are not Jews) by association with the fact that they do not have the Jewish law. Alternate translation: "of the Gentiles" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**having fastened (ULT)**  
**They did that by nailing him to a cross (UST)**

This is a reference to the crucifixion of Jesus. Alternate translation: "having nailed him to a cross" or "by crucifying him"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [by...counsel](#)
- [foreknowledge](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the hand](#)
- [of the lawless](#)
- [having fastened](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [people who do not obey God's law](#)
- [to take action](#)
- [They did that by nailing him to a cross](#)
- [However, God](#)
- [had already planned for that to happen](#)
- [he knew what the results would be](#)





## **Acts 2:24**

**whom God raised up (ULT)**  
**Jesus died, but God caused him to become alive again (UST)**

It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "But God raised him up"

**whom God raised up (ULT)**  
**Jesus died, but God caused him to become alive again (UST)**

The idiom **raised up** means that God made Jesus alive again after he died. Alternate translation: "whom God brought back to life" or, as a new sentence, "But God brought him back to life" (See: [Idiom](#))

**having loosed the agonies of death (ULT)**  
**and no longer dead (UST)**

Peter speaks figuratively of the **agonies of death** as if they were ropes with which Jesus had been tied, and of God bringing Jesus back to life as if God had untied those ropes and set him free. Alternate translation: "delivering him from the agonies of death" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the agonies of death (ULT)**  
**and no longer dead (UST)**

Peter uses the possessive form to describe **death** as something that is characterized by **agonies**. Alternate translation: "agonizing death" (See: [Possession](#))

**because it was not possible for him to be held by it (ULT)**  
**because it was not possible for him to stay dead (UST)**

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say explicitly why this was **not possible**. Alternate translation: "because God is so much stronger than death that it was not possible for him to be held by it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**for him to be held by it (ULT)**  
**for him to stay dead (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "for death to hold him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**for him to be held by it (ULT)**  
**for him to stay dead (UST)**

Peter speaks of death figuratively as if it were a living thing that held Jesus captive. Alternate translation: "for him to remain dead" (See: [Personification](#))

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> whom [God raised up](#), having loosed the agonies [of death](#), because it was not possible for him to be held by it.

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> Jesus died, but [God caused him to become alive again and no longer dead](#), because it was not possible for him to stay dead.

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- raised up
- of death

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- caused him to become alive again
- and no longer dead



## **Acts 2:25**

## For David says about him, 'I saw the Lord before me through all, for he is at my right so that I should not be moved (ULT)

In order to avoid having a second-level quotation, you could turn Peter's quotation from David into an indirect quotation. (Peter is quoting from [Psalm 16:8-11](#).) Alternate translation: "For David said about him that he saw the Lord before him through all, for he was at his right so that he should not be moved" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

## For David says about him, 'I saw the Lord before me through all, for he is at my right so that I should not be moved (ULT)

The pronoun **him** refers to the Messiah, about whom David is prophesying. This means that within the quotation, the pronouns **I** and **my** are spoken by the Messiah. If you turn the direct quotation into an indirect quotation and change these pronouns to "he," "him," and "his," it may be helpful to indicate the references in some cases so that your readers will recognize this. Alternate translation: "For David said about the Messiah that he saw the Lord before him through all, for the Lord was at the Messiah's right so that he should not be moved" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

## For (ULT)

Peter uses the word **For** to introduce a reason why the crowd should believe him when he says that God brought Jesus back to life. The reason is that the Scriptures predicted this. As a result, the crowd should be confident that it did happen. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "You can be confident that God did bring Jesus back to life, because" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

## David...says about him (ULT)

## Long ago King David...wrote what the Messiah said (UST)

Peter assumes that the crowd will know that he is referring to what **David says** in one of the psalms that he wrote, and that David is prophesying what the Messiah would say. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "David says in one of his psalms that the Messiah will say" or "David wrote in one of his psalms that the Messiah would say" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## before me (ULT)

## would...be there to protect me (UST)

The phrase **before me**, which means "in front of me," is a spatial metaphor. Alternate translation: "present with me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## through all (ULT)

## always (UST)

The phrase **through all** is an ellipsis for "through all times." It means "always." Alternate translation: "at all times" or "always" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## ULT

<sup>25</sup> For [David](#) says about him, 'I saw the [Lord](#) before me through all, for he is at my [right](#) so that I should not be moved.

## UST

<sup>25</sup> [Long ago King David](#) wrote what the Messiah said: 'I knew [that you, Lord God](#), would always be there to protect me. You are [right beside](#) me, so I will not be afraid of those who want to harm me.

**at my right (ULT)**  
**right beside me (UST)**

Here the adjective **right** is being used as a noun to indicate the right side. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could say that specifically. Alternate translation: “at my right side” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**at my right (ULT)**  
**right beside me (UST)**

In this context, to be at someone’s right side figuratively means to be in a position to help and sustain that person. Alternate translation: “there to help me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I should not be moved (ULT)**  
**I will not be afraid of those who want to harm me (UST)**

Here, **moved** means to be taken out of a safe and secure position, and so figuratively it means to be harmed. Alternate translation: “I will not be harmed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I should not be moved (ULT)**  
**I will not be afraid of those who want to harm me (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “no one will harm me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [David](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [right](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Long ago King David](#)
- [that you, Lord God](#)
- [right beside](#)





## **Acts 2:26**

## Because of this, my heart was glad and my tongue exulted. And indeed, my flesh will also dwell in hope (ULT)

You may have decided to turn Peter's quotation of David into an indirect quotation in order to avoid having a second-level quotation. Alternate translation: "Because of this, his heart was glad and his tongue exulted, and indeed his flesh would also dwell in hope" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### my heart was glad (ULT) I am happy (UST)

Here, the **heart** figuratively represents the emotions. Alternate translation: "I felt glad" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### my tongue exulted (ULT) I joyfully praise you, O God (UST)

Here, the **tongue** figuratively represents the capacity for speech. Alternate translation: "I said joyful things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### my flesh will also dwell in hope (ULT)

Here, **flesh** figuratively means the human body by association with the way that is made of flesh. Alternate translation: "my body will also dwell in hope" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### my flesh will also dwell in hope (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **hope**, you could express the same idea with an adverb such as "hopefully." Alternate translation: "my body will also live hopefully" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### my flesh will also dwell in hope (ULT)

The Messiah is speaking figuratively as if his body itself would live hopefully. Alternate translation: "I will also have hope for my body" (See: [Personification](#))

### my flesh will also dwell in hope (ULT)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say explicitly what **hope** the Messiah had for his body. Alternate translation: "I will also have hope that God will bring my body back to life after I die" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [tongue](#)
- [exulted](#)
- [flesh](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Because of this, my [heart](#) was glad and my [tongue exulted](#). And indeed, my [flesh](#) will also dwell in [hope](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Because of that, I am happy, and I joyfully praise you, O God. And I am completely confident {that you will cause me to become alive again after I die}.

- hope

## Translation Words - UST

- I
- I
- joyfully praise you, O God
- I
- am completely confident...that you will cause me to become alive again after I die



## **Acts 2:27**

**For you will not abandon my soul to Hades,  
nor will you allow your Holy One to see decay  
(ULT)**

**I am confident because I know that you will  
not make me remain in the place where the  
dead are. You will not even let my body waste  
away, because you have chosen me for a  
special purpose (UST)**

You may have decided to turn Peter's quotation from David into an indirect quotation in order to avoid having a second-level quotation. If so, it may be necessary to add some introductory material here.

Alternate translation: "The Messiah knew that God would not abandon his soul to Hades and that God would not allow his Holy One to see decay" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**you will not abandon my soul to Hades, nor will you allow your Holy One to  
see decay (ULT)**

**you will not make me remain in the place where the dead are. You will not  
even let my body waste away, because you have chosen me for a special  
purpose (UST)**

These two statements mean similar things. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it may be helpful to show that to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. However, if the repetition might be confusing, you could connect the phrases with a word other than **nor** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: "you will not abandon my soul to Hades, no, you will not allow your Holy One to see decay" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**you will not abandon...nor will you allow...your (ULT)**

**you will not make...remain...You will not even let...you (UST)**

The words **you** and **your** are singular, and they refer to God. See what you decided to do in your translation in [1:24](#) in a similar case where God is addressed as "you." You may have decided in such cases to use a formal form of "you" that your language may have, or you may have decided to use an informal form of "you." (See: [Forms of 'You'](#) — [Formal or Informal](#) )

**you will not abandon my soul to Hades (ULT)**

**you will not make me remain in the place where the dead are (UST)**

The Messiah says **my soul** figuratively to mean himself, using one part of his being to represent his whole being. Alternate translation: "you will not abandon me to Hades" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For you will not abandon my [soul](#) to [Hades](#), nor will you allow your [Holy One](#) to see decay.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> I am confident because I know that you will not make [me](#) remain in [the place where the dead are](#). You will not even let my body waste away, [because you have chosen me for a special purpose](#).

**you will not abandon my soul to Hades (ULT)**  
**you will not make me remain in the place where the dead are (UST)**

**Hades** is the name for the realm of the dead. If your readers would not be familiar with that name, you could express its meaning in your translation. Alternate translation: “you will not abandon me to the realm of the dead” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**your Holy One (ULT)**  
**because you have chosen me for a special purpose (UST)**

The expression **Holy One** is a title for the Messiah. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: “your Messiah” or “your holy Messiah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**your Holy One (ULT)**  
**because you have chosen me for a special purpose (UST)**

The Messiah is referring to himself in the third person. If that would be confusing to your readers, you can use the first person in your translation. Alternate translation: “me, your Holy One” or “me, the Messiah” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**to see decay (ULT)**  
**my body waste away (UST)**

Here the word **see** is being used idiomatically to mean “experience.” Alternate translation: “to experience decay” (See: [Idiom](#))

**to see decay (ULT)**  
**my body waste away (UST)**

The term **decay** refers in this context to the decomposition of the body after death. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “to experience the decomposition of his body” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [soul](#)
- [Hades](#)
- [Holy One](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [me](#)
- [the place where the dead are](#)
- [because...have chosen me for a special purpose](#)





## **Acts 2:28**

**You made known to me the paths of life; you will fill me with gladness with your face (ULT)**  
**You have shown me how to live again. You will make me very happy because you will be with me { forever (UST)**

You may have decided to turn Peter's quotation of David into an indirect quotation in order to avoid having a second-level quotation. If so, it may be helpful to add some introductory material here.

Alternate translation: "The Messiah said that God had made known to him the paths of life and that God would fill him with gladness with his face" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> You made known to me the paths of life; you will fill me with gladness with your face.'

### UST

<sup>28</sup> You have shown me how to live again. You will make me very happy because you will be with me {forever}."

**You made known...you will fill...your (ULT)**  
**You have shown...You will make...very...you (UST)**

The words **you** and **your** are singular and they refer to God. See what you decided to do in the similar case in [1:24](#). (See: [Forms of 'You' — Formal or Informal](#) )

**You made known to me the paths of life (ULT)**  
**You have shown me how to live again (UST)**

The Messiah speaks figuratively of **life** as if it consisted of **paths** that a person walked along. Those represent the various pursuits and adventures that people have in life. The word **known** refers to experiential knowledge.

Alternate translation: "You enabled me to experience the adventures of life once again" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you will fill me with gladness (ULT)**  
**You will make me very happy (UST)**

The Messiah speaks figuratively as if he were a container that God could **fill** with **gladness**. Alternate translation: "you will give me great gladness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**with your face (ULT)**  
**because you will be with me { forever (UST)**

Here, the word **face** figuratively represents the presence of a person. Alternate translation: "by your presence" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**with your face (ULT)**  
**because you will be with me { forever (UST)**

This is the end of Peter's quotation of David. If you chose to mark David's words as a second-level quotation, in your translation you can indicate this ending with a closing second-level quotation mark or whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [You made known](#)

- of life
- with gladness
- face

## **Translation Words - UST**

- You have shown
- how to live again
- happy
- because...will be with me...forever



## **Acts 2:29**

**Men, brothers (ULT)**  
**Peter continued,} “You who are Jews like me (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: “My brothers” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Men, brothers (ULT)**  
**Peter continued,} “You who are Jews like me (UST)**

See how you translated the term **brothers** in [1:15](#). Alternate translation: “My fellow believers” or “My brothers and sisters” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the patriarch David (ULT)**  
**our ancient ruler, King David (UST)**

A **patriarch** is literally the ancestor of a group of people. David was not the ancestor of all the Jews to whom Peter is speaking. So he is likely using the term figuratively to identify David as the king who established the Israelite kingdom as a lasting dynasty. Alternate translation: “David, the founder of our kingdom” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**was buried (ULT)**  
**his subjects buried him (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to this day (ULT)**  
**still...now (UST)**

Peter is using the word **day** idiomatically to mean a specific time. Alternate translation: “at this time” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [brothers](#)
- [patriarch](#)
- [David](#)
- [he...died](#)
- [was buried](#)
- [tomb](#)
- [day](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter continued...You who are Jews like me](#)
- [our ancient ruler](#)
- [King David](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> Men, [brothers](#), it is possible to speak with confidence to you about the [patriarch David](#), that [he](#) both [died](#) and [was buried](#), and his [tomb](#) is with us to this [day](#).

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> {[Peter continued,](#)} “[You who are Jews like me](#), I can tell you confidently that [our ancient ruler, King David](#), [died](#) and that [his subjects buried him](#). In fact, his [body](#) is still here [now at the place where they buried him](#).”

- died
- his subjects buried him
- body...at the place where they buried him
- now





## **Acts 2:30**

## Therefore (ULT) So we know that King David was not talking about himself in this psalm (UST)

Peter uses the word **Therefore** to introduce the logical result of what he has just said. Alternate translation: “We can therefore conclude that” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

## a prophet...being...and having known (ULT) a prophet...Instead, he was...and he knew (UST)

Peter is still speaking about David. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “because David was a prophet and he knew” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## to set from the fruit of his loins upon his throne (ULT) one of his descendants would become king after him (UST)

Peter is using the word **loins** figuratively to represent David himself by association with the way the reproductive organs are in the loins. He is using the word **fruit** in a broad sense to mean what someone or something produces, in this case a descendant. Alternate translation: “to set one of his descendants upon his throne” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## to set from the fruit of his loins upon his throne (ULT) one of his descendants would become king after him (UST)

When Peter says that God promised to **set** one of David’s descendants **upon his throne**, he is using that one action figuratively to represent God’s promise to David that this descendant would succeed him as king. Alternate translation: “to make one of his descendants succeed him as king” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- a prophet
- having known
- God
- with an oath
- had sworn
- the fruit
- of...loins
- throne

## Translation Words - UST

- a prophet
- he knew
- would become king after him
- God
- promised...that
- promised...that

## ULT

<sup>30</sup> Therefore, being a prophet and having known that God had sworn to him with an oath to set from the fruit of his loins upon his throne,

## UST

<sup>30</sup> So we know that King David was not talking about himself in this psalm. Instead, he was a prophet, and he knew that God promised to him that one of his descendants would become king after him.

- one of...descendants
- one of...descendants



## **Acts 2:31**

**he spoke...was he abandoned...his (ULT)**  
**He said that...God would...allow him to remain...his (UST)**

The first instance of **he** refers to David, and the second instance of **he** and the pronoun **his** refer to Christ. Alternate translation: “David spoke ... was Christ abandoned ... Christ’s” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**he spoke about the resurrection of the Christ (ULT)**  
**He said that God would cause Jesus the Messiah to live again after he died (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **resurrection**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as “alive.” Alternate translation: “he described how God would make Christ alive again after he died” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**neither was he abandoned to Hades (ULT)**  
**God would not allow him to remain in a grave (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who did the action. Alternate translation: “neither did God abandon him to Hades” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**of the Christ (ULT)**  
**Jesus the Messiah (UST)**

**Christ** is the Greek word for “Messiah.” If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use the term “Messiah” in your translation, as UST does. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Hades (ULT)**  
**a grave (UST)**

See how you translated the term **Hades** in [2:27](#). Alternate translation: “the realm of the dead” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**nor did his flesh see decay (ULT)**  
**God would not even let him be dead long enough for his body to begin to decompose (UST)**

Here the word **see** is being used idiomatically to mean “experience.” Alternate translation: “nor did his flesh experience decay” (See: [Idiom](#))

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> having foreseen this, he spoke about the **resurrection** of the **Christ**, that neither was he abandoned to **Hades**, nor did his **flesh** see decay.

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> A long time ago, David knew what God would do. He said that **God would cause Jesus the Messiah to live again after he died**. God would not allow him to remain in **a grave**. God would not even let him be dead long enough for his **body** to begin to decompose.

**nor did his flesh see decay (ULT)****God would not even let him be dead long enough for his body to begin to decompose (UST)**

Peter is using the word **flesh** figuratively to mean the body of Jesus by association with the way the body is made of flesh. Alternate translation: “nor did his body experience decay” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**nor did his flesh see decay (ULT)****God would not even let him be dead long enough for his body to begin to decompose (UST)**

The term **decay** refers in this context to the decomposition of the body after death. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “nor did his body experience decomposition” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [resurrection](#)
- [of...Christ](#)
- [Hades](#)
- [flesh](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God would cause...to live again after he died](#)
- [Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [a grave](#)
- [body](#)



## Acts 2:32

### God has raised up (ULT) After...had died, God made him alive again (UST)

As in 2:24, the idiom **raised up** means that God made Jesus alive again after he died. Alternate translation: "God has brought back to life" (See: [Idiom](#))

### we (ULT) of us who are standing here before you (UST)

By **we**, Peter means himself and the other apostles, so use the exclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [has raised up](#)
- [witnesses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [After...had died...made him alive again](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [can testify...We all saw him alive after he had died](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> This [Jesus](#), [God has raised up](#), of which we all are [witnesses](#).

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> [After](#) this man [Jesus had died](#), [God made him alive again](#). All of us who are standing here before you [can testify](#) to this. {[We all saw him alive after he had died](#).}



## Acts 2:33

**Therefore (ULT)**

**So we are not babbling drunkenly. Instead, this is what has happened (UST)**

Peter is using the word **Therefore** to introduce a result. But it is not the immediate result of what he has just said. He is not saying that Jesus has done what the people see and hear because God raised him from the dead. Instead, this is an overall conclusion. Peter is saying that Jesus sending the Holy Spirit is the reason why the disciples are able to speak in other languages. The crowd should not conclude that they are babbling drunkenly, as some of them have suggested. UST models a way of expressing this sense of the word **Therefore**. (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**Therefore, having been exalted to the right of God (ULT)**

**So we are not babbling drunkenly. Instead, this is what has happened. God has greatly honored Jesus by giving him a position next to him in heaven (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “now that God has exalted Jesus to his right” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to the right...of God (ULT)**

**by giving him a position next to him in heaven...God (UST)**

Peter is using the adjective **right** as a noun in order to indicate the right side. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:25](#). Alternate translation: “to the right side of God” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**to the right...of God (ULT)**

**by giving him a position next to him in heaven...God (UST)**

In this culture, the place at the right side of a ruler was a position of honor. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: “to a place of honor next to God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**and...the promise of the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**the Holy Spirit...just as God promised (UST)**

Peter is using the possessive form to describe the Holy Spirit as someone whom God the Father promised to send. Alternate translation: “the promised Holy Spirit from the Father” or “the Holy Spirit whom the Father promised to send” (See: [Possession](#))

**the Father (ULT)**

**God his Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God. Alternate translation: “God the Father” (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> Therefore, [having been exalted](#) to the [right of God](#) and [having received](#) the [promise](#) of the [Holy Spirit](#) from the [Father](#), he has poured out this which you both see and hear.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> So we are not babbling drunkenly. Instead, this is what has happened. [God has greatly honored Jesus by giving him a position next to him in heaven. Jesus has received the Holy Spirit from God his Father, just as God promised.](#) And now Jesus has generously given us the Holy Spirit, and God has confirmed that gift by doing this miracle that you are witnessing.

**he has poured out (ULT)**

**And now Jesus has generously given us the Holy Spirit, and God has confirmed that gift by doing (UST)**

The pronoun **he** refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: “Jesus has poured out” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**he has poured out (ULT)**

**And now Jesus has generously given us the Holy Spirit, and God has confirmed that gift by doing (UST)**

Peter says figuratively that Jesus has **poured out** the things that the people are seeing and hearing as if those things were a liquid. Peter means that Jesus has given these things generously and abundantly. See how you translated the similar statement in [2:17](#), to which Peter is likely alluding here. Alternate translation: “he has generously given” or “he has abundantly given” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having been exalted](#)
- [to...right](#)
- [of God](#)
- [having received](#)
- [promise](#)
- [of...Holy Spirit](#)
- [Father](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [has greatly honored Jesus](#)
- [by giving him a position next to him in heaven](#)
- [Jesus has received](#)
- [the Holy...Spirit](#)
- [God his Father](#)
- [just as God promised](#)



## Acts 2:34

**he...says...himself...The Lord said to my Lord,  
“Sit at my right (ULT)  
said this about the Messiah...David himself...  
The Lord God said to my Lord the Messiah, “I  
will honor you by giving you a position next to  
me (UST)**

The material in [2:34–35](#) contains a quotation within a quotation within a quotation. Luke is quoting Peter, Peter is quoting another psalm by David ([Psalm 110:1](#)), and David is quoting God. You could avoid having second-level and third-level quotations by translating this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “he himself says that the Lord told his Lord to sit at his right” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**The Lord said to my Lord (ULT)  
The Lord God said to my Lord the Messiah (UST)**

**The Lord** means God here, and **my Lord** means the Messiah. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “God said to the Messiah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**at my right (ULT)  
I will honor you by giving you a position next...to me (UST)**

Here the adjective **right** is used as a noun in order to indicate the right side. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:25](#). Alternate translation: “at my right side” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**at my right (ULT)  
I will honor you by giving you a position next...to me (UST)**

In this culture, the place at the right side of a ruler was a position of honor. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: “in a place of honor next to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [heavens](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [to...Lord](#)
- [right](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [The Lord God](#)
- [Lord the Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> For [David](#) did not ascend to the [heavens](#), but he himself says, [The Lord](#) said to my [Lord](#), “Sit at my [right](#)

### UST

<sup>34</sup> We know that David was not speaking about himself, because [David](#) did not go up into [heaven](#) {as Jesus did}. Besides that, David himself said this about the Messiah: [The Lord God](#) said to my [Lord the Messiah](#), “I will honor you by giving you a position next to me



- I will honor you by giving you a position next

## Acts 2:35

**until I make your enemies a stool for your feet (ULT)**

**while I completely defeat your enemies (UST)**

The psalm says figuratively that God would make the Messiah's **enemies a stool** for his **feet** to mean that God would conquer those enemies and make them submit to the Messiah. Alternate translation: "until I conquer your enemies for you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for your feet (ULT)**

**I completely defeat (UST)**

This is the end of David's quotation of the Lord and of Peter's quotation of David. If you chose to mark these in your translation as a third-level and a second-level quotation, indicate that ending here with the appropriate closing quotation marks or the comparable punctuation or convention in your language. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [enemies](#)
- [a stool](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I completely defeat](#)
- [enemies](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> until I make your [enemies a stool](#) for your feet."

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> while [I completely defeat](#) your [enemies](#).""



## **Acts 2:36**

## Therefore (ULT) Peter ended by saying,} "So (UST)

Peter is using the word **Therefore** to introduce the result of what he has just said. Alternate translation: "Since David was not talking about himself, but about the Messiah" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

## let all the house of Israel know (ULT) I want every Israelite to know (UST)

If your language does not use the third-person imperative in this way, you can state this in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "may all the house of Israel know" or "all the house of Israel should know" (See: [Third-Person Imperatives](#))

## let all the house of Israel know (ULT) I want every Israelite to know (UST)

It may be more natural in your language to use the second person for this imperative, since to this point in his speech Peter has been addressing his audience in the second person. Alternate translation: "all you in the house of Israel, know" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

## all the house of Israel (ULT) every Israelite (UST)

Here, **house** means all the people descended from a particular person. It envisions them as if they were one household living together. So **the house of Israel** figuratively means all the people descended from the patriarch Jacob, who was also known as Israel. Alternate translation: "the entire nation of Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [let...know](#)
- [God](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [crucified](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [I want...to know](#)
- [every Israelite](#)
- [every Israelite](#)
- [God](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [Jesus](#)

## ULT

<sup>36</sup> Therefore, let all [the house of Israel know](#) certainly that [God](#) has made him both [Lord](#) and [Christ](#), this [Jesus](#) whom you [crucified](#)."

## UST

<sup>36</sup> {Peter ended by saying,} "So I [want every Israelite to know](#) definitely that [God](#) has made Jesus both [Lord](#) and [Messiah](#), this same [Jesus](#) whom you [had nailed to a cross and killed](#)."

- had nailed to a cross and killed



## **Acts 2:37**



**hearing this...they were pierced in the heart (ULT)**

**When the people heard what Peter said...they knew they had done wrong (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “what they heard Peter say pierced their heart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were pierced in the heart (ULT)**  
**they knew they had done wrong (UST)**

Here the word **they** refers to the people in the crowd to whom Peter spoke. Alternate translation: “the people in the crowd were pierced in the heart” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**they were pierced in the heart (ULT)**  
**they knew they had done wrong (UST)**

Since Luke is referring to a group of people, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **heart**. Alternate translation: “the people in the crowd were pierced in their hearts”

**they were pierced in the heart (ULT)**  
**they knew they had done wrong (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively. The people were not literally **pierced in the heart** by anything. He means that the people felt guilty and became very sad. Alternate translation: “they felt guilty and became very sad” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Men, brothers (ULT)**  
**you men (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: “Our brothers” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Men, brothers (ULT)**  
**you men (UST)**

See how you translated the term **brothers** in [1:15](#). Alternate translation: “Our fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**what should we do (ULT)**  
**Can...tell us what God wants us to do (UST)**

The people in the crowd are asking about themselves but not the apostles, so use the exclusive form of **we** in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they were pierced](#)

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> And hearing this [they were pierced](#) in the [heart](#), and they said to [Peter](#) and the rest of the [apostles](#), “Men, [brothers](#), what should we do?”

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> When the people heard what Peter said, [they knew they had done wrong](#). The people asked [him](#) and the other [Representatives](#), “Can [you men](#) tell us what God wants us to do?”

- in...heart
- Peter
- of the apostles
- brothers

## Translation Words - UST

- they knew they had done wrong
- they knew they had done wrong
- him
- Representatives
- you men



## **Acts 2:38**

**Repent...each of you be baptized...of your sins...you will receive (ULT)**  
**should turn away from your sinful behavior... Each of you...we will baptize you...your sins... he will give you (UST)**

The words **you** and **your** are plural, **you will receive** is a plural verb form, and the implied “you” in the imperative **Repent** is also plural. But the implied “you” in the imperative **be baptized** is singular, since the subject is **each**. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**be baptized (ULT)**  
**we will baptize you (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “allow us to baptize you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in the name of Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**If you now believe in what Jesus, the Messiah, has done for you (UST)**

Peter has just finished demonstrating that God sent Jesus as the Christ or Messiah [2:36](#). He is saying here that people should acknowledge that as the basis of their baptism for the forgiveness of their sins. So **in the name** here is an idiomatic way of saying “on the basis of naming.” Alternate translation: “on the basis of naming Jesus as the Christ” or “upon acknowledging that Jesus is the Messiah” (See: [Idiom](#))

**for the forgiveness of your sins (ULT)**  
**showing that God has forgiven your sins (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **forgiveness**, you could express the same idea with a verb such as “forgive.” Alternate translation: “to show that you want God to forgive your sins” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [Repent](#)
- [of...Holy Spirit](#)
- [be baptized](#)
- [name](#)
- [of Jesus Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [the forgiveness](#)
- [of...sins](#)
- [you will receive](#)
- [gift](#)

## ULT

**38** Then [Peter](#) said to them, “[Repent](#) and each of you [be baptized](#) in the [name of Jesus Christ](#) for [the forgiveness](#) of your [sins](#), and [you will receive](#) the [gift](#) of the [Holy Spirit](#).”

## UST

**38** [Peter](#) answered them, “Each of you [should turn away from your sinful behavior](#). [If you now believe in what Jesus, the Messiah, has done for you, we will baptize you](#), showing that [God has forgiven your sins](#), and [he will give you his Holy Spirit](#).”

## Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- should turn away from your sinful behavior
- he will give you
- Holy Spirit
- If you now believe in what...has done for you
- Jesus, the Messiah
- the Messiah
- we will baptize you
- God has forgiven
- sins
- he will give you



## **Acts 2:39**



## the promise is (ULT) God has promised to give him (UST)

Peter is speaking figuratively of the Holy Spirit by association with the way God promised to send the Holy Spirit, as Peter says specifically in [2:33](#). Alternate translation: "God has promised the Holy Spirit" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## to you...and to your children (ULT) to you...and to your children (UST)

Peter showed the people in [2:17](#) that God's promise through Joel to pour out his Spirit included their "sons" and "daughters." So the implication could be that the people in the crowd should not think that any of them have to reach a certain age before professing faith in Jesus and being baptized. Alternate translation: "to all of you, no matter what your age," or see the next note for a further possibility. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## to you...and to your children (ULT) to you...and to your children (UST)

Peter could also be using the word **children** in a figurative sense to mean "descendants." In that case, he would be saying that faith in Jesus as the Messiah was not something just for the people living at this time, but also for people living at all times in the future. That would parallel what he says next about faith in Jesus not being just for those who are present in this place, but for people living in all places. Alternate translation: "to you and your descendants" or "to you and everyone who will live after you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## to all who are at a distance (ULT) That includes all those who live far away from here (UST)

Since Peter is speaking to Jews as a fellow Jew, this is likely an implicit reference to the Jews who were living in other parts of the Roman Empire. However, this statement took on greater meaning when the church realized that "God has also given repentance unto life to the Gentiles," as its leaders say in [11:18](#). So you could either express the likely initial meaning here in your translation, or you could leave the statement more general. Alternate translation: "to the Jews living in faraway parts of the empire" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the Lord our God (ULT) the God we worship (UST)

By **the Lord our God**, Peter means the God of the Jews. He is speaking of himself and his fellow apostles and of the people in the crowd, so use the inclusive form of the word **our** in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

## may call (ULT) to all others whom...leads to have faith in Jesus (UST)

Peter is using the word **call** in an idiomatic sense here. Alternate translation: "may bring to salvation" (See: [Idiom](#))

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> For the [promise](#) is to you and to your [children](#) and to all who are at a distance, as many as [the Lord our God may call](#)."

### UST

<sup>39</sup> You will receive the Holy Spirit because [God has promised to give him](#) to you and to your [children](#) and to all others whom [the God we worship leads to have faith in Jesus](#). That includes all those who live far away from here."

## Translation Words - ULT

- promise
- to...children
- the Lord
- God
- may call

## Translation Words - UST

- God has promised to give him
- to...children
- the God we worship
- the God we worship
- leads to have faith in Jesus



## **Acts 2:40**

## other...with many...words (ULT) more...many...things (UST)

Luke is using the term **words** figuratively to mean things that Peter said by using words. Alternate translation: "by saying many other things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## he testified and urged them (ULT) Peter said...and spoke strongly to them (UST)

Here Luke is expressing a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **urged** tells in what way Peter **testified** further about faith in Jesus. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express this same idea with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: "he testified urgently to them" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

## Be saved (ULT) Ask God to save you so that he will not punish you (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who would do the action. Alternate translation: "Let God save you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## from this perverse generation (ULT) when he punishes these evil people {who have rejected Jesus (UST)

The implication is that God is going to punish **this perverse generation**. Alternate translation: "from the punishment that this perverse generation will suffer if it does not repent" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## this perverse generation (ULT) these evil people {who have rejected Jesus (UST)

The word **perverse** describes things or actions that do not conform to what is right and expected. Peter may be referring implicitly to how the people of this **generation** rejected and killed Jesus. Alternate translation: "this wicked generation that rejected and killed Jesus" or "the wicked people of this time who rejected and killed Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he testified](#)
- [urged](#)
- [Be saved](#)
- [perverse](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter said](#)
- [spoke strongly](#)
- [Ask God to save you so that he will not punish you](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> And with many other words [he testified](#) and [urged](#) them, saying, "[Be saved](#) from this [perverse generation](#)."

### UST

<sup>40</sup> [Peter said](#) many more things and [spoke strongly](#) to them. He told them, "[Ask God to save you so that he will not punish you](#) when he punishes these [evil people {who have rejected Jesus}!](#)"

- evil...who have rejected Jesus
- people



## Acts 2:41



**Therefore (ULT)****So (UST)**

Luke uses the word **Therefore** to introduce information about what happened after the story of Pentecost as a result of the events within the story itself. Your language may have its own way of indicating how such information relates to a story. (See: [End of Story](#))

**having received his word (ULT)**  
**who believed Peter's message (UST)**

Here, **received** means that the people in the crowd accepted that what Peter said was true. Alternate translation: "because they believed his word" (See: [Idiom](#))

**his word (ULT)****Peter's message (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean what Peter said by using words. Alternate translation: "what Peter said" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they...were baptized (ULT)****the people...received baptism (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who did the action. The apostles themselves may have baptized all these people, but because so many people repented and wanted to be baptized, it is possible that some of the other believers may have baptized some of them. Alternate translation: "the apostles baptized them" or "the believers baptized them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**souls (ULT)****There were...of them (UST)**

Luke is using one part of these people, their **souls**, to mean the people themselves. Alternate translation: "people" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**were added (ULT)****who joined the group of believers (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "became part of the church" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having received](#)
- [were baptized](#)
- [souls](#)
- [day](#)

**ULT**

<sup>41</sup> Therefore, [having received](#) his word, they [were baptized](#), and about 3,000 [souls](#) were added in that [day](#).

**UST**

<sup>41</sup> So the people [who believed](#) Peter's message [received baptism](#). [There were](#) about 3,000 [of them](#) who joined the group of believers that [day](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- who believed
- received baptism
- There were...of them
- day

## Acts 2:42

### they were...continuing in the teaching of the apostles and in fellowship, in the breaking of bread and in prayers (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas behind the words **teaching** and **fellowship**, you could express the same ideas with equivalent expressions. Alternate translation: "they continued to learn from what the apostles taught and to share life with one another, and to break bread together and to pray together" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### in the breaking of bread (ULT) and they ate a meal (UST)

Luke could be using the word **breaking** to mean "eating," and he could be using the word **bread** to mean "food." In each case he would be figuratively using one part of something to mean the whole thing. Breaking bread is one thing people do when they eat it, and bread is one kind of food. So this could be a reference to the believers sharing meals together. Alternate translation: "in sharing meals" or see the next note for a further possibility. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### in the breaking of bread (ULT) and they ate a meal (UST)

By **the breaking of bread**, Luke could also mean remembering the death of Jesus in the way that Jesus commanded, by literally breaking a loaf of bread and sharing it and also sharing a cup of wine. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "in observing the Lord's Supper" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [in...teaching](#)
- [of...apostles](#)
- [in fellowship](#)
- [of bread](#)
- [in prayers](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [what...taught](#)
- [Representatives](#)
- [They met...together with the other believers](#)
- [and they ate a meal](#)
- [prayed together](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> And they were continuing in the [teaching](#) of the [apostles](#) and [in fellowship](#), in the breaking [of bread](#) and [in prayers](#).

### UST

<sup>42</sup> They continually obeyed [what](#) the [Representatives](#) taught. [They met](#) many times [together with the other believers](#), [and they ate a meal](#) and [prayed together](#) every day.



## **Acts 2:43**

**was coming...fear...on every soul (ULT)  
came to have...Throughout Jerusalem  
people...a great awe for God (UST)**

Here the word **fear** describes a deep respect for God. Luke describes this **fear** figuratively as if it were a living thing that could come onto people. Alternate translation: "every soul began to feel a deep respect for God" (See: [Personification](#))

**was coming...fear...on every soul (ULT)  
came to have...Throughout Jerusalem  
people...a great awe for God (UST)**

Luke is using one part of a person, the **soul**, to mean the entire person. Alternate translation: "every person began to feel a deep respect for God" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**was coming...fear...on every soul (ULT)  
came to have...Throughout Jerusalem people...a great awe for God (UST)**

Luke says **every** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "very many people began to feel a deep respect for God" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**many...wonders and signs were happening through the apostles (ULT)  
many kinds of...because the Representatives were doing...miraculous deeds  
(UST)**

Since Luke says that these things happened **through the apostles**, the implication is that God was doing them. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could make God the subject of this sentence and **wonders and signs** the object. Alternate translation: "God performed many wonders and signs through the apostles" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**many...wonders and signs (ULT)  
many kinds of...miraculous deeds (UST)**

The terms **wonders** and **signs** mean similar things. Luke is using them together for emphasis. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:22](#). Alternate translation: "many great miracles" (See: [Doublet](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#)
- [on...soul](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [signs](#)
- [apostles](#)

## ULT

<sup>43</sup> And [fear](#) was coming on every [soul](#), and many [wonders](#) and [signs](#) were happening through the [apostles](#).

## UST

<sup>43</sup> [Throughout Jerusalem people](#) came to have [a great awe for God](#), because the [Representatives](#) were doing many kinds of [miraculous deeds](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- Throughout Jerusalem people
- a great awe for God
- Representatives
- miraculous deeds
- miraculous deeds

**Acts 2:44****to the same (ULT)  
met regularly together (UST)**

See the discussion of this phrase in Part 3 of the Introduction to Acts.  
Alternate translation: “in the same place” or “united in Christian fellowship”

**had all things in common (ULT)  
They also kept sharing what they had with  
one another (UST)**

Luke may be saying **all** as a generalization to emphasize the powerful spirit of generosity among the believers. The next verse explains more specifically how the believers showed this generosity, and you could give some indication of that here. Alternate translation: “shared their belongings with one another” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [believing](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [who believed in Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>44</sup> And all those [believing](#) were to the same and had all things in common,

**UST**

<sup>44</sup> All of those [who believed in Jesus](#) met regularly together. They also kept sharing what they had with one another.



**Acts 2:45**

**they were selling properties and possessions (ULT)**

**some of them sold some of their land and some of the other things that they owned (UST)**

The words **properties** and **possessions** mean similar things. Luke may be using these words together for emphasis. As the General Notes to this chapter suggest, it may be helpful to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "They were selling many valuable things that they owned" (See: [Doublet](#))

**and they were distributing them (ULT)**

Here the pronoun **they** refers to believers who sold things they owned, and the pronoun **them** refers to the money they received from these sales. Alternate translation: "the believers who sold these things were distributing the money that they received" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**to all, as anyone might have need (ULT)**

**to other believers...those believers as much as they needed (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to everyone who needed help"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [properties](#)
- [possessions](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [land](#)
- [other things that they owned](#)

**ULT**

<sup>45</sup> and they were selling [properties](#) and [possessions](#) and they were distributing them to all, as anyone might have need

**UST**

<sup>45</sup> From time to time some of them sold some of their [land](#) and some of the [other things that they owned](#). They did this so that they could give some of the money they made to other believers. They gave those believers as much as they needed.



## **Acts 2:46**

**and, continuing unanimously every day (ULT)**

The word **unanimously** indicates that the apostles and other believers shared a common commitment and purpose and that there was no strife among them. See how you translated the same expression in [1:14](#). As the General Notes to this chapter suggest, it may be helpful to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “Continuing to meet with one accord” or “Continuing to meet harmoniously”

**in the temple (ULT)****in the temple courtyard (UST)**

Only priests were allowed inside the temple building, so here **the temple** means the courtyard around the temple. Alternate translation: “in the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**breaking...bread in each house (ULT)****and then they would have meals together...and then they would have meals together...in their homes (UST)**

See how you translated the similar expression in [2:42](#). There were two possible meanings there, but here **breaking bread** seems to mean specifically sharing meals. Alternate translation: “having meals together in their homes” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**with exultation and sincerity of heart (ULT)****happily and with genuine affection (UST)**

Here, the **heart** figuratively represents the emotions. Alternate translation: “with feelings of exultation and sincerity” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**with exultation and sincerity of heart (ULT)****happily and with genuine affection (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas behind the words **exultation** and **sincerity**, you could express the same ideas with adverbs that would indicate feelings. Alternate translation: “joyfully and sincerely” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [day](#)
- [temple](#)
- [bread](#)
- [house](#)
- [exultation](#)
- [of heart](#)

**ULT**

<sup>46</sup> and, continuing unanimously every [day](#) in the [temple](#) and breaking [bread](#) in each [house](#), they were sharing food with [exultation](#) and sincerity [of heart](#),

**UST**

<sup>46</sup> Every [day](#) they kept gathering to worship together in the [temple courtyard](#), and then they would have [meals together in their homes](#). They ate together [happily](#) and [with genuine affection](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- day
- temple courtyard
- and then they would have meals together
- in their homes
- happily
- with genuine affection

**Acts 2:47****praising God and having favor with the whole people (ULT)****As they did so, they kept praising God, and the other people who lived in Jerusalem greatly respected them (UST)**

Luke says **the whole people** as a generalization to emphasize how widely the people favored the believers. As the General Notes to this chapter suggest, it may be helpful to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "They praised God and enjoyed wide favor with the people" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the ones being saved (ULT)  
saved more people (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "those whom he was saving" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to the same (ULT)  
and those people joined with the other believers (UST)**

See the discussion of this phrase in Part 3 of the Introduction to Acts. Alternate translation: "to their Christian fellowship"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [praising](#)
- [God](#)
- [favor](#)
- [people](#)
- [day](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [ones being saved](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [As they did so, they kept praising](#)
- [God](#)
- [other people who lived in Jerusalem](#)
- [respected them](#)
- [day](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [saved more people](#)

**ULT**

<sup>47</sup> [praising God](#) and having [favor](#) with the whole [people](#), and each [day](#) the [Lord](#) was adding the [ones being saved](#) to the same.

**UST**

<sup>47</sup> [As they did so, they kept praising God](#), and the [other people who lived in Jerusalem](#) greatly [respected them](#). {As those things were happening,} every [day](#) the [Lord Jesus saved more people](#) and those people joined with the other believers.

## Acts 3

### Acts 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The covenant God made with Abraham

This chapter explains that Jesus came to the Jews in fulfillment of the covenant that God made with Abraham.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “Servant”

Twice in this chapter Peter uses the word “Servant” as a title to mean “Messiah” (3:13, 3:26). He and other believers use the word in the same sense twice in chapter 4 as well (4:27, 4:30). The word takes on this meaning by allusion to the book of Isaiah, where Isaiah uses it to mean the person whom God has chosen for the special purpose of bringing salvation. In your translation, indicate in some way that “Servant” is a Messianic title. Jesus was not a servant of God in the more ordinary sense, in which the believers apply it to themselves in 4:29, for example. Jesus was fully the Son of God, sent to earth on a special mission. If you would not be able to make this clear by using the word “Servant,” you may wish to use the word “Messiah” instead.

#### “You killed” (3:15)

For the same reasons as when he was speaking on the day of Pentecost (2:23), Peter tells people in this chapter that they were guilty of killing Jesus. But he also tells them that they are the first ones to whom God has sent Jesus’ followers to invite them to repent (3:26). For further information and suggestions for how to make clear in your translation what Peter means, see the discussion of this phrase in the General Notes to chapter 2 and the notes to this phrase in 2:23 and 3:15. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#))

## Acts 3:1

### Now (ULT)

### One day (UST)

Luke uses the word **Now** to introduce background information that will help readers understand what happens next. You can translate it with a word or phrase that serves the same purpose in your language. (See: [Connect — Background Information](#) )

### to the temple (ULT)

### to the temple to pray (UST)

Only priests were allowed inside the temple building, so **the temple** means the courtyard around the temple. Alternate translation: “to the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the ninth (ULT)

### three o’clock in the afternoon (UST)

In this culture, people began counting the hours each day beginning around daybreak at six o’clock in the morning. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express this time in the way the people of your culture reckon time. Alternate translation: “three o’clock in the afternoon”

### the ninth (ULT)

### three o’clock in the afternoon (UST)

If you decide to translate this in the way that the biblical culture reckoned time but your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here. Alternate translation: “hour nine” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)
- [temple](#)
- [hour...hour](#)
- [of prayer](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)
- [temple to pray](#)
- [time when people prayed there](#)
- [time when people prayed there](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now [Peter](#) and [John](#) were going up to the [temple](#) at the [hour of prayer](#), the ninth [hour](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> One day [Peter](#) and [John](#) were going to the [temple to pray](#). It was three o’clock in the afternoon, the [time when people prayed there](#).





## **Acts 3:2**

**And a certain man, being lame from the womb of his mother, was being carried, whom each day they placed at the gate of the temple (ULT)**

**There was a man there who had not been able to walk from the time he was born. He was sitting by the Beautiful Gate at the entrance to the temple area. People carried him there every day (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an active verbal form instead of the passive form **was being carried**. Alternate translation: "And there was a certain man who had been lame since birth whom people would carry to the temple every day and place at the gate" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**And a certain man (ULT)**

**There was a man there (UST)**

In this verse, Luke provides background information about this man to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, present this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. (See: [Background Information](#))

**from the womb of his mother (ULT)**

**from the time he was born (UST)**

Luke is figuratively describing the time of the lame man's birth by association with the way he came from the **womb** of his **mother** when he was born. Alternate translation: "since birth" or "since he was born" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**that is called (ULT)**

**Beautiful Gate (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "that people call" or "whose name is" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Beautiful (ULT)**

**Beautiful Gate (UST)**

**Beautiful** is the name of one of the gates of the Jerusalem temple. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**into the temple (ULT)**

**into the temple area (UST)**

Only priests were allowed inside the temple building, so **the temple** means the courtyard around the temple. Alternate translation: "into the temple courtyard" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## ULT

<sup>2</sup> And a certain man, being lame from **the womb** of his mother, **was being carried**, whom each **day** they placed at the **gate** of the **temple** that **is called Beautiful** to ask for **alms** from those going into the **temple**,

## UST

<sup>2</sup> There was a man there who had not been able to walk from **the time he was born**. He was sitting by the **Beautiful Gate at the entrance to the temple area**. **People carried him there every day** so that he could ask those who were going into the **temple area to give him some money**.

## Translation Words - ULT

- the womb
- was being carried
- day
- gate
- of...temple
- temple
- is called
- alms

## Translation Words - UST

- the time he was born
- Beautiful Gate
- Beautiful Gate
- at the entrance to the temple area
- temple area
- People carried him there
- day
- to give him some money

## Acts 3:3

### asked to receive alms (ULT) and asked them to give him some money (UST)

The man specifically asked Peter and John to give him **alms** (that is, a charitable gift). Alternate translation: “asked to receive alms from them” or “asked them to give him alms” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- John
- temple
- alms

#### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- John
- As...were approaching that gate
- some money

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> who, seeing Peter and John being about to enter into the temple, asked to receive alms.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> As Peter and John were approaching that gate, he saw them and asked them to give him some money.

**Acts 3:4**

**looking intently...Peter...at him with John, said (ULT)**

**looked directly...Peter and John...at him, and Peter said to him (UST)**

This means that both Peter and John looked at the man. It does not mean that Peter looked at the man and at John, and it does not mean that both Peter and John spoke to the man. Alternate translation: "Peter and John looked intently at him, and Peter said"

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> But [Peter](#), looking intently at him with [John](#), said, "Look at us."

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> When they heard the man speak to them, [Peter](#) and [John](#) looked directly at him, and Peter said to him, "Look at us!"

**Look at us (ULT)**

**Look at us (UST)**

Peter is asking the man to look at him and John, not to look at himself as well, so use the exclusive form of **us** in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)

## Acts 3:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- to receive

### Translation Words - UST

- to get

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So he paid attention to them, expecting to receive something from them.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> So he looked directly at them, expecting to get some money from them.





## **Acts 3:6**

## Silver and gold (ULT) any money (UST)

Peter is referring figuratively to money by association with the way that **silver** and **gold** were used for money at this time. Alternate translation: “money” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## but what I have, this I give to you (ULT) but I will do what I can do for you (UST)

What happens next in the story shows that by **what I have**, Peter implicitly means the authority that Jesus has given him to heal. Alternate translation: “but Jesus has given me the authority to heal, and I will use it on your behalf” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## In the name of Jesus Christ the Nazarene (ULT) by the power of Jesus the Messiah, that man who came from the city of Nazareth (UST)

Here the **name** of Jesus figuratively represents his authority. Alternate translation: “By the authority of Jesus Christ the Nazarene, I command you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## of Jesus Christ the Nazarene (ULT) of Jesus the Messiah, that man who came from the city of Nazareth (UST)

The word **Nazarene** describes someone who comes from the city of Nazareth. See how you translated it in [2:23](#). Alternate translation: “of Jesus Christ of Nazareth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## walk (ULT) So get up and walk (UST)

This was not a command that the man was capable of obeying. Instead, it was a command that directly caused the man to be healed. Alternate translation: “I give you the ability to walk” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [Silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [do...possess](#)
- [name](#)
- [of Jesus Christ the Nazarene](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Nazarene](#)
- [walk](#)

## ULT

<sup>6</sup> But [Peter](#) said, “[Silver](#) and [gold](#) I do not [possess](#), but what I have, this I give to you. In the [name of Jesus Christ](#) the [Nazarene](#), [walk](#).”

## UST

<sup>6</sup> Then [Peter](#) said to him, “I do not [have any money](#), but I will do what I can do for you. I heal you by the [power of Jesus the Messiah](#), that man who came from [the city of Nazareth](#). [So get up and walk!](#)”

## Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- do...have
- any money
- any money
- power
- of Jesus the Messiah, that man who came from the city of Nazareth
- the Messiah
- the city of Nazareth
- So get up and walk

**Acts 3:7**

**seizing him by the right hand, he raised him up, and immediately his feet and ankles were made strong (ULT)**

**Peter grasped the man's right hand and helped him to stand up. The man realized immediately that his feet and ankles were going to be strong enough to support him (UST)**

In this verse, the pronoun **he** refers to Peter, while the pronouns **him** and **his** refer to the lame man. You could indicate that specifically in at least some of the cases if that would be helpful to your readers.

Alternate translation: "seizing the man by the right hand, Peter raised him up, and immediately the man's feet and ankles were made strong" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**his feet and ankles were made strong (ULT)**

**his feet and ankles were going to be strong enough to support him (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "his feet and ankles became strong" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [seizing](#)
- [by...hand](#)
- [he raised...up](#)
- [were made strong](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter grasped](#)
- [hand](#)
- [and helped...to stand up](#)
- [were going to be strong enough to support him](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> And [seizing](#) him by the right [hand](#), [he raised](#) him [up](#), and immediately his feet and ankles [were made strong](#).

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> Then [Peter grasped](#) the man's right [hand](#) and [helped](#) him [to stand up](#). The man realized immediately that his feet and ankles [were going to be strong enough to support him](#).

## Acts 3:8

### And (ULT)

### So (UST)

Luke is using the word translated **And** to indicate that the events in this verse happened as a result of the events in the previous verse. Alternate translation: “So” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### he stood and began to walk, and he entered with them (ULT)

The pronoun **he** refers to the man who had been lame, and the pronoun **them** refers to Peter and John. You could indicate that specifically if it would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: “the man stood and began to walk, and the man entered with Peter and John” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### he stood and began to walk, and he entered with them (ULT)

Luke is using the word **began** to indicate that this man had been doing something else (sitting at the gate begging) but then began to do something new when was healed. It might not be necessary to translate the word **began**, since it may seem to convey redundant information that would be not be natural to express in your language. Alternate translation: “he stood and walked” (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

### into the temple (ULT)

### into the temple area (UST)

Only priests were allowed inside the temple building, so **the temple** means the courtyard around the temple. Alternate translation: “into the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [began to walk](#)
- [walking](#)
- [temple](#)
- [praising](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [started walking](#)
- [as he walked](#)
- [temple area](#)
- [praising](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And leaping up, he stood and [began to walk](#), and he entered with them into the [temple](#), [walking](#) and leaping and [praising God](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So the man jumped {the rest of the way} up {by himself} and [started walking](#)! He went into the [temple area](#) with Peter and John, leaping for joy and [praising God as he walked](#)!

## Acts 3:9

### all the people (ULT)

### All the people who were there (UST)

The word **all** is a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "the crowd that was in the courtyard" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [walking](#)
- [praising](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people who were there](#)
- [walking](#)
- [praising](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And all the [people](#) saw him [walking](#) and [praising God](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> All the [people who were there](#) saw him [walking](#) and heard him [praising God](#).



## **Acts 3:10**



**they recognized...him, that he was the...one sitting (ULT)**

**They recognized...that he was the man...who used to sit (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they realized that he was the man who had been sitting"

**the Beautiful Gate (ULT)**

**the Beautiful Gate (UST)**

This was the name of one of the entrances to the temple area. See how you translated the similar expression in 3:2. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> And [they recognized](#) him, that he was the one sitting for [alms](#) at the Beautiful [Gate](#) of the [temple](#), and they were filled with [wonder](#) and [amazement](#) at what had happened to him.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> [They recognized](#) that he was the man who used to sit at the Beautiful [Gate](#) that led into the [temple area](#) and [ask people for money!](#) So [all the people there were greatly amazed](#) that he could now walk.

**they were filled with wonder and amazement at what had happened to him (ULT)**

**all the people there were greatly amazed that he could now walk (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "what had happened to him filled them with wonder and amazement" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were filled with wonder and amazement at what had happened to him (ULT)**

**all the people there were greatly amazed that he could now walk (UST)**

The words **wonder** and **amazement** mean similar things. Luke is using them together for emphasis. You can combine the words in your translation if that might be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: "what had happened to him filled them with complete amazement" (See: [Doublet](#))

**they were filled with wonder and amazement at what had happened to him (ULT)**

**all the people there were greatly amazed that he could now walk (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively as if the people were containers that these responses could fill. Alternate translation: "what had happened to him made them completely amazed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they were filled with wonder and amazement at what had happened to him (ULT)**

**all the people there were greatly amazed that he could now walk (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **wonder** and **amazement**, you could express the same idea with verbs. Alternate translation: "they wondered and marveled greatly at what had happened to him" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- they recognized
- alms
- Gate
- of...temple
- with wonder
- amazement

## Translation Words - UST

- They recognized
- Gate
- that led into...temple area
- and ask people for money
- all the people there were greatly amazed
- all the people there were greatly amazed

## Acts 3:11

### all the people (ULT) more and more people (UST)

The word **all** is a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: “the crowd that was there” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### the porch that is called Solomon’s (ULT) Solomon’s Porch{, a covered walkway within the temple area (UST)

This is the name of a covered walkway in the Jerusalem temple courtyard. It consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof. People had named this porch after King Solomon. Alternate translation: “Solomon’s Porch” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### that is called (ULT) Solomon’s (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “that people call” or “whose name is” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- John
- people
- ran together
- is called
- Solomon’s
- marveling

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- John
- Solomon’s
- Solomon’s
- As the amazing news of the man’s healing spread through the crowd
- people
- came running over

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And as he was holding Peter and John, all the people ran together to them in the porch that is called Solomon’s, marveling.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> The man would not let go of Peter and John. The three of them were in Solomon’s Porch{, a covered walkway within the temple area}. As the amazing news of the man’s healing spread through the crowd, more and more people came running over to see them.



## **Acts 3:12**

## Men, Israelites (ULT) You Israelites (UST)

This is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: "My fellow Israelites" (See: [Idiom](#))

## why do you marvel at this (ULT) it should not surprise you that this man can now walk (UST)

Peter does not expect the crowd to tell him why they are marveling. He is using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "you should not marvel at this!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Or why do you look intently at us, as if we have made him to walk by our own power or godliness (ULT)

Peter is using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "Do not stare at us. We did not make him walk by our own power or godliness!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## at us...by our own (ULT) at us...by our own (UST)

By **us** and **our own**, Peter means himself and John but not also the people in the crowd. So use the exclusive forms of **us** and **our** in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

## by our own power or godliness (ULT)

Peter may be expressing a single idea by using two words connected with **or**. The term **godliness** describes what the crowd may consider the source or nature of the **power** that he and John have. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express the meaning with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: "by our own godly power" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [people](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [do you marvel](#)
- [as if](#)
- [to walk](#)
- [power](#)
- [godliness](#)

## ULT

<sup>12</sup> But [Peter](#), seeing this, replied to the [people](#), "Men, [Israelites](#), why [do you marvel](#) at this? Or why do you look intently at us, [as if](#) we have made him [to walk](#) by our own [power](#) or [godliness](#)?"

## UST

<sup>12</sup> When [Peter](#) saw that a crowd was gathering around them, he said to the [people](#), "You [Israelites](#), it should not [surprise you](#) that this man can now walk. But you should not be looking at us [as if we were so godly that](#) we made him [walk](#) by our own [power](#)!"

## Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- people
- Israelites
- surprise you
- as if
- we were so godly that
- walk
- power





## **Acts 3:13**

**of Abraham...of Isaac...of Jacob (ULT)**  
**Abraham...Isaac...Jacob (UST)**

These are the names of three men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**of our fathers (ULT)**  
**We Israelites are descendants of those men,**  
**so the covenant includes us (UST)**

Peter is using the term **fathers** figuratively to mean “ancestors.”  
 Alternate translation: “of our ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of our fathers (ULT)**  
**We Israelites are descendants of those men,**  
**so the covenant includes us (UST)**

The term **fathers** could mean: (1) in a generic sense that includes both men and women, the ancestors of the Israelites. If you decide to retain this metaphor in your translation, you could say “fathers and mothers” to indicate this. (2) Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. In that case, Peter would be repeating the meaning of the previous phrase, and the term would have a masculine meaning. Alternate translation: “of the patriarchs” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**his Servant Jesus (ULT)**  
**God honored that covenant by sending Jesus to be the Messiah...Jesus (UST)**

See the discussion of the term **Servant** in the General Notes to this chapter. Alternate translation: “Jesus his Messiah”

**delivered up (ULT)**  
**turned...over to the Romans for trial (UST)**

Alternate translation: “handed over for trial”

**before the face of Pilate (ULT)**  
**you gathered in front of Pilate (UST)**

Here the phrase **before the face of** means “in the presence of.” Alternate translation: “in the presence of Pilate” (See: [Idiom](#))

**of Pilate (ULT)**  
**of Pilate (UST)**

**Pilate** is the name of a man. His full name was Pontius Pilate. He was the governor of Judea during the time of Jesus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> The God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, the God of our fathers, has glorified his Servant Jesus, whom you indeed delivered up and rejected before the face of Pilate, when that one had decided to release him.

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> {Let me tell you what has really happened.} God made a covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. We Israelites are descendants of those men, so the covenant includes us. God honored that covenant by sending Jesus to be the Messiah. {We told this man that the power of Jesus could heal him, and} God has now glorified Jesus by doing this miracle. But when Jesus was living among us, you turned him over to the Romans for trial. Pilate, the Roman governor, {knew that Jesus was innocent and} wanted to set him free. But you gathered in front of Pilate and shouted that he should not release him.

**when that one had decided to release him (ULT)**  
**Pilate, the Roman governor, {knew that Jesus was innocent and} wanted to set him free (UST)**

Peter is using the demonstrative adjective **that** as a noun to refer to a certain person, Pilate. (ULT adds **one** to indicate that.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could indicate specifically whom Peter means. Alternate translation: “when Pilate had decided to release him” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the God (2)
- the God (3)
- of Abraham
- Jesus
- of Pilate
- when...had decided
- of Isaac
- of Jacob
- God (4)
- of...fathers
- has glorified
- Servant

### Translation Words - UST

- Let me tell you what has really happened...God made a covenant with
- Let me tell you what has really happened...God made a covenant with (2)
- Let me tell you what has really happened...God made a covenant with (3)
- We Israelites are descendants of those men, so the covenant includes us (4)
- honored that covenant by sending...to be the Messiah
- Jesus...Jesus
- We told this man that the power of Jesus could heal him, and} God has now glorified...by doing this miracle
- knew that Jesus was innocent and} wanted
- of Pilate
- Abraham
- Isaac
- Jacob
- We Israelites are descendants of those men, so the covenant includes us

**Acts 3:14****But (ULT)  
Rather than have Pilate release Jesus to you  
(UST)**

Peter uses this word to introduce a contrast between what Pilate wanted to do and what these people demanded he do instead. Alternate translation: "Even though Pilate wanted to release Jesus," (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

**the Holy and Righteous One (ULT)  
even though Jesus was the Messiah...him  
(UST)**

Peter is using both the adjective **Holy** and the adjective **Righteous** to indicate a certain person, Jesus. (ULT adds **One** to indicate that.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could indicate specifically whom Peter means. Alternate translation: "Jesus, who was holy and righteous" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**the Holy and Righteous One (ULT)  
even though Jesus was the Messiah...him (UST)**

The terms **Holy** and **Righteous** mean similar things. Peter is using the two terms together for emphasis. Alternate translation: "the Supremely Holy One" or "Jesus, who was supremely holy" (See: [Doublet](#))

**the Holy and Righteous One (ULT)  
even though Jesus was the Messiah...him (UST)**

This description of Jesus is an implicit assertion that he is the Messiah. Alternate translation: "Jesus, the Messiah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**asked for a man, a murderer, to be granted to you (ULT)  
asked Pilate to set free a killer instead (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "asked Pilate to release to you a man who was a murderer" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Holy](#)
- [Righteous One](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [even though Jesus was the Messiah...him](#)
- [even though Jesus was the Messiah...him](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> But you rejected the [Holy](#) and [Righteous One](#), and asked for a man, a murderer, to be granted to you,

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> Rather than have Pilate release Jesus to you, [even though Jesus was the Messiah](#), you rejected [him](#) and asked Pilate to set free a killer instead!



## **Acts 3:15**

**you killed (ULT)**  
**you are responsible for the death of Jesus (UST)**

It was the Romans who literally killed Jesus, but Peter says figuratively that the Jewish people in the crowd killed him because their demands led to his death. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:23](#). Alternate translation: “you demanded the death of” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the...Originator of Life (ULT)**  
**the one who gives people life...the one who gives people life (UST)**

Peter is using the expression **the Originator of Life** as another title for Jesus. This expression could be a reference to the way Jesus, as the Son of God, took part in the original creation of all life. It could also be a reference to the way Jesus gives spiritual life to all who believe in him. Or it could mean both things. In any event, Peter is drawing a contrast between the life-giving Jesus whom the people rejected and the life-taking murderer whom they asked Pilate to release. It may be best in your translation to bring out this contrast while leaving the specific meaning open. Alternate translation: “Jesus, who gives life rather than taking it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**from the dead (ULT)**  
**after he died (UST)**

Peter is using the adjective **dead** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “from among those who have died” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**we (ULT)**  
**We (UST)**

Peter is speaking at least of himself and John, and perhaps also of the other apostles, but not of the people he is addressing. So use the exclusive form of **we** in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Other languages may have other ways of indicating that **we** is exclusive here. Alternate translation: “we and the other apostles whom Jesus chose” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**we (ULT)**  
**We (UST)**

If you conclude that Peter is referring only to himself and John, and if your language uses dual forms, use the dual form of the pronoun **we** here, since it would apply to two people. (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of Life
- God
- raised

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> and you killed the Originator of Life, whom God raised from the dead, of which we are witnesses.

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> So you are responsible for the death of Jesus, the one who gives people life. But God brought him back to life after he died. We can testify that we saw Jesus many times after he became alive again.

- the dead
- witnesses

## **Translation Words - UST**

- the one who gives people life
- But God
- brought...back to life
- after he died
- can testify





## **Acts 3:16**

## by faith in his name, this one whom you see and know, his name has made strong (ULT)

Your language might naturally present the phrases in this sentence in a different order. Alternate translation: “this man whom you see and know had faith in his name, and his name has made him strong” (See: [Information Structure](#))

## in his name...his name (ULT) what Jesus could do...what...Jesus...could do (UST)

The pronoun **his** refers to Jesus in both of these instances. Alternate translation: “in the name of Jesus ... that name” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

## in his name...his name (ULT) what Jesus could do...what...Jesus...could do (UST)

Peter is using the **name** of Jesus figuratively to mean his authority or power. Alternate translation: “in the authority of Jesus ... the authority of Jesus” or “in the power of Jesus ... the power of Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## the faith that {is} through him has given to him (ULT) it is because he trusted in Jesus that he is now (UST)

The first instance of the pronoun **him** refers to Jesus, and the second instance refers to the man who had been lame. Alternate translation: “the faith that is through Jesus has given to this man” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

## the faith that {is} through him has given to him this complete health (ULT) it is because he trusted in Jesus that he is now completely healthy (UST)

Peter is speaking of **faith** figuratively as if it were a living thing that could have given **complete health** to the man. Alternate translation: “because this man had faith in Jesus, Jesus has given him this complete health” (See: [Personification](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [faith](#)
- [faith](#)
- [in...name](#)
- [name](#)
- [know](#)
- [has made strong](#)

## ULT

<sup>16</sup> And by [faith](#) in his [name](#), this one whom you see and [know](#), his [name has made strong](#). And the [faith](#) that {is} through him has given to him this complete health in the presence of all of you.

## UST

<sup>16</sup> [You recognize](#) this man whom you see standing here. {He is the man who used to beg for alms at the Beautiful Gate.} [He is now strong enough to stand on his own](#) because [he believed in what Jesus could do](#). Yes, [it is because he trusted](#) in Jesus that he is now completely healthy. All of you saw this happen.

## Translation Words - UST

- You recognize
- He is now strong enough to stand on his own
- he believed in
- it is because he trusted
- what...could do
- what...could do



## **Acts 3:17**

## And now (ULT)

Peter uses the expression **And now** to shift the people's attention away from the lame man so that he can speak to them directly. In your translation, use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that would be natural for this same purpose.

## brothers (ULT) my countrymen (UST)

Peter addresses the people figuratively as his **brothers** because they are related to him as fellow descendants of the founders of the Jewish nation. Alternate translation: "my kinsmen" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## brothers (ULT) my countrymen (UST)

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, Peter is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say "brothers and sisters" to indicate this. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## you acted in ignorance (ULT) you...killed Jesus because you did not know that he was the Messiah (UST)

Peter likely means that the people **acted in ignorance** of the fact that Jesus was the Messiah. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "you acted in ignorance of the fact that Jesus was the Messiah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## as also your rulers (ULT) and your leaders (UST)

Peter is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: "and that your rulers also acted in ignorance" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [I know](#)
- [as](#)
- [rulers](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [my countrymen](#)
- [I know](#)
- [and](#)
- [leaders](#)

## ULT

<sup>17</sup> And now, [brothers](#), [I know](#) that you acted in ignorance, [as](#) also your [rulers](#).

## UST

<sup>17</sup> "Now, [my countrymen](#), [I know](#) that you [and](#) your [leaders](#) killed Jesus because you did not know that he was the Messiah.





## **Acts 3:18**

**But what God foretold through the mouth of all the prophets, that his Christ would suffer, he has fulfilled thus (ULT)**

**God said through the prophets ahead of time that the Messiah he would send would suffer and die. And now, by what has happened, he has fulfilled what the prophets said (UST)**

Your language might naturally put first in this sentence the information that God **fulfilled** prophecies when Christ suffered. Alternate translation: "But in this way God has fulfilled what he foretold through the mouth of all the prophets, that his Christ would suffer" (See: [Information Structure](#))

**through the mouth of all the prophets (ULT)**  
**through the prophets (UST)**

Since Peter is speaking of a group of people, **the prophets**, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **mouth**. Alternate translation: "through the mouths of all the prophets"

**through the mouth of all the prophets (ULT)**  
**through the prophets (UST)**

Peter is figuratively using the **mouth** of the prophets to represent what they said by using their mouths. Alternate translation: "through what all the prophets said" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of all the prophets (ULT)**  
**the prophets (UST)**

Peter is using the word **all** as a generalization. It is true that the overall witness of Old Testament prophecy is that the Messiah would come first in humility and suffering, but not every prophet spoke specifically of the sufferings of Christ. Alternate translation: "of many prophets" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [of...prophets](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [that...would suffer](#)
- [he has fulfilled](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [that...would suffer and die](#)
- [he has fulfilled](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> But what [God](#) foretold through the mouth of all the [prophets](#), that his [Christ would suffer](#), [he has fulfilled](#) thus.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> [God](#) said through [the prophets](#) ahead of time that the [Messiah](#) he would send [would suffer and die](#). And now, by what has happened, [he has fulfilled](#) what the prophets said.

## Acts 3:19

### turn back (ULT)

### ask God to help you do what pleases him (UST)

Peter is speaking of his listeners figuratively as if they were traveling somewhere and had taken the wrong way and needed to **turn back** onto the right way. Alternate translation: “start obeying the Lord again” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for your sins to be wiped away (ULT)

### Then God will completely forgive you for sinning against him (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who will do the action. Alternate translation: “so that God will wipe away your sins” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### for your sins to be wiped away (ULT)

### Then God will completely forgive you for sinning against him (UST)

Peter is speaking of sins as if they would be physically **wiped away** when God forgave them. Alternate translation: “so that God will forgive your sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Repent](#)
- [turn back](#)
- [sins](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [stop living sinful lives](#)
- [ask God to help you do what pleases him](#)
- [for sinning against him](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> [Repent](#), therefore, and [turn back](#) for your [sins](#) to be wiped away,

### UST

<sup>19</sup> So [stop living sinful lives](#) and [ask God to help you do what pleases him](#). Then God will completely forgive you [for sinning against him](#).



## **Acts 3:20**

**so that times of refreshment may come from the face of the Lord (ULT)**  
**If you do that, there will be times when you will know that the Lord God is helping you (UST)**

Peter is speaking of these **times** figuratively as if they could actively **come** to his listeners on their own. Alternate translation: “so that the Lord may send you times of refreshing from his face” (See: [Personification](#))

**times of refreshment (ULT)**  
**times when you will know that...is helping you (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **refreshment**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as “refreshing” or “restful.” Alternate translation: “refreshing times” or “restful times” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**from the face of the Lord (ULT)**  
**when you will know that...the Lord God...is helping you (UST)**

Peter is using the term **face** figuratively to represent the presence of the Lord. Alternate translation: “from the presence of the Lord” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**he may send (ULT)**  
**he will send back to earth (UST)**

Peter is referring implicitly to Christ’s coming again. Alternate translation: “he may again send” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the one appointed for you (ULT)**  
**whom he has given to you (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “the one whom he has appointed for you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [times](#)
- [the face](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [he may send](#)
- [one appointed](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)

## ULT

<sup>20</sup> so that [times](#) of refreshment may come from [the face](#) of the [Lord](#) and [he may send](#) the [one appointed](#) for you, [Christ Jesus](#),

## UST

<sup>20</sup> If you do that, there will be [times when you will know that the Lord God is helping you](#). And some day [he will send back to earth the Messiah whom he has given to you](#). [That person is Jesus](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- times
- when you will know that...is helping you
- Lord God
- he will send back to earth
- the Messiah
- whom he has given
- That person is Jesus





## **Acts 3:21**

## whom it is necessary for heaven to receive

Peter is speaking figuratively of **heaven** as if it were a person who has welcomed Jesus into his home. Alternate translation: “who must remain in heaven” (See: [Personification](#))

## until the times of the restoration of all things (ULT)

## until the time when God causes all that he created to become new (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **restoration**, you could express the same idea with a verb such as “restore.” Alternate translation: “until the times when God will restore all things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## from the age (ULT)

## Long ago (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “long ago” (See: [Idiom](#))

## through the mouth of...holy prophets...of...his...prophets (ULT)

## holy...to tell that to people...and he chose...prophets (UST)

Peter is figuratively using the **mouth** of the prophets to represent what they said by using their mouths. Alternate translation: “through what his holy prophets said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [for heaven](#)
- [to receive](#)
- [the times](#)
- [of the restoration](#)
- [God](#)
- [the age](#)
- [holy](#)
- [of...prophets](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [will certainly stay](#)
- [in heaven](#)
- [the time](#)
- [when God causes...to become new](#)
- [Long ago](#)
- [God](#)
- [holy](#)
- [prophets](#)

## ULT

<sup>21</sup> whom it is necessary [for heaven to receive](#) until [the times of the restoration](#) of all things, about which [God](#) spoke from [the age](#) through the mouth of his [holy prophets](#).

## UST

<sup>21</sup> Jesus [will certainly stay in heaven](#) until [the time when God causes](#) all that he created [to become new](#). [Long ago](#) [God](#) promised to do that, and he chose [holy prophets](#) to tell that to people.



## **Acts 3:22**

**Moses indeed said, ‘The Lord our God will raise up for you a prophet like me from your brothers. You will listen to him according to everything—whatever he may speak to you**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: “Moses indeed said that the Lord our God would raise up a prophet like himself for us Israelites from among our brothers. Moses said that we were to listen to him according to everything—whatever he might speak to us” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**Moses (ULT)  
the prophet} Moses (UST)**

**Moses** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**The Lord our God (ULT)  
The Lord our God (UST)**

Some ancient manuscripts read “the Lord our God.” ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read “the Lord your God,” and still other ancient manuscripts read simply “the Lord God.” If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it has. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

**The Lord our God (ULT)  
The Lord our God (UST)**

Moses is speaking of himself and his fellow Israelites, whom he is addressing, so use the inclusive form of the word **our** in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**will raise up for you (ULT)  
will make...a prophet (UST)**

Here the expression **raise up** does not mean “bring back to life,” as it did in [2:24](#) and [2:32](#). In this context, it refers instead to God giving someone the mission to go as a prophet to certain people with a message for them. Alternate translation: “will send to you” (See: [Idiom](#))

**your brothers (ULT)  
you Israelites (UST)**

Moses is using the term **brothers** to mean people who are fellow descendants with his listeners of the founders of the Jewish nation. Alternate translation: “your kinsmen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> **Moses** indeed said, ‘**The Lord our God** <sup>[1]</sup> **will raise up** for you **a prophet like me** from your **brothers**. You will listen to him according to everything—whatever he may speak to you.

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> For example, {**the prophet**} **Moses** said this {about the Messiah}: **The Lord our God will make** one of you **Israelites a prophet like me**. You must do everything he tells you to do.

**You will listen to him according to everything (ULT)****You must do everything he (UST)**

Moses is using a future statement to give a command. Alternate translation: "You must listen to everything he tells you" (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#) )

**You will listen to him according to everything (ULT)****You must do everything he (UST)**

Here, **listen** is an idiom that means "obey." Alternate translation: "You must obey every command that he gives you" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Moses](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [will raise up](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [like](#)
- [brothers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the prophet](#)} [Moses](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [will make](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [like](#)



## **Acts 3:23**



**But it will be that every soul that does not listen to that prophet will be destroyed from the people (ULT)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: "Moses also said that every soul that did not listen to that prophet would be destroyed from the people" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**every soul that does not listen to that prophet will be destroyed from the people (ULT)**

**Those...who do not do what that prophet tells them will no longer belong to God's people. God will destroy them (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who will do the action. Alternate translation: "God will destroy from the people every soul that does not listen to that prophet" or see the next note for a further possibility. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**every soul that does not listen to that prophet will be destroyed from the people (ULT)**

**Those...who do not do what that prophet tells them will no longer belong to God's people. God will destroy them (UST)**

Moses could be using a future statement to give a command, in which case he would be telling the people to take this action. Alternate translation: "you must destroy from the people every soul that does not listen to that prophet" (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#))

**every soul that (ULT)**

**Those...who (UST)**

Moses is using one part of a person, the **soul**, to mean the entire person. Alternate translation: "every person who" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**that does not listen to that prophet (ULT)**

**who do not do what that prophet tells them (UST)**

Here, **listen** is an idiom that means "obey." Alternate translation: "does not obey that prophet" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [soul](#)
- [to...prophet](#)
- [people](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> But it will be that every [soul](#) that does not listen to that [prophet](#) will be destroyed from the [people](#).'

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> [Those](#) who do not do what that [prophet](#) tells them will no longer belong to God's [people](#). God will destroy them.'"

## Translation Words - UST

- Those
- prophet
- people



## **Acts 3:24**

## all...the prophets (ULT)

## all...the prophets (UST)

Here the phrase **all the prophets** is probably not the same kind of generalization that it seems to be in [3:18](#). It is true in a more literal sense that all the prophets **announced these days**. There was something in the messages of each one of them that pointed to the culmination of God's work in the coming of Jesus. So even if your language does not use generalizations for emphasis, you can translate these words just as Peter says them. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## And...from Samuel...those after him (ULT)

## Peter continued,} "In fact...Those prophets include Samuel...the ones who lived after him (UST)

Alternate translation: "beginning with Samuel and continuing with those who lived after he did"

## Samuel (ULT)

## Those prophets include Samuel (UST)

**Samuel** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## these days (ULT)

## the times we are now living in (UST)

Peter is using the word **days** idiomatically to mean a specific time. Alternate translation: "this time" or "these times" (See: [Idiom](#))

## these days (ULT)

## the times we are now living in (UST)

Peter is referring to a specific time to mean implicitly what is happening at that time. Alternate translation: "the things that are happening now" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [have...announced](#)
- [days](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [prophets](#)
- [have told about what would happen during](#)
- [times](#)
- [Those prophets include Samuel](#)

## ULT

<sup>24</sup> And indeed, all the [prophets](#) from [Samuel](#) and those after him, as many as have spoken, have also [announced](#) these [days](#).

## UST

<sup>24</sup> {Peter continued,} "In fact, all the [prophets have told about what would happen during](#) the [times](#) we are now living in. [Those prophets include Samuel](#) and the ones who lived after him, who all spoke about these events before they happened.



## **Acts 3:25**

**You are the sons of the prophets (ULT)  
What the prophets said long ago applies to  
you today...extends to you, their descendants  
(UST)**

Peter is using the word **sons** figuratively in the sense of “heirs,” by association with the way that children inherit from their parents. He means that the Israelites living at this time are going to receive something as a legacy from those who lived before them. Alternate translation: “You are the ones who are going to receive what the prophets promised” or “You are the ones who are going to experience what the prophets foretold” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the sons (ULT)  
applies...extends (UST)**

Although the term **sons** is masculine, Peter is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say “the sons and daughters” to indicate this. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**and of the covenant that God made with your fathers (ULT)  
And the solemn agreement that God made to bless our ancestors also (UST)**

The figurative sense of **sons** as “heirs” continues in this phrase. Alternate translation: “and who are going to receive what God promised to your fathers when he made a covenant with them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**with your fathers, saying to Abraham, ‘And in your seed will all the families  
of the earth be blessed (ULT)  
to bless our ancestors...He said to Abraham {about the Messiah}, ‘I will bless  
all the people groups on the earth as a result of what your descendant will  
do (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: “with your fathers when he said to Abraham that in his seed all the families of the earth would be blessed” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**your fathers (ULT)  
our ancestors (UST)**

Here, **fathers** figuratively means “ancestors.” Alternate translation: “your ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**your fathers (ULT)  
our ancestors (UST)**

Although the term **fathers** is masculine, Peter is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say “your fathers and mothers” to indicate this. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> You are the **sons** of the **prophets** and of the **covenant** that **God** made with your **fathers**, saying to **Abraham**, ‘And in your **seed** will all the families of the **earth** be **blessed**.’

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> **What the prophets said long ago applies** to you today. And the **solemn agreement** that **God** made to bless our **ancestors** also **extends** to you, their descendants. He said to **Abraham** {about the Messiah}, ‘**I will bless** all the people groups on the **earth** as a result of **what your descendant will do**.’”



**in your seed (ULT)**  
**as a result of...what your descendant will do (UST)**

The term **seed** figuratively means “offspring.” It is a word picture. Just as plants produce seeds that grow into many more plants, so people can have many offspring. Alternate translation: “through your descendants” or see the next note for a further possibility. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in your seed (ULT)**  
**as a result of...what your descendant will do (UST)**

As the apostle Paul notes in [Galatians 3:16](#), God used the singular form of the word **seed** when he said this to Abraham, and so the ultimate fulfillment of this promise came when God sent Jesus as the Savior for everyone in the world who would believe in him. That may also be what Peter has in view here, since he refers in the next verse to God’s “Servant,” meaning the Messiah. Alternate translation: “through the Messiah, who will be your descendant” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**will all the families of the earth be blessed (ULT)**  
**I will bless all the people groups on the earth (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “I will bless all the families of the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**all the families of the earth (ULT)**  
**all the people groups on the earth (UST)**

Here, **families** refers figuratively to people groups or nations by association with the way that many of them consist of people who have a common ancestry. Alternate translation: “all the nations of the world” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sons](#)
- [of...prophets](#)
- [of...covenant](#)
- [God](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [seed](#)
- [of...earth](#)
- [will...be blessed](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [What...prophets said long ago](#)
- [what...descendant will do](#)
- [applies...extends](#)
- [solemn agreement](#)
- [God](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [I will bless](#)

- [on...earth](#)



## **Acts 3:26**

## God, having raised up his Servant, sent him (ULT)

### So when God sent Jesus to the earth as the Messiah, he had him come (UST)

The expression **raised up** has the same meaning here as in [3:22](#). See how you translated it there. Alternate translation: “When God appointed Jesus as the Messiah, he sent him” (See: [Idiom](#))

## his Servant (ULT)

### Jesus...as the Messiah (UST)

See the discussion of the term **Servant** in the General Notes to this chapter, and see how you translated that term in [3:13](#). Alternate translation: “his Messiah”

## turning each of you from your wickedness (ULT)

### by getting...you...to stop...doing things that were wrong (UST)

Here, **turning** someone **from** something figuratively means leading that person to stop doing that thing. See how you translated the similar expression in [3:19](#). Alternate translation: “by leading every one of you to repent of your wickedness” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## turning each of you from your wickedness (ULT)

### by getting...you...to stop...doing things that were wrong (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **wickedness**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as “wicked.” Alternate translation: “by leading every one of you to stop doing wicked things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [having raised up](#)
- [Servant](#)
- [sent](#)
- [blessing](#)
- [turning](#)
- [wickedness](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [So when...sent...to the earth](#)
- [God](#)
- [doing things that were wrong](#)
- [Jesus...as the Messiah](#)
- [he had...come](#)
- [God intended for the Messiah to bless](#)
- [by getting...to stop](#)

## ULT

<sup>26</sup> [God, having raised up his Servant, sent him to you first, blessing you by turning each of you from your wickedness.](#)”

[3:22](#) <sup>[1]</sup> while other ancient manuscripts read and still others read

## UST

<sup>26</sup> [So when God sent Jesus to the earth as the Messiah, he had him come to you Israelites first. God intended for the Messiah to bless you by getting you to stop doing things that were wrong.](#)”

## Acts 4

### Acts 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set lines of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 4:25–26.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Unity

The first Christians wanted very much to be united. They wanted to believe the same things and share everything they owned and help those who needed help.

#### “Signs and wonders”

This phrase refers to things that only God can do. The Christians wanted God to do what only he could do so that people would believe that what they said about Jesus was true.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### The “head of the corner” or cornerstone (4:11)

The cornerstone was the first piece of stone that people put down when they were building a building out of stone. Peter refers to it as the “head of the corner” in 4:11. This is a metaphor for the most important part of something, the part on which everything else depends. To say that Jesus is the cornerstone of the church is to say that nothing in the church is more important than Jesus and that everything in the church depends on Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [faith](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “no other name” (4:12)

“There is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved” (Acts 4:12). As a note to this verse explains, in this expression the term “name” figuratively represents a person. So with these words, Peter was saying that no other person who has ever been on the earth or who will ever be on earth can save people. This statement might cause some controversy in some places today, but it is an essential part of the Christian message, and it should be translated so that its meaning is clear.



## **Acts 4:1**



**as...were speaking...they (ULT)**  
**While...were still speaking...Peter and John (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to Peter and John. Alternate translation: “as Peter and John were speaking” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**the captain of the temple (ULT)**  
**the officer in charge of the temple guard (UST)**

The temple had its own guards, and this man was their commanding officer. Alternate translation: “the commander of the temple guard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the Sadducees (ULT)**  
**some members of the Sadducee group (UST)**

**Sadducees** is the name of a group of Jewish priests. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the Sadducees (ULT)**  
**some members of the Sadducee group (UST)**

The Sadducees would have been particularly upset that Peter and John were saying that God raised Jesus from the dead, because they did not believe in the resurrection. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain that explicitly here. Alternate translation: “the Sadducees, who do not believe in the resurrection,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the Sadducees (ULT)**  
**some members of the Sadducee group (UST)**

Luke is using the name of the whole group to mean some of its members. Alternate translation: “some of the Sadducees” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [priests](#)
- [of...temple](#)
- [Sadducees](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)
- [They included priests who served in the temple](#)
- [of...temple guard](#)
- [some members of the Sadducee group](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And as they were speaking to the [people](#), the [priests](#) and the captain of the [temple](#) and the [Sadducees](#) came up to them,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> While Peter and John were still speaking to the [people](#), several men walked up and confronted them. [They included priests who served in the temple](#), the officer in charge of the [temple guard](#), and [some members of the Sadducee group](#).

## Acts 4:2

**greatly troubled because they were teaching (ULT)**

**These men were very angry because these two men were teaching (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to Peter and John. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "These men were greatly troubled because Peter and John were teaching" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**proclaiming in Jesus the resurrection that {is} from the dead (ULT)**

**They were telling the people that what God did for Jesus shows that God causes people to live again after they die (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **resurrection**, you could express the same idea with an equivalent phrase. Peter and John were saying that God would raise people from the dead in the same way that he had raised Jesus. Translate this in a way that allows **the resurrection** to refer to both Jesus' resurrection and the general resurrection of other people. Alternate translation: "proclaiming that God makes people alive again who have died, just as God had done for Jesus" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**that {is} from the dead (ULT)**  
**after they die (UST)**

Peter is using the adjective **dead** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: "from among those who have died" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were teaching](#)
- [people](#)
- [proclaiming](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [resurrection](#)
- [the dead](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were teaching](#)
- [people](#)
- [They were telling the people that](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [shows that God causes people to live again](#)
- [after they die](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> greatly troubled because they [were teaching](#) the [people](#) and [proclaiming](#) in [Jesus](#) the [resurrection](#) that {is} from the [dead](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> These men were very angry because these two men [were teaching](#) the [people](#). [They were telling the people that](#) what God did for [Jesus](#) shows that [God causes people to live again after they die](#).

## Acts 4:3

### And (ULT)

### So (UST)

Luke is using the word translated **And** to introduce what the men who came up to Peter and John did because they were so troubled by their teaching. Alternate translation: “So” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### they laid hands on them (ULT)

### these men arrested Peter and John (UST)

The pronoun **they** refers to the priests, the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees. The pronoun **them** refers to Peter and John. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “the priests, the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees laid hands on Peter and John” or “the men who had come up to Peter and John laid hands on them” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### they laid hands on them (ULT)

### these men arrested Peter and John (UST)

The expression **laid hands on** figuratively means to arrest someone by association with the way that arresting officers might physically take hold of a person with their **hands**. Alternate translation: “they arrested them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### put them in custody (ULT)

### put them in jail (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **custody**, you could express the same idea with a verb such as “imprison.” Alternate translation: “they imprisoned them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### since it was already evening (ULT)

### They did this because it was already evening (UST)

The implication is that the ruling council, which Luke describes in [4:5-6](#), would not meet to question anyone at night. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “since it was already evening and the council would not meet to question them at night” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [hands](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [these men arrested](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And they laid [hands](#) on them and put them in custody until the next day, since it was already evening.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> So [these men arrested](#) Peter and John and put them in jail. They did this because it was already evening and the Jewish council would have to wait until the next day to question them.

## Acts 4:4

### But (ULT) However (UST)

Luke uses the word **But** to introduce information about what happened after this much of the story as a result of the events within the story itself. This is not the end of the whole story, but it is the end of a significant part of it. Your language may have its own way of indicating how such information relates to a significant part of a story. (See: [End of Story](#))

### the word (ULT) Peter speak (UST)

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that Peter and John shared by using words. Alternate translation: “the message about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the number of the men (ULT) The number of men who believed in Jesus (UST)

Luke is not using the word **men** in a generic sense here. The figure of 5,000 is the number of the men alone. It does not include women and children. So it would not be accurate to translate **men** as “people.” Instead, if it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate this distinction explicitly. Alternate translation: “the number of the men alone, not counting the women and children,” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### became...about 5,000 (ULT) increased to...about five thousand (UST)

The word translated **became** could mean: (1) the community of believers in Jesus grew to a total of 5,000 as a result of the professions of faith on this day. Alternate translation: “in the community of believers grew to about 5,000” (2) “was,” and that would indicate that 5,000 men made professions of faith on this day. Alternate translation: “who put their faith in Jesus that day was about 5,000” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [believed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [put their faith in Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But many of those who had heard the word [believed](#), and the number of the men became about 5,000.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> However, many people who had heard Peter speak [put their faith in Jesus](#). The number of men who believed in Jesus increased to about five thousand.

## Acts 4:5

### And it happened that (ULT)

Luke uses this phrase to introduce a significant development in this story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for this purpose. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### their rulers and elders and scribes were gathered together (ULT)

Luke is implicitly describing the Sanhedrin, the Jewish ruling council, which consisted of these three groups of people. Luke describes this council explicitly as “the Sanhedrin” in [4:15](#). If it would be helpful to your readers, you could identify it by name here. Alternate translation: “the Sanhedrin, consisting of their rulers and elders and scribes, was gathered together” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### their rulers and elders and scribes (ULT)

The pronoun **their** refers to the Jewish people. Alternate translation: “the rulers and elders and scribes of the Jewish people” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### were gathered together (ULT)

### They all assembled in one place (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “gathered together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- rulers
- elders
- scribes
- were gathered together
- Jerusalem

## Translation Words - UST

- high priest called the other chief priests
- teachers of the Jewish laws
- other members of the...council
- They all assembled in one place
- Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And it happened that on the next day their rulers and elders and scribes were gathered together in Jerusalem,

### UST

<sup>5</sup> The next day the high priest called the other chief priests, the teachers of the Jewish laws, and the other members of the Jewish council. They all assembled in one place in Jerusalem.

**Acts 4:6****Annas the high priest, and Caiaphas (ULT)****Annas, the former high priest, was there.****Caiaphas, the new high priest, was also there (UST)**

Luke describes Annas as **the high priest**, but the actual situation was complicated. At this time the Romans were appointing the high priests for Judea. One Roman official had appointed Annas some years earlier, but ten years after that, another official deposed him and named his son-in-law Caiaphas high priest instead. However, the Jews still recognized Annas' claim to the position. If you decide to clarify this for your readers, it would probably be best to state the matter as simply as possible. Alternate translation: "Annas, whom the Jews recognized as the high priest, and Caiaphas, whom a Roman official had appointed as the high priest" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Annas...Caiaphas...John...Alexander (ULT)****Annas...Caiaphas, the new high priest...John...Alexander (UST)**

These are the names of four men. The **John** mentioned here was a member of the high priest's family. This is not the same John as the apostle. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**as many as were from the high priestly family (ULT)****other men who were related to the high priest (UST)**

Alternate translation: "all the other members of the high priestly family who were members of the council"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Annas](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [high priestly](#)
- [Caiaphas](#)
- [the...family](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Annas](#)
- [former high priest, was there](#)
- [the high priest](#)
- [Caiaphas, the new high priest](#)
- [related to](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> and [Annas](#) the [high priest](#), and [Caiaphas](#), and John, and Alexander, and as many as were from the [high priestly family](#).

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> [Annas](#), the [former high priest](#), was [there](#). [Caiaphas, the new high priest](#), was also there. And so were John and Alexander and other men who were [related to the high priest](#).

## Acts 4:7

having set them in {their} midst, they asked them (ULT)

They commanded guards to bring Peter and John into the room, and then they asked Peter and John (UST)

The pronoun **them** refers to Peter and John, and the pronouns **their** and **they** refer to the council members. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “when the council members had set Peter and John in their midst, the members asked them” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And having set them in {their} midst, they asked them, “By what **power** or in what **name** have you done this?”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They commanded guards to bring Peter and John into the room, and then they asked Peter and John, “**Who gave** you **the right** or **the ability** to do this?”

**By what power or in what name have you done this (ULT)**

**Who gave you the right or the ability to do this (UST)**

The words **power** and **name** (meaning authority; see next note) mean similar things. The council members may be using them together to ask a comprehensive or emphatic question. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine these terms in your translation. Alternate translation: “By whatever means were you able to do this?” (See: [Doublet](#) )

**in what name (ULT)**

**the ability (UST)**

Here, **name** refers figuratively to authority. Alternate translation: “by what authority” (See: [Metonymy](#) )

**you (ULT)**

**you (UST)**

Since the council members are speaking to two men, **you** would be dual if your language uses that form. (All other pronouns in this account that refer to Peter and John would also be dual, such as **them** in its two instances in this verse.) (See: [Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural](#) )

## Translation Words - ULT

- [power](#)
- [name](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Who gave...the right](#)
- [the ability](#)





## **Acts 4:8**

**Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said (ULT)**  
**As the Holy Spirit gave him power, Peter said...  
 listen to me (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. See how you translated the comparable expression in [2:4](#). Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit filled Peter and he said” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said (ULT)**  
**As the Holy Spirit gave him power, Peter said...  
 listen to me (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively of Peter as if he were a container that the Holy Spirit **filled**. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit inspired Peter and he said” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Rulers of the people and elders (ULT)**  
**You fellow Israelites who rule us and all of you elders (UST)**

Peter is addressing the entire council by referring to its two components. Some of the members had ruling responsibilities. Others, the **elders**, were added to the council to bring its total membership up to 70, since according to [Exodus 24:1](#), that was the number of elders who accompanied Moses when God confirmed the covenant with Israel at Mount Sinai. Alternate translation: “You members of the Sanhedrin” (See: [Merism](#))

**of the people (ULT)**  
**fellow Israelites...us (UST)**

Here, **the people** means specifically the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “of the people of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Peter
- filled with
- the Holy Spirit
- Rulers
- of...people
- elders

**Translation Words - UST**

- the Holy Spirit
- As...gave him power
- Peter
- fellow Israelites...us
- You...who rule
- all of you elders

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said to them, “Rulers of the people and elders,

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> As the Holy Spirit gave him power, Peter said to them in response, “You fellow Israelites who rule us and all of you elders, listen to me!

## Acts 4:9

### if we are being questioned today concerning a good deed to a sick man, by what means he was made well (ULT)

Peter is not suggesting seriously that the subject of the questioning is uncertain. He knows the subject, but he is suggesting ironically that it is uncertain so that he can describe it from his own perspective. The council asked by what power or authority he and John did “this,” implying that “this” was something bad, a public disturbance that troubled the authorities. In response, Peter asserts that “this” was instead something good, **a good deed to a sick man**. If it would be helpful to your readers, in your translation you could indicate the meaning that Peter is communicating through this irony. Alternate translation: “what we actually did was a good deed for a sick man, and if you want to know by what means he was made well” (See: [Irony](#))

### we...are being questioned (ULT) us...you are questioning (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “you are questioning us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### he was made well (ULT) he became able to walk (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “he became healthy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- a good deed
- was made well

## Translation Words - UST

- a good deed we did
- became able to walk

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> if we are being questioned today concerning a good deed to a sick man, by what means he was made well,

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Today you are questioning us about a good deed we did for a man who could not walk. You want to know how he became able to walk.



## **Acts 4:10**

**let it be known to you all and to all the people of Israel (ULT)**  
**So we want this whole council and all the other Israelites to know what has happened (UST)**

If your language does not use the third-person imperative in this way, you can state this in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “may this be known to you and to all the people of Israel” or “this should be known to you and to all the people of Israel” (See: [Third-Person Imperatives](#))

**let it be known to you all and to all the people of Israel (ULT)**  
**So we want this whole council and all the other Israelites to know what has happened (UST)**

The word translated **known** is an adjective, so this is not a passive verbal form. However, if your language does not use passive forms, it might be clearer for your readers if you use an expression that does not seem to be a passive verbal form. The adjective **known** expresses the result of action by a different agent, so you can use an active form with that agent as the subject. Alternate translation: “you and all the people of Israel, know” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to you all (ULT)**  
**this whole council (UST)**

The pronoun **you** refers to the council members. Alternate translation: “to all of you council members” or “to all of you who are questioning us” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**in the name (ULT)**  
**Jesus (UST)**

Here, **name** refers figuratively to power and authority. Alternate translation: “through the power” or “by the authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of Jesus Christ the Nazarene (ULT)**  
**Jesus...from Nazareth, the Messiah (UST)**

See how you translated this in [2:22](#) and [3:6](#). Alternate translation: “of Jesus Christ of Nazareth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> let it be **known** to you all and to all the **people of Israel** that in the **name of Jesus Christ the Nazarene**, whom you **crucified**, whom **God raised from the dead**, by this one this {man} stands before you healthy.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> **So we want** this whole council and all the **other Israelites to know what has happened**. This man is able to stand before you because **Jesus from Nazareth, the Messiah**, healed him. You **were responsible for the Romans executing Jesus by nailing him to a cross**. **But God brought Jesus back to life after they executed him**.

**whom you crucified (ULT)****You were responsible for the Romans executing Jesus by nailing him to a cross (UST)**

It was the Romans who literally crucified Jesus, but Peter says figuratively that these Jewish leaders crucified him because their demands led to his death. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:23](#). Alternate translation: “whom you demanded to be crucified” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**whom God raised from the dead (ULT)****But God brought Jesus back to life after they executed him (UST)**

As in [2:24](#), the idiom **raised up** means that God made Jesus alive again after he died. Alternate translation: “whom God made alive again after he died” (See: [Idiom](#))

**from the dead (ULT)****after they executed him (UST)**

Peter is using the adjective **dead** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “from among those who have died” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- known
- to...people
- God
- raised
- the dead
- to...people of Israel
- name
- of Jesus Christ the Nazarene
- Christ
- Nazarene
- crucified

**Translation Words - UST**

- So we want...to know what has happened
- other Israelites
- the Messiah
- were responsible for the Romans executing...by nailing...to a cross
- But God
- brought...back to life
- after they executed him
- other Israelites
- Jesus
- Jesus...from Nazareth, the Messiah
- Nazareth





## **Acts 4:11**

## He (ULT) Jesus the Messiah of Nazareth (UST)

The pronoun **He** refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: “Jesus” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## the stone that was rejected by you, the builders, which has become the head of the corner (ULT)

## The stone that the builders threw away has become the most important stone in the building.’ And you are those builders{, because you rejected Jesus (UST)

Peter is quoting from [Psalm 118:22](#), and the quotation contains a metaphor. This psalm is figuratively describing the Messiah as if he were a stone that builders chose not to use. This means that people will reject him. When the psalm says that this stone became the cornerstone, this means figuratively that God will nevertheless make the Messiah the ruler of these people. However, since this is a quotation from Scripture, we recommend that you translate the words directly rather than providing a non-figurative explanation of them, even if your language does not customarily use such figures of speech. If you want to explain the meaning of the metaphor, we recommend that you do that in a footnote rather than in the Bible text. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## that was rejected by you, the builders (ULT) that the builders threw away...And you are those builders{, because you rejected Jesus (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “that you, the builders, rejected” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the head...of the corner (ULT) the most important stone in the building (UST)

The phrase **the head of the corner** is an idiom that refers to a large stone with straight edges that builders would place down first and use as a reference to make sure that the walls of a stone building were straight and that the building was oriented in the right direction. Your language may have its own term for such a stone. You could also use a general expression. Alternate translation: “the cornerstone” or “the reference stone for the whole building” (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [was rejected](#)
- [the head](#)
- [the head...of the corner](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [threw away](#)

## ULT

<sup>11</sup> He is the stone that [was rejected](#) by you, the builders, which has become [the head of the corner](#).

## UST

<sup>11</sup> Jesus the Messiah of Nazareth is the one of whom the Scriptures say, ‘The stone that the builders [threw away](#) has become [the most important stone in the building](#).’ And you are those builders{, because you rejected Jesus}.

- the most important stone in the building
- the...stone



## **Acts 4:12**

**there is no salvation in anyone else (ULT)  
only Jesus can save us (UST)**

In Greek this is a double negative for emphasis, “there is no salvation in no one else.” The second negative does not cancel the first to create a positive meaning. If for emphasis your language uses double negatives that do not cancel one another, it would be appropriate to use that construction here. You could also state the meaning positively. Alternate translation: “he is the only one in whom there is salvation” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**there is no salvation in anyone else (ULT)  
only Jesus can save us (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **salvation**, you could express the same idea with a verb such as “save.” Alternate translation: “he is the only one who is able to save” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**no...there is...other name under heaven given (ULT)  
no...God has given...other person in the world (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “God has not given any other name under heaven” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**no...there is...other name...by which we must be saved (ULT)  
no...God has given...other person...who can save us {from the guilt of our sins (UST)**

Here, **name** figuratively represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: “there is no other person ... by whom we must be saved” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**under heaven (ULT)  
in the world (UST)**

This is an idiom. See how you translated it in [2:5](#). Alternate translation: “on earth” (See: [Idiom](#))

**among men (ULT)  
us (UST)**

Peter is using the term **men** in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “among people” or “to people” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**by which we must be saved (ULT)  
who can save us {from the guilt of our sins (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “that can save us” or, if you translate “name” as “person,” “who can save us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> And there is no **salvation** in anyone else, for there is no other **name** under **heaven** given among men by which we must **be saved**.”

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> {So you should no longer reject him, because} only Jesus **can save us**. For God has given us no other **person in the world** who can **save us** {**from the guilt of our sins**}!”

## **we (ULT)**

## **us (UST)**

Peter is using the word **we** to refer to himself and his listeners, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [salvation](#)
- [be saved](#)
- [name](#)
- [heaven](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [can save us](#)
- [save...from the guilt of our sins](#)
- [person](#)
- [in the world](#)





## **Acts 4:13**

**seeing (ULT)****The Jewish leaders recognized that (UST)**

Luke is using the word **seeing** idiomatically to mean that the council members noticed this and found it significant. Alternate translation: “taking note of” or “impressed with” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the boldness of Peter and John (ULT)****Peter and John were not afraid of them (UST)**

Here the abstract noun **boldness** refers to the way in which Peter and John responded to the Jewish leaders. If your language does not use an abstract noun for this idea, you can express the same idea with an adverb or an adjective. Alternate translation: “how boldly Peter and John had spoken” or “how bold Peter and John were” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**realizing (ULT)****They...realized (UST)**

The implication is that the Jewish leaders realized this because of the way Peter and John spoke. Alternate translation: “realizing from the way they spoke” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they marveled, and they recognized them, that they had been with Jesus (ULT)**

Here the pronoun **they** refers in its first two instances to the council members, and in its third instance it refers to Peter and John, as does the pronoun **them**. It may be helpful to your readers to clarify this and to state the meaning here more concisely. Alternate translation: “the council members marveled, and they recognized that Peter and John had been with Jesus” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**they were uneducated and ordinary men (ULT)**

The words **uneducated** and **ordinary** mean similar things. Both words indicate that Peter and John had no formal education. Luke uses them together for emphasis, to express from the council members’ perspective how amazed they were. Alternate translation: “they had no formal education at all” (See: [Doublet](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [boldness](#)
- [of Peter](#)
- [John](#)
- [realizing](#)
- [they recognized](#)
- [they marveled](#)
- [Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> And seeing the [boldness of Peter](#) and [John](#), and [realizing](#) that they were uneducated and ordinary men, [they marveled](#), and [they recognized](#) them, that they had been with [Jesus](#).

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> The Jewish leaders recognized that [Peter](#) and [John were not afraid of them](#). They also [realized](#) that these two men were ordinary people who had not studied in schools. [So the leaders were amazed](#). [They knew](#) that these men had spent time with [Jesus](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- John
- were not afraid of them
- They...realized
- They knew
- So the leaders were amazed
- Jesus

**Acts 4:14****the...man...who had been healed (ULT)  
the...man...who had become able to walk  
again (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “the man whom Peter and John had healed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**who had been healed standing with them,  
they had nothing (ULT)  
who had become able to walk again standing  
there with Peter and John. So they were not  
able (UST)**

The pronoun **them** refers to Peter and John, and the pronoun **they** refers to the council members. It may be helpful to your readers to clarify this. Alternate translation: “standing with Peter and John, the council members had nothing” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**they had nothing to say in opposition (ULT)  
So they were not able to say anything to contradict them (UST)**

The implication is that anything the council members said **in opposition** would have been in an attempt to discredit the claim that the man had been healed in the name of Jesus. But there was nothing they could say, since the evidence that the claim was true was right in front of them in the person of the formerly lame man standing on his own. Alternate translation: “they had nothing to say to discredit the account” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [who had been healed](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [who had become able to walk again](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> But seeing the man [who had been healed](#) standing with them, they had nothing to say in opposition.

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> They also saw the man [who had become able to walk again](#) standing there with Peter and John. So they were not able to say anything to contradict them.

**Acts 4:15**

**having commanded...them to go outside the Sanhedrin, they conferred among themselves (ULT)**

**The Jewish leaders told guards...After they did so...to take Peter, John, and this man outside of the room where they were meeting...the leaders talked with each other {about Peter and John (UST)**

The pronoun **them** refers at least to Peter and John, and probably also to the man who was healed, while the pronoun **they** refers to the council members. It may be helpful to your readers to clarify this.

Alternate translation: "having commanded Peter and John and the man who was healed to go outside the Sanhedrin, the council members conferred among themselves" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**the Sanhedrin (ULT)  
of the room where they were meeting (UST)**

**Sanhedrin** is the name of the Jewish ruling council. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the Sanhedrin (ULT)  
of the room where they were meeting (UST)**

Luke is figuratively using the name of the Jewish ruling council to mean the meeting place of that council. Alternate translation: "the place where the Sanhedrin met" or "the council chamber" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having commanded](#)
- [Sanhedrin](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [The Jewish leaders told guards...After they did so](#)
- [of the room where they were meeting](#)

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> But [having commanded](#) them to go outside the [Sanhedrin](#), they conferred among themselves,

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> [The Jewish leaders told guards](#) to take Peter, John, and this man outside [of the room where they were meeting](#). [After they did so](#), the leaders talked with each other {about Peter and John}.

## Acts 4:16

### What should we do to these men (ULT) There is nothing that we can do to punish these two men (UST)

This could mean: (1) the Jewish leaders were using the question form to express their frustration because they realize that they cannot punish Peter and John. As [4:21](#) indicates explicitly, and as the leaders suggest here, they are afraid of how the people might respond if they do. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "It is very difficult to know what we should do to these men!" (2) the leaders were asking one another a genuine question, because ultimately they do decide to do something to Peter and John. They warn them not to speak or teach in the name of Jesus, with an implied threat of punishment if they do. In that case it would be accurate to translate this as a question. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to everyone living in Jerusalem (ULT) widely in Jerusalem (UST)

This is a generalization that the leaders are making to emphasize how widely the news of the healing has spread. Alternate translation: "people who live throughout Jerusalem" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### a notable sign (ULT) of the amazing miracle (UST)

Here the word **sign** has the same sense that it has in the phrase "wonders and signs" in [2:22](#) and [2:43](#). It means a miracle. Alternate translation: "a remarkable miracle"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [it is evident](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [a...sign](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The news...has spread](#)
- [of the...miracle](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> saying, "What should we do to these men? For [it is evident](#) to everyone living [in Jerusalem](#) that a notable [sign](#) has happened through them, and we are not able to deny it.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> They said, "There is nothing that we can do to punish these two men! [The news of the](#) amazing [miracle](#) that they have done [has spread](#) widely in [Jerusalem](#). So we cannot tell people that it did not happen!



## **Acts 4:17**



**so that it may not be spread unto more (ULT)  
we must not allow any more...to hear what  
they have been teaching about this Jesus  
(UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “so that it does not spread” or “so that they will not spread it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**so that it may not be spread unto more (ULT)  
we must not allow any more...to hear what  
they have been teaching about this Jesus  
(UST)**

By **it**, the council members do not mean the news of the man’s healing, since they have already said that everyone in Jerusalem knows about it. They mean the teaching that Jesus is Messiah, since they then try to prevent this from spreading by not allowing the apostles to speak to anyone about Jesus. Alternate translation: “so that this teaching about Jesus does not spread” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**unto more (ULT)  
any more (UST)**

Alternate translation: “any further”

**to speak in this name (ULT)  
to tell...about the one who they say gave them the power to heal this man  
(UST)**

Here, **name** figuratively represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: “to speak about this person Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**no longer to speak in this name to any of men (ULT)  
if they continue to tell other people about the one who they say gave them  
the power to heal this man (UST)**

In Greek this is a double negative for emphasis, “no longer to speak in this name to none of men.” The second negative does not cancel the first to create a positive meaning. If for emphasis your language uses double negatives that do not cancel one another, it would be appropriate to use that construction here. You could also state the meaning positively. Alternate translation: “to stop speaking in this name to any of men” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**to any of men (ULT)  
other people (UST)**

Here, **men** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “to any person” or “to anyone” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> But so that it may not be spread unto more among the **people**, let us warn them no longer to speak in this **name** to any of men.”

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> However, we must not allow any more **people** to hear what they have been teaching about this Jesus. So we must tell these men that we will punish them if they continue to tell other people about **the one who they say gave them the power to heal this man.**”

## Translation Words - ULT

- people
- name

## Translation Words - UST

- people
- the one who they say gave them the power to heal this man



## **Acts 4:18**

**And (ULT)****So (UST)**

Luke uses the word translated **And** to introduce what the council members did as a result of their discussion. Alternate translation: "So" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**summoning them, they commanded them (ULT)****the Jewish leaders told the guards to bring them into the room again. After the guards had done so, they told them both that they were...forbidden (UST)**

The pronoun **them** refers in both instances to Peter and John, and the pronoun **they** refers to the council members. It may be helpful to your readers to clarify this. Alternate translation: "summoning Peter and John, the council members commanded them" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**neither to speak nor to teach (ULT)****After the guards had done so, they told them both that they were... forbidden...to speak or teach (UST)**

The words **speak** and **teach** mean similar things. The council members may be using them together for emphasis. Alternate translation: "not to say anything publicly" (See: [Doublet](#) )

**in the name of Jesus (ULT)****about Jesus (UST)**

Here, **name** figuratively represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: "about this person Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#) )

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [summoning](#)
- [they commanded them](#)
- [to teach](#)
- [name](#)
- [of Jesus](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the Jewish leaders told the guards to bring...into the room again](#)
- [After the guards had done so, they told them both that they were...forbidden](#)
- [teach](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> And [summoning](#) them, [they](#) [commanded them](#) neither to speak nor to [teach](#) at all in the [name of Jesus](#).

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> So [the Jewish leaders](#) [told the guards](#) to [bring](#) them [into the room again](#). [After the guards had done so](#), [they](#) [told them both](#) that [they were](#) completely [forbidden](#) to speak or [teach](#) about [Jesus](#).

## Acts 4:19

### Peter...answering...Peter...and John said (ULT) Peter...Peter...and John told...in response (UST)

Together the words **answering** and **said** mean that Peter and John responded to the council. Alternate translation: "Peter and John responded" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### Peter...answering...Peter...and John said (ULT) Peter...Peter...and John told...in response (UST)

This could mean: (1) Peter and John each said different parts of the quotation in [4:19-20](#). (2) Peter spoke these words on behalf of both of them, since the Holy Spirit had inspired him to speak to the council in [4:8-12](#). Alternate translation: "Peter responded on their behalf" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Whether it is right before God (ULT) whether you think God would want us (UST)

Here the phrase **before God** refers to God's opinion by association with the way that God would assess anything that came to his attention in front of him. Alternate translation: "Whether God thinks it is right" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### to listen to you rather than to God (ULT) In order to obey your command, we would have to disobey God{, who commanded us to tell everyone about Jesus...to obey you instead of him (UST)

Here, **listen** is an idiom that means "obey." Alternate translation: "to obey you rather than God" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- John
- right
- God
- to God (2)
- you judge

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- John
- God would want us
- God...who commanded us to tell everyone about Jesus...him (2)
- We will let you decide
- God would want us

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But answering, Peter and John said to them, "Whether it is right before God to listen to you rather than to God, you judge.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> But Peter and John told them in response, "In order to obey your command, we would have to disobey God{, who commanded us to tell everyone about Jesus}. We will let you decide whether you think God would want us to obey you instead of him.

**Acts 4:20****For (ULT)****But as for us (UST)**

Peter and John are using the word **For** to introduce the reason why the council needs to judge whether it would be right for them to obey the council rather than God. Alternate translation: “The reason why you must judge whom we should obey is that” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**we...we have seen and heard (ULT)****we...what we saw Jesus do and what we heard him teach (UST)**

Peter and John are using the word **we** to refer to themselves but not to their listeners, so use the exclusive form of the word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**are not able...we...not to speak (ULT)****cannot obey you...we...We will not stop telling people (UST)**

You could state the meaning of this double negative positively. Alternate translation: “we must speak” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> For we are not able not to speak what we have seen and heard.”

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> But as for us, we cannot obey you. We will not stop telling people about what we saw Jesus do and what we heard him teach.”

## Acts 4:21

**So, having warned them further, they released them (ULT)**

**Then the Jewish leaders again told Peter and John not to disobey them. But then they let them go (UST)**

The pronoun **them** refers in both instances to Peter and John, and the pronoun **they** refers to the council members. It may be helpful to your readers to clarify this. Alternate translation: “having warned Peter and John further, the council members released them” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**on account of the people (ULT)**  
**and they did not want to upset the people (UST)**

The implication is that the Jewish leaders were afraid that the people would riot if they punished Peter and John. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “They were afraid that if they did punish Peter and John, the people would riot” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they were all glorifying God (ULT)**  
**throughout Jerusalem people were praising God (UST)**

Here, **all** is a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: “large numbers of them were glorifying God” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- they might punish
- people
- they were...glorifying
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- without punishing
- people were praising
- God
- people

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> So, having warned them further, they released them, finding nothing for which **they might punish** them, on account of the **people**, for **they were** all **glorifying God** for what had happened.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Then the Jewish leaders again told Peter and John not to disobey them. But then they let them go **without punishing** them. The leaders knew that throughout Jerusalem **people were praising God** for what had happened {to the man who could not walk, and they did not want to upset the **people**}.



## Acts 4:22

**For the man to whom this sign of healing had happened was more than 40 years old (ULT)  
The people were praising God because {this was a remarkable miracle}. The man whom Peter and John had healed by doing this miracle was over forty years old, {and he had never before walked in his life (UST)}**

In this verse, Luke provides background information about the age of the man who was healed to help readers understand why the people considered his healing such a remarkable miracle. In your translation, present this background information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. (See: [Background Information](#))

### For (ULT)

**The people were praising God because {this was a remarkable miracle (UST)}**

Luke is using the word **For** to introduce the reason why the people were glorifying God. Alternate translation: “The people were glorifying God because” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### the man to whom this sign of healing had happened (ULT)

**The man whom Peter and John had healed by doing this miracle (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively as if the **healing** had **happened** on its own. Alternate translation: “the man whom Peter and John had miraculously healed” (See: [Personification](#))

### this sign of healing (ULT)

**whom Peter and John had healed...this miracle (UST)**

Luke is using the possessive form to describe a **sign** that consisted of a **healing**. The word **sign** has the same sense here that it has in the phrase “wonders and signs” in [2:22](#) and [2:43](#). It means a miracle. Alternate translation: “this miraculous healing” (See: [Possession](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [sign](#)
- [of healing](#)
- [years old](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [whom Peter and John had healed](#)
- [miracle](#)
- [years old, {and he had never before walked in his life](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> For the man to whom this [sign of healing](#) had happened was more than 40 [years old](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The people were praising God because {this was a remarkable miracle}. The man [whom Peter and John had healed](#) by doing this [miracle](#) was over forty [years old](#), {[and he had never before walked in his life](#)}.

## Acts 4:23

### having been released (ULT)

#### After Peter and John left the council (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who did the action. Alternate translation: “after the council members had released Peter and John” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they came to {their} own people (ULT) they met with the others who believed in Jesus (UST)

In a context such as this, your language might say “went” instead of **came**. Alternate translation: “they went to their own people” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### their} own people (ULT) the others who believed in Jesus (UST)

The phrase **their own people** refers to the community of believers in Jesus. Alternate translation: “the other believers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the chief priests and the elders (ULT) the people on the ruling council (UST)

As Peter does in [4:8](#), here Luke is referring to the entire council by naming its two components. Alternate translation: “the members of the Sanhedrin” (See: [Merism](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [reported](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [elders](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [told them](#)
- [the people on the ruling council](#)
- [the people on the ruling council](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But having been released, they came to {their} own people and [reported](#) all that the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#) had said to them.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> After Peter and John left the council, they met with the others who believed in Jesus and [told them](#) everything that [the people on the ruling council](#) had said to them.



## **Acts 4:24**

**they...having heard...raised (ULT)**  
**the others who believed in Jesus...When...  
 heard this...aloud (UST)**

The phrase **having heard** refers to the other believers, but the pronoun **they** seems to include Peter and John as well, since those who pray ask for boldness to keep speaking the message about Jesus (4:29). It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “when the other believers heard this report, together with Peter and John they raised” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**raised their voice (ULT)**  
**aloud (UST)**

Since Luke is referring to a group of people, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **voice**. Alternate translation: “they raised their voices”

**raised their voice (ULT)**  
**aloud (UST)**

The expression **they raised their voice** is an idiom that means they spoke loudly. Alternate translation: “they prayed loudly” or “they prayed out loud” (See: [Idiom](#))

**unanimously (ULT)**  
**together (UST)**

The word **unanimously** indicates that the apostles and other believers shared a common commitment and purpose and that there was no strife among them. See how you translated the same expression in 1:14. Alternate translation: “with one accord” or “harmoniously”

**you {are} (ULT)**  
**You (UST)**

The word **you** is singular, and it refers to God. The same is true of the words “you” and “your” in 4:25–30. You may have decided to use a formal form of “you” in your translation in such cases. (See: [Forms of ‘You’ — Formal or Informal](#) )

**one having made the heaven and the earth and the sea and all that {is} in them (ULT)**

The believers are referring to all of creation by naming its components. Alternate translation: “who created everything that exists” (See: [Merism](#))

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> And having heard, they raised **their voice** unanimously to **God** and said, “**Lord**, you {are} the one having made the **heaven** and the **earth** and the sea and all that {is} in them,

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> When the others who believed in Jesus heard this, they prayed together **aloud** to **God**, “**O Lord!** You made the **sky**, the **earth**, the oceans, and everything in them.

## God...heaven (ULT)

## God...sky (UST)

The believers are using the word translated **heaven** in one of its specific senses to mean the sky. Alternate translation: "the sky"

### Translation Words - ULT

- their voice
- God
- Lord
- heaven
- earth

### Translation Words - UST

- aloud
- God
- O Lord
- sky
- earth



## **Acts 4:25**



**the one having said by the Holy Spirit from the mouth of our father David, your servant (ULT)**

**Your Holy Spirit caused our ancestor, King David, who served you, to write these words (UST)**

The word **mouth** refers figuratively to what David said by using his mouth. Alternate translation: “the one whose Holy Spirit inspired our father David, your servant, to say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**one having said by the Holy Spirit from the mouth of our father David, your servant, ‘Why did the nations rage, and the peoples imagine useless things (ULT)**

**Holy Spirit caused our ancestor, King David, who served you, to write these words: ‘Why did the people groups of the world become angry and why did they plan uselessly {against God (UST)**

As the believers pray together, they quote from one of the psalms that David composed, [Psalm 2:1–2](#). If your readers would misunderstand this, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: “whose Holy Spirit inspired our father David, your servant, to ask why the nations raged and why the peoples imagined useless things.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**our (ULT)**

**our (UST)**

The believers are using the word **our** to refer to themselves but not to God, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**of...father (ULT)**

**ancestor (UST)**

Here, **father** figuratively means “ancestor.” Alternate translation: “ancestor” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**servant (ULT)**

**who served (UST)**

The believers are using the word **servant** here in its ordinary sense, not as a title for the Messiah, so it would not be appropriate to translate it as “Messiah,” as you may have done when it was a title in [3:13](#) and [3:26](#).

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> the one having said by [the Holy Spirit](#) from the mouth of our [father David](#), your [servant](#), ‘Why did [the nations rage](#), and [the peoples](#) imagine useless things?’

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> Your [Holy Spirit](#) caused our [ancestor, King David, who served you](#), to write these words: ‘Why did [the people groups of the world become angry](#) and why did [they](#) plan uselessly {against God}?’

**Why did the nations rage, and the peoples imagine useless things (ULT)**  
**Why did the people groups of the world become angry and why did they plan uselessly {against God (UST)}**

Here some words have been left out that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. You can supply these words from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: "Why did the nations rage, and why did the peoples imagine useless things" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Why did the nations rage, and the peoples imagine useless things (ULT)**  
**Why did the people groups of the world become angry and why did they plan uselessly {against God (UST)}**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. However, if the repetition might be confusing, you could connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: "Why did the nations rage, indeed, why did the peoples imagine useless things" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Why did the nations rage, and the peoples imagine useless things (ULT)**  
**Why did the people groups of the world become angry and why did they plan uselessly {against God (UST)}**

In this psalm, David uses the question form to emphasize the futility of opposing God. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "The nations should not have raged, and the peoples should not have imagined useless things!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the nations (ULT)**  
**the people groups of the world (UST)**

The term **nations** refers to people groups that are not Jewish. Alternate translation: "the Gentiles" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**useless things (ULT)**  
**uselessly {against God (UST)}**

The phrase **useless things** implicitly describes plans to oppose God, which can never succeed. Alternate translation: "ways to oppose God, which always prove useless" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [of...father](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [did...rage](#)
- [the peoples](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- Holy Spirit
- ancestor
- King David
- who served
- the people groups of the world
- become angry
- they



## **Acts 4:26**

**The kings of the earth took their stand and the rulers were gathered to the same against the Lord and against his Christ (ULT)**  
**The kings in the world prepared to fight, and the rulers joined with them to oppose the Lord God and the one whom he had chosen to be the Messiah (UST)**

This is the rest of the quotation from Psalm 2 that the believers started in 4:25. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: "David said that the kings of the earth had taken their stand and the rulers had gathered to the same against the Lord and against his Christ" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> The [kings](#) of the [earth](#) took their stand and the [rulers were gathered](#) to the same against the [Lord](#) and against his [Christ](#).'

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> The [kings](#) in the [world](#) prepared to fight, and the [rulers joined with them](#) to oppose the [Lord God](#) and the one whom he had chosen to be the [Messiah](#).'

**The kings of the earth took their stand and the rulers were gathered to the same (ULT)**  
**The kings in the world prepared to fight, and the rulers joined with them (UST)**

In keeping with the conventions of Hebrew poetry, these two phrases mean basically the same thing. If the repetition might be confusing for your readers, you could connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: "The kings of the earth took their stand, yes, the rulers were gathered to the same" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**The kings of the earth took their stand (ULT)**  
**The kings in the world prepared to fight (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "The kings of the earth lined up their troops for battle" or "The kings of the earth formed their battle lines" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the rulers were gathered (ULT)**  
**the rulers joined with them (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "the rulers gathered" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to the same (ULT)**  
**joined with them (UST)**

See the discussion of this phrase in Part 3 of the Introduction to Acts. Here it could mean "by agreement" or "in the same place." You could use either phrase as an alternate translation.

## **the Lord...his Christ (ULT)**

## **the Lord God...the one whom he had chosen to be the Messiah (UST)**

Here the word **Lord** refers to God and the word **Christ** refers to the Messiah. Alternate translation: "God the Lord ... his Messiah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- kings
- of...earth
- rulers
- were gathered
- Lord
- Christ

### **Translation Words - UST**

- kings
- in...world
- rulers
- joined with them
- Lord God
- one...Messiah





## **Acts 4:27**

**Herod (ULT)****Herod (UST)**

**Herod** is the name of a man. He was the official whom the Romans appointed to rule Galilee during the time of Jesus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Pontius Pilate (ULT)****Pontius Pilate (UST)**

This is the full name of the man who was the governor of Judea during the time of Jesus. See how you translated the name **Pilate** in [3:13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**were gathered together (ULT)****joined together (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “gathered together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in this city (ULT)****in this city of Jerusalem (UST)**

The phrase **this city** refers to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “here in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Servant (ULT)****Messiah (UST)**

Here the word **Servant** is a title for the Messiah. See the discussion of that term in the General Notes to chapter 3, and see how you translated it in [3:13](#) and [3:26](#). Alternate translation: “Messiah”

**whom you anointed (ULT)****and even though...had sent him (UST)**

In the Old Testament, ceremonial oil was poured on a person who was being given the authority to assume an office or to do a special task. The believers are speaking figuratively of anointing to indicate that God appointed Jesus to be the Messiah. Alternate translation: “whom you appointed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [truth](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [you anointed](#)
- [Pontius Pilate](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [the people](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> For in [truth](#) both [Herod](#) and [Pontius Pilate](#), with [the nations](#) and [the people of Israel](#), [were gathered together](#) in this city against your [holy Servant Jesus](#), whom [you anointed](#),

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> [What David said is true!](#) Both [Herod](#) and [Pontius Pilate](#), along with [people who were Israelites](#) and [people who were not](#), [joined together](#) in this city of Jerusalem to oppose [Jesus](#). They opposed [him even though he had done nothing wrong and even though](#) you, God, [had sent](#) him as the [Messiah](#).

- the people of Israel
- were gathered together
- holy
- Servant

## Translation Words - UST

- What David said is true
- Herod
- even though he had done nothing wrong
- and even though...had sent
- Messiah
- Pontius Pilate
- people
- people who were Israelites
- people who were not
- joined together
- Jesus...him

## Acts 4:28

**all that your hand and your counsel had predetermined to happen (ULT)  
no more than you allowed because it was what you had decided long ago would happen (UST)**

Here, **hand** figuratively means God's power and **counsel** figuratively means God's plan. Alternate translation: "all that your power and your plan had predetermined to happen" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**all that your hand and your counsel had predetermined to happen (ULT)  
no more than you allowed because it was what you had decided long ago would happen (UST)**

The words **hand** and **counsel**, joined by **and**, are expressing a single idea. The word **hand**, meaning "power," tells by what means God intended to carry out his **counsel**, that is, his plan. Alternate translation: "all that you planned in advance to make happen by your power" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

**all that your hand and your counsel had predetermined to happen (ULT)  
no more than you allowed because it was what you had decided long ago would happen (UST)**

The believers are speaking figuratively of God's **hand** and his **counsel** (that is, his power and his plan) as if they had **predetermined** what would happen to Jesus. They mean that God himself had done this. Alternate translation: "all that you planned in advance to make happen by your power" (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [counsel](#)
- [had predetermined](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [allowed](#)
- [it was what...had decided long ago](#)
- [it was what...had decided long ago](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> to do all that your [hand](#) and your [counsel had predetermined](#) to happen.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> {But when they opposed Jesus,} they did no more than you [allowed](#) because [it was what you had decided long ago](#) would happen.



## **Acts 4:29**

**And now, Lord (ULT)****So now, Lord (UST)**

The believers use the expression **And now** to direct God's attention to the request they are making in light of what they have said to this point in their prayer. In your translation, use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for this same purpose.

**look upon their threats (ULT)****listen to what they are saying about how they will punish us (UST)**

The phrase **look upon** is an idiomatic way of asking God to pay attention to the threats that the Jewish leaders have made against the believers. Alternate translation: "pay attention to the threats they have made" (See: [Idiom](#))

**to your servants (ULT)****who serve you (UST)**

The believers are speaking of themselves in the third person. If that would be confusing to your readers, you can use the first person in your translation. Alternate translation: "to us, your servants" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**your word (ULT)****about Jesus (UST)**

The believers are using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that God has told them to share by using words. Alternate translation: "the message about Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**with all boldness (ULT)****without being afraid at all (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **boldness**, you could express the same idea with an adverb such as "boldly." The word **all** is an intensifier. Alternate translation: "very boldly" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Lord](#)
- [to...servants](#)
- [word](#)
- [boldness](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Lord](#)
- [who serve](#)
- [about Jesus](#)
- [without being afraid](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> And now, [Lord](#), look upon their threats and grant to your [servants](#) to speak your [word](#) with all [boldness](#)

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> So now, [Lord](#), listen to what they are saying about how they will punish us! Help us [who serve](#) you to speak [about Jesus without being afraid](#) at all!

## Acts 4:30

**as you stretch out your hand to heal and for signs and wonders to happen (ULT)**

**Use your power to do great healings and many other miraculous deeds (UST)**

Here the **hand** figuratively represents God's power. To **stretch out** the hand means to use it. So this is a prayer for God to do powerful things. Alternate translation: "as you do powerful things to heal people and to make signs and wonders happen" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**signs and wonders (ULT)**

**many other miraculous deeds (UST)**

The terms **signs** and **wonders** mean similar things. Luke is using them together for emphasis. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:43](#). Alternate translation: "great miracles" (See: [Doublet](#))

**through the name (ULT)**

**that will show the authority you have given to (UST)**

Here, **name** refers figuratively to authority. Alternate translation: "by the authority" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the name of your holy Servant Jesus**

Here the word **Servant** is a title for the Messiah. See the discussion of that term in the General Notes to chapter 3, and see how you translated it in [3:13](#), [3:26](#), and [4:27](#). Alternate translation: "the name of Jesus, your holy Messiah"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [heal](#)
- [signs](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [name](#)
- [holy](#)
- [of...Servant](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [power](#)
- [great healings](#)
- [many other miraculous deeds](#)
- [many other miraculous deeds](#)
- [authority you have given to](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [chosen](#)
- [Messiah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> as you stretch out your [hand](#) to [heal](#) and for [signs](#) and [wonders](#) to happen through the [name](#) of your [holy Servant Jesus](#)."

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Use your [power](#) to do [great healings](#) and [many other miraculous deeds](#) that will show the [authority you have given to Jesus](#), your [chosen Messiah!](#)"





## **Acts 4:31**

**And (ULT)**

This verse is the end of the whole story of how the lame man was healed and how Peter and John were arrested as a result. Luke uses the word translated **And** to introduce information about what happened after the story as a result of the events within the story itself. Your language may have its own way of indicating how such information relates to a story. (See: [End of Story](#))

**in which they were gathered together (ULT)  
where they were meeting (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “where they had gathered together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**was shaken (ULT)  
started to shake (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “shook” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were all filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)  
The Holy Spirit gave them all power (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. See how you translated the same expression in [2:4](#). Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit filled them all” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were all filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)  
The Holy Spirit gave them all power (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively as if the believers were containers that the Holy Spirit **filled**. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit inspired them all” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the word of God (ULT)  
about Jesus as God had commanded (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that God wanted the believers to share by using words. Alternate translation: “the message from God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**with boldness (ULT)  
with great courage (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **boldness**, you could express the same idea with an adverb such as “boldly.” Alternate translation: “boldly” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> And **when** they **had prayed**, the place in which they were **gathered together** was shaken, and **they were** all **filled** with the **Holy Spirit**, and they were speaking the **word of God** with **boldness**.

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> **When** the believers **had finished praying**, the place where they were **meeting** started to shake. The **Holy Spirit** **gave them** all power to tell people **about Jesus as God had commanded**, and they did that with **great courage**.

## Translation Words - ULT

- when...had prayed
- gathered together
- they were...filled
- with...Holy Spirit
- word of God
- boldness

## Translation Words - UST

- When...had finished praying
- meeting
- Holy Spirit
- gave them
- about Jesus as God had commanded
- great courage



## **Acts 4:32**

## Now (ULT)

Luke uses the word **Now** to introduce background information in 4:32–37 that will help readers understand further episodes in the story. These verses introduce Barnabas, who will be an important character in the book, and they also help account for what happens to Ananias and Sapphira in the next chapter. You can translate the word **Now** with a term or phrase that serves the same purpose in your language. (See: [Connect — Background Information](#) )

## was one in heart and soul (ULT) were in complete agreement about what they believed and what they wanted (UST)

Here the word **heart** seems to represent the emotions and the word **soul** seems to represent the desires. Alternate translation: “thought the same way and desired the same things” or see the next note for a further possibility. (See: [Metonymy](#))

## was one in heart and soul (ULT) were in complete agreement about what they believed and what they wanted (UST)

The terms **heart** and **soul** mean similar things, and Luke may be using them together for emphasis. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine the terms in your translation. Alternate translation: “was genuinely united” (See: [Doublet](#))

## of those...that were to him (ULT) Those...the...owner...of anything (UST)

Alternate translation: “of the things that he owned”

## everything was common to them (ULT) they shared what they had with one another (UST)

The word **everything** may be a generalization that emphasizes the powerful spirit of generosity among the believers. See how you translated the similar expression in 2:44. Alternate translation: “they shared their belongings with one another” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [who believed](#)
- [in heart](#)
- [soul](#)
- [that were](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [who believed in Jesus](#)

## ULT

<sup>32</sup> Now the multitude of those [who believed](#) was one [in heart](#) and [soul](#). And not one said that any of the things [that were](#) to him was his own, but everything was common to them.

## UST

<sup>32</sup> Those in the group of people [who believed in Jesus](#) were in complete agreement about [what they believed](#) and [what they wanted](#). Not one of them said that he was the sole owner [of anything](#). Instead, they shared what they had with one another.

- what they believed
- what they wanted
- of anything



## Acts 4:33

### of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus (ULT) God had caused the Lord Jesus to live again after he died (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **resurrection**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as “alive.” Alternate translation: “of how God made the Lord Jesus alive again after he died” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### and great grace was upon them all (ULT) And God was helping all the believers very much (UST)

The pronoun **them** refers back to “the multitude of those who believed” in [4:32](#). It does not refer just to the **apostles**, who are mentioned in this verse. Alternate translation: “great grace was upon all of the believers” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### and great grace was upon them all (ULT) And God was helping all the believers very much (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **grace**, you could express the same idea with an equivalent expression. The word could describe: (1) how God was blessing the believers. Alternate translation: “God was blessing all of the believers in wonderful ways” (2) how the people in Jerusalem held the believers in high esteem. Alternate translation: “the people of Jerusalem thought very highly of all the believers” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- with...power
- apostles
- testimony
- of...resurrection
- of...Lord
- of...Lord Jesus
- grace

### Translation Words - UST

- Representatives
- continued to preach...that
- powerfully
- God had caused...to live again after he died
- Lord
- Lord Jesus
- God was helping

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> And with great **power** the **apostles** were proclaiming the **testimony** of the **resurrection** of the **Lord Jesus**, and great **grace** was upon them all.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> The **Representatives** continued to **preach powerfully** that **God had caused** the **Lord Jesus** to live again after he **died**. And **God was helping** all the believers very much.



## **Acts 4:34**

## For there was not anyone needy among them (ULT)

### Here is one way God was helping them. No one among the believers was lacking anything (UST)

This statement expresses the result of the rest of what Luke says in this verse and what he says in the next verse. If your readers would misunderstand this to put this result after the reasons for it, you could create a verse bridge by moving this statement to the end of the next verse and beginning it with the word "So" instead of **For**. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

## For (ULT)

### Here is one way God was helping them (UST)

Luke uses the word **For** in its first instance in this verse to introduce the evidence or reason for his statement at the end of the previous verse that "great grace was upon them all." The meaning here depends on the meaning there. Alternate translation: (1) "The way God was blessing the believers could be seen in the fact that" or (2) "One thing that made the people think very highly of the believers was that" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

## for (ULT)

### This was because (UST)

Luke uses the word **for** in its second instance in this verse to introduce the reason why no one in the community of believers was needy. Alternate translation: "and the reason for this was that" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

## for as many as were owners of lands or houses (ULT)

### This was because other believers who owned fields or houses (UST)

The phrase **as many as** is a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "many believers who owned lands or houses" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## the price of the things being sold (ULT)

### the proceeds from the sale (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "the money that they received from the things they sold" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [houses](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [houses](#)

## ULT

<sup>34</sup> For there was not anyone needy among them, for as many as were owners of lands or [houses](#), selling them, were bringing the price of the things being sold

## UST

<sup>34</sup> Here is one way God was helping them. No one among the believers was lacking anything. This was because other believers who owned fields or [houses](#) would sell some of their property to help them. They would bring the proceeds from the sale

**Acts 4:35****they were laying it at the feet of the apostles****(ULT)****they would give it to the Representatives****(UST)**

The expression **laying it at the feet** indicates that believers who sold possessions were putting the money they received onto the ground in front of the apostles. In this culture, that was a symbolic way of presenting it to them as a gift to be used to help others in the community. If there is a comparable symbolic action in your culture, you could use that in your translation. You could also use a general expression. Alternate translation: “they were presenting it to the apostles” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> and they were laying it at the feet of the [apostles](#), and it was being distributed to each one, according as anyone had need.

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> and they would give it to the [Representatives](#), who would then give out the money to the believers who needed it.

**they were laying it at the feet of the apostles (ULT)****they would give it to the Representatives (UST)**

In this culture, putting the money on the ground in front of the apostles was a symbolic way of presenting it to them as a gift to be used to help others in the community. If there is a comparable symbolic action in your culture, you could use that in your translation. You could also use a general expression. Alternate translation: “they were presenting it to the apostles” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**it was being distributed (ULT)****who would then give out the money (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “the apostles were distributing it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to each one, according as anyone had need (ULT)****to the believers who needed it (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **need**, you could express the same idea with a verb such as “need.” Alternate translation: “to every person in the amount that he needed” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of...apostles](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to...Representatives](#)



## **Acts 4:36**

**Then Joseph (ULT)****Now there was a man named Joseph (UST)**

Luke uses this phrase to introduce a new character into the story. If your language has its own way of doing that, you can use it here in your translation. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**Joseph...Barnabas (ULT)****a man named Joseph...Barnabas (UST)**

**Joseph** and **Barnabas** are two names for the same man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**called Barnabas by the apostles (ULT)****The Representatives called him Barnabas (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "whom the apostles called Barnabas" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**which, being translated, is Son of Encouragement (ULT)****In the language of the Jews, that name means a person who always encourages others (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express the meaning of the passive verbal form **being translated** with an active form. Alternate translation: "which means Son of Encouragement" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**which, being translated, is Son of Encouragement (ULT)****In the language of the Jews, that name means a person who always encourages others (UST)**

Luke assumes that his readers will know that he is saying what the name Barnabas means when **translated** from the Aramaic language. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "which means Son of Encouragement in Aramaic" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Son of Encouragement (ULT)****a person who always encourages others (UST)**

The expression **Son of** figuratively describes a person who shares the qualities of something. The apostles used this name to describe Joseph's behavior and character, since he was a person who encouraged others. Alternate translation: "the Encourager" (See: [Idiom](#))

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> Then Joseph, called Barnabas by the apostles (which, being translated, is Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by lineage,

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> Now there was a man named Joseph who belonged to the tribe of Levi and who came from the island of Cyprus. The Representatives called him Barnabas. In the language of the Jews, that name means a person who always encourages others.



## **Son of Encouragement (ULT)** **a person who always encourages others (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **Encouragement**, you could express the same idea with a verb such as “encourage.” Alternate translation: “the One who Encourages” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## **a Levite (ULT)** **who belonged to the tribe of Levi (UST)**

The name **Levite** describes a person from the tribe of Levi. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## **from Cyprus (ULT)** **and who came from the island of Cyprus (UST)**

**Cyprus** is the name of an island. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- called
- Barnabas
- apostles
- Son
- of Encouragement
- a Levite
- from Cyprus

### **Translation Words - UST**

- who belonged to the tribe of Levi
- and who came from the island of Cyprus
- Representatives
- called him
- Barnabas
- a person
- who always encourages others

## Acts 4:37

**that was to him (ULT)**

**that belonged to him (UST)**

See how you translated the similar expression in [4:32](#). Alternate translation: “that he owned”

**laid it at the feet of the apostles (ULT)**  
**to the Representatives {for them to give to other believers (UST)**

See how you translated the similar expression in [4:35](#). Alternate translation: “presented it to the apostles” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [that was](#)
- [of...apostles](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that belonged](#)
- [to the Representatives...for them to give to other believers](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> selling a field [that was](#) to him, brought the money and laid it at the feet of the [apostles](#).

### UST

<sup>37</sup> Barnabas sold a field [that belonged](#) to him, and he brought the money [to the Representatives {for them to give to other believers}](#).

## Acts 5

### Acts 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “Why has Satan filled your heart for you to lie to the Holy Spirit?” (5:3)

No one knows for sure whether Ananias and Sapphira were truly Christians when they decided to lie about the land that they sold (5:1-10), because Luke does not say. However, Peter knew that they lied to the believers, and he knew that they had listened to and obeyed Satan. When they lied to the believers, they also lied to the Holy Spirit. This is because the Holy Spirit lives inside believers.

### Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Long sentences

Acts 5:36 consists of a single long sentence. ULT represents all of it as a single sentence. It may be helpful to your readers to divide it into several sentences, as UST does.

There is also a long sentence that goes from the beginning of 5:38 to nearly the end of 5:39. In this case as well it may be helpful to your readers to divide it into several sentences, as UST does.

**Acts 5:1****Now a certain man (ULT)****Now there was one of the believers (UST)**

Luke uses this phrase to introduce a new character into the story. If your language has its own way of doing that, you can use it here in your translation. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**Ananias (ULT)****Ananias (UST)**

**Ananias** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**with Sapphira his wife (ULT)****He was married, and his wife's name was Sapphira (UST)**

Luke uses this phrase to introduce another new character into the story. If your language has its own way of doing that, you can use it here in your translation. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**Sapphira (ULT)****name was Sapphira (UST)**

**Sapphira** is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [by name](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [whose name was](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> Now a certain man, Ananias [by name](#), with Sapphira his wife, sold a piece of land,

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> Now there was one of the believers [whose name was](#) Ananias. He was married, and his wife's name was Sapphira. They also sold some land.

**Acts 5:2****he kept back from the price (ULT)  
He kept for himself some of the money he had  
received for the land (UST)**

The implication, as the story later makes clear, is that Ananias did not tell anyone except his wife that he was keeping some of the money for himself. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly, and you could say why he did this. Alternate translation: “he kept some of the money from the sale for himself, but he did not admit that he was doing that, because he wanted everyone to think he was being completely generous” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**his wife also knowing, and bringing a certain  
portion, he laid**

It may be helpful to make two new sentences here, particularly if you add information to the previous phrase as suggested in the preceding note. Alternate translation: “His wife also knew that he was keeping back part of the sale money. He brought a certain portion of the money and laid it”

**he laid it at the feet of the apostles (ULT)  
and gave it to the Representatives (UST)**

This means that he presented to money to the apostles. See how you translated the same expression in [4:37](#). Alternate translation: “he presented it to the apostles” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of...apostles](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the Representatives](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> and he kept back from the price, {his} wife also knowing, and bringing a certain portion, he laid it at the feet of the [apostles](#).

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> He kept for himself some of the money he had received for the land. His wife knew that he had done that. Then he brought the rest of the money and gave it to [the Representatives](#).



## **Acts 5:3**

## why has Satan filled your heart for you to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back from the price of the land (ULT)

Peter is using the question form to rebuke Ananias. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: “you should not have let Satan fill your heart so that you lied to the Holy Spirit and kept back from the price of the land!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## why has Satan filled your heart (ULT) you have allowed Satan to control you so completely (UST)

Peter is speaking figuratively of the **heart** of Ananias as if it were a container that Satan had **filled**. Alternate translation: “why have you allowed Satan to influence your heart so strongly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## your heart (ULT) you (UST)

Here, the **heart** figuratively represents the thoughts and motives. Alternate translation: “your thoughts and motives” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## for you to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back from the price of the land (ULT)

Ananias first withheld some of the money, then he lied to the Holy Spirit about this by pretending he was giving all of the money. To make this clear in your translation, it may be helpful to describe the events in that order. Alternate translation: “for you to keep back from the price of the land and lie to the Holy Spirit” (See: [Order of Events](#))

## for you to lie to the Holy Spirit (ULT) that you tried to deceive the Holy Spirit (UST)

Ananias did not lie literally to the Holy Spirit, but he did lie to the apostles and to all of the believers who would have learned about his gift, and the Holy Spirit was present in them. So by lying to them, he was effectively also lying to the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: “for you to lie to the Holy Spirit, who is present in us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## and to keep back from the price (ULT)

The implication of what Peter says here is that Ananias claimed or pretended that he was giving the entire amount that he had received from selling his land. Alternate translation: “by pretending that you were giving us the entire amount when you had kept back some for yourself” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [Satan](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But [Peter](#) said, “Ananias, why has [Satan](#) filled your [heart](#) for you to lie to the [Holy Spirit](#) and to keep back from the price of the land?”

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Then [Peter](#) said, “Ananias, you have allowed [Satan](#) to control [you](#) so completely that you tried to deceive the [Holy Spirit](#). You kept for yourself some of the money you received for selling the land. {You did not give us all of it.}



- heart
- to...Holy Spirit

## **Translation Words - UST**

- Peter
- Satan
- you
- Holy Spirit



## **Acts 5:4**

**While it remained, did it not remain yours,  
and being sold, was it {not} in your authority  
(ULT)**

**Before you sold that land, you truly owned it.  
And after you sold it, the money was still  
yours (UST)**

Peter continues to use the question form to rebuke Ananias. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: "While it remained, it remained yours, and after it was sold, it was still in your authority." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**While it remained (ULT)  
Before you sold that land (UST)**

Alternate translation: "While it remained unsold" or "Before you sold it"

**being sold (ULT)  
after you sold it (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "once you had sold it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**was it...in your authority (ULT)  
the money was still yours (UST)**

The pronoun **it** refers to the money that Ananias received from the sale of the land. Alternate translation, as a statement: "you could still do whatever you wanted with the money you received" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**was it...in your authority (ULT)  
the money was still yours (UST)**

The implications are that Ananias was not obligated to give all of the money to the apostles. He was free to keep some if he wished or if he needed it. He could simply have acknowledged that he was doing that, and giving the rest of the money would still have been a generous act because there was no compulsion. Alternate translation, as a statement: "you could have kept some and acknowledged that and you would have still been making a generous gift" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**How {is it} that you placed this thing in your heart (ULT)  
So you should never have thought about doing such a wicked thing (UST)**

Peter continues to use the question form to rebuke Ananias. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "You should not have placed this thing in your heart!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> While it remained, did it not remain yours, and being sold, was it {not} in your [authority](#)? How {is it} that you placed this thing in your [heart](#)? You have not lied to men, but [to God](#)."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Before you sold that land, you truly owned it. And after you sold it, the money was [still yours](#). [So you should never have thought about doing](#) such a wicked thing. You were not just trying to deceive people! No, [you were trying to deceive God himself!](#)"

**How {is it} that you placed this thing in your heart (ULT)**  
**So you should never have thought about doing such a wicked thing (UST)**

Here, the **heart** figuratively represents the thoughts. Alternate translation, as an exclamation: “You should not have placed this thing in your thoughts!” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**How {is it} that you placed this thing in your heart (ULT)**  
**So you should never have thought about doing such a wicked thing (UST)**

Peter speaks figuratively of **this thing**, that is, the plan to keep back some of the money, as if Ananias had **placed** it in his **heart**, meaning his thoughts. Alternate translation, as an exclamation: “You should not even have thought of doing such a thing!” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**You have not lied to men, but to God (ULT)**  
**You were not just trying to deceive people! No, you were trying to deceive God himself (UST)**

Ananias actually has **lied to men**, but Peter is speaking of the ultimate implications of his act. As in the previous verse, where Peter says that Ananias has lied to the Holy Spirit, here he means that Ananias has lied to the apostles and other believers, and God is present in them. So by lying to them, he has effectively also lied to God. Alternate translation: “You have not lied merely to men, but also to God, who is present in us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to men (ULT)**  
**people (UST)**

Peter is using the term **men** in a generic sense to mean “human beings.” Alternate translation: “to human beings” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [authority](#)
- [heart](#)
- [to God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [still yours](#)
- [So you should never have thought about doing](#)
- [you were trying to deceive God himself](#)

## Acts 5:5

### And hearing...these words (ULT)

Luke is using the term **words** figuratively to mean what Peter used words to say. Alternate translation: "When he heard what Peter said" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### falling down, expired (ULT) he immediately fell down dead (UST)

The word translated **expired** means that Ananias "breathed out for the last time." It is a mild way of saying that he died. Alternate translation: "fell down and died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### falling down, expired (ULT) he immediately fell down dead (UST)

Ananias fell down because he died. He did not die because he fell down. To make this clear in your translation, it may be helpful to say first that he died and then that he fell. Alternate translation: "died and fell to the ground" (See: [Order of Events](#))

### great fear came upon all who heard (ULT) everyone who learned {about Ananias' death} felt a great awe for God (UST)

Luke describes this **fear** figuratively as if it were a living thing that could come onto people. Here the word **fear** describes a deep respect for God. Alternate translation: "everyone who heard about it came to feel a very deep respect for God" (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a...awe for God](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And hearing these words, Ananias, falling down, expired, and great **fear** came upon all who heard.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> When Ananias heard the things Peter told him, he immediately fell down dead. And everyone who learned {about Ananias' death} felt a great **awe for God**.

## Acts 5:6

**So rising up, the young men wrapped him up (ULT)**

**When Ananias died, some young men came forward, wrapped his body in a sheet (UST)**

Here the expression **rising up** means that the young men took an action that they recognized they needed to take. It does not mean that they stood up from a seated position. Alternate translation: “the young men took action and wrapped him up” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the young men (ULT)**

**some young men (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) some strong young men who were present who realized that burying Ananias was a task they could help with. Alternate translation: “some strong young men who were present” (2) a group of young men among the believers who regularly helped the apostles with tasks that required physical strength. Alternate translation: “the young men who regularly helped the apostles with physical tasks” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**wrapped him up (ULT)**

**wrapped his body in a sheet (UST)**

It was the custom in this culture to wrap linen cloths around the bodies of people who had died, in order to prepare the bodies for burial. If your readers would not be familiar with such a custom, you could describe it more specifically, or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: “wrapped a linen burial cloth around his body” or “prepared his body for burial” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [rising up](#)
- [they buried him](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [came forward](#)
- [and buried it](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So [rising up](#), the young men wrapped him up and, carrying him out, [they buried him](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> When Ananias died, some young men [came forward](#), wrapped his body in a sheet, and carried it out [and buried it](#).

**Acts 5:7****And an interval of about three hours happened, and (ULT)**

This is an idiomatic way of speaking about time passing. Your language may have its own way of describing that. Alternate translation: "After about three hours had gone by," (See: [Idiom](#))

**his wife (ULT)****his wife (UST)**

The pronoun **his** refers to Ananias. Alternate translation: "the wife of Ananias" or "Sapphira" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**what had happened (ULT)****that Peter confronted her husband about the lie they had told and that her husband had died as a result (UST)**

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say explicitly what this means. Alternate translation: "that Peter had exposed their lie and that her husband was dead" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of...hours
- knowing

**Translation Words - UST**

- hours
- But she did...know

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> And an interval of about three **hours** happened, and his wife, not **knowing** what had happened, came in.

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> About three **hours** later, his wife came in. **But she did** not **know** that Peter confronted her husband about the lie they had told and that her husband had died as a result.



**Acts 5:8**

**said...to her (ULT)**  
**showed her the money that Ananias had brought and asked...her (UST)**

The word translated **said** means to continue or resume a conversation. Alternate translation: “asked her, based on what her husband had said”

**you sold (ULT)**  
**you sold (UST)**

Since Peter is speaking of two people, Ananias and Sapphira, **you** would be dual if your language uses that form. Otherwise, it would be plural. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural](#) )

**for so much...Yes, for so much (ULT)**  
**is this the amount of money you two received for...Yes, that is what we received (UST)**

This refers to the amount of money that Ananias had given to the apostles. Peter may be naming the amount or, as UST suggests, he may be showing Sapphira the money. Alternate translation: “for this amount of money ... yes, for that amount of money” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> And [Peter](#) said to her, “Tell me whether you sold the land for so much.” And she said, “Yes, for so much.”

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> Then [Peter](#) showed her the money that Ananias had brought and asked her, “Tell me, is this the amount of money you two received for the land you sold?” She said, “Yes, that is what we received.”



## **Acts 5:9**

**How {is it} that it was agreed together by you to test the Spirit of the Lord (ULT)  
You both did a terrible thing when you agreed to try to deceive the Holy Spirit (UST)**

Peter is using the question form to rebuke Sapphira. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "You should not have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**it was agreed together by you (ULT)  
You both...did a terrible thing when you agreed (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "you agreed together" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by you...your...you (ULT)  
You both...your...God is...going to strike you dead...your body (UST)**

The word **you** in its first instance refers to two people, Ananias and Sapphira, so it would be dual if your language uses that form. Otherwise, it would be plural. The word **your** and the word **you** in its second instance refer only to Sapphira, so those words are singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**to test the Spirit of the Lord (ULT)  
to try to deceive the Holy Spirit (UST)**

Here the word **test** means to challenge. Ananias and Sapphira were trying to see if they could get away with lying about how much they received for the land they sold. Alternate translation: "to challenge the Spirit of the Lord"

**to test the Spirit of the Lord (ULT)  
to try to deceive the Holy Spirit (UST)**

Ananias and Sapphira actually tested or challenged the apostles, but Peter is speaking of the ultimate implications of their act, as he does similarly in [5:3](#) and [5:4](#). Since the Spirit of the Lord was present in the apostles, by challenging them, Ananias and Sapphira effectively lied to the Spirit. Alternate translation: "to test the Spirit of the Lord, who is present in us apostles" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Behold, the feet (ULT)  
This is what will happen to you as a result...are just coming back (UST)**

Peter says **Behold** to get Sapphira to focus her attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a similar expression that you can use here in your translation. Alternate translation: "And now the feet" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> So Peter said to her, "How {is it} that it was agreed together by you to test the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, the feet of those who buried your husband {are} at the door, and they will carry you out."

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> So Peter said to her, "You both did a terrible thing when you agreed to try to deceive the Holy Spirit! This is what will happen to you as a result. {God struck your husband dead as a punishment and} some young men are just coming back from burying him. God is also going to strike you dead, and they will take your body out and bury it as well."

**the feet of those who buried your husband {are} at the door (ULT)  
 God struck your husband dead as a punishment and} some young men are  
 just coming back from burying him (UST)**

Peter is referring figuratively to the return of the young men who buried Ananias. Their **feet** represent them by association with the way they are using their feet to walk back. The **door** represents their return by association with the way they will come through the door when they return. Alternate translation: “the young men who buried your husband are just now returning” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the feet of those who buried your husband {are} at the door (ULT)  
 God struck your husband dead as a punishment and} some young men are  
 just coming back from burying him (UST)**

Peter is telling Sapphira implicitly that her husband died as a judgment from God when Peter confronted him with the lie about the price of the land. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “your husband died as a judgment from God when I confronted him with the lie you both told about the price of the land, and the young men who buried him are just now returning” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**and they will carry you out (ULT)  
 God is also going to strike you dead, and they will take your body out and  
 bury it as well (UST)**

The implications are that Sapphira is also going to die and that the same young men will **carry** her **out** to bury her. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. It may be helpful to make this a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “You are also going to die as a judgment from God, and those same young men are going to carry you out and bury you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [to test](#)
- [Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [who buried](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [to try to deceive](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [from burying him](#)

## Acts 5:10

### she fell down...at his feet and expired (ULT) Sapphira fell down...dead right in front of Peter (UST)

The word translated **expired** means that Sapphira “breathed out for the last time.” It is a mild way of saying that she died. Alternate translation: “she fell down at his feet and died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### she fell down...at his feet and expired (ULT) Sapphira fell down...dead right in front of Peter (UST)

Sapphira fell down because she died. She did not die because she fell down. To make this clear in your translation, it may be helpful to say first that she died and then that she fell. Alternate translation: “she died and fell down at his feet” (See: [Order of Events](#))

### she fell down...at his feet (ULT) Sapphira fell down...right in front of Peter (UST)

This means that she fell to the ground in front of Peter. This expression should not be confused with the idea of “falling down at a person’s feet,” that is, bowing down to the ground in front of someone as a sign of humility. Alternate translation: “she collapsed onto the ground in front of him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the young men (ULT) the young men (UST)

See how you translated this expression in [5:6](#). However, it may not be necessary to explain again here who these **young men** were in terms of their role in the community. Instead, you could identify them by their role in the story. Alternate translation: “the same young men who had buried Ananias” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [expired](#)
- [dead](#)
- [they buried her](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [dead](#)
- [had also died](#)
- [and buried it](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And immediately she fell down at his feet and [expired](#). And having come in, the young men found her [dead](#), and carrying her out, [they buried her](#) beside her husband.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Immediately Sapphira fell down [dead](#) right in front of Peter. Just then the young men came back in. When they saw that she [had also died](#), they carried her body out [and buried it](#) next to her husband’s body.

## Acts 5:11

### And (ULT)

This verse is the end of the story about Ananias and Sapphira. Luke uses the word translated **And** to introduce information about what happened after the story as a result of the events within the story itself. Your language may have its own way of indicating how such information relates to a story. (See: [End of Story](#))

**great fear came upon the whole church and upon all those hearing these things (ULT)**  
**All the believers in Jerusalem felt a great awe for God because of what had happened to Ananias and Sapphira. Everyone else who heard about these things also felt great awe for God (UST)**

Luke describes this **fear** figuratively as if it were a living thing that could come onto people. See how you translated the similar expression in [5:5](#). Alternate translation: “the whole church and everyone who heard about these things came to feel a very deep respect for God” (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#)
- [church](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers in Jerusalem](#)
- [a...awe for God because of...awe for God](#)

### ULT

**11** And great [fear](#) came upon the whole [church](#) and upon all those hearing these things.

### UST

**11** All the [believers in Jerusalem](#) felt a great [awe for God because of](#) what had happened to Ananias and Sapphira. Everyone else who heard about these things also felt great [awe for God](#).





## **Acts 5:12**

## And (ULT)

Luke uses the word translated **And** to introduce background information in 5:12-16 that will help readers understand what happens next in the story. You can translate this word with a word or phrase that serves the same purpose in your language. Alternate translation: "Now" (See: [Connect — Background Information](#) )

**through...many signs and wonders were happening...hands of the apostles...the (ULT)**  
**God was enabling...God was enabling...the Representatives to do many amazing miracles {that showed the truth of what they were preaching (UST)**

Luke is using the **hands** of the apostles figuratively to represent their actions. Alternate translation: "the apostles were doing many signs and wonders" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**signs and wonders (ULT)**  
**amazing miracles {that showed the truth of what they were preaching (UST)**

The terms **signs** and **wonders** mean similar things. Luke is using them together for emphasis. See how you translated this expression in 4:30. Alternate translation: "great miracles" (See: [Doublet](#))

**they were...all (ULT)**  
**were...regularly...All the believers (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to the whole community of believers. Alternate translation: "the whole community of believers was" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**unanimously (ULT)**  
**meeting together (UST)**

The word **unanimously** indicates that the apostles and other believers shared a common commitment and purpose and that there was no strife among them. See how you translated the same expression in 1:14. Alternate translation: "meeting together with one accord" or "meeting together harmoniously"

**the Porch of Solomon (ULT)**  
**at the place called Solomon's Porch (UST)**

This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof. It was named after King Solomon. See how you translated the phrase "the porch that is called Solomon's" in 3:11, which is a description of this same walkway. Alternate translation: "Solomon's Porch" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [signs](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And many [signs](#) and [wonders](#) were happening through the [hands](#) of the [apostles](#) among the [people](#), and they were all unanimously at the Porch of Solomon.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> God was enabling the [Representatives](#) to do many [amazing miracles](#) {that showed the truth of what they were preaching} among the [people](#). All the believers were meeting together regularly in the temple courtyard at the [place called Solomon's Porch](#).

- wonders
- hands
- of...apostles
- people
- of Solomon

## Translation Words - UST

- God was enabling
- Representatives
- amazing miracles...that showed the truth of what they were preaching
- amazing miracles {that showed the truth of what they were preaching
- people
- at...place called Solomon's Porch

## Acts 5:13

**the...none of...others (ULT)**  
**the...All of...other people who had not believed in Jesus (UST)**

The expression **the others** refers to people who were not believers in Jesus. Alternate translation: “none of the people who were not believers in Jesus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**dared to join them (ULT)**  
**were afraid to meet with the believers (UST)**

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say explicitly why no unbelievers **dared to join them**. The reason seems to be that the Jewish leaders had commanded the apostles not to speak or teach about Jesus (4:18), but they were still doing that. Later in this chapter, in 5:28, the Sanhedrin indicates that it has arrested the apostles for violating that command. Alternate translation: “would meet with them, because the apostles were still preaching about Jesus even though the Jewish leaders had commanded them not to do so” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But none of the others dared to join them; however, the [people](#) extolled them.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> All of the other people who had not believed in Jesus were afraid to meet with the believers. However, those [people](#) continued to speak very highly of them.

**Acts 5:14****were being added...to the Lord (ULT)  
and they joined the group of believers...in the  
Lord Jesus (UST)**

Luke says **the Lord** figuratively to mean the community of people who believed in the Lord. Alternate translation: “were being added to the church” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**were being added...to the Lord (ULT)  
and they joined the group of believers...in the  
Lord Jesus (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:41](#). Alternate translation: “were becoming part of the church” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to the Lord (ULT)  
in the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Alternate translation: “Jesus” or “the Lord Jesus” (See: [Politeness](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [believers](#)
- [to...Lord](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [started believing](#)
- [in...Lord Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> And more [believers](#) were being added to the [Lord](#), multitudes of both men and of women,

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> Many more men and women [started believing](#) in the [Lord Jesus](#), and they joined the group of believers.



## **Acts 5:15**

**so that (ULT)**  
**Because the people were seeing such amazing miracles (UST)**

Luke says **so that** to introduce a result, but it is not the direct result of what he said just before, that many men and women became part of the church. It is the result of what he said in [5:12](#), that the apostles were doing “many signs and wonders.” All of [5:12–15](#) could be understood as a single sentence, and in that case what Luke says here would more clearly follow logically and grammatically from what he says in [5:12](#). However, ULT divides the material into several sentences, which is another way in which it can be understood. UST models a way to show how what Luke says here introduces a result of what he said in [5:12](#) about the “signs and wonders” that the apostles were doing. (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**they...carried (ULT)**  
**they started bringing (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to the people who lived in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “people who lived in Jerusalem ... carried” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**the sick (ULT)**  
**those who had various diseases (UST)**

Luke is using the adjective **sick** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “people who were sick” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**cots and mats (ULT)**  
**stretchers and mattresses (UST)**

The words **cots** and **mats** mean similar things. Luke could be using them together for emphasis, although he could also be describing two different ways that people managed to make their sick relatives and friends reasonably comfortable as they waited in the streets for Peter to walk by. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine these terms in your translation. Alternate translation: “improvised beds” (See: [Doublet](#))

**his} shadow might overshadow any one of them (ULT)**  
**his shadow might touch some of them, because if...that happened, God would heal them (UST)**

The implication is that God was healing sick people whom Peter’s shadow touched. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “his shadow might overshadow any one of them and God would heal that person” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> so that they even carried the sick into the streets and laid them on cots and mats, so that as Peter came by, at least {his} shadow might overshadow any one of them.

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> Because the people were seeing such amazing miracles, they started bringing those who had various diseases right into the streets and placing them on stretchers and mattresses there. They were hoping that when Peter walked by his shadow might touch some of them, because if even that happened, God would heal them.



**his} shadow might overshadow any one of them (ULT)**  
**his shadow might touch some of them, because if...that happened, God would heal them (UST)**

Luke is using a construction in which the subject and verb come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have its own way of describing this. Alternate translation: "his shadow might fall on"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Peter
- shadow

**Translation Words - UST**

- Peter
- his shadow

## Acts 5:16

### the sick (ULT)

### those who had various diseases (UST)

See how you translated the expression **the sick** in 5:15. Alternate translation: “people who were sick” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### those afflicted by unclean spirits (ULT)

### those whom evil spirits were tormenting (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “those whom unclean spirits were afflicting” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### who were all healed (ULT)

### and God healed all of them (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who did the action. Alternate translation: “and the apostles healed them all” or “and God used the apostles to heal them all” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### who were all healed (ULT)

### and God healed all of them (UST)

It does not appear that **all** is a generalization for emphasis in this case. So it would not be accurate to treat **all** as figurative and say something like “and large numbers of them were healed.” Luke is describing what remarkable things God did through the apostles at this time, and he does seem to mean that every sick person whom the people brought to Jerusalem was healed. So it would be appropriate to say in your translation just what ULT says here. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [came together](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [unclean spirits](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [were...healed](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [were...coming](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [evil spirits](#)
- [evil](#)
- [and God healed](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And a multitude also [came together](#) from the towns around [Jerusalem](#), bringing the sick and those afflicted by [unclean](#) spirits, who were all [healed](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Large crowds of people were also [coming](#) from the towns near [Jerusalem](#). They were bringing those who had various diseases and those whom [evil](#) spirits were tormenting, [and God](#) [healed](#) all of them.



## **Acts 5:17**

## **But (ULT)** **However (UST)**

Luke uses the word **But** to introduce a strong contrast into the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing a contrasting narrative. You could also refer back to the previous action in order to highlight the contrast. Alternate translation: "But even though the apostles were doing so much good," (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#) )

**rising up...the high priest and all those with him (which is the sect of the Sadducees) were filled with jealousy (ULT)**  
**to work against them...the high priest became very resentful {that such large crowds were coming to the Representatives}. Many priests who were members of the Sadducee group were also very resentful of them. They joined together with the high priest (UST)**

The high priest and these Sadducees were first **filled with jealousy** and then they rose up (took action) against the apostles. To make this clear in your translation, it may be helpful to describe the events in that order. Alternate translation: "the high priest and all those with him (which is the sect of the Sadducees) were filled with jealousy and they rose up" (See: [Order of Events](#))

**rising up...the high priest and all those with him (which is the sect of the Sadducees) were filled with jealousy (ULT)**  
**to work against them...the high priest became very resentful {that such large crowds were coming to the Representatives}. Many priests who were members of the Sadducee group were also very resentful of them. They joined together with the high priest (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an active verbal form instead of the passive form **were filled**. Alternate translation: "jealousy filled the high priest and all those with him (which is the sect of the Sadducees) and they rose up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**rising up (ULT)**  
**to work against them (UST)**

Here the expression **rising up** means that the high priest decided to take action, not that he stood up from a seated position. Alternate translation: "taking action" (See: [Idiom](#))

**all those with him (which is the sect of the Sadducees (ULT)**  
**Many priests who were members of the Sadducee group...They joined together with the high priest (UST)**

The phrase **all those with him** means specifically all the other priests who joined the high priest in taking action against the apostles. Luke observes here that those other priests were from the group known as the **Sadducees**.

### **ULT**

<sup>17</sup> But **rising up**, the **high priest** and all those with him (which is the sect of the **Sadducees**) were filled **with jealousy**,

### **UST**

<sup>17</sup> However, the **high priest** became **very resentful** {that such large crowds were coming to the **Representatives**}. Many priests who were members of the **Sadducee** group were also **very resentful of them**. They joined together with the high priest **to work against them**.

As a note to [4:1](#) explains, they opposed the apostles' teaching because they did not believe in the resurrection. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "and all of the priests from the group known as the Sadducees who wanted to oppose the apostles' teaching because they did not believe in the resurrection" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**were filled with jealousy (ULT)**  
**became very resentful {that such large crowds were coming to the**  
**Representatives...were...very resentful of them (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **jealousy**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as "jealous." Alternate translation: "became very jealous" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**were filled with jealousy (ULT)**  
**became very resentful {that such large crowds were coming to the**  
**Representatives...were...very resentful of them (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively as if the high priest and his allies were containers that jealousy **filled**. Alternate translation: "became very jealous" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [rising up](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [of...Sadducees](#)
- [with jealousy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [high priest](#)
- [became very resentful...that such large crowds were coming to the Representatives...were...very resentful of them](#)
- [Sadducee](#)
- [to work against them](#)

## Acts 5:18

**they laid hands on the apostles (ULT)**  
**they commanded the temple guards to arrest them (UST)**

The expression **laid hands on** figuratively means to arrest someone by association with the way that arresting officers might physically take hold of a person with their **hands**. Alternate translation: “they arrested the apostles” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they laid hands on the apostles (ULT)**  
**they commanded the temple guards to arrest them (UST)**

The high priest and his allies did not arrest the apostles personally. They would have ordered the temple guards to arrest them. But Luke speaks figuratively as if the high priest and his allies did this action because they had a significant part in it by ordering it. Alternate translation: “they had the temple guards arrest the apostles” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they laid hands on](#)
- [hands](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [the public prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they commanded the temple guards to arrest](#)
- [they commanded the temple guards to arrest](#)
- [them](#)
- [the public jail](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> and [they laid hands](#) on the [apostles](#) and put them in [the public prison](#).

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> So [they commanded the temple guards to arrest them](#) and to put them in [the public jail](#).

**Acts 5:19****bringing...out...them (ULT)  
and led...outside...all the Representatives  
(UST)**

The pronoun **them** refers to the apostles. Alternate translation: “bringing the apostles out” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**Translation Words - ULT**

- an angel
- of the Lord
- of...prison

**Translation Words - UST**

- an angel
- from the Lord God
- jail

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> But during the night an angel of the Lord opened the doors of the prison, bringing them out, and said,

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> {The high priest and his allies kept them in jail overnight so that they could question them in the morning.} But that night an angel from the Lord God opened the jail doors and led all the Representatives outside. Then the angel told them,



**Acts 5:20****in the temple (ULT)  
to the temple courtyard (UST)**

Only priests were allowed inside the temple building, so **the temple** means the courtyard around the temple. Alternate translation: “in the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**all the words of this life (ULT)  
and tell...about...the eternal life that Jesus can  
give them. Do not leave anything out, even  
though the Sanhedrin has commanded you  
not to say certain things (UST)**

The angel is using the term **words** figuratively to mean the message that the apostles were to share by using words. Alternate translation: “the entire message about this life” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of this life (ULT)  
the eternal life that Jesus can give them (UST)**

Alternate translation: “about the everlasting life that God gives through Jesus” or “about the new way of living that people can have as followers of Jesus”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [temple](#)
- [to...people](#)
- [words of...life](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [temple courtyard](#)
- [and tell...about...the eternal life](#)
- [people](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> “Go and, standing in the [temple](#), speak to the [people](#) all the [words of this life](#).”

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> “Go to the [temple courtyard](#), stand there, and tell the [people about the eternal life](#) that Jesus can give them. Do not leave anything out, even though the Sanhedrin has commanded you not to say certain things.”



## **Acts 5:21**

**having heard this (ULT)  
when the Representatives heard what the  
angel said (UST)**

Luke may be using the word “hear” in an idiomatic sense to mean “obey.” Alternate translation: “in obedience to this command from the angel” (See: [Idiom](#))

**into the temple (ULT)  
to the temple courtyard (UST)**

Only priests were allowed inside the temple building, so **the temple** means the courtyard around the temple. Alternate translation: “into the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**about daybreak (ULT)  
By then it was about dawn (UST)**

The implication is that although the angel led the apostles out of the jail during the night, the sun was rising by the time they reached the temple courtyard. Alternate translation: “as it was beginning to get light” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**And (ULT)  
So (UST)**

Luke is using the word translated **And** to introduce other events that took place around the same time as the events he has just described. Alternate translation: “Meanwhile,” (See: [Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship](#))

**having arrived (ULT)  
gathered together in the Jewish council chamber. From there (UST)**

This does not mean that the high priest and his allies **arrived** in the temple courtyard where the apostles were. Rather, it means that they went into the chamber where the Sanhedrin met so that they could summon the rest of its members to join them there. Alternate translation: “having arrived in the council chamber” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the Sanhedrin, even all the elders of the sons of Israel (ULT)  
the other council members. Together they were all the leaders of Israel (UST)**

The phrase **even all the elders of the sons of Israel** clarifies the name **Sanhedrin** by describing its membership. Luke is using the word **elders** here in a general sense to mean “leaders.” He is not making a distinction between “elders” and “rulers” as he does in [4:5](#). Alternate translation: “the Sanhedrin, which was composed of the leaders of the sons of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> And having heard this, they entered into the **temple** about daybreak and **were teaching**. And having arrived, the **high priest** and those with him **called together** the **Sanhedrin**, even all the elders of the **sons of Israel**, and **sent** to the **prison** to bring the apostles.

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> So when the Representatives heard what the angel said, they went to the **temple courtyard** and **began to teach the people once more about Jesus**. By then it was about dawn. Around that same time, the **high priest** and the other priests who were working with him gathered together in the Jewish council chamber. From there **they summoned** the **other council members**. Together they were all the leaders of **Israel**. Once the whole council was present, **they sent guards** to the **jail** to get the Representatives.

## **of the sons of Israel (ULT) of Israel (UST)**

Here, **sons** figuratively means “descendants.” Luke is identifying the Israelites as descendants of their ancestor Jacob, who was also known as Israel. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## **sent to the prison (ULT) they sent guards to the jail (UST)**

Luke is leaving out a word that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. He means that the high priest and his allies sent someone to the prison to get the apostles. Alternate translation: “sent someone to the prison” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- temple
- were teaching
- high priest
- called together
- Sanhedrin
- of...sons
- of Israel
- sent
- prison

### **Translation Words - UST**

- temple courtyard
- began to teach the people once more about Jesus
- high priest
- they summoned
- other council members
- Israel
- Israel
- they sent guards
- jail

## Acts 5:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prison
- having returned
- they reported

### Translation Words - UST

- jail
- they returned to the council
- and told the members

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But having arrived, the officers did not find them in the prison, so having returned, they reported,

### UST

<sup>22</sup> But when the guards arrived at the jail, they discovered that they were not there. So they returned to the council and told the members,

## Acts 5:23

**We found the prison shut in all security and the guards (ULT)**

**We saw that the jail doors were very safely locked and that the guards (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an active verbal form in place of the passive form **shut**, and you can say who did the action. Alternate translation: "We found that the guards had shut the prison in all security and we found the guards" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in all security (ULT)**  
**very safely (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **security**, you could express the same idea with an adverb such as "securely." The word **all** is an intensifier. Alternate translation: "very securely" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**having opened (ULT)**  
**when we opened the doors {and went in to get those men (UST)**

Your language may require you to specify the object of **opened**. Alternate translation: "once we opened the doors" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**we found no one inside (ULT)**  
**none of them were inside the jail (UST)**

By **no one**, the officers mean that they found none of the men they had been sent to bring, that is, none of the apostles. It is possible that other people were also being held in the prison, but the angel would not have released them, and they would still have been inside. Alternate translation: "we did not find any of the apostles inside" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [jail doors](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> saying, "We found the [prison](#) shut in all security and the guards standing at the doors, but having opened, we found no one inside."

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> "We saw that the [jail doors](#) were very safely locked and that the guards were keeping watch in front of the doors. But when we opened the doors {and went in to get those men}, none of them were inside the jail."

**Acts 5:24****these words (ULT)****that (UST)**

Luke is using the term **words** figuratively to mean the report that the officers gave. Alternate translation: “this report” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**concerning them (ULT)****they were greatly confused...wondered (UST)**

The pronoun **them** does not refer to the apostles but to the **words** that the officers spoke in giving their report. Alternate translation: “about the things the officers had told them” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**as to what this might become (ULT)****They...what the consequences would be (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “wondering what would happen as a result” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of...temple](#)
- [chief priests](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [chief priests](#)
- [of...temple guards](#)

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> And when both the captain of the [temple](#) and the [chief priests](#) heard these words, they were perplexed concerning them, as to what this might become.

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> When the [chief priests](#) and the officer in charge of the [temple guards](#) heard that, they were greatly confused. They wondered what the consequences would be.



## Acts 5:25

### Behold, the men (ULT)

### Listen to this! The men (UST)

This person says **Behold** to get the council members to focus their attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a similar expression that you can use here in your translation.  
Alternate translation: "Right now the men" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you put (ULT)

### you put (UST)

Here the word **you** refers to the captain of the temple and the chief priests and so it is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### standing in the temple (ULT)

### have somehow gotten...into the temple courtyard...there (UST)

Only priests were allowed inside the temple building, so **the temple** means the courtyard around the temple.  
Alternate translation: "standing in the temple courtyard" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [reported](#)
- [prison](#)
- [temple](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [people](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [and reported](#)
- [jail](#)
- [temple courtyard...there](#)
- [they are telling...about Jesus](#)
- [people](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then someone, having arrived, [reported](#) to them, "Behold, the men whom you put in the [prison](#) are standing in the [temple](#) and [teaching](#) the [people](#)."

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then someone came [and reported](#) to them, "Listen to this! The men you put in [jail](#) have somehow gotten into the [temple courtyard](#). And [they are telling](#) the [people there about Jesus!](#)"

## Acts 5:26

**Then the captain, going with the officers, brought them back, not with violence, for they feared the people, lest they stone them (ULT)**

The first instance of the pronoun **them** refers to the apostles, but the second instance of the pronoun **them** refers to the captain and the officers. The captain and officers were not afraid that the people would stone the apostles. They were afraid that they would be stoned themselves if they used violence against the apostles. You could reword this to make the referents clear. It may be helpful to make this two sentences. Alternate translation: "Then the captain went with the officers and brought the apostles back. But the captain and officers did not use any violence, because they were afraid that the people would stone them if they did" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- they feared
- people
- they stone them

### Translation Words - UST

- They were afraid that
- people
- would try to kill them by throwing stones at them

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Then the captain, going with the officers, brought them back, not with violence, for they feared the people, lest they stone them.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> So the officer in charge of the temple guards went to the temple courtyard with the officers. They brought the Representatives back {to the council room}. But they did not treat them roughly. They were afraid that if they did that, the people would try to kill them by throwing stones at them.

## Acts 5:27

### And having brought them (ULT)

The pronoun **them** refers to the apostles in all three instances in this verse. It may be helpful to specify this here in the first instance. Alternate translation: "Once they had brought the apostles back" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Sanhedrin](#)
- [high priest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [council members](#)
- [high priest](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> And having brought them, they set them in the [Sanhedrin](#), and the [high priest](#) interrogated them,

### UST

<sup>27</sup> After the captain and his officers had brought the Representatives to the council room, they commanded them to stand in front of the [council members](#). Then the [high priest](#) questioned them intensely.



## **Acts 5:28**

**We commanded you with a command (ULT)**  
**We ordered you very clearly (UST)**

For emphasis, the high priest is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. If your language uses the same construction for emphasis, it would be appropriate to use it here in your translation. Other languages may have other ways of conveying this emphasis. Alternate translation: “we commanded you very strictly”

**you...you have filled...your...you desire (ULT)**  
**you...people all over Jerusalem...you...you are trying to make it seem that (UST)**

In this verse the words **you** and **your** refer to the apostles, and so those words are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**in this name (ULT)**  
**about that man Jesus (UST)**

The high priest is using the term **name** figuratively to mean the person of Jesus. See how you translated the similar expression in [4:17](#). Alternate translation: “about this person Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**behold, you have filled (ULT)**  
**you have disobeyed us...people all over Jerusalem (UST)**

The high priest says **behold** to get the apostles to focus their attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a similar expression that you can use here in your translation. Alternate translation: “nevertheless you have filled” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching (ULT)**  
**and you have taught people all over Jerusalem about him (UST)**

The high priest is speaking figuratively of the city of **Jerusalem** as if it were a container that the apostles had **filled** with their teaching. Alternate translation: “you have taught people who live in every part of Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you desire to bring upon us (ULT)**  
**you are trying to make it seem that we are the ones who are guilty (UST)**

The high priest is speaking figuratively as if the apostles wanted to put the blood of Jesus on him and his fellow Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: “you want to make us responsible for” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> saying, “We commanded you with a command not to teach in this name, and behold, you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching, and you desire to bring upon us the blood of this man.”

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> He said to them, “We ordered you very clearly not to teach people about that man Jesus! But you have disobeyed us, and you have taught people all over Jerusalem about him! Furthermore, you are trying to make it seem that we are the ones who are guilty of that man’s death!”

**us (ULT)****we (UST)**

By **us**, the high priest means himself and his fellow Jewish leaders, but not the apostles to whom he is speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**the blood (ULT)****death (UST)**

The high priest is using the term **blood** figuratively to mean death by association with the way Jesus' blood was shed when he died. Alternate translation: "the death" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of this man (ULT)****of that man's (UST)**

The phrase **this man** refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "this man Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- with a command
- We commanded
- to teach
- with...teaching
- name
- Jerusalem
- blood

**Translation Words - UST**

- We ordered...very clearly
- We ordered...very clearly
- to teach people
- and...have taught...about him
- man Jesus
- people all over Jerusalem
- death

## Acts 5:29

**answering...Peter and the apostles said (ULT)  
replied...Peter, speaking for himself and the  
other Representatives...replied (UST)**

Together the words **answering** and **said** mean that Peter and the other apostles responded to the high priest. Alternate translation: "Peter and the apostles responded" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

**Peter and the apostles said (ULT)  
Peter, speaking for himself and the other  
Representatives...replied (UST)**

Luke seems to mean implicitly that Peter said what follows on behalf of all of the apostles. Alternate translation: "Peter said on behalf of all of the apostles" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**men (ULT)  
what you people tell us to do (UST)**

Peter is using the term **men** in a generic sense to mean "human beings." Alternate translation: "human beings" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [to obey](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [Representatives](#)
- [to obey](#)
- [what God commands us to do](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But answering, [Peter](#) and the [apostles](#) said, "It is necessary [to obey God](#) rather than men.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> But [Peter](#), speaking for himself and the other [Representatives](#), replied, "We have [to obey what God commands us to do](#), not what you people tell us to do!





## **Acts 5:30**

**of our fathers (ULT)**  
**whom our ancestors worshiped (UST)**

Peter is using the term **fathers** figuratively to mean “ancestors.”  
 Alternate translation: “of our ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of our fathers (ULT)**  
**whom our ancestors worshiped (UST)**

Although the term **fathers** is masculine, Peter is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say “of our fathers and mothers” to indicate this. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**raised up Jesus (ULT)**  
**caused Jesus to live again after he died (UST)**

As in [2:24](#), the idiom **raised up** means that God made Jesus alive again after he died. Alternate translation: “brought Jesus back to life” (See: [Idiom](#))

**whom you killed (ULT)**  
**You are the ones who killed Jesus (UST)**

The word **you** is plural. Even though Peter is responding to the high priest, who has been interrogating the apostles, Peter is referring here to the entire council. If your language does not use separate forms for singular and plural “you,” you could indicate that in some other way. Alternate translation: “whom you Sanhedrin members killed” (See: [Forms of You](#))

**whom you killed (ULT)**  
**You are the ones who killed Jesus (UST)**

It was the Romans who literally killed Jesus, but Peter says figuratively that the Sanhedrin members killed him because their demands led to his death. Alternate translation: “whom you demanded to be killed” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**having hung him on a tree (ULT)**  
**by nailing him to a cross (UST)**

The word translated as **tree** can mean either an actual tree or something made of wood. Peter is using the word to refer to the cross, which was made out of wood. Alternate translation: “having hung him on a wooden cross” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**having hung him on a tree (ULT)**  
**by nailing him to a cross (UST)**

In some languages the word **hung** would suggest a different method of execution. For clarity, you could use a different word that might indicate the actual meaning better. Alternate translation: “having suspended him from a wooden cross” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**ULT**

<sup>30</sup> The **God** of our **fathers raised up Jesus**, whom you killed, having hung him on a tree.

**UST**

<sup>30</sup> You are the ones who killed Jesus by nailing him to a cross! **But God**, whom our **ancestors worshiped**, **caused Jesus to live again after he died**.

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of...fathers
- raised up
- Jesus

## Translation Words - UST

- But God
- whom...ancestors worshiped
- caused...to live again after he died
- Jesus



## **Acts 5:31**

## **this one (ULT)** **Jesus...him (UST)**

Peter is using the demonstrative adjective **this** as a noun to refer to a specific person, Jesus. (ULT shows that by adding **one**.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could specify whom Peter means. Alternate translation: "Jesus" or "this Jesus" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## **to his right (ULT)** **more than he has honored anyone else (UST)**

Peter is using the adjective **right** as a noun in order to indicate the right side. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:25](#). Alternate translation: "to his right side" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## **to his right (ULT)** **more than he has honored anyone else (UST)**

God placing Jesus at his **right** side was a symbolic way of giving him great honor. Alternate translation: "to a place of great honor next to him" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

## **to give repentance and forgiveness of sins to Israel (ULT)** **He has enabled us Israelites to stop sinning and he has forgiven us for the sins we committed (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas behind the words **repentance** and **forgiveness**, you could express the same ideas with verbs. Alternate translation: "to give the people of Israel an opportunity to repent and have God forgive their sins" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## **to Israel (ULT)** **us Israelites...us (UST)**

Peter is referring figuratively to all of the people of Israel as if they were a single person, their ancestor, **Israel**. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel" (See: [Personification](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [has exalted](#)
- [to...right](#)
- [as Prince](#)
- [Savior](#)
- [repentance](#)
- [forgiveness](#)
- [of sins](#)
- [to Israel](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>31</sup> [God has exalted](#) this one to his [right as Prince and Savior](#), to give [repentance and forgiveness of sins to Israel](#).

### **UST**

<sup>31</sup> [God has honored](#) Jesus [more than he has honored anyone else](#). He has made him [the one to save us and rule over us](#). He has enabled [us Israelites to stop sinning](#) and [he has forgiven us for the sins we committed](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- God...He
- has honored...has made
- for the sins we committed
- more than he has honored anyone else
- the one to save us
- rule over us
- us Israelites...us
- to stop sinning
- he has forgiven



## Acts 5:32

### we (ULT)

### We (UST)

Peter is addressing the Sanhedrin, but he is using the word **we** to refer only to himself and the other apostles. So if your language distinguishes between exclusive and inclusive “us,” it would be accurate to use the exclusive form here. Other languages may have other ways of indicating that **we** is exclusive here. Alternate translation: “we apostles” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### and the Holy Spirit, whom God has given to those obeying him (ULT)

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. Alternate translation: “and the Holy Spirit, whom God has given to those obeying him, is also a witness of these things” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### whom God has given to those obeying him (ULT)

### whom God has sent to us who obey him (UST)

Here at the end of his response to the high priest, Peter is echoing what he said at the beginning: “It is necessary to obey God rather than men.” He is defining himself and his fellow apostles as people who are committed to obeying God and to testifying about Jesus even if the authorities forbid them to do that. Peter is saying that God has given the apostles the Holy Spirit to empower them to give that testimony in obedience to him. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “whom God has given us to empower us to obey him by testifying about Jesus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [witnesses](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [God](#)
- [obeying](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [tell people about...that we saw happen to Jesus...is also confirming that...are true](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [God](#)
- [who obey](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> And we are [witnesses](#) of these things, and the [Holy Spirit](#), whom [God](#) has given to those [obeying](#) him.”

### UST

<sup>32</sup> We [tell people about](#) these things [that we saw happen to Jesus](#). The [Holy Spirit](#), whom [God](#) has sent to us [who obey](#) him, [is also confirming that](#) these things [are true](#).”

**Acts 5:33**

**they...having heard this...were furious and wanted to kill them (ULT)**  
**the members of the Sanhedrin...When...heard this, they became so angry {with the Representatives} that they wanted to kill them (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to the council members and the pronoun **them** refers to the apostles. Alternate translation: “the council members were furious when they heard this, and they wanted to kill the apostles” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> But having heard this, they were furious and wanted to kill them.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> When the members of the Sanhedrin heard this, they became so angry {with the Representatives} that they wanted to kill them.



## **Acts 5:34**

**a certain...Pharisee, Gamaliel by name (ULT)**  
**there was a council member...named**  
**Gamaliel. He was a member of the Pharisee**  
**group (UST)**

Luke uses this phrase to introduce a new character into the story. If your language has its own way of doing that, you can use it here in your translation. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**Pharisee (ULT)**  
**He was a member of the Pharisee group (UST)**

The name **Pharisee** describes a member of a group of Jewish priests. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Gamaliel (ULT)**  
**Gamaliel (UST)**

**Gamaliel** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**a law teacher, honored by all the people (ULT)**  
**He taught the Jewish laws, and the Jewish people respected him highly (UST)**

Luke provides this background information about Gamaliel to help readers understand what happens next in the story, when the council members follow Gamaliel's advice to be patient rather than acting immediately against the apostles. In your translation, present this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. It may be helpful to do that in a separate sentence, as UST does. (See: [Background Information](#))

**honored by all the people (ULT)**  
**and the Jewish people respected him highly (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "whom all the people honored" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**honored by all the people (ULT)**  
**and the Jewish people respected him highly (UST)**

The word **all** is a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "whom the people greatly honored" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**rising up (ULT)**  
**He stood up (UST)**

Here, **rising up** means that Gamaliel stood up. He did that to indicate that he had something important to say. Alternate translation: "standing up to show that he had something important to say" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> But a certain **Pharisee**, Gamaliel **by name**, a **law teacher**, honored by all the **people**, **rising up** in the **Sanhedrin**, **commanded** to put the apostles outside for a little.

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> But there was a council member **named Gamaliel**. **He was a member of the Pharisee group**. **He taught the Jewish laws**, and the **Jewish people** respected him highly. **He stood up** in the **council and told the guards** to take the Representatives out of the room for a short time.

## **commanded...outside...to put the apostles (ULT) and told the guards...out of the room...to take the Representatives (UST)**

Your language may require you to specify the object of **commanded**. Alternate translation: “commanded the officers to take the apostles outside” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### **for a little (ULT) for a short time (UST)**

Luke is using the adjective **little** as a noun in order to indicate a length of time. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can supply a word such as “while” to show this. Alternate translation: “for a little while” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- Pharisee
- by name
- a law teacher
- by...people
- rising up
- Sanhedrin
- commanded

### **Translation Words - UST**

- named
- He was a member of the Pharisee group
- He taught the Jewish laws
- Jewish people
- He stood up
- council
- and told the guards

## Acts 5:35

### And (ULT)

#### After the guards had taken them out (UST)

Luke is using the word translated **And** to indicate that Gamaliel spoke after the officers had taken the apostles out of the council chamber. Alternate translation: “Then” (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#) )

### Men, Israelites (ULT)

#### You leaders of the people of Israel (UST)

This is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: “My fellow Israelites” (See: [Idiom](#))

### pay attention to yourselves, what you are about to do to these men (ULT)

#### you must think carefully about what you are going to do to these men (UST)

Gamaliel is warning the council members not to do something that they will later regret. He means “be very careful about what you do to these men,” and you could say that as an alternate translation. However, the implication is that the council should not kill the apostles, as [5:33](#) says they want to do. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “you need to be very cautious and not kill these men, because you might deeply regret that later” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You leaders of the people of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> And he said to them, “Men, [Israelites](#), pay attention to yourselves, what you are about to do to these men.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> {After the guards had taken them out,} Gamaliel said to the other council members, “[You leaders of the people of Israel](#), you must think carefully about what you are going to do to these men.





## **Acts 5:36**

**before...these days (ULT)**  
**Some years ago...Some years ago (UST)**

Gamaliel is using the term **days** idiomatically to refer to a specific time. Alternate translation: "some time ago" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Theudas (ULT)**  
**a man named Theudas (UST)**

**Theudas** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**rose up (ULT)**  
**led a revolt against the government (UST)**

In this context, **rose up** figuratively means that Theudas rebelled against the Roman government. Alternate translation: "rebelled" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**saying himself to be somebody (ULT)**  
**He claimed that he was a great man (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "saying that he was somebody important" (See: [Idiom](#))

**to whom was joined a number of men (ULT)**  
**and about four hundred men joined him (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. As the General Notes to this chapter suggest, it may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "whom a number of men joined" or, as a new sentence, "A number of men joined him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**who was killed (ULT)**  
**But the Romans captured and executed him (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who did the action. It may be helpful to begin another new sentence here. Alternate translation: "whom the Romans killed" or, as a new sentence, "But the Romans killed him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**as many as were persuaded by him (ULT)**  
**all those...who had joined him (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "as many as he had persuaded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> For before these [days](#), Theudas [rose up](#), saying himself to be somebody, to whom was joined a number of men, about 400, who was killed, and all, as many as were persuaded by him, were dispersed, and they came to nothing.

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> [Some years ago](#) a man named Theudas [led a revolt against the government](#). He claimed that he was a great man, and about four hundred men joined him. But the Romans captured and executed him, and all those who had joined him went back to where they came from. So this revolt did not succeed.

**were dispersed (ULT)**  
**went back to where they came from (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “dispersed”  
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

**and...they came to nothing (ULT)**  
**and...this revolt did not succeed (UST)**

Alternate translation: “and their plans did not succeed”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [days](#)
- [rose up](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Some years ago](#)
- [led a revolt against the government](#)



## **Acts 5:37**

**After this one (ULT)****After that (UST)**

Gamaliel is using the demonstrative adjective **this** as a noun to refer to a specific person, Theudas. (ULT shows that by adding **one**.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could use a pronoun or this man's name. Alternate translation: "After him" or "After Theudas" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**Judas the Galilean (ULT)****a man named Judas from the region of Galilee (UST)**

The word **Judas** is the name of a man. See how you translated the same name in [1:13](#) and [1:16](#). (Those verses describe two other men with this name, not the same Judas as here.) **Galilean** is the name for someone who is from the region of Galilee. See how you translated that name in [1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**rose up (ULT)****rebelled (UST)**

As in [5:36](#), **rose up** here figuratively means that Judas rebelled against the Roman government. Alternate translation: "rebelled" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in the days of the census (ULT)****during the time when the Romans were recording the names of people in order to tax them (UST)**

Gamaliel is using the term **days** idiomatically to refer to a specific time. Alternate translation: "at the time of the census" (See: [Idiom](#))

**drew away people after him (ULT)****He convinced some people to rebel with him (UST)**

Here, **drew away** is an idiom that means Judas persuaded people to rebel with him against the Roman government. Alternate translation: "persuaded people to join him in rebellion" (See: [Idiom](#))

**That one also (ULT)****But he too (UST)**

Gamaliel is using the demonstrative adjective **that** as a noun to refer to a specific person, Judas. (ULT shows that by adding **one**.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you use a pronoun or this man's name. Alternate translation: "He also" or "Judas also" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> After this one, Judas the [Galilean rose up](#) in the [days](#) of the census and drew away people after him. That one also [perished](#), and all, as many as were persuaded by him, were scattered.

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> After that, during the [time](#) when the Romans were recording the names of people in order to tax them, a man named Judas from the [region of Galilee rebelled](#). He convinced some people to rebel with him. But he too [died](#), and all those who had joined him went off in different directions.

**as many as were persuaded by him (ULT)**  
**all those...who had joined him (UST)**

If your language would not use the passive form **were persuaded**, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "as many as he had persuaded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**were scattered (ULT)**  
**went off in different directions (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "scattered" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Galilean
- rose up
- days
- perished

**Translation Words - UST**

- time
- from...region of Galilee
- rebelled
- died





## **Acts 5:38**

## And now I say these things to you (ULT) Based on these examples, let me offer some advice (UST)

Gamaliel uses this expression to shift the council members' attention away from the stories of Theudas and Judas so that he could give them some direct advice. In your translation, use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that would be natural for this same purpose.

## And (ULT) Based on these examples (UST)

Gamaliel is using the word translated **And** to introduce what he wants the council to conclude as a result of the two examples he has given. Alternate translation: "So" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

## And...Keep away from these men...release them (ULT) Based on these examples...Do not kill these men! Set them free (UST)

When Gamaliel tells the council to **keep away from these men**, he implicitly means that they should not execute them, as [5:33](#) says they wanted to do. Alternate translation: "do not execute these men or put them back in prison"

## men...if this counsel or this work is from (ULT)

Alternate translation: "if men have devised this plan or are doing this work"

## men (ULT)

## men (UST)

Gamaliel is using the term **men** in a generic sense to mean "humans." Since he contrasts **from men** here with "from God" in the next verse, it may be appropriate to add the word "mere" to help show that contrast. Alternate translation: "mere humans" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## it will be destroyed (ULT) someone will stop them. They will fail (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: "someone will destroy it" or "it will not last" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [work](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [things that are happening](#)

## ULT

<sup>38</sup> And now I say these things to you: Keep away from these men and release them, for if this counsel or this [work](#) is from men, it will be destroyed,

## UST

<sup>38</sup> Based on these examples, let me offer some advice. Do not kill these men! Set them free! I say this because if the [things that are happening](#) now are just something that humans have planned, someone will stop them. They will fail.



## **Acts 5:39**

**but (ULT)****But (UST)**

Gamaliel uses this word to introduce a contrast between what would happen if the work the apostles are doing were “from men” and what would happen if it were **from God**. As the General Notes to this chapter suggest, it may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation, as a new sentence: “However,” (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

**if...it is from God (ULT)****if...God has commanded them to do these things (UST)**

Here the pronoun **it** refers back to the phrase “this counsel or this work” in the previous verse. Alternate translation: “if God has devised this plan or commanded these men to do this work” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**lest (ULT)****You may...discover that (UST)**

It may be helpful to state the implications of the word **lest** explicitly. Alternate translation: “and if you do try to destroy them,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**you may even be found God-opposers (ULT)****You may...even...discover that...you are working against God (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. However, since this is also an idiom (see next note), it would only be meaningful to do that in your translation if your language uses the verb “find” in the same idiomatic sense. Alternate translation: “people may even find you to be” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you may...be found (ULT)****You may...discover that (UST)**

The expression **be found** is an idiom. Alternate translation: “turn out to be” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were persuaded...by him (ULT)****The other members of the council accepted...what Gamaliel said (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “Gamaliel persuaded them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [God-opposers](#)

**ULT**

<sup>39</sup> but if it is from [God](#), you will not be able to destroy them, lest you may even be found [God-opposers](#).” And they were persuaded by him.

**UST**

<sup>39</sup> But if [God has commanded them to do these things](#), you will not be able to stop them. You may even discover that [you are working against God!](#)” The other members of the council accepted what Gamaliel said.

## **Translation Words - UST**

- God has commanded them to do these things
- you are working against God

## Acts 5:40

### And (ULT)

Luke uses the word translated **And** to introduce what the Sanhedrin did as a result of Gamaliel's advice. Alternate translation: "So" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**summoning the apostles, having beaten them, they commanded them (ULT)**  
**They told the temple guards to bring in the Representatives and beat them. {So the guards brought them into the council room and beat them.} Then the council members commanded them (UST)**

The Sanhedrin would have ordered their officers to bring back the apostles and beat them. They did not do those things personally. But Luke speaks figuratively as if they did do those things because they ordered them to be done. Alternate translation: "they had their officers bring back the apostles and beat them, and then they commanded them" (See: [Synecdoche](#) )

**to speak in the name of Jesus (ULT)**  
**to speak to people about Jesus any more (UST)**

The Sanhedrin members are using the term **name** figuratively to mean the person of Jesus. See how you translated the similar expression in [4:17](#). Alternate translation: "to speak about Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [summoning](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [they commanded them](#)
- [name](#)
- [of Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They told the temple guards to bring in](#)
- [Representatives](#)
- [Then the council members commanded them](#)
- [about Jesus](#)
- [about Jesus](#)

### ULT

**40** And [summoning](#) the [apostles](#), having beaten them, [they commanded them](#) not to speak in the [name of Jesus](#), and they released them.

### UST

**40** [They told the temple guards to bring in](#) the [Representatives](#) and beat them. {So the guards brought them into the council room and beat them.} [Then the council members commanded them](#) not to speak to people [about Jesus](#) any more, and they let them go.

## Acts 5:41

### from the face of the Sanhedrin (ULT) left...the council chamber (UST)

Luke is using the word **face** figuratively to mean “presence.”  
Alternate translation: “from the presence of the Sanhedrin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### they had been considered worthy (ULT) God had honored them (UST)

If your language would not use the passive form **had been considered**, you could say this with an active form, and you could say who did the action. Alternate translation: “God had considered them worthy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### for the Name (ULT) because they were testifying to Jesus (UST)

Here, **the Name** figuratively means Jesus. Alternate translation: “for Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the face](#)
- [of...Sanhedrin](#)
- [rejoicing](#)
- [they had been considered worthy](#)
- [to suffer dishonor](#)
- [Name](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the council chamber](#)
- [the council chamber](#)
- [As they did, they...rejoiced](#)
- [God had honored them](#)
- [by allowing people to treat them badly](#)
- [because they were testifying to Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Therefore, they indeed were going out from [the face](#) of the [Sanhedrin](#) [rejoicing](#) that [they had been considered worthy to suffer dishonor](#) for the [Name](#).

### UST

<sup>41</sup> So they left [the council chamber](#). [As they did, they even rejoiced](#) that [God had honored them by allowing people to treat them badly because they were testifying to Jesus](#).



## Acts 5:42

### And (ULT) after that (UST)

Luke uses the word translated **And** to introduce information about what happened after this story as a result of the events within the story itself. Your language may have its own way of indicating how such information relates to a story. (See: [End of Story](#))

### in the temple (ULT) they went to the temple area (UST)

Only priests were allowed inside the temple building, so **the temple** means the courtyard around the temple. Alternate translation: “in the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### they did not cease teaching and proclaiming the gospel (ULT) and they continued teaching people and telling them that (UST)

Luke is expressing a positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. Alternate translation: “they continued to teach and to proclaim the gospel” (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- day
- temple
- in...house
- teaching
- proclaiming the gospel
- Jesus {is}
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- day
- temple area
- various people's houses
- teaching people
- telling them that
- Jesus is
- Messiah

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> And every day, in the temple and in each house, they did not cease teaching and proclaiming the gospel—Jesus {is} the Christ.

### UST

<sup>42</sup> Every day after that, they went to the temple area and to various people's houses, and they continued teaching people and telling them that Jesus is the Messiah.

## Acts 6

### Acts 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Acts 6:7 is a summary statement that Luke uses to mark the end of the first major part of the book.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The distribution to the widows

The believers in Jerusalem gave food every day to women whose husbands had died. All of them had been raised as Jews, but some of them spoke Hebrew and had lived mostly in Judea, while others spoke Greek and may have lived in Gentile areas. Those who gave out the food gave it to the Hebrew-speaking widows but not equally to the Greek-speaking widows. To please God, the church leaders appointed Greek-speaking men to make sure the Greek-speaking widows received their share of the food. One of these Greek-speaking men was Stephen.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “His face was like the face of an angel”

No one knows for sure what it was about Stephen's face that was like the face of an angel, because Luke does not tell us. A note to this phrase offers one suggestion, which you may choose to follow. However, you might also decide to say only what the ULT says about this.



## **Acts 6:1**

## Now in those days (ULT)

Luke uses this time reference to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

## in...those days (ULT)

## During...that time (UST)

Luke is using the term **days** idiomatically to refer to a specific time. Alternate translation: "at that same time" (See: [Idiom](#))

## by the Hellenists (ULT)

## The Greek-speaking Jews (UST)

**Hellenists** was the name for Jews in the Roman Empire who spoke the Greek language and followed Greek customs. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## the Hebrews (ULT)

## the Aramaic-speaking Jews (UST)

In this context, Luke is using the name **Hebrews** to mean Jews in the Roman Empire who spoke Aramaic, a language closely related to Hebrew, and who did not follow Greek customs. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## their widows were being overlooked in the daily serving (ULT)

## the widows among them were not receiving their fair share of food every day (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form, and you can say who was doing the action. Alternate translation: "those who were distributing food each day were overlooking their widows" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## in the daily serving (ULT)

## their fair share of food every day (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **service**, you could express the same idea with an equivalent expression. Alternate translations: "by those who were distributing food each day" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [when...were multiplying](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [by...Hellenists](#)
- [Hebrews](#)
- [serving](#)

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now in those [days](#), [when](#) the [disciples](#) [were multiplying](#), a complaint by the [Hellenists](#) happened against the [Hebrews](#), because their widows were being overlooked in the daily [serving](#).

## UST

<sup>1</sup> During that [time](#), [many more people](#) [were becoming believers](#). The [Greek-speaking Jews](#) began to complain about the [Aramaic-speaking Jews](#) because the widows among them were not receiving [their fair share of food](#) every day.

## Translation Words - UST

- time
- many more people were becoming
- believers
- Greek-speaking Jews
- Aramaic-speaking Jews
- their fair share of food



## **Acts 6:2**



**So (ULT)**  
**So {after...had heard what they were saying (UST)**

Luke is using the word **So** to introduce the results of what the previous sentence described. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for this same purpose. (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**the...Twelve (ULT)**  
**the twelve Representatives...they (UST)**

Luke is using the adjective **Twelve** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people, the apostles who led the church. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “the 12 apostles” or see the next note for a further possibility. (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**the...Twelve (ULT)**  
**the twelve Representatives...they (UST)**

Alternatively, even if your language does not ordinarily use adjectives as nouns, you may be able to do that in this case, since this is a title by which the apostles were known. Even though it is a number, if you translate it as a title, as ULT does, follow the conventions for titles in your language. For example, capitalize main words and write out numbers rather than use digits. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**to leave behind the word of God (ULT)**  
**if we stopped telling people the message God told us to share about Jesus (UST)**

The apostles are speaking figuratively as if they would walk away from the **word of God** and **leave it behind** them. Alternate translation: “to stop preaching and teaching the word of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the word of God (ULT)**  
**the message God told us to share about Jesus (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that God wanted the believers to share by using words. Alternate translation: “the message from God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to serve tables (ULT)**  
**in order to distribute food to people (UST)**

To describe the work that would be required for them personally to monitor the church's program of distributing food to people in need, the apostles speak figuratively as if they would be bringing food to people who were sitting at tables. Alternate translation: “to give our attention to food distribution” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> So [summoning](#) the multitude of the [disciples](#), the [Twelve](#) said, “It is not acceptable for us to leave behind the [word of God to serve](#) tables.

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> So {after} the [twelve Representatives](#) {had heard what they were saying, [they](#)} [summoned](#) all the other [believers](#) {in [Jerusalem](#)} [to meet together](#). Then they said to them, “We would not be doing the right thing if we stopped telling people the [message God told us to share about Jesus in order to distribute food](#) to people!

## Translation Words - ULT

- summoning
- of...disciples
- Twelve
- word of God
- to serve

## Translation Words - UST

- twelve Representatives...they
- summoned
- believers...in Jerusalem} to meet together
- message God told us to share about Jesus
- in order to distribute food



## **Acts 6:3**

## brothers (ULT) fellow believers (UST)

See how you translated the term **brothers** in 1:15. Alternate translation: “my fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## men...of good reputation (ULT) men...men whom you know (UST)

The expression **being attested** is a passive verbal form. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express the same meaning with an active form. Alternate translation: “men to whose honesty people attest” or “men whom people say they trust” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## full of the Spirit and of wisdom (ULT) the Spirit of God directs and who are very wise (UST)

The apostles are speaking figuratively of these men as if they were containers that the Holy Spirit and wisdom could fill. Alternate translation: “in whose lives the Spirit is evidently present and who possess great wisdom” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## full of the Spirit and of wisdom (ULT) the Spirit of God directs and who are very wise (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **wisdom**, you could express the same idea with an adverb such as “wisely.” Alternate translation: “in whose lives the Spirit is evidently present and who act very wisely” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## over this task (ULT) to do this work (UST)

When the apostles say that they will appoint these men **over** the work of food distribution, they are using a spatial metaphor. Alternate translation: “to be responsible for this task” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [of good reputation](#)
- [of the Spirit](#)
- [of wisdom](#)
- [we may appoint](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [fellow believers](#)
- [men whom you know](#)
- [the Spirit of God](#)
- [who are very wise](#)

## ULT

<sup>3</sup> So [brothers](#), choose from among yourselves seven men [of good reputation](#), [full of the Spirit](#) and [of wisdom](#), whom [we may appoint](#) over this task.

## UST

<sup>3</sup> So, [fellow believers](#), carefully choose seven men from among you, [men whom you know the Spirit of God directs](#) and [who are very wise](#). [Then we will instruct](#) them to do this work.

- Then we will instruct

## Acts 6:4

### of the word (ULT) the news about Jesus (UST)

The apostles are using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that God has told them to teach and preach by using words. Alternate translation: "of teaching and preaching the message about Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [in prayer](#)
- [in...ministry](#)
- [of...word](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to pray](#)
- [to proclaim](#)
- [news about Jesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But we will continue [in prayer](#) and in the [ministry](#) of the [word](#)."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> As for us, we will keep on using our time [to pray](#) and [to proclaim](#) the [news about Jesus](#)."





## **Acts 6:5**

**the statement was pleasing before the whole multitude (ULT)**

**All of the disciples liked their suggestion (UST)**

Luke is using the word **before** to refer to the opinion of the believers, since people assess things that come to their attention in front of them. Alternate translation: “what the apostles recommended pleased all of the other believers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**So (ULT)**

**So (UST)**

Luke is using the word translated **And** to introduce what the believers did as a result of the apostles’ request. Alternate translation: “So” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**Stephen...Philip...Prochorus...Nicanor...**

**Timon...Parmenas...Nicolaus (ULT)**

**Stephen...Philip...Procorus...Nicanor...Timon...**

**Parmenas...Nicolas...Nicolas (UST)**

These are the names of seven men. They are all Greek names, and this suggests that all of the men selected were from the group of Greek-speaking Jews among the believers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**a man full of faith and of the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**a man who strongly believed in God and whom the Holy Spirit controlled completely (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively of Stephen as if he was a container that faith and the Holy Spirit had filled. Alternate translation: “a man who possessed great wisdom and in whose life the Holy Spirit was evidently present” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a man full of faith and of the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**a man who strongly believed in God and whom the Holy Spirit controlled completely (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faith**, you could express the same idea with a verb such as “trust.” Alternate translation: “a man who confidently trusted in God and in whose life the Holy Spirit was evidently present” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**from Antioch (ULT)**

**who was from the city of Antioch (UST)**

The name **Antiochian** describes a person who comes from the city of Antioch. Alternate translation: “who came from Antioch” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> And the statement was pleasing before the whole multitude. So [they chose Stephen](#), a man full of [faith](#) and [of the Holy Spirit](#), and [Philip](#), and [Prochorus](#), and [Nicanor](#), and [Timon](#), and [Parmenas](#), and [Nicolaus](#), a proselyte [from Antioch](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> All of the disciples liked their suggestion. So [they chose Stephen](#), a man who strongly [believed in God](#) and [whom the Holy Spirit controlled](#) completely. [They also chose Philip](#), [Procorus](#), [Nicanor](#), [Timon](#), [Parmenas](#), and [Nicolas](#), [who was from the city of Antioch](#). [Nicolas](#) was a former Gentile who had converted to the Jewish religion.

## Translation Words - ULT

- they chose
- Stephen
- of faith
- of the Holy Spirit
- Philip
- from Antioch

## Translation Words - UST

- they chose...They...chose
- Stephen
- believed in God
- whom the Holy Spirit controlled
- Philip
- who was from the city of Antioch

## Acts 6:6

**having prayed, they placed their hands upon them (ULT)**

**who prayed for those men. As they prayed, they placed their hands on the men's heads to show that they approved of them to do that work (UST)**

This could mean: (1) that the apostles first prayed and then placed their hands on these men. Alternate translation: "after they had prayed, they placed their hands upon them" (2) that the apostles placed their hands on the men while they were praying for them. Alternate translation: "they prayed for them with their hands placed upon them" or "they placed their hands upon them and prayed for them" (See: [Order of Events](#))

**they placed their hands upon them (ULT)**

**they placed their hands on the men's heads to show that they approved of them to do that work (UST)**

The apostles **placed their hands** on the seven men to show publicly that they were giving them the responsibility and authority to oversee the food distribution. Alternate translation: "and placed their hands on them to show that they were giving them responsibility and authority" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [apostles](#)
- [having prayed](#)
- [hands](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Representatives](#)
- [who prayed for those men. As they prayed](#)
- [hands](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They brought them before the [apostles](#), and [having prayed](#), they placed their [hands](#) upon them.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> The believers brought these seven men to the [Representatives](#), [who prayed for those men. As they prayed](#), they placed their [hands](#) on the men's heads to show that they approved of them to do that work.



## **Acts 6:7**

As the outline in the General Introduction indicates, this verse is the end of the first major section of the book of Acts. That section describes how the apostles spread the good news about Jesus in Jerusalem. Luke uses this verse to summarize what happened as a result of the events within this whole section of the book. Your language may have its own way of indicating how such a summary relates to a significant part of a story. (See: [End of Story](#))

### **the word of God kept spreading (ULT)** **More and more people were hearing the news about Jesus (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively of the way the message about Jesus kept becoming more widespread as if the word of God itself were **growing**. Alternate translation: “more and more people were hearing the word of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **the word of God kept spreading (ULT)** **More and more people were hearing the news about Jesus (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that God told the believers to spread by using words. Alternate translation: “the message about Jesus kept becoming more widespread” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### **became obedient to the faith (ULT)** **They put their trust in Jesus as the Messiah and so they began to live in the way he said they should (UST)**

Luke speaks generally of **the faith** (that is, belief in Jesus) to indicate that these priests **became obedient** to one part of it, Jesus’ teachings about how to live. But that obedience showed that the priests genuinely embraced faith in Jesus as Messiah in its entirety. Alternate translation: “came to believe in Jesus and so started obeying his teachings” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### **became obedient to the faith (ULT)** **They put their trust in Jesus as the Messiah and so they began to live in the way he said they should (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faith**, you could express the same idea with a verb such as “believe.” Alternate translation: “came to believe in Jesus and so started obeying his teachings” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [word of God](#)
- [of disciples](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [increased](#)
- [of...priests](#)
- [became obedient](#)
- [to...faith](#)

#### **ULT**

<sup>7</sup> So the [word of God](#) kept spreading, and the number of [disciples](#) in [Jerusalem increased](#) greatly, and a large crowd of the [priests became obedient](#) to the [faith](#).

#### **UST**

<sup>7</sup> More and more people were hearing the [news about Jesus](#). The number of [people in Jerusalem who believed in Jesus was increasing](#) greatly. Among them were very many [Jewish priests](#). [They put their trust in Jesus as the Messiah and so they began to live in the way he said they should](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- news about Jesus
- of people...who believed in Jesus
- Jerusalem
- was increasing
- Jewish priests
- They put their trust in Jesus as the Messiah and so they began to live in the way he said they should
- They put their trust in Jesus as the Messiah and so they began to live in the way he said they should





## **Acts 6:8**

## Now Stephen (ULT)

Luke uses this phrase to introduce Stephen as the main character in this part of the story. Your language may have its own way of doing that. If so, you can use it here in your translation. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

## Stephen...full of grace and power, was doing (ULT)

Luke is speaking figuratively as if Stephen were a container that **grace and power** were filling. Alternate translation: "Stephen had abundant grace and power, and so he was doing" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Stephen...full of grace and power, was doing (ULT)

Luke may be using the two words **grace** and **power** together to express a single idea. The word **grace** would describe the character of the **power** that Stephen had. Specifically, it would be power that God was giving him. Alternate translation: "Stephen, full of gracious power, was doing" or "Stephen, full of power from God, was doing" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

## Stephen...full of grace and power, was doing (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas behind the words **grace** and **power**, you could express the same ideas with adverbs. Alternate translation: "Stephen was supernaturally and powerfully doing" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## great wonders and signs (ULT) many amazing miracles (UST)

The terms **wonders** and **signs** mean similar things. Luke is using them together for emphasis. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:22](#). Alternate translation: "many great miracles" (See: [Doublet](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Stephen](#)
- [of grace](#)
- [power](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [signs](#)
- [people](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [was giving](#)
- [Stephen](#)
- [power](#)
- [many...miracles](#)
- [many...miracles](#)
- [people {that showed that the message about Jesus was true}](#)

## ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now [Stephen](#), full of [grace](#) and [power](#), was doing great [wonders](#) and [signs](#) among the [people](#).

## UST

<sup>8</sup> God [was giving Stephen power](#) to do [many](#) amazing [miracles](#) among the [people](#) {that showed that the message about Jesus was true}.



## **Acts 6:9**

## there arose (ULT) opposed Stephen (UST)

Here the expression **rose up** means that these people took action, specifically to oppose Stephen, not that they stood up from a seated position. Alternate translation: “took action to oppose Stephen” (See: [Idiom](#))

## the synagogue that is called Freedmen (ULT) a synagogue that had the name Freedmen’s Synagogue (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this with an active form. Alternate translation: “the synagogue whose name was Freedmen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the synagogue that is called Freedmen (ULT) a synagogue that had the name Freedmen’s Synagogue (UST)

The word **Freedmen** probably refers to former slaves. Alternate translation: “the synagogue that former slaves attended” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## of the Cyrenians...of the Alexandrians...Cilicia...Asia (ULT) They were from the synagogues that people attended who were from the cities of Cyrene...Alexandria...the provinces of Cilicia...Asia (UST)

The word **Cyrenians** is the name for people from the city of Cyrene, and the word **Alexandrians** is the name for people from the city of Alexandria. The words **Cilicia** and **Asia** are the names of two Roman provinces. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [there arose](#)
- [synagogue](#)
- [is called](#)
- [of the Cyrenians](#)
- [Cilicia](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [Stephen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [opposed Stephen](#)
- [synagogue](#)
- [had the name](#)
- [They were from the synagogues that people attended who were from the cities of Cyrene](#)
- [the provinces of Cilicia](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But [there arose](#) some people who {were} from the [synagogue](#) that [is called](#) Freedmen, and [of the Cyrenians](#), and of the Alexandrians, and of those from [Cilicia](#) and [Asia](#). They were debating with [Stephen](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> However, some people [opposed Stephen](#). They were Jews who attended a [synagogue](#) that [had the name](#) Freedmen’s Synagogue. Some other Jews also opposed Stephen. [They were from the synagogues that people attended who were from the cities of Cyrene and Alexandria and from the provinces of Cilicia and Asia](#). They all began to argue [with Stephen](#).

- [Asia](#)
- [with Stephen](#)

**Acts 6:10**

**they were not able to stand against (ULT)**  
**they were not able to prove that what he said**  
**was wrong (UST)**

The expression **stand against** is an idiom. Alternate translation: "they could not argue successfully against" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the wisdom and the Spirit by whom he spoke**  
**(ULT)**  
**because God's Spirit enabled him to speak**  
**very wisely (UST)**

Luke may be using the two words **wisdom** and **Spirit** together to express a single idea. The word **Spirit** would describe the source and character of the **wisdom** that Stephen was displaying. The word **Spirit** refers to the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "the Spirit-inspired wisdom by which he spoke" or "the wisdom that the Holy Spirit gave him as he spoke" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

**the wisdom and the Spirit by whom he spoke (ULT)**  
**because God's Spirit enabled him to speak very wisely (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **wisdom**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as "wise." Alternate translation: "the wise things he said as the Spirit inspired him" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they were...able](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [Spirit](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [they were...able](#)
- [God's Spirit](#)
- [very wisely](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> But [they were](#) not [able](#) to stand against the [wisdom](#) and the [Spirit](#) by whom he spoke.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> But [they were](#) not [able](#) to prove that what he said was wrong, because [God's Spirit](#) enabled him to speak [very wisely](#).



## Acts 6:11

**they bribed men to say (ULT)**  
**they secretly persuaded some men to accuse**  
**Stephen falsely. Those men said (UST)**

The word **instigated** means that Stephen's opponents in some way persuaded these men to lie about what Stephen was saying. They may have offered them money, or they may have convinced them that Stephen was a dangerous person who needed to be stopped. Since Luke does not specify the means, it may be best not to suggest a means in your translation. But it would be appropriate to indicate that what these men were recruited to say about Stephen was a lie. Alternate translation: "recruited some men to lie about Stephen by saying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**We have heard (ULT)**  
**We heard (UST)**

The men are using the word **We** to refer only to themselves, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**speak blasphemous words (ULT)**  
**say bad things (UST)**

The men are using the term **words** figuratively to mean the things that Stephen has been saying by using words. Alternate translation: "saying blasphemous things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Moses (ULT)**  
**Moses (UST)**

**Moses** is the name of a man. God gave him the law to give to Israel. See how you translated his name in [3:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- blasphemous
- Moses
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- bad
- Moses
- God

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then they bribed men to say, "We have heard him speak blasphemous words against Moses and God."

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> So they secretly persuaded some men to accuse Stephen falsely. Those men said, "We heard him say bad things about Moses and God."

## Acts 6:12

### They...stirred up (ULT)

### They...made...angry at Stephen (UST)

In this verse and the next one, the word “they” continues to refer back to the opponents of Stephen who are named in 6:9. (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### They also stirred up the people and the elders and the scribes (ULT)

### They also made the other Jewish people angry at Stephen, including the elders and the teachers of the Jewish laws (UST)

Luke says figuratively that Stephen’s opponents **stirred up** these other groups, as if calm waters were being disturbed. He means that they said things to make them very upset with Stephen. Alternate translation: “They also said things that made the people, the elders, and the scribes very upset with Stephen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Sanhedrin (ULT)

### Jewish council (UST)

**Sanhedrin** is the name of the Jewish ruling council. See how you translated it in 4:14. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [elders](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [they seized](#)
- [Sanhedrin](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [other Jewish people](#)
- [elders](#)
- [teachers of the Jewish laws](#)
- [grabbed](#)
- [Jewish council](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> They also stirred up the [people](#) and the [elders](#) and the [scribes](#), and approaching him, [they seized](#) him and brought him to the [Sanhedrin](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> They also made the [other Jewish people](#) angry at Stephen, including the [elders](#) and the [teachers of the Jewish laws](#). They came up to Stephen, [grabbed](#) him, and took him to the [Jewish council](#).

## Acts 6:13

### does not stop speaking (ULT) keeps saying (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **stop**. Alternate translation: “continually speaks” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### speaking words (ULT) saying bad things (UST)

The men are using the term **words** figuratively to mean things that Stephen has been saying by using words. Alternate translation: “saying things” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the holy place (ULT) this holy temple (UST)

The men are describing the temple in Jerusalem figuratively by referring to it by something associated with it, that it is a **holy place**. Alternate translation: “the temple” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [false witnesses](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [law](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [some people who told lies about Stephen](#)
- [holy temple](#)
- [laws that Moses received from God](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And they brought [false witnesses](#), saying, “This man does not stop speaking words against the [holy place](#) and the [law](#).”

### UST

<sup>13</sup> They also brought in [some people who told lies about Stephen](#). They said, “This man keeps saying bad things about this [holy temple](#) and about the [laws that Moses received from God](#).”

## Acts 6:14

### the Nazarene (ULT) from the town of Nazareth (UST)

The word **Nazarene** describes someone who comes from the city of Nazareth. See how you translated it in [2:23](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### this place (ULT) the temple here in Jerusalem (UST)

By **this place**, the false witnesses mean the temple, which they described as “the holy place” in the previous verse. Alternate translation: “this temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the customs that Moses handed down to us (ULT) us to obey different customs from the ones that Moses taught our ancestors (UST)

The phrase **handed down** is an idiom that refers to something that is passed from generation to generation. The false witnesses are describing how the ancestors of the Jews have passed on the teachings originally received from Moses to each successive generation. Alternate translation: “the customs that our ancestors learned from Moses and have taught each successive generation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus the Nazarene](#)
- [Nazarene](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus from the town of Nazareth](#)
- [from the town of Nazareth](#)
- [Moses taught our ancestors](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For we have heard him say that this [Jesus the Nazarene](#) will destroy this place and change the customs that [Moses](#) handed down to us.”

### UST

<sup>14</sup> What we mean is that we have heard him say that this [Jesus from the town of Nazareth](#) will destroy the temple here in Jerusalem and will tell us to obey different customs from the ones that [Moses taught our ancestors.](#)”

## Acts 6:15

### saw his face as the face of an angel (ULT) and saw that his face resembled the face of an angel (UST)

Luke offers this comparison but he does not say specifically in what way Stephen's face was like **the face of an angel**. However, this may mean that his face was shining brightly, since descriptions of angels in the Bible often say they were shining brightly. So you might choose to say that in your translation. Alternate translation: "saw that his face was shining brightly, like the face of an angel" (See: [Simile](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Sanhedrin](#)
- [face](#)
- [the face](#) (2)
- [as](#)
- [of an angel](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [council room](#)
- [face](#)
- [the face](#) (2)
- [resembled](#)
- [of an angel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And looking intently at him, everyone sitting in the [Sanhedrin](#) saw his [face as the face of an angel](#).

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> All the people in the [council room](#) stared at Stephen and saw that his [face resembled the face of an angel](#).

## Acts 7

### Acts 7 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter presents Stephen's defense against the charges that false witnesses had made against him, as Luke describes in 6:13–14. Those witnesses had said, "This man does not stop speaking words against the holy place and the law. For we have heard him say that this Jesus the Nazarene will destroy this place and change the customs that Moses handed down to us." In response, Stephen shows that he respects the law, but he then shows how the Israelites have not kept the law. He next shows that he respects the temple, but he then explains that God does not live in temples made by people. Luke presents Stephen's speech within the narrative setting of his trial by the Sanhedrin. - (v. 1) The high priest asks Stephen to answer the charges against him - (vv. 2–19) Stephen tells the story of the Israelites up to the time of Moses - (vv. 20–37) Stephen explains how Moses gave the law - (vv. 38–43) Stephen shows that the Israelites did not keep the law that Moses gave - (vv. 44–47) Stephen tells how the tabernacle and temple were built - (vv. 48–50) Stephen explains that God does not live in temples that people build - (vv. 51–54) Stephen makes his own charges against the Sanhedrin members - (vv. 55–60) The Sanhedrin members, enraged, execute Stephen by stoning

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 7:42–43 and 49–50.

A note to 7:36–38 suggests making each of these verses a separate paragraph or using formatting in some other way to highlight the repeated phrases that Stephen uses to describe Moses.

It appears that 8:1 is part of the narrative of this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### "Stephen said"

Stephen told the history of Israel very briefly. He paid special attention to the times that the Israelites had rejected the people God had chosen to lead them. At the end of the story, he said that the Jewish leaders he was talking to had rejected Jesus just as the evil Israelites had always rejected the leaders God had appointed for them.

##### "Full of the Holy Spirit"

The Holy Spirit completely controlled Stephen so that he said only and all of what God wanted him to say.

#### Foreshadowing

When an author speaks of something that is not important at that time but will be important later in the story, this is called foreshadowing. Luke mentions Saul in 7:58, even though he is not an important person in this part of the story. This is because Saul, also known as Paul, is an important person in the rest of the Book of Acts.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Implied information

Stephen was talking to Jews who knew the law of Moses well, so he did not explain things that his hearers already knew. But you may need to explain some of these things so that your readers will be able to understand what Stephen was saying. For example, you may need to make explicit that when Joseph's brothers "sold him into Egypt" ([Acts 7:9](#)), Joseph was going to be a slave in Egypt. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Metonymy

Stephen spoke of Joseph ruling "over Egypt" and over all of Pharaoh's household. By this he meant that Joseph ruled over the people of Egypt and of the people and possessions in Pharaoh's household. (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Important textual issues in this chapter

### "a dwelling for the house of Jacob" (7:46)

In [7:46](#), some ancient manuscripts read "a dwelling for the house of Jacob." ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read "a dwelling for the God of Jacob." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it has. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Background knowledge

The Jewish leaders to whom Stephen spoke already knew much about the events he was describing. They knew what Moses had written in the book of Genesis. If the book of Genesis has not been translated into your language, it may be difficult for your readers to follow what Stephen said. It may be helpful to provide some background information, either in the text or in notes.

### Reference of "our" and "you"

Throughout this chapter, Stephen uses the word "our" to refer to himself and to his listeners. When he means only them, he says "you," and "you" is plural.

## Acts 7:1

### the high priest (ULT)

### the high priest (UST)

Luke assumes that his readers will know that **the high priest** was there and that he asked Stephen to testify because he was a member of the Sanhedrin and its leader. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “the high priest, who was the leader of the Sanhedrin,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [high priest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [high priest](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the [high priest](#) said, “Are these things thus?”

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then the [high priest](#) asked Stephen, “Are the things that these people are saying about you true?”





## **Acts 7:2**

**Then he said (ULT)**

The pronoun **he** refers to Stephen, not the high priest. Alternate translation: "Then Stephen said" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**Men, brothers and fathers (ULT)  
Fellow Jews and respected leaders (UST)**

The phrase **Men, brothers and fathers** is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: "You brothers and fathers of mine" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Men, brothers and fathers (ULT)  
Fellow Jews and respected leaders (UST)**

Stephen is using the word **brothers** figuratively to refer to his fellow Israelites. He is likely using the word **fathers** figuratively to refer to the leaders of Israel, the members of the Sanhedrin. In both cases he is speaking respectfully. Alternate translation: "My fellow Israelites and you leaders of Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**The God of glory (ULT)  
The glorious God whom we worship (UST)**

If it would be clearer in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **glory** with an adjective such as "glorious." Alternate translation: "The glorious God" or "God, who is glorious," or see the next note for a further possibility. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**The God of glory (ULT)  
The glorious God whom we worship (UST)**

Stephen apparently chooses to describe God in this way at the beginning of his speech in order to refute the charge made in [6:11](#) that he says blasphemous things about God. Calling him the **God of glory** acknowledges that people should rightfully give glory to God. You might choose to bring out this implication in your translation. Alternate translation: "God, to whom we should rightfully give glory," (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**our (ULT)  
our (UST)**

Here and throughout this chapter, Stephen is using the word **our** to refer to himself and to his listeners, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**to our father Abraham (ULT)  
to our forefather Abraham (UST)**

Stephen is using the term **father** figuratively to mean "ancestor." Alternate translation: "to Abraham our ancestor" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> Then he said, "Men, [brothers](#) and [fathers](#), listen to me: The [God of glory](#) appeared to our [father Abraham](#) when he was in [Mesopotamia](#), even before he lived in [Haran](#);

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> Stephen replied, "[Fellow Jews and respected leaders](#), please listen to me! The [glorious God whom we worship](#) appeared to our [forefather Abraham](#) while he was still living in [the region of Mesopotamia](#), before he moved to [the city of Haran](#)."

## **Mesopotamia...Haran (ULT)** **the region of Mesopotamia...the city of Haran (UST)**

The word **Mesopotamia** is the name of a region, and the word **Harran** is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- brothers
- fathers
- to...father
- God
- of glory
- Abraham
- Mesopotamia
- Haran

### **Translation Words - UST**

- Fellow Jews and respected leaders
- to...forefather
- Fellow Jews and respected leaders
- glorious...whom we worship
- God
- Abraham
- the region of Mesopotamia
- the city of Haran

## Acts 7:3

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this verse so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: "God told Abraham to go out from his land and from his relatives and come into the land that he would show him" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### he said to him (ULT)

### God said to him (UST)

The pronoun **he** refers to God, while the pronoun **him** refers to Abraham. Alternate translation: "God said to Abraham" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [relatives](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [relatives](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and he said to him, 'Go out from your land and from your [relatives](#), and come into the land that I will show you.'

### UST

<sup>3</sup> God said to him, 'Leave this land where you and your [relatives](#) are living, and go into the land to which I will direct you.'

## Acts 7:4

**he lived...his...he brought him (ULT)  
and he arrived...and lived...his...God told...  
him...to move (UST)**

The pronouns **his** and **him** and the first instance of the word **he** refer to Abraham, while the second instance of the word **he** refers to God. For clarity, in your translation you might say “Abraham lived” and “God brought him.” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**the land of the Chaldeans (ULT)  
that land, which was also called Chaldea (UST)**

**Chaldeans** is the name of a people group. This group lived in Mesopotamia, so as [7:2](#) indicates, Abraham had been living among these people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**you (ULT)  
our people (UST)**

The word **you** is plural. Stephen is using it to refer not just to the high priest, whose question he is answering, but also to all of the council members and the others who are listening to him. So you can use the plural form of the word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Chaldeans](#)
- [Haran](#)
- [death](#)
- [of...father](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [which was also called Chaldea](#)
- [Haran...there](#)
- [father](#)
- [died](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then going out from the land [of the Chaldeans](#), he lived in [Haran](#). And from there, after the [death](#) of his [father](#), he brought him into this land, in which you live now.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> So Abraham left that land, [which was also called Chaldea](#), and he arrived in [Haran](#) and lived [there](#). After his [father died](#), God told him to move to this land where our people are now living.



## **Acts 7:5**



The pronouns **him** and **his** and the third instance of **he** refer to Abraham, while the first two instances of **he** refer to God. For clarity, in your translation you might say “God did not give Abraham,” “God promised,” and “although Abraham did not have.” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**he did not give him an inheritance in it (ULT)**  
**God did not give Abraham any land to own here...of this land (UST)**

Alternate translation: “he did not give any of it to him as an inheritance”

**not even a footstep (ULT)**  
**not even a small plot (UST)**

This could mean: (1) not enough ground to stand on or (2) not enough ground on which to take a step. Either way, the expression is implicitly describing a very small area. Alternate translation: “not even a tiny piece of ground” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to him for a possession...and to his seed after him (ULT)**  
**to him...would always belong to them...and his descendants...However, at that time (UST)**

The term **seed** figuratively means “descendants.” Alternate translation: “to him for a possession, and to his descendants after him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to him for a possession...and to his seed after him (ULT)**  
**to him...would always belong to them...and his descendants...However, at that time (UST)**

If it would be clearer in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **possession** with a verb such as “possess.” Stephen is saying that Abraham possessed the land in the sense that it was something that God had promised to him but that it was his descendants who came into actual possession of it. Alternate translation: “as something that his descendants would one day possess” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [an inheritance](#)
- [he promised](#)
- [a possession](#)
- [a child](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [any land to own](#)
- [God promised that...and that](#)
- [would always belong to them](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> But he did not give him [an inheritance](#) in it—not even a footstep. But [he promised](#) to give it to him for [a possession](#), and to his seed after him—although he did not have [a child](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> At that time God did not give Abraham [any land to own](#) here, not even a small plot of this land. But [God promised that](#) later he would give this land to him and his descendants, [and that it would always belong to them](#). However, at that time Abraham did not have [any children who would inherit it](#).

- any children who would inherit it

## Acts 7:6

**But God spoke to him like this, that his seed would be a stranger in a foreign land, and that they would enslave him and treat him badly for 400 years (ULT)**

It may be more natural in your language to have a direct quotation here. Alternate translation: "But God spoke to him like this, 'Your seed would be a stranger in a foreign land, and they will enslave him and treat him badly for 400 years'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**spoke to him...God...like this (ULT)  
told Abraham...God...told Abraham (UST)**

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that this occurred some time after the statement in the previous verse. It may be helpful to state that in your translation. Alternate translation: "Subsequently God told Abraham that" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**his seed would be a stranger in a foreign land, and that they would enslave him and treat him badly (ULT)  
Your descendants will go and live in a foreign country. They will live there...  
During that time, the rulers will mistreat your descendants and force them to work as slaves (UST)**

Stephen is using the singular word **seed** figuratively to mean "descendants," and so he uses the singular noun **stranger** and the singular pronoun **him**. For clarity in your translation, to show that he is not referring to a single individual, you could say "descendants" and "strangers" and use the plural pronoun **them**. Alternate translation: "his descendants would be strangers in a foreign land, whose people would enslave them and treat them badly" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- foreign
- they would enslave
- for...years

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- foreign
- for...years
- force...to work as slaves

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But God spoke to him like this, that his seed would be a stranger in a foreign land, and that they would enslave him and treat him badly for 400 years.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Later God told Abraham, 'Your descendants will go and live in a foreign country. They will live there for four hundred years. During that time, the rulers will mistreat your descendants and force them to work as slaves.'

## Acts 7:7

**But I will judge the nation that will enslave him,' said God, 'and after that they will come out and serve me in this place (ULT)**

**But I will punish the people who make them work as slaves,' said God. 'After that, your descendants will leave that land, and they will come and worship me in this land (UST)**

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: "But God said that he would judge the nation that would enslave him and that after that they would come out and serve him in this place" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**the nation (ULT)**

**the people (UST)**

Here, **nation** refers to the people who belong to that nation. Alternate translation: "the people of the nation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**will enslave him (ULT)**

**make them work as slaves (UST)**

As in 7:6, Stephen is using the singular pronoun **him** because he is using the singular word **seed** figuratively to mean "descendants." For clarity, particularly if you said "descendants" in the previous verse, you could use the plural pronoun "them" instead. That would help readers recognize that Stephen also means Abraham's descendants when he says "they" later in the verse. Alternate translation: "will enslave them" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will judge
- nation
- will enslave him
- serve
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- will punish
- people
- make them work as slaves
- they will come...worship
- God

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> 'But I will judge the nation that will enslave him,' said God, 'and after that they will come out and serve me in this place.'

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But I will punish the people who make them work as slaves,' said God. 'After that, your descendants will leave that land, and they will come and worship me in this land.'



## **Acts 7:8**

**he gave him...he fathered (ULT)**  
**God commanded that...Abraham's...his...was born (UST)**

The first instance of the pronoun **he** refers to God, while the word **him** and the second instance of the pronoun **he** refer to Abraham. For clarity, in your translation you might say "God gave Abraham ... Abraham fathered." (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**he gave him the covenant of circumcision (ULT)**  
**God commanded that every male in Abraham's household and all of his male descendants should be circumcised to show that they all belonged to God (UST)**

Stephen's listeners would have known that this **covenant** required Abraham to circumcise the males of his family. Alternate translation: "he made a covenant that required Abraham to circumcise the males of his family" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Isaac...Jacob (ULT)**  
**Abraham's son, Isaac...Jacob (UST)**

**Isaac** and **Jacob** are the names of two men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Isaac...Jacob (ULT)**  
**Abraham's son, Isaac...Jacob (UST)**

These are the names of two men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**and Isaac, Jacob; and Jacob, the 12 patriarchs (ULT)**

Stephen is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. Alternate translation: "and Isaac fathered Jacob, and Jacob fathered the 12 patriarchs" or "and Isaac became the father of Jacob, and Jacob became the father of the 12 patriarchs" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**the 12 patriarchs (ULT)**  
**of the twelve men whom we Jews call the patriarchs, our forefathers (UST)**

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that he is using the word **patriarchs** to mean the sons of Jacob who became the ancestors of the tribes of Israel. Alternate translation: "12 sons who became the ancestors of the tribes of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the covenant](#)

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> And he gave him [the covenant of circumcision](#), and so [he fathered Isaac](#) and [circumcised](#) him on the eighth day; and [Isaac, Jacob](#); and [Jacob](#), the 12 [patriarchs](#).

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> Then God commanded that [every male in Abraham's household and all of his male descendants should be circumcised to show that they all belonged to God](#). Later [Abraham's son, Isaac, was born](#), and when Isaac was eight [days old](#), [Abraham circumcised](#) him. Later [Isaac had a son named Jacob](#). [Jacob was the father of the twelve men whom we Jews call the patriarchs, our forefathers](#).

- of circumcision
- circumcised
- he fathered
- Isaac
- Isaac (2)
- on...day
- Jacob
- Jacob
- patriarchs

## Translation Words - UST

- every male in...household and all of...male descendants should be circumcised
- Abraham circumcised
- whom we Jews call the patriarchs, our forefathers
- to show that they all belonged to God
- Abraham's son, Isaac
- Isaac had a son named (2)
- was born
- days old
- Jacob
- Jacob was the father





## **Acts 7:9**

## the patriarchs (ULT) Jacob's older sons (UST)

Here the word **patriarchs** refers to the older sons of Jacob in their relationship with Joseph. If you refer to them in your translation as Joseph's brothers, use the word for an older brother if your language makes that distinction. Alternate translation: "Jacob's older sons" or "Joseph's older brothers" (See: [Kinship](#))

## Joseph (ULT) their younger brother Joseph (UST)

**Joseph** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## sold him into Egypt (ULT) So they sold him to merchants who took him to Egypt, where he became a slave (UST)

Stephen's listeners would have known that this meant that their ancestors sold Joseph into slavery and that he was taken to Egypt to be a slave there. Alternate translation: "sold him into slavery and he was taken to Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Egypt (ULT) Egypt, where (UST)

**Egypt** is the name of a place. See how you translated it in 2:9. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## was...with him (ULT) took care of...took care of...Joseph (UST)

When Stephen says that God **was with** Joseph, this is an idiom that means God helped him. Alternate translation: "helped him" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [patriarchs](#)
- [envying](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [God](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Jacob's older sons](#)
- [became jealous because their father favored](#)
- [their younger brother Joseph](#)
- [Egypt, where](#)
- [God](#)

## ULT

<sup>9</sup> And the [patriarchs, envying Joseph](#), sold him into [Egypt](#). But [God](#) was with him

## UST

<sup>9</sup> You know that [Jacob's older sons became jealous because their father favored their younger brother Joseph](#). So they sold him to merchants who took him to [Egypt, where](#) he became a slave. But [God](#) took care of Joseph.



## **Acts 7:10**

## he rescued him from all his afflictions, and he gave him (ULT)

In these phrases the word **he** refers to God and the words **him** and **his** refer to Joseph. Alternate translation: “God rescued Joseph from all his afflictions, and God gave Joseph” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## he gave him favor and wisdom before Pharaoh (ULT) He enabled Joseph to be wise, and he caused Pharaoh...to think well of Joseph (UST)

If it would be clearer in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract nouns **favor** and **wisdom** with adjectives.

Alternate translation: “God made Pharaoh favorable towards Joseph and enabled Joseph to give Pharaoh wise advice” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## before Pharaoh (ULT) Pharaoh (UST)

Here the phrase **before Pharaoh** may be an idiom that means “in the presence of.” Alternate translation: “whenever he was in the presence of Pharaoh” or see next note for another possibility. (See: [Idiom](#))

## before Pharaoh (ULT) Pharaoh (UST)

The phrase **before Pharaoh** could also refer to Pharaoh’s opinion by association with the way that Pharaoh would assess anything that came to his attention in front of him. Alternate translation: “in Pharaoh’s perspective” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## he appointed him governor over Egypt and all his household (ULT) Pharaoh appointed him to rule over Egypt and to look after all of Pharaoh’s property (UST)

In these phrases the words **he** and **his** refer to Pharaoh and the word **him** refers to Joseph. Alternate translation: “Pharaoh appointed Joseph governor over Egypt and all his household” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## over Egypt (ULT) over Egypt (UST)

The word **Egypt** refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: “over all the people of Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> and **he rescued** him from all his afflictions, and he gave him favor and wisdom before Pharaoh, king of Egypt, and **he appointed** him governor over Egypt and all his household.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> God protected him whenever people caused him to suffer. He enabled Joseph to be wise, and he caused Pharaoh, the king of Egypt, to think well of Joseph. So Pharaoh appointed him to rule over Egypt and to look after all of Pharaoh’s property.

## **all his household (ULT)**

### **all of Pharaoh's property (UST)**

The word **household** refers to Pharaoh's own servants and all his possessions. Alternate translation: "over all his servants and everything he owned" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- he rescued
- afflictions
- household
- favor
- wisdom
- Pharaoh
- king
- of Egypt
- Egypt
- he appointed
- governor

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- God protected
- people caused...to suffer
- of...property
- to be wise
- Pharaoh
- the king
- of Egypt
- Egypt
- to think well of
- Pharaoh appointed
- to rule

## Acts 7:11

**came...a famine over all Egypt and Canaan,  
and great tribulation (ULT)  
there was a time when...there was very little  
food anywhere in Egypt and also in Canaan.  
People were suffering badly (UST)**

Here, Stephen speaks figuratively of **famine** and **tribulation** as if they **came** to Egypt and Canaan on their own. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: “there was a famine over all Egypt and Canaan, and there was great tribulation” (See: [Personification](#))

**Canaan (ULT)  
in Canaan (UST)**

**Canaan** is the name of a place, the land where the Israelites eventually settled. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**and great tribulation (ULT)  
People were suffering badly (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **tribulation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “and people suffered greatly” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**our fathers (ULT)  
Jacob and his sons in Canaan (UST)**

Stephen is using the term **fathers** figuratively to mean “ancestors.” He means specifically Jacob and his sons (Joseph’s older brothers), as UST indicates. Alternate translation: “our ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a famine](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [Canaan](#)
- [tribulation](#)
- [fathers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [there was very little food](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [in Canaan](#)
- [People were suffering](#)
- [Jacob and his sons in Canaan](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then came [a famine](#) over all [Egypt](#) and [Canaan](#), and great [tribulation](#), and our [fathers](#) did not find food.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> {While Joseph was doing that work,} there was a time when [there was very little food](#) anywhere in [Egypt](#) and also [in Canaan](#). [People were suffering](#) badly. At that time [Jacob and his sons in Canaan](#) could not find enough food to eat.



## Acts 7:12

**there was grain in Egypt (ULT)**  
**there was grain in Egypt that people could buy...there to buy grain (UST)**

Stephen assumes that his readers will know that with Joseph as his administrator, Pharaoh had stored up grain during prosperous years and was now selling it. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate this explicitly. Alternate translation: “that people could buy stored grain from Pharaoh in Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**sent our fathers first (ULT)**  
**he sent Joseph’s older brothers...They went and bought grain from Joseph, but they did not recognize him. Then they returned home (UST)**

By **first**, Stephen does not mean that Jacob sent Joseph’s older brothers to Egypt before he sent anyone else, or before he did anything else. He means that Jacob sent them for a first time and would later send them for a second time, as Stephen’s listeners would have understood. Alternate translation: “he sent our fathers on a first trip there to buy food” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**our fathers (ULT)**  
**Joseph’s older brothers (UST)**

Stephen is using the term **fathers** figuratively to mean “ancestors.” Here he means specifically Joseph’s older brothers, as UST indicates. Alternate translation: “our ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grain](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [sent](#)
- [fathers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jacob](#)
- [grain...that people could buy...to buy grain](#)
- [Egypt...there](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [older brothers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But having heard there was [grain](#) in [Egypt](#), [Jacob sent](#) our [fathers](#) first.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> When [Jacob](#) heard a report that there was [grain](#) in [Egypt that people could buy](#), [he sent](#) Joseph’s [older brothers there to buy grain](#). {They went and bought grain from Joseph, but they did not recognize him. Then they returned home.}



## **Acts 7:13**

**during the second {time (ULT)  
to Egypt again, they bought grain from Joseph  
once more (UST)**

Stephen is using the adjective **second** as a noun, to mean the second time that Joseph's brothers went to Egypt. ULT adds **time** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "when Jacob sent them to Egypt again to buy more food" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**during the second {time (ULT)  
to Egypt again, they bought grain from Joseph  
once more (UST)**

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "during trip number two" or "on their next trip" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**Joseph was made known to his brothers (ULT)  
Joseph's brothers...But this time he told them who he was (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Joseph made himself known to his brothers" or "Joseph revealed to his brothers his identity as their brother" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the family of Joseph became known to Pharaoh (ULT)  
Pharaoh found out that these men who had come from Canaan were Joseph's  
brothers (UST)**

The phrase **became known** is not actually a passive form in Greek, but it might sound like one in other languages. If your language does not use passive forms, you could state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh learned that they were Joseph's family" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Joseph
- of Joseph
- was made known
- to...brothers
- family
- known
- to Pharaoh

**Translation Words - UST**

- brothers...them
- But this time...told...who...was
- he...he

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> And during the second {time}, Joseph was made known to his brothers, and the family of Joseph became known to Pharaoh.

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> When Joseph's brothers went to Egypt again, they bought grain from Joseph once more. But this time he told them who he was. And so Pharaoh found out that these men who had come from Canaan were Joseph's brothers.

- Joseph's
- Pharaoh
- found out
- that these men who had come from Canaan were...brothers

**Acts 7:14****sending them back...Joseph summoned Jacob (ULT)****sent his brothers back home...Joseph...to tell... Jacob that Joseph wanted him...to come to Egypt (UST)**

Stephen means that Joseph sent his brothers back home in order to get their father Jacob. Alternate translation: "Joseph sent his brothers back to Canaan to get Jacob" (See: [Connect — Goal \(Purpose Relationship\)](#) )

**in souls 75 (ULT)****At that time Jacob's family consisted of seventy-five people (UST)**

Stephen is using a Hebrew idiom here. Alternate translation: "who amounted to 75 people" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sending them back](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [father](#)
- [relatives](#)
- [souls](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Joseph](#)
- [sent his brothers back home](#)
- [father](#)
- [Jacob...him](#)
- [family](#)
- [people](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> Then, [sending them back](#), Joseph summoned [Jacob](#), his [father](#), and all {his} [relatives](#), in [souls](#) 75.

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> [Joseph sent his brothers back home](#) to tell their [father Jacob](#) that Joseph wanted [him](#) and his entire [family](#) to come to Egypt. At that time Jacob's family consisted of seventy-five [people](#).

## Acts 7:15

**Jacob went down to Egypt (ULT)**  
**Jacob...he and all his family went to live in Egypt (UST)**

Stephen says that Jacob **went down** because he traveled from the hilly and mountainous terrain of Canaan to the lowlying land of Egypt. Alternate translation: "Jacob traveled to Egypt" (See: [Idiom](#))

**he and our fathers died (ULT)**  
**Jacob died there, and our other ancestors, his sons, also died there (UST)**

Stephen's listeners would have known that Jacob and his sons lived in Egypt for some time. Make sure that your translation does not make it sound as if they **died** as soon as they arrived in Egypt. Alternate translation: "eventually Jacob and our ancestors died" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he and our fathers (ULT)**  
**Jacob...and our other ancestors, his sons, also (UST)**

Stephen is using the term **fathers** figuratively to mean "ancestors." Here he means specifically Jacob's sons (Joseph's older brothers), as UST indicates. Alternate translation: "Jacob and his sons who became our ancestors" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [died](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jacob](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [died there...died there](#)
- [other ancestors, his sons](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> So [Jacob](#) went down to [Egypt](#), and he and our [fathers](#) died.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> So when [Jacob](#) heard that, he and all his family went to live in [Egypt](#). {Later on,} [Jacob](#) [died there](#), and our [other ancestors, his sons](#), also [died there](#).

**Acts 7:16**

**they were carried over to Shechem and laid (ULT)**

**Their descendants brought their bodies back to our land and buried them (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Jacob's descendants brought his body and his son's bodies to Shechem and buried them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Shechem (ULT)**  
**our land (UST)**

**Shechem** is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**for a price in silver (ULT)**  
**bought (UST)**

In biblical times, people used **silver** as money. Alternate translation: "for a sum of money" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

**the sons of Hamor (ULT)**  
**Hamor's sons (UST)**

**Hamor** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Shechem](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [tomb](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [in silver](#)
- [sons](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [our land](#)
- [the city of Shechem](#)
- [tomb](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [bought](#)
- [sons](#)

**ULT**

<sup>16</sup> And they were carried over to [Shechem](#) and laid in the [tomb](#) that [Abraham](#) bought for a price [in silver](#) from the [sons](#) of Hamor in [Shechem](#).

**UST**

<sup>16</sup> Their descendants brought their bodies back to [our land](#) and buried them in the [tomb](#) that [Abraham](#) bought from Hamor's [sons](#) in [the city of Shechem](#).





## **Acts 7:17**

## And as the time of the promise...approached... the people increased and multiplied (ULT)

In your language it may be helpful to say that the people **increased and multiplied** before saying that **the time of the promise** approached. Alternate translation: "the people increased and multiplied in Egypt as the time of the promise ... approached" (See: [Order of Events](#))

## as...the time of the promise that God had sworn to Abraham approached (ULT) by...God was about to...by...the time...God was about to...rescue them...That is what God had promised Abraham he would do (UST)

Stephen is speaking figuratively of this **time** as if it were a person and could have **approached** on its own. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "when it was almost time for God to fulfill the promise he had sworn to Abraham" (See: [Personification](#))

## as...the time of the promise that God had sworn to Abraham approached (ULT) by...God was about to...by...the time...God was about to...rescue them...That is what God had promised Abraham he would do (UST)

Stephen is referring to **the promise** that he described in [7:7](#). God promised Abraham that he would deliver his descendants from a nation that would enslave them and that he would bring them back to the land of Canaan. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say this explicitly. Alternate translation: "as the time approached of the promise that God had sworn to Abraham, that he would deliver his descendants from slavery and bring them back to Canaan," (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the people increased and multiplied (ULT) Our ancestors had become very numerous (UST)

Stephen is using the two words **increased** and **multiplied** together to express a single idea. The word **multiplied** tells in what way the people **increased**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use **and**. Alternate translation: "the people increased greatly" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)
- [of...promise](#)
- [had sworn](#)
- [God](#)
- [to Abraham](#)
- [people](#)
- [multiplied](#)
- [Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And as the [time](#) of the [promise](#) that [God had sworn to Abraham](#) approached, the [people](#) increased and [multiplied](#) in [Egypt](#),

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Our [ancestors had become very numerous](#) by the [time](#) God was about to [rescue them](#) from [Egypt](#). That is what [God had promised Abraham he would do](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- ancestors
- had become very numerous
- time
- rescue them
- had promised...he would do
- Egypt
- God
- Abraham

**Acts 7:18****another king arose over Egypt (ULT)  
Another king...had begun to rule...in Egypt  
(UST)**

When Stephen says that this next king **arose**, he is using a spatial metaphor to mean that this king began his reign. Alternate translation: "another king began to rule over Egypt" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**over Egypt (ULT)  
in Egypt (UST)**

The word **Egypt** refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: "over the people of Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who did not know Joseph (ULT)  
He did not know that Joseph had greatly helped the people of Egypt {long  
before his own time (UST)**

Stephen is not saying that this king **did not know Joseph** personally. Joseph had been dead for centuries by this point. Rather, **Joseph** refers to the reputation of Joseph. Alternate translation: "who did not know that Joseph had helped Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [king](#)
- [arose](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [did...know](#)
- [Joseph](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [king](#)
- [had begun to rule](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [did...know](#)
- [that Joseph had greatly helped the people of Egypt...long before his own time](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> until another [king arose](#) over [Egypt](#) who did not [know Joseph](#).

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> Another [king had begun to rule](#) in [Egypt](#). He did not [know that Joseph had greatly helped the people of Egypt {long before his own time}](#).



## **Acts 7:19**

## He (ULT) That king (UST)

**He** refers to the new king of Egypt, not to Joseph. Alternate translation: “This king” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## our} fathers (ULT) them...them...them (UST)

Here and frequently throughout the rest of his speech to the Sanhedrin, Stephen is using the term **fathers** figuratively to mean “ancestors.” If your readers might not understand this, you could express the meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: “our ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#) )

## our} fathers (ULT) them...them...them (UST)

Although the term **fathers** is masculine, when Stephen uses it to mean “ancestors,” it has a generic sense that includes both men and women. Here and throughout the speech, if you retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say “our fathers and mothers” to indicate this generic sense. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#) )

## to make their babies exposed...them (ULT) He even commanded...to abandon their newborn babies outside their homes (UST)

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that by **exposed** he means “left outside.” This was an unfortunate means of infanticide in the ancient world. Alternate translation: “forcing them to leave their babies outside” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) )

## in order not to keep...alive (ULT) so that they would die (UST)

Stephen is using a double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the verb **keep alive**, which was negative from Pharaoh’s perspective, since it was contrary to his intentions. If your readers might misunderstand this double negative, , you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: “in order to kill them” (See: [Double Negatives](#) )

## Translation Words - ULT

- [fathers](#)
- [babies...them](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [them...them...them](#)
- [newborn babies](#)

## ULT

<sup>19</sup> He, exploiting our people, mistreated {our} [fathers](#), to make their [babies](#) exposed, in order not to keep [them](#) alive.

## UST

<sup>19</sup> That king tried to get rid of our ancestors in cruel ways. He oppressed [them](#) and caused [them](#) to suffer greatly. He even commanded [them](#) to abandon their [newborn babies](#) outside their homes so that they would die.





## **Acts 7:20**

## At that time (ULT) During that time (UST)

Stephen uses this phrase to introduce something that happened while Pharaoh was trying to kill the Israelite babies. Alternate translation: “While this was happening,” (See: [Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship](#) )

## Moses was born (ULT) Moses was born (UST)

Here Stephen introduces **Moses** into his story. See how you translated his name in [3:22](#). (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

## Moses was born (ULT) Moses was born (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the birth of Moses took place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## he was beautiful to God (ULT) God saw that he was a very beautiful child (UST)

This could mean: (1) that Moses was **beautiful** in God’s perspective. Alternate translation: “God considered him to be beautiful” (2) in an idiom, that Moses was very **beautiful**. Alternate translation: “he was very beautiful” (See: [Idiom](#))

## He was raised...in the house of {his} father (ULT) His parents secretly cared for him...in their house (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, you can make Moses’ parents the subject. Alternate translation: “his parents cared for him ... in their home” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [to God](#)
- [for...months](#)
- [house](#)
- [of...father](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [time](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [God saw that](#)

## ULT

<sup>20</sup> At that [time](#) [Moses](#) was born, and he was beautiful [to God](#). He was raised for three [months](#) in the [house](#) of {his} [father](#).

## UST

<sup>20</sup> During that [time](#) [Moses](#) was born, and [God saw that](#) he was a very beautiful child. His parents secretly cared for him in [their house](#) for three [months](#).

- [their](#)
- [house](#)
- [for...months](#)

**Acts 7:21**

**But when he was exposed (ULT)  
Then they had to abandon him outside the  
house. But (UST)**

Moses **was exposed** because of Pharaoh's command. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, the context suggests that it was Moses' parents. Alternate translation: "when his parents had to place him outside" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**took him up (ULT)  
found him (UST)**

This could mean: (1) that Pharaoh's daughter adopted Moses. The verb can have this figurative legal meaning. Alternate translation: "adopted him" (2) that she lifted him up out of the basket he was in on the banks of the Nile. (This story is told in Exodus [2:1-10](#).) Alternate translation: "rescued him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of Pharaoh](#)
- [a son](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Pharaoh's](#)
- [son](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> But when he was exposed, the daughter [of Pharaoh](#) took him up and raised him for herself as [a son](#).

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> Then they had to abandon him outside the house. But [Pharaoh's](#) daughter found him and cared for him as her own [son](#).

## Acts 7:22

**Moses was educated in all the wisdom of the Egyptians (ULT)**

**The Egyptians taught Moses the many things that they had learned (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the Egyptians educated Moses in all of their wisdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in all the wisdom of the Egyptians (ULT)**  
**The Egyptians...the many things that they had learned (UST)**

Stephen says **all** as an exaggeration for emphasis. Alternate translation: “thoroughly in the wisdom of the Egyptians” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**And...mighty in his words...works (ULT)**

Alternate translation: “effective in his speech and actions” or “influential in what he said and did”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [was educated](#)
- [in...the wisdom](#)
- [of the Egyptians](#)
- [works](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The Egyptians](#)
- [taught](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [that they had learned](#)
- [did things](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And [Moses was educated](#) in all the [wisdom of the Egyptians](#), and he was mighty in his words and [works](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [The Egyptians taught Moses](#) the many things [that they had learned](#). When he grew up, he spoke and [did things](#) powerfully.



## **Acts 7:23**



**when...a 40-year time was filled to him (ULT)**  
**One day when...Moses was about forty years old (UST)**

This is an idiomatic way of speaking about time. Alternate translation: "after Moses had turned forty" (See: [Idiom](#))

**when...a 40-year time was filled to him (ULT)**  
**One day when...Moses was about forty years old (UST)**

Since this is an idiom, it would probably not be meaningful in most languages to retain the verb "fill" and use an active verbal form instead of the passive form. However, if your language does speak of someone or something "filling" days or times so that they arrive, and if your language does not use passive verbal forms, you could use an active form of "fill" here. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**it came up on his heart (ULT)**  
**he decided (UST)**

The phrase **it came up on his heart** is an idiom. Alternate translation: "he felt a desire" (See: [Idiom](#))

**it came up on his heart (ULT)**  
**he decided (UST)**

Here, **heart** is a metonym for the thoughts and emotions. Alternate translation: "he felt a desire" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**his brothers, the sons of Israel (ULT)**  
**his relatives, the people of Israel (UST)**

Stephen is using the word **brothers** figuratively to mean "kinsmen," and he is using the word **sons** figuratively to mean "descendants." Alternate translation: "his kinsmen, the descendants of Israel" or, if the word "Israel" might make your readers think of the nation rather than the person, "his kinsmen, the descendants of Jacob" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**his brothers, the sons of Israel (ULT)**  
**his relatives, the people of Israel (UST)**

Although the terms **brothers** and **sons** are masculine, Stephen is using these words in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you decide to retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say "brothers and sisters" and "sons and daughters" to indicate this. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [a...time](#)
- [heart](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [sons](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But when a 40-year [time](#) was filled to him, it came up on his [heart](#) to visit his [brothers](#), the [sons of Israel](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> One day when Moses [was about forty years old](#), he [decided](#) to see how his [relatives](#), the [people of Israel](#), were doing.

- of Israel

## Translation Words - UST

- was about forty years old
- decided
- relatives
- people
- of Israel

## Acts 7:24

### seeing a certain one being mistreated (ULT) He saw an Egyptian mistreating one of the Israelites...the Israelite man (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, it is clear from the context that it was **the Egyptian** who is mentioned later in the verse. Alternate translation: “seeing an Egyptian mistreating an Israelite” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### made vengeance for the one being oppressed, striking the Egyptian (ULT) He avenged him by killing the Egyptian (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “avenged him by striking the Egyptian who was oppressing him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### striking the Egyptian (ULT) by killing the Egyptian (UST)

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that Moses hit **the Egyptian** so hard that he died. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say this explicitly. Alternate translation: “striking and killing the Egyptian” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [being mistreated](#)
- [vengeance](#)
- [for...one being oppressed](#)
- [Egyptian](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [an Egyptian mistreating](#)
- [He avenged](#)
- [him](#)
- [Egyptian](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And seeing a certain one [being mistreated](#), he defended him and made [vengeance](#) for the [one being oppressed](#), striking the [Egyptian](#):

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> He saw [an Egyptian mistreating](#) one of the Israelites. So he went over to help the Israelite man. [He avenged him](#) by killing the [Egyptian](#).

## Acts 7:25

### his} brothers (ULT) his fellow Israelites (UST)

Stephen is using the word **brothers** figuratively to mean “kinsmen.”  
Alternate translation: “his kinsmen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### his} brothers (ULT) his fellow Israelites (UST)

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, Stephen is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you decide to retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say “brothers and sisters” to indicate this. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### was giving salvation to them (ULT) to free them from being slaves (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **salvation**, you could express the same idea in another way. In context, the word refers to God using Moses to deliver the Israelites from slavery. Alternate translation: “was delivering them from slavery” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### by his hand (ULT) had sent him (UST)

Here, **hand** refers to the actions of Moses. Alternate translation: “through his actions” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [would understand](#)
- [did...understand](#)
- [God](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [his fellow Israelites](#)
- [would understand](#)
- [did...understand](#)
- [God](#)
- [had sent](#)
- [to free...from being slaves](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> and he was thinking {his} [brothers](#) [would understand](#) that [God](#) was giving [salvation](#) to them by his [hand](#), but they did not [understand](#).

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Moses expected that [his fellow Israelites](#) [would understand](#) that [God](#) [had sent](#) him to [free](#) them from being [slaves](#). But they did not [understand](#).



## **Acts 7:26**

**to them (ULT)**  
**two of his fellow Israelites (UST)**

It is clear from the context that these were two Israelite men, though Stephen does not say that specifically. Alternate translation: “to two Israelite men” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to them...them...you are...you are hurting (ULT)**  
**two of his fellow Israelites...them...you two...hurting (UST)**

Since Moses is speaking to two people, these uses of **them** and **you** would be dual if your language uses that form. Otherwise, they would be plural. (See: [Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural](#))

**he urged them to peace (ULT)**  
**He tried to make them stop (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **peace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “he urged them to stop fighting” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**saying, ‘Men, you are brothers. Why is it that you are hurting each other (ULT)**  
**by saying to them, ‘Now you two are both Israelites! You must stop hurting each other (UST)**

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “telling them that they were brothers and asking them why they were hurting each other” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**Men (ULT)**  
**Now (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Translate it with an expression that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Friends” (See: [Idiom](#))

**brothers (ULT)**  
**are both Israelites (UST)**

Moses is using the word **brothers** figuratively to mean “kinsmen.” Alternate translation: “kinsmen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Why is it that you are hurting each other (ULT)**  
**You must stop hurting each other (UST)**

Moses is using a rhetorical question here to emphasize the truth of what he is saying. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> And on the next **day** he appeared to them as they were quarreling, and he urged them to **peace**, saying, ‘Men, you are **brothers**. Why is it that **you are hurting** each other?’

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> The next **day**, Moses saw two of his fellow Israelites fighting each other. He tried **to make** them **stop** by saying to them, ‘Now you two **are both Israelites!** You must stop **hurting** each other!’

exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "You should not be hurting each other!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- on...day
- peace
- brothers
- you are hurting

### Translation Words - UST

- day
- to make...stop
- are both Israelites
- hurting





## **Acts 7:27**

## him (ULT) to him (UST)

The word **him** refers to Moses, not to the neighbor. Alternate translation: "Moses" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## saying, 'Who appointed you a ruler and a judge over us (ULT) He said...You have no authority over us (UST)

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "asking him who appointed him a ruler and a judge over them" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

## Who appointed you a ruler and a judge over us (ULT) You have no authority over us (UST)

The man is using a rhetorical question to emphasize the truth of what he is saying. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "No one appointed you a ruler and judge over us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## a ruler and a judge (ULT) have no authority (UST)

In this context, the words **ruler** and **judge** mean basically the same thing. The man is using repetition to emphasize the fact that he feels that Moses has no authority over them. If your language does not use repetition for such a purpose, you could use a single phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "an authority with power" (See: [Doublet](#))

## us (ULT) us (UST)

The man is using the word **our** to refer to himself and to his neighbor, but not to Moses, so use the exclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- one injuring
- neighbor
- pushed...away
- appointed
- a ruler
- a judge

## Translation Words - UST

- man who was injuring

## ULT

<sup>27</sup> But the one injuring {his} neighbor pushed him away, saying, 'Who appointed you a ruler and a judge over us?'

## UST

<sup>27</sup> But the man who was injuring the other man pushed Moses away. He said to him, 'You have no authority over us!'

- other man
- pushed Moses away
- have no authority
- have no authority
- have no authority

**Acts 7:28**

**You do not want to kill me the way you killed the Egyptian yesterday, do you (ULT)**

**You probably want to kill me as you killed the Egyptian yesterday (UST)**

The first word of this sentence in Greek is a negative word that can be used to turn a negative statement into a question that expects a negative answer. ULT shows this by adding **do you?** Your language may have other ways of asking a question that expects a negative answer, for example, by changing the word order of a positive statement. Translate this in the way that would be clearest in your language. Alternate translation: “Do you want to kill me the way you killed the Egyptian yesterday” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> You do not want to kill me the way you killed the [Egyptian](#) yesterday, do you?’

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> You probably want to kill me as you killed the [Egyptian](#) yesterday!’

**You do not want to kill me the way you killed the Egyptian yesterday, do you (ULT)**

**You probably want to kill me as you killed the Egyptian yesterday (UST)**

The man is using a rhetorical question implicitly to threaten Moses by indicating that he and probably others knew that Moses had killed the Egyptian. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “I suppose you want to kill me the way you killed the Egyptian yesterday!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**You do not want to kill me the way you killed the Egyptian yesterday, do you (ULT)**

**You probably want to kill me as you killed the Egyptian yesterday (UST)**

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “The man asked Moses if he wanted to kill him the way he had killed the Egyptian the day before.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**the way (ULT)**

**as (UST)**

Alternate translation: “in the same way in which”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Egyptian](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Egyptian](#)

## Acts 7:29

### ran away...Moses...at this word (ULT) he fled from Egypt...Moses heard that (UST)

The implication is that Moses fled because he recognized that these Israelites, and probably others, knew that he had killed an Egyptian. Moses feared that he would be punished or even killed for this crime. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "Moses ran away at this word to try to escape from being punished" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### at this word (ULT) heard that (UST)

Stephen is using the term **word** figuratively to mean what the man said by using words. Alternate translation: "at this statement" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### of Midian (ULT) of Midian (UST)

**Midian** is the name of a country. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### where he fathered two sons (ULT) there...He got married, and} he {and his wife} had two sons (UST)

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that Moses married a Midianite woman when he fled from Egypt. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "where he married a Midianite woman and fathered two sons" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [ran away](#)
- [a foreigner](#)
- [of Midian](#)
- [he fathered](#)
- [sons](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [he fled from Egypt](#)
- [of Midian](#)
- [He lived...for some years](#)
- [He got married, and} he {and his wife} had](#)
- [sons](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then [Moses ran away](#) at this word, and he became [a foreigner](#) in the land [of Midian](#), where [he fathered two sons](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> When [Moses](#) heard that, [he fled from Egypt](#) to the land [of Midian](#). [He lived there for some years](#). {[He got married, and](#)} [he {and his wife} had two sons](#).

## Acts 7:30

### 40 years having been filled (ULT)

### forty years later (UST)

This is an idiomatic way of speaking about time. Alternate translation: “after 40 years had gone by” (See: [Idiom](#))

### 40 years having been filled (ULT)

### forty years later (UST)

Since this is an idiom, it would probably not be meaningful in most languages to retain the verb “fill” and use an active verbal form instead of the passive form. However, if your language does speak of someone or something “filling” days or times so that they arrive, and if your language does not use passive verbal forms, you could use an active form of “fill” here. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### appeared to him...an angel (ULT)

### the Lord God came to Moses...He appeared...in the form of an angel (UST)

The word **appeared** does not mean that Moses simply saw this angel in a vision. Rather, this expression indicates that the angel was actually present with Moses. Alternate translation: “suddenly an angel was there with Moses” (See: [Idiom](#))

### appeared to him...an angel (ULT)

### the Lord God came to Moses...He appeared...in the form of an angel (UST)

Stephen assumes that his listeners know that God came to speak with Moses through the **angel**. The UST makes this explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [years](#)
- [an angel](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [of Mount...Sinai](#)
- [of fire](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [years](#)
- [in the form of an angel](#)
- [desert](#)
- [near Mount...Sinai](#)
- [the flames...that was on fire](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And 40 [years](#) having been filled, [an angel](#) appeared to him in the [wilderness of Mount Sinai](#), in a flame [of fire](#) in a bush.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> One day forty [years](#) later, the Lord God came to Moses [in the form of an angel](#). This was in the [desert near Mount Sinai](#). He appeared in [the flames](#) of a bush [that was on fire](#).

## Acts 7:31

**admired the sight (ULT)**  
**he was amazed because the bush was not burning up (UST)**

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that Moses **admired the sight** because the bush was not burning up, even though it was on fire. Alternate translation: “marveled at what he saw, because the fire was not consuming the bush” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the voice of the Lord came (ULT)**  
**he heard the Lord God say to him (UST)**

Stephen is speaking figuratively of **the voice of the Lord** as if it were a person and that it **came** on its own. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: “the Lord spoke to him” (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [admired](#)
- [the voice](#)
- [of the Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [he was amazed because](#)
- [the Lord God](#)
- [say to him](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> And [Moses](#), seeing it, [admired](#) the sight; and as he approached to look, [the voice of the Lord](#) came:

### UST

<sup>31</sup> When [Moses](#) saw it, [he was amazed because](#) the bush was not burning up. As he went over to look more closely, he heard [the Lord God say to him](#),



## Acts 7:32

**I am the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob (ULT)**  
**I am the God whom your ancestors worshiped. I am the God whom Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worship (UST)**

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "The Lord told Moses that he was the God of his fathers, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God (2)
- of...fathers
- of Abraham
- of Isaac
- of Jacob
- Moses
- terrified

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God (2)
- whom...ancestors worshiped
- whom Abraham...worship
- Isaac
- Jacob
- Moses
- so afraid that he began to shake

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> 'I am the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob.' And Moses, becoming terrified, did not dare to look.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> 'I am the God whom your ancestors worshiped. I am the God whom Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worship.' Moses was so afraid that he began to shake. He was afraid to look at the bush any longer.



## **Acts 7:33**

**said...the Lord...to him, 'Untie the sandal of your feet, for the place on which you are standing is holy ground (ULT)**  
**said...the Lord God...to him, 'Take your sandals off to show that you honor me. Because I am here, the place where you are standing is especially mine (UST)**

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "the Lord told Moses to untie the sandals that were on his feet, because the place on which he was standing was holy ground" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> And the [Lord](#) said to him, 'Untie the [sandal](#) of your feet, for the place on which you are standing is [holy](#) ground.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> Then the [Lord God](#) said to him, 'Take your [sandals](#) off to show that you honor me. Because I am here, the place where you are standing is [especially mine](#).

**Untie the sandal of your feet, for the place on which you are standing is holy ground (ULT)**  
**Take your sandals off to show that you honor me. Because I am here, the place where you are standing is especially mine (UST)**

In this culture, removing footwear was a symbolic way of acknowledging that a place was sacred. Footwear that had been worn elsewhere should not touch it. Your readers may understand the symbolic meaning of this action. If not, you could explain it in your translation. Alternate translation: "Untie your sandals and remove them to acknowledge that the place on which you are standing is holy ground" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Untie the sandal of your feet (ULT)**  
**Take your sandals off to show that you honor me (UST)**

The implication is that God wanted Moses not only to untie his sandals but also to remove them. Alternate translation: "Untie your sandals and remove them from your feet" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the sandal of your feet (ULT)**  
**your sandals (UST)**

Since this refers to both sandals, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **sandals**. If your language uses the dual form, it would be appropriate to use that here. Alternate translation: "the sandals on your feet" or "the sandals you are wearing"

**for the place on which you are standing is holy ground (ULT)**  
**Because I am here, the place where you are standing is especially mine (UST)**

The implication is that where God is present, the immediate area around God is considered or made **holy** by God. Alternate translation: "for the place on which you are standing has been made holy by my presence" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- sandal
- holy

## Translation Words - UST

- Lord God
- sandals
- especially mine



## **Acts 7:34**

**I have certainly seen the oppression of my people who {are} in Egypt, and I have heard their groaning, and I have come down to rescue them. And now come, let me send you to Egypt (ULT)**

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “The Lord said that he had certainly seen the oppression of his people who were in Egypt and that he had heard their groaning and that he had come down to rescue them. He told Moses to get ready because he was sending him to Egypt” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**I have certainly seen (ULT)  
I have seen clearly how (UST)**

Stephen is reproducing a Hebrew idiom from the biblical account of Moses at the burning bush. The verb **seen** is repeated in Hebrew. This repetition expresses the intensity, certainty, or clarity of Yahweh’s having seen how his people were being oppressed. This Hebrew practice of verb repetition for intensification cannot be directly translated into English. Use a natural form of strengthening a verb from your language. (See: [Idiom](#))

**of my people (ULT)**

God uses the possessive word **my** to emphasize that these people were in a covenant relationship with him based on his promises to their ancestors. Alternate translation: “of the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob” (See: [Possession](#))

**I have come down to rescue them (ULT)  
I am taking action to rescue them from Egypt (UST)**

God describes himself as having **come down** from heaven to earth to help the Israelites. His presence was in the burning bush, but he also means figuratively that he is taking action to **rescue** them. Alternate translation: “I will personally bring about their release” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**And (ULT)**

God is using the word translated **And** to introduce what he wants Moses to do as a result of what he has told him. Alternate translation: “So” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**now come (ULT)  
Now get ready, because (UST)**

God is giving an order here. Alternate translation: “get ready” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#) )

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> I have certainly seen the [oppression](#) of my [people](#) who {are} in [Egypt](#), and I have heard their [groaning](#), and I have come down to [rescue](#) them. And now come, [let me send](#) you to [Egypt](#).’

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> I have seen clearly how [the people of Egypt are continually causing my people to suffer](#). I have heard my people [when they groan because of it](#). So I am taking action to [rescue](#) them from [Egypt](#). Now get ready, because [I am going to send you back to Egypt](#).’



## **let me send you to Egypt (ULT)**

### **I am going to send you back to Egypt (UST)**

God is not asking Moses' permission when he says **let me send you to Egypt**. This is a way of saying "I will send you to Egypt," and that statement in turn is functioning as a command. Alternate translation: "you must go to Egypt" (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#) )

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- oppression
- of...people
- of...my...people
- Egypt
- Egypt
- groaning
- to rescue
- let me send

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- the people of Egypt are continually causing
- Egypt
- people
- to suffer
- when...groan because of it
- to rescue...from Egypt
- I am going to send
- people of God



## **Acts 7:35**

**This Moses (ULT)****This Moses is the one (UST)**

Verses 35, 36, 37, and 38 contains a series of similar phrases emphasizing the role of Moses. Stephen says **This Moses**, “This one,” “This is the Moses,” and “This is the one.” If possible, use similar statements in your own translation to emphasize Moses. You may also wish to make each of these verses a separate paragraph or use formatting in some other way to highlight the repeated phrases. (See: [Litany](#))

**saying, ‘Who appointed you a ruler and a judge (ULT)****by saying, ‘You have no authority over us (UST)**

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. See what you did in [7:27](#). Alternate translation: “asking him who appointed him a ruler and a judge” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**Who appointed you a ruler and a judge (ULT)****You have no authority over us (UST)**

See how you translated this rhetorical question in [7:27](#). Alternate translation: “No one appointed you a ruler and a judge!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**a ruler and a judge (ULT)****You have no authority over us (UST)**

See how you translated the combination of **ruler** and **judge** in [7:27](#). Alternate translation: “an authority with power” (See: [Doublet](#))

**a redeemer (ULT)****to free them from being slaves (UST)**

In this context, the word translated **redeemer** refers to someone who delivers people from earthly troubles, not someone who brings eternal salvation. Alternate translation: “a rescuer”

**with the hand of the angel (ULT)****He did that with the help of the angel (UST)**

Here, **hand** is a metonym for the capability and actions of someone. Alternate translation: “accompanied by the power of the angel” or “through the actions of the angel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> This **Moses**, whom **they rejected**, saying, ‘Who **appointed** you **a ruler** and **a judge**?’—this one **God sent** as both **a ruler** and **a redeemer** with **the hand of the angel** who appeared to him in the bush.

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> This **Moses is the one** who **had tried to help our Israelite people**. **But they rejected** him by saying, ‘**You have no authority over us!**’ **Moses is the one** whom **God himself sent to rule them** and **to free them from being slaves**. He did that with **the help of the angel** who spoke to him from the bush.

## **appeared to him in the bush (ULT)**

### **spoke to him from the bush (UST)**

See how you translated the word **appeared** in [7:30](#). Here as well, the word does not mean that Moses simply saw this angel in a vision. Alternate translation: “who was with him at the bush” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- Moses
- they rejected
- of the angel
- appointed
- a ruler
- a ruler (2)
- a judge
- God
- sent
- a redeemer
- the hand

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- Moses is the one
- had tried to help our Israelite people. But they rejected
- the angel
- You have no authority over us
- You have no authority over us
- to rule them (2)
- You have no authority over us
- God himself
- sent
- to free them from being slaves
- the help of

## Acts 7:36

### wonders and signs (ULT) many kinds of miracles (UST)

The terms **wonders** and **signs** mean similar things. Stephen is using them together for emphasis. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:22](#). Alternate translation: “great miracles” (See: [Doublet](#))

### the Red Sea (ULT) the Sea of Reeds (UST)

Stephen is using the name that was common in his culture, **the Red Sea**, to refer to the body of water that the Old Testament calls “the Sea of Reeds.” Decide whether you want to use the name that Stephen uses here or the name that you are using in your translation in the Old Testament, if they are different. Alternate translation: “the Sea of Reeds” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> This one led them out, doing **wonders** and **signs** in the land of **Egypt** and at **the Red Sea**, and in the **wilderness during 40 years**.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Moses is the one who led our ancestors out from Egypt. He did **many kinds of miracles** in **Egypt**, at **the Sea of Reeds**, and **during the forty years that the Israelite people lived** in the **wilderness**.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [wonders](#)
- [signs](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [the Red Sea](#)
- [Red](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [during...years](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [many kinds of miracles](#)
- [many kinds of miracles](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [the Sea of Reeds](#)
- [of Reeds](#)
- [during the...years that the Israelite people lived](#)
- [wilderness](#)



## **Acts 7:37**



**who said to the sons of Israel, 'God will raise up a prophet like me for you from your brothers (ULT)**

**who said to the Israelite people, 'God will cause another man from among your own people to be a prophet like me for you (UST)**

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "who told the sons of Israel that God would raise up a prophet like him for them from their brothers" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**to the sons of Israel (ULT)**

**to the Israelite people (UST)**

Stephen is using the word **sons** figuratively to mean "descendants." Alternate translation: "to the descendants of Israel" or "to the descendants of Jacob" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will raise up a prophet...for you...like me (ULT)**

**will cause another man...to be a prophet...for you...like me (UST)**

Here, the expression **raise up** describes God giving someone the mission to go as a prophet to certain people. See how you translated it in [3:22](#). Alternate translation: "will send you a prophet like me" (See: [Idiom](#))

**your brothers (ULT)**

**your own people (UST)**

Stephen is using the word **brothers** figuratively to mean "kinsmen." Alternate translation: "your kinsmen" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [to...sons](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [God](#)
- [will raise up](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [like](#)
- [brothers](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Israelite](#)
- [to...people](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> This is the [Moses](#) who said to the sons of Israel, 'God will raise up a prophet like me for you from your brothers.'

### UST

<sup>37</sup> This [Moses](#) is the one who said to the Israelite people, 'God will cause another man from among your own people to be a prophet like me for you.'

- will cause...to be
- another man...a prophet
- own people
- like



## **Acts 7:38**

**This is the one having been (ULT)**  
**It was this man Moses who was...Moses was the one who (UST)**

**This is the one** refers to Moses. You may have decided to use similar language and special formatting in verses 35–38 to highlight the way Stephen is emphasizing Moses. However, if you think the reference would not be clear at this point, you could state his name. Alternate translation: “Moses is the one who was” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**with the angel {who was} speaking to him on Mount Sinai, and with our fathers, who received living words (ULT)**

It might be more natural to put the information about **Mount Sinai** next to the information about Moses receiving **living words**. Alternate translation: “with our fathers and with the angel who was speaking to him on Mount Sinai, who received living words” or “with our fathers and with the angel who was speaking to him on Mount Sinai, where he received living words” (See: [Information Structure](#))

**with our fathers, who received (ULT)**  
**our ancestors...He was the one to whom God gave (UST)**

This second instance of **who** in the verse refers to Moses, not to the **fathers**. For clarity, you could state his name and start a new sentence. Alternate translation: “with our fathers. Moses received” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**who received living words (ULT)**  
**our laws...what the angel had said. He was the one to whom God gave commandments...Those commandments are still powerful today (UST)**

It may be helpful in your language to specify who gave Moses the **words** that he **received**. Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that this was God. Alternate translation: “to whom God gave living words” or “to whom God spoke living words” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**living words (ULT)**  
**our laws...what the angel had said...commandments...Those commandments are still powerful today (UST)**

Stephen is using the term **words** to mean the message that God communicated through words. Alternate translation: “a living message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ULT**

<sup>38</sup> This is the one having been in the **assembly** in the **wilderness** with the **angel** {who was} speaking to him on **Mount Sinai**, and with our **fathers**, who **received living** words to give to us,

**UST**

<sup>38</sup> It was this man Moses who was among the **Israelites who were together** in the **wilderness**. God spoke through the **angel** on **Mount Sinai** to give Moses our laws. Moses was the one who told our **ancestors** what the angel had said. He was the one to whom **God gave** commandments and who passed them on to us. **Those commandments are still powerful today**.

**living words (ULT)**

**our laws...what the angel had said...commandments...Those commandments are still powerful today (UST)**

Stephen is using the term **living** figuratively to describe God's **words** as if they were alive. This could mean: (1) that God's message is always effective. Alternate translation: "an enduring message" (2) that God's message shows how to live as God wishes. Alternate translation: "a life-giving message" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [assembly](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [angel](#)
- [Mount...Sinai](#)
- [with...fathers](#)
- [received](#)
- [living](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Israelites who were together](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [angel](#)
- [Mount...Sinai](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [God gave](#)
- [Those commandments are still powerful today](#)

**Acts 7:39**

**to whom our fathers were not willing to be obedient (ULT)**

**However, our ancestors did not want to obey Moses (UST)**

The word **whom** refers to Moses. It may be helpful to state his name and to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Our fathers were not willing to be obedient to Moses" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**they pushed him away (ULT)**

**they rejected him as their leader (UST)**

Stephen is speaking figuratively to emphasize the Israelites' rejection of Moses. Alternate translation: "they rejected him as their leader" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**turned back in their hearts to Egypt (ULT)**

**wanted to return to Egypt (UST)**

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for people's desires. Alternate translation: "made it their desire to return to Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- fathers
- obedient
- they pushed him away
- turned back
- hearts
- Egypt

**Translation Words - UST**

- ancestors
- to obey
- they rejected him as their leader
- wanted
- to return
- Egypt

**ULT**

<sup>39</sup> to whom our fathers were not willing to be obedient; instead, they pushed him away and turned back in their hearts to Egypt,

**UST**

<sup>39</sup> However, our ancestors did not want to obey Moses. Instead, they rejected him as their leader and wanted to return to Egypt.





## **Acts 7:40**

**saying to Aaron, 'Make for us gods who will go ahead of us. For this Moses, who brought us from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him (ULT)**

**So they told his older brother Aaron, 'Make idols for us who will be our gods to lead us. As for that fellow Moses who led us out of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him (UST)**

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "They asked Aaron to make gods for them who would go ahead of them, because they did not know what had happened to Moses, who had brought them from the land of Egypt" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> saying [to Aaron](#), 'Make for us [gods](#) who will go ahead of us. For this [Moses](#), who brought us from the land [of Egypt](#), [we do not know](#) what has happened to him.'

### UST

<sup>40</sup> So they told [his older brother Aaron](#), 'Make [idols](#) for us [who will be our gods](#) to lead us. As for that fellow [Moses](#) who led us out [of Egypt](#), [we do not know](#) what has happened to him!'

**saying to Aaron (ULT)**

**So they told his older brother Aaron (UST)**

It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "They said to Aaron"

**to Aaron (ULT)**

**his older brother Aaron (UST)**

**Aaron** is the name of a man, the older brother of Moses. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**For this Moses, who brought us from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him (ULT)**

**As for that fellow Moses who led us out of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him (UST)**

It may be more natural to put the information about Moses at the end of the sentence. Alternate translation: "For we do not know what has happened to this Moses who brought us from the land of Egypt" (See: [Information Structure](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [to Aaron](#)
- [gods](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [we do...know](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [his older brother Aaron](#)

- idols...who will be our gods
- Moses
- of Egypt
- we do...know

## Acts 7:41

### they made an image of a calf (ULT) they made an image that looked like a calf (UST)

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that this **image of a calf** was a statue that the Israelites wanted to worship as an idol. Stephen refers to it as **the idol** later in the sentence. Alternate translation: “they made a statue that looked like a calf to worship as an idol” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### in those days (ULT) When the Israelites rejected Moses (UST)

Stephen is using the term **days** idiomatically to refer to a specific time. Alternate translation: “at that time” (See: [Idiom](#))

### they made an image of a calf (ULT) they made an image that looked like a calf (UST)

The pronoun **they** refers back to “our fathers” in verse 39, that is, to the Israelites whom Moses led out of Egypt. Alternate translation: “the Israelites made an image of a calf” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### the works of their hands (ULT) something that they themselves had made (UST)

Stephen describes what he also calls the **calf** and the **idol** as **the works of their hands** by association with the way the Israelites used their hands to make the calf. Alternate translation: “the statue they had made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- they made an image of a calf
- days
- a sacrifice
- to...idol
- works
- of...hands

## Translation Words - UST

- When the Israelites rejected Moses
- they made an image that looked like a calf
- sacrifices
- idol
- something that...had made
- they themselves

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> So they made an image of a calf in those days and brought a sacrifice to the idol and rejoiced in the works of their hands.

### UST

<sup>41</sup> When the Israelites rejected Moses, they made an image that looked like a calf. Then they offered sacrifices to honor that idol. They sang and danced to worship something that they themselves had made.



## **Acts 7:42**

**turned away...God (ULT)**  
**stopped correcting them...God (UST)**

Stephen is speaking figuratively as if **God** had physically **turned away**. He speaks this way to emphasize that God was not pleased with the Israelites and no longer helped them. Alternate translation: "God stopped helping them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the host of heaven (ULT)**  
**the stars in the sky (UST)**

Here, the word **host** means "army," and the word **heaven** means "sky." Stephen is speaking figuratively of the stars in the sky as if they were an army. Alternate translation, as in UST: "the stars in the sky" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**it is written in the book of the prophets (ULT)**  
**what one of the prophets wrote (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the book of the prophets says" or "the book of the prophets records" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the book of the prophets (ULT)**  
**one of the prophets (UST)**

This was apparently a collection of the writings of several of the Old Testament prophets on one scroll. Alternate translation: "the scroll that records sayings of the prophets" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**You did not offer slain beasts and offerings to me for 40 years in the wilderness, did you (ULT)**  
**God said...repeatedly killed animals and offered them to me with grain as sacrifices during those forty years that you were in the wilderness. But you certainly were not truly offering them to me (UST)**

This is the beginning of a quotation from the prophet Amos, which continues through the end of verse 43. Even if your language does not customarily put one direct quotation inside another, it would be good to present this quotation from Amos as a direct quotation if possible, since God is addressing the Israelites directly in it. You may be able to indicate its beginning with an opening second-level quotation mark or with some other punctuation or convention that your language uses to indicate the start of a second-level quotation. You may also be able to use special formatting to set off the quotation, as ULT does. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**ULT**

<sup>42</sup> But **God turned away** and abandoned them **to serve** the host **of heaven**, **as it is written** in the book of the **prophets**, 'You did not offer **slain beasts** and **offerings** to me for **40 years** in the **wilderness**, did you, **O house of Israel?**

**UST**

<sup>42</sup> So **God stopped correcting them**. He left them **to worship** the stars in the **sky**. **This agrees with what one of the prophets wrote:** God said, 'You **Israelite people repeatedly killed animals** and **offered them to me with grain as sacrifices** during those **forty years** that you were in the **wilderness**. But you certainly were not truly offering them to me!

**You did not offer slain beasts and offerings to me for 40 years in the wilderness, did you, O house of Israel (ULT)**

**God said, 'You Israelite people repeatedly killed animals and offered them to me with grain as sacrifices during those forty years that you were in the wilderness. But you certainly were not truly offering them to me (UST)**

The first word of this sentence in Greek is a negative word that can be used to turn a negative statement into a question that expects a negative answer. ULT shows this by adding **did you?** Your language may have other ways of asking a question that expects a negative answer, for example, by changing the word order of a positive statement. Translate this in the way that would be clearest in your language. Alternate translation: "Did you offer slain beasts and offerings to me for 40 years in the wilderness, O house of Israel?" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**You did not offer slain beasts and offerings to me for 40 years in the wilderness, did you, O house of Israel (ULT)**

**God said, 'You Israelite people repeatedly killed animals and offered them to me with grain as sacrifices during those forty years that you were in the wilderness. But you certainly were not truly offering them to me (UST)**

Speaking through the prophet Amos, God used the question form to emphasize to the people of **Israel** that they did not really worship Him **in the wilderness** with their sacrifices. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate these words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "You did not honor me when you offered slain beasts and sacrifices for 40 years in the wilderness, O house of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**not...did you...You did...offer (ULT)**

**God said...certainly...not...But you...were...truly offering them (UST)**

**You** is plural in these instances, even though the addressee (**house**) is singular, because God is actually speaking to all of the Israelites. If it would not be natural in your language to use the plural in such a case, you can use singular **you** in your translation. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#) )

**slain beasts and offerings (ULT)**

**repeatedly killed animals and offered them to me with grain as sacrifices (UST)**

In a figure of speech, God is using the two main categories of sacrifices, those that involve shedding blood (**slain beasts**) and those that are bloodless (**offerings**), to mean sacrifices of all kinds. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or non-figurative language. Alternate translation: "all kinds of sacrifices" (See: [Merism](#))

**O house of Israel (ULT)**

**You Israelite people (UST)**

Here, **house** means all the people descended from a particular person. It envisions them as if they were one household living together. So the **house of Israel** figuratively means all the people descended from the patriarch Jacob, who was also known as Israel. Alternate translation: "nation of Israel" or "people of Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))



## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- turned away
- wilderness
- O house
- of Israel
- to serve
- of heaven
- as
- it is written
- of...prophets
- slain beasts
- offerings
- for...years

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- stopped correcting them
- repeatedly killed animals
- offered them to me with grain as sacrifices
- years
- wilderness
- to worship
- in...sky
- This agrees with
- what...wrote
- one of the prophets
- Israelite
- You...people



## **Acts 7:43**

The quotation from the prophet Amos continues here.

## And (ULT)

### On the contrary (UST)

**And** at the beginning of this verse introduces God's own answer to the question he asked in the previous verse, 7:42: "You did not offer slain beasts and offerings to me ..., did you?" The answer is in contrast to what the question asks. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation, followed by a sentence break: "No!" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#) )

### you took up...I will remove you (ULT) you carried with you from place to place... You...carried with you...I will cause you to be taken away far from your homes (UST)

The term **took up** indicates that the Israelites carried the idols this verse describes around with them as they traveled in the wilderness. The term **remove** in this context means that God will send them into exile as a punishment, with the sense of carrying them away from their homeland. So the punishment is ironic; if possible, use similar terms in your language that will bring out this irony. Alternate translation: "you carried around ... I will carry you away" (See: [Irony](#))

### you took up...your...you made...you (ULT) you carried with you from place to place...You...carried with you...that you worshiped...you had made...you (UST)

As in 7:42, **you** is plural here, even though the addressee ("house") is singular, since God is speaking to all of the Israelites. In this verse **your** is also plural. If it would not be natural in your language to use the plural in these cases, you can use the singular in your translation. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#) )

## the tabernacle of Molech (ULT)

### the tent that contained the idol representing the god Molech (UST)

The **tabernacle of Molech** was a tent or shrine that housed an idol of the false god Molech. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say this explicitly, as UST does. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the star of your god Rephan (ULT)

### that you worshiped...the image of the star called Rephan (UST)

The Israelites were not carrying around an actual **star**, but an image designed to look like a star. This image was used in the worship of the false god Rephan. (This may have been the planet Saturn.) Alternate translation: "the star-shaped image of your god Rephan" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## ULT

<sup>43</sup> And you took up the **tabernacle of Molech** and the star of your **god Rephan**— the images that you made **to worship** them— and I will remove you beyond **Babylon**.'

## UST

<sup>43</sup> On the contrary, you carried with you from place to place the **tent that contained the idol representing the god Molech that you worshiped**. You also carried with you the image of the star called Rephan. Those were idols that you had made, **and you worshiped** them instead of me. So I will cause you to be taken away far from your homes to regions even farther than **the country of Babylon**.'

## **the images that you made (ULT)**

### **Those were idols that you had made (UST)**

The word **images** refers to the idol of Molech and the star-shaped image of Rephan. It may be helpful to make this a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "You made that idol of Molech and that star-shaped image of Rephan so that you could worship those false gods." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **and (ULT)**

### **So (UST)**

Speaking through Amos, God uses the word translated **and** to introduce what he will do as a result of the Israelites' unfaithfulness and disobedience. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "As a result" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

## **I will remove you beyond Babylon (ULT)**

### **I will cause you to be taken away far from your homes to regions even farther than the country of Babylon (UST)**

This is the end of the quotation from the prophet Amos that began in verse 42. See how you marked the beginning of the quotation there. It would be appropriate to mark its ending here with a closing second-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of a second-level quotation. If you used special formatting to set off the quotation, you can return to regular formatting after this verse. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [tabernacle](#)
- [of Molech](#)
- [of...god](#)
- [to worship](#)
- [Babylon](#)

## **Translation Words - UST**

- [tent that contained the idol representing](#)
- [the god Molech](#)
- [that you worshiped](#)
- [and you worshiped](#)
- [the country of Babylon](#)



## **Acts 7:44**

**Connecting Statement:**

Stephen continues his response to the high priest and the council which he began in [Acts 7:2](#).

**The tabernacle of the testimony was with our fathers in the wilderness, just as the one speaking to Moses had commanded (ULT)**  
**While our ancestors were in the desert, they worshiped God at the sacred tent that showed that he was there with them. They had made the tent exactly like God had commanded Moses (UST)**

Stephen is not saying that the **tabernacle** was **with** the Israelites just as God had commanded. He means that the tabernacle was built **according to the pattern** that Moses saw on Mount Sinai. To make this clear, it may be helpful to supply some of the words that Stephen is leaving out. It may also be helpful to introduce a sentence break. Alternate translation: “The tabernacle of the testimony was with our fathers in the wilderness. It was built just as the one speaking to Moses had commanded” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**The tabernacle of the testimony (ULT)**  
**they worshiped God at the sacred tent that showed that he was there with them (UST)**

Stephen calls this tent the **tabernacle of the testimony** by association with the way it housed the ark of the covenant, which was also known as the ark of the testimony. The “testimony” of the ark, as UST indicates, was to the covenant between God and the Israelites and to his presence with them wherever they went in the wilderness. Alternate translation: “the tent that housed the ark of the covenant” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**just as the one speaking to Moses had commanded, to make it according to the pattern that he had seen (ULT)**  
**They had made the tent exactly like God had commanded Moses to make it. It was exactly like the model that Moses had seen when he was up on the mountain (UST)**

It may be more natural to put the information about the command to Moses before the information about how Moses fulfilled the command. It may also be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “The one speaking to Moses had commanded him to make the tabernacle according to the pattern that he had seen, and he made it just that way” (See: [Information Structure](#))

**the one speaking to Moses had commanded (ULT)**  
**God had commanded Moses (UST)**

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that he is referring to the way God spoke to Moses on Mount Sinai. Alternate translation: “God commanded Moses when he spoke to him on Mount Sinai” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**ULT**

<sup>44</sup> The **tabernacle** of the **testimony** was with our **fathers** in the **wilderness**, **just as** the one speaking to **Moses** had **commanded**, to make it according to the pattern that he had seen,

**UST**

<sup>44</sup> “While our **ancestors** were in the **desert**, they **worshiped God** at the **sacred tent** that showed that he was **there with them**. They had made the **tent exactly like** God had **commanded Moses** to make it. It was exactly like the model that Moses had seen when he was up on the mountain.



**the pattern that he had seen (ULT)****the model that Moses had seen when he was up on the mountain (UST)**

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that he is referring to the **pattern** for the tabernacle that God showed Moses on Mount Sinai. Alternate translation: “the pattern that he showed him on Mount Sinai” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- tabernacle
- of...testimony
- with...fathers
- wilderness
- just as
- to Moses
- had commanded

**Translation Words - UST**

- While...ancestors
- desert
- they worshiped God at...sacred tent
- that showed that he was there with them
- They had made the tent exactly like
- had commanded
- Moses



## **Acts 7:45**

## which also our fathers, having received it in turn, brought in (ULT)

The pronoun **which** refers to the tabernacle. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Our ancestors received the tabernacle from their ancestors, and they brought it in"

## having received it in turn (ULT) Later on (UST)

The phrase **having received ... in turn** translates a Greek verb that refers to receiving something in succession, in this case from one's ancestors. Alternate translation: "having received it from their ancestors"

## brought in...with Joshua (ULT) carried...with them...when Joshua led them into this land (UST)

When Stephen says that the Israelites brought in the tabernacle **with Joshua**, he does not mean that they brought in both the tabernacle and Joshua. He means that the Israelites did the things he describes in obedience to Joshua's directions. Alternate translation: "brought in as Joshua directed them"

## brought in (ULT) carried...with them (UST)

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that he is referring to the Israelites entering the land of Canaan. Alternate translation: "brought in to the land of Canaan" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Joshua (ULT) when Joshua led them into this land (UST)

**Joshua** is the name of a man, the successor of Moses as leader of the Israelites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## in the possessing of the nations (ULT) That was during the time when they took this land for themselves...the people who previously lived here (UST)

Stephen is using the term **nations** to mean the land that these people groups occupied. Alternate translation: "when they took possession of land that had been occupied by the nations" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## from the face of our fathers (ULT) So the Israelites were able to possess this land (UST)

Stephen is using the word **face** figuratively to mean "presence." Alternate translation: "from the presence of our ancestors" or "so that our ancestors alone would live there" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> which also our **fathers**, having received it in turn, brought in with **Joshua** in the **possessing** of the **nations** that **God** drove out from **the face** of our **fathers**, until the **days of David**,

### UST

<sup>45</sup> Later on, **other ancestors** of ours carried that tent with them **when Joshua led them into this land**. That was during the time when **they took this land for themselves, when God** forced the **people who previously lived here** to leave. **So the Israelites were able to possess this land**. The tent remained in this land and was still here **when King David ruled**.

**until the days of David (ULT)****The tent remained in this land and was still here when King David ruled (UST)**

Stephen is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "The tabernacle remained there until the days of David" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**the days of David (ULT)****when King David ruled (UST)**

Stephen is using the term **days** idiomatically to refer to a specific time. Alternate translation: "the time of David" (See: [Idiom](#))

**of David (ULT)****King David (UST)**

**David** is the name of a man. See how you translated it in [1:16](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [fathers](#)
- [of...fathers](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [possessing](#)
- [of...nations](#)
- [God](#)
- [the face](#)
- [days](#)
- [of David](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [other ancestors](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [when Joshua led them into this land](#)
- [they took this land for themselves](#)
- [when God](#)
- [people who previously lived here](#)
- [So...were able to possess this land](#)
- [when...ruled](#)
- [King David](#)



## **Acts 7:46**

**to find (ULT)**  
**build (UST)**

Stephen is speaking idiomatically. David did not ask God if he could go look for this **dwelling**. David asked God if he could build it. Alternate translation: “to build” (See: [Idiom](#))

**who found favor before God (ULT)**  
**David pleased God...God (UST)**

The pronoun **who** refers to David. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “David found favor before God”

**who found favor before God (ULT)**  
**David pleased God...God (UST)**

Here the phrase **before God** refers to God’s opinion by association with the way that God would assess anything that came to his attention in front of him. Alternate translation: “God regarded David with favor” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to find (ULT)**  
**build (UST)**

Stephen is speaking idiomatically. David did not ask God if he could go look for this **dwelling**. David asked God if he could build it. Alternate translation: “to build” (See: [Idiom](#))

**a dwelling (ULT)**  
**a temple where...could worship God (UST)**

The word **dwelling** refers to a permanent habitation, that is, a house. Stephen is using the word figuratively to mean a temple. He is speaking of this temple as if it was a house in which God lived, since God’s presence was there. Alternate translation: “a house” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for the house of Jacob (ULT)**  
**he and all of our Israelite people (UST)**

Some ancient manuscripts read “the house of Jacob.” ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read “the God of Jacob.” If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it has. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

**for the house of Jacob (ULT)**  
**he and all of our Israelite people (UST)**

Here, **house** means all the people descended from a particular person. It envisions them as if they were one household living together. So **the house of Jacob** figuratively means all the people descended from the patriarch Jacob, who was also known as Israel. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>46</sup> who found favor before God, and he asked to find a dwelling for the house of Jacob. <sup>[1]</sup>

**UST**

<sup>46</sup> David pleased God, and he asked God to let him build a temple where he and all of our Israelite people could worship God.



## Translation Words - ULT

- favor
- God
- for...house
- of Jacob

## Translation Words - UST

- pleased
- God...God
- he and all of our...people
- Israelite

**Acts 7:47****Solomon (ULT)****David's son Solomon (UST)**

**Solomon** is the name of a man. See how you translated it in [3:11](#).  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the house for him (ULT)****a temple where people could worship him (UST)**

Stephen is using the word **house** figuratively to mean a temple. Alternate translation: "a temple for him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the house for him (ULT)****a temple where people could worship him (UST)**

The pronoun **him** refers to God. Alternate translation: "a temple for God" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Solomon](#)
- [the house](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [David's son Solomon](#)
- [a temple where people could worship](#)

**ULT**

<sup>47</sup> However, [Solomon](#) built [the house](#) for him.

**UST**

<sup>47</sup> But instead, God told [David's son Solomon](#) to build [a temple where people could worship](#) him."

## Acts 7:48

### the Most High (ULT) God, who is greater than everything (UST)

This a name for God. UST suggests one way to express its meaning. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### houses} made with hands (ULT) temples that people build (UST)

Stephen is using the adjective **made with hands** (or “handmade”) as a noun, to mean structures built by humans. ULT adds **houses** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: “temples that people build” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### houses} made with hands (ULT) temples that people build (UST)

Stephen is using the word **hand**, one part of a person, figuratively to mean the whole person. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: “houses that people build” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### houses} made with hands (ULT) temples that people build (UST)

The word **houses** figuratively means “temples.” Alternate translation: “temples that people build” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### as the prophet says (ULT) It is as the prophet Isaiah wrote (UST)

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that by **the prophet**, he means Isaiah. Alternate translation: “as the prophet Isaiah says” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Most High](#)
- [as](#)
- [prophet](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [God, who is greater than everything](#)
- [It is as](#)
- [prophet Isaiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>48</sup> But the [Most High](#) does not live in {houses} made with hands, [as](#) the [prophet](#) says,

### UST

<sup>48</sup> “However, we know that [God, who is greater than everything](#), does not live in temples that people build. [It is as](#) the [prophet Isaiah](#) wrote:



## **Acts 7:49**

## Heaven {is} my throne, and the earth {is} the footstool for my feet (ULT)

This is the beginning of a quotation from the prophet Isaiah, which continues through the end of verse 50. Even if your language does not customarily put one direct quotation inside another, it would be good to present this quotation from Isaiah as a direct quotation if possible, since God is addressing the Israelites directly in it. You may be able to indicate its beginning with an opening second-level quotation mark or with some other punctuation or convention that your language uses to indicate the start of a second-level quotation. You may also be able to use special formatting to set off the quotation, as ULT does. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> 'Heaven {is} my throne, and the earth {is} the footstool for my feet. What kind of house will you build for me? says the Lord, or what {is} the place for my rest?

### UST

<sup>49-50</sup> God said, "I created everything in heaven and on earth. My presence fills all of creation. So you human beings cannot make a place good enough for me to live in!"

## Heaven {is} my throne, and the earth {is} the footstool for my feet (ULT)

Speaking through Isaiah, God figuratively describes **Heaven** as his **throne** and **the earth** as his **footstool**. If your readers would not understand what these figures mean, you could use equivalent metaphors from your culture, or you could express the meaning in a non-figurative way. This could mean: (1) that God is present both in heaven and on earth. Alternate translation: "I dwell in heaven, and I am also present throughout the earth" (2) that God rules over heaven and earth. Alternative translation: "I rule from heaven, and I have complete authority over the earth" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Heaven {is} my throne, and the earth {is} the footstool for my feet (ULT)

God is using the two parts of creation, **Heaven** and **earth**, to mean all of creation. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. This could mean: (1) Alternate translation: "I am present everywhere in creation" (2) Alternate translation: "I rule over all of creation" (See: [Merism](#))

## What kind of house will you build for me? says the Lord, or what {is} the place for my rest (ULT)

God is using the question form to emphasize that human beings cannot build a temple worthy of him or adequate for him. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate these words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "You can not build a temple that is worthy of me or a place to live that is adequate for me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## What kind of house will you build for me? says the Lord, or what {is} the place for my rest (ULT)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. God says the same thing twice, in slightly different ways, to emphasize the truth of what he is saying. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: "You can not build a temple that is worthy for me to live in!" (See: [Parallelism](#))

## What kind of house (ULT)

The word **house** figuratively means a "temple." Alternate translation: "What kind of temple" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## the place for my rest (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **rest**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “the place where I can live” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Heaven...is
- throne
- earth {is
- for...feet
- the footstool for my feet
- of house
- the Lord
- for...rest

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- earth, land
- footstool
- footstool
- house, household
- rest, rested, restless
- throne, enthroned

## Acts 7:50

### Did my hand not make all these things (ULT)

This is the end of the quotation from the prophet Isaiah that began in verse 49. See how you marked the beginning of the quotation there. It would be appropriate to mark its ending here with a closing second-level quotation mark or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of a second-level quotation. If you used special formatting to set off the quotation, you can return to regular formatting after this verse. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

### Did my hand not make all these things (ULT)

God is using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "My hand made all these things!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Did my hand not make all these things (ULT)

God is using one part of himself, his **hand**, to represent all of himself figuratively in the act of creating. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "Did I not make all these things?" or, if you choose to represent the rhetorical question as an exclamation, "I made all these things!" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### all these things (ULT)

The phrase **all these things** refers back to "Heaven" and "earth" in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "everything in creation"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**50** Did my [hand](#) not make all these things?"

#### UST

**49-50** God said, "I created everything in heaven and on earth. My presence fills all of creation. So you human beings cannot make a place good enough for me to live in!"





## **Acts 7:51**

## **O stiff-necked and uncircumcised in heart and ears (ULT)**

### **You people are disobedient to God, as if you did not even know God (UST)**

Stephen is using the exclamatory word **O** to make a transition in his speech. Up to this point, he has been identifying with the Sanhedrin members, saying “our fathers” as he describes what earlier generations of Israelites did. Now, as he shifts to rebuking them, he addresses them with the vocative **O**. Use an exclamation that is natural in your language for this same purpose. Alternate translation: “You stiff-necked people who are uncircumcised in your heart and ears” (See: [Exclamations](#))

## **O stiff-necked and (ULT)**

### **You people are disobedient to God, as if you did not even know God (UST)**

Stephen is using the adjective **stiff-necked** as a noun, to describe a kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: “O people who are stiff-necked and” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## **O stiff-necked (ULT)**

### **You people are disobedient to God (UST)**

Stephen is speaking figuratively of the Sanhedrin members as if they were horses or mules that stiffened their necks in order not to be turned in one direction or another. He means that they are being stubborn. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture, or you could express the meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: “O stubborn” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## **uncircumcised in heart and ears (ULT)**

### **as if you did not even know God (UST)**

Stephen speaks figuratively of the Sanhedrin members’ **heart and ears** as **uncircumcised** by association with the way that Gentiles, who are uncircumcised because they are not part of the covenant community, do not obey or listen to God. Alternate translation: “unwilling to obey or listen to God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## **uncircumcised in heart and ears (ULT)**

### **as if you did not even know God (UST)**

Stephen is using one part of a person, the **heart**, figuratively meaning the desires and will, to represent all of a person in the act of obeying or disobeying. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: “unwilling to obey or listen to God” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## **ULT**

<sup>51</sup> **O stiff-necked** and uncircumcised in heart and ears! You always resist the Holy Spirit! As your fathers, also you.

## **UST**

<sup>51</sup> “You people are disobedient to God, as if you did not even know God! You are exactly like your ancestors! You always resist the Holy Spirit, just as they did!”

## **uncircumcised in heart and ears (ULT)** **as if you did not even know God (UST)**

Stephen is figuratively using one part of a person, the **ears**, to represent all of a person in the act of listening. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: “unwilling to obey or listen to God” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## **You always resist the Holy Spirit (ULT)** **You always resist the Holy Spirit (UST)**

The word **always** is a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: “You keep resisting the Holy Spirit” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## **You...your...you (ULT)** **You...your...You (UST)**

The words **you** and **your** are plural, since Stephen is speaking to all the members of the Sanhedrin. So use plural forms in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Forms of You](#))

## **As your fathers, also you (ULT)** **You are exactly like your ancestors...just as they did (UST)**

Stephen is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. Alternate translation: “As your ancestors disobeyed God and did not listen to him, so you disobey God and do not listen to him” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [O stiff-necked](#)
- [in heart](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [As](#)
- [fathers](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [You people are disobedient to God](#)
- [as if you did not even know God](#)
- [ancestors...they did](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [just as](#)



## **Acts 7:52**

**Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute (ULT)**  
**Your ancestors caused every prophet to suffer (UST)**

Stephen is not asking for information. He is using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "Your ancestors persecuted each of the prophets!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute (ULT)**  
**Your ancestors caused every prophet to suffer (UST)**

Stephen's rhetorical question has an implicit generalization for emphasis. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that conveys emphasis. Alternate translation: "Your ancestors kept persecuting the prophets!" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**of the Righteous One (ULT)**  
**the Messiah...the one who always did what pleased God (UST)**

Stephen is using the adjective **Righteous** as a noun in order to describe a specific person. ULT adds **One** to show this. This is a title that refers to the Christ, the Messiah. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this with a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "of the Messiah, who was righteous" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**And...whose betrayers...murderers you have now become (ULT)**  
**even...He is the one whom you recently turned over to his enemies...insisted that they kill him (UST)**

It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "You have now betrayed and murdered him"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of...prophets](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [did...persecute](#)
- [of...Righteous One](#)
- [betrayers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [ancestors](#)
- [caused...to suffer](#)
- [prophet](#)

**ULT**

<sup>52</sup> Which of the [prophets](#) did your [fathers](#) not [persecute](#)? And they killed the ones telling in advance about the coming of the [Righteous One](#), whose [betrayers](#) and murderers you have now become,

**UST**

<sup>52</sup> Your [ancestors caused](#) every [prophet to suffer](#). They even killed those who long ago announced that the [Messiah](#) would come, the [one who always did what pleased God](#). And the Messiah has come! He is the one whom you recently [turned over to his enemies](#) and insisted that they kill him!

- Messiah...one who always did what pleased God
- turned over to his enemies



## Acts 7:53

### who received (ULT)

#### You are the people who have received (UST)

The pronoun **who** refers to the Sanhedrin members whom Stephen is addressing. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here.

Alternate translation: "You received" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### who received (ULT)

#### You are the people who have received (UST)

The Sanhedrin members whom Stephen is addressing did not receive **the law** themselves. Rather, Stephen is using them figuratively to represent the entire Jewish community down through the years. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "whose community received" or, if you choose to start a new sentence, "Your community received" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### by directions of angels (ULT)

#### God caused angels to give to our ancestors (UST)

Stephen assumes that his listeners will know that he is referring to God giving the law to the Israelites at Mount Sinai. A later Jewish tradition said that angels acted as God's intermediaries at that time. (Stephen says in [7:38](#) that an angel was speaking to Moses on Mount Sinai.) If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "as angels delivered it on Mount Sinai" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [received](#)
- [law](#)
- [directions](#)
- [of angels](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [have received](#)
- [laws. Those were laws that](#)
- [God caused...to give to our ancestors](#)
- [angels](#)

### ULT

<sup>53</sup> who [received](#) the [law](#) by [directions of angels](#), but did not keep it."

### UST

<sup>53</sup> You are the people who [have received](#) God's [laws](#). [Those were laws that God caused angels to give to our ancestors](#). However, you have not obeyed them!"

**Acts 7:54**

**hearing...these things, they were cut to their hearts (ULT)**  
**the Jewish council members and others there heard...all that Stephen said, they became very angry...because they were so angry (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "these things cut them to their hearts when they heard them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were cut to their hearts (ULT)**  
**they became very angry...because they were so angry (UST)**

Here, the expression **they were cut to their hearts** is an idiom that means the Sanhedrin members became very angry. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "they became furious at Stephen" (See: [Idiom](#))

**they ground {their} teeth at him (ULT)**  
**They were grinding their teeth together...at him (UST)**

This action expressed their strong anger at Stephen. If there is a gesture with similar meaning in your culture, you could consider using it here in your translation. Alternate translation: "they became so angry at Stephen that they ground their teeth together" or "they moved their teeth back and forth as they looked angrily at Stephen" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to...hearts](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [became very angry...because they were so angry](#)

**ULT**

<sup>54</sup> Now hearing these things, they were cut to their [hearts](#), and they ground {their} teeth at him.

**UST**

<sup>54</sup> When the Jewish council members and others there heard all that Stephen said, they [became very angry](#). They were grinding their teeth together [because they were so angry](#) at him!



## **Acts 7:55**

**full of the Holy Spirit (ULT)**  
**the Holy Spirit...completely controlled**  
**Stephen (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively of Stephen as if he were a container that the Holy Spirit could fill. Alternate translation: “inspired by the Holy Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**looking intently into heaven, he saw (ULT)**  
**He looked up into heaven and saw...he saw**  
**(UST)**

The implication is that only Stephen saw this vision, not anyone else who was present. Alternate translation: “staring up into heaven, he saw in a vision” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the glory of God (ULT)**  
**a dazzling light from God (UST)**

The implication is that Stephen saw a bright light that expressed the magnificent presence of God. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “a bright light that expressed the glorious presence of God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Jesus standing at the right of God (ULT)**  
**Jesus standing at God’s right side (UST)**

Luke is using the adjective **right** as a noun in order to indicate the right side. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this with a noun phrase. Alternate translation: “Jesus standing at the right side of God” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**Jesus standing at the right of God (ULT)**  
**Jesus standing at God’s right side (UST)**

In this culture, the place at the right side of a ruler was a position of honor. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: “Jesus standing in a place of honor next to God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Jesus standing at the right of God (ULT)**  
**Jesus standing at God’s right side (UST)**

Elsewhere in the New Testament, Jesus is described as “sitting” **at the right of God**. Many interpreters believe that Jesus stood on this occasion to honor Stephen for his courage and faithful testimony. If there is a gesture with similar meaning in your culture, you could consider using it here in your translation. Alternate translation: “Jesus, in a place of honor next to God, standing to honor him” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- full

**ULT**

<sup>55</sup> But being full of the Holy Spirit, looking intently into heaven, he saw the glory of God and Jesus standing at the right of God.

**UST**

<sup>55</sup> But the Holy Spirit completely controlled Stephen. He looked up into heaven and saw a dazzling light from God, and he saw Jesus standing at God’s right side.

- of the Holy Spirit
- heaven
- the glory
- of God
- of God (2)
- Jesus
- the right

## Translation Words - UST

- the Holy Spirit
- completely controlled Stephen
- heaven
- a dazzling light
- from God
- God's (2)
- Jesus
- right side



## Acts 7:56



**Behold (ULT)****Look (UST)**

Stephen is using the term **behold** to focus his listener's attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: "Now listen" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I see the heavens opened, and (ULT)****I see right into heaven, and I see (UST)**

Stephen is speaking figuratively of **the heavens** being **opened** to mean that they are open to his view. Alternate translation: "the heavens are open to my view, and I see" or "I can see into heaven, and I see" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the Son of Man (ULT)****the Son of Man {in human form (UST)**

The title **Son of Man** is equivalent to "Messiah." Jesus himself used that title to claim that role subtly and implicitly. You may want to translate the title directly into your language. Alternatively, if you think it would be helpful to your readers, you could express what it means. Alternate translation: "Jesus the Messiah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**standing at the right of God (ULT)****standing where God rules (UST)**

See how you translated the nominal adjective **right** in [7:55](#). Alternate translation: "standing at the right side of God" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**standing at the right of God (ULT)****standing where God rules (UST)**

See how you expressed the implicit significance of the phrase **at the right of God** in [7:55](#). Alternate translation: "standing in a place of honor next to God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**standing at the right of God (ULT)****standing where God rules (UST)**

See how you expressed the significance of the symbolic action of Jesus **standing** in [7:55](#). Alternate translation: ", in a place of honor next to God, standing to honor me" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heavens](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [the right](#)
- [of God](#)

**ULT**

<sup>56</sup> And he said, "Behold, I see the [heavens](#) opened, and the [Son of Man](#) standing at [the right of God](#)."

**UST**

<sup>56</sup> "Look," he said, "I see right into [heaven](#), and I see the [Son of Man {in human form}](#) standing [where God rules](#)!"

## Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- Son of Man {in human form
- where...rules
- God

**Acts 7:57**

**shouting...with a loud voice, they covered their ears (ULT)**

**they shouted...loudly. They put their hands over their ears so that they would not hear him (UST)**

The Sanhedrin members did these things to demonstrate that they did not want to hear any more of what Stephen said. Alternate translation: "shouting loudly to drown out Stephen, they put their hands over their ears to show that they did not want to hear any more" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**shouting...with a loud voice (ULT)**  
**they shouted...loudly (UST)**

This is an idiom that suggests figuratively that the Sanhedrin members had another, louder voice that they could use. It means that they raised the volume of their voices. Alternate translation: "shouting loudly" (See: [Idiom](#))

**shouting...with a loud voice (ULT)**  
**they shouted...loudly (UST)**

If you would like to reproduce this idiom but it would be unusual in your language to speak as if a whole group of people had one **voice**, you could make this plural. Alternate translation: "with loud voices" or "in loud voices"

**rushed at him unanimously (ULT)**  
**All together they ran up to Stephen and grabbed him (UST)**

This could mean: (1) that the Sanhedrin members all rushed at Stephen at the same time. Alternate translation: "rushed at him all at once" (2) that every one of the Sanhedrin members rushed at Stephen. Alternate translation: "every one of them rushed at him"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- shouting
- with a...voice

**Translation Words - UST**

- they shouted
- loudly

**ULT**

<sup>57</sup> But shouting with a loud voice, they covered their ears and rushed at him unanimously.

**UST**

<sup>57</sup> {When the Jewish council members and others heard that,} they shouted loudly. They put their hands over their ears so that they would not hear him. All together they ran up to Stephen and grabbed him.



## **Acts 7:58**

## throwing him outside the city (ULT) They dragged him outside the city of Jerusalem (UST)

Luke is likely speaking figuratively when he speaks of the Sanhedrin members **throwing** Stephen outside the city. It is unlikely that they actually picked him up and heaved him through the air. Alternate translation: “seizing Stephen and forcefully taking him out of the city” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## the witnesses (ULT) The people who were accusing him (UST)

These were the “false witnesses” whom the Sanhedrin brought in to accuse Stephen, as described in [6:13](#). According to the Law of Moses, it was their responsibility to carry out the execution of the man they had accused. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “the false witnesses, who were responsible to carry out the execution,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## laid aside their outer garments at the feet of a young man named Saul (ULT) took off their outer garments in order to throw stones more easily. They put these garments on the ground next to a young man whose name was Saul so that he could guard them (UST)

The implications are that the witnesses took off their long robes so that they could throw stones at Stephen more easily and that they left them with Saul for safekeeping. UST models one way to make these implications explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## outer garments (ULT) outer garments...garments (UST)

These **outer garments** were long cloaks or robes that people wore outside to stay warm. They were also a sign of wealth and status. If your readers would not be familiar with this kind of garment, you could use the name of another garment that they would recognize, or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: “coats” or “robes” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## at the feet (ULT) on the ground next to...so that he could guard them (UST)

The expression **at the feet** is an idiom. Alternate translation: “on the ground in front of” (See: [Idiom](#))

## Saul (ULT) Saul (UST)

**Saul** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>58</sup> And **throwing him** outside the city, **they stoned him**. And the **witnesses** laid aside their **outer garments** at the feet of a young man named **Saul**.

### UST

<sup>58</sup> **They dragged him** outside the city of Jerusalem **and started to throw stones at him to kill him**. The **people who were accusing him** took off their **outer garments** in order to throw stones more easily. They put these **garments** on the ground next to a young man whose name was **Saul** so that he could guard them.

## Translation Words - ULT

- throwing him
- they stoned him
- witnesses
- outer garments
- Saul

## Translation Words - UST

- They dragged him
- and started to throw stones at him to kill him
- people who were accusing him
- outer garments...garments
- Saul

## Acts 7:59

### as he was calling out and saying (ULT) prayed out loud (UST)

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The phrase **calling out** tells how Stephen was **saying** what he said. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: "as he was saying loudly" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### receive my spirit (ULT) welcome me when I die (UST)

This is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as "please" to make this clear. Alternate translation: "please receive my spirit" (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they were stoning](#)
- [Stephen](#)
- [as he was calling out](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [receive](#)
- [spirit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they continued to throw stones at](#)
- [Stephen, Stephen](#)
- [prayed out loud](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [welcome](#)
- [me when I die](#)

#### ULT

<sup>59</sup> And [they were stoning Stephen as he was calling out](#) and saying, "Lord Jesus, [receive my spirit.](#)"

#### UST

<sup>59</sup> While [they continued to throw stones at Stephen, Stephen prayed out loud,](#) "Lord Jesus, [welcome me when I die!](#)"





## **Acts 7:60**

## having put down...his} knees (ULT) Stephen knelt down...Stephen knelt down (UST)

Kneeling down was an act of submission to God and a reverent posture of prayer. Alternate translation: “after he had knelt down reverently” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

## he cried out with a loud voice (ULT) and cried out loud (UST)

This is an idiom that means that Stephen raised the volume of his voice. Alternate translation: “he cried out loudly” (See: [Idiom](#))

## do not hold this sin against them (ULT) do not punish them for this sin (UST)

This is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as “please” to make this clear. Alternate translation: “please do not hold this sin against them” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

## do not hold this sin against them (ULT) do not punish them for this sin (UST)

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **hold ... against**. Alternate translation: “forgive them for this sin” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

## he fell asleep (ULT) he died (UST)

Luke is describing the death of Stephen when he says **he fell asleep**. This is a polite way of referring to something unpleasant. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to this or use plain language. Alternate translation: “he passed away” or, as in UST, “he died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [having put down](#)
- [he cried out](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [sin](#)
- [he fell asleep](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Stephen knelt down](#)
- [and cried](#)

## ULT

<sup>60</sup> But [having put down](#) {his} knees, [he cried out with a loud voice](#), “Lord, do not hold this [sin](#) against them.” And having said this, [he fell asleep](#).

7:46 <sup>[1]</sup> but the best ancient manuscripts have .

## UST

<sup>60</sup> Then [Stephen knelt down and cried out loud](#), “Lord, do not punish them for this [sin](#)!” After he had said this, [he died](#).

- out loud
- Lord
- sin
- he died

## Acts 8

### Acts 8 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The story here shifts from Stephen to Saul.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 8:32-33.

The first sentence of verse 1 ends the description of the events in chapter 7. Luke begins a new part of his history with the words "And on that day."

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Receiving the Holy Spirit

In this chapter Luke speaks for the first time of people receiving the Holy Spirit ([Acts 8:15-19](#)). The Holy Spirit had already enabled the believers to speak in tongues, to heal the sick, and to live as a community, and he had filled Stephen. But when the Jews started putting believers in prison, those believers who could leave Jerusalem did leave, and as they went, they told people about Jesus. When the people who heard about Jesus received the Holy Spirit, the church leaders knew that those people had truly become believers.

##### Proclaimed

This chapter, more than any other in the book of Acts, speaks of the believers proclaiming the word, proclaiming the good news, and proclaiming that Jesus is the Christ. The word "proclaim" translates a Greek word that means to tell good news about something.



## **Acts 8:1**

## And Saul was agreeing with his execution (ULT)

Luke is providing this background information to help readers understand why Saul was persecuting the church, as he relates in 8:3 and in chapter 9. Use a natural way in your language for introducing background information. Alternate translation: "Now Saul approved of the Sanhedrin executing Stephen" (See: [Connect — Background Information](#) )

## And on that day a great persecution began against the church (ULT)

Luke uses this phrase to introduce a new event in the story, the scattering of the church and its witness beyond Jerusalem. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "And so began that day a great persecution against the church" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

## on that day (ULT)

Here, **day** is not a figurative word for "time." Luke is referring to a specific day, the day on which Stephen was killed. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "on the day Stephen was killed," (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## all...they...were scattered (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they all fled" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## all...they...were scattered (ULT)

The word **all** is a generalization that emphasizes that a large number of the believers were affected. Alternate translation: "many of the believers were scattered" or "many of the believers fled" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## of Judea and Samaria (ULT)

**Judea** and **Samaria** are the names of regions. See how you translated them in 1:8. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## except the apostles (ULT)

The implication is that **the apostles** remained in Jerusalem, even though they too experienced this great persecution. Alternate translation: "except the apostles, who remained in Jerusalem despite the persecution" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And [Saul](#) was agreeing with his execution. And on that [day](#) a great [persecution](#) began against the [church](#) that {was} in [Jerusalem](#), and they all were scattered throughout the regions of [Judea](#) and [Samaria](#), except the [apostles](#).

### UST

<sup>1-2</sup> Then some men who honored God buried Stephen's body in a tomb, and they mourned loudly for him. But Saul thought the Sanhedrin had done the right thing by stoning Stephen. On that same day, people {Saul was leading} started severely persecuting the believers who were living in Jerusalem. So most of the believers fled to other places throughout the provinces of Judea and Samaria. But the apostles remained in Jerusalem.



- day
- a...persecution
- church
- Jerusalem
- of Judea
- Samaria
- apostles

## Translation Words - UST

- apostle, apostleship
- church, Church
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- Paul, Saul
- Samaria, Samaritan
- day
- persecute

## Acts 8:2

### And devout men carried away Stephen and made great lamentation over him (ULT)

It may be helpful to your readers to move these parts of the story about Stephen together by using a verse bridge for verses 1-2 as the UST does. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

### carried away...Stephen (ULT)

The word translated **carried away** means to carry away for burial. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. You could also say explicitly that it was Stephen's body that these men carried away. Alternate translation: "carried Stephen's body away to bury it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Stephen](#)
- [lamentation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lament, lamentation](#)
- [Stephen](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And devout men carried away [Stephen](#) and made great [lamentation](#) over him.

### UST

<sup>1-2</sup> Then some men who honored God buried Stephen's body in a tomb, and they mourned loudly for him. But Saul thought the Sanhedrin had done the right thing by stoning Stephen. On that same day, people {Saul was leading} started severely persecuting the believers who were living in Jerusalem. So most of the believers fled to other places throughout the provinces of Judea and Samaria. But the apostles remained in Jerusalem.

## Acts 8:3

**by houses (ULT)**

**their houses one by one (UST)**

Alternate translation: "entering one house after another"

**by houses...both men and women (ULT)**

**their houses one by one...men and women (UST)**

Luke may mean **houses** where Christians met, as described in [2:46](#), and he means **men and women** who believed in Jesus. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "the houses where Christians met...believers in Jesus, both men and women" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [church](#)
- [houses](#)
- [prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Saul](#)
- [group of believers...who believed in Jesus](#)
- [their houses](#)
- [prison](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But [Saul](#) was harming the [church](#). Entering by [houses](#), dragging out both men and women, he was delivering them to [prison](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [Saul](#) began trying to destroy the [group of believers](#). He entered [their houses](#) one by one. He dragged away men and women [{who believed in Jesus}](#), and he put them in [prison](#).

**Acts 8:4****the...ones having been scattered (ULT)  
The...believers who had left Jerusalem (UST)**

Luke is using the participle **having been scattered**, which functions as an adjective, as a noun. ULT adds the term **ones** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: “the believers who had been scattered” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**the...ones having been scattered (ULT)  
The...believers who had left Jerusalem (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. See how you translated it in [8:1](#). Alternate translation: “the believers who had fled from the persecution” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**proclaiming the word (ULT)  
where they continued preaching the message about Jesus (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that these believers shared by using words. See how you translated the term in [4:4](#). Also see the General Notes to this chapter for the meaning of the word translated **proclaiming** here and many other times in this chapter. Alternate translation: “telling the good news about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [proclaiming](#)
- [word](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [where they continued preaching](#)
- [message about Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> Then the ones having been scattered went about [proclaiming](#) the [word](#).

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> The believers who had left Jerusalem went to different places, [where they continued preaching](#) the [message about Jesus](#).

## Acts 8:5

### Philip (ULT)

**One of those believers, whose name was Philip (UST)**

**Philip** is the name of a man. See how you translated it in [1:13](#). Philip was one of the apostles. A man by that same name, possibly the same man, was chosen as one of the deacons in [6:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**going down (ULT)**  
**went from Jerusalem (UST)**

Luke speaks of Philip **going down** from Jerusalem because that was the customary way of speaking about traveling from Jerusalem, since that city is up on a mountain. Alternate translation: “traveling” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the city of Samaria (ULT)**  
**a city in the district of Samaria (UST)**

This is an idiom that means the principal city in the region of Samaria, probably the one known at that time as Sebaste, although some interpreters believe that Luke may have had the city of Sychar in mind instead. Alternate translation: “the main city in Samaria” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Christ (ULT)**  
**that Jesus is the Messiah (UST)**

Luke is using the name **Christ** figuratively by association to mean the message about Christ. Alternate translation: “the good news about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Philip
- of Samaria
- was proclaiming
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- One of those believers, whose name was Philip
- in the district of Samaria
- There he was telling
- that Jesus is the Messiah

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And Philip, going down to the city of Samaria, was proclaiming Christ to them.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> One of those believers, whose name was Philip, went from Jerusalem to a city in the district of Samaria. There he was telling the people that Jesus is the Messiah.

## Acts 8:6

### the crowds (ULT)

#### Many people there (UST)

Luke implicitly means **the crowds** in the city that Philip traveled to. Alternate translation: “the people in that city of Samaria” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### unanimously (ULT)

Alternate translation: “all together”

### to the things being spoken by Philip (ULT)

#### Philip speak...what he was saying (UST)

Luke is using the participle **being spoken**, which functions as an adjective, as a noun. ULT adds the term **things** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: “the things that Philip was saying” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### to the things being spoken by Philip (ULT)

#### Philip speak...what he was saying (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the things that Philip was saying” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the signs (ULT)

#### the miraculous things (UST)

Here the word **signs** has the same sense that it has in the phrase “wonders and signs” in [2:22](#) and elsewhere in Acts. It means a miracle. Alternate translation: “the miracles”

## Translation Words - ULT

- Philip
- signs

## Translation Words - UST

- Philip
- miraculous things

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And the crowds were paying attention unanimously to the things being spoken by Philip when they heard them and saw the signs that he was doing.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Many people there heard Philip speak and saw the miraculous things that he was doing. So they all paid close attention to what he was saying.



## **Acts 8:7**



**For many of those having unclean spirits, shouting with a loud voice, they were coming out (ULT)**

**For example, Philip commanded evil spirits to come out of many people, and they came out screaming (UST)**

As Luke tells the story of this event, he changes from the people who had **unclean spirits** being the subject of the sentence to the **unclean spirits** themselves being the subject. This may be because the unclean spirits controlled people to such an extent that the spirits seemed to be the people themselves. It may be helpful to your readers to put the information about the spirits before the information about the people who had them. Alternate translation: “unclean spirits, shouting with a loud voice, were coming out of many of those who had them” (See: [Information Structure](#))

**of those having (ULT)**  
**of...people (UST)**

Luke is using the participle **having**, which functions as an adjective, as a noun. ULT adds the term **those** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: “the people who had” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**those having unclean spirits (ULT)**  
**evil spirits...of...people (UST)**

Alternate translation: “who were controlled by unclean spirits”

**shouting with a loud voice (ULT)**  
**screaming (UST)**

This is an idiom that means that the unclean spirits raised the volume of their voices. Alternate translation: “shouting loudly” (See: [Idiom](#))

**many...paralyzed and lame were healed (ULT)**  
**many people...who could not move their muscles and many others who were lame were healed (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, it would be appropriate to say Jesus, since the book of Acts shows that the apostles healed people in the name of Jesus, for example, in [4:10](#). Alternate translation: “Jesus, through the power of his name, healed many who had been paralyzed and lame” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For many of those having **unclean** spirits, **shouting with a loud voice**, they were coming out. And many paralyzed and lame **were healed**.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> For example, Philip commanded **evil** spirits to come out of many people, and they came out **screaming**. Also, many people who could not move their muscles and many others who were lame **were healed**.

**many...paralyzed (ULT)****many people...who could not move their muscles (UST)**

Luke is using the participle **paralyzed** as an adjective. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "many who had been paralyzed" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**many...paralyzed (ULT)****many people...who could not move their muscles (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "many who had paralysis" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- unclean spirits
- unclean
- shouting
- with a...voice
- were healed

**Translation Words - UST**

- evil spirits
- evil
- screaming
- screaming
- were healed

**Acts 8:8****And (ULT)****So (UST)**

Luke is using the word translated **And** to introduce what the people in the city did as a result of the many healings that Philip performed. Alternate translation: “So” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> And there was much [joy](#) in that city.

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> So many people in that city were very [happy](#).

**there was...much joy in that city (ULT)****many people...were...in that city...very happy (UST)**

The phrase **that city** refers figuratively by association to the people who lived in that city. Alternate translation: “there was much joy among the people of that city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**there was...much joy in that city (ULT)****many people...were...in that city...very happy (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **joy**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “the people of that city rejoiced greatly” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

• [joy](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

• [happy](#)

## Acts 8:9

### But a certain man, Simon by name, was already practicing sorcery in the city (ULT)

Luke is providing background information to help readers understand who Simon was and why he said and did the things Luke describes in the rest of this chapter. Use a natural way in your language for introducing background information. Alternate translation: "Now there was a man named Simon who had been practicing sorcery in that city" (See: [Background Information](#))

### man...a certain...Simon by name (ULT) There was...man...a...whose name was Simon (UST)

Luke uses this phrase to introduce Simon as a new character in the story. If your language has its own way of doing that, you can use it here in your translation. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### Simon (ULT) was Simon (UST)

**Simon** is the name of a man. See how you translated this name, for a different man, in [1:13](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by name](#)
- [practicing sorcery](#)
- [astonishing](#)
- [people](#)
- [of Samaria](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [whose name](#)
- [practicing sorcery](#)
- [he amazed...with his magic](#)
- [people](#)
- [in the district of Samaria](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But a certain man, Simon [by name](#), was already [practicing sorcery](#) in the city and [astonishing](#) the [people of Samaria](#), saying himself to be someone great,

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> There was a man in that city [whose name](#) was Simon. He had been [practicing sorcery](#) for a long time, and [he amazed](#) the [people in the district of Samaria with his magic](#). He claimed he was "Simon the Great One!"



## **Acts 8:10**

**to whom they all, from little to great, were paying attention (ULT)**  
**The people there, both ordinary and important people, listened to him (UST)**

The phrase **to whom** refers to Simon. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "All of them, from little to great, were paying attention to Simon" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**all (ULT)**  
**The people there (UST)**

Luke is using the word **all** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "the Samaritans in that city" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**from little to great (ULT)**  
**both ordinary and important people (UST)**

Luke is using the adjectives **little** and **great** as nouns in order to indicate groups of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: "from the least important people to the most important ones" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**from little to great (ULT)**  
**both ordinary and important people (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively, using these two extremes in order to include all of the people in between. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "no matter how important they were" (See: [Merism](#))

**This (ULT)**  
**Simon (UST)**

The demonstrative pronoun **This** stands for Simon. Alternate translation: "This man" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**the power of God that is called Great (ULT)**  
**the Great Power of God (UST)**

The Samaritans believed that Simon must be the embodiment of some great power, and thinking that this power was God, the highest of powers, they called it Great. Alternate translation: "an embodiment of the Great God" or "an embodiment of the supreme God" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> to whom they all, from little to great, were paying attention, saying, "This is the [power of God](#) that is [called](#) Great."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> The people there, both ordinary and important people, listened to him. They were saying, "Simon is the [Great Power of God](#)."

## **that is called (ULT) Great (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form **called**, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “that people call” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [power](#)
- [of God](#)
- [is called](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [Great](#)
- [Power](#)
- [of God](#)



## Acts 8:11

### And they were paying attention to him (ULT)

This verse gives additional background information about Simon and what he was doing among the Samaritans. Alternate translation: "Now they were paying attention to him" (See: [None](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [for...time](#)
- [he had amazed](#)
- [with sorceries](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [time](#)
- [he had astonished](#)
- [by practicing sorcery](#)

#### ULT

**11** And they were paying attention to him because for a long [time he had amazed](#) them [with sorceries](#).

#### UST

**11** They continued to listen to him carefully because for a long [time he had astonished](#) them [by practicing sorcery](#).



## **Acts 8:12**

**they believed (ULT)**  
**they believed (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to the Samaritans. Alternate translation: “the Samaritans believed” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**proclaiming the gospel about the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**of the good news about how God would rule the lives of people everywhere and about Jesus the Messiah (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of a **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “proclaiming the good news that God had begun to rule and that Jesus the Messiah had come” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**proclaiming the gospel about the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**of the good news about how God would rule the lives of people everywhere and about Jesus the Messiah (UST)**

Here the **name** of Jesus figuratively represents his authority, specifically as the Messiah, as the title **Christ** indicates. Alternate translation: “proclaiming the good news that God had begun to rule and that Jesus the Messiah had come” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**proclaiming the gospel about the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**of the good news about how God would rule the lives of people everywhere and about Jesus the Messiah (UST)**

Since Jesus inaugurated the **kingdom of God** when he came to earth, it may be helpful to put the information about Jesus before the information about the kingdom of God. Alternate translation: “proclaiming the gospel about the name of Jesus Christ and the kingdom of God” or “proclaiming the good news that Jesus the Messiah had come and that God had begun to rule” (See: [Information Structure](#))

**they were being baptized (ULT)**  
**Philip baptized...who believed in Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “Philip was baptizing them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they believed](#)
- [Philip](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> But when [they believed Philip, proclaiming the gospel about the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ, they were being baptized](#), both men and women.

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> But then [they believed Philip's message of the good news about how God would rule the lives of people everywhere and about Jesus the Messiah. Philip baptized the men and the women who believed in Jesus.](#)

- proclaiming the gospel
- kingdom of God
- name
- of Jesus Christ
- Christ
- they were being baptized

## Translation Words - UST

- they believed
- Philip's message
- Philip baptized...who believed in Jesus
- of the good news
- how...God...would rule the lives of people everywhere
- Jesus
- Jesus...the Messiah
- the Messiah



## **Acts 8:13**

## And Simon himself also believed (ULT)

Luke uses the word **himself** to emphasize how significant it was that Simon, who had claimed to be an embodiment of God, had believed in Jesus as the Messiah whom God sent. Use a way that is natural in your language to indicate this significance. Alternate translation: “Even Simon believed” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

## he was continuing with Philip (ULT) He began to accompany Philip constantly... Philip (UST)

Alternate translation: “he followed Philip around everywhere”

## having been baptized (ULT) received baptism (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “after Philip baptized him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## And seeing great signs and works (ULT) by the great miracles he saw...These things showed that Philip was speaking the truth (UST)

The word that ULT translates as **works** here is the same word that it translates as “power” in [8:10](#). It can mean either power or works that demonstrate power. Luke is using the word to show what an ironic situation Simon is in. He claimed to be “the power ... that is called Great,” but now he recognizes that **works** of power that are truly **great** are done in the name of Jesus. If your language has a word for works that demonstrate power that has the same root as its word for power, it would be appropriate to use it here. (See: [Irony](#))

## And...signs and works (ULT) by the...miracles...These things showed that Philip was speaking the truth (UST)

The terms **signs** and **works** mean similar things. Luke is using them together for emphasis. Alternate translation, as in UST: “miracles” (See: [Doublet](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [believed](#)
- [having been baptized](#)
- [with Philip](#)
- [signs](#)
- [works](#)
- [he marveled](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And Simon himself also [believed](#) and, [having been baptized](#), he was continuing [with Philip](#). And seeing great [signs](#) and [works](#) happening, [he marveled](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Though the people had been worshiping him, Simon too [believed Philip's message](#) and [received baptism](#). He began to accompany [Philip](#) constantly. He [was continually amazed by the great miracles](#) he saw [Philip](#) doing. [These things showed that Philip was speaking the truth](#).



## Translation Words - UST

- believed Philip's message
- received baptism
- Philip...Philip
- was continually amazed
- by the...miracles...These things showed that...was speaking the truth
- by the...miracles...These things showed that...was speaking the truth



## **Acts 8:14**

**And (ULT)**

Luke is using the word translated **And** to introduce a new event in the story of the Samaritans becoming believers. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "Now" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**having heard...that Samaria had received the word of God, sent (ULT)**

**When...heard...that many people throughout Samaria district had believed God's message, they sent (UST)**

It may be more natural in your language to have a direct quotation here. Alternate translation: "having heard, 'Samaria has received the word of God,' sent" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**having heard...that Samaria had received the word of God, sent (ULT)**

**When...heard...that many people throughout Samaria district had believed God's message, they sent (UST)**

If you decide to have a direct quotation here, you might also decide to make it an exclamation. Alternate translation: "having heard, 'Samaria has received the word of God!' sent" (See: [Exclamations](#))

**Samaria (ULT)**

**many people throughout Samaria district (UST)**

Luke is using the word **Samaria** figuratively by association to mean the people of Samaria. Alternate translation: "the people of Samaria" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the word of God (ULT)**

**God's message (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that Philip shared by using words. Alternate translation: "the message about Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Peter and John (ULT)**

**Peter and John (UST)**

**Peter** and **John** are the names of two men. See how you translated them in 1:13. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [apostles](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [had received](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> And the [apostles](#) in [Jerusalem](#), having heard that [Samaria had received](#) the [word of God](#), sent to them [Peter](#) and [John](#),

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> When the [apostles](#) in [Jerusalem](#) heard that [many people throughout Samaria district had believed God's message](#), they sent [Peter](#) and [John](#) there.

- word of God
- sent
- Peter
- John

## Translation Words - UST

- apostles
- Jerusalem
- many people throughout Samaria district
- had believed
- God's...message
- they sent
- Peter
- John

## Acts 8:15

**who, having come down, prayed for them**

**(ULT)**

**When Peter and John arrived in Samaria, they prayed for those new believers (UST)**

The pronoun **who** stands for Peter and John, and the pronoun **them** stands for the Samaritans. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "When Peter and John had come down, they prayed for the Samaritans" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> who, having come down, [prayed](#) for them, so that [they might receive the Holy Spirit](#).

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> When Peter and John arrived in Samaria, [they prayed](#) for those new believers [to receive the Holy Spirit](#).

**who (ULT)**

**When Peter and John (UST)**

Since the pronoun **who** stands for two men, it should be in the dual if your language uses that form. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural](#) )

**having come down (ULT)**

**arrived in Samaria (UST)**

Luke speaks of Philip **having come down** from Jerusalem because that was the customary way of speaking about traveling from Jerusalem, since that city is up on a mountain. Alternate translation: "having traveled from Jerusalem" (See: [Idiom](#))

**having come down (ULT)**

**arrived in Samaria (UST)**

Your language may say "gone" rather than **come** in contexts such as this. Use whichever is more natural. Alternate translation: "having gone down" (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prayed](#)
- [they might receive](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they prayed](#)
- [to receive](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)



## **Acts 8:16**



**not yet...he had...fallen upon any of them (ULT)**

**not yet...the Holy Spirit had...openly empowered any of them (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively of the Holy Spirit as if it could fall on the Samaritan believers. Alternate translation: “none of them had yet received the Holy Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**For (ULT)**

**For (UST)**

Luke is using the word **For** to introduce the reason why Peter and John had to pray for the Samaritans to receive the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: “They prayed for them because” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**not yet...he had...fallen upon any of them (ULT)**

**not yet...the Holy Spirit had...openly empowered any of them (UST)**

In Greek this is a double negative for emphasis, “he had not yet fallen upon none of them.” The second negative does not cancel the first to create a positive meaning. If for emphasis your language uses double negatives that do not cancel one another, it would be appropriate to use that construction here. (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**not yet...he had...fallen...he had...fallen (ULT)**

**not yet...the Holy Spirit had...openly empowered...the Holy Spirit had...openly empowered (UST)**

The pronoun **he** stands for the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit had not yet fallen” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**only...they had...been baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus (ULT)**

**only...They had...received baptism in the name of the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **the name of the Lord Jesus** represents his authority, and being baptized into his name represents being baptized in order to be under his authority. Alternate translation: “they had only been baptized to become disciples of the Lord Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**only...they had...been baptized (ULT)**

**only...They had...received baptism (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. If you must state who did the action, the context suggests it was Philip. Alternate translation: “Philip had only baptized them” or “Philip had only baptized the Samaritan believers” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [they had...been baptized](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> For he had not yet fallen upon any of them, but [they had](#) only [been baptized](#) into the [name](#) of the [Lord Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> For the Holy Spirit had not yet openly empowered any of them. They had only [received baptism](#) in the [name](#) of the [Lord Jesus](#).

- name
- of...Lord
- of...Lord Jesus

## **Translation Words - UST**

- received baptism
- name
- Lord
- Lord Jesus

## Acts 8:17

**they were laying {their} hands on them, and they were receiving (ULT)**

**Peter and John placed their hands on them, and they received (UST)**

The first instance of the pronoun **they** stands for Peter and John, and the pronoun **them** and the second instance of **they** stand for the Samaritans. Alternate translation: “When Peter and John were laying their hands on the Samaritans, and the Samaritans were receiving” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Then they were laying {their} **hands** on them, and **they were receiving the Holy Spirit**.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Then Peter and John placed **their hands** on them, and **they received the Holy Spirit**.

**they were laying (ULT)**

**Peter and John placed (UST)**

Since this instance of the pronoun **they** stands for two men, it should be in the dual if your language uses that form. The same is true of “them” in [8:18](#) and “they” and “the ones” in [8:25](#). (See: [Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural](#) )

**they were laying {their} hands on them (ULT)**

**Peter and John placed their hands on them (UST)**

Peter and John **laying their hands** on the Samaritans who had believed Philip’s message of the gospel was a symbolic action that showed that Peter and John wanted God to give the Holy Spirit to these believers. If there is a gesture with similar meaning in your culture, you could consider using it here in your translation. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))  
John placed their **hands** on the Samaritan people who had believed Stephen’s message of the gospel. This symbolic action shows that Peter and John wanted God to give the Holy Spirit to the believers. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hands](#)
- [they were receiving](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [their hands](#)
- [they received](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

## Acts 8:18

### the Spirit was being given (ULT) people received the Holy Spirit (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, it is clear from the context that this was God. Alternate translation: "God was giving the Spirit" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- of...hands
- of...apostles

#### Translation Words - UST

- Holy Spirit
- apostles
- their hands

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And Simon, seeing that the Spirit was being given through the laying on of the hands of the apostles, offered them money,

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> Simon saw that people received the Holy Spirit as a result of the apostles placing their hands on them. So he offered to give money to the apostles.

## Acts 8:19

**Give to me also this authority, so that on whomever I lay {my} hands, he may receive the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**Enable me also to do what you are doing, so that if I place my hands on someone, he will receive the Holy Spirit (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Give me the authority to give the Holy Spirit to anyone I lay my hands on"

### Translation Words - ULT

- authority
- my} hands
- he may receive
- the Holy Spirit

### Translation Words - UST

- to do what you are doing
- hands
- he will receive
- the Holy Spirit

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> saying, "Give to me also this authority, so that on whomever I lay {my} hands, he may receive the Holy Spirit."

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> He said, "Enable me also to do what you are doing, so that if I place my hands on someone, he will receive the Holy Spirit."

**Acts 8:20****May your silver be with you unto destruction (ULT)****May you and your money be destroyed (UST)**

Peter is using the exclamation form to emphasize how forcefully he rejects Simon's offer. You may want to use an exclamation to convey this same emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: "I refuse your offer! I can see that you are going to perdition, and you can take your money with you!" (See: [Exclamations](#))

**silver (ULT)****money (UST)**

Peter is referring figuratively to money by association with the way that **silver** was used for money at this time. Alternate translation: "money" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the gift of God (ULT)****God's gift (UST)**

Peter is referring figuratively to the ability to confer the Holy Spirit by the laying on of hands. Since this is an ability that only God can give, by association Peter calls it **the gift of God**. Alternate translation: "the power to confer the Holy Spirit" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gift](#)
- [of God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)
- [money](#)
- [God's](#)
- [gift](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> But [Peter](#) said to him, "May your [silver](#) be with you unto destruction, because you thought to obtain the [gift of God](#) through money!"

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> But [Peter](#) said to him, "May you and your [money](#) be destroyed, because you tried to get [God's gift](#) with money!"

**Acts 8:21****No part or share in this matter is to you (ULT)  
You cannot work with us in what we are doing (UST)**

The terms **part** and **share** mean similar things. Peter is using them together for emphasis. Alternate translation: "We will not let you have anything to do with this work" (See: [Doublet](#))

**to you (ULT)  
You (UST)**

The phrase **to you** represents a possessive form. Alternate translation: "yours" (See: [Possession](#))

**because your heart is not right (ULT)  
because you do not have the right attitude (UST)**

Here, the **heart** figuratively represents the thoughts and motives. Alternate translation: "your thoughts and motives are not right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**before God (ULT)  
toward God (UST)**

This could mean: (1) that Simon's **heart** is not **right** in God's opinion by association with the way that God would assess anything that came to his attention in front of him. Alternate translation: "as far as God is concerned" (2) that Simon does not have the right thoughts about God or intentions towards God. Alternate translation: "in its attitude towards God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heart](#)
- [God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [attitude](#)
- [God](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> No part or share in this matter is to you, because your [heart](#) is not right before [God](#).

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> You cannot work with us in what we are doing, because you do not have the right [attitude](#) toward [God](#)!





## **Acts 8:22**

## **of this wickedness of yours (ULT) stop thinking...wickedly like that (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **wickedness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “for trying to buy God’s gift with money” or “for trying to bribe God” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## **the intention of your heart (ULT) for what you wanted to do (UST)**

Here, the **heart** figuratively represents the thoughts and motives. Alternate translation: “what you intended to do” or “what you were thinking of doing” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## **pray to the Lord, if therefore the intention of your heart will be forgiven to you (ULT) Plead with the Lord to forgive you for what you wanted to do, since he will forgive you if you ask sincerely (UST)**

Peter is using the conditional word **if** to introduce a desired result. There is actually no doubt about whether God will forgive someone who sincerely repents and prays for forgiveness. Alternate translation: “pray to the Lord so that, as a result, the intention of your heart will be forgiven to you” or “pray to the Lord and ask him to forgive you for the intention of your heart” (See: [Connect — Factual Conditions](#))

## **the intention of your heart will be forgiven to you (ULT) to forgive you for what you wanted to do (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “he will forgive you for the intention of your heart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [repent](#)
- [wickedness](#)
- [pray](#)
- [to...Lord](#)
- [of...heart](#)
- [will be forgiven](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [stop thinking](#)
- [wickedly](#)
- [Plead with](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [to forgive](#)
- [for what...wanted to do](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>22</sup> Therefore [repent](#) of this [wickedness](#) of yours, and [pray](#) to the [Lord](#), if therefore the intention of your [heart](#) [will be forgiven](#) to you.

### **UST**

<sup>22</sup> So [stop thinking wickedly](#) like that! [Plead with](#) the [Lord](#) to [forgive](#) you [for what](#) you [wanted to do](#), since he will forgive you if you ask sincerely.

## Acts 8:23

**in...the gall of bitterness (ULT)**  
**extremely jealous of us...extremely jealous of us (UST)**

The **gall** plant has a bitter taste and is poisonous. If your readers would not be familiar with this plant, you could use the name of a similar plant in your area. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**in...the gall of bitterness (ULT)**  
**extremely jealous of us...extremely jealous of us (UST)**

Peter is using the **gall** plant figuratively by association to mean “poison.” Alternate translation: “in the poison of bitterness” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**in...the gall of bitterness (ULT)**  
**extremely jealous of us...extremely jealous of us (UST)**

Peter is describing **bitterness** figuratively as if it were made of **gall** or poison. He means that bitterness, here in the sense of envy, spiritually poisons a person, that is, it leads them towards spiritual death. Alternate translation: “dangerously envious” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the bond of unrighteousness (ULT)**  
**a continual desire to do evil is controlling you (UST)**

Peter speaks figuratively of **the bond of unrighteousness** as if unrighteousness were restraining Simon and keeping him a prisoner. He means Simon is not able to stop himself from sinning. Alternate translation: “unable to stop sinning” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the bond](#)
- [of unrighteousness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a continual desire to do evil](#)
- [is controlling you](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For I see you being in the gall of bitterness and [the bond of unrighteousness.](#)”

### UST

<sup>23</sup> You are in spiritual danger! I perceive that you are extremely jealous of us and that [a continual desire to do evil is controlling you.](#)”

## Acts 8:24

### You...you have spoken (ULT)

### Pray...you just said (UST)

Even though it was only Peter who spoke to Simon, in his response, Simon is addressing both Peter and John, since he offered money to both of them, as [8:18](#) describes. Since Simon is speaking to two men, **You** and **you** would be dual if your language uses that form. Otherwise it would be plural. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural](#) )

### You pray to the Lord for me (ULT)

This is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as “please” to make this clear. Alternate translation: “Please pray to the Lord for me” or “I ask you to pray to the Lord for me” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#) )

### You pray to the Lord for me (ULT)

Simon is stating the pronoun **You**, which is already implied in the verb **pray**, for emphasis. If your language can state implied pronouns explicitly for emphasis, you may want to use that construction here. Other languages may have other ways of bringing out this emphasis. Alternate translation: “Pray to the Lord for me yourselves” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me (ULT)

### that he will not do to me what you just said (UST)

Alternate translation: “so that the things you have said may not happen to me”

### nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me (ULT)

### he will not do to me what you just said (UST)

Simon is referring implicitly to Peter’s rebuke, in which Peter spoke of Simon’s silver perishing along with him. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “I will not perish as you said” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- pray
- Lord

## Translation Words - UST

- Pray
- Lord

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But answering, Simon said, “You [pray](#) to the [Lord](#) for me, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.”

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Then Simon answered, “[Pray](#) to the [Lord](#) that he will not do to me what you just said!”



## **Acts 8:25**

**Then (ULT)****Then (UST)**

Luke is using the word translated **Then** to introduce what Peter and John did after being in the city where Philip had been telling the Samaritans about Jesus. Alternate translation: “After that,” (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#) )

**the ones...having testified and having spoken the word of the Lord (ULT)**

The **ones** Luke is describing are Peter and John. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “Peter and John, after they had testified and spoken the word of the Lord,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the ones...having testified and having spoken (ULT)**

Luke is using the participles **having testified** and **having spoken**, which function as adjectives, as nouns. ULT adds the term **ones** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: “the ones who had testified and spoken” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**the word of the Lord (ULT)****the message of the Lord (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that Peter and John shared by using words. Alternate translation: “the message about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**many...villages of the Samaritans (ULT)****many...to people living in...towns in the district of Samaria (UST)**

The term **villages** refers figuratively by association to the people who lived in these villages. Alternate translation: “to the people in many Samaritan villages” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [word of the Lord](#)
- [were returning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [proclaiming the gospel to](#)
- [of...Samaritans](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [message of the Lord](#)
- [they both returned](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [they declared the good news about Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> Then the ones having testified and having spoken the [word of the Lord](#) [were returning](#) to [Jerusalem](#) and [proclaiming the gospel to](#) many villages of the [Samaritans](#).

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> Peter and John then told the people there what they knew personally about the Lord Jesus. They shared the [message of the Lord](#) with them. Then [they both returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#). Along the way, [they declared the good news about Jesus](#) to people living in many towns [in the district of Samaria](#).

- in the district of Samaria





## **Acts 8:26**

## Now (ULT) While Peter and John were returning to Jerusalem (UST)

Luke is using the word translated **Now** to introduce a new event. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

## Arise (ULT) Get ready (UST)

Here the word **arise** means that the angel wanted Philip to take action, not that the angel wanted him to stand up from a seated position. Alternate translation: "Pack for a journey" (See: [Idiom](#))

## the road going down from Jerusalem to Gaza (ULT) the road that goes from Jerusalem to the city of Gaza (UST)

The angel speaks of the road **going down** from Jerusalem because that was the customary way of speaking about traveling from Jerusalem, since that city is up on a mountain. Alternate translation: "the road that leads from Jerusalem to Gaza" (See: [Idiom](#))

## This is desert (ULT) That road is in a desert area (UST)

This sentence could be: (1) something that Luke adds to provide background information about the area through which Philip would be travelling. Alternate translation: "from Jerusalem to Gaza." (Now that road leads through a desert.)" (2) part of what the angel is saying to Philip. Alternate translation: "from Jerusalem to Gaza, which is a desert road." (See: [Background Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- an angel
- of the Lord
- Philip
- Arise
- Jerusalem
- Gaza
- desert

## Translation Words - UST

- the Lord sent
- an angel...Even though so many Samaritans were becoming believers in Jesus,} that angel
- Philip...him
- Get ready
- Jerusalem
- the city of Gaza

## ULT

<sup>26</sup> Now an angel of the Lord spoke to Philip, saying, "Arise and go toward the south on the road going down from Jerusalem to Gaza." (This is desert.)

## UST

<sup>26</sup> While Peter and John were returning to Jerusalem, the Lord sent an angel to Philip. {Even though so many Samaritans were becoming believers in Jesus,} that angel told him, "Get ready and go south along the road that goes from Jerusalem to the city of Gaza." That road is in a desert area.

- in a desert area



## **Acts 8:27**

**arising, he went (ULT)**  
**Philip got ready and went along that road (UST)**

As in the previous verse, the word **arising** means that Philip took preparatory action, not that he stood up from a seated position. Alternate translation: “he prepared for a journey and left” (See: [Idiom](#))

**behold (ULT)**  
**On the road he met (UST)**

Luke is using the word **behold** to alert his audience to a new person in the story. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

This verse provides background information about this Ethiopian official and why he was travelling along this road. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence and to use a natural form for introducing background information. Alternate translation: “a man from Ethiopia. Now this man was a eunuch, an official of the Kandake, the queen of the Ethiopians, who was over all her treasure, and he had come to Jerusalem to worship” (See: [None](#))

**a man, an Ethiopian (ULT)**  
**a man from the land of Ethiopia. The man was (UST)**

This is an idiomatic way of describing someone. Alternate translation: “a man from Ethiopia” (See: [Idiom](#))

**a eunuch, an official of the Kandake (ULT)**  
**an important official...In his language people called their queen the Kandake (UST)**

While the word **eunuch** describes a man who has been castrated, as men sometimes were who served in royal courts in the ancient world, the emphasis here is on the fact that this man was a high government official, not on his physical state. Alternate translation: “an important official in the court of the Kandake” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**of the Kandake (ULT)**  
**In his language people called their queen the Kandake (UST)**

**Kandake** was a title for the queens of Ethiopia. It is similar to the word Pharaoh, the title that was used for the kings of Egypt. So in your translation, make clear that it is a title rather than a name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**who was over all her treasure (ULT)**  
**He took care of all of her funds (UST)**

Luke is using a spatial metaphor when says that this man was **over** the **treasure** of the Kandake. He means that the man was responsible for it. Alternate translation: “who was in charge of her treasury” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> And [arising](#), he went, and behold, a man, [an Ethiopian](#), [a eunuch](#), an official of the Kandake, [the queen of the Ethiopians](#), who was over all her treasure, who had come to [Jerusalem](#) to [worship](#),

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> So [Philip got ready](#) and went along that road. On the road he met a man [from the land of Ethiopia](#). The man was [an important official of the queen of Ethiopia](#). In his language people called their queen the Kandake. He took care of all of her funds. This man had gone to [Jerusalem to worship God](#),

## **who had come to Jerusalem to worship (ULT)**

### **This man had gone to Jerusalem to worship God (UST)**

The implication is that this man was a Gentile who believed in the true God and had come to worship at the Jewish temple. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Even though he was a Gentile, he had come to worship the true God at the temple in Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **who had come (ULT)**

### **This man had gone (UST)**

Your language may say "gone" rather than **come** in a context such as this. Use whichever is more natural. Alternate translation: "who had gone" (See: [Go and Come](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [arising](#)
- [an Ethiopian](#)
- [of the Ethiopians](#)
- [a eunuch](#)
- [the queen](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to...worship](#)

## **Translation Words - UST**

- [Philip got ready](#)
- [from the land of Ethiopia](#)
- [of Ethiopia](#)
- [an important official](#)
- [of the queen](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to worship God](#)



## Acts 8:28

### chariot (ULT) carriage (UST)

Here and in [8:29](#) and [8:38](#), the term **chariot** probably means something like “carriage.” Chariots were vehicles for war, not for long-distance travel, and people stood to ride in chariots, while this man was seated. Alternate translation, as in UST: “his carriage” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### he was reading the prophet Isaiah (ULT) he was reading aloud from what the prophet Isaiah had written (UST)

Luke is using the phrase **the prophet Isaiah** figuratively to mean the prophecies that Isaiah spoke and recorded. Alternate translation: “he was reading from the book of Isaiah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he was reading (ULT) he was reading aloud from what...had written (UST)

Since Philip was able to hear what the man was reading, as [8:30](#) explains, the implication is that the man was reading aloud. Alternate translation: “he was reading aloud from” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [returning](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Isaiah](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [returning home](#)
- [carriage](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Isaiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> and he was [returning](#) and sitting in his [chariot](#), and he was reading the [prophet Isaiah](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> and he was [returning home](#) and was seated, riding in his [carriage](#). As he was riding, he was reading aloud from what the [prophet Isaiah](#) had written.

## Acts 8:29

### Approach and join this chariot (ULT) Go near to that carriage and keep walking close to it (UST)

The Spirit means figuratively that Philip is to stay close to the person riding in the **chariot**. Alternate translation: "Go over to that chariot so you can be near the man in it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- to Philip
- chariot

#### Translation Words - UST

- God's Spirit
- Philip
- to...carriage...to it

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> And the Spirit said to Philip, "Approach and join this chariot."

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> God's Spirit told Philip, "Go near to that carriage and keep walking close to it!"

## Acts 8:30

### reading Isaiah the prophet (ULT) reading what the prophet Isaiah had written (UST)

Luke is using the phrase **Isaiah the prophet** figuratively to mean the prophecies that Isaiah spoke and recorded. Alternate translation: “reading from the book of Isaiah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Do you understand what you are reading?

The Ethiopian was a literate, educated man who could read, but he lacked spiritual discernment. Philip is asking implicitly whether he understands the meaning of the passage from Isaiah. Alternate translation: “Do you understand the meaning of what you are reading?” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having run to him](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Do you understand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Philip](#)
- [ran over to the carriage](#)
- [what...Isaiah had written](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Do you understand](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So [having run to him](#), [Philip](#) heard him reading [Isaiah the prophet](#), and he said, “[Do you understand](#) what you are reading?”

### UST

<sup>30</sup> So [Philip ran over to the carriage](#). He heard the official reading [what the prophet Isaiah had written](#). He asked the man, “[Do you understand](#) what you are reading?”

**Acts 8:31**

**For how would I be able, unless someone will guide me (ULT)**

**No, I cannot possibly understand it if there is no one to explain it to me (UST)**

The man is not asking for information. He is using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "No, I cannot understand unless someone guides me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**he invited...Philip to sit with him, having come up (ULT)**

**the man said...to Philip, "Please come up and sit beside me." {So Philip got into the carriage (UST)}**

The implication is that when the man invited Philip to come up and sit with him, Philip agreed to travel down the road with him to explain the Scriptures. Alternate translation: "he invited Philip to come up and sit with him and explain the Scriptures, and Philip accepted the invitation" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Philip](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to Philip](#)

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> And he said, "For how would I be able, unless someone will guide me?" And he invited [Philip](#) to sit with him, having come up.

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> He answered Philip, "No, I cannot possibly understand it if there is no one to explain it to me." Then the man said [to Philip](#), "Please come up and sit beside me." {So Philip got into the carriage.}



## **Acts 8:32**

**He was led like a sheep to the slaughter (ULT)**  
**People led him away as if he were a sheep**  
**they were leading to the place where they**  
**were going to kill it (UST)**

This a quotation from Isaiah 53:7-8. It describes the Messiah, whom Isaiah calls “the servant of the Lord.” But since the Ethiopian official did not know whom Isaiah was describing and had to ask Philip, it would be better not to specify that at this point by saying, for example, “The Messiah was led like a sheep to the slaughter” or “The servant of the Lord was led like a sheep to the slaughter” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**He was led like a sheep to the slaughter (ULT)**  
**People led him away as if he were a sheep**  
**they were leading to the place where they were going to kill it (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **slaughter**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “He was led like a sheep that was going to be slaughtered” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**He was led (ULT)**  
**People led him away...they were leading (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “People led him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**before its shearer {is} silent (ULT)**  
**He stands in silence...while people cut off its wool (UST)**

A **shearer** is a person who cuts the wool off the sheep so that it may be used. If your readers would not be familiar with this word and you have no comparable word in your language, you could express the meaning in another way. Alternate translation: “is silent while its wool is being cut off” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**he does not open his mouth (ULT)**  
**He stands in silence (UST)**

This means that the Messiah does not speak by association with the way a person would **open his mouth** in order to speak. Alternate translation: “he says nothing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of Scripture
- like
- like (2)
- a sheep
- the slaughter
- a lamb

**ULT**

<sup>32</sup> Now the passage of Scripture that he was reading was this: “He was led like a sheep to the slaughter, and like a lamb before its shearer {is} silent, thus he does not open his mouth.

**UST**

<sup>32</sup> The part of the Scriptures that the official was reading was this: “People led him away as if he were a sheep they were leading to the place where they were going to kill it. He stands in silence as a lamb does while people cut off its wool.

## Translation Words - UST

- of...Scriptures
- as if he were
- as (2)
- a sheep
- the place where they were going to kill it
- a lamb does





## **Acts 8:33**

## In humiliation his justice was taken away (ULT)

### He will be humiliated. People will deny him a fair trial (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **humiliation** and **justice**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: "Because he acted humbly and did not defend himself, his enemies were able to treat him unjustly" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## his justice was taken away (ULT)

### People will deny him a fair trial (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "his enemies denied him justice" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Who will describe his generation (ULT)

### He will not have any offspring (UST)

Isaiah is using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "No one will describe his generation." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Who will describe his generation (ULT)

### He will not have any offspring (UST)

Isaiah is using a future statement to describe capability. If this would be confusing for your readers, you could use form that is more natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Who can describe his generation?" or "No one will be able to describe his generation." (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#))

## Who will describe his generation (ULT)

### He will not have any offspring (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **generation**, you could express the same idea in another way. This could mean: (1) that no one will be able to describe the Messiah's descendants because he will die without having any children. Alternate translation: "No one will be able to describe his descendants." (2) that no one will be able to describe the other people living at the same time as the Messiah because they will be so wicked. Alternate translation: "No one will be able to describe how wicked his contemporaries are." (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## his life is taken from the earth (ULT)

### his enemies will kill him (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "his enemies will take his life from the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## ULT

<sup>33</sup> In **humiliation** his **justice** was taken away. Who will describe his **generation**? For his **life** is taken from the **earth**."

## UST

<sup>33</sup> **He will be humiliated**. People will deny him **a fair trial**. He will not have any **offspring**, because **his enemies will kill him**."

## Translation Words - ULT

- humiliation
- justice
- generation
- life
- earth

## Translation Words - UST

- He will be humiliated
- a fair trial
- offspring
- his enemies will kill
- his enemies will kill

## Acts 8:34

### And answering, the eunuch said to Philip (ULT)

Together the words **answering** and **said** mean that the Ethiopian official responded to Philip's question about whether he understood what he was reading. Alternate translation: "The eunuch responded to Philip's question by saying" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### I beg of you (ULT)

### Tell me (UST)

The Ethiopian official is using a polite, idiomatic expression. Alternate translation: "Please tell me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### some other (ULT)

### someone else (UST)

In this context, the pronoun **other** means "other person." Alternate translation: "some other person" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [eunuch](#)
- [to Philip](#)
- [prophet](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [official](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [prophet](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> And answering, the [eunuch](#) said to [Philip](#), "I beg of you, about whom is the [prophet](#) saying this—about himself, or about some other?"

### UST

<sup>34</sup> The [official](#) asked [Philip](#) about what he was reading, "Tell me, who was the [prophet](#) writing about? Was he writing about himself, or about someone else?"

## Acts 8:35

### opening...his mouth (ULT) replied to him...replied to him (UST)

By association with the way a person would be **opening his mouth** in order to speak, this means that Philip spoke. The image of the open mouth suggests a certain confidence and freedom in speaking. Alternate translation: “speaking confidently” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### this scripture (ULT) that Scripture passage (UST)

By **this scripture**, Luke implicitly means the passage that the official had been reading. Alternate translation: “the passage from Isaiah that the official had been reading” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### proclaimed Jesus to him (ULT) and he told him the good news about Jesus (UST)

Luke is using the name **Jesus** figuratively by association to mean the message about Jesus. Alternate translation: “the good news about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Philip
- scripture
- proclaimed
- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Philip
- Scripture passage
- and he told...the good news about
- Jesus

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> And Philip, opening his mouth and beginning with this scripture, proclaimed Jesus to him.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> So Philip replied to him. He began with that Scripture passage, and he told him the good news about Jesus.

## Acts 8:36

**some water...water (ULT)**  
**a place where there was some water...there is some water (UST)**

Luke and the official are using the word **water** figuratively to mean a body of water, such as a pool at a desert oasis. Alternate translation: "a pool of water ... there is a pool of water" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**What is preventing my being baptized (ULT)**  
**I would like you to baptize me (UST)**

This question could be: (1) a rhetorical question that the eunuch is using as a polite way to ask Philip to baptize him. Alternate translation: "Please allow me to be baptized." (2) a genuine request for information, since Philip seems to answer this question in [8:37](#) by identifying something that could keep the official from being baptized. Alternate translation: "Is there a condition I must meet in order to be baptized?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**my being baptized (ULT)**  
**to baptize me (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you from baptizing me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [water](#)
- [water \(2\)](#)
- [eunuch](#)
- [being baptized](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [place where there was some water](#)
- [there is some water \(2\)](#)
- [official](#)
- [to baptize](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> And as they were going along the road, they came to some [water](#) and the [eunuch](#) says, "Behold, [water](#)! What is preventing my [being baptized](#)?"

### UST

<sup>36</sup> While they were traveling along the road, they came to a [place where there was some water](#). Then the [official](#) said to Philip, "Look, [there is some water](#)! I would like you [to baptize me](#)."

## Acts 8:37

**And Philip said to him, “If you believe from your whole heart, you will be saved.” And answering he said, “I believe in Christ, the Son of God (ULT)**

As the General Introduction to Acts explains, this verse is found in many traditional versions of the Bible, but it is not found in the most accurate ancient manuscripts of the Bible. ULT and UST indicate this by putting the verse in brackets. If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider including this verse if that translation does. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you indicate in some way that this verse may not be original, such as by putting it in brackets or in a footnote. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

**If you believe from your whole heart (ULT)**

**If you believe in Jesus with complete sincerity (UST)**

Here, the **heart** figuratively represents the thoughts and intentions. Alternate translation: “If you genuinely believe in Jesus and want to be his disciple” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you will be saved (ULT)**

**God will save you, and you may be baptized (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God will save you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**he...said (ULT)**

**The Ethiopian answered...The Ethiopian answered (UST)**

Together the words **answering** and **said** mean that the eunuch responded to what Philip told him. Alternate translation: “the eunuch responded” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### ULT

<sup>37[1]</sup> [And Philip said to him, “If you believe from your whole heart, you will be saved.” And answering he said, “I believe in Christ, the Son of God.”]

### UST

<sup>37[1]</sup> [Philip said, “If you believe in Jesus with complete sincerity, God will save you, and you may be baptized.” The Ethiopian answered, “I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.”]



## Acts 8:38

**he commanded the chariot to stop (ULT)**  
**the official told the driver to stop the carriage (UST)**

Luke is using the term **chariot** figuratively by association to mean the driver of the chariot. Alternate translation: "the official told the driver of the chariot to stop" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**he baptized him (ULT)**  
**Philip baptized him (UST)**

The pronoun **he** stands for Philip, and the pronoun **him** stands for the eunuch. Alternate translation: "Philip baptized the eunuch" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- he commanded
- chariot
- water
- Philip
- eunuch
- he baptized

### Translation Words - UST

- the official told the driver
- carriage
- Philip
- official
- water
- Philip baptized

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> And he commanded the chariot to stop, and they both went down into the water, both Philip and the eunuch, and he baptized him.

### UST

<sup>38</sup> So the official told the driver to stop the carriage. Then both Philip and the official went down into the water, and Philip baptized him.

## Acts 8:39

### for (ULT)

### Even so (UST)

While the word translated **for** often introduces a reason, that does not seem to be its function here. Luke is not saying that the eunuch did not see Philip anymore because he did not look for him but instead **went on his way**. Rather, the word **for** seems simply to introduce a continuation of the narrative. Alternate translation: “but” or “nevertheless” (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [water](#)
- [the Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [snatched...away](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [eunuch](#)
- [rejoicing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of...water](#)
- [suddenly...took...away](#)
- [very happily](#)
- [the Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [official...official](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> And when they came up from the [water](#), [the Spirit of the Lord](#) [snatched Philip away](#), and the [eunuch](#) did not see him anymore, for he went on his way [rejoicing](#).

### UST

<sup>39</sup> When they came up out of the [water](#), [suddenly the Spirit of the Lord](#) [took Philip away](#). The [official](#) never saw Philip again. Even so, the [official](#) continued going [very happily](#) along the road.



## **Acts 8:40**

**Philip...was found at Azotus (ULT)**  
**Philip...realized that the Spirit had miraculously taken him to the town of Azotus (UST)**

The implication is that there was no indication of Philip traveling between where he baptized the Ethiopian and Azotus. He suddenly disappeared along the road to Gaza and reappeared at the town of Azotus. Alternate translation: "Philip suddenly reappeared at Azotus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Philip...was found at Azotus (ULT)**  
**Philip...realized that the Spirit had miraculously taken him to the town of Azotus (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Philip reappeared at Azotus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**passing through (ULT)**  
**While he traveled around in that region (UST)**

Alternate translation: "as he passed through that area, he was"

**to all the cities (ULT)**  
**all the towns between the cities of Azotus and Caesarea (UST)**

Luke says **all** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "to the cities in that region" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**Azotus...Caesarea (ULT)**  
**the town of Azotus...Caesarea (UST)**

**Azotus** and **Caesarea** are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Philip
- he was proclaiming the gospel
- Caesarea

**Translation Words - UST**

- Philip
- he continued proclaiming the good news about Jesus in...was still proclaiming it
- Caesarea

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> But Philip was found at Azotus and, passing through, he was proclaiming the gospel to all the cities until he came to Caesarea.

8:37 <sup>[1]</sup>

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> Philip then realized that the Spirit had miraculously taken him to the town of Azotus. While he traveled around in that region, he continued proclaiming the good news about Jesus in all the towns between the cities of Azotus and Caesarea. He was still proclaiming it when he finally arrived in Caesarea.

8:37 <sup>[1]</sup>

## Acts 9

### Acts 9 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

In [9:1](#), the story shifts back to Saul and tells about his salvation.

In [9:32](#), the story shifts from Saul to a new part of the story about Peter.

Acts [9:31](#) is a summary statement that Luke uses to mark the transition into the third major part of the book.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### “Letters for the synagogues in Damascus”

The “letters” Paul asked for in [9:2](#) were probably legal papers that permitted him to put Christians in prison. The synagogue leaders in Damascus would have obeyed the letter because it was written by the high priest. If the Romans had seen the letter, they also would have allowed Saul to persecute the Christians, because they permitted the Jews to do as they desired to people who broke their religious laws.

##### “The Way”

No one knows for sure who first started calling the community of Jesus’ followers “the Way.” This may be what the believers called themselves, because the Bible often speaks of a person living his life as if that person were walking on a path or “way.” If this is true, the believers were “following the way of the Lord” by living in a way that pleased God. However, in the book of Acts the term is only used by outsiders, as in [9:2](#), or by believers speaking to outsiders. So it could also be a term by which the community of Jesus’ followers was known outside that community.

##### “the church”

Acts [9:31](#) is the first use of the word **church** in the singular to refer to more than one local congregation. In that verse it refers to all the believers in all the groups throughout Judea, Galilee, and Samaria. It shows that they recognized that they all had a common identity as followers of Jesus.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### “the Lord”

Luke refers to Jesus by a respectful title, “the Lord,” in verses 1, 10, 11, 15, 27, 28, 31, 35, and 42, and Ananias refers to Jesus the same way in verse 17. In your translation, you may wish to clarify that this means “the Lord Jesus.” Or you could say “Jesus,” as UST does. (See: [Politeness](#))

## **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

### **What Saul saw when he met Jesus**

It is clear that Saul saw a light and that it was because of this light that he “fell upon the ground.” Some people think that Saul knew that it was the Lord speaking to him without seeing a human form, because the Bible often speaks of God as being light and living in light. Other people think that later in his life he was able to say, “I have seen the Lord Jesus” because it was a human form that he saw here.

## Acts 9:1

### But (ULT) Meanwhile (UST)

Luke uses the word translated **But** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### breathing threat and murder against (ULT) angrily threatening to kill (UST)

Luke is using the two words **threat** and **murder** together to express a single idea. The word **murder** tells what kind of **threat** Saul was making. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use **and**. Alternate translation: “making murderous threats against” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### breathing (ULT) angrily (UST)

Luke is using the term **breathing** figuratively by association to mean “speaking,” since people breathe out while they speak. Alternate translation: “speaking” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [to...high priest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Saul](#)
- [who believed](#)
- [in...Lord Jesus](#)
- [to...high priest in Jerusalem](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> But [Saul](#), still breathing threat and murder against the [disciples](#) of the [Lord](#), going to the [high priest](#),

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Meanwhile, [Saul](#) continued angrily threatening to kill those [who believed](#) in the [Lord Jesus](#). He went to the [high priest in Jerusalem](#)





## **Acts 9:2**

**him...he found...he might bring them (ULT)**  
**him...The letters would ask them to give Saul**  
**the authority...to seize...and take them (UST)**

The pronoun **him** refers to the high priest and both instances of the pronoun **he** refer to Saul. (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**letters (ULT)**  
**to write letters introducing Saul (UST)**

See the General Notes to this chapter for an explanation of what these **letters** were. This may help you decide what word in your language to use for them. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**to Damascus, to the synagogues (ULT)**  
**to the leaders of the Jewish synagogues in the**  
**city of Damascus (UST)**

Luke is using the terms **Damascus** and **synagogues** figuratively by association to mean the people, probably the leaders, of the synagogues in Damascus. Alternate translation: “to the people in the synagogues of Damascus” or “to the leaders of the synagogues in Damascus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Damascus (ULT)**  
**the city of Damascus (UST)**

**Damascus** is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**being of the Way (ULT)**  
**who followed the teachings of Jesus (UST)**

As the General Notes to this chapter explain, **the Way** was one of the first names that people used to describe the community of believers in Jesus. If your language has a word for “way” or “path” that you can use as a name, it would be appropriate to use it here. Alternate translation: “who belonged to the Way” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**he might bring them bound to Jerusalem (ULT)**  
**to seize...and take them as prisoners to Jerusalem. {There the Jewish leaders**  
**could judge and punish them. The high priest gave Saul the letters he asked**  
**for (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “he might bind them and bring them to the chief priests” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> requested **letters** from him to **Damascus**, to the **synagogues**, so that if he found any being of the Way, both men and women, he might bring them bound to **Jerusalem**.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> and requested him to write **letters** introducing **Saul** to the **leaders of the Jewish synagogues in the city of Damascus**. The letters would ask them to give Saul the authority to seize any man or woman who followed the teachings of Jesus and take them as **prisoners** to **Jerusalem**. {There the **Jewish leaders** could judge and punish them. The high priest gave Saul the letters he asked for.}

**he might bring them bound to Jerusalem (ULT)  
to seize...and take them as prisoners to Jerusalem. {There the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them. The high priest gave Saul the letters he asked for (UST)**

Luke is figuratively using one part of the arrest process to represent the entire process. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "he might arrest them and bring them to the chief priests" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**he might bring them bound to Jerusalem (ULT)  
to seize...and take them as prisoners to Jerusalem. {There the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them. The high priest gave Saul the letters he asked for (UST)**

The implication is that Saul wanted to bring believers in Jesus to Jerusalem for trial and punishment by the Jewish leaders. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "he might take them as prisoners to Jerusalem so that the Jewish leaders there could judge and punish them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [letters](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [bound](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to write letters introducing Saul](#)
- [leaders of the Jewish synagogues](#)
- [the city of Damascus](#)
- [as prisoners](#)
- [Jerusalem. {There the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them. The high priest gave Saul the letters he asked for](#)

**Acts 9:3**

**as he was traveling...as he was traveling (ULT)**  
**While Saul and those with him were**  
**traveling...While Saul and those with him**  
**were traveling (UST)**

Luke means implicitly that the high priest gave Saul the letters he asked for and that Saul then left Jerusalem to go to Damascus. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "as he was traveling to Damascus with letters that the high priest gave him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**it happened that (ULT)**

Luke uses the phrase **it happened that** to introduce a significant development in this story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for this purpose. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**he...a light from heaven surrounded (ULT)**  
**they...a brilliant light from heaven shone around (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a light from heaven shone all around him"

**from heaven (ULT)**  
**from heaven (UST)**

This could mean: (1) heaven, where God lives or (2) the sky. The first meaning is preferable. Use that meaning if your language has a separate word for it.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to Damascus](#)
- [a light](#)
- [heaven](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Damascus](#)
- [a brilliant light](#)
- [heaven](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> And as he was traveling, it happened that he came near [to Damascus](#), and suddenly [a light](#) from [heaven](#) surrounded him;

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> While Saul and those with him were traveling, they were approaching [Damascus](#). Suddenly [a brilliant light](#) from [heaven](#) shone around Saul.

## Acts 9:4

### falling to the ground (ULT)

### he fell onto the ground (UST)

Saul did not fall down accidentally. This could mean: (1) that the light caused him to fall to the ground. Alternate translation: "falling to the ground stunned by the dazzling light" (2) that Saul fainted when he saw the light. Alternate translation: "falling faint because of the glorious light" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### why are you persecuting me (ULT)

### stop trying to hurt me (UST)

The voice is using the question form to rebuke Saul. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate its words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the rebuke in another way. Alternate translation: "you should not be persecuting me." or "stop persecuting me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- a voice
- Saul
- Saul
- are you persecuting

## Translation Words - UST

- the voice of someone
- Saul
- Saul
- stop trying to hurt

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> and, falling to the ground, he heard a voice saying to him, "Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?"

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Immediately he fell onto the ground. Then he heard the voice of someone say to him, "Saul, Saul, stop trying to hurt me!"

**Acts 9:5****Who are you, Lord (ULT)****Lord, who are you (UST)**

Saul is not yet acknowledging that Jesus is **Lord**. He uses that title because he recognizes that he is speaking to someone of divine power. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could use a similar term of respect. Alternate translation: "Who are you, Sir" (See: [Politeness](#))

**he said...he {said (ULT)****Saul asked him...He replied (UST)**

The first instance of **he** stands for Saul, and the second instance of **he** stands for Jesus. Alternate translation: "Saul said ... Jesus replied" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**are you...you (ULT)****are you...you (UST)**

Both occurrences of the word **you** here are singular.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- Jesus
- are persecuting

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lord
- Jesus
- are hurting

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> And he said, "Who are you, Lord?" And he {said}, "I am Jesus, whom you are persecuting;

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> Saul asked him, "Lord, who are you?" He replied, "I am Jesus, whom you are hurting.

## Acts 9:6

### it will be told to you (ULT)

### Someone there will tell you (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "someone will tell you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [get up](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [stand up](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> but [get up](#) and enter into the city, and it will be told to you what thing it is necessary for you to do."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Now [stand up](#) and go into the city of Damascus! Someone there will tell you what I want you to do."



## Acts 9:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [voice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [someone speaking](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But the men traveling with him stood speechless, hearing the [voice](#) but seeing no one.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> The men who were traveling with Saul were so astonished that they could not say anything. They just stood there. This was because they heard [someone speaking](#), but they did not see anyone.

## Acts 9:8

### being opened...his eyes (ULT) when he opened...his eyes (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation, as in UST: “when he opened his eyes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they brought him (ULT) and led (UST)

The pronoun **they** stands for the men who were traveling with Saul, as described in [9:8](#). Alternate translation: “the men who were traveling with him brought him” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [rose up](#)
- [leading...by the hand](#)
- [Damascus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Saul](#)
- [got up](#)
- [the men with him took him by the hand](#)
- [Damascus](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And [Saul rose up](#) from the ground, but his eyes being opened, he was seeing nothing. But [leading him by the hand](#), they brought him into [Damascus](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Saul got up](#) from the ground, but when he opened his eyes, he could not see anything. So [the men with him took him by the hand](#) and led him into [Damascus](#).

## Acts 9:9

**he was not seeing for three days (ULT)**  
**For the next three days Saul could not see anything (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he remained blinded for three days"

**he neither ate nor drank (ULT)**  
**he did not eat or drink anything (UST)**

This could mean: that Saul chose not to eat or drink as a form of worship. 9:11 says that Saul was praying at this time, and he may have been fasting along with his prayers. Alternate translation: "he fasted from food and drink" (2) that Saul had no appetite or thirst because he was too distressed from his situation. Alternate translation: "he was too distressed to eat or drink" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for...days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [For the next three days](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And he was not seeing for three [days](#), and he neither ate nor drank.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [For the next three days](#) Saul could not see anything, and he did not eat or drink anything.



## **Acts 9:10**

**Now there was a certain disciple in Damascus named Ananias (ULT)**  
**In Damascus there was a man who believed in Jesus named Ananias (UST)**

Luke uses this sentence to introduce a new character into the story. If your language has its own way of doing that, you can use it here in your translation. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**Ananias (ULT)**  
**Ananias (UST)**

**Ananias** is the name of a man. This is not the same Ananias whom Luke described in [5:1](#) (that man died), but you may translate the name here the same way you did there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the Lord (ULT)**  
**Jesus (UST)**

Here and throughout this chapter, **the Lord** is a respectful title that Luke is using to refer to Jesus. Alternate translation: “the Lord Jesus” (See: [Politeness](#))

**Behold, I, Lord (ULT)**  
**Lord, I am listening (UST)**

**Behold, I** is a Hebrew idiom that Ananias is using to identify himself as the Ananias to whom the Lord is calling. Alternate translation: “Yes, Lord, this is Ananias” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Behold, I, Lord (ULT)**  
**Lord, I am listening (UST)**

Ananias is saying implicitly that he is present and available to serve **the Lord**. Alternate translation: “Yes, Lord, this is Ananias, and I am here ready to do what you ask” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [disciple](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [named](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [a vision](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Damascus](#)
- [man who believed in Jesus](#)
- [named](#)
- [Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> Now there was a certain [disciple](#) in [Damascus](#) named Ananias. And the [Lord](#) said to him in [a vision](#), “Ananias!” And he said, “Behold, I, [Lord](#).”

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> In [Damascus](#) there was a [man who believed in Jesus](#) named Ananias. [Jesus](#) made him see [a vision](#) and in it he called to him, “Ananias!” Ananias replied, “[Lord](#), I am listening.”

- Lord
- a vision





## **Acts 9:11**

## Arising, go to the street called Straight (ULT) Go to Straight Street (UST)

Here, the word **arising** means that God wants Ananias to take action, not that Ananias is lying down or sitting down and God wants him to stand up. You may be able to convey this with a different kind of expression. Alternate translation: "Go on over to Straight Street" (See: [Idiom](#))

## the street called Straight (ULT) Straight Street (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form **called**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation, as in UST: "the street that people call Straight" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the street called Straight (ULT) Straight Street (UST)

**Straight** is the name of a street. Alternate translation: "Straight Street" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## of Judas (ULT) that belongs to Judas (UST)

**Judas** is the name of a man. This is not the disciple who betrayed Jesus (that man died); this Judas was the owner of a house in Damascus where Saul was staying. But you may translate the name here the same way you did in [1:13](#), [1:16](#), and [5:37](#) for the disciple and two other men with the same name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Saul by name, from Tarsus (ULT) a man named Saul who is from the city of Tarsus (UST)

**Tarsus** is the name of a city. Alternate translation: "a man named Saul from the city of Tarsus" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## for behold, he is praying (ULT) Saul is praying to me at this moment (UST)

The Lord says **behold** to get Ananias to focus his attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a similar expression that you can use here in your translation. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Now listen carefully: He is praying" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Arising
- called
- the house
- seek

## ULT

<sup>11</sup> And the Lord {said} to him, "Arising, go to the street called Straight, and in the house of Judas seek Saul by name, from Tarsus, for behold, he is praying,

## UST

<sup>11</sup> Jesus told him, "Go to Straight Street, to the house that belongs to Judas. Ask someone there if you can talk to a man named Saul who is from the city of Tarsus. Saul is praying to me at this moment.

- Saul
- by name
- from Tarsus
- he is praying

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus told
- Go
- Straight
- the house
- Ask someone there if you can talk to
- a man...Saul
- named
- who is from the city of Tarsus
- Saul is praying to me

## Acts 9:12

### laying hands on him (ULT) put his hands on him (UST)

In this culture, **laying hands on** people was a symbolic way of conveying a spiritual blessing to them, as the apostles did in 6:6 for the men chosen to oversee the food distribution. If there is a comparable symbolic action in your culture, you could use that in your translation. You could also use a general expression. Alternate translation: "giving him a spiritual blessing" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a vision
- by name
- hands

### Translation Words - UST

- a vision
- named
- his hands

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> and in a vision he has seen a man, Ananias by name, coming in and laying hands on him so that he might see again."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Saul has seen a vision in which a man named Ananias entered the house where he was staying and put his hands on him to restore his sight."

## Acts 9:13

### from many (ULT) many people...have told me (UST)

Ananias is using the adjective **many** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "from many people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### how many evils (ULT) many bad things (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **evils**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "how many harmful things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### he has done to your saints in Jerusalem (ULT) He has done...to the people in Jerusalem who believe in you (UST)

Ananias is using the term **saints** figuratively by association to mean believers in Jesus, since the term means "holy ones" or "ones who are set apart." Alternate translation: "to the people in Jerusalem who are dedicated to you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [evils](#)
- [to...saints](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [But Lord](#)
- [bad things](#)
- [people...who believe in](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But Ananias answered, "Lord, I have heard from many about this man, how many evils he has done to your saints in Jerusalem.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Ananias answered, "But Lord, many people have told me about this man! He has done many bad things to the people in Jerusalem who believe in you!



## **Acts 9:14**

## he has authority from the chief priests (ULT) The chief priests have given him permission (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **authority**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: “the chief priests have authorized him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## to bind (ULT) to come...and take prisoner (UST)

Ananias is figuratively using one part of the arrest process to represent the entire process. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: “to arrest” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## the ones calling upon your name (ULT) those who believe in you (UST)

Ananias is using the participle **calling**, which functions as an adjective, as a noun. ULT adds the term **ones** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: “the people who call on your name” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## the ones calling upon your name (ULT) those who believe in you (UST)

Here, **name** figuratively represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: “the ones calling upon you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## the ones calling upon your name (ULT) those who believe in you (UST)

Here, **calling on** is an idiom. Alternate translation: “the ones worshipping you” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [to bind](#)
- [ones calling upon](#)
- [name](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [chief priests](#)
- [permission](#)
- [to come...and take prisoner](#)
- [who believe in](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And here he has [authority](#) from the [chief priests to bind](#) all the [ones calling upon your name](#).”

### UST

<sup>14</sup> The [chief priests](#) have given him [permission to come](#) here to Damascus and [take prisoner](#) all those [who believe in you!](#)”



- [who believe in](#)



## **Acts 9:15**

**an instrument of choosing...to me (ULT)**  
**I have chosen...to serve...me (UST)**

The Lord is using the possessive form to describe Saul as an **instrument** who is characterized by his **choosing**. Alternate translation: “an instrument I have chosen” or “someone I have chosen as an instrument” (See: [Possession](#))

**this (ULT)**  
**him (UST)**

The demonstrative pronoun **this** refers to Saul. Alternate translation: “this man” or “this man Saul” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**an instrument of choosing...to me (ULT)**  
**I have chosen...to serve...me (UST)**

The Lord describes Saul figuratively as an **instrument** or tool to indicate that he intends to use Saul to advance his purposes. Alternate translation: “someone I have chosen to use” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to carry my name (ULT)**  
**I want him to speak about me (UST)**

The Lord says figuratively that Saul will **carry** his **name**, meaning that he will go to many places and speak about it. Alternate translation: “to speak about my name” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to carry my name (ULT)**  
**I want him to speak about me (UST)**

Here, **name** figuratively represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: “to speak about me” or “to tell others about me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the nations (ULT)**  
**non-Jewish people (UST)**

The term **nations** refers to people groups that are not Jewish. See how you translated it in [4:25](#). Alternate translation: “the Gentiles” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**kings (ULT)**  
**leaders (UST)**

The Lord is using **kings**, one kind of ruler, to mean all kinds of rulers. Saul, later known as Paul, testified before various rulers and officials. Alternate translation: “rulers” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> But the [Lord](#) said to him, “Go, for this is to me an instrument of [choosing](#), to [carry](#) my [name](#) before [the nations](#), and also [kings](#), and [the sons of Israel](#);

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> But [Jesus](#) told Ananias, “Go visit Saul! Do what I say, because [I have chosen](#) him [to serve](#) me. [I want him to speak about me](#) to [non-Jewish people](#) and their [leaders](#) and [to the Israelite people](#).”

## **the sons...of Israel (ULT)** **people...to the Israelite (UST)**

The Lord is using the word **sons** figuratively to mean “descendants.” He is speaking of the Israelites, who were descendants of the patriarch Jacob, also known as Israel. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” or “the Israelites” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- of choosing
- to carry
- name
- the nations
- kings
- the sons
- of Israel

### **Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- I have chosen...to serve
- I want him to speak about
- me
- non-Jewish people
- leaders
- to the Israelite
- people

## Acts 9:16

### for my name (ULT)

### in order to tell people about me (UST)

Here, **name** figuratively represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. This could mean: (1) that Saul will suffer for telling people about Jesus. Alternate translation: "to make me known" (2) that Saul will suffer for Jesus himself. Alternate translation: "for me" or "for my sake" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to suffer](#)
- [name](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [suffer](#)
- [in order to tell people about](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> for I will show him how much it is necessary for him [to suffer](#) for my [name](#)."

### UST

<sup>16</sup> I myself will tell him that he must often [suffer in order to tell people about](#) me."



## **Acts 9:17**



**And Ananias departed, and entered into the house (ULT)**

**So Ananias went, and after he found the house where Saul was, he entered it (UST)**

It may be helpful to state that **Ananias** went to **the house** before he **entered into** it. UST models one way to express this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**having laid {his} hands on him (ULT)**  
**he put his hands on him (UST)**

When Ananias **laid his hands** on Saul, this was a symbolic way of giving him a blessing. See the explanation at 9:2 and see how you translated the same expression there. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**to you...you were going...you might see again (ULT)**

**to you...while you were traveling...restore your sight (UST)**

All of the occurrences of the word **you** in this verse are singular and refer to Saul. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#))

**Brother Saul (ULT)**

**Saul, you are already like a brother to me (UST)**

**Brother** is a figurative title that Ananias is using for **Saul**. The two men are not actual brothers. This could mean: (1) that Ananias is already addressing Saul as someone who shares the same faith. See how you translated “brother” with this meaning in [1:15](#) and [6:3](#). Alternate translation: “Saul, my fellow believer” (2) that Ananias is addressing Saul as a fellow Israelite, as the word is used in [3:17](#) and many other places in this book. Alternate translation: “Saul, my kinsman” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the one having appeared to you (ULT)**

**Jesus is the one who appeared to you (UST)**

Ananias is using the participle **having appeared**, which functions as an adjective, as a noun to mean a person, Jesus. ULT adds the term **one** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: “who appeared to you” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**on which you were going (ULT)**

**while you were traveling (UST)**

Your language may say “coming” rather than **going** in a context such as this. Use whichever word is more natural. Alternate translation: “by which you were coming” (See: [Go and Come](#))

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> And Ananias departed, and entered into the [house](#). And having laid {his} [hands](#) on him, he said, “[Brother Saul](#), the [Lord has sent](#) me—[Jesus](#), the one having appeared to you on the road on which you were going—so that you might see again and [be filled with the Holy Spirit](#).”

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> So Ananias went, and after he found the [house where Saul was](#), he entered [it](#). Then, as soon as he met Saul, he put his [hands](#) on him, and he said, “[Saul](#), [you are already like a brother to me](#). [Jesus himself commanded me to come to you](#). Jesus is the one who appeared to you while you were traveling along the road to Damascus. He sent me to you to restore your sight, and [he wants the Holy Spirit to lead and empower you](#).”

**so that you might see again and be filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)**  
**He sent me to you to restore your sight, and he wants the Holy Spirit to lead and empower you (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form **filled**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “so that you might see again and that the Holy Spirit might fill you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**be filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)**  
**he wants the Holy Spirit to lead and empower you (UST)**

Ananias is speaking figuratively as if Saul were a container that the Holy Spirit could fill. Alternate translation: “receive the Holy Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [hands](#)
- [Brother](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [has sent](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [be filled](#)
- [with the Holy Spirit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [house where Saul was...it](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [hands](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [you are already like a brother to me](#)
- [Jesus himself](#)
- [Jesus himself](#)
- [commanded...to come to you](#)
- [he wants...to lead and empower you](#)

## Acts 9:18

### scales (ULT)

### flakes (UST)

It may be helpful to your readers if you use something they would recognize that has scales to describe the **scales** that fell from Saul's eyes. Alternate translation: "fish scales" or "lizard scales" or "snake scales" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### he was baptized (ULT)

### and was baptized (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Ananias baptized him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [like](#)
- [rising up](#)
- [he was baptized](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [what seemed like](#)
- [he got up](#)
- [and was baptized](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And immediately {something} [like](#) scales fell from his eyes, and he saw again, and [rising up, he was baptized](#);

### UST

<sup>18</sup> Instantly, [what seemed like](#) flakes fell from Saul's eyes, and he was able to see again. Then [he got up and was baptized](#).

## Acts 9:19

### he was strengthened (ULT) he became strong again (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "he felt stronger" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- he was strengthened
- disciples
- Damascus
- for...days

#### Translation Words - UST

- he became strong again
- other believers
- Damascus
- for...days

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> and having taken food, he was strengthened. And he was with the disciples in Damascus for some days.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> After Saul ate some food, he became strong again. Saul stayed with the other believers in Damascus for several days.

**Acts 9:20**

**he proclaimed Jesus, that this is the Son of God (ULT)**

**he began to preach about Jesus...He told the people there that Jesus is the Son of God (UST)**

The personal pronoun **he** refers to Saul, and the demonstrative pronoun **this** refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "Saul proclaimed that Jesus is the Son of God" (See: [Pronouns](#))

**Son of God (ULT)**

**Son of God (UST)**

**Son of God** is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [synagogues](#)
- [he proclaimed](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Son of God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [he began to preach about](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Jewish synagogues](#)
- [Son of God](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> And immediately in the [synagogues](#) [he proclaimed Jesus](#), that this is the [Son of God](#).

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> Right away [he began to preach about Jesus](#) in the [Jewish synagogues](#). He told the people there that Jesus is the [Son of God](#).



## **Acts 9:21**

**all the ones hearing (ULT)**  
**The people who heard him preach (UST)**

Luke says **all** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: “those who heard him” or “many who heard him” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the ones hearing...the one having destroyed...  
the ones calling on (ULT)**  
**The people...who heard him preach...the same  
man who persecuted...the believers (UST)**

Luke is using the participles **hearing**, **having destroyed**, and **calling on**, which function as adjective, as nouns. ULT adds the terms **ones** and **one** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these with equivalent expressions. Alternate translation: “those who heard ... the man who destroyed ... those who call” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**Is not this the one having destroyed in Jerusalem the ones calling on this  
name? And he had come here for this, that he might bring them bound to the  
chief priests (ULT)**  
**We can hardly believe that this is the same man who persecuted the  
believers in Jerusalem! And he came here to take them as prisoners to the  
chief priests in Jerusalem (UST)**

The people in Damascus are using the question form to emphasize that Saul was indeed the man who had persecuted the believers in Jerusalem and had come to Damascus to arrest the believers there. If you would not use rhetorical questions for this purpose in your language, you could translate these words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. It may be helpful to make this two sentences. Alternate translation: “This is the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who call on this name! And he come here for this, that he might bring them bound to the chief priests!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the ones calling on this name (ULT)**  
**the believers (UST)**

By **this name** the speakers implicitly mean the name of Jesus. Alternate translation: “the ones calling on the name of Jesus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the ones calling on this name (ULT)**  
**the believers (UST)**

Here, the **name** of Jesus figuratively represents his person. Alternate translation: “the ones calling on Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> And all the ones hearing **were marveling** and were saying, “Is not this the one having destroyed in **Jerusalem** the **ones calling on this name**? And he had come here for this, that he might bring them **bound** to the **chief priests**?”

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> The people who heard him preach **were amazed**. Some of them were saying, “We can hardly believe that this is the same man who persecuted the **believers in Jerusalem**! And he came here to take them **as prisoners** to the **chief priests in Jerusalem**!”



## **the ones calling on this name (ULT)**

### **the believers (UST)**

Here, **calling on** is an idiom. See how you translated it in [9:14](#). Alternate translation: “the ones worshiping Jesus” (See: [Idiom](#))

## **that he might bring them bound to the chief priests (ULT)**

### **to take...them as prisoners to the chief priests in Jerusalem (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that he might bind them and bring them to the chief priests” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## **that he might bring them bound to the chief priests (ULT)**

### **to take...them as prisoners to the chief priests in Jerusalem (UST)**

Like Ananias in [9:14](#), the people here are figuratively using one part of the arrest process to represent the entire process. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: “that he might arrest them and bring them to the chief priests” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [were marveling](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ones calling on](#)
- [name](#)
- [bound](#)
- [chief priests](#)

## **Translation Words - UST**

- [were amazed](#)
- [believers](#)
- [believers](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [as prisoners](#)
- [chief priests in Jerusalem](#)

## Acts 9:22

### and stirring up the Jews living in Damascus, proving that Jesus is the Christ (ULT)

Saul was not intentionally **stirring up the Jews**. They became agitated because they could not find a way to refute Saul's arguments that Jesus was the Messiah. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "As he proved that Jesus is the Christ, the Jews living in Damascus became agitated" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Saul
- was becoming...powerful
- Jews
- Damascus
- Christ

#### Translation Words - UST

- God enabled...to preach to many people...convincingly
- Saul
- Messiah
- Jewish leaders
- Damascus

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But Saul was becoming more powerful and stirring up the Jews living in Damascus, proving that Jesus is the Christ.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> But God enabled Saul to preach to many people even more convincingly. He was proving from the Scriptures that Jesus is the Messiah. The Jewish leaders in Damascus became angry {because they could not disprove what he said}.

**Acts 9:23**

**when...many days were filled (ULT)**  
**time later...Some...time later (UST)**

As in [2:1](#) and [7:23](#), this is an idiomatic way of speaking about time.  
 Alternate translation: “after many days” (See: [Idiom](#))

**when...many days were filled (ULT)**  
**time later...Some...time later (UST)**

Since this is an idiom, it would probably not be meaningful in most languages to retain the verb “fill” but use an active verbal form instead of the passive form here. However, if your language does speak of someone or something “filling” days or times so that they arrive, and if your language does not use passive verbal forms, you could use an active form of “fill” here. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the Jews (ULT)**  
**the Jewish leaders there (UST)**

Luke is using the name of a whole group, **the Jews**, to refer to one part of that group, its leaders. Alternate translation: “the leaders of the Jews” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**him (ULT)**  
**him (UST)**

The pronoun **him** refers to Saul. Alternate translation: “Saul” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [days](#)
- [Jews](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [time later](#)
- [Jewish leaders there](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> But when many [days](#) were filled, the [Jews](#) took counsel together to kill him.

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> Some [time later](#), the [Jewish leaders there](#) plotted to kill him.



## **Acts 9:24**

**But their plot became known to Saul (ULT)**  
**However, someone told Saul what they planned to do (UST)**

This could mean: (1) that a person realized there was a plot by recognizing that the Jewish leaders were watching the gates, and that person told Saul. In that case it may be helpful to move this information to the end of the verse, as UST does. (2) that someone told Saul about the plot, but even so, he was not able to flee for his life, because the gates were being watched. In that case you could change the second instance of **But** in the verse to "However." (See: [Information Structure](#))

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> But their plot [became known to Saul](#). But [they were](#) even [watching](#) the [gates](#) both [day](#) and night in order to kill him.

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> [Those Jewish leaders were continually watching the people passing through the city gates](#) so that if [they saw Saul there](#), they could kill him. However, [someone told Saul](#) what they planned to do.

**But their plot became known to Saul (ULT)**  
**However, someone told Saul what they planned to do (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Saul learned about their plot" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were...watching...the gates...in order to kill him (ULT)**  
**Those Jewish leaders were...watching...they saw Saul there...the people passing through the city gates...so that if...they could kill him (UST)**

The city of Damascus had a wall surrounding it. People could normally only enter and exit the city through **the gates** in this wall. Saul's enemies expected that he would try to leave the city eventually and they hoped to catch him and kill him when he did. Alternate translation: "they were ... watching the gates in the city wall ... in order to kill him when he tried to leave the city" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the gates (ULT)**  
**the people passing through the city gates (UST)**

Luke is using **the gates** figuratively to mean the people going through the gates. Alternate translation: "to see who was going through the gates" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**both day and night (ULT)**  
**continually (UST)**

Luke is figuratively using the two parts of a full day, **day** and **night**, to mean all the time. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. (1) Alternate translation: "all the time" (See: [Merism](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [became known](#)
- [to Saul](#)
- [they were...watching](#)
- [gates](#)
- [day](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- Those Jewish leaders were...watching...they saw Saul there
- continually
- people passing through the city gates
- someone told
- Saul

## Acts 9:25

### his disciples (ULT) some of those whom he had led to believe in Jesus (UST)

These **disciples** were people who had believed Saul's message and become committed followers of Jesus. Alternate translation: "the people who had believed Saul's message about Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [a basket](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [some of those whom...had led to believe in Jesus](#)
- [a large basket](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But his [disciples](#), taking him by night, let him down through the wall, lowering him in [a basket](#).

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> So [some of those whom he had led to believe in Jesus](#) took him one night to the high stone wall that surrounded the city. They used ropes to lower him in [a large basket](#) through an opening in the wall. In this way he escaped from Damascus.



## Acts 9:26

**they were all fearing him (ULT)**  
**almost all of them continued to be afraid of him (UST)**

Luke says **all** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "they were afraid of him" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- disciples
- a disciple
- they were...fearing
- believing

### Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem...there
- other believers
- a believer
- continued to be afraid
- They were...convinced

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> And having come to [Jerusalem](#), he was attempting to join the [disciples](#), but [they were](#) all [fearing](#) him, not [believing](#) that he was [a disciple](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> When Saul arrived in [Jerusalem](#), he tried to meet with the [other believers there](#). However, almost all of them [continued to be afraid](#) of him. [They were](#) not [convinced](#) that he had become [a believer](#).



## **Acts 9:27**

**Barnabas...taking hold of him...brought him to the apostles...told them...he had seen the Lord...the road and that he had spoken to him, and how in...he had spoken boldly (ULT) Barnabas...took him and brought him to the apostles. He explained to the apostles...the road to Damascus, he had seen Jesus, who had spoken to him there. He also told them how... in...Saul had preached boldly...to people (UST)**

The pronoun **him** refers to Saul in every instance. The pronoun **he** refers to Saul in the first and third instances and to **the Lord** in the second instance. The pronoun **them** refers to **the apostles**. Alternate translation: “taking hold of Saul, Barnabas brought him to the apostles and told the apostles how Saul had seen the Lord on the road and that the Lord had spoken to Saul ... Saul had spoken boldly” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### **Barnabas (ULT)**

### **Barnabas (UST)**

**Barnabas** is the name of a man. See how you translated it in [4:36](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **in the name of Jesus (ULT)**

### **about Jesus (UST)**

Here the **name** of Jesus figuratively represents his authority. Saul **had spoken boldly** with delegated authority, representing Jesus. Alternate translation: “as a representative of Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [Barnabas](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [he had spoken boldly](#)
- [name](#)
- [of Jesus](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [Barnabas](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Saul had preached boldly...to people](#)
- [about](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Damascus](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>27</sup> But taking hold of him, [Barnabas](#) brought him to the [apostles](#) and told them how he had seen the [Lord](#) on the road and that he had spoken to him, and how in [Damascus](#) he had spoken [boldly](#) in the [name of Jesus](#).

### **UST**

<sup>27</sup> But [Barnabas](#) took him and brought him to the [apostles](#). He explained to the apostles how, while Saul was traveling along the road to Damascus, he had seen [Jesus](#), who had spoken to him there. He also told them how [Saul had preached boldly about Jesus to people in Damascus](#).

## Acts 9:28

### And (ULT) So Saul (UST)

Luke uses the word translated **And** to introduce what Saul was able to do after Barnabas reassured the apostles about him. Alternate translation: "So" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### he was with them (ULT) began to meet with the apostles and other believers (UST)

The pronoun **he** refers to Saul. The pronoun **them** refers to the apostles and probably other disciples in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "Saul was with the apostles and other believers" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### coming in and going out (ULT) throughout (UST)

This is a Hebrew idiom that refers to freedom of movement. Saul was completely accepted by the believers in Jerusalem and could go anywhere among them. Alternate translation: "moving about freely among them" (See: [Idiom](#))

### in the name of the Lord (ULT) about Jesus (UST)

See how you translated the similar expression in [9:27](#). Alternate translation: "as a representative of the Lord" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [speaking boldly](#)
- [name](#)
- [of...Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [He spoke boldly to the people there](#)
- [about](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> And he was with them coming in and going out in [Jerusalem](#), [speaking boldly](#) in the [name](#) of the [Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> So Saul began to meet with the apostles and other believers throughout [Jerusalem](#). [He spoke boldly to the people there about Jesus](#).

**Acts 9:29****Hellenists (ULT)****Jews who spoke Greek...them (UST)**

**Hellenists** was the name for Jews in the Roman Empire who spoke the Greek language and followed Greek customs. See how you translated this name in 6:1. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**but they were attempting to kill him (ULT)**  
**They could not answer his arguments,} so**  
**they were continually trying to think of a way**  
**to kill him (UST)**

The implication is that the Hellenists were not able to refute what Saul was saying about Jesus, and so they saw him as a threat and wanted to get rid of him. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “and because they could not refute him, they were attempting to kill him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Hellenists](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jews who spoke Greek...them](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> He was both speaking and debating with the [Hellenists](#), but they were attempting to kill him.

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> Saul was also speaking about Jesus with [Jews who spoke Greek](#), and he was debating with [them](#). {They could not answer his arguments,} so they were continually trying to think of a way to kill him.

## Acts 9:30

### the brothers (ULT) the other believers (UST)

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. Alternate translation: "his fellow believers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### brought him down to Caesarea (ULT) So some of them took...to the city of Caesarea...him (UST)

Luke uses the phrase **brought him down** because that was the customary way of speaking about traveling from Jerusalem, since that city is up on a mountain. Caesarea is lower in elevation. Alternate translation: "made sure he got safely to Caesarea" (See: [Idiom](#))

### sent him away (ULT) him...There they put...on a ship (UST)

Caesarea was a seaport, and the believers probably **sent** Saul **to Tarsus** by ship. Alternate translation: "sent him away by ship" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [having learned of this](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [sent...away](#)
- [Tarsus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [other believers](#)
- [found out that the Jews who spoke Greek were planning to kill Saul](#)
- [the city of Caesarea](#)
- [There they put...on a ship](#)
- [Tarsus, his hometown](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But the [brothers](#), [having learned of this](#), brought him down to [Caesarea](#) and sent him away to [Tarsus](#).

### UST

<sup>30</sup> But the [other believers](#) found out that the [Jews who spoke Greek](#) were [planning to kill Saul](#). So some of them took him to [the city of Caesarea](#). [There they put him on a ship](#) that was going to [Tarsus](#), his hometown.





## **Acts 9:31**

**was having peace (ULT)  
were able to live peacefully (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **peace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “enjoyed peaceful conditions once more” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**being built up and journeying (ULT)  
was strengthening them and...They were honoring (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, you could say “God” or “the Holy Spirit.” Alternate translation: “As God built it up and it journeyed” or “As the Holy Spirit built it up and it journeyed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**being built up (ULT)  
was strengthening them (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively of the church as if it were a building that God was constructing. Alternate translation: “growing stronger” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**journeying in the fear of the Lord (ULT)  
They were honoring the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **journeying** figuratively means “living.” Alternate translation: “living in the fear of the Lord” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**journeying in the fear of the Lord (ULT)  
They were honoring the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here the word **fear** describes a deep respect for God. Alternate translation: “living with a deep respect for the Lord”

**in the encouragement of the Holy Spirit (ULT)  
The Holy Spirit...encouraging them (UST)**

Luke is using the possessive form to describe **the Holy Spirit** as the one who was giving the church **encouragement**. Alternate translation: “with the Holy Spirit encouraging them” (See: [Possession](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- church
- Judea
- Galilee
- Samaria
- peace

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> Then the church throughout all Judea and Galilee and Samaria was having peace; being built up and journeying in the fear of the Lord and in the encouragement of the Holy Spirit, it was multiplying.

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> Since no one was persecuting them anymore, the believers throughout the entire regions of Judea, Galilee, and Samaria were able to live peacefully. The Holy Spirit was strengthening them and encouraging them. They were honoring the Lord Jesus, and the Holy Spirit was leading many other people to become believers.

- in...fear
- of...Lord
- in
- of...Holy Spirit
- it was multiplying

## Translation Words - UST

- believers
- regions of Judea
- and the Holy Spirit was leading many other people to become believers
- Galilee
- Samaria
- peacefully
- Holy...Spirit
- encouraging them
- They were honoring
- Lord Jesus

## Acts 9:32

### Now it happened that (ULT) Those peaceful conditions allowed (UST)

Luke uses this phrase to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### throughout all (ULT) throughout those regions (UST)

Luke says **all** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: “many places in the region of Judea, Galilee, and Samaria” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### came down (ULT) Once he went to the coastal plain (UST)

Luke says **to come down** because that was the customary way of speaking about traveling from Jerusalem, where Peter was living, since that city is up on a mountain. Lydda is lower in elevation. Alternate translation: “to travel” (See: [Idiom](#))

### the saints inhabiting Lydda (ULT) the believers who lived in the town of Lydda (UST)

Luke says **to come down** because that was the customary way of speaking about traveling from Jerusalem, where Peter was living, since that city is up on a mountain. Lydda is lower in elevation. Alternate translation: “to travel” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Lydda (ULT) the town of Lydda (UST)

**Lydda** is the name of a city in Israel. It is located where the foothills meet the coastal plain. This city was called Lod in the Old Testament and it has that name in modern Israel as well. Decide what name would be most helpful to your readers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [saints](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [believers](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Now it happened that [Peter](#), going throughout all, came down also to the [saints](#) inhabiting Lydda.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> {Those peaceful conditions allowed} [Peter](#) to travel throughout those regions. Once he went to the coastal plain to visit the [believers](#) who lived in the town of Lydda.



## **Acts 9:33**

**he found...there...a certain man (ULT)**  
**he met...There...a man (UST)**

The word **found** does not mean that Peter was intentionally searching for a certain man; he happened to meet him. Alternate translation: “there Peter happened to meet a man”

**a certain man, Aeneas by name (ULT)**  
**a man whose name was Aeneas (UST)**

Luke uses this sentence to introduce **Aeneas** as a new character in the story. If your language has its own way of doing that, you can use it here in your translation. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**Aeneas (ULT)**  
**Aeneas (UST)**

**Aeneas** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**lying in a bed for eight years, who was paralyzed (ULT)**  
**Aeneas was not able to walk or stand, and so he had not been able to get up from his bed for eight years (UST)**

In this verse, Luke provides background information about Aeneas to help readers understand what happens next in the story. This information shows how remarkable it was that Jesus could heal a man who had been bedridden for that long. In your translation, present this information in a way that would be natural and meaningful in your own language and culture. (See: [Background Information](#))

**lying in a bed for eight years, who was paralyzed (ULT)**  
**Aeneas was not able to walk or stand, and so he had not been able to get up from his bed for eight years (UST)**

The reason why Aeneas had been **lying in a bed for eight years** was that he **was paralyzed**. It may be clearer in your language to describe this result after giving the reason for it. Alternate translation: “who was paralyzed and so had lain in a bed for eight years” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [by name](#)
- [years](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [whose name was](#)
- [years](#)

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> And there he found a certain man, Aeneas [by name](#), lying in a bed for eight [years](#), who was paralyzed.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> There he met a man [whose name was](#) Aeneas. Aeneas was not able to walk or stand, and so he had not been able to get up from his bed for eight [years](#).

**Acts 9:34****Arise (ULT)****Get up (UST)**

**Arise** in this context is literal, not figurative. It means to get up from a position of lying down, rather than to take action or make preparations.

**Arise and make your bed for yourself (ULT)****Get up and roll up your own mat (UST)**

Peter says **for yourself** to emphasize that Jesus has healed Aeneas so completely that he will now be able to do for himself what others previously had to do for him. Alternate translation: "Get up, you can make your own bed now" (See: [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-rpronoun]])

**make your bed for yourself (ULT)****roll up your own mat (UST)**

Getting up and making his own bed was also a symbolic action by which Aeneas demonstrated that Jesus had healed him. Alternate translation: "Arise and make your bed to show everyone that Jesus has healed you" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Peter
- Jesus Christ
- Christ
- heals
- Arise
- he arose

**Translation Words - UST**

- Peter
- Jesus the Messiah
- the Messiah
- heals
- Get up
- Aeneas stood up

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> And Peter said to him, "Aeneas, Jesus Christ heals you. Arise and make your bed for yourself," and immediately he arose.

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> Peter said to him, "Aeneas, Jesus the Messiah heals you! Get up and roll up your own mat!" Right away Aeneas stood up.





## **Acts 9:35**

**all the ones living in Lydda and in Sharon saw him, who turned to the Lord (ULT)**  
**Most of the people who lived in Lydda and on the Plain of Sharon saw Aeneas after the Lord had healed him, so they believed in the Lord Jesus (UST)**

The pronoun **him** refers to Aeneas. The pronoun **who** refers to the people of Lydda and Sharon. Alternate translation: “when all the people living in Lydda and Sharon saw him, they turned to the Lord” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> And all the ones living in Lydda and in Sharon saw him, who [turned](#) to the [Lord](#).

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> Most of the people who lived in Lydda and on the Plain of Sharon saw Aeneas after the Lord had healed him, so they [believed](#) in the [Lord Jesus](#).

**all the ones living in Lydda and in Sharon (ULT)**  
**Most of the people who lived in Lydda and on the Plain of Sharon (UST)**

Luke says **all** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: “those who lived in Lydda and in Sharon” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**and in Sharon (ULT)**  
**and on the Plain of Sharon (UST)**

**Sharon** is the name of a plain, on which Lydda was located. Alternate translation: “and in the surrounding area of Sharon” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**saw him (ULT)**  
**saw Aeneas after the Lord had healed him (UST)**

The implication is that the people knew Aeneas was bedridden and now they saw that he was healed. Alternate translation: “saw that Aeneas was healed” or “saw Aeneas up and walking around” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**who turned to the Lord (ULT)**  
**so they believed in the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **turned to the Lord** figuratively means that the people believed in Jesus and started to obey him. Alternate translation: “and they repented of their sins and started obeying Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [turned](#)
- [Lord](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [believed](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)



## **Acts 9:36**

**Now (ULT)**

Luke uses the word translated **Now** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**Joppa (ULT)****the town of Joppa (UST)**

**Joppa** is the name of a city that was about 15 kilometers or about 10 miles from Lydda. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Tabitha...which, being translated, is said****“Dorcas (ULT)****Tabitha. Her name in the Greek language was Dorcas (UST)**

**Tabitha** was this woman's name in Aramaic, and **Dorcas** was her name Greek. (Both names mean “gazelle.” Note how, later in the story, Luke, writing in Greek, calls her Dorcas, while Peter, speaking in Aramaic, calls her Tabitha.) It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “Her name in Aramaic was Tabitha, and her name in Greek was Dorcas” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**is said (ULT)****was (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “means” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**full of good works (ULT)****always...good deeds (UST)**

Luke speaks figuratively of **Dorcas** as if she were a container that was **full** of good works and almsgivings. Alternate translation: Alternate translation: “doing many good things and giving to others generously” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a...disciple
- Joppa
- by name
- good
- of...works
- of almsgivings

**Translation Words - UST**

- the town of Joppa
- believer
- whose name was

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> Now a certain [disciple](#) was in [Joppa](#), [Tabitha by name](#), which, being translated, is said “Dorcas.” She was full of [good works](#) and of [almsgivings](#) that she was doing.

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> In [the town of Joppa](#) there was a [believer whose name was](#) Tabitha. Her name in the Greek language was Dorcas. She was always doing [good deeds for poor people by giving them things that they needed](#).

- good
- deeds
- for poor people by giving them things that they needed

**Acts 9:37****in those days (ULT)****During the time that Peter was in Lydda (UST)**

The phrase **in those days** refers to the time when Peter was nearby in Lydda. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “while Peter was nearby” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**having washed...her, they laid her (ULT)****Some women there washed her body****{according to the Jewish custom...they covered her body with cloth and} placed it (UST)**

This was washing to prepare for Dorcas’s body for burial.

Customarily her family and friends would have done it. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. “Once her family and friends had washed her body to prepare it for burial, they laid it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they laid her in an upper room (ULT)****they {covered...with cloth and} placed it in an upstairs room in her house (UST)**

This was a temporary display of the body during the funeral process. Alternate translation: “they laid her body in an upper room so that people could come there and pay their respects” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**an upper room (ULT)****an upstairs room in her house (UST)**

In this culture, in some houses, rooms were built above other rooms. If your community does not have houses like that, you can use another expression to describe a large, sheltered space that people could use for funeral visitation. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- days
- died

**Translation Words - UST**

- time
- and died

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> And it happened in those **days** that, having been sick, she **died**. And having washed her, they laid her in an upper room.

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> During the **time** that Peter was in Lydda, she became sick **and died**. Some women there washed her body {according to the Jewish custom}. Then they {covered her body with cloth and} placed it in an upstairs room in her house.



## Acts 9:38

**having heard that Peter was in it, sent (ULT)  
so when...heard that Peter was still in Lydda,  
they sent (UST)**

It may be more natural in your language to have a direct quotation here. Alternate translation: "having heard, 'Peter is in Lydda,' sent" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**urging him (ULT)  
When they arrived where Peter was, they  
urged him (UST)**

Since two men are speaking, if your language marks participles for number, **urging** would be dual if your language uses that form. Otherwise it would be plural. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joppa](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [sent](#)
- [urging him](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the city of Joppa](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [they sent](#)
- [When they arrived where Peter was, they urged him](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> And Lydda being near [Joppa](#), the [disciples](#), having heard that [Peter](#) was in it, [sent](#) two men to him, [urging him](#), "Do not delay to come to us."

### UST

<sup>38</sup> Lydda was near [the city of Joppa](#), so when the [disciples](#) heard that [Peter](#) was still in Lydda, [they sent](#) two men to go to Peter. [When they arrived where Peter was, they urged him](#), "Please come immediately with us to Joppa!"



## **Acts 9:39**

**arising...Peter went with them (ULT)**  
**got ready right away...Peter...and went with them (UST)**

Here the word **arising** means that Peter took action in order to be able to make the trip with these men, not that he got up from a sitting or lying position. Alternate translation: "Peter quickly prepared and went with them" (See: [Idiom](#))

**them (ULT)**  
**them (UST)**

This first instance of **them** in the verse would be dual if your language uses that form, since it applies to two men. The second instance of **them** would be plural, since it refers to the group of widows. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural](#))

**all the widows (ULT)**  
**All the widows there (UST)**

Luke says **all** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "a large crowd of widows" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**coats and garments, as many as Dorcas used to make, being with them (ULT)**  
**the tunics and other garments that Dorcas had made for people while she was still alive (UST)**

It may be helpful to say explicitly that Dorcas made these **coats and garments** to help these **widows** because they were poor and could not afford clothes. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "coats and garments. When she was alive, Dorcas used to make many of these to help the widows because they were poor and could not afford clothes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**being with them (ULT)**  
**while she was still alive (UST)**

This may be a delicate way of speaking about Dorcas's death, rather than saying "before she died." Alternate translation, as in UST: "while she was still alive" (See: [Euphemism](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [arising](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [coats](#)
- [garments](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)
- [got ready right away](#)

**ULT**

<sup>39</sup> So, [arising](#), [Peter](#) went with them, whom, having arrived, they brought up to the upper room, and all the widows stood by him, weeping and showing him [coats](#) and [garments](#), as many as Dorcas used to make, being with them.

**UST**

<sup>39</sup> [Peter got ready right away](#) and went with them. When he arrived at the house in Joppa, they took him to the upstairs room where the body of Dorcas was lying. All the widows there stood around him. They were crying and showing him [the tunics](#) and [other garments](#) that Dorcas had made for people while she was still alive.

- [the tunics](#)
- [other garments](#)

**Acts 9:40****having put down {his} knees (ULT)****he got down on his knees (UST)**

Kneeling down was a reverent posture of prayer. Alternate translation: "having knelt down reverently" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Tabitha, arise (ULT)****Tabitha, stand up (UST)**

This was not a command that Tabitha was capable of obeying. Instead, it was a command that directly caused her to be restored to life. Alternate translation: "Jesus the Messiah restores you to life, so you can get up now" (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

**Tabitha, arise (ULT)****Tabitha, stand up (UST)**

Getting up was a symbolic action by which Tabitha could demonstrate that Jesus had restored her to life. Alternate translation: "Get up to show everyone that Jesus has restored you to life" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [having put down](#)
- [prayed](#)
- [having turned](#)
- [body](#)
- [arise](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [he got down on](#)
- [and prayed](#)
- [turning](#)
- [body](#)
- [stand up](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> But [Peter](#), having put them all out and [having put down](#) {his} knees, [prayed](#), and [having turned](#) to the [body](#), he said, "Tabitha, [arise](#)!" Then she opened her eyes and, seeing [Peter](#), she sat up.

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> But [Peter](#) sent them all out of the room {so that he could pray}. Then [he got down on](#) his knees [and prayed](#). Then, [turning](#) toward her [body](#), he said, "Tabitha, [stand up](#)!" Immediately she opened her eyes and, when she saw [Peter](#), she sat up.

## Acts 9:41

**giving...her {his} hand, he raised her up (ULT)**  
**He grasped...one of her hands and helped her to stand up (UST)**

The implication is that Peter extended his **hand** to Tabitha to help her stand up. Alternate translation: “he let her hold onto his hand for support as he helped her stand” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the saints and the widows (ULT)**  
**the believers and especially the widows among them (UST)**

These **saints** and **widows** were probably not two different groups. The widows were likely also believers, but Luke mentions them specifically because Tabitha was so important to them. To show this, it may be helpful to put the information about the widows before the information about the believers. Alternate translation: “the widows and the other believers” (See: [Information Structure](#))

**the saints (ULT)**  
**the believers (UST)**

Luke is using the term **saints** figuratively by association to mean believers in Jesus. See how you translated the term in [9:33](#). Alternate translation: “the other believers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [his} hand](#)
- [he raised...up](#)
- [calling](#)
- [saints](#)
- [living](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hands](#)
- [and helped...to stand up](#)
- [After he had summoned...to come back in](#)
- [believers](#)
- [was alive again](#)

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> And giving her [{his} hand](#), [he raised](#) her [up](#) and, [calling](#) the [saints](#) and the widows, he presented her [living](#).

### UST

<sup>41</sup> He grasped one of her [hands](#) and [helped](#) her [to stand up](#). [After he had summoned](#) the [believers](#) and especially the widows among them [to come back in](#), he showed them that she [was alive again](#).

**Acts 9:42**

**And it became known throughout all Joppa (ULT)**

**Soon people everywhere in Joppa knew about that miracle (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People throughout all Joppa heard about this matter" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [known](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [believed](#)
- [Lord](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [people...knew about that miracle](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [believed](#)
- [Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>42</sup> And it became [known](#) throughout all [Joppa](#), and many [believed](#) on the [Lord](#).

**UST**

<sup>42</sup> Soon [people](#) everywhere in [Joppa](#) [knew about that miracle](#) and, as a result, many people [believed](#) in [Jesus](#).



## Acts 9:43

### Now it happened that (ULT)

Luke uses this phrase to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### a tanner (ULT)

### who made leather from animal skins (UST)

A **tanner** is someone who makes leather from animal skins. If this is not an occupation that your readers would recognize or understand, you could use the name of a similar occupation in your culture that they would recognize. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [Joppa](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Joppa](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> Now it happened that he stayed many [days](#) in [Joppa](#) with a certain Simon, a tanner.

### UST

<sup>43</sup> Peter stayed in [Joppa](#) many [days](#) with a man named Simon, who made leather from animal skins.

## Acts 10

### Acts 10 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

- Verses 1-2 give background information about Cornelius. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence at the start of v. 2. (See: [Background Information](#))
- In verse 9, the story shifts away from Cornelius and tells how God prepared Peter to preach the gospel to the Gentiles.
- In verse 24, the story brings Peter and Cornelius together.
- The long sentence in verses 36-38 can be broken up into several sentences, as in the UST.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Jews visiting with Gentiles

The Jews believed that they would become unclean in God's sight if they visited or ate food with a Gentile. This was because the Pharisees had made a law against this, wanting to keep Jews from eating foods that the law of Moses said were unclean. The law of Moses did say that some foods were unclean, but it did not say that Jewish people could not visit or eat with Gentiles. (See: [clean, wash](#) and [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#))

##### Baptism and the Holy Spirit

Those who were listening to Peter received the Holy Spirit even as he was speaking to them. This showed the Jewish believers that Gentiles could believe the word of God and receive the Holy Spirit just as the Jewish believers had. After that, the Gentiles were baptized.



## **Acts 10:1**

**Now a certain man (ULT)**

Luke uses this phrase to introduce a new character into the story. If your language has its own way of doing that, you can use it here in your translation. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**Cornelius (ULT)****Cornelius (UST)**

**Cornelius** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**a centurion (ULT)****He was an officer who commanded 100 men (UST)**

A **centurion** was an officer in the Roman army who was in charge of a group of 100 soldiers. Such a group was called a “century.” Alternate translation: “an army officer in charge of 100 soldiers” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**the regiment called Italian (ULT)****a large group of Roman soldiers from Italy (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the regiment people called Italian” or “the regiment whose name was Italian” or “the Italian Regiment” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the regiment (ULT)****a large group of Roman soldiers (UST)**

A **regiment** was a military unit consisting of six centuries or 600 soldiers. You may have a term in your language that you can use for a unit of about this size. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**Italian (ULT)****from Italy (UST)**

**Italian** is the name of a military unit. The name indicates that although the soldiers in it were stationed in Syria, they came from Italy and thus were native Romans. This made them more reliable protection for the high-ranking Roman officials whose residence was in Caesarea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Connecting Statement:**

This is the beginning of the part of the story about Cornelius.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Caesarea](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [by name](#)
- [a centurion](#)
- [called](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> Now a certain man was in [Caesarea](#), [Cornelius by name](#), a [centurion](#) from the regiment [called](#) Italian,

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> There was a man [whose name was Cornelius](#) who lived in [the city of Caesarea](#). He was an officer who [commanded 100 men](#) in a large group of Roman soldiers [from Italy](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- whose name was
- Cornelius
- the city of Caesarea
- He was an officer who commanded 100 men
- from Italy



## **Acts 10:2**



## devout and fearing God (ULT)

The word **devout** and the phrase **fearing God** mean similar things. (In this context, the word **fearing** has the sense of deep respect and awe.) Luke may be using them together for emphasis. Alternate translation: “sincerely devoted to God” or see next note for another possibility. (See: [Doublet](#))

## devout and fearing God (ULT)

Jews in the time of the New Testament used the expression **fearing God** to describe Gentiles (non-Jews) who worshiped the God of Israel, attended the synagogue, prayed at regular times, and supported the needs of the Jewish community. Luke may be using the expression in this way and assuming that his readers will recognize it. Alternate translation: “a Gentile who sincerely worshiped the God of Israel” (See: [Idiom](#))

## to the people (ULT)

## to help poor Jewish people (UST)

Luke assumes that his readers will know that **the people** refers to Jewish people who were in need. Alternate translation: “to Jewish people in need” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## through all (ULT)

## regularly (UST)

The phrase **through all** is an ellipsis for “through all times.” See how you translated it in [2:25](#). Alternate translation: “always” or “at all times” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## praying to God through all (ULT)

## He prayed to God regularly (UST)

The phrase **through all**, meaning “at all times,” is a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: “often” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [fearing](#)
- [God](#)
- [to God](#)
- [household](#)
- [gifts of alms](#)
- [to...people](#)
- [praying](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [to God](#)

## ULT

<sup>2</sup> devout and [fearing God](#) with all his [household](#), making many [gifts of alms](#) to the [people](#) and [praying to God](#) through all.

## UST

<sup>2</sup> He continually tried to do what would please [God](#). [He](#) and his entire [household were non-Jews who worshiped God](#). [He](#) often [gave money to help poor Jewish people](#). [He prayed to God](#) regularly.

- He...were non-Jews who worshiped God
- household
- He...gave money
- poor Jewish people
- He prayed

## Acts 10:3

### the ninth hour (ULT) three o'clock (UST)

This was the normal afternoon prayer time for Jews. Cornelius, as a Gentile who worshiped the God of Israel, would have praying at this time. Alternate translation: "during his afternoon prayer time" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the ninth hour (ULT) three o'clock (UST)

In this culture, people began counting the hours each day beginning around daybreak at six o'clock in the morning. If it would be clearer in your language, you could express this in the way the people of your culture reckon time. (See: [Idiom](#))

### the ninth hour (ULT) three o'clock (UST)

If you decide to translate this in the way that the biblical culture reckoned time, but your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here. Alternate translation: "around hour nine" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the...hour](#)
- [of...day](#)
- [a vision](#)
- [an angel](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Cornelius](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [three o'clock](#)
- [in...afternoon](#)
- [a vision](#)
- [an angel...the angel](#)
- [whom God had sent](#)
- [Cornelius](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> About the ninth [hour](#) of the [day](#), he saw clearly in [a vision an angel of God](#) coming to him and saying to him, "[Cornelius!](#)"

### UST

<sup>3</sup> One day at about [three o'clock](#) in the [afternoon](#), Cornelius saw [a vision](#). He clearly saw [an angel whom God had sent](#). He saw [the angel](#) coming into his room and saying to him, "[Cornelius!](#)"



## **Acts 10:4**

## But he, staring at him (ULT)

The pronoun **he** stands for Cornelius, and the pronoun **him** stands for the angel. Alternate translation: “But Cornelius, staring at the angel” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## What is it, lord (ULT) Sir, what do you want (UST)

Cornelius uses the respectful title **lord** because he recognizes that he is speaking to a messenger from God. See how you translated the similar term in 9:5. (See: [Politeness](#))

## And he said to him (ULT)

The pronoun **he** stands for the angel, and the pronoun **him** stands for Cornelius. Alternate translation: “And the angel said to Cornelius” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## Your prayers and your alms have gone up for a memorial offering before God (ULT)

A **memorial offering** was the portion of an offering brought to the priests for their support that was burned on the altar as a pleasing aroma for God, to give God an occasion to remember the worshiper. The angel is using this offering figuratively to tell Cornelius that God is aware of his devotion and generosity and that God is pleased with those things. You could translate this metaphor as a simile, or you could explain its meaning. Alternate translation: “Your prayers and your alms have gone up like a memorial offering before God” or “God is aware of your prayers and your alms, and he is pleased with them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## before God (ULT) to God (UST)

Here, **before** means “in the presence of.” Alternate translation: “into the presence of God” (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- terrified
- lord
- prayers
- alms
- a memorial offering
- God

## Translation Words - UST

- terrified...fearfully
- Sir
- have been praying regularly to God
- often give money to help poor people

## ULT

<sup>4</sup> But he, staring at him and having become terrified, said, “What is it, lord?” And he said to him, “Your prayers and your alms have gone up for a memorial offering before God.

## UST

<sup>4</sup> Cornelius stared at the angel and became terrified. Then he asked fearfully, “Sir, what do you want?” The angel answered him, “You have been praying regularly to God. You often give money to help poor people. Those things have been like an offering to God, and he has noticed them.

- an offering...and he has noticed them
- God

## Acts 10:5

### who is called Peter (ULT) whose other name is Peter (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whom people call Peter” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- send
- Joppa
- summon
- is called
- a...Simon
- Peter

#### Translation Words - UST

- command
- Joppa
- Tell them to bring back
- other name is
- man named Simon
- Peter

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And now, [send](#) men to [Joppa](#) and [summon](#) a certain [Simon](#) who [is called](#) [Peter](#).

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> So now [command](#) some men to go to [Joppa](#). [Tell them to bring back](#) a [man](#) named [Simon](#) whose [other name is](#) [Peter](#).



## Acts 10:6

### is being hosted by (ULT) is staying with (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "is the guest of" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### a tanner (ULT) who makes leather (UST)

See how you translated the term **tanner** in [9:43](#).

### a tanner (ULT) who makes leather (UST)

A **tanner** is a person who makes leather from animal skins.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a house
- the sea

### Translation Words - UST

- house
- the ocean

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He is being hosted by a certain Simon, a tanner, to whom is a house by the sea."

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> He is staying with a man, also named Simon, who makes leather. His house is near the ocean."

## Acts 10:7

### And when the angel who spoke to him had left

Alternate translation: "And when Cornelius' vision of the angel had ended"

### devout (ULT) who also worshiped God (UST)

The adjective **devout** describes a person who worships God and serves him. Alternate translation: "sincerely religious"

### Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- calling
- of...house servants
- of...ones serving
- a...soldier

### Translation Words - UST

- angel
- he summoned
- of...household servants
- who served
- a soldier...one

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And when the **angel** speaking to him left, **calling** two of {his} **house servants** and a devout **soldier** of the **ones serving** him,

### UST

<sup>7</sup> When the **angel** who was speaking with Cornelius had gone, **he summoned** two of his **household servants** and a **soldier who served** him, **one** who also worshiped God.

## Acts 10:8

### everything (ULT)

### everything that the angel had said (UST)

By **everything**, Luke means the details of the vision that Cornelius had. Alternate translation: "how an angel had spoken to him in a vision and what the angel had said" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he sent](#)
- [Joppa](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then he told...to go...and ask Peter to come to Caesarea](#)
- [the city of Joppa](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And having told them everything, [he sent](#) them to [Joppa](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> He explained to them everything that the angel had said. [Then he told](#) them to go to [the city of Joppa](#) and ask [Peter](#) to come to [Caesarea](#).

**Acts 10:9****as those were traveling (ULT)  
those three men were traveling along the  
road (UST)**

The demonstrative pronoun **those** refers to Cornelius' two servants and the soldier under Cornelius' command. Alternate translation: "as the men whom Cornelius had sent were traveling" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**at about the sixth hour (ULT)  
About noon (UST)**

In this culture, people began counting the hours each day beginning around daybreak at six o'clock in the morning. If it would be clearer in your language, you could express this in the way the people of your culture reckon time. Alternate translation: "at around noon" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**at about the sixth hour (ULT)  
About noon (UST)**

If you decide to translate this in the way that the biblical culture reckoned time, but your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here. Alternate translation: "at around hour six" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Peter
- to pray
- at...the...hour

**Translation Words - UST**

- noon
- Peter
- to pray

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> And on the next day, as those were traveling and approaching the city, Peter went up to the housetop to pray at about the sixth hour.

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> About noon the next day, those three men were traveling along the road. As they were approaching Joppa, Peter went up on the flat housetop to pray.

## Acts 10:10

**a vision came upon him (ULT)**

**he saw a vision (UST)**

Luke speaks figuratively of this **vision** as if it were a living thing that could come onto someone. Alternate translation: "he had a vision" (See: [Personification](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And he became hungry and was wanting to eat, but while they were preparing, a vision came upon him,

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Peter became hungry and wanted something to eat. While some people were preparing the food, he saw a vision.

## Acts 10:11

### he sees the sky opened (ULT)

### He saw...an opening in the sky (UST)

To call attention to a development in the story, here Luke uses the present tense in past narration. If it would not be natural to do that in your language, you can use the past tense in your translation. It may be helpful to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "And he saw" or "And Peter saw"

### the sky opened (ULT)

### an opening in the sky (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form **opened**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the sky break open" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### being let down (ULT)

### Someone seemed to be lowering it (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "It appeared as if someone was letting it down" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- sky
- like
- earth

## Translation Words - UST

- sky
- like
- ground

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> and he sees the sky opened and a certain container, like a large sheet, descending, being let down by {its} four corners to the earth,

### UST

<sup>11</sup> He saw an opening in the sky through which something like a large, square piece of cloth was coming down. Someone seemed to be lowering it by its four corners to the ground.

## Acts 10:12

**all the (ULT)  
many different kinds of creatures. Some had  
four feet...These included animals and birds  
that the Mosaic laws forbade Jews to eat (UST)**

The word **all** is likely a generalization for emphasis, although since this was a vision, it is possible that the container Peter saw did contain every kind of these creatures. Alternate translation: “various” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**and birds of the sky (ULT)  
and others were wild birds (UST)**

From Peter’s response in [10:14](#), the implication is that the law of Moses commanded the Jews not to eat some of the creatures in the container. Alternate translation: “and birds of the sky, including some that the law of Moses commanded Jews not to eat” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...earth](#)
- [of...sky](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [on...ground](#)
- [wild](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> in which were all the four-footed animals and reptiles of the [earth](#) and birds of the [sky](#).

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Inside the sheet were many different kinds of creatures. Some had four feet, others crawled on the [ground](#), and others were [wild](#) birds. These included animals and birds that the Mosaic laws forbade Jews to eat.

**Acts 10:13****a voice came to him (ULT)  
he heard God say to him (UST)**

Luke speaks figuratively of this **voice** as if it were a living thing that could come to someone. Alternate translation: "he heard a voice"  
(See: [Personification](#))

**arising (ULT)  
Go ahead (UST)**

Here the term **arising** means that the voice wanted Peter to take action, not that the voice wanted him to stand up from a seated position. Alternate translation, as in UST: "Go ahead" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a voice
- Peter
- arising

**Translation Words - UST**

- God say
- Go ahead
- Peter

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> And a voice came to him: "Peter, arising, kill and eat."

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> Then he heard God say to him, "Go ahead, Peter, kill some of these and eat them."



**Acts 10:14****Not at all (ULT)  
surely not (UST)**

**Not at all** is an exclamation that communicates a strong refusal to do or even to consider something. Use an exclamation that is natural in your language for communicating this. Alternate translation: “No, never” (See: [Exclamations](#))

**I have never eaten anything common and unclean (ULT)****I have never eaten anything that our Jewish law says is unacceptable to you or that we must not eat (UST)**

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of word **never** and the negative terms **common** and **unclean**. Alternate translation: “I have only ever eaten things that are holy and clean” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**common and unclean (ULT)****that our Jewish law says is unacceptable to you or that we must not eat (UST)**

The words **common** and **unclean** mean similar things. Peter may be using them together for emphasis. Alternate translation: “that our Jewish laws forbid us to eat” (See: [Doublet](#))

**I have never eaten anything common and unclean (ULT)****I have never eaten anything that our Jewish law says is unacceptable to you or that we must not eat (UST)**

The implication is that some the animals in the container were forbidden for Jews to eat. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “common and unclean, like some of those animals” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [unclean](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [that we must not eat](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> But [Peter](#) said, “Not at all, [Lord](#); for I have never eaten anything common and [unclean](#).”

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> But [Peter](#) replied, “[Lord](#), surely not! I have never eaten anything that our Jewish law says is unacceptable to you or [that we must not eat](#)!”

## Acts 10:15

**the voice {came...again...to him (ULT)}**  
**Peter heard God talk...a second time. He said... to him (UST)**

The implied verb here is **came**, and so Luke is speaking once again of this **voice** figuratively as if it were a living thing that could come to someone. Alternate translation: "he heard the voice speaking to him again" (See: [Personification](#))

**What God has cleansed (ULT)**  
**I am God, so if I have made something acceptable to eat (UST)**

If God is the speaker, he is referring to himself in the third person. If that would be confusing to your readers, you can use the first person in your translation. Alternate translation: "What I, God, have cleansed" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**you, do not make common (ULT)**  
**do not say that it is not acceptable to eat (UST)**

The voice is adding the pronoun **you** for emphasis. If your language does not ordinarily use a pronoun with the imperative but can do so for emphasis, it would be appropriate to do that here. You could also express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "you must not make common" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the voice {came}](#)
- [God](#)
- [has cleansed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter heard God talk...He said](#)
- [I am God](#)
- [so if I have made...acceptable to eat](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And [the voice {came}](#) to him again, for a second {time}: "What [God has cleansed](#), you, do not make common."

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Then [Peter heard God talk](#) to him a second time. [He said](#), "I am God, so if I [have made](#) something [acceptable to eat](#), do not say that it is not acceptable to eat!"

**Acts 10:16****this...happened three times (ULT)****This...happened three times (UST)**

This could mean: (1) that the voice told Peter three times to kill and eat, Peter refused three times, and each time the voice told him not to call unclean what God had cleansed. Alternate translation: "Peter had this exchange with the voice three times" (2) that after Peter first refused, the voice said to him three times, "What God has cleansed, you must not make common." Alternate translation: "the voice said this three times" You may find it simplest to say, "This happened three times," as UST does. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the container was...taken back up (ULT)****the sheet with the animals...went back up (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "it appeared as if someone was pulling the container back up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sky

**Translation Words - UST**

- sky

**ULT**

**16** And this happened three times, and the container was immediately taken back up to the sky.

**UST**

**16** This happened three times. Right after that, the sheet with the animals and birds went back up into the sky.



## **Acts 10:17**

**Peter was doubting within himself what the vision that he had seen might mean (ULT)  
Peter trying to understand what that vision meant (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Peter was wondering how God could have given him a vision like that"

**behold, the men (ULT)  
Meanwhile, the men (UST)**

Luke is using the term **behold** to focus readers' attention on how suddenly these **men** appeared. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation.  
Alternate translation: "just then the men" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**sent by Cornelius (ULT)  
Cornelius had sent (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "whom Cornelius had sent" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the...stood before...gate (ULT)  
When people told them, they found the house and stood outside the gate (UST)**

The implication is that the house of Simon the tanner had a wall around it and that there was a **gate** in the wall that people could use to enter the property. Alternate translation: "stood before the gate to the house" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)
- [vision](#)
- [sent](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [house](#)
- [gate](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)
- [vision](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [had sent](#)
- [house](#)
- [gate](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> And while [Peter](#) was doubting within himself what the [vision](#) that he had seen might mean, behold, the men [sent](#) by [Cornelius](#), having found by inquiry the [house](#) of Simon, stood before the [gate](#).

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> This left [Peter](#) trying to understand what that [vision](#) meant. Meanwhile, the men [Cornelius had sent](#) arrived in Joppa. They asked people how to get to Simon's [house](#). When people told them, they found the house and stood outside the [gate](#).

## Acts 10:18

### called Peter (ULT) whose other name was Peter (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whom people called Peter” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### was being hosted (ULT) was staying (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “was a guest” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [calling out](#)
- [called](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They called from the gate](#)
- [other name was](#)
- [name...Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And [calling out](#), they were asking whether [Simon, called Peter](#), was being hosted there.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> [They called from the gate](#) and asked if a man whose [name](#) was [Simon](#), whose [other name was Peter](#), was staying there.

## Acts 10:19

### Behold, three men (ULT)

### Listen! Three men (UST)

The Spirit is using the term **behold** to focus Peter's attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: "Pay attention, this is important: Three men" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### three men (ULT)

### Three men (UST)

Cornelius sent two of his servants and one soldier. Some ancient texts say "two men" or "some men." If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider using the reading in that translation. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you follow the readings of ULT and UST. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [while Peter](#)
- [vision](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [are seeking](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [While Peter](#)
- [vision](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [are here who want...to go with them](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And [while Peter](#) was still thinking about the [vision](#), the [Spirit](#) said to him, "Behold, three men [are seeking](#) you. <sup>[1]</sup>"

### UST

<sup>19</sup> [While Peter](#) was still trying to understand what the [vision](#) meant, the [Holy Spirit](#) said to him, "Listen! Three men [are here who want](#) you [to go with them](#)."



## Acts 10:20

Here the term **arising** means that the voice wanted Peter to take action, not that the voice wanted him to stand up from a seated position. Alternate translation: "Go ahead" (See: [Idiom](#))

### go down (ULT)

### Go downstairs (UST)

The implication is that Peter is to **go down** from the roof of the house and greet the men. Alternate translation: "go down from the roof of the house" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### go with them (ULT)

### go with them (UST)

It would be natural for Peter not to want to go with the men, because they were Gentiles. Alternate translation: "go with them, even though they are Gentiles" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### not hesitating (ULT)

### Do not think that you should not go with them (UST)

This could mean: (1) that the Spirit did not want Peter to have any doubts or worries about going with the men, even though they were Gentiles. Alternate translation: "without worrying about it" (2) that the Spirit did not want Peter to feel that he should not be in the company of these men, because they were Gentiles. Alternate translation: "not making a distinction between these men and others you would associate with" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [arising](#)
- [have sent](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [do not be reluctant](#)
- [have sent](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But [arising](#), go down and go with them, not hesitating, because I [have sent](#) them."

### UST

<sup>20</sup> So [do not be reluctant](#). Go downstairs and go with them! Do not think that you should not go with them, because I [have sent](#) them here!"

## Acts 10:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- you are seeking

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- you are looking for

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> So Peter, having gone down to the men, said, "Behold, I am {he} whom you are seeking. What {is} the reason for which you are here?"

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> So Peter went down to the men and said to them, "Greetings! I am the man you are looking for. Why have you come?"



## **Acts 10:22**

**they...said, “Cornelius, a centurion, a man righteous and fearing God and attested by the whole nation of the Jews, was directed by a holy angel to summon you to his house and to hear words from you (ULT)**

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “they told Peter that Cornelius, a centurion, a man righteous and fearing God and attested by the whole nation of the Jews, was directed by a holy angel to summon him to his house and to hear words from him” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**they...said (ULT)**  
**They...replied (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to the two servants and the soldier whom Cornelius sent. Alternate translation: “The messengers from Cornelius replied” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**they...said (ULT)**  
**They...replied (UST)**

One of the messengers probably spoke these words on behalf of all three of them. Alternate translation: “one of them said” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**fearing God (ULT)**  
**worships God (UST)**

The word **righteous** and the phrase **fearing God** mean similar things. (In this context, the word **fearing** has the sense of deep respect and awe.) Luke may be using them together for emphasis. Alternate translation: “a man sincerely devoted to God” or see next note for another possibility. (See: [Doublet](#))

**a man righteous and fearing God (ULT)**  
**He is a good man who worships God (UST)**

Jews in the time of the New Testament used the expression **fearing God** to describe Gentiles (non-Jews) who worshiped the God of Israel. Luke may be using the expression in this way. See how you translated it in [10:2](#). Alternate translation: “a Gentile who sincerely worships the God of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**and attested by the whole nation of the Jews, was directed by a holy angel (ULT)**

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “about whom the whole nation of the Jews testifies, received instructions from a holy angel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And they said, “**Cornelius, a centurion, a man righteous and fearing God and attested** by the whole **nation** of the **Jews**, was directed by a **holy angel** to summon you to his **house** and to hear words from you.”

### UST

<sup>22</sup> They replied, “**Cornelius, who is a Roman army officer**, sent us here. He is a **good man who worships God**. All of the **Jewish people** who know about him **speak well of him**. **An angel from God** told Cornelius, ‘Have some men to go to Joppa and get Simon Peter. Bring him to your **house** and listen to what he has to say.’”

**the whole nation of the Jews (ULT)**  
**All of the Jewish people who know about him (UST)**

Luke says **whole** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: “the Jewish people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**words (ULT)**  
**to what...has to say (UST)**

The messengers are using the term **words** figuratively to mean what Peter would say to Cornelius by using words. Alternate translation: “a message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Cornelius
- a centurion
- house
- righteous
- fearing
- God
- attested
- nation
- of...Jews
- holy
- a...angel

**Translation Words - UST**

- Cornelius
- who is a Roman army officer
- house
- good
- worships
- God
- Jewish
- of...people
- speak well of him
- An angel
- from God

**Acts 10:23**

**Therefore, having invited them, he hosted them (ULT)**

**So Peter invited them into the house and told them that they should stay there that night (UST)**

The implication is that the journey to Caesarea was too long for them to begin that afternoon. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "But since the journey to Caesarea was too long for them to make that day, Peter invited the men into Simon's house and hosted them there overnight" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**arising (ULT)**

**Peter got ready (UST)**

Here the word **arising** means that Peter took action to prepare, not that he stood up from a seated or lying position. Alternate translation: "after packing for a journey" (See: [Idiom](#))

**some of the brothers (ULT)**

**Several of the believers (UST)**

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. Alternate translation: "some fellow believers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [arising](#)
- [of...brothers](#)
- [from Joppa](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter got ready](#)
- [of...believers](#)
- [Joppa](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> Therefore, having invited them, he hosted them. And on the next day, [arising](#), he went out with them, and some of the [brothers from Joppa](#) accompanied him.

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> So Peter invited them into the house and told them that they should stay there that night. The next day [Peter got ready](#) and went with the men. Several of the [believers from Joppa](#) also went with him.

## Acts 10:24

### the...on...next day (ULT)

### The...day after that (UST)

The **next day** means the day after they left Joppa. The journey to Caesarea took longer than one day. Alternate translation: "on the following day"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Caesarea
- Cornelius
- having called together
- relatives

### Translation Words - UST

- the city of Caesarea
- Cornelius
- He had also invited...to come, so they were there in his house too
- relatives

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And on the next day they came to Caesarea. And Cornelius was awaiting them, having called together his relatives and close friends.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> The day after that, they arrived in the city of Caesarea. Cornelius was waiting for them. He had also invited his relatives and close friends to come, so they were there in his house too.



**Acts 10:25**

**as...it happened that Peter intended to enter (ULT)**

**When...When...Peter entered the house (UST)**

ὡς...ἐγένετο τοῦ εἰσελθεῖν τὸν Πέτρον

**and} falling down at {his} feet (ULT)**  
**and bowed low in front of him (UST)**

He knelt down at Peter's feet as a gesture to honor him. Alternate translation: "kneeling down and putting his face close to Peter's feet to honor him" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Peter
- Cornelius
- and} falling down
- worshiped him

**Translation Words - UST**

- Peter
- Cornelius
- and bowed low
- to worship him

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> And as it happened that Peter intended to enter, Cornelius, meeting him {and} falling down at {his} feet, worshiped him.

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> When Peter entered the house, Cornelius met him and bowed low in front of him to worship him.

## Acts 10:26

### Arise! I too am a man myself (ULT) Stand up! Do not bow down and worship me! I myself am only human, like you (UST)

Peter is using the statement form to give a mild rebuke or correction to Cornelius. It may be clearer for your readers if you translate this as an imperative. Alternate translation: "Stop doing that! I am only a man, as you are" (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- lifted...up
- Arise

#### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- grasped Cornelius by the hand and lifted...to his feet
- Stand up! Do not bow down and worship me

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But Peter lifted him up, saying, "Arise! I too am a man myself."

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> But Peter grasped Cornelius by the hand and lifted him to his feet. He said, "Stand up! Do not bow down and worship me! I myself am only human, like you!"

**Acts 10:27**

**talking with him, he went in (ULT)**  
**While he was talking to Cornelius, Peter {and the others} entered the house (UST)**

The pronoun **him** refers to Cornelius, and the pronoun **he** refers to Peter. Alternate translation: “talking with Cornelius, Peter went in” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**finds (ULT)**  
**They saw that (UST)**

To call attention to a development in the story, here Luke uses the present tense in past narration. If it would not be natural to do that in your language, you can use the past tense in your translation. Alternate translation: “found”

**many gathered together (ULT)**  
**Cornelius had invited many people to come {and hear Peter (UST)}**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “many people whom Cornelius had gathered together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [gathered together](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Cornelius had invited...to come {and hear Peter](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> And talking with him, he went in and finds many [gathered together](#).

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> While he was talking to Cornelius, Peter {and the others} entered the house. They saw that [Cornelius had invited](#) many people [to come {and hear Peter}](#).

**Acts 10:28****how unlawful it is for a Jewish man (ULT)  
that we Jews think we are disobeying our laws (UST)**

This phrase refers to the requirements of the Jewish religious law. Alternate translation: “that the Jewish law forbids a Jewish man” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**with a foreigner (ULT)  
with people who are not Jews (UST)**

Here, the term **foreigner** refers to people who are not Jews. It is not a reference to where they live. Alternate translation: “a Gentile” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**man (ULT)  
people (UST)**

Although the term **man** is masculine, Peter is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “person” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**common or unclean (ULT)  
God only accepts...who are Jews (UST)**

The words **common** and **unclean** mean similar things. Peter may be using them together for emphasis. Alternate translation: “unacceptable to God” (See: [Doublet](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- You...know
- Jewish
- God
- to call
- unclean

**Translation Words - UST**

- know
- Jews
- God
- I should...say that
- God only accepts...who are Jews

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> And he was saying to them, “You yourselves **know** how unlawful it is for a **Jewish** man to associate or to visit with a foreigner, but **God** has shown me not to call any man common or **unclean**.”

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> Then Peter said to them, “You all **know** that we **Jews** think we are disobeying our laws if we associate with people who are not Jews or visit them in their homes. However, **God** has shown me {in a vision} that **I should** not say that **God only accepts** people **who are Jews**.”

**Acts 10:29**

**having been summoned (ULT)**  
**when you sent some men to ask me to come here (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “when you summoned me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**did you summon (ULT)**  
**have you asked...to come here (UST)**

The word **you** is plural. Peter is speaking to everyone who has gathered in the home of Cornelius. Use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youplural\]\]](#))

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> And therefore, having been summoned, I came without objection. Therefore I ask you, for what reason did you summon me?”

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> So when you sent some men to ask me to come here, I came right away without objection. So, please tell me, why have you asked me to come here?”



## **Acts 10:30**

**Four days ago, at this hour, I was praying at the ninth {hour} in my house (ULT)**  
**About this time three days ago, I was praying to God in my house, as I regularly do at three o'clock in the afternoon (UST)**

Some ancient texts say, "From the fourth day until this hour, I was fasting, and at the ninth hour I was praying in my house." If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider using the reading in that translation. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you follow the reading of ULT. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

**Four days ago (ULT)**  
**three days ago (UST)**

In the idiom of this culture, today was the "first day," yesterday was the "second day," the day before yesterday was the "third day," and the day before that was the "fourth day" or **Four days ago**. You may wish to express this in your translation in the way your own culture reckons time. Alternate translation, as in UST: "Three days ago" (See: [Idiom](#))

**this hour (ULT)**  
**this time (UST)**

Cornelius is using the term **hour** figuratively to mean a particular time. Alternate translation: "this time" (See: [Idiom](#))

**at the ninth {hour} (ULT)**  
**at three o'clock in the afternoon (UST)**

Cornelius is using the adjective **ninth** as a noun. ULT adds **hour** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. See how you translated this expression in 10:3. (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**at the ninth {hour} (ULT)**  
**at three o'clock in the afternoon (UST)**

In this culture, people began counting the hours each day beginning around daybreak at six o'clock in the morning. If it would be clearer in your language, you could express this in the way the people of your culture reckon time. See how you translated this expression in 10:3. (See: [Idiom](#))

**at the ninth {hour} (ULT)**  
**at three o'clock in the afternoon (UST)**

If you decide to translate this in the way that the biblical culture reckoned time, but your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here. Alternate translation: "hour nine" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And [Cornelius](#) was saying, "Four [days](#) ago, at this [hour](#), I was [praying](#) at the ninth {hour} in my [house](#), and behold, a man stood before me in bright clothing,

### UST

<sup>30</sup> [Cornelius](#) replied, "About this [time](#) three [days](#) ago, I was [praying to God](#) in my [house](#), as I regularly do at three o'clock in the afternoon. Suddenly a man whose clothes shone brightly stood in front of me



## **at the ninth {hour (ULT) at three o'clock in the afternoon (UST)**

This was the normal afternoon prayer time for Jews. Cornelius, as a Gentile who worshiped the God of Israel, would have praying at this time. Alternate translation: “during my usual afternoon prayer time” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **behold, a man (ULT) Suddenly a man (UST)**

Cornelius is using the term **behold** to focus Peter’s attention on how suddenly this **man** appeared. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: “just then a man” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## **a man (ULT) a man (UST)**

Luke says in 10:3 that Cornelius saw an angel. Cornelius calls him **a man** here because the angel appeared to him in human form. You could say that explicitly in your translation if your readers might be confused otherwise. Alternate translation: “an angel in human form” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [Cornelius](#)
- [days](#)
- [hour](#)
- [praying](#)
- [house](#)

## **Translation Words - UST**

- [Cornelius](#)
- [time](#)
- [days](#)
- [praying to God...as I regularly do](#)
- [house](#)



## **Acts 10:31**

**he says, ‘Cornelius, your prayer has been heard, and your alms have been remembered before God (ULT)  
said, ‘Cornelius, God has heard your prayer. He has also noticed that you have often given money to help poor people, and he is pleased with that (UST)**

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: “he told me that my prayer had been heard and that my alms had been remembered before God” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))Q

**he says (ULT)  
said (UST)**

To call attention to a development in the story, here Cornelius uses the present tense in past narration. If it would not be natural to do that in your language, you can use the past tense in your translation. Alternate translation: “he said”

**your prayer has been heard, and your alms have been remembered before God (ULT)  
God has heard your prayer. He has also noticed that you have often given money to help poor people, and he is pleased with that (UST)**

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God has heard your prayer and has remembered your alms” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**have been remembered before God (ULT)  
God...He has...noticed that...and he is pleased with that (UST)**

The word **remembered** does not imply that God had forgotten about these **alms**. Rather, it means that God is aware of Cornelius’s devotion and generosity and is pleased with them. See how you translated the similar expression in [10:4](#). Alternate translation: “God is aware of your alms and is pleased with them” (See: [Idiom](#))

**before (ULT)  
has...noticed that...and he is pleased with that (UST)**

Here the word **before** is being used idiomatically. Alternate translation: “in the presence of” (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Cornelius](#)
- [prayer](#)
- [alms](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> and he says, ‘[Cornelius](#), your [prayer](#) has been heard, and your [alms](#) have been remembered before [God](#).

### UST

<sup>31</sup> and said, ‘[Cornelius](#), [God](#) has heard your [prayer](#). [He](#) has also noticed that you [have often given money to help poor people](#), and he is pleased with that.

- God

## Translation Words - UST

- Cornelius
- God...He
- prayer
- have often given money to help poor people



## **Acts 10:32**

**Therefore, send to Joppa and summon Simon who is being hosted in the house of Simon, a tanner, by the sea (ULT)  
So now, send messengers to go to the city of Joppa in order to ask Simon, whose other name is Peter, to come here. He is staying near the ocean in a house that belongs to another man named Simon, who makes leather (UST)**

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: "He said I should therefore send to Joppa and summon Simon who is called Peter, who was being hosted in the house of Simon, a tanner, by the sea" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**who is called Peter (ULT)  
whose other name is Peter (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "whom people call Peter" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**He is being hosted (ULT)  
He is staying (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "He is a guest" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**summon Simon...by the sea (ULT)  
in order to ask...Simon...to come here...near the ocean (UST)**

Some ancient manuscripts add at the end of this verse, "When he comes, he will speak to you." If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider using the reading in that translation. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you follow the reading of ULT. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [send](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [summon](#)
- [is called](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [the house](#)
- [the sea](#)

## ULT

<sup>32</sup> Therefore, [send](#) to [Joppa](#) and [summon Simon](#) who is called [Peter](#). He is being hosted in [the house](#) of Simon, a tanner, by [the sea](#).<sup>[2]</sup>

## UST

<sup>32</sup> So now, [send messengers](#) to go to [the city of Joppa](#) in order to ask [Simon](#), whose [other name is Peter](#), to come [here](#). He is staying near [the ocean](#) in a [house](#) that belongs to another man named [Simon](#), who makes leather.'



## Translation Words - UST

- send messengers
- the city of Joppa
- in order to ask...to come here
- other name is
- Simon
- Peter
- the ocean
- a house



## **Acts 10:33**

**you...you...you (ULT)**  
**you...you...you (UST)**

The word **you** is singular in each of these instances. Even though Peter came with other believers, Cornelius is addressing Peter directly. So use the singular form of “you” in your translation if your language makes that distinction. (See: [Forms of ‘You’ — Singular](#) )

**and you did well {in} coming (ULT)**

This expression is a polite way of thanking Peter for coming. Alternate translation: “and we are grateful to you for coming” (See: [Politeness](#))

**we (ULT)**  
**we (UST)**

Cornelius is using the word **we** to refer to himself and to his guests, but not to Peter and the believers who came with him, so use the exclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**before God (ULT)**  
**knowing that God is with us (UST)**

Cornelius is using the word **before** idiomatically. Alternate translation: “in the presence of God” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the things you have been instructed by the Lord {to say (ULT)**  
**the things that the Lord God has commanded you to say (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the things that the Lord has told you to say” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the things you have been instructed by the Lord {to say (ULT)**  
**the things that the Lord God has commanded you to say (UST)**

Some ancient manuscripts read “instructed by the Lord.” ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read “instructed by God to say.” If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider using the reading in that translation. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you follow the reading of ULT. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [I sent](#)
- [God](#)
- [Lord](#)

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> So immediately [I sent](#) for you, and you did well {in} coming. Now therefore, we are all here before [God](#) to hear all the things you have been instructed by the [Lord](#) {to say}.” <sup>[3]</sup>

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> So [I sent some men](#) right away to ask you to come here. I certainly thank you for coming. Now we all are gathered here, knowing that [God](#) is with us. We want to hear all the things that the [Lord God](#) has commanded you to say. So please speak to us.”

## Translation Words - UST

- I sent some men
- God
- Lord God

**Acts 10:34**

**opening...his} mouth, Peter said (ULT)**  
**began to speak to them...Peter...began to**  
**speak to them...He said (UST)**

It might seem that the expression **opening his mouth ... said** contains redundant information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can abbreviate it. Alternate translation: "Peter replied" (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

**a favoritism-shower (ULT)**  
**favor only certain groups of people (UST)**

Alternate translation: "one who shows favoritism"

**God is not a favoritism-shower (ULT)**  
**God does not favor only certain groups of people (UST)**

As the next verse shows, Peter means implicitly that God does not favor Jewish people above people of other nations. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "God does not favor Jewish people above people of other nations" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Peter
- truth
- I perceive
- God
- a favoritism-shower

**Translation Words - UST**

- Peter
- Now I understand
- that it is true
- God
- favor only certain groups of people

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> And opening {his} mouth, Peter said, "In truth, I perceive that God is not a favoritism-shower."

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> So Peter began to speak to them. He said, "Now I understand that it is true that God does not favor only certain groups of people."

**Acts 10:35**

**the one fearing him and working  
righteousness (ULT)  
everyone who honors him and who does what  
pleases him (UST)**

Here, **fearing** has the sense of deep respect and awe. Alternate translation: “anyone who sincerely worships him and works righteousness”

**the one fearing him and working  
righteousness (ULT)  
everyone who honors him and who does what pleases him (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **righteousness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “anyone who worships him and does righteous deeds” or “anyone who worships him and does what is right” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [nation](#)
- [one fearing](#)
- [working](#)
- [righteousness](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [people group](#)
- [honors](#)
- [who does](#)
- [what pleases him](#)

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> Instead, in every [nation](#) the [one fearing](#) him and [working righteousness](#) is acceptable to him.

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> Instead, from every [people group](#) he accepts everyone who [honors](#) him and [who does what pleases him](#).





## **Acts 10:36**

**The word (ULT)****You know what (UST)**

Here Peter is implicitly saying to Cornelius and his guests that they know about this **word**; he says that explicitly in the next verse. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say “You know the word” in this verse as well. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**The word (ULT)****You know what (UST)**

Peter is using the term **word** figuratively to mean what God said to the Israelites by using words. Alternate translation: “The message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to the sons of Israel (ULT)****us Israelites...to us (UST)**

Peter is using the word **sons** figuratively to mean “descendants.” He is speaking of the Israelites, who were descendants of the patriarch Jacob, also known as Israel. Alternate translation: “to the people of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**proclaiming peace through Jesus Christ (ULT)****He proclaimed...the good news that people could live peacefully with him because of what Jesus the Messiah has done (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **peace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “proclaiming that Jesus Christ reconciles us to God” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**of all (ULT)****only over us Israelites...also...over all people (UST)**

The word **all** could mean: (1) all people groups, both Jewish and non-Jewish. Alternate translation: “of all people, whether or not they are Jews” (2) all created things. Alternate translation: “of everything in God’s creation”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [word](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [to...sons](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [proclaiming](#)
- [peace](#)
- [Jesus Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [the Lord](#)

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> The [word](#) that [he sent](#) to the [sons of Israel](#), [proclaiming peace](#) through [Jesus Christ](#)—he is [the Lord](#) of all—

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> You know what God told us Israelites. He proclaimed to us the good news that people could live peacefully with him because of what [Jesus the Messiah](#) has done. This Jesus is not [Lord](#) only over us Israelites. He is also [the Lord who rules](#) over all people.

## Translation Words - UST

- You know what
- God told
- the Messiah has done
- Lord...the Lord who rules
- us Israelites...to us
- us Israelites...to us
- He proclaimed...the good news that people
- could live peacefully with him
- Jesus the Messiah has done

**Acts 10:37****you know the...word (ULT)****You know what...Jesus did (UST)**

Peter is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the things that happened through the life and ministry of Jesus. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "You know the things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**throughout all Judea (ULT)****throughout the land of Judea (UST)**

Peter says **all** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "in many places in Judea" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the...after...baptism that John announced****(ULT)****what...He started to do those things after John proclaimed to people...that they should stop their sinful behavior. If they did, John baptized them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "after John preached to the people that they should repent and then baptized them"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [know](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [John](#)
- [announced](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [know](#)
- [the land of Judea](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [John](#)
- [proclaimed to people](#)
- [that they should stop their sinful behavior. If they did, John baptized them](#)

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> you [know](#) the word having happened throughout all [Judea](#), beginning from [Galilee](#), after the [baptism](#) that [John](#) [announced](#);

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> You [know](#) what Jesus did throughout [the land of Judea](#), beginning in [Galilee](#). He started to do those things after [John](#) [proclaimed to people that they should stop their sinful behavior. If they did, John baptized them](#).



## **Acts 10:38**

## Jesus, the one from Nazareth, how God anointed him (ULT)

**You know that God gave...to Jesus, the man from the town of Nazareth...him...You also know how (UST)**

It may be helpful to put the information about God anointing before the information that it was Jesus whom God anointed. Alternate translation: "how God anointed Jesus, the one from Nazareth," (See: [Information Structure](#))

## Jesus, the one from Nazareth, how God anointed him (ULT)

**You know that God gave...to Jesus, the man from the town of Nazareth...him...You also know how (UST)**

Peter is once again saying implicitly that Cornelius and his guests know about the things he is describing. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "You know how God anointed Jesus, the one from Nazareth," (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power (ULT)

**God gave his Holy Spirit...and gave him the power to do miracles (UST)**

Peter speaks figuratively of the Holy Spirit and of God's power as if they could be poured over someone like oil. Alternate translation: "God enabled him to do powerful works through the Holy Spirit" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## doing good (ULT)

**doing good deeds (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **good**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "doing good things" or "helping people" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## all the ones being oppressed by the devil (ULT)

**Whenever he met people whom the devil was causing to suffer...them (UST)**

Peter says **all** as a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: "those who were oppressed by the devil" or "many people who were oppressed by the devil" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## God was with him (ULT)

**God who enabled Jesus to do those things (UST)**

The expression **was with him** is an idiom. See how you translated it in 7:9. Alternate translation: "God was helping him" (See: [Idiom](#))

## ULT

**38** Jesus, the one from Nazareth, how God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power, who went about doing good and healing all the ones being oppressed by the devil, for God was with him.

## UST

**38** You know that God gave his Holy Spirit to Jesus, the man from the town of Nazareth, and gave him the power to do miracles. You also know how Jesus went to many places, doing good deeds. Whenever he met people whom the devil was causing to suffer, he healed them. It was God who enabled Jesus to do those things."

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Nazareth
- God
- God (2)
- anointed
- with the Holy Spirit
- with power
- doing good
- healing
- ones being oppressed
- devil

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- God (2)
- gave
- his Holy Spirit
- to Jesus
- the town of Nazareth
- the power to do miracles
- doing good deeds
- devil
- was causing to suffer
- he healed



## Acts 10:39

### we {are} witnesses (ULT)

### We...saw (UST)

Here, **we** refers to Peter and the apostles and believers who were with Jesus when he was on earth, not to Cornelius and his guests. So use the exclusive form of “we” if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### whom they also killed (ULT)

The pronoun **whom** refers to Jesus, and the pronoun **they** refers to the enemies of Jesus, the Jewish leaders who conspired against him and the Romans who ordered and carried out his execution. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “Also, the enemies of Jesus killed him” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### hanging him on a tree (ULT)

### by nailing...to a wooden cross (UST)

This expression refers to crucifixion. Peter says **tree** figuratively to mean a wooden cross. Alternate translation: “crucifying him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [are} witnesses](#)
- [of...Jews](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [saw](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [of...of Israel where he lived](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> And we {are} [witnesses](#) of all that he did, both in the country of the [Jews](#) and [in Jerusalem](#), whom they also killed, hanging him on a tree.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> “We all [saw](#) the things Jesus did in [Jerusalem](#) and around every part of the land [of Israel where he lived](#). His enemies killed him by nailing him to a wooden cross.

**Acts 10:40****this one (ULT)****Jesus...him (UST)**

The demonstrative pronoun **this** refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "Jesus" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**God raised this one up (ULT)****Jesus...God brought him back to life (UST)**

Here, **raised ... up** is an idiom that refers to causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "God caused Jesus to become alive again" (See: [Idiom](#))

**on the third day (ULT)****died on a Friday, but...that Sunday (UST)**

In the idiom of this culture, today was the "first day," tomorrow was the "second day," and the day after tomorrow was the "third day." You may wish to express this in your translation in the way your own culture reckons time. Alternate translation: "two days after he died" (See: [Idiom](#))

**caused him to be seen (ULT)****God made sure that many people would see that he was certainly alive again (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "permitted many people to see him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [raised...up](#)
- [on...day](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [died on a Friday, but...that Sunday](#)
- [God](#)
- [brought...back to life](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> [God raised](#) this one [up](#) on the third [day](#) and caused him to be seen,

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> Jesus [died on a Friday, but God brought](#) him [back to life that Sunday](#). God made sure that many people would see that he was certainly alive again.



## **Acts 10:41**

## not by all the people, but by witnesses chosen beforehand by God—by us who ate and drank with him after he rose from the dead (ULT)

If you used an active form instead of “caused him to be seen” in the previous verse, you can adjust the language here to fit. It may be helpful to make this two new sentences. Alternate translation: “All the people did not see him, but witnesses chosen beforehand by God saw him. We who ate and drank with him after he rose from the dead saw him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## by all the people (ULT) everyone (UST)

By **the people**, Peter means the Jewish people. Alternate translation: “by all the Jewish people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## chosen beforehand by God (ULT) God had previously chosen (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whom God chose beforehand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## who ate and drank with him (ULT) who saw him and even ate meals together with him (UST)

Peter is figuratively using one activity that he and the other apostles did with Jesus after he rose from the dead, eating and drinking (that is, sharing meals), to mean spending time with him personally. Alternate translation: “who spend time with him personally” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## from the dead (ULT) back to life (UST)

Peter is using the adjective **dead** as a noun. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “those who have died” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [by...people](#)
- [by witnesses](#)
- [God](#)
- [rose](#)
- [the dead](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [everyone](#)

## ULT

<sup>41</sup> not by all the [people](#), but [by witnesses](#) chosen beforehand by [God](#)—by us who ate and drank with him after he [rose](#) from [the dead](#).

## UST

<sup>41</sup> At that time God did not let [everyone](#) see him. [God](#) had previously chosen [some people to be witnesses that Jesus was alive](#). I am one of the people who saw him and even ate meals together with him just after [God brought him back to life](#).

- God
- some people to be witnesses that Jesus was alive
- God brought
- back to life



## **Acts 10:42**



**us (ULT)****us (UST)**

Here, **us** refers to Peter and the other apostles whom Jesus chose, not to Cornelius and his guests. So use the exclusive form of “us” if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**to the people (ULT)****to the people (UST)**

By **the people**, Peter means the Jewish people. Alternate translation: “to the Jewish people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the one chosen by God (ULT)****God...has chosen (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the one whom God has chosen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**of the living and the dead (ULT)****those who are still alive and those who have died before that day (UST)**

Peter is using the adjectives **living** and **dead** as nouns. (The word **living** is actually a participle, but it functions here as an adjective.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: “of those who are alive and of those who have died” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- he commanded
- to announce
- to...people
- to testify
- God
- as a Judge
- of the living
- the dead

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus commanded
- to preach
- to...people
- tell them
- God
- to judge everyone one day. He will judge
- those who are still alive
- those who have died before that day

**ULT**

<sup>42</sup> And he commanded us to announce to the people and to testify that he is the one chosen by God as a Judge of the living and the dead.

**UST**

<sup>42</sup> Jesus commanded us to preach to the people and tell them that God has chosen him to judge everyone one day. He will judge those who are still alive and those who have died before that day.

**Acts 10:43****To this one (ULT)****him...him (UST)**

The demonstrative pronoun **this** refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "To Jesus" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**through his name (ULT)****had...because of what this man, Jesus, would do for them (UST)**

Peter is speaking figuratively of the **name** of Jesus. It could mean: (1) his actions. Alternate translation: "through what Jesus has done for them" (2) his authority. Alternate translation: "by his authority" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- prophets
- bear witness, that
- believing
- in him
- receives
- forgiveness
- of sins
- name

**Translation Words - UST**

- prophets
- who wrote about...long ago told the people about...They wrote that
- had...this man, Jesus, would do for them
- believed
- in him
- God would forgive
- God would forgive
- whatever sins they...done

**ULT**

<sup>43</sup> To this one all the prophets bear witness, that everyone believing in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name."

**UST**

<sup>43</sup> All the prophets who wrote about him long ago told the people about him. They wrote that if anyone believed in him, God would forgive whatever sins they had done, because of what this man, Jesus, would do for them."

**Acts 10:44**

**the Holy Spirit fell on all the ones listening to {his} word (ULT)**

**suddenly the Holy Spirit came to all those people from other nations who were listening to the message (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively of the Holy Spirit as if it could fall on Cornelius and his guests. See how you translated the similar expression in [8:16](#). Alternate translation: “all the ones listening to his word received the Holy Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))Q

**ULT**

<sup>44</sup> While [Peter](#) was still saying these things, the [Holy Spirit](#) fell on all the ones listening to {his} word.

**UST**

<sup>44</sup> While [Peter](#) was still speaking about Jesus, suddenly the [Holy Spirit](#) came to all those people from other nations who were listening to the message.

**all the ones listening to (ULT)**

**all those people from other nations who were listening to (UST)**

While the believers who came with Peter from Joppa were also **listening** to his message, the word **all** refers to the Gentiles who were present. Alternate translation: “Cornelius and his guests, who were listening” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**his} word (ULT)**

**the message (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean what Peter was saying by using words. Alternate translation: “his message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)



## **Acts 10:45**

## the...faithful (ULT) The...believers (UST)

Luke is using the adjective **faithful** as a noun, to mean people who have faith in Jesus. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “the faithful men” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## from the circumcision (ULT) Jewish (UST)

Luke is using the term **circumcision** figuratively by association to identify these **faithful** people as Jewish. Alternate translation: “who were Jewish” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out (ULT) God had so kindly given the Holy Spirit (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God was pouring out the gift of the Holy Spirit” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## was poured out (ULT) God had...given (UST)

Luke is speaking figuratively of the Holy Spirit as if he were a liquid that could be poured on people. This image implies a generous amount. Alternate translation: “was generously given” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## the gift of the Holy Spirit (ULT) so kindly...the Holy Spirit (UST)

Luke is using a possessive form to identify **the Holy Spirit** as a **gift** from God. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit as a gift” (See: [Possession](#))

## also on the Gentiles (ULT) to people from all different nations too (UST)

Here, **also** refers to the fact that the Holy Spirit had already been given to the Jewish believers. Alternate translation: “on the Gentiles, as it had been on Jewish believers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the Gentiles (ULT) people from all different nations (UST)

**Gentiles** is a name for people who are not Jewish. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> And the **faithful** from **the circumcision**—as many as had come with **Peter**—**marveled**, because the **gift** of the **Holy Spirit** was poured out also on the **Gentiles**.

### UST

<sup>45</sup> The **Jewish believers** who had come with **Peter** from Joppa **were amazed** that God had **so kindly** given the **Holy Spirit** to **people from all different nations** too.

## Translation Words - ULT

- faithful
- the circumcision
- with Peter
- marveled
- gift
- of...Holy Spirit
- Gentiles

## Translation Words - UST

- Jewish
- believers
- with Peter
- were amazed
- so kindly
- Holy Spirit
- people from all different nations

## Acts 10:46

### speaking in languages (ULT) speak in other languages (UST)

The implication is that at least some of these **languages** were ones that the Jews recognized and could understand, but which Cornelius and his guests had not learned. This caused the Jews to acknowledge that the Holy Spirit was giving them the ability to speak these languages. Alternate translation: “speaking in languages they had not learned” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [in languages](#)
- [God](#)
- [Peter](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [in other languages](#)
- [God](#)
- [Peter](#)

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> For they heard them speaking [in languages](#) and praising [God](#). Then [Peter](#) responded,

#### UST

<sup>46</sup> The Jewish believers knew that God had done that because they were hearing those people speak [in other languages](#) to tell how great [God](#) is. Then [Peter](#) said,





## **Acts 10:47**

**No one is able to withhold water, is he, so that these are not baptized who have received the Holy Spirit as we also {did (ULT) to the other Jewish believers who were there}, “God has given them the Holy Spirit just as he gave him to us Jewish believers. Surely all of you would agree that we should baptize these people (UST)**

The first word of this sentence in Greek is a negative word that can be used to turn a negative statement into a question that expects a negative answer. ULT shows this by adding **is he**. Your language may have other ways of asking a question that expects a negative answer, for example, by changing the word order of a positive statement. Translate this in the way that would be clearest in your language. Alternate translation: “Is anyone able to withhold water so that these are not baptized who have received the Holy Spirit as we also did” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**ULT**

<sup>47</sup> “No one is able to withhold water, is he, so that these are not baptized who have received the Holy Spirit as we also {did}?”

**UST**

<sup>47</sup> {to the other Jewish believers who were there}, “God has given them the Holy Spirit just as he gave him to us Jewish believers. Surely all of you would agree that we should baptize these people!”

**No one is able to withhold water, is he, so that these are not baptized who have received the Holy Spirit as we also {did (ULT) to the other Jewish believers who were there}, “God has given them the Holy Spirit just as he gave him to us Jewish believers. Surely all of you would agree that we should baptize these people (UST)**

Peter is using the question form to convince the Jewish Christians that the Gentile believers should be baptized. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: “No one should withhold water so that these are not baptized who have received the Holy Spirit as we also did!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**No one is able to withhold water, is he, so that these are not baptized who have received the Holy Spirit as we also {did (ULT) to the other Jewish believers who were there}, “God has given them the Holy Spirit just as he gave him to us Jewish believers. Surely all of you would agree that we should baptize these people (UST)**

Even if the negative question is turned into a positive statement, a double negative still remains, the negative verb **withhold** and the negative particle **not**. This double negative can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “We should make water available so that these can be baptized who have received the Holy Spirit as we also did!” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**water (ULT)  
to the other Jewish believers who were there...Surely all of you would agree that (UST)**

Peter is figuratively using **water**, one thing necessary for baptism, to signify all the means and permission necessary for baptism. Alternate translation: “the means and permission” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## **so that these are not baptized (ULT) we should baptize these people (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “so that these do not receive baptism” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- water
- are...baptized
- have received
- Holy Spirit
- as

### **Translation Words - UST**

- to the other Jewish believers who were there...Surely all of you would agree that
- God has given...he gave
- Holy Spirit...him
- just as
- we should baptize



## **Acts 10:48**

**he commanded...them...to be baptized (ULT)**  
**Peter told...Cornelius and his guests...all of**  
**them...that they should receive baptism...**  
**Peter and the believers who had come with**  
**him from Joppa baptized (UST)**

The implication is that Peter and the believers who accompanied him from Joppa would be the ones to baptize the Gentile believers. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly.

Alternate translation: "Peter told the Gentile believers to allow the Jewish Christians to baptize them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he commanded...them...to be baptized (ULT)**  
**Peter told...Cornelius and his guests...all of**  
**them...that they should receive baptism...**  
**Peter and the believers who had come with**  
**him from Joppa baptized (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "he commanded them to receive baptism" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**that they should receive baptism as believers in Jesus the Messiah. {Peter**  
**and the believers who had come with him from Joppa baptized (UST)**

Here, **in the name** is an idiomatic way of saying "on the basis of naming." Peter commanded Cornelius and his guests to acknowledge Jesus as the Messiah as the basis of their baptism for the forgiveness of their sins, as described in [10:43](#). See how you translated the similar expression in [2:48](#). Alternate translation: "on the basis of naming Jesus as the Christ" or "upon acknowledging that Jesus is the Messiah" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [he commanded](#)
- [to be baptized](#)
- [name](#)
- [of Jesus Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [for...days](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Peter told](#)
- [that they should receive baptism...Peter and the believers who had come with him from Joppa baptized](#)
- [as believers in](#)
- [Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [for...days](#)

## ULT

**48** And [he commanded](#) them [to be baptized](#) in the [name of Jesus Christ](#). Then they asked him to stay for several [days](#).

10:19 <sup>[1]</sup> or

10:32 <sup>[2]</sup>

10:33 <sup>[3]</sup> some ancient copies read

## UST

**48** Then [Peter told](#) Cornelius and his guests [that they should receive baptism as believers in Jesus the Messiah](#). {[Peter and the believers who had come with him from Joppa baptized](#) all of them.}

After they had received baptism, Cornelius invited Peter to stay with them for several [days](#). {So he and the other Jewish believers did that.}

## Acts 11

### Acts 11 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “The Gentiles also had received the word of God”

Almost all of the first believers were Jewish. Luke writes in this chapter that many Gentiles started to believe in Jesus. They believed that the message about Jesus was true and so began to “receive the word of God.” Some of the believers in Jerusalem did not believe that Gentiles could truly follow Jesus, so Peter went to them and told them what had happened to him and how he had seen the Gentiles receive the Word of God and receive the Holy Spirit.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### “the Lord”

In verse 16, Peter refers to Jesus by a respectful title, “the Lord.” Luke refers to Jesus the same way in the second instance of the phrase in verse 21 and in verses 23 and 24. In your translation, you may wish to clarify that this means “the Lord Jesus.” Or you could say “Jesus,” as UST does. (See: [Politeness](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Peter’s summary of his visit to Cornelius

In Acts 11:5–17, Peter summarizes the events that are described in greater detail in 10:9–47. Very similar language is used throughout both passages. As you translate 11:5–17, in order to ensure that your translation is consistent, compare how you translated specific terms and phrases in 10:9–47.



## Acts 11:1

### Now (ULT) heard (UST)

Luke uses the word translated **Now** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### the...brothers (ULT)

### The...believers (UST)

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. Alternate translation, as in UST: “the other believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the...brothers (ULT)

### The...believers (UST)

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, Luke is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you decide to retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say “brothers and sisters” to indicate this. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### had...received the word of God (ULT)

### had...believed the message of God about Jesus (UST)

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that Peter shared with Cornelius and his guests by using words. Alternate translation: “the message about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [apostles](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [had...received](#)
- [word of God](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [apostles](#)
- [believers](#)
- [various towns in...province of Judea](#)
- [some non-Jewish people](#)
- [had...believed](#)
- [message of God about Jesus](#)

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now the [apostles](#) and the [brothers](#) being throughout [Judea](#) heard that the [Gentiles](#) had also [received](#) the [word of God](#).

## UST

<sup>1</sup> The [apostles](#) and other [believers](#) who lived in [various towns in the province of Judea](#) heard that [some non-Jewish people](#) had also [believed](#) the [message of God about Jesus](#).

## Acts 11:2

### came up...to Jerusalem (ULT) from Caesarea...to Jerusalem (UST)

Luke says that Peter **came up** because that was the customary way of speaking about traveling to Jerusalem, since that city is up on a mountain. Alternate translation: “returned to Jerusalem” (See: [Idiom](#))

### those from the circumcision (ULT) there were some Jewish believers in Jerusalem who {followed the teaching of the Pharisees and} believed that Jews should not associate with non-Jews (UST)

As in [10:45](#), Luke is using the term **circumcision** figuratively by association to identify as Jewish these believers who disputed with Peter. They were likely strictly observant Jews who followed the teaching of the Pharisees about Jews visiting with Gentiles. See the discussion of this in the General Notes to chapter 10. Alternate translation: “some believers who were strictly observant Jews” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [the circumcision](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish believers in Jerusalem who...followed the teaching of the Pharisees and} believed that Jews should not associate with non-Jews](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And when [Peter](#) came up to [Jerusalem](#), those from [the circumcision](#) were disputing with him,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> But there were some [Jewish believers in Jerusalem who {followed the teaching of the Pharisees and} believed that Jews should not associate with non-Jews](#). When [Peter](#) came back from Caesarea to [Jerusalem](#), they met with him and criticized him.

**Acts 11:3**

**saying that he went in to men having foreskins and ate with them (ULT)**

**They said to him, “Not only was it wrong for you to go into the home of someone who was not Jewish, you even ate there (UST)**

It may be more natural in your language to have a direct quotation here. Alternate translation: “saying, ‘You went in to men having foreskins and ate with them!’” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> saying that he went in to men having [foreskins](#) and ate with them.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> They said to him, “Not only was it wrong for you to go into the home of someone [who was not Jewish](#), you even ate there!”

**he went in to (ULT)**

**Not only was it wrong for you to go into the home of (UST)**

This expression implicitly means that Peter went in to the home of these **men**. Alternate translation: “he went into the home of” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**men having foreskins (ULT)**

**someone who was not Jewish (UST)**

The phrase **men having foreskins** refers to men who are not Jewish. It is a crude and dismissive expression, and it shows that these Jewish believers still regarded Gentiles with disdain. Alternate translation: “uncircumcised men” or “Gentiles” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [foreskins](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [who was not Jewish](#)

**Acts 11:4**

**beginning...Peter...was explaining to them (ULT)**

**told...what had happened...Peter...told... them...what had happened (UST)**

Luke is using the word **beginning** to indicate that Peter had been doing something else (listening to the complaints against him) but then began to do something new when he had the opportunity to speak. It might not be necessary to translate the word **began**, since it may seem to convey redundant information that would be not be natural to express in your language. Alternate translation: "Peter explained to them" (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> But [Peter](#), beginning, was explaining to them in order, saying,

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> So [Peter](#) told them exactly what had happened.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)

**Acts 11:5****being let down (ULT)  
suspended (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "It appeared as if someone was letting it down" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [praying](#)
- [of Joppa](#)
- [a vision](#)
- [like](#)
- [sky](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [praying {by myself}](#)
- [of Joppa](#)
- [a vision](#)
- [like](#)
- [heaven](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> "I was [praying](#) in the city [of Joppa](#), and in a trance I saw [a vision](#) of a certain container coming down, [like](#) a large sheet being let down from the [sky](#) by {its} four corners, and it came unto me,

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> He said, "I was [praying {by myself}](#) in the city [of Joppa](#), and in a trance I saw [a vision](#). I saw something [like](#) a large sheet coming down from [heaven](#), suspended by its four corners. It came down to where I was.

## Acts 11:6

### and the birds of the sky (ULT) and wild birds (UST)

From Peter's response in [11:8](#), the implication is that the law of Moses commanded the Jews not to eat some of the creatures in the container. See how you translated this in [10:12](#). Alternate translation: "... and the birds of the sky, including some that the law of Moses commanded Jews not to eat" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- of...earth
- wild beasts
- of...sky

#### Translation Words - UST

- some tame animals
- some wild animals
- wild

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup>gazing into which I was looking closely and I saw the four-legged animals of the earth, and the wild beasts, and the creeping animals, and the birds of the sky.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup>As I was gazing at it, I looked closely and I saw some tame animals and also some wild animals, reptiles, and wild birds.

**Acts 11:7****a voice saying to me (ULT)  
a voice commanding me (UST)**

Luke speaks figuratively of this **voice** as if it were a living thing that could speak on its own. Alternate translation: “someone saying to me” (See: [Personification](#))

**arising (ULT)  
Go ahead (UST)**

Here the term **arising** means that the voice wanted Peter to take action, not that the voice wanted him to stand up from a seated position. Alternate translation, as in UST: “Go ahead” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [a voice](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [arising](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [a voice](#)
- [Go ahead](#)
- [Peter](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> Then I also heard [a voice](#) saying to me, “[Peter, arising](#), kill and eat!”

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> Then I heard [a voice](#) commanding me, ‘[Go ahead, Peter](#), kill some and eat them!’

## Acts 11:8

### By no means (ULT) surely not (UST)

**Not at all** is an exclamation that communicates a strong refusal to do or even to consider something. Use an exclamation that is natural in your language for communicating this. See how you translated this in [10:14](#). Alternate translation: “No, never” (See: [Exclamations](#))

### the common or unclean (ULT) anything that our laws say we must not eat (UST)

The words **common** and **unclean** mean similar things. Peter may be using them together for emphasis. Alternate translation: “food that our Jewish laws forbid us to eat” (See: [Doublet](#))

### the common or unclean has never entered into my mouth (ULT) I have never eaten anything that our laws say we must not eat (UST)

The implication is that some the animals in the container were forbidden for Jews to eat. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “the common or unclean, like some of those animals,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the common or unclean has never entered into my mouth (ULT) I have never eaten anything that our laws say we must not eat (UST)

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the word **never** and the negative terms **common** and **unclean**. Alternate translation: “only what is holy and clean has ever entered into my mouth” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### the common or unclean has never entered into my mouth (ULT) I have never eaten anything that our laws say we must not eat (UST)

Peter is figuratively using one part of the eating process to represent the entire process. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: “I have never eaten anything that is common or unclean” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [unclean](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [anything that our laws say we must not eat](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But I said, “By no means, [Lord](#); for the common or [unclean](#) has never entered into my mouth.”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> But I replied, ‘[Lord](#), surely not! I have never eaten [anything that our laws say we must not eat!](#)’



## Acts 11:9

### What God has cleansed (ULT) I am God, so if I have made something acceptable to eat (UST)

If God is the speaker, he is referring to himself in the third person. If that would be confusing to your readers, you can use the first person in your translation. Alternate translation: "What I, God, have cleansed" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### you, do not make common (ULT) do not say it is unacceptable (UST)

The voice is adding the pronoun **you** for emphasis. If your language does not ordinarily use a pronoun with the imperative but can do so for emphasis, it would be appropriate to do that here. You could also express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "you must not make common" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the voice](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [God](#)
- [has cleansed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The voice](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [I am God](#)
- [so if I have made...acceptable to eat](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But [the voice](#) answered for a second {time} from [heaven](#), "What [God has cleansed](#), you, do not make common!"

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [The voice](#) spoke to me from [heaven](#) a second time: '[I am God, so if I have made](#) something [acceptable to eat](#), do not say it is unacceptable.'

**Acts 11:10****this...happened three times (ULT)  
This same thing...happened two more times (UST)**

This could mean: (1) that the voice told Peter three times to kill and eat, Peter refused three times, and each time the voice told him not to call unclean what God had cleansed. Alternate translation: "Peter had this exchange with the voice three times" (2) that after Peter first refused, the voice said to him three times, "What God has cleansed, you must not make common." Alternate translation: "the voice said this three times" See how you translated this in [10:16](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> And this happened three times, and everything was pulled up to the [sky](#) again.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> This same thing happened two more times. Then the sheet with all those animals and birds went back up into [heaven](#).

**was pulled up...everything (ULT)  
went...up...the sheet with all those animals and birds (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "it appeared as if someone was pulling everything up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sky](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [heaven](#)

## Acts 11:11

### we were (ULT)

### I was staying (UST)

The term **we** refers to Peter and the others in the house in Joppa. It does not include his current audience in Jerusalem. So use the exclusive form of “we” if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### behold, immediately (ULT)

### At that exact moment (UST)

Peter is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners’ attention on how soon after his vision ended these **three men** arrived. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: “right then” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### immediately (ULT)

### At that exact moment (UST)

Alternate translation: “immediately” or “at that exact moment”

### having been sent (ULT)

### Their master had sent them (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “Someone had sent them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [having been sent](#)
- [Caesarea](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)
- [Their master had sent them](#)
- [Caesarea](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And behold, immediately three men stood at the [house](#) in which we were, [having been sent](#) from [Caesarea](#) to me.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> At that exact moment, three men arrived at the [house](#) where I was staying. [Their master had sent them](#) to bring me to [Caesarea](#).

## Acts 11:12

### not hesitating (ULT)

### I should not hesitate...even though they were not Jews (UST)

This could mean: (1) that the Spirit did not want Peter to have any doubts or worries about going with the men, even though they were Gentiles. Alternate translation: “not worrying about it” (2) that the Spirit did not want Peter to feel that he should not be in the company of these men, because they were Gentiles. Alternate translation: “not making a distinction between these men and others you would associate with” See how you translated this in [10:20](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### these six brothers (ULT)

### Six Jewish believers (UST)

Peter is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. Alternate translation: “these six fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the house of the man (ULT)

### the house of the man who had sent for me (UST)

Peter implicitly means the **house** of Cornelius. Alternate translation: “the house of the man who had sent the messengers to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- brothers
- house

## Translation Words - UST

- God’s Spirit
- Jewish believers
- house

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And the Spirit said to me to go with them, not hesitating. And these six brothers also went with me, and we entered into the house of the man.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> God’s Spirit told me that I should not hesitate to go with them even though they were not Jews. Six Jewish believers went with me to Caesarea. We went into the house of the man who had sent for me.

## Acts 11:13

### to us (ULT)

### us (UST)

The term **us** refers to Peter and the believers who came with him to Caesarea. It does not include his current audience in Jerusalem. So use the exclusive form of “us” if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### Simon, called Peter (ULT)

### Simon whose other name is Peter (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated the same phrase in [10:32](#).  
Alternate translation: “whom people call Peter” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [he reported](#)
- [angel](#)
- [house](#)
- [Send](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [summon](#)
- [called](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [He told](#)
- [angel...angel](#)
- [house](#)
- [Tell some men to go](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [bring back](#)
- [whose other name is](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then [he reported](#) to us how he had seen the [angel](#) standing in his [house](#) and saying, “[Send to Joppa](#) and [summon Simon, called Peter](#).”

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [He told](#) us that he had seen an [angel](#) standing in his [house](#). The [angel](#) told him, “[Tell some men to go to Joppa](#) and [bring back Simon whose other name is Peter](#).”

**Acts 11:14****words (ULT)  
will tell (UST)**

The angel is using the term **words** figuratively to mean what Peter would say to Cornelius by using words. Alternate translation: “a message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**you...you will be saved—you...your (ULT)  
you...God will save you...your (UST)**

All the instances of the words **you** and **your** in this verse are singular, since they refer to Cornelius. So use the singular forms of those word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Forms of ‘You’ — Singular](#) )

**you will be saved (ULT)  
God will save (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It is clear from the context that God will do the action. Alternate translation, as in UST: “God will save you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**all your house (ULT)  
everyone else in your house (UST)**

Here, **house** refers figuratively to an entire household living together. Alternate translation: “all the people living in your house” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [you will be saved](#)
- [house](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God will save](#)
- [in...house](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> He will speak words to you by which [you will be saved](#)—you and all your [house](#).”

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> He will tell you how [God will save](#) you and everyone else in your [house](#).’

## Acts 11:15

### as...began...as...I...began...to speak (ULT) While...While...I was speaking to them (UST)

Peter is using the word **began** to indicate that he had been doing something else (listening to Cornelius tell why he had summoned him) but then began to do something new when Cornelius finished speaking. It might not be necessary to translate the word **began**, since it may seem to convey redundant information that would be not be natural to express in your language. Alternate translation: “as I was speaking” (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

### the Holy Spirit fell on them (ULT) the Holy Spirit suddenly came to them...he came (UST)

Peter is speaking figuratively of the Holy Spirit as if it **fell** on Cornelius and his guests. See how you translated the similar expressions in [8:16](#) and [10:44](#). Alternate translation: “they received the Holy Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### them (ULT) them (UST)

The pronoun **them** refers to Cornelius and his guests. Alternate translation: “the man who had sent for me and the others in his house” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### just as also on us (ULT) just as...to us (UST)

Here the word **us** refers to Peter himself and to the believers he is speaking to in Jerusalem, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### in the beginning (ULT) during the Pentecost festival (UST)

By **in the beginning**, Peter means the day of Pentecost. Alternate translation: “on the day of Pentecost” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Holy Spirit
- just as

## Translation Words - UST

- Holy Spirit...he
- just as

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But as I began to speak, the Holy Spirit fell on them, just as also on us in the beginning.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> While I was speaking to them, the Holy Spirit suddenly came to them just as he came to us during the Pentecost festival.

## Acts 11:16

### the word (ULT) had said (UST)

Peter is using the term **word** figuratively to mean what Jesus said by using words. Alternate translation: “the statement” (See: [Metonymy](#))

After first describing how John baptized people literally, Jesus uses baptism in this second instance as a metaphor. See the discussion in the General Notes to chapter 1, and see how you translated this in [1:5](#). Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit will come and empower you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you...will be baptized (ULT) you...you...God will baptize (UST)

You may wish to retain the metaphor of baptism in your translation. If you do, if it would be clearer in your language, you could say this with an active form, and you can say who will do the action. Alternate translation, as in UST: “God will baptize you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...Lord](#)
- [John](#)
- [baptized](#)
- [will be baptized](#)
- [with water](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [John](#)
- [baptized](#)
- [God will baptize](#)
- [with water](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Then I remembered the word of the [Lord](#), how he was saying, “[John](#) indeed [baptized with water](#); but you [will be baptized in the Holy Spirit](#).”

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Then I remembered what [Jesus](#) had said: ‘[John baptized you with water](#), but [God will baptize you with the Holy Spirit](#).’





## **Acts 11:17**

## to us (ULT) us (UST)

Here the word **us** refers to Peter himself and to the believers he is speaking to in Jerusalem, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

## God gave to them the same gift as also to us having believed (ULT)

Peter is referring to the **gift** of the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "the gift of the Holy Spirit, just as he did to us when we believed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## who was I {to be} able to hinder God (ULT) I had to cooperate with what God was doing {and baptize them (UST)

Peter is using the question form to convince his listeners that God wanted him to accept the Gentile believers. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "I could not hinder God!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## who was I {to be} able to hinder God (ULT) I had to cooperate with what God was doing {and baptize them (UST)

For emphasis, Peter is adding the pronoun **you**, which is not required with the verb. If your language does not ordinarily use a pronoun with verbs but can do so for emphasis, it would be appropriate to do that here. You could also express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "I certainly could not hinder God!" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

## to hinder God (ULT) had to cooperate with what...God...was doing...and baptize them (UST)

It may be helpful to indicate in what way Peter thought he might have hindered God. Alternate translation: "to hinder God by refusing to welcome and baptize people to whom he had given his own Spirit" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- gift
- as
- having believed
- Lord
- Lord Jesus Christ
- Christ

## ULT

<sup>17</sup> If, therefore, God gave to them the same gift as also to us having believed on the Lord Jesus Christ, who was I {to be} able to hinder God?"

## UST

<sup>17</sup> God gave us the Holy Spirit when we believed in the Lord Jesus as the Messiah. God gave those non-Jews the same Holy Spirit. So I had to cooperate with what God was doing {and baptize them}."

## Translation Words - UST

- God...God
- God
- Holy Spirit...Holy Spirit
- when we believed
- Lord
- Lord Jesus as the Messiah
- as the Messiah
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

**Acts 11:18****they became quiet (ULT)  
they stopped criticizing him (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to the Jewish believers to whom Peter was speaking. Alternate translation: “the Jewish believers became quiet” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**they became quiet (ULT)  
they stopped criticizing him (UST)**

This is an idiom that means they no longer argued. Alternate translation: “they no longer argue with Peter” (See: [Idiom](#))

**to the Gentiles also God has given repentance  
unto life (ULT)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **repentance** and **life**, you could express the same idea in other ways. Here the term **life** refers to everlasting life. Alternate translation: “God has allowed the Gentiles as well to repent and live forever” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- glorified
- God
- God
- to...Gentiles
- repentance
- life

**Translation Words - UST**

- they praised
- God
- God
- non-Jews
- everlasting life
- if they turn from their sinful behavior

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> And having heard these things, they became quiet and [glorified God](#), saying, “Then to the [Gentiles](#) also [God](#) has given [repentance](#) unto [life](#).”

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> After those Jewish believers heard what Peter said, they stopped criticizing him. Instead, [they praised God](#). They said, “It is clear that [God](#) has accepted [non-Jews](#) so they too can have [everlasting life](#) if they turn from their [sinful behavior](#).”



## **Acts 11:19**

**Then (ULT)****So (UST)**

Luke uses the word translated **Then** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**the...ones having been scattered from (ULT)**  
**many of them left...After Stephen died, people started persecuting the other believers in Jerusalem...many of them left (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This is a reference to the **persecution** that Luke describes in [8:1](#), which began after the trial and death of Stephen. See how you translated the similar expression in that verse. Alternate translation: “those who had scattered because of” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Phoenicia (ULT)****the land of Phoenicia (UST)**

The word **Phoenicia** is the name of a region. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Cyprus (ULT)****the island of Cyprus (UST)**

The word \**Cyprus*\* is the name of an island. See how you translated it in [4:36](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the word (ULT)****the good news about Jesus (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that these scattered believers proclaimed by using words. Alternate translation: “the message about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**speaking the word to no one except only to Jews (ULT)**

**In those places. they told people the good news about Jesus. But most of them told only other Jewish people (UST)**

Since Luke says here that the scattered believers spoke about Jesus **only to Jews**, but he says in the next verse that some of them spoke to “Greeks” (that is, Gentiles), it might appear in your language that Luke was contradicting himself. If so, you could reword this to avoid using an exception clause. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “Most of them believed they should speak the message about Jesus only to Jews, so that is what they did” (See: [Connect — Exception Clauses](#))

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> Then indeed the ones having been scattered from the [persecution](#) having happened over [Stephen](#) spread to [Phoenicia](#) and [Cyprus](#) and [Antioch](#), speaking the [word](#) to no one except only [to Jews](#).

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> After [Stephen](#) died, people started persecuting the other believers in [Jerusalem](#). So many of them left and went to other places. Some of them went to [the land of Phoenicia](#). Some went to [the island of Cyprus](#). Others went to [the city of Antioch in Syria](#). In those places, they told people the [good news about Jesus](#). But most of them told only [other Jewish people](#).



## Translation Words - ULT

- persecution
- Stephen
- Phoenicia
- Cyprus
- Antioch
- word
- to Jews

## Translation Words - UST

- After Stephen died, people started persecuting the other believers in Jerusalem
- After Stephen died, people started persecuting the other believers in Jerusalem
- the land of Phoenicia
- the island of Cyprus
- the city of Antioch in Syria
- good news about Jesus
- other Jewish people

## Acts 11:20

### men, Cypriots and Cyrenians (ULT) men from the island of Cyprus and from the city of Cyrene in north Africa (UST)

Luke is describing these **men** in an idiomatic way. Alternate translation: "Cypriot and Cyrenian men" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Cypriots (ULT) from the island of Cyprus (UST)

The word **Cypriots** is the name for people who come from the island of Cyprus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Cyrenians (ULT) from the city of Cyrene in north Africa (UST)

The word **Cyrenians** is the name for people who come from the city of Cyrene. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the Greeks (ULT) non-Jewish people...them (UST)

Luke assumes that his readers will know that these people he calls **Greeks** were not necessarily from Greece; rather, they were Greek-speaking people who were also Gentiles, not Jews. Alternate translation: "Gentiles who spoke Greek" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Cypriots](#)
- [Cyrenians](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [Greeks](#)
- [proclaiming](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [from the island of Cyprus](#)
- [from the city of Cyrene in north Africa](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [non-Jewish people...them](#)
- [telling...that](#)
- [Jesus is...Messiah](#)
- [Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But some of them were men, [Cypriots](#) and [Cyrenians](#), who, having come to [Antioch](#), were speaking also to the [Greeks](#), [proclaiming](#) the [Lord Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> But some of the believers were men [from the island of Cyprus](#) and [from the city of Cyrene in north Africa](#). They went to [Antioch](#) and also spoke with [non-Jewish people](#), [telling them that Jesus is the Messiah](#).



## **Acts 11:21**

**the hand of the Lord (ULT)**  
**The Lord God...powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively. As a result (UST)**

In this instance, Luke seems to mean God the Father when he says **the Lord**. In 4:29–30, the believers pray, “Lord ... stretch out your hand to heal and for signs and wonders to happen through the name of your holy Servant Jesus.” Luke seems to be describing these events as part of the answer to that prayer. Alternate translation: “the hand of God the Lord” (See: [Politeness](#))

**the hand (ULT)**  
**powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively. As a result (UST)**

Here, the **hand** figuratively represents power, since hands give people the capability to do things. Alternate translation: “the power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**was...with them (ULT)**  
**was...powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively. As a result (UST)**

When Luke says that God *with*\* the men from Cyprus and Cyrene who were proclaiming the gospel, this is an idiom that means God was working through them. Alternate translation: “was working through them” (See: [Idiom](#))

**turned to the Lord (ULT)**  
**and trusted in Jesus (UST)**

Luke speaks figuratively of these Gentiles in Antioch as if they physically **turned to the Lord**. He means that they stopped living in one way and began to live in another way. They believed in Jesus and started to obey him. Alternate translation: “became disciples of Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to the Lord (ULT)**  
**in Jesus (UST)**

In this instance, Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title, as the General Notes to this chapter discuss. Alternate translation: “to the Lord Jesus” (See: [Politeness](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the hand](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [believing](#)
- [turned](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> And [the hand of the Lord](#) was with them; and a great number, [believing](#), [turned](#) to the [Lord](#).

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> [The Lord God](#) was [powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively. As a result](#), very many non-Jewish people [believed their message and trusted in Jesus](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- The Lord God
- Jesus
- powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively. As a result
- believed their message
- and trusted



## **Acts 11:22**



**came...the report about them...to the ears of the church that was in Jerusalem (ULT)  
learned that...The group of believers in Jerusalem...learned that...many people in Antioch were believing in Jesus (UST)**

In your language, the expression **was heard in the ears** might seem to convey redundant information that would be not be natural to express. If so, you can abbreviate it. Alternate translation: “the word about them was heard by the church being in Jerusalem” (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

**And the report about them came to the ears of the church that was in Jerusalem (ULT)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It is clear from the context that God will do the action. Alternate translation: “the church being in Jerusalem heard the word about them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the report (ULT)  
learned that (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean a report about the Gentile believers in Antioch. Alternate translation: “a report” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**them...they sent out (ULT)  
many people in Antioch were believing in Jesus...they sent...to teach and encourage the new believers (UST)**

The pronoun **them** refers to the Gentile believers in Antioch, and the pronoun **they** refers to the leaders of the church in Jerusalem. It may be helpful to your readers to clarify this. Alternate translation: “these Gentile believers ... its leaders” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [report](#)
- [of...church](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [they sent out](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Antioch](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [group of believers](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [learned that](#)
- [they sent...to teach and encourage the new believers](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And the [report](#) about them came to the ears of the [church](#) that was in [Jerusalem](#), and [they sent out Barnabas](#) as far as [Antioch](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The [group of believers](#) in [Jerusalem](#) [learned that](#) many people in Antioch were believing in Jesus. So [they sent Barnabas](#) to [Antioch](#) {to teach and encourage the new believers}.

- [Barnabas](#)
- [Antioch](#)

## Acts 11:23

### the grace of God (ULT)

### God had acted kindly toward the people there (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "how gracious God had been to them" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### with purpose of heart (ULT) completely (UST)

Here the **heart** figuratively represents the will and desires of a person. Alternate translation: "with firm determination" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- grace
- of God
- rejoiced
- was encouraging
- with...Lord
- of heart

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- had acted kindly toward the people there
- This made him very happy
- He encouraged
- in the Lord Jesus
- completely

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> who, having come and having seen the [grace of God](#), [rejoiced](#) and [was encouraging](#) {them} all to remain with the [Lord](#) with purpose [of heart](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> When Barnabas got to Antioch, he recognized that [God had acted kindly toward the people there](#). [This made him very happy](#). [He encouraged](#) all of the new believers to continue to trust [in the Lord Jesus completely](#).



## **Acts 11:24**

## For (ULT) Because of what Barnabas did (UST)

Luke is using the word **For** to introduce the reason why Barnabas encouraged the new believers in Antioch so well. Alternate translation: "He was able to do this because" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

## full of the Holy Spirit (ULT) whom the Holy Spirit completely controlled... completely (UST)

Luke speaks figuratively of Barnabas as if he were a container that was **full** of the **Holy Spirit** and of **faith**. Alternate translation: Alternate translation: "who was inspired by the Holy Spirit and who had strong faith" (See: [Metaphor](#) )

## and full of the Holy Spirit and of faith (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **faith**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "who was inspired by the Holy Spirit and who believed firmly in Jesus" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) )

## a considerable crowd was added (ULT) many more people in Antioch believed (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It is clear from the context that God did the action. Alternate translation: "God added a considerable crowd" (See: [Active or Passive](#) )

## to the Lord (ULT) in Jesus (UST)

Luke figuratively says **the Lord** (a title for Jesus) to mean the community of believers in Jesus. Alternate translation: "to the community of believers in Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#) )

## Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [full](#)
- [of the Holy Spirit](#)
- [of faith](#)
- [to the Lord](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [good](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [whom...completely controlled...completely](#)
- [He trusted God](#)

## ULT

<sup>24</sup> For he was a [good](#) man and [full of the Holy Spirit](#) and [of faith](#), and a considerable crowd was added [to the Lord](#).

## UST

<sup>24</sup> Barnabas was a [good](#) man whom [the Holy Spirit completely controlled](#). [He trusted God completely](#). Because of what Barnabas did, many more people in Antioch believed in [Jesus](#).

- Jesus

## Acts 11:25

### he went out (ULT)

### Barnabas left Antioch and went (UST)

The pronoun **he** refers to Barnabas. Alternate translation: “Barnabas went out” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Tarsus](#)
- [Saul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the city of Tarsus in the province of Cilicia](#)
- [Saul](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> And he went out to [Tarsus](#) to search for [Saul](#).

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then Barnabas left Antioch and went to [the city of Tarsus in the province of Cilicia](#) to look for [Saul](#).





## **Acts 11:26**

**having found him, he brought him (ULT)**  
**After Barnabas found Saul, he brought him back (UST)**

The pronoun **he** refers to Barnabas, and the pronoun **him** refers to Saul. Alternate translation: “and having found Saul, Barnabas brought him” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**And...And it happened to them that for...a whole year they were gathered together with the church (ULT)**

This wording suggests that Barnabas and Saul did not know initially how long they would be meeting with the church in Antioch, but in the end it amounted to a whole year. If it would be clearer in your language, you could express it that way. Alternate translation: “in the end they were gathered together with the church for an entire year”

**to them...they were gathered together with the church (ULT)**

**Barnabas and Saul...met regularly...with the church there (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “they gathered together with the church” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**were...called...the disciples (ULT)**  
**who called...the disciples of Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people called the disciples” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Christians (ULT)**  
**Christians (UST)**

The word **Christians** is a name for people who believe that Jesus is the Christ, that is, the Messiah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**with...first...Antioch (ULT)**  
**with...Antioch were the first people (UST)**

Alternate translation: “for the first time in Antioch”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Antioch](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [for...a...year](#)

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> And having found him, he brought him to [Antioch](#). And it happened to them that for even a whole [year they were gathered together](#) with the [church](#) and [taught](#) a considerable crowd. And the [disciples](#) were first [called Christians](#) in [Antioch](#).

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> After Barnabas found Saul, he brought him back to [Antioch to help teach the believers there](#). Barnabas and Saul [met regularly](#) with the [church there for a whole year](#). [They taught](#) large numbers of people [about Jesus](#). The people of [Antioch](#) were the first people [who called the disciples of Jesus "Christians."](#)

- they were gathered together
- church
- taught
- disciples
- were...called
- Christians

## Translation Words - UST

- Antioch to help teach the believers there
- Antioch
- met regularly
- Christians
- church there
- for a...year
- They taught...about Jesus
- who called
- disciples of Jesus

## Acts 11:27

### Now (ULT)

Luke is using the word translated **Now** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### in these...days (ULT)

### During...that Barnabas and Saul were in Antioch...the time (UST)

Luke is using the word **days** idiomatically to describe a specific time. Alternate translation: “at this time” (See: [Idiom](#))

### came down (ULT)

### came (UST)

Luke says that these prophets **came down** from Jerusalem because that was the customary way of speaking about traveling from Jerusalem, since that city is up on a mountain. Alternate translation: “traveled” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Antioch](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [time](#)
- [some believers who were prophets](#)
- [there](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Now in these [days](#) [prophets](#) came down from [Jerusalem](#) to [Antioch](#).

### UST

<sup>27</sup> During the [time](#) that Barnabas and Saul were in Antioch, [some believers who were prophets](#) came [there](#) from [Jerusalem](#).

## Acts 11:28

### having arisen (ULT) stood up {in order to speak} (UST)

Alternate Here, **having arisen** means that Agabus stood up as a symbolic action to indicate that he had something important to say. Alternate translation: “having stood up to show that he had something important to say” (See: [Symbolic Action](#)) translation: “and the Holy Spirit enabled him to prophesy that”

### over the whole world (ULT) in many countries (UST)

The term **whole** is a generalization for emphasis. Alternate translation: “throughout the world” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### the...world (ULT) countries (UST)

Luke assumes that his readers will know that by **world**, he means the part of the world that they were familiar with. Alternate translation: “the ... Roman Empire” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### upon Claudius (ULT) when Claudius was the Roman emperor (UST)

The expression **upon Claudius** is an idiom. Alternate translation: “during the reign of Claudius” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Claudius (ULT) Claudius was the Roman emperor (UST)

The word **Claudius** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by name](#)
- [having arisen](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [that} a...famine](#)
- [world](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [whose name was](#)
- [stood up {in order to speak](#)
- [God’s Spirit enabled him](#)
- [a...shortage of food](#)
- [countries](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> And one of them, Agabus [by name](#), [having arisen](#), signified through the [Spirit {that} a great famine](#) was about to occur over the whole [world](#). This happened upon Claudius.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> One of them [whose name was](#) Agabus [stood up {in order to speak}](#). [God’s Spirit enabled him](#) to prophesy that there would soon be a severe [shortage of food](#) in many [countries](#). (This shortage happened when Claudius was the Roman emperor.)

## Acts 11:29

**of the disciples...they determined, just as any...of the disciples...was prospering, each of them...to send {something (ULT) the...believers there...they decided that...Each of them decided...as much money as he was able to give...they would send money...to give (UST)**

The implication is that while some of the disciples were **prospering** greatly but others were struggling financially, every one of them resolved to send something according to his own means. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “while some of the believers in Antioch were rich and others were poor, every one of them resolved to send what they could afford” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to the...brothers (ULT)  
who lived...the believers (UST)**

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. Alternate translation: “to their fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to the...brothers (ULT)  
who lived...the believers (UST)**

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, Luke is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say “to the brothers and sisters” to indicate this. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [of the disciples](#)
- [to send {something](#)
- [assistance](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [Judea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers there](#)
- [they would send money...to give](#)
- [to help](#)
- [the believers](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [as much money](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> So they determined, [just as](#) any [of the disciples](#) was prospering, each of them, [to send {something}](#) for [assistance](#) to the [brothers](#) living in [Judea](#),

### UST

<sup>29</sup> {When the [believers there](#) heard what Agabus said,} they decided that [they would send money to help the believers](#) who lived in [Judea](#). Each of them decided [to give as much money](#) as he was able to give.

**Acts 11:30****to the elders (ULT)  
to the leaders of the believers in Jerusalem  
(UST)**

Luke assumes that his readers will know that he is referring to the **elders** who were the leaders of the church in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “to the elders in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**by the hand of Barnabas and Saul (ULT)  
with Barnabas and Saul (UST)**

Here, the **hand**, one part of a person, figuratively represents the action of the whole person. Alternate translation: “by having Barnabas and Saul take to them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**by the hand of Barnabas and Saul (ULT)  
with Barnabas and Saul (UST)**

If you retain the figurative word **hand** in your translation, it may be more natural in your language to use the plural form of that word, if you would not ordinarily speak of two people having one hand. Alternate translation: “by the hands of Barnabas and Saul”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sending it](#)
- [elders](#)
- [the hand](#)
- [of Barnabas](#)
- [Saul](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [They sent the money](#)
- [with](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [leaders of the believers in Jerusalem](#)

**ULT**

<sup>30</sup> which indeed they did, [sending it](#) to the [elders](#) by [the hand of Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#).

**UST**

<sup>30</sup> [They sent the money with Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#) to the [leaders of the believers in Jerusalem](#).



## **Acts 12**

### **Acts 12 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Chapter 12 tells what happened to King Herod while Barnabas and Saul back were delivering money from Antioch to Jerusalem, as described in 11:25-30. Herod killed one of the apostles, James, and he put Peter in prison. God helped Peter escape from the prison, so Herod executed the prison guards, but God then killed Herod.



## **Acts 12:1**

**Now (ULT)**

Luke is using the word translated **Now** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**at that...time (ULT)****About this same...time (UST)**

The phrase **that time** implicitly refers to the time that Luke has just described, when the church in Antioch sent Barnabas and Saul to Jerusalem with money to help the believers there. Alternate translation: “at the time when the church in Antioch sent assistance to the believers in Jerusalem,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Herod (ULT)****Herod Agrippa (UST)**

The word **Herod** is the name of a man. See how you translated it in 4:27. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**laid on...hands to harm some from the church (ULT)****sent soldiers to arrest...The soldiers put them in prison...sent soldiers to arrest...some of the leaders of the group of believers in Jerusalem...The soldiers put them in prison...The king did that because he wanted to hurt the believers and their community (UST)**

The expression **laid on hands** figuratively means to arrest someone by association with the way that arresting officers might physically take hold of a person with their **hands**. See how you translated it in 5:18. Alternate translation: “arrested some from the church, intending to harm them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**laid on...hands to harm some from the church (ULT)****sent soldiers to arrest...The soldiers put them in prison...sent soldiers to arrest...some of the leaders of the group of believers in Jerusalem...The soldiers put them in prison...The king did that because he wanted to hurt the believers and their community (UST)**

Herod most likely did not do this himself, Rather, as a ruler, he ordered his soldiers to arrest **some from the church**. Luke is speaking figuratively of Herod, one person who was involved in this action, to mean everyone who was involved. Alternate translation: “had his soldiers arrest some from the church, intending to harm them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [time](#)
- [Herod the king](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> Now at that [time Herod the king](#) laid on [hands to harm](#) some from the church.

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> About this same [time](#), [King Herod Agrippa](#) [sent soldiers to arrest](#) some of the leaders of the [group of believers in Jerusalem](#). [The soldiers put them in prison](#). [The king did that because he wanted to hurt](#) the believers [and their community](#).

- king
- hands
- to harm
- church

## Translation Words - UST

- time
- King Herod Agrippa
- King
- sent soldiers to arrest...The soldiers put them in prison
- group of believers in Jerusalem...and their community
- The king did that because he wanted to hurt

## Acts 12:2

**James...of John (ULT)**  
**of the apostle James...of the apostle John**  
**(UST)**

The words **James** and **John** are the names of men. See how you translated them in 1:13. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**he killed...James (ULT)**  
**He commanded a soldier to cut off the head...**  
**So the soldier did that...of the apostle James**  
**(UST)**

It was probably not Herod himself who **killed James**. Rather, he most likely ordered his soldiers to do this. Alternate translation: "he had his soldiers execute James" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- James
- brother
- of John
- with the sword

### Translation Words - UST

- He commanded a soldier to cut off the head...So the soldier did that
- of the apostle James
- older brother
- of the apostle John

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And he killed James, the brother of John, with the sword.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> He commanded a soldier to cut off the head of the apostle James, the older brother of the apostle John. So the soldier did that.

## Acts 12:3

### to the Jews (ULT)

### the leaders of the Jewish people (UST)

Luke is using the name of a whole group, **the Jews**, to refer to one part of that group, its leaders. Alternate translation: "to the leaders of the Jews" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### the days of unleavened bread (ULT)

### the festival when the Jewish people ate bread without yeast (UST)

This phrase refers to the time of a Jewish religious observance that led up to the celebration of Passover. While it was observed on specific **days**, Luke is likely using the word "days" idiomatically to describe a particular time. Alternate translation: "during the Passover season" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [to the Jews](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [the days](#)
- [of unleavened bread](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [leaders of the Jewish people](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [the festival](#)
- [when the Jewish people ate bread without yeast](#)

## ULT

<sup>3</sup> And seeing that this was pleasing [to the Jews](#), he proceeded to arrest [Peter](#) also (and those were [the days of unleavened bread](#)),

## UST

<sup>3</sup> When Herod realized that he had pleased the [leaders of the Jewish people](#), he commanded soldiers to arrest [Peter](#) too. This happened during [the festival when the Jewish people ate bread without yeast](#).

## Acts 12:4

### and whom, having arrested, he put in prison (ULT)

The pronouns **whom** refers to Peter, and the pronoun **he** refers to Herod. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "After Herod had arrested Peter, he put him in prison" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### to four quaternions of soldiers (ULT) four groups of soldiers...Each group had four soldiers (UST)

These **quaternions** were groups of four **soldiers** each. They would have taken turns guarding Peter in six-hour shifts throughout the day and night. Two soldiers would have been at Peter's side and the other two soldiers by the entrance. Your language and culture may have a term for a group of four soldiers that you can use in your translation. You could also explain the meaning of the term "quaternion," as UST does. Alternate translation: "to four teams of soldiers" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### intending...to bring him out to the people (ULT) Herod wanted...He then planned...to bring Peter out of prison and judge him in front of the Jewish people...to execute Peter (UST)

The phrase **to bring him out** is an idiom. Alternate translation: "Herod planned to judge Peter in a public trial in the presence of the Jewish people" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [having arrested](#)
- [prison](#)
- [of soldiers](#)
- [to the people](#)
- [Passover](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [After the soldiers arrested](#)
- [prison](#)
- [of soldiers](#)
- [Jewish people](#)
- [Passover Festival](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> and whom, [having arrested](#), he put in [prison](#), handing him over to four quaternions [of soldiers](#) to guard him, intending to bring him out [to the people](#) after the [Passover](#).

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> [After the soldiers arrested](#) Peter, they put him in [prison](#). Herod assigned four groups [of soldiers](#) to guard Peter. Each group had four soldiers. Herod wanted to bring Peter out of prison and judge him in front of the [Jewish people](#) after the [Passover Festival](#) was finished. {He then planned to execute Peter.}



## Acts 12:5

### Peter...Peter...was being kept (ULT)

### Peter...for several days...Peter...stayed (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to specify who did the action, it is clear from the context that it was the soldiers. Alternate translation: “the soldiers were guarding Peter” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### prayer...was being made earnestly to God for him by the church (ULT)

### were...praying...the other believers in their group in Jerusalem...were...urgently...

### praying...to God, asking him to help Peter (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the church was earnestly praying to God for him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- prison
- prayer
- God
- church

## Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- prison
- other believers in their group in Jerusalem
- were...praying
- God

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So indeed Peter was being kept in the prison, but prayer was being made earnestly to God for him by the church.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> So for several days Peter stayed in prison. But the other believers in their group in Jerusalem were urgently praying to God, asking him to help Peter.

## Acts 12:6

### to bring him out (ULT) to bring Peter out of prison and have him executed publicly (UST)

Here, the word translated **to bring ... out** is slightly different from the word translated that same way in [12:4](#). It means to put someone on trial, and the implications, based on the fact that Herod saw that it pleased the Jewish leaders when he executed James, are that Herod planned to execute Peter after this trial. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “to put Peter on trial and then execute him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### bound with two chains (ULT) A soldier on one side of him had locked a chain onto Peter's wrist and his own wrist. A soldier on the other side of Peter had done the same thing (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “with two chains binding him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And when [Herod](#) was going to bring him out, that night [Peter](#) was sleeping between two [soldiers](#), [bound](#) with two chains, and guards before the door [were](#) watching the [prison](#).

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> It was the night before [Herod](#) planned to bring Peter out of prison and have him executed publicly. [Peter](#) was sleeping in the prison between two [soldiers](#). [A soldier on one side of him had locked a chain onto Peter's wrist and his own wrist. A soldier on the other side of Peter had done the same thing.](#) Two more soldiers [were guarding](#) the [prison](#) doors.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Herod](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [bound](#)
- [were](#)
- [prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Herod](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [A soldier on one side of him had locked a chain onto Peter's wrist and his own wrist. A soldier on the other side of Peter had done the same thing](#)
- [were guarding](#)
- [prison](#)

## Acts 12:7

### behold (ULT) Suddenly (UST)

Luke is using the term **behold** to focus readers' attention on how suddenly this **angel** appeared. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: "suddenly an angel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- an angel
- of the Lord
- a light
- of Peter
- Get up
- hands

#### Translation Words - UST

- an angel
- from the Lord God
- A bright light
- him
- Get up
- wrists. {However, the soldiers were not aware of what was happening}

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And behold, an angel of the Lord stood by him, and a light shone in the prison cell. And striking the side of Peter, he awakened him, saying, "Get up in haste," and his chains fell away from {his} hands.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Suddenly, an angel from the Lord God stood beside Peter. A bright light shone in his cell. {But Peter was still sleeping so soundly that} the angel poked him in the side to wake him up. The angel told him, "Get up quickly!" {While Peter was getting up,} the chains fell off from his wrists. {However, the soldiers were not aware of what was happening.}

## Acts 12:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- Gird yourself
- sandals
- outer garment

### Translation Words - UST

- angel
- Fasten your belt around you
- sandals
- cloak

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And the **angel** said to him, “**Gird yourself** and tie on your **sandals**.” So he did thus. And he said to him, “Put on your **outer garment** and follow me.”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then the **angel** said to him, “**Fasten your belt around you** and tie your **sandals** onto your feet!” And Peter did what the angel told him to do. Then the angel told him, “Wrap your **cloak** around you and follow me!”

## Acts 12:9

**he did not know that what was being done by the angel is real (ULT)**

**He had no idea that all this was really happening (UST)**

It may be more natural in your language to have a direct quotation here and to add a sentence break. Alternate translation: "he did not realize, 'What is being done by the angel is real!'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**what was being done by the angel (ULT)**  
**all this (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "what the angel was doing" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**he was thinking...he was seeing a vision (ULT)**  
**He thought...that he was dreaming (UST)**

It may be more natural in your language to have a direct quotation here. Alternate translation: "he was thinking, 'I am seeing a vision'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he did...know](#)
- [angel](#)
- [real](#)
- [a vision](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He had...idea](#)
- [all this](#)
- [really happening](#)
- [that he was dreaming](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And going out, he followed him, but [he did not know](#) that what was being done by the [angel is real](#), but he was thinking he was seeing [a vision](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So Peter {put on his cloak and sandals and} followed the angel out of the prison cell. [He had no idea](#) that [all this](#) was [really happening](#). He thought [that he was dreaming](#).

## Acts 12:10

**having passed by...the first guard and the second (ULT)**

**Peter and the angel walked by...the soldiers who were guarding the two doors, but the soldiers did not see them (UST)**

The implication is that the guards were not able to see Peter and the angel as they walked by. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "having passed by the first guard and the second without being noticed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**and the second (ULT)  
the soldiers who were guarding the two doors, but the soldiers did not see them (UST)**

The word **guard** can be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "and the second guard" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#)
- [angel](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gate](#)
- [angel](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But having passed by the first guard and the second, they came to the iron [gate](#) leading into the city, which opened for them by itself. And having gone out, they went down one street, and suddenly the [angel](#) went away from him.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Peter and the angel walked by the soldiers who were guarding the two doors, but the soldiers did not see them. Then they came to the iron [gate](#) that led into the city. The gate swung open for them, and Peter and the angel walked out of the prison. After they had walked some distance along one street, the [angel](#) suddenly disappeared.



## **Acts 12:11**



**Peter, having come to himself, said (ULT)  
Peter finally realized that this was not a  
vision, it was really happening. So he thought  
(UST)**

The phrase **having come to himself** is an idiom. Alternate translation: “when Peter became fully awake and alert, he said” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the hand (ULT)  
planned to do to me (UST)**

Here, **hand** figuratively represents the capability of a person. Alternate translation: “the power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**all the expectation of the Jewish people (ULT)  
from all the things that the Jewish leaders expected would happen (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **expectation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “all that the Jewish people expected that Herod would do to me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**of the Jewish people (ULT)  
the Jewish leaders (UST)**

Luke is likely using the phrase **the Jewish people** to refer to one part of that group, its leaders. Alternate translation: “of the leaders of the Jewish people” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- truly
- Jewish
- I...know
- Lord
- sent out
- angel
- delivered
- the hand
- of Herod
- of the...people

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- I know
- Jewish
- leaders
- Lord God

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And Peter, having come to himself, said, “Now I truly know that the Lord sent out his angel and delivered me from the hand of Herod and all the expectation of the Jewish people.”

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Then Peter finally realized that this was not a vision, it was really happening. So he thought, “Now I know that the Lord God truly sent an angel to help me. He rescued me from what Herod planned to do to me and from all the things that the Jewish leaders expected would happen.”

- truly
- sent...to help me
- an angel
- rescued
- Herod
- planned to do to me

## Acts 12:12

### of Mary (ULT)

### Mary's...She was (UST)

The word **Mary** is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### of John...Mark (ULT)

### of John...Mark (UST)

The words **John** and **Mark** are two names of the same man. **Mark** is a Roman name, and it may be a name that this man used for official purposes and in interactions with people who spoke Latin. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### called Mark (ULT)

### whose other name was Mark (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "whom people called Mark" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### many (ULT)

### Many believers (UST)

Luke is using the adjective **many** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "many people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [of John, called Mark](#)
- [called](#)
- [gathered together](#)
- [praying](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)
- [of John, whose other name was Mark](#)
- [whose other name was](#)
- [had assembled](#)
- [they were praying that God would help Peter somehow](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And having realized this, he went to the [house](#) of Mary, the mother [of John, called Mark](#), where many were [gathered together](#) and [praying](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When Peter realized that God had rescued him, he went to Mary's [house](#). She was the mother [of John, whose other name was Mark](#). Many believers [had assembled](#) there, and [they were praying that God would help Peter somehow](#).

## Acts 12:13

### when...knocked at...he (ULT)

### knocked at...Peter (UST)

To “knock” at a door means to hit it a few times to let a person inside the house know you are standing outside. You could translate this expression with the way people in your culture show that they have arrived at a house, such as “call out” or “cough” or “clap.” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### the door of the gate (ULT)

### the outer entrance...the door (UST)

Here, the word **gate** probably describes an entrance from the street to a courtyard in front of the house. If houses in your culture have a similar entrance, in your translation you could use the name in your language for it. If not, you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: “the door of the entrance from the street to the courtyard” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Rhoda (ULT)

### Rhoda (UST)

The word **Rhoda** is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the gate](#)
- [a servant girl](#)
- [by name](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [outer entrance](#)
- [a servant girl](#)
- [whose name was](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And when he knocked at the door of [the gate](#), [a servant girl](#), Rhoda [by name](#), came to answer.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> When Peter knocked at the [outer entrance](#), [a servant girl whose name was](#) Rhoda came to find out who was outside the door.

## Acts 12:14

### from joy (ULT) but she was so happy and excited that (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **joy**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "because she was so joyful" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- having recognized
- voice
- of Peter
- Peter
- joy
- gate
- gate
- running inside
- she reported

#### Translation Words - UST

- she recognized
- his
- Peter
- voice
- but she was so happy and excited that
- door
- door
- she ran back into the house
- She told the other believers that

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And **having recognized** the **voice of Peter**, from **joy** she did not open the **gate**, but **running inside**, **she reported**, "Peter is standing at the **gate**!"

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> {When Peter responded,} **she recognized his voice**, **but she was so happy and excited that** she forgot to open the **door**! Instead, **she ran back into the house**. **She told the other believers that Peter** was standing outside the **door**.

**Acts 12:15****they...said (ULT)****they...said (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to the people who were inside the house praying. Alternate translation: "the people who were inside the house praying said" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**It is his angel (ULT)****No, it cannot be Peter.} It is probably his angel (UST)**

Some Jews believed in guardian angels, and the people inside the house may have thought that Peter's **angel** had come to them.

Alternate translation: "What you saw was Peter's guardian angel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [angel](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [angel](#)

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> But they said to her, "You are insane!" But she was insisting that it was thus. So they were saying, "It is his [angel](#)."

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> But they said to her, "You must be crazy!" But she continued to say that it was really true. They kept responding, "{No, it cannot be Peter.} It is probably his [angel](#)."

## Acts 12:16

**and opening, they saw him (ULT)  
So when some of them finally opened the  
door, they saw that it was Peter (UST)**

While the word **they** refers to the people in the house as in the previous verse, it is likely that only some of them came to the door. Alternate translation: “so some of the people in the house came and opened the door, and they saw him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [marveled](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [they could hardly believe it](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But [Peter](#) was continuing knocking, and opening, they saw him and [marveled](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> But [Peter](#) kept knocking the whole time those inside were talking. So when some of them finally opened the door, they saw that it was Peter, and [they could hardly believe it!](#)





## **Acts 12:17**

## to James (ULT) James, the leader of our group (UST)

Peter assumes that his listeners will know that by **James**, he means the brother of Jesus who was the leader of the church in Jerusalem. UST models one way to express this implicit information. However, since this is something that Peter assumes his listeners will know, you may find it preferable to explain this in a footnote rather than add information to the text. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## to James (ULT) James, the leader of our group (UST)

The word **James** is the name of a man. See how you translated the same name for different men in [1:13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## the brothers (ULT) our other fellow believers (UST)

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. Alternate translation: “the other believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## the brothers (ULT) our other fellow believers (UST)

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, Luke is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you decide to retain the metaphor in your translation, you could say “the brothers and sisters” to indicate this. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [with...hand](#)
- [he described](#)
- [Report](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [prison](#)
- [to James](#)
- [brothers](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [his hand](#)
- [Then he told them exactly](#)
- [Tell](#)
- [Lord God](#)
- [prison](#)
- [James, the leader of our group](#)
- [other fellow believers](#)

## ULT

<sup>17</sup> And having motioned to them with {his} [hand](#) to be silent, [he described](#) how the [Lord](#) had led him out from the [prison](#). And he said, “[Report](#) these things [to James](#) and the [brothers](#).” And having gone out, he went to another place.

## UST

<sup>17</sup> Peter waved [his hand](#) to get them to be quiet. [Then he told them exactly](#) how the [Lord God](#) had let him out of the [prison](#). He also said, “[Tell James, the leader of our group](#), and our [other fellow believers](#) what has happened.” Then Peter left and went away somewhere else.

## Acts 12:18

### Now (ULT)

Luke is using the word translated **Now** to introduce a significant development in this story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### no small disturbance (ULT) terribly upset (UST)

Luke is using a figure of speech that expresses a positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. Alternate translation: "a great disturbance" (See: [Litotes](#))

### among the soldiers, what then had Peter become (ULT) the soldiers who had been guarding Peter {saw that he was gone}. They wondered what had happened to him (UST)

It may be more natural in your language to have a direct quotation here. Alternate translation: "among the soldiers: 'What then had Peter become?'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### what then had Peter become (ULT) They wondered what had happened to him (UST)

The word translated **become** can be used to indicate that a person has entered a new condition, and in this context it indicates that Peter has changed his location. Alternate translation: "where then Peter had gone" or, as a direct quotation, "Where then had Peter gone?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The next morning](#)
- [soldiers who had been guarding Peter {saw that he was gone](#)
- [him](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Now when [day](#) had come, there was no small disturbance among the [soldiers](#), what then had [Peter](#) become.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> The next morning the [soldiers who had been guarding Peter {saw that he was gone}](#). They wondered what had happened to [him](#), and they became terribly upset.

## Acts 12:19

### for him (ULT)

### Peter...him (UST)

The pronoun **him** refers to Peter. Alternate translation: "Peter" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### having searched for him (ULT)

### he commanded soldiers to search for Peter... him (UST)

It was probably not Herod himself who **searched for** Peter. Rather, he most likely ordered his soldiers to do this. Alternate translation: "having ordered a search for him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### having gone down (ULT)

### Herod went (UST)

Luke speaks of Herod **having gone down** to Caesarea because that city is lower in elevation than Judea. Alternate translation: "traveled" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Herod
- having searched
- Judea
- Caesarea

## Translation Words - UST

- Then Herod heard about it
- he commanded soldiers to search for
- the province of Judea
- the city of Caesarea, where

## ULT

<sup>19</sup> And Herod, having searched for him and not having found him, having questioned the guards, ordered them to be put to death. And having gone down from Judea to Caesarea, he was staying there.

## UST

<sup>19</sup> {Then Herod heard about it. So} he commanded soldiers to search for Peter, but they did not find him. Then Herod questioned the soldiers who had been guarding Peter. {But the soldiers had no good explanation for what had happened.} So Herod commanded them to be executed{, which was how the Romans punished guards whose prisoners escaped}. Afterwards, Herod went from the province of Judea to the city of Caesarea, where he stayed for some time.



## **Acts 12:20**

**Now (ULT)**

Luke is using the word translated **Now** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**he was...quarreling (ULT)**

**King Herod became very upset...He stopped them from trading with the people he ruled...**

**King Herod became very upset...He stopped them from trading with the people he ruled (UST)**

The pronoun **he** refers to Herod. Alternate translation: "Herod was quarreling" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**with the Tyrians...Sidonians (ULT)**  
**with the people who lived in the cities of Tyre...Sidon (UST)**

**Tyrians** is the name for people from the city of Tyre, and **Sidonians** is the name for people from the city of Sidon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**unanimously...they came to him (ULT)**

**together...they sent representatives...to the city of Caesarea to meet with Herod (UST)**

Your language may say "went" rather than **came** in contexts such as this. Use whichever is more natural. Alternate translation: "they went to him unanimously" (See: [Go and Come](#))

**unanimously...they came to him (ULT)**

**together...they sent representatives...to the city of Caesarea to meet with Herod (UST)**

It is unlikely that all the people of Tyre and Sidon came to Herod. Instead, they sent representatives. Luke is using the names of their groups to refer to one part of those groups, these representatives. Alternate translation: "they sent representatives to him unanimously" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**unanimously...they came to him (ULT)**

**together...they sent representatives...to the city of Caesarea to meet with Herod (UST)**

The word **unanimously** indicates that the Tyrians and Sidonians recognized that they had a common interest and that they agreed to act together to pursue that interest. Alternate translation: "they agreed together to send representatives to him"

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> Now he was quarreling **with the Tyrians** and **Sidonians**. So they came to him unanimously, and having persuaded Blastus, the one over the bedchamber of the **king**, they were requesting **peace**, because their country was nourished from the **king's country**.

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> King Herod became very upset **with the people who lived in the cities of Tyre and Sidon**. {He stopped them from trading with the people he ruled.} But the people of Tyre and Sidon needed to buy food from those **regions**. So they sent representatives together to the city of Caesarea to meet with Herod. They persuaded Blastus, who was one of **Herod's** important officials, to tell Herod that **they wanted to live peacefully with him**.

**Blastus (ULT)****Blastus, who was one of (UST)**

The word **Blastus** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the one over the bedchamber of the king (ULT)****Herod's important officials (UST)**

This phrase indicates that Blastus was an official whom the king trusted with important responsibilities for his personal affairs. In your translation, use the word or phrase for the most comparable role in your culture. Alternate translation: "the king's chamberlain" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**they were requesting peace (ULT)****to tell Herod that they wanted to live peacefully with him (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **peace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "they were asking the king to restore peaceful relations" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**their country was nourished from the king's country (ULT)****the people of Tyre and Sidon needed to buy food from those regions (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "their country depended on the king's country for its food supply" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**their country was nourished from the king's country (ULT)****the people of Tyre and Sidon needed to buy food from those regions (UST)**

The implication is that Herod had stopped supplying food to the people of Tyre and Sidon because he was angry with them. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: "their country depended on the king's country for its food supply, and Herod had cut off that supply because he was angry with them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [with the Tyrians](#)
- [Sidonians](#)
- [of...king](#)
- [king's country](#)
- [peace](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [with the people who lived in the cities of Tyre](#)
- [Sidon](#)
- [Herod's](#)
- [regions](#)
- [they wanted to live peacefully with him](#)



## Acts 12:21

**appointed...on the...day (ULT)  
that...planned to meet with the  
representatives of Tyre and Sidon...On the day  
(UST)**

The implication is that this was the **day** on which Herod had agreed to meet with the representatives of the Tyrians and Sidonians. Alternate translation: “on the day when Herod had agreed to meet with them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**having put on royal clothing and having sat  
on the throne (ULT)  
he did some things to impress them}. He put  
on very expensive clothes and he sat on his  
royal throne...he (UST)**

Putting on this **royal clothing**, which was visibly expensive, and sitting on the **throne** were symbolic actions by which Herod demonstrated that he was a wealthy and powerful king. He did these things to impress and intimidate the Tyrians and Sidonians as they negotiated. Alternate translation: “having put on royal clothing and having sat on the throne to show what a wealthy and powerful king he was” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**having sat on the throne (ULT)  
sat on his royal throne...he (UST)**

The **throne** was where Herod formally addressed people who came to see him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on the...day](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [having put on](#)
- [royal](#)
- [throne](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [On the day](#)
- [Herod had](#)
- [he did some things to impress them}. He put on](#)
- [very expensive...he](#)
- [royal throne](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> And [on the](#) appointed [day](#), [Herod](#), [having put on royal](#) clothing and having sat on the [throne](#), made a speech to them.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [On the day](#) that [Herod had](#) planned to meet with the representatives of Tyre and Sidon{, [he did some things to impress them}](#). He [put on very expensive](#) clothes and [he](#) sat on his [royal throne](#). Then he formally addressed all the people who had gathered there.

## Acts 12:22

### The voice of a god and not of a man (ULT) King Herod speaks so well that he must be a god, not a man (UST)

The people are figuratively using one part of Herod, his **voice**, to represent all of him in the act of speaking. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "This person who is speaking to us is a god, not a man" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- were shouting
- The voice
- of a god

#### Translation Words - UST

- shouted repeatedly
- King Herod speaks so well that
- he must be a god

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And the people were shouting, "The voice of a god and not of a man!"

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Those who were listening to him shouted repeatedly, "King Herod speaks so well that he must be a god, not a man!"

## Acts 12:23

**because he did not give the glory to God (ULT)  
Herod accepted the praise of the people  
instead of telling them they should praise  
God. So (UST)**

If it would be clearer in your language, you could put this reason before the result it led to (the angel striking Herod), as UST does. (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**having become worm-eaten, he died (ULT)  
Worms ate him and he died (UST)**

The word translated **worm-eaten** is an adjective, so this is not a passive verbal form. However, if your language does not use passive forms, it might be clearer for your readers if you use an expression that does not seem to be a passive verbal form. The word **worm-eaten** expresses the result of action by a different agent, so you can use an active form with that agent as the subject. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. UST models one way to do this. (See: [Active or Passive](#) )

**having become worm-eaten, he died (ULT)  
Worms ate him and he died (UST)**

It is not clear exactly what this means, and you might choose to say nothing further in your translation. However, this could mean: (1) that when the angel **struck** Herod, this caused a deep wound, and by the time Herod died of this wound, it was already infested with maggots. Alternate translation: "he died after his wound became so infested that it was infested with maggots" (2) that the word **struck** is figurative and it refers to an illness, a severe case of intestinal worms. Alternate translation: "he got such a severe case of intestinal worms that he died" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- an angel
- of the Lord
- glory
- to God
- he died

### Translation Words - UST

- Herod accepted the praise of the people instead of telling them they should praise God
- Herod accepted the praise of the people instead of telling them they should praise God
- the Lord God sent
- an angel...That angel
- he died

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> And immediately [an angel of the Lord](#) struck him because he did not give the [glory to God](#), and having become worm-eaten, [he died](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Herod accepted the praise of the people instead of telling them they should praise God](#). So while the people were still praising Herod, [the Lord God sent an angel](#) to punish him. [That angel](#) punished him severely: Worms ate him and [he died](#).



## **Acts 12:24**

**the...word of God was increasing and was being multiplied (ULT)**  
**The believers continued telling...message...  
 The believers continued telling...God's...  
 message...to people in many places, and the  
 number of people who believed in Jesus was  
 continually increasing (UST)**

Luke is expressing a single idea by using two verbs connected with **and**. The verb **being multiplied** tells in what way the word of God was **increasing**, that is, very rapidly. If it would be clearer in your language, you could express this same idea with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: "the word of God was increasing very rapidly" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> But the [word of God](#) was increasing and [was being multiplied](#).

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> [The believers continued telling God's message to people in many places, and the number of people who believed in Jesus was continually increasing.](#)

**the...word of God was increasing and was being multiplied (ULT)**  
**The believers continued telling...message...The believers continued telling...  
 God's...message...to people in many places, and the number of people who  
 believed in Jesus was continually increasing (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively of the way the message about Jesus was becoming more widespread as if the word of God itself were **increasing** and **being multiplied**. Alternate translation: "more and more people were hearing and believing the word of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the...word of God (ULT)**  
**The believers continued telling...message...The believers continued telling...  
 God's...message (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that God told the believers to spread by using words. Alternate translation: "the message about Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**was being multiplied (ULT)**  
**to people in many places, and the number of people who believed in Jesus  
 was continually increasing (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God was multiplying it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [word of God](#)
- [was being multiplied](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [The believers continued telling...God's...message](#)
- [to people in many places, and the number of people who believed in Jesus was continually increasing](#)



## **Acts 12:25**



## Then (ULT)

Luke uses the word translated **Then** to introduce information about what happened after Herod died. This is the end of the part of the story about him. Your language may have its own way of indicating how such information relates to a significant part of a larger story. (See: [End of Story](#))

## Then Barnabas and Saul returned to Jerusalem, having completed their service (ULT)

This can also be translated, "Then Barnabas and Saul returned, having completed their service in Jerusalem." If that is the correct translation, then Luke is saying implicitly that they **returned to** Antioch. Alternate translation: "Then Barnabas and Saul returned to Antioch, having completed their service in Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Then Barnabas and Saul returned to Jerusalem (ULT)

Some ancient copies say that Barnabas and Saul returned "from" Jerusalem, which makes sense, since in the next verse, Barnabas and Saul are back in Antioch. If the reading **to** is correct, this verse may be indicating that they went somewhere else in Judea and then returned to Jerusalem before going back to Antioch. If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider using the reading in that translation. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you follow the readings of ULT and UST. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

## having completed their service (ULT) finished delivering the money to help the Jewish believers in the province of Judea (UST)

This refers implicitly to the trip that Barnabas and Saul made to Jerusalem to deliver money from the believers in Antioch, which Luke describes in [11:29-30](#). Alternate translation: "having delivered to the church leaders in Jerusalem the money that the believers in Antioch had collected" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## John, called Mark (ULT)

## John, whose other name was Mark (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated it in [12:12](#). Alternate translation: "John, whom people called Mark" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Barnabas](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [returned](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [having completed](#)

## ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then [Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#) returned to [Jerusalem](#), <sup>[1]</sup> [having completed](#) their [service](#), bringing with them [John, called Mark](#).  
12:25 <sup>[1]</sup>

## UST

<sup>25</sup> [Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#) finished [delivering the money to help the Jewish believers in the province of Judea](#). They returned to the city of [Jerusalem](#). They brought [John, whose other name was Mark](#), with them.

- service
- John, called Mark
- called

## Translation Words - UST

- Barnabas
- Saul
- finished
- delivering the money to help the Jewish believers in the province of Judea
- They returned
- the city of Jerusalem
- John, whose other name was Mark
- whose other name was

## Acts 13

### Acts 13 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Verses 1–4 describe how the Holy Spirit called Barnabas and Paul to go on a special mission to share the gospel of Jesus. Verses 5–12 describe how they shared the gospel on the island of Cyprus. Verses 13–52 describe how they shared the gospel in the city of Antioch in the province of Pamphylia.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the three quotations from Psalms in 13:33–35.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 13:41.

The chapter is where the second half of the Book of Acts begins. Luke writes more about Paul than about Peter, and he describes how the believers told the message about Jesus to Gentiles. Luke begins to tell about the mission trips on which the church at Antioch sent Barnabas and Saul.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### A light for the Gentiles

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if light were what enables sinful people to understand that what they are doing is wrong and begin to obey God. The Jews considered all Gentiles to be walking in darkness, but Paul and Barnabas spoke of telling the Gentiles about Jesus as if they were going to bring them physical light. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### “our” in Paul’s sermon in Antioch of Pisidia

In verses 17, 32, and 33, Paul uses the term **our** to refer to himself and the other Jews who are present in the synagogue; the term does not include the Gentiles who are also present. If your language marks the distinction between inclusive and exclusive “our,” use the form that would be natural in such a situation. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))



## **Acts 13:1**

## Now (ULT) At that time (UST)

Luke is using the word translated **Now** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

## Simeon called Niger (ULT) Simeon, whose other name was Niger (UST)

The word **Simeon** is the name of a man. The word **Niger** is another name by which he was known. This is not a racial epithet; it is the Latin word for “black,” and it probably indicates that he was African. Alternate translation: “Simeon the African” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Simeon called Niger (ULT) Simeon, whose other name was Niger (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Simeon, whom people called Niger” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Manaen (ULT) Manaen (UST)

The word **Manaen** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Lucius the Cyrenian (ULT) Lucius, who was from the city of Cyrene (UST)

The word **Lucius** is the name of a man. The word **Cyrenian** is the name for someone who comes from the city of Cyrene. See how you translated it in [11:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## the foster brother (ULT) who had grown up with (UST)

In this culture, rulers would sometimes bring the children of other parents into their homes to be raised and educated with their own children. This gave their children playmates and friends, and it was also a way of honoring or thanking the parents of the other children. A boy who was raised with the son of a ruler would be considered the **foster brother** of that son. There may be a similar role in your culture, and your language may have a term for it that you can use in your translation. You could also explain the meaning of the term “foster brother,” as UST does. Alternate translation: “the childhood playmate” or “the boyhood friend” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now in [Antioch](#), in the [church](#) being {there}, were [prophets](#) and [teachers](#): both [Barnabas](#) and Simeon [called Niger](#), and Lucius the [Cyrenian](#); both Manaen, the foster brother of [Herod the tetrarch](#), and [Saul](#).

## UST

<sup>1</sup> At that time in the [group of believers](#) in the [city of Antioch](#) there were [prophets](#) and [teachers](#). They were: [Barnabas](#); Simeon, [whose other name was Niger](#); Lucius, [who was from the city of Cyrene](#); Manaen, who had grown up with [Herod Antipas when he was the ruler of Galilee](#); and [Saul](#).

## of Herod the tetrarch (ULT) Herod Antipas when he was the ruler of Galilee (UST)

In the Roman Empire, a **tetrarch** was the governor of one of four divisions of a country or province. **Herod the tetrarch** ruled over Galilee, one of four areas that the kingdom of his father, Herod the Great, was divided into after his death. (The Herod described in chapter 12 was a different man, the grandson of Herod the Great and the nephew of Herod the tetrarch.) If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a general term instead of “tetrarch.” Alternate translation: “the ruler Herod” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Antioch
- church
- prophets
- teachers
- Barnabas
- called
- Cyrenian
- of Herod the tetrarch
- tetrarch
- Saul

### Translation Words - UST

- group of believers
- the city of Antioch
- prophets
- teachers
- Barnabas
- whose other name was
- who was from the city of Cyrene
- Herod Antipas when he was the ruler of Galilee
- when he was the ruler of Galilee
- Saul

**Acts 13:2**

**while...were ministering...they...to the Lord (ULT)**

**While...were worshiping...the believers in Antioch...the Lord...them (UST)**

The expression **ministering to** is an idiom. Alternate translation: "while they were worshiping the Lord" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Separate (ULT)**

**I want you to let...serve...in a particular way. I want you to send (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Set apart"

**for the work to which I have called them (ULT)  
them on a special mission that I have chosen them to do (UST)**

The Holy Spirit is referring implicitly to the **work** of proclaiming the gospel of Jesus in new areas, Cyprus and Asia Minor. Since Luke describes Barnabas and Paul doing this work in the rest of this chapter and in chapter 14, you do not need to explain its meaning further here. (See: [When to Keep Information Implicit](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- while...were ministering
- to...Lord
- fasting
- Holy Spirit
- Separate
- Barnabas
- Saul
- work
- I have called

**Translation Words - UST**

- While...were worshiping
- special mission
- I have chosen...to do
- Lord
- fasting
- Holy Spirit
- I want you to let...serve...in a particular way. I want you to send
- Barnabas
- Saul

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> And **while** they **were ministering** to the **Lord** and **fasting**, the **Holy Spirit** said, "Separate, then, **Barnabas** and **Saul** to me for the **work** to which **I have called** them."

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> **While** the believers in Antioch **were worshiping** the **Lord** and **fasting**, the **Holy Spirit** spoke to them. He said, "I want you to let **Barnabas** and **Saul** **serve** me **in a particular way**. I want you to **send** them on a **special mission** that I **have chosen** them **to do**."





## **Acts 13:3**

**having fasted and prayed, and having laid {their} hands on them, they released them (ULT)**

**the believers fasted and prayed...Then they put their hands on Barnabas and Saul {to show that they approved of them going on this special mission}. Then they sent them off to do what the Holy Spirit had commanded (UST)**

The pronouns **their** and **they** refer to the believers in Antioch, and the pronoun **them** refers to Barnabas and Saul. The phrase **having fasted and prayed** refers to all of them. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “after they had all fasted and prayed together, the believers in Antioch laid their hands on Barnabas and Saul, and then the believers released them” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then, [having fasted](#) and [prayed](#), and having laid {their} [hands](#) on them, [they released them](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> So [the believers fasted](#) and [prayed](#) some more. Then they put their [hands](#) on Barnabas and Saul {to show that they approved of them going on this special mission}. [Then they sent them off to do what the Holy Spirit had commanded](#).

**having laid {their} hands on them (ULT)**  
**they put their hands on Barnabas and Saul {to show that they approved of them going on this special mission (UST)**

The believers in Antioch **laid their hands** on Barnabas and Saul as a symbolic action to show that they were sending them on their mission with the blessing and support of the whole church and that they were entrusting them to God's care. Alternate translation: “placed their hands on them as a sign of blessing and support and as a way of entrusting them to God's care” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**they released them (ULT)**  
**Then they sent them off to do what the Holy Spirit had commanded (UST)**

While in this context the term **released** basically means “sent off,” the implication is that the believers in Antioch were freeing Barnabas and Saul of all of their responsibilities in the church so that they could go on the mission on which the Holy Spirit was sending them. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “they gave them the freedom to go on their new mission” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [having fasted](#)
- [prayed](#)
- [hands](#)
- [they released them](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [the believers fasted](#)
- [prayed](#)
- [hands](#)
- [Then they sent them off to do what the Holy Spirit had commanded](#)

**Acts 13:4**

**they...having been sent out (ULT)**  
**Barnabas and Saul...they...gave...instructions**  
**about where to go (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to Barnabas and Saul. Alternate translation: "Barnabas and Saul" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**having been sent out by the Holy Spirit (ULT)**  
**The Holy Spirit gave...instructions about**  
**where to go (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "because the Holy Spirit had sent them out" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**went down (ULT)**  
**went from Antioch (UST)**

Luke says that Barnabas and Saul **went down** to Caesarea because that city is lower in elevation than Judea. Alternate translation: "traveled" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Seleucia (ULT)**  
**the city of Seleucia, which is by the sea (UST)**

The word **Seleucia** is the name of a city that is on the seacoast. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having been sent out](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Cyprus](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [gave...instructions about where to go](#)
- [the city of Salamis on the island of Cyprus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> So they, [having been sent out](#) by the [Holy Spirit](#), went down to Seleucia; and from there they sailed away to [Cyprus](#).

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> The [Holy Spirit](#) gave Barnabas and Saul [instructions about where to go](#). So they went from Antioch to the city of Seleucia, which is by the sea. From there they went by ship to [the city of Salamis on the island of Cyprus](#).

## Acts 13:5

### Salamis (ULT)

### Salamis (UST)

The word **Salamis** is the name of a city on the island of Cyprus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the word of God (ULT) the message God had told them to share about Jesus (UST)

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that the Holy Spirit wanted Barnabas and Saul to share by using words. Alternate translation: “the message from God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they were proclaiming](#)
- [word of God](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [of the Jews](#)
- [John](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they went...they proclaimed](#)
- [Jewish meeting places. There](#)
- [Jewish meeting places. There](#)
- [message God had told them to share about Jesus](#)
- [John Mark](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And having arrived in Salamis, [they were proclaiming](#) the [word of God](#) in the [synagogues of the Jews](#). And they also had [John](#) as an assistant.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> While they were in Salamis, [they went](#) to the [Jewish meeting places](#). There they [proclaimed](#) the [message God had told them to share about Jesus](#). [John Mark](#) went with them and was helping them.

## Acts 13:6

### Paphos (ULT) the city of Paphos. There (UST)

The word **Paphos** is the name of a major city on the island of Cyprus. It was where the Roman proconsul lived. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### they found (ULT) they met (UST)

The word **found** does not mean that Barnabas, Saul, and Mark were intentionally searching for a certain man. They happened to meet him. Alternate translation: “they happened to meet” (See: [Idiom](#))

### a certain man, a magician (ULT) a sorcerer (UST)

The word **magician** here does not mean someone who entertains others with tricks based on slight of hand and optical illusions. It means someone who practices witchcraft or supernatural magic arts. Your language and culture may have a term for such a person that you can use in your translation. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### whose name {was} Bar Jesus (ULT) whose name was Bar Jesus. He was (UST)

The words **Bar Jesus** are a name that means “Son of Jesus.” However, there was no relation between this man and Jesus Christ. **Jesus** was a common name at that time. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a magician
- Jewish
- a...false prophet
- name

### Translation Words - UST

- a sorcerer
- name was
- a Jew
- who falsely claimed to be a prophet

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And having passed through the whole island as far as Paphos, they found a certain man, a magician, a Jewish false prophet, whose name {was} Bar Jesus,

### UST

<sup>6</sup> The three of them crossed from one side of the island to the other {and shared the gospel message in each town they passed through}. Eventually they came to the city of Paphos. There they met a sorcerer whose name was Bar Jesus. He was a Jew who falsely claimed to be a prophet.

**Acts 13:7****the proconsul (ULT)  
the governor of the island (UST)**

A **proconsul** was a governor in charge of a Roman province. Alternate translation, as in UST: “the governor” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**Sergius Paulus (ULT)  
Sergius Paulus (UST)**

The words **Sergius** and **Paulus** are the names of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**an intelligent man (ULT)  
who was a sensible man (UST)**

Luke provides this background information about Sergius Paulus to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, present this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. (See: [Background Information](#))

**Summoning...he (ULT)  
The governor sent someone to ask...to come to him (UST)**

Alternate translation: “The proconsul summoned”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Barnabas](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [sought](#)
- [word of God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Barnabas](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [because he wanted](#)
- [what...God...had told them to say](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> who was with the proconsul, Sergius Paulus—an intelligent man. Summoning [Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#), he [sought](#) to hear the [word of God](#).

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> He was often in the company of the governor of the island, Sergius Paulus, who was a sensible man. The governor sent someone to ask [Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#) to come to him [because he wanted](#) to hear [what God had told them to say](#).

## Acts 13:8

### Elymas, “the Magician (ULT) Bar Jesus, who also called himself Elymas...the Sorcerer (UST)

The word **Elymas** is an Arabic word that Bar-Jesus was using as another name. Luke spells it out using Greek letters so his readers will know how it sounds, and then he says what it means, **the Magician**. In your translation you can spell it the way it sounds in your language and then explain its meaning. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

### for thus is his name translated (ULT) The name Elymas means...He (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “for that is the meaning of his name in Greek” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### seeking to turn the proconsul away from the faith (ULT) kept trying to persuade the governor not to believe in Jesus (UST)

Here, **to turn ... away from** is a metaphor for convincing someone to not do something. Alternate translation: “he attempted to persuade the governor not to believe the gospel message” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Magician](#)
- [name](#)
- [seeking](#)
- [to turn...away](#)
- [faith](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The name Elymas](#)
- [Sorcerer](#)
- [kept trying](#)
- [to persuade](#)
- [not to believe in Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But Elymas, “the [Magician](#)” (for thus is his [name](#) translated), opposed them, [seeking to turn](#) the proconsul [away](#) from the [faith](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> However, Bar Jesus, who also called himself Elymas, contradicted what Barnabas and Paul were saying. ([The name Elymas](#) means “the [Sorcerer](#).”) He [kept trying to persuade](#) the governor [not to believe in Jesus](#).



**Acts 13:9****Saul...also Paul (ULT)**

**Saul...was using his Roman name, Paul, because he was visiting a Roman official...Paul (UST)**

The word **Paul** is the name of a man. It is another name by which Saul called himself. **Saul** was his Jewish name, and **Paul** was his Roman name. Since he was speaking to a Roman official, he used his Roman name. (From this point on, Saul is called Paul in Acts.)

Alternate translation: "Saul, who now called himself Paul" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> But **Saul**, also **Paul**, **being filled with the Holy Spirit**, staring at him intently,

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> **Saul was using his Roman name, Paul, because he was visiting a Roman official. The Holy Spirit gave Paul boldness and insight.** He looked steadily at the sorcerer.

**being filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**The Holy Spirit gave...boldness and insight (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively of Paul as if he were a container that the Holy Spirit **filled**. Alternate translation: "inspired by the Holy Spirit" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**being filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**The Holy Spirit gave...boldness and insight (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "whom the Holy Spirit was inspiring" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Saul](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [being filled](#)
- [with the Holy Spirit](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Saul](#)
- [was using his Roman name, Paul, because he was visiting a Roman official...Paul](#)
- [The Holy Spirit](#)
- [gave...boldness and insight](#)



## **Acts 13:10**

**O full of all deceit and all trickery (ULT)**  
**You are constantly lying to people and doing things to deceive them (UST)**

Paul is using the adjective **full** as a noun, to identify Elymas as a person who is figuratively full of the negative qualities he describes. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: "O you who are full of all deceit and all trickery" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**O full of all deceit and all trickery (ULT)**  
**You are constantly lying to people and doing things to deceive them (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas of **deceit** and **trickery**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "O you who are always deceiving and tricking other people" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**O full of all deceit and all trickery (ULT)**  
**You are constantly lying to people and doing things to deceive them (UST)**

Paul is speaking figuratively of Elymas as if he were a container that was **full** of negative qualities. Alternate translation: "O you who practice all deceit and all trickery" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of all deceit and all trickery (ULT)**  
**are constantly...lying to people and doing things to deceive them (UST)**

The terms **deceit** and **wickedness** mean similar things. Paul may be using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: "of all evil treachery" (See: [Doublet](#))

**of all deceit and all trickery (ULT)**  
**are constantly...lying to people and doing things to deceive them (UST)**

Paul says **all** in these two instances as a generalization for emphasis. (But when he calls Elymas the **enemy of all righteousness**, that may be understood more literally.) Alternate translation: "of great deceit and great trickery" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**son of the devil (ULT)**  
**You are serving the devil (UST)**

The expression **son of** figuratively describes a person who shares the qualities of something or someone else. Paul is saying that Elymas is acting like the devil in trying to keep Sergius Paulus from believing in Jesus. Alternate translation: "you who are acting like the devil" (See: [Idiom](#))

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> said, "O full of all **deceit** and all trickery, **son of the devil**, **enemy** of all **righteousness**, will you not stop **turning aside** the straight paths of the **Lord**?"

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> Paul said, "You are constantly **lying to people** and doing things to deceive them! **You are serving the devil!** **You try to stop** everything **that is good!** You must stop **trying to keep people from living in** the way that **God** wants!"

**son of the devil (ULT)****You are serving the devil (UST)**

Paul is drawing an implicit contrast between Elymas's claim to be the "son of Jesus" (Bar Jesus) and his actual character as a **son of the devil**. If you retain the "son of" idiom in your translation, you could bring out this contrast explicitly. If you do, it may be helpful to make this a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "You are not the son of Jesus, you are the son of the devil!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**enemy of all righteousness (ULT)****You try to stop everything that is good (UST)**

Paul is speaking of **righteousness** figuratively as if it were a person who could have an **enemy**. If your language would not use this figure of speech, you could express the meaning in another way. Alternate translation: "opposed to all righteousness" (See: [Personification](#))

**enemy of all righteousness (ULT)****You try to stop everything that is good (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **righteousness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "enemy of everything that is right" or "opposed to everything that is right" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**will you not stop turning aside the straight paths of the Lord (ULT)****You must stop trying to keep people from living in the way that God wants (UST)**

Paul is using the question form to rebuke Elymas for opposing God. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "you must stop turning aside the straight paths of the Lord!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**turning aside the straight paths of the Lord (ULT)****trying to keep people from living in the way that God wants (UST)**

Paul is speaking figuratively of Elymas as if he were physically redirecting **paths** that God wanted people to follow so that these paths no longer went **straight**. He means that if people believe in God and obey him, they live in the right way, and that Elymas is trying to keep people, especially Sergius Paulus, from doing that. Alternate translation: "preventing people from believing in God, obeying him, and living right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of...deceit](#)
- [son](#)
- [of the devil](#)
- [enemy](#)
- [of...righteousness](#)
- [turning aside](#)
- [of...Lord](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- lying to people
- You are serving
- the devil
- You try to stop
- that is good
- trying to keep people from living in
- God



## **Acts 13:11**



## behold (ULT) Right now (UST)

Paul is using the term **behold** to focus Elymas's attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## the hand of the Lord {is} upon you (ULT) the Lord God is going to punish you (UST)

Here, the word **hand** represents the power of God, and the phrase **upon you** indicates punishment. Alternate translation: "the Lord is going to punish you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## blind, not seeing the sun (ULT) blind and you will not even be able to see the sun (UST)

Paul is using a word and a phrase together to express a single idea. The phrase **not seeing the sun** tells to what degree Elymas will be **blind**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: "so blind that you will not be able to tell whether it is day or night" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

## a mist and darkness fell upon him (ULT) Elymas could no longer see clearly. Then he could not see at all (UST)

Paul is speaking figuratively of this **mist** and **darkness** as if they were going to **fall** on Elymas. Alternate translation: "what Elymas could see became blurry and then dark" or see the next note for another possibility. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## a mist and darkness fell upon him (ULT) Elymas could no longer see clearly. Then he could not see at all (UST)

Luke may be using the two words **mist** and **darkness** together to express a single idea. The word **mist** may tell what kind of **darkness** was all that Elymas could see. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use **and**. Alternate translation: "a misty darkness was all that Elymas could see" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [the hand](#)
- [someone to lead him by the hand](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [a time](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [he was seeking](#)

## ULT

<sup>11</sup> And now, behold, [the hand of the Lord {is}](#) upon you, and you will be blind, not seeing the sun for [a time](#)." And immediately a mist and [darkness](#) fell upon him, and going around, [he was seeking someone to lead him by the hand](#).

## UST

<sup>11</sup> Right now [the Lord God is going to punish](#) you! You will become blind and you will not even be able to see the sun [until God decides to let you see again](#)." At once Elymas could no longer see clearly. Then [he could not see at all](#). He wandered around, [searching for someone to take him by the hand and lead him](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- the Lord God
- is going to punish
- someone to take him by the hand and lead him
- until God decides to let you see again
- he could not see at all
- searching for



## **Acts 13:12**

## the proconsul (ULT) Sergius Paulus (UST)

A **proconsul** was a governor in charge of a Roman province.  
Alternate translation: “the governor”

## being astonished at the teaching of the Lord (ULT) The truth and power of what Paul and Barnabas were teaching about Jesus amazed him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “The teaching of the Lord astonished him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the teaching of the Lord (ULT) The truth and power of what Paul and Barnabas were teaching about Jesus (UST)

Luke is using the word **teaching** figuratively to mean the truth and power associated with the teaching about Jesus. Alternate translation: “the truth and power that accompanied the teaching of the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## the teaching of the Lord (ULT) The truth and power of what Paul and Barnabas were teaching about Jesus (UST)

In this possessive form, **the Lord** is the object rather than the subject of **teaching**. That is, this does not mean “what the Lord taught,” it means “what Barnabas and Paul taught about the Lord.” You could say that as an alternate translation. (See: [Possession](#))

## the teaching of the Lord (ULT) The truth and power of what Paul and Barnabas were teaching about Jesus (UST)

Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Alternate translation: “the teaching about the Lord Jesus” (See: [Politeness](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [believed](#)
- [being astonished](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [of the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then the proconsul, having seen the {thing} having happened, [believed](#), [being astonished](#) at the [teaching of the Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When Sergius Paulus saw what had happened to Elymas, [he believed in Jesus](#). [The truth and power of what Paul and Barnabas were teaching](#) about [Jesus amazed him](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- he believed in Jesus
- The truth and power of what Paul and Barnabas were teaching
- Jesus
- amazed him

## Acts 13:13

### Now (ULT)

### After that (UST)

Luke is using the word translated **Now** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### the ones around Paul (ULT)

The phrase **those around Paul** refers to Barnabas and John (who is also called John Mark). This phrase provides some background to rest of the story by indicating that Paul had become the leader of the group. It is important to communicate this by keeping Paul's name first when he is mentioned with others, for example, in [13:46](#), [13:50](#), etc. The order of names is important. (See: [Background Information](#))

### the ones around Paul (ULT)

Alternate translation: "Paul and his traveling companions"

### Perga of Pamphylia (ULT)

### the city of Perga in the province of Pamphylia (UST)

The word **Perga** is the name of a city, and the word **Pamphylia** is the name of the province in which that city was located. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)
- [John](#)
- [returned](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul](#)
- [John Mark](#)
- [and returned](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Now having set sail from Paphos, the ones around [Paul](#) came to Perga of Pamphylia. But [John](#), withdrawing from them, [returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> After that, [Paul](#) and the people with him traveled by sailboat from Paphos to the city of Perga in the province of Pamphylia. At Perga, [John Mark](#) left them [and returned](#) to his home [in Jerusalem](#).

## Acts 13:14

### they (ULT)

#### Paul and Barnabas (UST)

The pronoun **they** refers to Paul and Barnabas. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “Paul and Barnabas” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### Antioch of Pisidia (ULT)

#### the city of Antioch in the district of Pisidia {in the province of Galatia (UST)

The word **Antioch** is the name of a city. See how you translated the same name for a different city in [6:5](#). The word **Perga** is the name of the province in which this city of Antioch was located. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### they sat down (ULT)

#### and sat down {as rabbis did (UST)

Paul and Barnabas may have **sat down** in the place where rabbis would sit, or in the way that rabbis would sit, as a way of asking permission to speak to the congregation. The fact that they were invited to speak ([13:15](#)) suggests that this is the case. Alternate translation: “sat down as rabbis would, to ask permission to speak to the congregation” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [on the day](#)
- [of the Sabbath](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [On the Sabbath](#)
- [On the Sabbath](#)
- [Jewish meeting place](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But they, passing through from Perga, came to Antioch of Pisidia and, going into the [synagogue on the day of the Sabbath](#), they sat down.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Then Paul and Barnabas traveled by land from Perga and arrived in the city of Antioch in the district of Pisidia {in the province of Galatia}. [On the Sabbath](#), they entered the [Jewish meeting place](#) and sat down {as rabbis did}.





## **Acts 13:15**

**of the Law and the Prophets (ULT)**  
**what Moses had written in the books of the Law. Next someone read from what the prophets had written (UST)**

The word **Law** is the name for one part of the Hebrew Scriptures, and word **Prophets** is the name for another part of the Hebrew Scriptures. Even though these are common nouns, Luke is using them to mean specific things. Show this in your translation in the way that is natural in your language. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Men, brothers (ULT)**  
**Fellow Jews (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: "Our brothers" or "You brothers of ours" (See: [Idiom](#))

**brothers (ULT)**  
**Fellow Jews (UST)**

The synagogue leaders are using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. Alternate translation: "Our fellow believers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**if any word of exhortation for the people is in you (ULT)**  
**if one of you wants to speak to the people here to encourage them (UST)**

The synagogue leaders are using the term **word** to mean what Barnabas or Paul would want to say using words. Alternate translation: "if you want to say anything to encourage our people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**speak (ULT)**  
**please speak to us now (UST)**

This is an imperative, but it communicates an invitation rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates an invitation. Alternate translation: "we invite you to speak it now" (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of the Law](#)
- [Prophets](#)
- [sent](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [of exhortation](#)
- [people](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [what Moses had written in the books of...Law](#)
- [someone read from what the prophets had written](#)

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> And after the reading [of the Law](#) and the [Prophets](#), the synagogue leaders [sent](#) to them, saying, "Men, [brothers](#), if any word [of exhortation](#) for the [people](#) is in you, speak."

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> Someone read aloud from [what Moses had written in the books of the Law](#). Next [someone read from what the prophets had written](#). Then the leaders of the Jewish meeting place [sent a message](#) to Paul and Barnabas. They said, "[Fellow Jews](#), if one of you wants to speak to the [people here to encourage them](#), please speak to us now."

- sent a message
- Fellow Jews
- people here
- to encourage them



## **Acts 13:16**

## arising (ULT) stood up (UST)

Here the term **arising** means that Paul stood up to show that he indeed wanted to speak, as he had been invited to do. See how you translated the similar expression in [2:14](#). Alternate translation: “standing up to show that he wanted to speak” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

## motioning with {his} hand (ULT) motioned with his hand {so that the people would listen to him (UST)

This likely means that Paul waved his hand to get the attention of the audience and signal that he was about to speak. He wanted everyone in the synagogue to hear what he had to say from the very first word, so he did this to quiet them. Alternate translation: “waving his hand to signal that he was about to speak” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

## Men, Israelites and ones fearing God (ULT) Fellow Israelites and you non-Jewish people who also worship God (UST)

This is an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: “You Israelites and you who fear God” (See: [Idiom](#))

## ones fearing God (ULT) you non-Jewish people who also worship God (UST)

Jews in the time of the New Testament used the expression **fearing God** to describe Gentiles (non-Jews) who worshiped the God of Israel and attended the synagogue. That is what Paul means here. See how you translated the similar expression in [10:2](#). Alternate translation: “you Gentiles who sincerely worship the God of Israel” (See: [Idiom](#))

## listen (ULT) please listen to me (UST)

This is an imperative, but it communicates a request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as “please” to make this clear. Alternate translation: “please listen to what I am about to say” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- arising
- with...hand
- Israelites
- ones fearing
- God

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> So Paul, arising and motioning with {his} hand, said, “Men, Israelites and ones fearing God, listen.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> So Paul stood up and motioned with his hand {so that the people would listen to him}. Then he said, “Fellow Israelites and you non-Jewish people who also worship God, please listen to me!

## Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- stood up
- with...hand
- Fellow Israelites
- you non-Jewish people who also worship
- God





## **Acts 13:17**

## The God of this people Israel (ULT) God, whom we Israelites worship (UST)

Alternate translation: "The God whom the people of Israel worship"

### our (ULT) our (UST)

See the discussion in the General Notes to this chapter to decide whether to use an inclusive or exclusive form of the word **our** here and in verses 32 and 33. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### fathers (ULT) ancestors (UST)

Paul is using the term **fathers** figuratively to mean "ancestors." Alternate translation: "ancestors" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### exalted the people (ULT) He caused them to become very numerous (UST)

When Paul says that God **exalted the people** of Israel when they were in Egypt, he is referring figuratively to the way God made them great in number and strength even while they were still slaves. Alternate translation: "greatly enlarged their population" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### with an uplifted arm (ULT) God did powerful things (UST)

Here, **an uplifted arm** figuratively describes God's mighty power. Alternate translation: "great power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of...people
- people
- Israel
- chose
- fathers
- exalted
- of Egypt

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- whom we Israelites worship
- them
- whom we Israelites worship
- chose...to be his people
- ancestors

## ULT

<sup>17</sup> The God of this people Israel chose our fathers and exalted the people when they sojourned in the land of Egypt, and with an uplifted arm he led them out of it.

## UST

<sup>17</sup> God, whom we Israelites worship, chose our ancestors to be his people. He caused them to become very numerous while they were foreigners living in Egypt. Then God did powerful things to lead them out of slavery there.

- He caused...to become very numerous
- Egypt

## Acts 13:18

### he endured them (ULT)

### He put up with their disobedience (UST)

This means “he put up with their disobedience.” Some ancient copies have a different word that means “he took care of them,” which makes sense, since in this part of his speech, Paul is listing all of the good things that God did for the Israelites. If the reading **put up with them** is correct, Paul may be foreshadowing the warning he gives at the end of his speech in [13:40–41](#). If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider using the reading in that translation. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you follow the readings of ULT and UST. Alternate translation: “he took care of them” (See: [Textual Variants](#))

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And for about a 40-year [time](#), [he endured](#) them in the [wilderness](#).<sup>[1]</sup>

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> [He put up with](#) their [disobedience](#) for about [forty years](#) while they were in the [wilderness](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for...a...time](#)
- [he endured](#)
- [wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He put up with...disobedience](#)
- [forty years](#)
- [wilderness](#)

**Acts 13:19****he gave them their land for an inheritance****(ULT)****He gave their land to the Israelites to live in****(UST)**

The pronoun **he** refers to God, the pronoun **them** refers to the Israelites, and the pronoun **their** refers to the seven nations that God destroyed. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: "God gave the Israelites for an inheritance the land that these seven nations had previously occupied" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**Translation Words - ULT**

- nations
- of Canaan
- he gave them...for an inheritance

**Translation Words - UST**

- people groups
- of Canaan
- He gave...to the Israelites to live in

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> And having destroyed seven nations in the land of Canaan, he gave them their land for an inheritance,

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> He enabled the Israelites to conquer seven people groups who were then living in the region of Canaan. He gave their land to the Israelites to live in.

## Acts 13:20

### in about 450 years (ULT) The Israelites spent about 450 years in Egypt and in the wilderness (UST)

Paul is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context. It may be helpful to make this a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "All these events took place over a period of about 450 years." (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### he gave them judges until Samuel the prophet (ULT)

### God chose people to serve as judges and as leaders to rule the Israelite people. The prophet Samuel was the last of these judges to rule them (UST)

This could mean: (1) that God gave the Israelites a series of judges and Samuel was the last of them. Alternate translation: "he gave them a series of judges ending with Samuel, who was also a prophet" (2) that the phrase \**Samuel the prophet*\* figuratively represents the time period associated with Samuel. Alternate translation: "until the time of Samuel the prophet" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Samuel (ULT)

### Samuel (UST)

The word **Samuel** is the name of a man. See how you translated it in [3:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in...years](#)
- [judges](#)
- [Samuel the prophet](#)
- [the prophet](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [years in Egypt and in the wilderness](#)
- [judges and as leaders to rule the Israelite people](#)
- [The prophet Samuel](#)
- [The prophet](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> in about 450 [years](#). And after these things, he gave them [judges](#) until [Samuel the prophet](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> The Israelites spent about 450 [years in Egypt and in the wilderness](#)." "After that, God chose people to serve as [judges and as leaders to rule the Israelite people](#). The [prophet Samuel](#) was the last of these judges to rule them.

## Acts 13:21

### Saul...of Kish...of Benjamin (ULT)

### Saul...of Kish...of Benjamin (UST)

The word **Saul** is the name of a man. The word **Kish** is the name of another man, the father of Saul. The word **Benjamin** is the name of one of the tribes of Israel, to which Saul belonged. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### for 40 years (ULT)

### He ruled them for 40 years (UST)

Paul is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: "to be their king for 40 years" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- a king
- God
- Saul
- son
- the tribe
- of Benjamin
- for...years

## Translation Words - UST

- a king to rule them
- God
- Saul
- the son
- the tribe
- of Benjamin
- He ruled them for...years

## ULT

<sup>21</sup> And then they requested a king, and God gave them Saul, son of Kish, a man from the tribe of Benjamin, for 40 years.

## UST

<sup>21</sup> Then, while Samuel was still their leader, the people demanded that he choose a king to rule them. So God chose Saul, the son of Kish from the tribe of Benjamin, to be their king. He ruled them for 40 years.





## **Acts 13:22**

## he raised up David for them for {their} king (ULT)

### he chose David to be their king (UST)

Here, the expression **raised up** describes God giving someone an important position. See how you translated it in [3:22](#). Alternate translation: “made David their king” (See: [Idiom](#))

## he said, testifying, ‘I have found David, son of Jesse, a man according to my heart, who will do all my will (ULT)

### God said...I have seen that David, son of Jesse, is exactly the kind of man who desires what I desire. He will do everything that I want him to do (UST)

In order to avoid having a second-level quotation, you could turn Paul’s quotation into an indirect quotation. (Paul is quoting from 1 Samuel [13:14](#) and Psalm [89:20](#).) Alternate translation: “he said, testifying, that he had found David, son of Jesse, a man according to his heart, who would do all his will.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

## I have found (ULT)

### I have seen that (UST)

While God was indeed searching for someone to replace Saul, here the word **found** does not refer to the results of that search, but rather to God’s estimation of David. Alternate translation: “I have recognized that David, son of Jesse, is a man according to my heart” (See: [Idiom](#))

## of Jesse (ULT)

### son of Jesse, is exactly (UST)

The word **Jesse** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## a man according to my heart (ULT)

### the kind of man who desires what I desire (UST)

This is an idiomatic expression. Alternate translation: “the kind of person who does what pleases me” (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [he raised up](#)
- [David](#)
- [David \(2\)](#)
- [their} king](#)
- [testifying](#)
- [of Jesse](#)
- [heart](#)
- [my...will](#)

## ULT

<sup>22</sup> And having removed him, [he raised up David](#) for them for {their} king, about whom also he said, [testifying](#), ‘I have found [David](#), son of [Jesse](#), a man according to my [heart](#), who will do all my [will](#).’

## UST

<sup>22</sup> After God had rejected Saul from being king, [he chose David](#) to be their king. [God said](#) about him, ‘I have seen that [David, son of Jesse](#), is exactly the kind of man who desires [what I desire](#). He will do everything that [I want](#) him to do.’”

## Translation Words - UST

- he chose
- David
- David (2)
- king
- God said
- son of Jesse, is exactly
- what...desire
- I want

## Acts 13:23

### of this one...From the seed (ULT) David's...one of...descendants (UST)

This information is placed at the beginning of the sentence to emphasize that the Savior had to be one of David's descendants. It would be appropriate to retain this order in your translation rather than say, for example, "According to promise, God brought to Israel a Savior, Jesus, from the seed of this one." (See: [Information Structure](#))

### the seed (ULT) descendants (UST)

The term **seed** figuratively means "descendants." Alternate translation: "the descendants" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of this one (ULT) David's (UST)

The demonstrative pronoun **this one** refers to David. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: "of David" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### to Israel (ULT) to us Israelite people (UST)

Here, **Israel** refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "to the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [seed](#)
- [to promise](#)
- [God](#)
- [to Israel](#)
- [a Savior](#)
- [Jesus](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [to us Israelite people](#)
- [to save us](#)
- [This is what he had promised David and our other ancestors that he would do](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> From the [seed](#) of this one, according to [promise](#), [God](#) brought to Israel a [Savior](#), [Jesus](#),

### UST

<sup>23</sup> "[God](#) brought one of David's [descendants](#), [Jesus](#), to us Israelite people to save us. This is what he had promised David and our other ancestors that he would do.



## **Acts 13:24**

## John (ULT) John the Baptizer (UST)

By **John**, Paul is referring implicitly to John the Baptist. Alternate translation: “John the Baptist” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## before the face of his entrance (ULT) Before Jesus began his work (UST)

In your language, the expression **before the face of his entrance**, meaning “before the appearance of his entry into ministry” (see next two notes), might seem to convey redundant information that would not be natural to express. If so, you can abbreviate it. Alternate translation: “before he appeared” or “before he entered into his ministry” (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

## before the face of his entrance (ULT) Before Jesus began his work (UST)

Here the term **face** figuratively means “appearance.” Alternate translation: “appearance” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## of his entrance (ULT) Jesus...his work (UST)

By **entrance**, Paul is figuratively to Jesus beginning his ministry. Alternate translation: “of the start of his ministry” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## of his entrance (ULT) Jesus...his work (UST)

The pronoun **his** refers to Jesus. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “of Jesus’ entrance” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

## a baptism of repentance (ULT) they should turn away from their sinful behavior and ask God to forgive them. Then he would baptize them (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **repentance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “a baptism that people received to show that they were repenting” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- John
- having announced beforehand
- the face
- a baptism

## ULT

<sup>24</sup> John having announced beforehand, before the face of his entrance, a baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel.

## UST

<sup>24</sup> Before Jesus began his work, John the Baptizer preached to all of our Israelite people who came to him. He told them that they should turn away from their sinful behavior and ask God to forgive them. Then he would baptize them.



- of repentance
- to...the people
- to...the people...of Israel

## Translation Words - UST

- Before...began
- they should turn away from their sinful behavior and ask God to forgive them
- Then he would baptize them
- John the Baptizer
- preached...He told...that
- our Israelite...people who came to him...them
- people who came to him...them



## **Acts 13:25**

**his} course (ULT)**  
**the work that God gave him to do (UST)**

Paul is speaking figuratively of John as if he had been running a race or **course**. Alternate translation: "his work" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**he was saying, 'Who do you think I am? I am not he. But behold, one is coming after me, of whom the sandals of {his} feet I am not worthy to untie (ULT)**  
**he told the crowds, 'Do not think that I am the Messiah whom God promised to send, because I am not. But listen! The Messiah will soon come. He is so much greater than I am that I do not even deserve to be his slave and take the sandals off his feet (UST)**

Even if your language does not customarily put one direct quotation inside another, it might be good to present this quotation from John the Baptist as a direct quotation if possible, since it uses several figures of speech that might not sound natural in an indirect quotation. (As an indirect quotation, this would read something like this: "he asked the people who they thought he was, and he told them he was not he and that behold, one was coming after him, the sandals of whose feet he was not worthy to untie.") You may be able to indicate the beginning of Paul's quotation from John with some punctuation or convention that your language uses. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**Who do you think I am (ULT)**  
**Do not think that I am the Messiah whom God promised to send (UST)**

John is using the question form to challenge his listeners' idea of who he is. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: "I am not who you think I am!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**I am not (ULT)**  
**because I am not (UST)**

The pronoun **he** refers to the Messiah. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: "I am not the Messiah" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**behold (ULT)**  
**listen (UST)**

John is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> And as [John was completing](#) {his} course, he was saying, 'Who do you think I am? I am not he. But behold, one is coming after me, of whom the [sandals](#) of {his} feet I am not [worthy](#) to untie.'

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> When [John was about to finish](#) the work that God gave him to do, he told the crowds, 'Do not think that I am the Messiah whom God promised to send, because I am not. But listen! The Messiah will soon come. He is so much greater than I am that I do not even [deserve](#) to be his slave and take the [sandals](#) off his feet.'

**of whom the sandals of {his} feet I am not worthy to untie (ULT)**  
**He is so much greater than I am that I do not even deserve to be his slave and take the sandals off his feet (UST)**

John is using the action of untying sandals symbolically to signify humble service. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could translate this with a general expression. Alternate translation: “to whom I am not even worthy to offer humble service” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**the sandals of {his} feet (ULT)**  
**the sandals...his feet (UST)**

In your language, the expression **the sandals of his feet** might seem to convey redundant information that would be not be natural to express. If so, you can abbreviate it. Alternate translation: “his sandals” (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- John
- was completing
- sandals
- worthy

### Translation Words - UST

- John
- was about to finish
- do...deserve
- sandals



## **Acts 13:26**

**Men, brothers, sons of the family of Abraham, and the ones among you fearing God (ULT)  
My fellow Israelites who are descendants of Abraham and you non-Jewish people who also worship God, please listen (UST)**

Paul is using an idiomatic form of address. Alternate translation: “My brothers—my fellow sons of the family of Abraham—and you others who fear God” (See: [Idiom](#))

**brothers, sons of the family of Abraham, and the ones among you fearing God (ULT)  
My fellow Israelites...who are descendants of Abraham and you non-Jewish people who also worship God...please listen (UST)**

Paul is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. Alternate translation: “My fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**sons (ULT)  
who are descendants (UST)**

Paul is using the term **sons** figuratively to mean “descendants.” Alternate translation: “descendants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to us (ULT)  
all of us (UST)**

Here the word **us** includes Paul and his entire audience in the synagogue, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks this distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**the word of this salvation has been sent (ULT)  
God has told...how he saves people (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, it is clear from the context that this was God. Alternate translation: “God has sent the word about this salvation” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the word (ULT)  
God has told (UST)**

Paul is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that God sent about Jesus by using words. Alternate translation: “the message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Men, [brothers](#), [sons](#) of the family of [Abraham](#), and the [ones](#) among you [fearing God](#), to us the word of this [salvation has been sent](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> “[My fellow Israelites who are descendants of Abraham](#) and [you non-Jewish people who also worship God](#), please listen! [God has told](#) all of us [how he saves people](#).”



## **this salvation (ULT)** **how he saves people (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **salvation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "about how God is saving people" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- brothers
- sons
- of Abraham
- ones...fearing
- God
- salvation
- has been sent

### **Translation Words - UST**

- My fellow Israelites...please listen
- who are descendants
- of Abraham
- you non-Jewish people who...worship
- God
- God has told
- how he saves people



## **Acts 13:27**

## not recognizing this one (ULT) did not recognize Jesus (UST)

The demonstrative pronoun **this one** refers to Jesus. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “not recognizing Jesus” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## not recognizing this one (ULT) did not recognize Jesus (UST)

Paul means implicitly that the people of Jerusalem and their leaders did not recognize that God had sent Jesus to be the Messiah. Alternate translation: “not recognizing that God had sent Jesus to be the Messiah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the voices of the prophets (ULT) the writings of the prophets...what the prophets predicted long ago (UST)

Paul is using the word **voices** figuratively to mean the prophecies that the prophets spoke with their voices. Alternate translation: “the prophecies of the prophets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## being read...being read (ULT) on...They heard someone read from...in their synagogues...But they did not understand what the prophets were saying (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that someone reads” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## being read...being read (ULT) on...They heard someone read from...in their synagogues...But they did not understand what the prophets were saying (UST)

Paul is referring implicitly to the way that someone reads from the writings of **the prophets** on each **Sabbath** in the synagogues. Alternate translation: “that someone reads aloud in each synagogue” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [not recognizing](#)
- [condemning him](#)
- [fulfilled](#)
- [voices](#)
- [of the prophets](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For the ones living in [Jerusalem](#) and their [rulers](#), [not recognizing](#) this one and [condemning him](#), [fulfilled](#) the [voices of the prophets](#) being read on every [Sabbath](#).

### UST

<sup>27</sup> The people living in [Jerusalem](#) and their [rulers](#) [did not recognize](#) Jesus. They heard someone read from the [writings of the prophets](#) {in their synagogues} on every [Sabbath day](#). {But they did not understand what the prophets were saying.} And so [what the prophets predicted long ago](#) came true [when they condemned Jesus to death](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- rulers
- when they condemned Jesus to death
- did not recognize
- writings...what...predicted long ago
- of the prophets...the prophets
- Sabbath day
- came true

## Acts 13:28

**they asked Pilate for him to be killed (ULT)**  
**But they still demanded that Pilate, the governor, condemn him to death (UST)**

Here the word **they** refers to the Jewish people and their religious leaders in Jerusalem, and the pronoun **him** refers to Jesus. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “the Jewish leaders asked Pilate for Jesus to be killed” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**for him to be killed (ULT)**  
**condemn him to death (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “to execute him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for death](#)
- [Pilate](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [for which he deserved to die](#)
- [Pilate, the governor](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> And finding no reason [for death](#), they asked [Pilate](#) for him to be killed.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> {Many people accused Jesus of doing wicked things.} They could not prove that he had done anything [for which he deserved to die](#). But they still demanded that [Pilate, the governor](#), condemn him to death.

**Acts 13:29**

**all the things having been written about him (ULT)**

**all the things that the prophets had written long ago that people would do to him (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "all that the prophets had written about him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**taking him down from the tree (ULT)**  
**They killed Jesus by nailing him to a cross.}**  
**Then they took his body down from the cross (UST)**

It may be helpful to say explicitly that Jesus died before this happened. Alternate translation: "taking him down from the tree after he died" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the tree (ULT)**  
**the cross (UST)**

The word translated **tree** can mean either an actual tree or something made of wood. Paul is using the word to refer to the cross, which was made out of wood. Alternate translation: "from the cross" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [things having been written](#)
- [a tomb](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [things that the prophets had written long ago](#)
- [a tomb](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> And when they had completed all the [things having been written](#) about him, taking him down from the tree, they laid him in [a tomb](#).

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> They did to Jesus all the [things that the prophets had written long ago](#) that people would do to him. {They killed Jesus by nailing him to a cross.} Then they took his body down from the cross and placed it in [a tomb](#).

## Acts 13:30

### But God raised him (ULT) However, God brought him back to life (UST)

Paul uses the word **But** to indicate a strong contrast between what the people did and what God did. Alternate translation: “Nevertheless” (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#) )

### raised him (ULT) brought him back to life (UST)

Here, **raised** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: “caused him to live again after he had died” (See: [Idiom](#))

### raised him from the dead (ULT) brought him back to life after he was dead (UST)

Paul is using the adjective **dead** as a noun to mean people who have died. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “from among those who were dead” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [raised](#)
- [the dead](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [brought...back to life](#)
- [dead](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But [God raised](#) him from [the dead](#),

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> However, [God brought](#) him [back to life](#) after he was [dead](#).





## **Acts 13:31**

**who was seen for many days by the ones having come up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem (ULT)**

**For many days he repeatedly appeared to his disciples who had come along with him from Galilee to Jerusalem (UST)**

The pronoun **who** refers to Jesus. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers, and it may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He was seen for many days by the ones having come up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> who was seen for many [days](#) by the ones having come up with him from [Galilee](#) to [Jerusalem](#), who now are his [witnesses](#) to the [people](#).

### UST

<sup>31</sup> For many [days](#) he repeatedly appeared to his disciples who had come along with him from [Galilee](#) to [Jerusalem](#). Those who saw him are [telling the people](#) about him now."

**who was seen for many days by the ones having come up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem (ULT)**

**For many days he repeatedly appeared to his disciples who had come along with him from Galilee to Jerusalem (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The ones having come up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem saw him for many days" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**many days (ULT)**

**many days (UST)**

We know from other writings tWe know from the Gospels that this period was 40 days. Translate **many days** with a term that would be appropriate for that length of time. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))hat this period was 40 days. Translate **many days** with a term that would be appropriate for that length of time.

**by the ones having come up (ULT)**  
**to his disciples who had come along (UST)**

Paul says **having come up** because that was the customary way of speaking about traveling to Jerusalem, since that city is up on a mountain. Alternate translation: "the ones who traveled" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [witnesses](#)
- [people](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [days](#)
- [Galilee](#)

- Jerusalem
- telling
- people

**Acts 13:32****the promise having been to {our} fathers****(ULT)****God made a promise to our Jewish ancestors****(UST)**

Paul assumes that his listeners will know that he is referring to a **promise** that God made. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “the promise that God made to our fathers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**our} fathers (ULT)****our Jewish ancestors (UST)**

Paul is using the term **fathers** figuratively to mean “ancestors.” Alternate translation: “our ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [are proclaiming](#)
- [promise](#)
- [fathers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [are proclaiming this good news](#)
- [promise](#)
- [our Jewish ancestors](#)

**ULT**

<sup>32</sup> And we [are proclaiming](#) to you the [promise](#) having been to {our} [fathers](#),

**UST**

<sup>32</sup> “Right now we [are proclaiming this good news](#) to you. God made a [promise](#) to [our Jewish ancestors](#).”



## **Acts 13:33**

## God has fulfilled this for our children

It may be helpful to create a verse bridge that combines verse 32 with the first part of verse 33. You could say something like this: “And we are proclaiming to you that by raising Jesus, God has completely fulfilled for our children the promise he made to our fathers.” (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

### this (ULT) that promise (UST)

Paul assumes that his listeners will know that by **this**, he means the promise he described in the previous verse. Alternate translation: “this promise” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### for our children (ULT) for us who are their descendants, and also for you who are not Jews (UST)

Some ancient copies read, “for us, their children” which makes sense, since Paul is saying that this promise was fulfilled in his own generation, not in the next generation. Paul would also speak of God fulfilling a promise he made for the children of the people to whom he made the promise, not for the children of others. If the reading **for our children** is correct, Paul may mean “for the children of us Israelites.” If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider using the reading in that translation. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you follow the readings of ULT and UST. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

### for our children (ULT) for us who are their descendants, and also for you who are not Jews (UST)

If this is the correct reading, then Paul may be using the term **children** figuratively to mean “descendants.” Alternate translation: “for our descendants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### raising up Jesus (ULT) by making Jesus alive again (UST)

Here, **raising up** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: “by causing Jesus to live again after he had died” (See: [Idiom](#))

### As it is also written in the second Psalm (ULT) It is just like what David wrote in the second Psalm{, when God was speaking about sending his Son (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “As we can also read in the second Psalm” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> that God has completely fulfilled this for our children, raising up Jesus. As it is also written in the second Psalm: ‘You are my Son; today I have fathered you.’

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> God has kept that promise for us who are their descendants, and also for you who are not Jews, by making Jesus alive again. It is just like what David wrote in the second Psalm{, when God was speaking about sending his Son}: ‘You are my Son; today I have become your Father.’



**the...Psalm...second (ULT)****the...Psalm...second (UST)**

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: "Psalm 2" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**You are my Son; today I have fathered you (ULT)****You are my Son; today I have become your Father (UST)**

Even if your language does not customarily put one direct quotation inside another, it would be good to present this quotation from Psalm 2 as a direct quotation if possible, since God is addressing the Messiah directly in it. You may be able to indicate its beginning with an opening second-level quotation mark or with some other punctuation or convention that your language could use to indicate the start of a second-level quotation. You may also be able to use special formatting to set off the quotation, as ULT does. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**You are my Son; today I have fathered you (ULT)****You are my Son; today I have become your Father (UST)**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. However, if the repetition might be confusing, you could connect the phrases with a word that shows that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: "You are my Son, yes, today I have fathered you" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Son...have fathered you (ULT)****Son...have become your Father (UST)**

**Son** is an important title that describes the relationship between Jesus and God. Be sure to retain this title in your translation. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [has completely fulfilled](#)
- [for...children](#)
- [raising up](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [As](#)
- [it is...written](#)
- [Son](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [has kept](#)
- [who are their descendants](#)
- [by making...alive again](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [It is just like](#)
- [what David wrote...when God was speaking about sending his Son](#)

- Son



## **Acts 13:34**

**he raised him up...he has spoken (ULT)**  
**God has made the Messiah alive...God promised that to the Messiah...he said in the Scriptures (UST)**

The pronoun **he** refers to God, and the pronoun **him** refers to Jesus. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “God raised Jesus...God has spoken” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**he raised him up (ULT)**  
**God has made the Messiah alive (UST)**

As in [2:24](#), the idiom **raised up** means that God made Jesus alive again after he died. Alternate translation: “he brought him back to life” (See: [Idiom](#))

**from the dead (ULT)**  
**after he was dead (UST)**

Paul is using the adjective **dead** as a noun to mean people who have died. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “from among those who were dead” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**I will give you the holy, trustworthy things of David (ULT)**  
**I will certainly help you, as I promised David that I would do (UST)**

This quotation is from the prophet Isaiah. Even if your language does not customarily put one direct quotation inside another, it would be good to present this quotation from Isaiah as a direct quotation if possible, since God is addressing the Israelites and ultimately the Messiah directly in it. You may be able to indicate its beginning with an opening second-level quotation mark or with some other punctuation or convention that your language uses to indicate the start of a second-level quotation. You may also be able to use special formatting to set off the quotation, as ULT does. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**the holy...trustworthy things (ULT)**  
**I will certainly help you, as I promised David that I would do...I will certainly help you, as I promised David that I would do (UST)**

Paul is using the adjectives **holy** and **trustworthy** as nouns. ULT adds the word **things** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “the trustworthy promises that God made to David as the ancestor of the Holy One” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [he raised...up](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [to return](#)
- [holy](#)
- [of David](#)

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> And that [he raised him up](#) from [the dead](#), never going [to return](#) to decay, he has spoken thus: ‘I will give you the [holy](#), trustworthy things [of David](#).’

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> [God has made](#) the Messiah [alive after he was dead](#), and [God will](#) never [let him die again](#). God promised that to the Messiah when he said in the Scriptures, ‘I will certainly help you, as I promised David that I would do.’

## Translation Words - UST

- God has made...alive
- after he was dead
- God will...let him die again
- I will certainly help you, as I promised David that I would do
- I will certainly help you, as I promised David that I would do



## **Acts 13:35**



## in another {place} (ULT) in another psalm (UST)

Paul assumes that his listeners will know that by **another place**, he means another place in the Scriptures. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “in another place in the Scriptures” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## also...he...says (ULT) also...David...says (UST)

Even though David is the author of Psalm 16, from which this quotation is taken, the pronoun **he** refers to God, as in 13:34. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “God also says” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

## your Holy One (ULT) the body of your Messiah (UST)

The expression **Holy One** is a title for the Messiah. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: “your Messiah” or “your holy Messiah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## your Holy One (ULT) the body of your Messiah (UST)

This is a Messianic prophecy, and the Messiah is referring to himself in the third person. If that would be confusing to your readers, you can use the first person in your translation. Alternate translation: “me, your Holy One” or “me, the Messiah” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

## to see decay (ULT) to decay (UST)

Paul is using the word **see** idiomatically to mean “experience.” Alternate translation: “to experience decay” or “to undergo decay” (See: [Idiom](#))

## to see decay (ULT) to decay (UST)

The term **decay** refers in this context to the decomposition of the body after death. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “to experience the decomposition of his body” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy One](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> For in another {place} he also says: ‘You will not allow your [Holy One](#) to see decay.’

### UST

<sup>35</sup> That is why, in another psalm, David also says: ‘You, God, will not allow the [body of your Messiah](#) to decay.’

## Translation Words - UST

- [body of...Messiah](#)



## **Acts 13:36**

## fell asleep (ULT) Then when he died (UST)

Paul is referring to death in a polite way by using the phrase **fell asleep**. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: “passed away” or “died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

## was laid with his fathers (ULT) his body was buried where his ancestors’ bodies had been buried (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people buried him with his fathers” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## with his fathers (ULT) where his ancestors’ bodies had been buried (UST)

Paul is using the term **fathers** figuratively to mean “ancestors.” If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “with his ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## saw decay (ULT) David's body decayed. {So he could not have been speaking about himself in this psalm (UST)

Paul is using the word **saw** idiomatically to mean “experienced.” Alternate translation: “experienced decay” or “underwent decay” (See: [Idiom](#))

## decay (ULT) David's body decayed...So he could not have been speaking about himself in this psalm (UST)

The term **decay** refers in this context to the decomposition of the body after death. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: “the decomposition of his body” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [having served](#)
- [counsel](#)
- [of God](#)
- [in...generation](#)
- [fell asleep](#)
- [fathers](#)

## ULT

<sup>36</sup> For indeed [David](#), [having served](#) the [counsel of God](#) in his own [generation](#), [fell asleep](#) and was laid with his [fathers](#) and saw decay.

## UST

<sup>36</sup> While [David](#) was living, he did what [God wanted him to do](#). Then when he [died](#) his body was buried where his [ancestors' bodies](#) had been buried. Then David's body decayed. {So he could not have been speaking about himself in this psalm.}

## Translation Words - UST

- While...was living
- David
- he did
- what...wanted him to do
- God
- Then when he died
- ancestors' bodies

**Acts 13:37****he whom...God raised up (ULT)  
Jesus...God made...alive again after he died (UST)**

The pronoun **he** refers to Jesus. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: "Jesus, whom God raised up," (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**God raised up (ULT)  
God made...alive again after he died (UST)**

The idiom **raised up** means that God made Jesus alive again after he died. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "God brought back to life" (See: [Idiom](#))

**did not see decay (ULT)  
and his body did not decay (UST)**

Paul is using the word **see** idiomatically to mean "experience." If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "experience decay" or "undergo decay" (See: [Idiom](#))

**decay (ULT)  
and his body did...decay (UST)**

The term **decay** refers in this context to the decomposition of the body after death. Alternate translation: "the decomposition of his body" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [raised up](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [made...alive again after he died](#)

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> But he whom [God raised up](#) did not see decay.

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> But [God made](#) Jesus [alive again after he died](#), and his body did not decay."





## **Acts 13:38**

**known...let it be...to you (ULT)**  
**we want...to know...we want...you...to know (UST)**

If your language does not use the third-person imperative in this way, you can state this in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “may it be known to you” or “you should know” (See: [Third-Person Imperatives](#))

**men, brothers (ULT)**  
**fellow Israelites and other friends (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Use a way that is natural in your language to refer to a particular group of people. Alternate translation: “my brothers” (See: [Idiom](#))

**brothers (ULT)**  
**fellow Israelites and other friends (UST)**

Paul is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. He is addressing the people in the synagogue who are his fellow-Jews and followers of Judaism. They are not Christian believers at this point. He may also be using the word **brothers** as a term of friendship for the Gentiles who are present. Alternate translation, as in UST: “my fellow Israelites and other friends” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**this one (ULT)**  
**Jesus (UST)**

The demonstrative pronoun **this one** refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: “Jesus” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**release of sins is proclaimed to you and (ULT)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “we are proclaiming forgiveness of sins to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**release of sins is proclaimed to you and from everything (ULT)**

Paul is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “release of sins is proclaimed to you, and release is also proclaimed to you from the guilt of everything” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**ULT**

<sup>38</sup> So let it be [known](#) to you, men, [brothers](#), that through this one [release of sins is proclaimed](#) to you and from everything of which you were not able [to be justified in the law of Moses](#). <sup>[2]</sup>

**UST**

<sup>38</sup> “So, [fellow Israelites and other friends](#), we want you to [know](#) that [God is promising to forgive](#) your [sins](#) as a result of what Jesus has done. You could not [become right with God](#) by obeying [the laws that Moses wrote](#) because there were many laws that you were not able to obey.

## **everything of which you were not able to be justified in the law of Moses (ULT)**

**You could not become right with God by obeying the laws that Moses wrote because...there were many laws...that you were not able to obey (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "everything that you were not able to do in obedience to the law of Moses" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [known](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [release](#)
- [of sins](#)
- [is proclaimed](#)
- [to be justified](#)
- [the law of Moses](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [fellow Israelites and other friends](#)
- [we want...to know](#)
- [God is promising](#)
- [to forgive](#)
- [sins](#)
- [become right with God](#)
- [the laws that Moses wrote](#)

**Acts 13:39**

**In this one, everyone believing is justified (ULT)**

**But now God declares that all people who believe in Jesus are no longer guilty of any of the things that they have done that have displeased him (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God justifies everyone who believes in this one" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**this one (ULT)**

**Jesus (UST)**

The demonstrative pronoun **this one** refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "Jesus" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [believing](#)
- [is justified](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [believe](#)
- [are no longer guilty of any of the things that they have done that have displeased him](#)

**ULT**

<sup>39</sup> In this one, everyone [believing is justified](#).

**UST**

<sup>39</sup> But now God declares that all people who [believe in Jesus are no longer guilty of any of the things that they have done that have displeased him](#).

**Acts 13:40****Look (ULT)  
be careful that (UST)**

Paul is using the term **Look** figuratively to mean “Be careful,” since looking around alertly is associated with being careful. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “Be careful” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the thing spoken about in the prophets (ULT)  
as the prophets said that (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the thing that the prophets spoke about” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**that...may not come upon you (ULT)  
God does not judge you...God would do (UST)**

Paul is speaking figuratively of what the prophets spoke as if it were a living thing that could **come upon** his listeners. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “may not happen to you” (See: [Personification](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [prophets](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [prophets](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> Look, therefore that the thing spoken about in the [prophets](#) may not come upon you:

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> So then be careful that God does not judge you, as the [prophets](#) said that God would do!



## **Acts 13:41**

**Look, you despisers, and marvel and be destroyed! For I am doing a work in your days, a work that you would not believe at all, even if someone announced it to you (ULT)**

This quotation is from the prophet Habakkuk. Even if your language does not customarily put one direct quotation inside another, it would be good to present this quotation from Habakkuk as a direct quotation if possible, since God is addressing the Israelites and directly in it. You may be able to indicate its beginning with an opening second-level quotation mark or with some other punctuation or convention that your language could use to indicate the start of a second-level quotation. You may also be able to use special formatting to set off the quotation, as ULT does. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**Look (ULT)  
God said through the prophet Habakkuk...  
when you see (UST)**

Paul is using the term **Look** figuratively to mean “Be careful,” since looking around alertly is associated with being careful. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “Be careful” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**be destroyed (ULT)  
you will be destroyed (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “perish” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**am doing a work...a work (ULT)  
what...am doing...will do...to you...would do...something terrible...that (UST)**

God is using the word **work** figuratively to mean a judgment that he will work to bring about. Alternate translation: “I am carrying out a judgment...a judgment” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**in your days (ULT)  
while you are living (UST)**

God is using the term **days** idiomatically to refer to a specific time. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “during your lifetime” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [marvel](#)
- [be destroyed](#)
- [am doing](#)
- [a work](#)

**ULT**

<sup>41</sup> ‘Look, you despisers, and [marvel](#) and [be destroyed](#)! For I [am doing a work](#) in your [days](#), [a work](#) that [you would](#) not [believe](#) at all, even if someone [announced it](#) to you.’”

**UST**

<sup>41</sup> {God said through the prophet Habakkuk,} ‘You who ridicule me, [you will certainly be amazed](#) when you see [what I am doing](#). Then [you will be destroyed](#). [You will be amazed because I will do something terrible to you](#) while you [are living](#). You would not [believe](#) that I [would do that](#) even if someone [told you!](#)’”



- a work (2)
- days
- you would...believe
- announced it

## Translation Words - UST

- you will certainly be amazed...You will be amazed because
- what
- something terrible...that (2)
- told
- am doing...will do...to you...would do
- you will be destroyed
- are living
- would...believe

**Acts 13:42****And as they were leaving (ULT)  
After Paul finished speaking and they were  
going away (UST)**

Here the pronoun **they** refers to Paul and Barnabas. Alternate translation: “as Paul and Barnabas were leaving” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**they were begging (ULT)  
many of the people there asked them (UST)**

Here the pronoun **they** refers to the people who were in the synagogue. Alternate translation: “the people in the synagogue begged them” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**these words to be spoken to them (ULT)  
to return...and say these things to them again (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “them to speak these words” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**these words (ULT)  
these things (UST)**

Here, **words** refers to the message that Paul had spoken using words. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “this message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- they were begging
- Sabbath

**Translation Words - UST**

- many of the people there asked them
- Sabbath

**ULT**

<sup>42</sup> And as they were leaving, **they were begging** these words to be spoken to them on the next **Sabbath**.

**UST**

<sup>42</sup> After Paul finished speaking and they were going away, **many of the people there asked them** to return on the next **Sabbath** and say these things to them again.



## **Acts 13:43**

## And when the synagogue meeting was ended (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “ended” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## proselytes (ULT) non-Jews (UST)

These **proselytes** were non-Jewish people who had converted to Judaism. Alternate translation: “convert to Judaism” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## followed...Paul and Barnabas (ULT) became disciples of Jesus, as...had encouraged them to do...Paul and Barnabas (UST)

In this context, to **follow** someone means to become that person’s disciple or accept that person as a teacher. Alternate translation: “accepted Paul and Barnabas as their teachers” (See: [Idiom](#))

## to continue in the grace of God (ULT) to continue to trust that God kindly forgives people’s sins because of what Jesus did (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “to remain faithful to God, who had graciously saved them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue meeting](#)
- [of the Jews](#)
- [worshiping](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [in the grace](#)
- [of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [meeting](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [who worshiped God](#)
- [God](#)
- [kindly forgives people’s sins because of what Jesus did](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> And when the [synagogue meeting](#) was ended, many [of the Jews](#) and the [worshiping](#) proselytes followed [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#), who, speaking to them, urged them to continue [in the grace of God](#).

### UST

<sup>43</sup> When the [meeting](#) was over, many people became disciples of Jesus, as [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) had encouraged them to do. These people were both [Jews](#) and non-Jews [who worshiped God](#). Paul and Barnabas continued talking to them. They urged them to continue to trust that [God kindly forgives people’s sins because of what Jesus did](#).

## Acts 13:44

### almost the whole city (ULT) most of the people in Antioch (UST)

The **city** represents the people in the city. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “almost all the people of the city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### was gathered together (ULT) came to the Jewish meeting place (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “gathered together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to hear the word of the Lord (ULT) to hear Paul and Barnabas speak about Jesus (UST)

The implication is that Paul and Barnabas were going to speak **the word of the Lord**. Alternate translation: “to hear Paul and Barnabas speak the word of the Lord” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the word of the Lord (ULT) Paul and Barnabas speak about Jesus (UST)

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that Paul and Barnabas were going to share by using words. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the message of the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### of the Lord (ULT) about Jesus (UST)

Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Use a form for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: “about the Lord Jesus” (See: [Politeness](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- on the...Sabbath
- was gathered together
- word of the Lord

## Translation Words - UST

- On the...Sabbath day
- came to the Jewish meeting place
- Paul and Barnabas speak...about Jesus

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> And [on the](#) next [Sabbath](#), almost the whole city [was gathered together](#) to hear the [word of the Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>44</sup> [On the](#) next [Sabbath day](#), most of the people in Antioch [came to the Jewish meeting place](#) to hear [Paul and Barnabas speak about Jesus](#).

## Acts 13:45

### the...Jews (ULT)

#### The leaders of the Jews...them (UST)

Luke is using the name of a whole group, **the Jews**, to refer to one part of that group, its leaders. Alternate translation: "the leaders of the Jews" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### were filled with jealousy (ULT)

#### extremely jealous (UST)

For emphasis, Luke is speaking figuratively of the Jewish leaders as if they were a container that jealousy **filled**. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could express the emphasis another way. Alternate translation: "they became very jealous" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the things being said by Paul (ULT)

#### the things that Paul was saying...him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the things that Paul was saying" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [with jealousy](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [blaspheming](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [leaders of the Jews...them](#)
- [extremely jealous](#)
- [Paul...him](#)
- [They also insulted](#)

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> But seeing the crowds, the [Jews](#) were filled [with jealousy](#), and they were speaking against the things being said by [Paul](#), [blaspheming](#).

### UST

<sup>45</sup> The [leaders of the Jews](#) saw the large crowds of people that were coming to hear Paul and Barnabas. This made [them extremely jealous](#). So they began to contradict the things that [Paul](#) was saying. [They also insulted him](#).





## **Acts 13:46**

**the word of God to be spoken (ULT)**  
**speak the message from God about Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “for us to speak the word of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to you...necessary for the word of God to be spoken...first (ULT)**  
**to you Jews...We had to...speak the message from God about Jesus...first before we proclaim it to non-Jews...because God commanded us to do that (UST)**

Paul and Barnabas are using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that God commanded them to share by using words. Alternate translation: “the message from God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to you...first (ULT)**  
**to you Jews...first before we proclaim it to non-Jews (UST)**

Paul means implicitly that it was necessary to speak to the Jews first because they were God’s chosen people and God had sent the Messiah initially to them. Alternate translation: “to you Jews first because you are God’s chosen people and God sent the Messiah initially to you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Since you reject it (ULT)**  
**But you are rejecting God’s message. By doing that (UST)**

Their rejection of the word of God is spoken of as if it were something they pushed away. Alternate translation: “Since you reject the word of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**judge yourselves not worthy of eternal life (ULT)**  
**you have shown that you are not worthy of everlasting life (UST)**

Paul does not seriously believe that the Jewish leaders do not consider themselves worthy of eternal life. Paul actually means to communicate the opposite of the literal meaning of his words. Alternate translation: “are acting as if you are not worthy of eternal life” (See: [Irony](#))

**behold (ULT)**  
**Therefore (UST)**

Paul and Barnabas are using the term **behold** to focus the attention of the Jewish leaders on what they are about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>46</sup> And Paul and Barnabas, speaking boldly, said, “It was necessary for the word of God to be spoken to you first. Since you reject it and judge yourselves not worthy of eternal life, behold, we are turning to the Gentiles.

**UST**

<sup>46</sup> Then, speaking very boldly, Paul and Barnabas said to those Jewish leaders, “We had to speak the message from God about Jesus to you Jews first before we proclaim it to non-Jews, because God commanded us to do that. But you are rejecting God’s message. By doing that, you have shown that you are not worthy of everlasting life. Therefore, we are leaving you, and now we will go to the non-Jewish people to tell them the message from God.

**we are turning to the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**we are leaving you, and now we will go to the non-Jewish people to tell them the message from God (UST)**

Paul and Barnabas are speaking figuratively as if they are going to be physically **turning** toward **the Gentiles**. They mean that they are going to stop preaching in the Jewish synagogue and begin preaching to gatherings of Gentiles. Alternate translation: “we will leave you and start preaching to the Gentiles” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**we are turning (ULT)**  
**we are leaving you, and now we will go...to tell...the message from God (UST)**

By **we**, Paul and Barnabas mean themselves, but not the Jewish leaders to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- Barnabas
- Gentiles
- speaking boldly
- word of God
- you reject
- judge
- worthy
- eternal
- of...life
- we are turning

### Translation Words - UST

- Then, speaking very boldly
- Paul
- non-Jewish people...them
- Barnabas
- message from God about Jesus
- But you are rejecting
- you have shown that
- worthy
- everlasting
- of...life
- we are leaving you, and now we will go...to tell...the message from God



## **Acts 13:47**

**us (ULT)****us (UST)**

By **us**, Paul and Barnabas mean themselves, but not the Jewish leaders to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**the Lord (ULT)****the Lord God (UST)**

Paul and Barnabas are referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Use a form for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: "the Lord Jesus" (See: [Politeness](#))

**I have placed you as a light for the Gentiles,  
for you to be for salvation as far as the end of the earth (ULT)  
He said in the Scriptures,} 'I have chosen you to reveal things about me to  
non-Jewish people that will be like a light to them. I have chosen you to tell  
people everywhere in the world the message that I want to save them (UST)**

This quotation is from the prophet Isaiah. Even if your language does not customarily put one direct quotation inside another, it would be good to present this quotation from Isaiah as a direct quotation if possible, since God is addressing the Messiah directly in it. (Paul and Barnabas are saying that since they are disciples of the Messiah, the quotation also refers to their ministry.) You may be able to indicate its beginning with an opening second-level quotation mark or with some other punctuation or convention that your language could use to indicate the start of a second-level quotation. You may also be able to use special formatting to set off the quotation, as ULT does. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**I have placed you as a light (ULT)****He said in the Scriptures,} 'I have chosen you to reveal things about me...that  
will be like a light (UST)**

Through this quotation from Isaiah, Paul and Barnabas are saying that the truth they are preaching about Jesus is like a **light** that allows people to see. You could use the same simile in your translation, or you could use a different comparison, to something else your readers would recognize that helps people to understand. (See: [Simile](#))

**you (ULT)****you (UST)**

The word **you** is singular here because it refers to the Messiah. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#))

**ULT**

<sup>47</sup> For thus the Lord has commanded us: 'I have placed you as a light for the Gentiles, for you to be for salvation as far as the end of the earth.'"

**UST**

<sup>47</sup> We are doing this because the Lord God has commanded us to do it. {He said in the Scriptures,} 'I have chosen you to reveal things about me to non-Jewish people that will be like a light to them. I have chosen you to tell people everywhere in the world the message that I want to save them.'"

**for...to be...for salvation as far as the end of the earth (ULT)**  
**I have chosen...to tell people everywhere in the world the message that I want to save them (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **salvation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "should go and help people to be saved" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**as far as the end of the earth (ULT)**  
**everywhere in the world (UST)**

This phrase is an idiom. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "everywhere on earth" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- has commanded
- I have placed
- a light
- for the Gentiles
- salvation
- of the earth

### Translation Words - UST

- We are doing...has commanded...to do it
- Lord God
- to non-Jewish people...to them
- a light
- to tell people...the message that I want to save them
- world
- He said in the Scriptures,} I have chosen...to reveal things about me

## Acts 13:48

### the word of the Lord (ULT) the message about Jesus (UST)

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that Paul and Barnabas had shared by using words. Alternate translation: “the message about the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### of the Lord (ULT) about Jesus (UST)

Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Use a form for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: “about the Lord Jesus” (See: [Politeness](#))

### appointed (ULT) God had chosen (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, it is clear from the context that it was God. Alternate translation: “God had appointed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Gentiles
- were rejoicing
- glorifying
- word of the Lord
- eternal
- life
- believed

### Translation Words - UST

- non-Jewish people
- they rejoiced
- They praised God for
- message about Jesus
- everlasting
- life
- put their trust in Jesus

### ULT

<sup>48</sup> But hearing this, the Gentiles were rejoicing and glorifying the word of the Lord, and as many as were appointed to eternal life believed.

### UST

<sup>48</sup> When the non-Jewish people heard those words, they rejoiced. They praised God for the message about Jesus. All of the non-Jewish people whom God had chosen for everlasting life put their trust in Jesus.



**Acts 13:49****the word of the Lord (ULT)  
the message about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that Paul and Barnabas had shared by using words. Alternate translation: “the message about the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of the Lord (ULT)  
about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Alternate translation: “about the Lord Jesus” (See: [Politeness](#))

**was being spread...the word of the Lord (ULT)  
many of the believers traveled around...spreading...the message about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was those who believed in Jesus. Alternate translation: “those who believed in Jesus spread the word of the Lord” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [word of the Lord](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [message about the Lord Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>49</sup> And the [word of the Lord](#) was being spread throughout the whole region.

**UST**

<sup>49</sup> At that time, many of the believers traveled around throughout that region, spreading the [message about the Lord Jesus](#) everywhere they went.



## **Acts 13:50**

**the...Jews (ULT)**  
**the...The...some leaders of...Jews...Jewish leaders (UST)**

Luke is using the name of a whole group, **the Jews**, to refer to one part of that group, its leaders. Alternate translation: “the leaders of the Jews” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**stirred up (ULT)**  
**talked to...They...talked to...persuaded (UST)**

Luke says figuratively that the Jewish leaders **stirred up** these women and men, as if calm waters were being disturbed. This figurative expression means that the leaders said things to make them very upset with Paul and Barnabas. Alternate translation: “agitated” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Alternate translation: “the influential women among the Gentile women who worshiped in the synagogue”

**the principal ones (ULT)**  
**the most important men...the non-Jewish city leaders...those non-Jewish people (UST)**

Luke is using the adjective **principal** as a noun, to mean people who are important. (ULT adds the word **ones** to show this.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “the most important men” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**they threw them out (ULT)**  
**they made them leave (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to the influential women and important men, not to the Jewish leaders. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “the influential women and important men threw them out” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**they threw them out from their boundaries (ULT)**  
**they made them leave their region (UST)**

Luke is likely speaking figuratively when he says that they **threw** them out. It is unlikely that they actually picked up Paul and Barnabas and heaved them through the air. Alternate translation: “they forced Paul and Barnabas to leave their boundaries” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**their boundaries (ULT)**  
**their...region (UST)**

Luke is describing the city of Antioch in Pisidia figuratively by association with the way that it had **boundaries** and its leading citizens could determine who could be within those boundaries. Alternate translation: “their city” or “the territory they controlled” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ULT**

<sup>50</sup> But the [Jews](#) stirred up the influential [worshiping](#) women and the principal ones of the city and aroused [a persecution](#) against [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#), and [they threw](#) them [out](#) from their boundaries.

**UST**

<sup>50</sup> However, [some leaders of the Jews](#) talked to some important women [who worshiped with them](#). They also talked to the most important men in the city. The [Jewish leaders](#) persuaded the non-Jewish city leaders [to try to stop Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#). So those non-Jewish people led many citizens [against Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#), and [they made](#) them [leave](#) their region.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- worshiping
- a persecution
- Paul
- Barnabas
- they threw...out

## Translation Words - UST

- some leaders of...Jews...Jewish leaders
- they made...leave
- who worshiped with them
- to try to stop...against
- Paul...Paul
- Barnabas...Barnabas

**Acts 13:51****they (ULT)****they (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to Paul and Barnabas. Alternate translation: "Paul and Barnabas" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**having shaken off the dust of {their} feet****against them (ULT)****shook the dust off their feet. This was to show those leaders that God had rejected them and would punish them (UST)**

This symbolic action was an expression of strong rejection in this culture. It showed that someone did not want even the dust of a town to remain on them. If there is a similar gesture in your culture, you could consider using it here in your translation. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Iconium (ULT)****the city of Iconium (UST)**

The word **Iconium** is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Iconium](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the city of Iconium](#)

**ULT**

<sup>51</sup> But they, having shaken off the dust of {their} feet against them, went to [Iconium](#).

**UST**

<sup>51</sup> As the two apostles were leaving, they shook the dust off their feet. This was to show those leaders that God had rejected them and would punish them. Then they left the city of Antioch and went to [the city of Iconium](#).

**Acts 13:52**

**the...disciples (ULT)**  
**the...people in Antioch who had believed in Jesus (UST)**

Here, **the disciples** implicitly means the new believers that Paul and Barnabas were leaving behind in Antioch of Pisidia. Alternate translation: “the new believers in Antioch of Pisidia” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**were filled with joy and the Holy Spirit (ULT)**  
**were very happy and the Holy Spirit was helping them greatly (UST)**

Luke is speaking figuratively of these disciples as if they were a container that **joy** and **the Holy Spirit** had **filled**. Alternate translation: “experienced great joy and a strong sense of the Holy Spirit’s presence” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [disciples](#)
- [were filled](#)
- [with joy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [people in Antioch who had believed in Jesus](#)
- [very...was helping them greatly](#)
- [were...happy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

**ULT**

<sup>52</sup> But the [disciples](#) were filled with joy and [the Holy Spirit](#).

13:18 <sup>[1]</sup>

13:38 <sup>[2]</sup> in verse 39.

**UST**

<sup>52</sup> Meanwhile, the [people in Antioch who had believed in Jesus](#) were very [happy](#) and [the Holy Spirit](#) was helping them greatly.

## Acts 14

### Acts 14 General Notes

\r\r## Structure and formatting

\r\r- Verses 1–4 describe how Paul and Barnabas proclaimed the gospel in Iconium.\r- Verses 5–19 describe how Paul and Barnabas proclaimed the gospel in Lystra.\r- Verses 20–28 describe how Paul and Barnabas proclaimed the gospel and strengthened the believers in several cities on their way back to Antioch.\r\r## Special concepts in this chapter

\r\r### “the word of his grace”

\r\rThe expression “the word of his grace” refers to the message that God will graciously forgive and accept those who believe in Jesus. (See: [grace](#), [gracious](#) and [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

\r\r### Zeus and Hermes

\r\rIn this chapter, Barnabas and Paul are mistaken for the pagan gods Zeus and Hermes. The Gentiles in the Roman Empire worshiped many different false gods that did not really exist. Paul and Barnabas told them to believe in the “living God,” that is, the one and only true God. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

\r\r## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

\r\r### “We must enter into the kingdom of God through many sufferings.”

\r\rJesus told his followers before he died that everyone who followed him would suffer persecution. Paul and Barnabas were saying the same thing using different words as they encourage the new believers in the cities that they had visited.\r



## Acts 14:1

### And it happened that (ULT)

Luke is using this phrase to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### spoke (ULT)

### they spoke...about the Lord Jesus (UST)

It may be helpful to say explicitly that they spoke about Jesus.  
Alternate translation: "spoke about Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Iconium](#)
- [synagogue](#)
- [of the Jews](#)
- [of Jews \(2\)](#)
- [of Greeks](#)
- [believed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Iconium](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [Jews \(2\)](#)
- [meeting place. There](#)
- [non-Jews](#)
- [believed in Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And it happened that in [Iconium](#) they entered together into the [synagogue of the Jews](#) and spoke in such a way that a great multitude, both [of Jews](#) and [of Greeks](#), [believed](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> At [Iconium](#), Paul and Barnabas went as usual into the [Jewish meeting place](#). [There](#) they spoke very powerfully about the Lord Jesus. As a result, very many [Jews](#) and [non-Jews believed in Jesus](#).

## Acts 14:2

**the...disobeying Jews (ULT)**  
**some of the...Jews refused to believe that message. They (UST)**

Alternate translation: "those Jews who did not believe the message about Jesus"

**stirred up (ULT)**  
**made...angry (UST)**

Luke says figuratively that these Jews **stirred up** the Gentiles, as if calm waters were being disturbed. This figurative expression means that the Jews said things to make the Gentiles very upset with Paul and Barnabas. Alternate translation: "agitated" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the souls of the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**some of the non-Jews (UST)**

Luke is using one part of the Gentiles, their **souls**, to mean all of them. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the Gentiles" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the brothers (ULT)**  
**the people who had put their trust in Jesus (UST)**

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the believers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [souls](#)
- [of the Gentiles](#)
- [brothers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews...They](#)
- [some of the non-Jews](#)
- [some of the non-Jews](#)
- [people who had put their trust in Jesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> But the disobeying [Jews](#) stirred up and embittered the [souls of the Gentiles](#) against the [brothers](#).

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> But some of the [Jews](#) refused to believe that message. [They](#) made [some of the non-Jews](#) angry and bitter toward the [people who had put their trust in Jesus](#).



## **Acts 14:3**

**But (ULT)****But (UST)**

Luke uses the word **But** here to indicate a contrast between what the unfaithful Jews did and what Paul and Barnabas did in response. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Nevertheless” (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

**for the Lord (ULT)****about Jesus (UST)**

Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Use a form for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: “about the Lord Jesus” (See: [Politeness](#))

**to the word (ULT)****the message that...saves us (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that the Holy Spirit wanted Paul and Barnabas to share by using words. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “in support of the message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of his grace (ULT)****God...even though we do not deserve it (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “about how God graciously saves us” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**signs and wonders (ULT)****many miracles (UST)**

The terms **signs** and **wonders** mean similar things. Luke is using them together for emphasis. See how you translated this expression in [4:30](#). Alternate translation: “great miracles” (See: [Doublet](#))

**by their hands (ULT)****them...to do (UST)**

Here, **hands** figuratively represents the capability of a person. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “through them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [for a...time](#)
- [speaking boldly](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [who was testifying](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> But indeed they stayed there for a long time, speaking boldly for the Lord, who was testifying to the word of his grace by granting signs and wonders to happen by their hands.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> But Paul and Barnabas spent a long time there speaking boldly about Jesus. Jesus enabled them to do many miracles. In this way, he showed people the truth of the message that God saves us even though we do not deserve it.

- to the word...of...grace
- signs
- wonders
- hands

## Translation Words - UST

- a...time
- speaking boldly
- Jesus
- to do
- many miracles
- many miracles
- he showed people the truth of
- message that...saves us even though we do not deserve it

## Acts 14:4

**was divided...the multitude of the city (ULT)  
had two different opinions...The people who  
lived in Iconium (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the people of the city disagreed with each other" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**with the apostles (ULT)  
agreed with Paul and Barnabas (UST)**

Paul is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from earlier in the sentence if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: "were with the apostles" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [apostles](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [Paul and Barnabas](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But the multitude of the city was divided, and some indeed were with the [Jews](#), but some with the [apostles](#).

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> The people who lived in Iconium had two different opinions. Some agreed with the [Jews](#). Others agreed with [Paul and Barnabas](#).

## Acts 14:5

### to mistreat and stone them (ULT)

Luke is expressing a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **stone** tells how their opponents in Iconium wanted to **mistreat** Paul and Barnabas. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use “and.” Alternate translation: “hostilely to stone them to death” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...Gentiles
- the Jews
- rulers
- to mistreat
- stone

### Translation Words - UST

- non-Jewish people
- Jews who opposed Paul and Barnabas
- about how they could mistreat Paul and Barnabas
- important men
- they would kill Paul and Barnabas by throwing stones

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But when a plot happened of both the **Gentiles** and **the Jews**, with their **rulers**, **to mistreat** and **stone** them,

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then the **non-Jewish people** and the **Jews who opposed Paul and Barnabas** talked among themselves **about how they could mistreat Paul and Barnabas**. Some of the **important men** in that city agreed to help them. Together, they decided that **they would kill Paul and Barnabas by throwing stones** at them.



## Acts 14:6

### of Lycaonia (ULT) the district of Lycaonia...in that district (UST)

The word **Lycaonia** is the name of a district in Asia Minor (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Lystra (ULT) Lystra (UST)

The word **Lystra** is the name of a city in Asia Minor. It is south of Iconium and north of Derbe. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Derbe (ULT) Derbe (UST)

The word **Derbe** is the name of a city in Asia Minor. It is south of Iconium and Lystra. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lystra](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lystra](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> having become aware of it, they fled to the cities of Lycaonia, [Lystra](#) and Derbe, and the surrounding region,

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But Paul and Barnabas heard about their plan. They quickly went away to the district of Lycaonia. They went to the cities of [Lystra](#) and Derbe in that district and to the surrounding area.

## Acts 14:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- were proclaiming the gospel

### Translation Words - UST

- they continually told the people the good news about Jesus

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> and there they were proclaiming the gospel.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> While they were in that area, they continually told the people the good news about Jesus.

## Acts 14:8

### a certain man...was sitting (ULT) a man...who was sitting down because (UST)

Luke uses this phrase to introduce a new character into the story. If your language has its own way of doing that, you can use it here in your translation. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### powerless...in {his} feet (ULT) he was crippled...in his legs (UST)

Luke is referring figuratively to the strength of this man's legs by association with the way people are able to stand on their **feet** when their legs are strong. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "whose legs could not support him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### lame from the womb of his mother (ULT) When his mother gave birth to him, he had crippled legs (UST)

Luke is referring figuratively to the time of this man's birth by association with the way he came out of the **womb of his mother** when he was born. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "from the time he was born" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lystra](#)
- [the womb](#)
- [had...walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lystra, they saw](#)
- [When...gave birth to him](#)
- [had...been able to walk](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And in [Lystra](#) a certain man was sitting, powerless in {his} feet, lame from [the womb](#) of his mother, who had never [walked](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> In [Lystra](#), [they saw](#) a man who was sitting down because he was crippled in his legs. [When](#) his mother [gave birth to him](#), he had crippled legs, so he had never [been able to walk](#).

## Acts 14:9

**He heard Paul speaking, who looked intently at him and saw that he had faith (ULT)**  
**He listened as Paul was speaking about Jesus. Paul looked directly at him and could see in the man's face that he believed (UST)**

The pronouns **he** and **him** refer to the lame man, and the pronoun **who** refers to Paul. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers, and it may be helpful to make this two sentences. Alternate translation: "This man heard Paul speaking. Paul looked intently at the man and saw that he had faith" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**he had faith to be healed (ULT)**  
**he believed that Jesus could make him well (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **faith**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "he could trust in Jesus to heal him" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**he had faith to be healed (ULT)**  
**he believed that Jesus could make him well (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who would do the action, it is clear from the context that it would be Jesus. (Here Luke is using the word that is often translated "saved" in one of its specific senses to mean **healed**.) Alternate translation: "he could trusting Jesus to heal him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- faith
- to be healed

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- he believed
- that Jesus could make him well

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He heard Paul speaking, who looked intently at him and saw that he had faith to be healed.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> He listened as Paul was speaking about Jesus. Paul looked directly at him and could see in the man's face that he believed that Jesus could make him well.

## Acts 14:10

### He said...he jumped up (ULT) So Paul shouted out to him...He immediately jumped up (UST)

The first instance of the pronoun **He** refers to Paul, and the second instance refers to the man who was lame. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: "Paul said...the man jumped up" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### Stand upright on your feet (ULT) Stand up straight (UST)

This was not a command that the man was capable of obeying. Instead, it was a command that directly caused the man to be healed. Alternate translation: "Jesus the Messiah gives you the ability to walk" (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#) )

### Stand upright on your feet (ULT) Stand up straight (UST)

It might seem that the expression **stand ... on your feet** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: "Stand up straight" (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

### he jumped up (ULT) He immediately jumped up (UST)

The implication is that the man's legs were completely healed. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: "the man was completely healed and he jumped up" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- in a...voice
- Stand
- walked around

### Translation Words - UST

- So Paul shouted out to him
- Stand up
- began to walk around

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> He said in a loud voice, "Stand upright on your feet," and he jumped up and walked around.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> So Paul shouted out to him, "Stand up straight!" When the man heard that, his legs became strong. He immediately jumped up and began to walk around.



## **Acts 14:11**

**raised their voice (ULT)**  
**So} they shouted excitedly...Look (UST)**

Since Luke is referring to a group of people, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **voice**. Alternate translation: "they raised their voices"

**raised their voice (ULT)**  
**So} they shouted excitedly...Look (UST)**

The phrase **raised up their voice** is an idiom that means that the crowds spoke loudly. Alternate translation: "they said loudly" (See: [Idiom](#))

**saying in Lycaonian, "The gods, having been made like men, have come down to us (ULT)**  
**So...shouted excitedly...in their own Lycaonian language...Look...The gods have made themselves look like people and they have come down from the sky to help us (UST)**

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: "saying in Lycaonian that the gods, having been made like men, had come down to them" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**in Lycaonian (ULT)**  
**in their own Lycaonian language (UST)**

The word **Lycaonian** is the name of the language that was spoken in district District of Lycaonia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**having been made like men (ULT)**  
**have made themselves look like people (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "in human form" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Paul](#)
- [voice](#)
- [gods](#)
- [having been made like](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Paul](#)
- [So...shouted excitedly...Look](#)

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> And the crowds, seeing what [Paul](#) had done, raised their [voice](#), saying in Lycaonian, "The [gods, having been made like](#) men, have come down to us."

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> When the crowd saw [Paul](#) heal the crippled man, {this made them think that Paul and Barnabas were the gods that they worshiped. [So} they shouted excitedly](#) in their own Lycaonian language, "[Look! The gods have made themselves look like](#) people and they have come down from the sky to help us!"



- gods
- have made themselves look like



## **Acts 14:12**

## **Zeus (ULT)** **the chief god, whose name was Zeus (UST)**

The word **Zeus** is the name of a pagan god who was considered to be the ruler of all the other pagan gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## **Hermes (ULT)** **Hermes, the messenger for the other gods (UST)**

The word **Hermes** is the name of the pagan god who was thought to bring messages to people from Zeus and the other gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## **and Paul “Hermes (ULT)** **And...Paul...Hermes, the messenger for the other gods (UST)**

Luke is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from earlier in the sentence if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: “and they were calling Paul ‘Hermes,’” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## **the leader of the word (ULT)** **the one who had been speaking (UST)**

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that Paul and Barnabas were sharing. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the leader of the message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## **the leader of the word (ULT)** **the one who had been speaking (UST)**

Luke is speaking of the message about Jesus as if it were a living thing that Paul could lead. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the main speaker” (See: [Personification](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [they were calling](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Paul](#)

## **Translation Words - UST**

- [They began to say that...was probably...they began to say that...was](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Paul](#)

## **ULT**

<sup>12</sup> And [they were calling Barnabas](#) “Zeus,” and [Paul](#) “Hermes,” because he was the leader of the word.

## **UST**

<sup>12</sup> [They began to say that Barnabas was probably](#) the chief god, whose name was Zeus. And [they began to say that Paul was](#) Hermes, the messenger for the other gods. They believed this because Paul was the one who had been speaking.



## **Acts 14:13**

**of Zeus, being before the city (ULT)**  
**People worshiped Zeus at a temple just outside the gates of the city (UST)**

Luke is using the name **Zeus** figuratively to mean the temple that was associated with the worship of Zeus. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the temple of Zeus that was before the city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of Zeus, being before the city (ULT)**  
**People worshiped Zeus at a temple just outside the gates of the city (UST)**

Here, **before** means “in front of”. Luke is referring to the temple of Zeus that was located right outside the entrance to the city of Iconium. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: “the Temple of Zeus that was located right outside the entrance to the city” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**oxen and wreaths (ULT)**  
**bulls with wreaths of flowers around their necks (UST)**

The implication is that the priest had put these **wreaths** on the **oxen** because they were going to be offered as a sacrifice. That was the custom in this culture. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: “oxen that were wearing wreaths as sacrificial animals” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**was wanting to sacrifice (ULT)**  
**The priest...wanted to kill the bulls as part of a ceremony to worship Paul and Barnabas (UST)**

Luke means implicitly that the priest of Zeus wanted to offer the oxen as sacrifices to Paul and Barnabas, whom the people thought were the gods Zeus and Hermes. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: “wanting to offer sacrifice to Paul and Barnabas as the gods Zeus and Hermes” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [priest](#)
- [oxen](#)
- [gates](#)
- [to sacrifice](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [priest who was there](#)
- [city gate, where many people had already gathered](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> And the [priest](#) of Zeus, being before the city, bringing [oxen](#) and wreaths to the [gates](#), was wanting [to sacrifice](#) with the crowds.

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> People worshiped Zeus at a temple just outside the gates of the city. The [priest who was there](#) heard what Paul and Barnabas had done, so he came to the [city gate, where many people had already gathered](#). He brought [bulls](#) with wreaths of flowers around their necks. The priest and the crowd of people wanted [to kill the bulls as part of a ceremony to worship Paul and Barnabas](#).

- bulls
- to kill the bulls as part of a ceremony to worship Paul and Barnabas



## Acts 14:14

### tearing their clothing (ULT)

**were very upset. They tore their own clothes {to show that they did not want the people to sacrifice to them (UST)**

Barnabas and Paul tore their clothes as a symbolic action to show that they were deeply distressed and upset that the crowd wanted to sacrifice to them. If this would not be clear to your readers, you can explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: “during their clothing to show how distressed they were that the crowd wanted to sacrifice to them” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### crying out (ULT)

**shouting (UST)**

Together with the word “saying” in the next verse, the phrase “crying out” expresses a single idea. The phrase **crying out** tells how Barnabas and Paul were **saying** what they said. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use “and.” Alternate translation: “saying loudly” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [apostles](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [clothing](#)
- [crying out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [apostles](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [clothes](#)
- [shouting](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But hearing this, the [apostles Barnabas](#) and [Paul](#), tearing their [clothing](#), rushed out into the crowd, [crying out](#)

### UST

<sup>14</sup> But when the [apostles Barnabas](#) and [Paul](#) heard about that, they were very upset. They tore their own [clothes](#) {to show that they did not want the people to sacrifice to them}. They rushed among the people, [shouting](#),



## **Acts 14:15**

## Men (ULT) People of Lytra (UST)

Although the term **men** is masculine, Paul and Barnabas are likely using the term in a generic sense that includes both men and women, since both men and women and Lytra were probably in the crowd that wanted to sacrifice to them. To make this clear to your readers, you could use a term in your language that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “you people” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## Men, why are you doing these things (ULT) People of Lytra, you must not kill those bulls to worship us (UST)

Barnabas and Paul are rebuking the people for trying to sacrifice to them. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: “you must not do these things!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## We also are men, like-passioned to you (ULT)

People in this culture believed that the gods did not have passions as humans do. So the implication of this statement is that Paul and Barnabas are human beings, not gods. You can include this information in your translation if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: “We are human beings just like you. We are not gods!” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## to turn you from these useless things to the living God (ULT) about the one true God. You can stop worshipping other so-called gods, because they cannot help you (UST)

Paul and Barnabas are speaking figuratively as if they want the people in Lytra physically to **turn** from idol worship and believe in the one true God. The metaphor of turning means to stop living in one way and to start living in another way. If your readers would misunderstand this metaphor, you could state its meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “to get you to stop worshipping these false gods and lead you to worship the living God instead” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## these useless things (ULT) other so-called gods, because they cannot help you (UST)

Paul and Barnabas are using the adjective **useless** as a noun to mean the false gods that the people of Lytra had been worshipping. ULT adds the word **things** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this expression with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “these false gods” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> and saying, “Men, why are you doing these things? We also are men, like-passioned to you. **We are proclaiming the gospel** to you, **to turn you** from these **useless things** to the **living God**, who made the **heaven** and the **earth** and the sea and everything in them,

### UST

<sup>15</sup> “People of Lytra, you must not kill those bulls to worship us! We are not gods! We are human beings who are just the same as you! **We have come to tell you some good news** about **the one true God**. **You can stop worshipping other so-called gods, because they cannot help you**. This true God made the **sky**, the **land**, the oceans, and everything that lives in them.

**the living God (ULT)**  
**the one true God (UST)**

This expression is an idiom. If your readers might misunderstand its meaning, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the one God who truly exists” (See: [Idiom](#))

**who made the heaven and the earth and the sea and everything in them (ULT)****This true God made the sky, the land, the oceans, and everything that lives in them (UST)**

Paul and Barnabas are referring to all of creation by naming its components. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “all of creation” (See: [Merism](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- We are proclaiming the gospel
- to turn you
- useless things
- living
- the...God
- heaven
- earth

**Translation Words - UST**

- We have come to tell...some good news
- the one true
- God
- You can stop worshiping
- so-called gods, because they cannot help you
- sky
- land

## Acts 14:16

**to go their own ways (ULT)**  
**to worship whatever gods they wanted to worship (UST)**

This is a metaphor that refers figuratively to how people live their lives. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “to live their lives the way they wanted to” or “to do what they wanted to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [generations](#)
- [nations](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [past](#)
- [the non-Jewish people groups](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> who in bygone [generations](#) allowed all the [nations](#) to go their own ways,

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> In the [past](#), God allowed [the non-Jewish people groups](#) to worship whatever gods they wanted to worship.

## Acts 14:17

### he did not leave himself without witness (ULT) God showed you non-Jewish people that he (UST)

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative preposition **without**. Alternate translation: "he left himself a witness" or "he showed you what he was like" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### giving you rains from the sky (ULT) He sent rain (UST)

It might seem that the expression **rains from the sky** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: "rain" (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

### filling your hearts with food and gladness

Paul and Barnabas are using one part of these people, their **hearts**, figuratively meaning their desi misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "satisfying you" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### with food and gladness (ULT) of food so that you could enjoy your lives (UST)

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **gladness** tells how the food that God provided made these people feel. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: "enjoyable food" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [doing good](#)
- [from the sky](#)
- [fruitful](#)
- [seasons](#)
- [hearts](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [is a good God](#)
- [rain](#)
- [to make your crops grow](#)
- [to make your crops grow](#)
- [you](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> and yet he did not leave himself without witness: [doing good](#), giving you rains [from the sky](#) and [fruitful seasons](#), filling your [hearts](#) with food and gladness."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Even so, God showed you non-Jewish people that he [is a good God](#). He sent [rain to make your crops grow](#). He gave [you](#) plenty of food so that you could enjoy your lives."

## Acts 14:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- they did...sacrifice

### Translation Words - UST

- sacrificing those bulls

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And saying these things they barely restrained the crowds, so that **they did** not **sacrifice** to them.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> Paul and Barnabas said all these things to the people. Even so, it was very difficult for them to keep the people from **sacrificing those bulls** to worship them.



## Acts 14:19

### having persuaded the crowds (ULT) convinced many of the people of Lystra that Paul had not been telling them the truth (UST)

It may be helpful to state explicitly what they **persuaded the crowds** to do. Alternate translation: “persuaded the crowds not to believe Paul and Barnabas and to turn hostilely against them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- Antioch
- Iconium
- having stoned
- Paul
- to have died

#### Translation Words - UST

- some Jews
- Antioch
- Iconium
- The people who believed what those Jews said became angry with Paul.} They let those Jews throw stones at...until he fell to the ground
- him
- was dead, so

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But [Jews](#) from [Antioch](#) and [Iconium](#) came and, having persuaded the crowds and [having stoned Paul](#), they were dragging him out of the city, thinking him [to have died](#).

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Then [some Jews](#) came from [Antioch](#) and [Iconium](#) and convinced many of the people of Lystra that Paul had not been telling them the truth. {[The people who believed what those Jews said became angry with Paul.](#)} They let those Jews throw stones at him until he fell to the ground. They all thought that he [was dead](#), so they dragged him outside the city and left him lying there.

**Acts 14:20**

**him...he entered...he went (ULT)**  
**Paul, where he was lying on the ground...He**  
**went back...with the believers...Paul...left the**  
**city of Lystra and traveled (UST)**

The pronouns **him** and **he** refer to Paul. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: "Paul ... he entered ... Paul went" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [disciples](#)
- [arising](#)
- [Barnabas](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [believers in Lystra](#)
- [Suddenly Paul stood up](#)
- [Barnabas](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> But as the [disciples](#) surrounded him, [arising](#), he entered into the city, and the next day he went with [Barnabas](#) to Derbe.

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> But some of the [believers in Lystra](#) came and stood around Paul, where he was lying on the ground. [Suddenly Paul stood up!](#) He went back into the city with the believers. The next day, Paul and [Barnabas](#) left the city of Lystra and traveled to the city of Derbe.

## Acts 14:21

### having made many disciples (ULT) Many people there became believers (UST)

Luke is using the adjective **many** as a noun to mean the people who became disciples. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: "having helped many people to become disciples" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [having proclaimed the gospel](#)
- [having made...disciples](#)
- [they returned](#)
- [Lystra](#)
- [Iconium](#)
- [Antioch](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [they spent several days telling the people about Jesus](#)
- [became believers](#)
- [After that, Paul and Barnabas started on their way back home. They went again](#)
- [Lystra](#)
- [Iconium](#)
- [to the city of Antioch in the province of Pisidia](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> And [having proclaimed the gospel](#) in that city and [having made many disciples, they returned](#) to [Lystra](#) and to [Iconium](#) and [Antioch](#),

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> In the city of Derbe [they spent several days telling the people about Jesus](#). Many people there [became believers](#). [After that, Paul and Barnabas started on their way back home. They went again to Lystra. Then they went from there to Iconium. Then they went to the city of Antioch in the province of Pisidia.](#)



## **Acts 14:22**

## strengthening the souls of the disciples (ULT) In each place, they urged the believers (UST)

Here, **souls** refers to the **disciples**. This emphasizes their inner thoughts and beliefs. Alternate translation: “Paul and Barnabas urged the believers to continue to believe the message about Jesus” or “Paul and Barnabas urged the believers to continue to grow strong in their relationship with Jesus” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## encouraging them to continue in the faith (ULT) In each place, they urged...to keep trusting Jesus (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **faith**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “encouraging them to keep believing in Jesus” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## and {saying}, “It is necessary for us to enter into the kingdom of God through many afflictions (ULT)

You may want to have an indirect quotation here, if that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: “and saying that it was necessary for all of them to enter into the kingdom of God through many afflictions” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

## It is necessary for us to enter into the kingdom of God (ULT) We...suffer...hardships in this world...when we are allowing God to rule over us (UST)

See the discussion of the concept of the **kingdom of God** in Part 2 of the General Introduction to Acts. If it would be clearer in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **kingdom** with a noun such as “king.” Alternate translation: “It is necessary for us to endure many afflictions in order to live in allegiance to God as our true king” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## It is necessary for us to enter (ULT) We...suffer...hardships in this world...when we are allowing (UST)

By **us**, Paul and Barnabas mean both themselves and of the believers they were speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- strengthening
- souls
- of the disciples
- encouraging them
- in the faith
- kingdom of God
- afflictions

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> strengthening the souls of the disciples, encouraging them to continue in the faith, and {saying}, “It is necessary for us to enter into the kingdom of God through many afflictions.”

### UST

<sup>22</sup> In each place, they urged the believers to keep trusting Jesus. They told the believers, “We suffer many hardships in this world when we are allowing God to rule over us.”

## Translation Words - UST

- In each place, they urged
- In each place, they urged
- believers
- believers
- Jesus
- suffer...hardships in this world
- God...to rule over us

**Acts 14:23**

**having appointed...they entrusted...they had believed (ULT)**

**Paul and Barnabas chose...Then they entrusted...in order that he would care for them...they had believed (UST)**

The pronoun **them** refers to the new believers in the cities of Lystra, Iconium, and Antioch, and the pronoun **they** refer to Paul and Barnabas. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “for the new believers in these cities ... Paul and Barnabas entrusted these believers” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**by church (ULT)**  
**for each congregation (UST)**

Alternate translation: “in each new group of believers”

**to the Lord (ULT)**  
**to Jesus (UST)**

Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Use a form for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: “to the Lord Jesus” (See: [Politeness](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having appointed](#)
- [elders](#)
- [church](#)
- [having prayed](#)
- [fasting](#)
- [they entrusted](#)
- [to the Lord](#)
- [they had believed](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Paul and Barnabas chose](#)
- [leaders](#)
- [congregation](#)
- [Before they left each place, they gathered the believers together and spent some time praying](#)
- [fasting](#)
- [Then they entrusted...in order that he would care for them](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [they had believed](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> And [having appointed elders](#) for them by [church](#), [having prayed](#) with [fasting](#), [they entrusted](#) them to the Lord in whom [they had believed](#).

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> [Paul and Barnabas chose leaders](#) for each [congregation](#). [Before they left each place, they gathered the believers together and spent some time praying and fasting](#). [Then they entrusted](#) the leaders and other believers to [Jesus](#), in whom [they had believed](#), [in order that he would care for them](#).



## Acts 14:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And having passed through Pisidia, they came to Pamphylia.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> After Paul and Barnabas had traveled through the district of Pisidia, they went south to the district of Pamphylia.

## Acts 14:25

### the word (ULT)

#### God's message about Jesus (UST)

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message about Jesus that the Holy Spirit wanted Paul and Barnabas to share by using words. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the message about Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they went down to Attalia (ULT)

#### Then they went down to the seacoast at the town of Attalia (UST)

Luke says that Paul and Barnabas **went down** to Attalia because that city is lower in elevation than Perga. Alternate translation: "traveled to Attalia" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [message about Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> And having spoken the [word](#) in Perga, they went down to Attalia.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> In that district, they arrived at the town of Perga. They preached God's [message about Jesus](#) to the people there. Then they went down to the seacoast at the town of Attalia.

**Acts 14:26**

**where they had been commended to the grace of God (ULT)**

**The people there had chosen Paul and Barnabas to go to other places and preach. That was where the believers had asked God to help Paul and Barnabas (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “where the believers had commended them to the grace of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**where they had been commended to the grace of God (ULT)**

**The people there had chosen Paul and Barnabas to go to other places and preach. That was where the believers had asked God to help Paul and Barnabas (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “where the believers had ask God to care for them graciously” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Antioch](#)
- [to the grace](#)
- [of God](#)
- [work](#)
- [they had completed](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the city of Antioch in the province of Syria](#)
- [God...Paul and Barnabas](#)
- [to help](#)
- [work](#)
- [they had now completed](#)

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> And from there they sailed to [Antioch](#), where they had been commended [to the grace of God](#) for the [work](#) which [they had completed](#).

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> There they got on a ship and went back to [the city of Antioch in the province of Syria](#). The people there had chosen Paul and Barnabas to go to other places and preach. That was where the believers had asked [God to help Paul and Barnabas](#) do the [work](#) that [they had now completed](#).



## **Acts 14:27**

**they were reporting...them...he had opened (ULT)**

**Then Paul and Barnabas told them...they told them...them to do...God had enabled (UST)**

The pronouns **they** and **them** refer to Paul and Barnabas, and the pronoun **he** refers to God. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: "Paul and Barnabas were reporting... them... God had opened" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**how much God had done with them (ULT)**  
**all that God had helped them to do (UST)**

In many languages it would be an idiom to say that God **had done** something with Paul and Barnabas. It would mean that they had been the objects of God's action. But the expression is not an idiom here. It means that Paul and Barnabas had been able to work in partnership **with** God. Alternate translation: "how much they had been able to do working together with God" (See: [Idiom](#))

**he had opened a door of faith for the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**God had enabled many non-Jewish people to believe in Jesus (UST)**

Here, the possessive form describes not a **door** consisting of **faith** but a door that leads to faith. Alternate translation: "a door leading to faith" (See: [Possession](#))

**he had opened a door of faith for the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**God had enabled many non-Jewish people to believe in Jesus (UST)**

Here the expression **opened a door** figuratively means that God created an opportunity, as if a door that gave access to this opportunity had previously been closed. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "he had given the Gentiles an opportunity for faith" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**he had opened a door of faith for the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**God had enabled many non-Jewish people to believe in Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **faith**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "he had given the Gentiles the opportunity to believe in Jesus" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [having gathered...together](#)
- [church](#)
- [they were reporting](#)
- [God](#)
- [of faith](#)
- [for the Gentiles](#)

## ULT

<sup>27</sup> And having arrived and [having gathered](#) the [church together](#), [they were reporting](#) how much [God](#) had done with them and that he had opened a door [of faith for the Gentiles](#).

## UST

<sup>27</sup> When they arrived in the city of Antioch, [they called the believers together](#). Then Paul and Barnabas told [them](#) all that [God](#) had helped them to do. Specifically, [they told them](#) how God had enabled [many non-Jewish people to believe in Jesus](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- they called...together
- the believers
- Then Paul and Barnabas told them...they told them
- God
- many non-Jewish people
- to believe in Jesus

## Acts 14:28

### for not a little time (ULT) for a long time (UST)

Luke is using a figure of speech that expresses a positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could take the meaning plainly. Alternate translation, as in UST: "for a long time" (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for...a...time](#)
- [disciples](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [other believers](#)
- [for a long time](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> And they were staying for not a little [time](#) with the [disciples](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Then Paul and Barnabas stayed in Antioch with the [other believers for a long time](#).



## Acts 15

### Acts 15 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

- Verses 1–35 tell how the church resolved the question of whether Gentiles who believed in Jesus needed to keep the whole law of Moses.
- Verses 36–41 tell how Paul began a new journey to proclaim the gospel, bringing Silas with him.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 15:16–18.

Even if your language does not customarily put one direct quotation inside another, it would be good to present the quotation from the prophet Amos in verses 16–18 as a direct quotation if possible, since in it God is speaking directly to the people of Israel. Since Amos acknowledges in verse 17 that God is speaking by saying “says the Lord,” a third-level quotation actually starts in verse 16. ULT uses second-level and third-level quotation marks within the first-level quotation from James to identify the various speakers. But it may not be necessary to do this in your translation. You could just use second-level quotation marks or some other punctuation or convention available in your language to indicate the beginning and ending of the second-level quotation from Amos. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Did Gentiles have to obey the law of Moses?

Some believers wanted the Gentiles to be circumcised because God had told Abraham and Moses that everyone who wanted to belong to him had to be circumcised, so this was a law that would always exist. But Paul and Barnabas had seen God give uncircumcised Gentiles the gift of the Holy Spirit, so they did not believe that the Gentiles needed to be circumcised. Both groups went to Jerusalem to have the church leaders decide what they should do. The meeting that the apostles and elders held to decide about this issue is commonly called the “Jerusalem Council.”



## **Acts 15:1**

**certain ones (ULT)**  
**some Jewish believers (UST)**

Luke assumes that his readers will recognize that these were Jews who believed in Jesus. You can include this information if your readers will need it to understand this sentence. Alternate translation: "text" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**coming down from Judea (ULT)**  
**from the province of Judea arrived in Antioch (UST)**

Luke speaks of these Jews *\*coming down\** to Antioch because that city is lower in elevation than Judea. Alternate translation: "who had traveled" (See: [Idiom](#))

**were teaching the brothers (ULT)**  
**They started telling the non-Jewish believers there (UST)**

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the believers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Unless you are circumcised (ULT)**  
**You must receive circumcision {to show that you belong to God...If you do not do that (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Unless someone circumcises you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you are not able to be saved (ULT)**  
**God will not save you (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who would do the action, it is clear from the context that it would be God. Alternate translation, as in UST: "God will not save you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Judea](#)
- [were teaching](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [you are circumcised](#)
- [of Moses](#)
- [to be saved](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> And certain ones coming down from [Judea](#) were teaching the [brothers](#), "Unless [you are circumcised](#) in the custom of [Moses](#), you are not able to be saved."

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> But then some Jewish believers from the [province of Judea](#) arrived in Antioch. They started telling the [non-Jewish believers there](#), "You must [receive circumcision](#) {to show that you belong to God}, as [Moses](#) commanded in the laws that he received from God. If you do not do that, [God will](#) not [save you](#)."

## Translation Words - UST

- the province of Judea
- They started telling
- non-Jewish believers there
- receive circumcision {to show that you belong to God
- Moses
- God will...save you



## **Acts 15:2**

**no little dispute and debate (ULT)**  
**a big argument...They could not settle their disagreement (UST)**

Luke is using a figure of speech that expresses a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a word, **little**, that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "a great dispute and debate" (See: [Litotes](#))

**dispute and debate (ULT)**  
**argument...They could not settle their disagreement (UST)**

The terms **dispute** and **debate** mean similar things. Luke may be using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation, as in UST: "an argument" (See: [Doublet](#))

**with them...they appointed...from among them (ULT)**  
**with those Jews...so the believers at Antioch sent...of the...believers (UST)**

The first instance of the pronoun **them** refers to the Jewish believers from Judea, and the pronoun **they** and the second instance of the pronoun **them** refer to the believers in the church in Antioch. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: "with the Jewish believers from Judea ... the believers in Antioch appointed ... from the church there" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**to go up...in Jerusalem (ULT)**  
**so the believers at Antioch sent...to Jerusalem (UST)**

Luke says **to go up** because that was the customary way of speaking about traveling to Jerusalem, since that city is up on a mountain.. Use a natural way in your language of referring to traveling to a higher elevation. Alternate translation: "to travel" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [by Paul](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [they appointed](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [elders](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Paul](#)
- [Paul](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> And no little dispute and debate [by Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) with them having happened, [they appointed Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) and certain others from among them to go up to the [apostles](#) and [elders](#) in [Jerusalem](#) about this question.

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) had a big argument with those Jews. {They could not settle their disagreement,} [so the believers at Antioch sent Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) and some of the other believers to [Jerusalem](#). That way they could discuss this issue with the [apostles](#) and [other leaders](#) there.



- Barnabas
- Barnabas
- so the believers at Antioch sent
- Jerusalem
- apostles
- other leaders



## **Acts 15:3**

**the...ones having been sent out by the church (ULT)**  
**Paul, Barnabas, and the others...the believers in Antioch had sent...on their way (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the ones the church had sent out" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the church (ULT)**  
**the believers in Antioch (UST)**

Luke is figuratively using the phrase **the church** to mean the people who were associated with the church. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the people of the church" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**describing the conversion of the Gentiles (ULT)**

**they told the believers in those places that many non-Jews were putting their trust in Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **conversion**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "describing how many of the Gentiles had stopped worshiping false gods and were now worshiping the true God" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**producing great joy in all the brothers (ULT)**  
**When the believers heard this, they rejoiced greatly (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **joy**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "making all the brothers very happy" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**in all the brothers (ULT)**  
**the believers...they (UST)**

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "to all the believers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in all the brothers (ULT)**  
**the believers...they (UST)**

The word **all** here may be a generalization for emphasis. If your readers would misunderstand this, use a different way to convey this general statement. Alternate translation: "to the believers in those places" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> Therefore indeed the **ones having been sent out** by the **church** were passing through both **Phoenicia** and **Samaria**, describing the conversion of **the Gentiles** and producing great **joy** in all **the brothers**,

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> After the **believers in Antioch had sent** Paul, Barnabas, and the others **on their way**, they traveled through **the provinces of Phoenicia** and **Samaria**. When they stopped at different places along the way, they told the believers in those places that **many non-Jews** were putting their trust in Jesus. **When the believers heard this, they rejoiced greatly.**

## Translation Words - ULT

- ones having been sent out
- church
- Phoenicia
- Samaria
- of the Gentiles
- joy
- in...the brothers

## Translation Words - UST

- believers in Antioch
- had sent...on their way
- the provinces of Phoenicia
- Samaria
- many non-Jews
- When...heard this...rejoiced
- believers...they

## Acts 15:4

### they were welcomed by the church and the apostles and the elders (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the church the apostles and the elders welcome them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the church and the apostles and the elders (ULT)

Luke is figuratively using the phrase **the church** to mean the people who were associated with the church. Since he mentions the **apostles** and **elders** separately, here means the ordinary members of the church. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the members of the church” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### how much God had done with them (ULT)

### the things that God had enabled them to do {among non-Jewish people (UST)

See how you translated this same expression in [14:27](#). Alternate translation: “how much they had been able to do working together with God” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [church](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [elders](#)
- [they reported](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [elders](#)
- [other believers there](#)
- [Paul and Barnabas reported](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And having arrived in [Jerusalem](#), they were welcomed by the [church](#) and the [apostles](#) and the [elders](#), and [they reported](#) how much [God](#) had done with them.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> When Paul, Barnabas, and the others arrived in [Jerusalem](#), the [apostles](#), [elders](#), and [other believers there](#) welcomed them. Then [Paul and Barnabas reported](#) the things that [God](#) had enabled them to do {among non-Jewish people}.

## Acts 15:5

### of the Pharisees (ULT) who were Pharisees (UST)

The name **Pharisee** describes a member of a group of Jewish priests. See how you translated it in [5:34](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### having believed (ULT) Jewish believers (UST)

Alternate translation: "who had believed in Jesus"

### stood up (ULT) stood up {to get the attention of the other believers (UST)

These believers **stood up** to indicate that they had something important to say. Alternate translation: "stood up to show that they had something important to say" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### them...command them (ULT) The non-Jews who have believed in Jesus...them...We must...tell (UST)

Both instances of the pronoun **them** refer to the Gentiles who had converted to belief in the true God, as described in [15:3](#). It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: "these Gentiles who have converted...them" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the Pharisees
- having believed
- to circumcise
- command them
- to keep
- law of Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish believers
- who were Pharisees
- receive circumcision
- We must...tell
- to obey
- laws that God gave to Moses

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But certain ones from the sect of the **Pharisees, having believed**, stood up, saying, "It is necessary to **circumcise** them and **command them to keep** the law of Moses."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But some of the **Jewish believers who were Pharisees** stood up {to get the attention of the other believers}. They said to them, "The non-Jews who have believed in Jesus must **receive circumcision**. **We must** also **tell** them to obey the laws that God gave to Moses."

## Acts 15:6

### were gathered together (ULT) met together (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “gathered together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to see about (ULT) in order to talk about (UST)

Here the phrase **to see about** is an idiom that means “to consider.” If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “to consider” (See: [Idiom](#))

### this word (ULT) this issue (UST)

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the claim that the Jewish believers who were Pharisees had made by using words. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the claim that the Jewish believers who were Pharisees had made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [apostles](#)
- [elders](#)
- [were gathered together](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [apostles](#)
- [elders](#)
- [met together](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So the [apostles](#) and the [elders](#) were [gathered together](#) to see about this word.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then the [apostles](#) and the [elders](#) [met together](#) in order to talk about this issue.





## **Acts 15:7**

**Peter, arising (ULT)****Peter stood up {to get everyone's attention}.****He (UST)**

Peter stood up to indicate that he had something important to say. If your readers might not understand the significance of this action, you could explain it in your translation. Alternate translation: “standing up to show that he had something important to say” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**them (ULT)****them (UST)**

The pronoun **them** refers to the apostles and elders. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “the apostles and elders” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**Men, brothers (ULT)****Fellow believers (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Use a way that is natural in your language to refer to a particular group of people. Alternate translation: “My brothers” (See: [Idiom](#))

**brothers (ULT)****Fellow believers (UST)**

Peter is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation, as in UST: “fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you...you (ULT)****you all...you {other apostles (UST)**

Both occurrences of **you** are plural, since they refer to the apostles and elders. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youplural\]\]](#))

**you know (ULT)****you all know (UST)**

Peter is stating the pronoun **you**, which is already implied in the verb **know**, for emphasis. If your language can state implied pronouns explicitly for emphasis, you may want to use that construction here. Other languages may have other ways of bringing out this emphasis. Alternate translation: “you know very well” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> And much debate having happened, Peter, arising, said to them, “Men, brothers, you know that from original days God chose among you: By my mouth the Gentiles would hear the word of the gospel and believe.

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> After they had discussed it for a long time, Peter stood up {to get everyone's attention}. He said to them, “Fellow believers, you all know that a long time ago God chose me from among you {other apostles} for an important task. He wanted me to tell the non-Jewish people the good news about Jesus. God wanted them to believe in him.

## from original days (ULT) a long time ago (UST)

Peter is using an idiom that refers to the time when something began or had its origin. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “at the time when the Gentiles would first begin to believe in Jesus,” (See: [Idiom](#))

## By my mouth (ULT) me...me (UST)

Peter is figuratively using one part of himself, his **mouth**, to represent all of himself in the act of speaking. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: “From me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## the word (ULT) the good news about Jesus (UST)

Peter is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that he shared by using words. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- arising
- brothers
- know
- days
- God
- chose
- Gentiles
- of the gospel
- believe

## Translation Words - UST

- Peter...He
- stood up {to get everyone's attention
- non-Jewish people
- good news about Jesus
- to believe in him
- Fellow believers
- know
- a long time ago
- God...He...God
- chose...for an important task...wanted...wanted

## Acts 15:8

### the heart-knower (ULT) knows what every person is truly like (UST)

Here, the word **heart** figuratively refers to a person's character and intentions. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "who understands each person's character and intentions" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### testified to them (ULT) He showed me and others that he had accepted the non-Jews as his people. He did that (UST)

The implication is not that God testified to the Gentiles about Jesus, but that by giving the Gentiles the Holy Spirit, God testified to Peter and his companions that they could have genuine faith. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: "testified to their genuine faith" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### just as also to us (ULT)

Peter is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from earlier in the sentence if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: "just as he also gave the Holy Spirit to us" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### to us (ULT) to us (UST)

Peter is using the word **us** to refer to himself and his listeners, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the heart-knower](#)
- [testified](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [just as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [knows what every person is truly like](#)
- [He showed me and others...He did that](#)
- [Holy Spirit...Holy Spirit](#)
- [just as](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And [God, the heart-knower](#), testified to them, giving them the [Holy Spirit](#), [just as](#) also to us;

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> [God knows what every person is truly like](#). [He showed me and others](#) that he had accepted the non-Jews as his people. [He did that](#) by giving the [Holy Spirit](#) to them [just as](#) {he gave the [Holy Spirit](#)} to us.

**Acts 15:9**

**he did not distinguish between us and them (ULT)**

**God treated them in the same way that he treated us (UST)**

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **distinguish**, which in this context means “discriminate.” Alternate translation: “he regarded them in the same way he regarded us” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> and he did not distinguish between us and them, [having cleansed](#) their [hearts](#) [by faith](#).

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> God treated them in the same way that he treated us. [He forgave](#) their [sins](#) [because they trusted in Jesus](#).

**us (ULT)**

**God treated them in the same way that he treated us (UST)**

Peter is using the word **us** to refer to himself and his listeners, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**having cleansed their hearts by faith (ULT)**

**He forgave their sins because they trusted in Jesus (UST)**

Peter speaks of God forgiving the Gentile believers’ sins as though God literally **cleansed** their hearts. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “having made them innocent because they believed in Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**having cleansed their hearts by faith (ULT)**

**He forgave their sins because they trusted in Jesus (UST)**

Here, the word **hearts** figuratively represents the inner beings of the Gentiles. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “having forgiven them deeply because they believed in Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having cleansed](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [by faith](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [He forgave...sins](#)
- [He forgave...sins](#)
- [because they trusted in Jesus](#)



## **Acts 15:10**



**Now (ULT)****Listen carefully (UST)**

**Now** in this context does not mean “at this moment.” Peter is using the word to draw attention to the important point that follows.  
Alternate translation: “So tell me”

**why are you testing God (ULT)****God has shown what he wants, so you should not be trying to promote something else (UST)**

Peter is using the question form to challenge the believers who are Pharisees about what they want the Gentiles to do. If you would not use the question form for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or an exclamation. Alternate translation: “you must not test God...!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**our..we (ULT)****Our...We Jews today (UST)**

Peter is using the words **our** and **we** to refer to himself and his listeners, so use the inclusive form of those words if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**why are you testing God (ULT)****God has shown what he wants, so you should not be trying to promote something else (UST)**

Here the word **testing** means **challenging**. Peter is saying that God has accepted the Gentiles without requiring them to be circumcised or keep the law, but the believers who are Pharisees are challenging God's judgment that the Gentiles should be accepted on that basis. See how you translated the similar expression in [5:9](#). Alternate translation: “why are you challenging God”

**putting a yoke upon the neck of the disciples that neither our fathers nor we have been able to bear (ULT)****You should not be trying to force non-Jewish believers to obey our Jewish laws! That would be like putting a heavy burden on them. Our ancestors were not able to obey those laws. We Jews today have not been able to obey them either (UST)**

Peter is speaking figuratively as if the believers who are Pharisees literally want to put a **yoke** on the necks of the Gentile believers. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “requiring the disciples to meet an onerous obligation that neither our fathers nor we have been able to fulfill” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Since Peter is referring to a group of people, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **neck**. Alternate translation: “the necks”

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> Now, therefore, why are you testing God, putting a yoke upon the neck of the disciples that neither our fathers nor we have been able to bear?

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> Listen carefully! God has shown what he wants, so you should not be trying to promote something else. You should not be trying to force non-Jewish believers to obey our Jewish laws! That would be like putting a heavy burden on them. Our ancestors were not able to obey those laws. We Jews today have not been able to obey them either.

**our fathers (ULT)****Our ancestors (UST)**

Peter is using the term **fathers** figuratively to mean “ancestors.” If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “our ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- are you testing
- God
- a yoke
- of the disciples
- fathers
- have been able
- to bear

**Translation Words - UST**

- God has shown what he wants, so you should not be trying to promote something else
- God has shown what he wants, so you should not be trying to promote something else
- non-jewish believers...them...them
- to obey our Jewish laws...a heavy burden
- ancestors
- were...able...have...been able
- to obey...to obey



## **Acts 15:11**

**we believe ourselves to be saved (ULT)**  
**We are confident that God saves us Jews from our sins...And we are confident that God will save (UST)**

Peter is using a construction in which the object is implied. Since the object is the same as the subject of the verb, the construction calls for the relative pronoun **ourselves**. Your language may have its own way of expressing the same meaning. Alternate translation: “we believe that we will be saved” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**we believe ourselves to be saved (ULT)**  
**We are confident that God saves us Jews from our sins...And we are confident that God will save (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who will do the action, it is clear from the context that it will be God. Alternate translation: “we believe that God will save us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**we believe ourselves to be saved (ULT)**  
**We are confident that God saves us Jews from our sins...And we are confident that God will save (UST)**

Peter is using the pronoun **we** and the implied pronoun **ourselves** to refer to himself and his listeners, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**through the grace of the Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**because of what the Lord Jesus did for us (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “through what God has graciously done for us through the Lord Jesus” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**through the grace of the Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**because of what the Lord Jesus did for us (UST)**

Peter means implicitly that we are saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus and not by obeying the law of Moses. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: “through the grace of the Lord Jesus and not by obeying the law of Moses” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**according to the way they also (ULT)**  
**in the same way those non-Jews who believe in Jesus (UST)**

Peter is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from earlier in the sentence if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: “according to the way they also will be saved” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> But **we believe ourselves to be saved** through the **grace of the Lord Jesus**, according to the way they also.”

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> **We are confident that God saves us Jews from our sins** because of **what the Lord Jesus did for us**. **And we are confident that God will save** in the same way those non-Jews who believe in Jesus.”

## **they also (ULT)** **those non-Jews who believe in Jesus (UST)**

Peter assumes that his listeners will know that he is using the pronoun **they** to refer to the Gentiles. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand this sentence. Alternate translation: “the Gentiles also” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- we believe
- ourselves to be saved
- grace
- of the Lord
- of the Lord...Jesus

### **Translation Words - UST**

- We are confident that...And we are confident that
- God saves us Jews from our sins...God will save
- what...did for us
- Lord
- Lord Jesus

## Acts 15:12

### signs and wonders (ULT)

### great miracles...The miracles showed that God had accepted these non-Jews...these miracles (UST)

The terms **signs** and **wonders** mean similar things. Luke is using them together for emphasis. See how you translated the similar expression in 2:43. Alternate translation, as in UST: "great miracles" (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to Barnabas
- Paul
- signs
- wonders
- God
- Gentiles

### Translation Words - UST

- Barnabas...Barnabas
- Paul...Paul
- great miracles...The miracles showed that God had accepted these non-Jews...these miracles
- great miracles...The miracles showed that God had accepted these non-Jews...these miracles
- that God
- non-Jewish people

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And the whole crowd kept silent and was listening to Barnabas and Paul describing how many signs and wonders God had worked among the Gentiles through them.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> After Peter had spoken, Barnabas and Paul told about the many great miracles that God had enabled them to do among the non-Jewish people. {The miracles showed that God had accepted these non-Jews.} The people who heard Barnabas and Paul tell about these miracles were so fascinated that all they did was listen. None of them said anything.

## Acts 15:13

**James answered, saying (ULT)**  
**James, the leader of the group of believers in Jerusalem, spoke to everyone. He said (UST)**

Together the words **answered** and **saying** mean that James responded to what everyone in the meeting headset to that point. Alternate translation: "James responded" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

**James (ULT)**  
**James, the leader of the group of believers in Jerusalem (UST)**

The word **James** is the name of a man, the brother of Jesus who was the leader of the church in Jerusalem. See how you translated it in [12:17](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Men, brothers (ULT)**  
**Fellow believers (UST)**

This is an idiomatic form of address. Use a way that is natural in your language to refer to a particular group of people. Alternate translation: "My fellow believers" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [James](#)
- [brothers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [James, the leader of the group of believers in Jerusalem](#)
- [Fellow believers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And after they stopped speaking, [James](#) answered, saying, "Men, [brothers](#), listen to me.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> When Barnabas and Paul had finished speaking, [James, the leader of the group of believers in Jerusalem](#), spoke to everyone. He said, "[Fellow believers](#), listen to me.



## Acts 15:14

### Simeon (ULT)

### Simon Peter (UST)

The word **Simeon** is the name of a man. It is the Hebrew form of the name whose Greek form is Simon. James is referring to Peter by his Hebrew name. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could use either the name Simon or the name Peter here in your translation. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### God...looked (ULT)

### God...showed that he cared about...God did that (UST)

James is speaking figuratively of the way God showed concern for the Gentiles by association with the way someone would look carefully at a situation he was concerned about. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "God concerned himself" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### a people for his name (ULT)

### a group of people who would belong to him (UST)

This could mean: (1) that God chose the Gentiles for himself. James would be using the term **name** figuratively to refer to a person, God, by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: "a people who would belong to him" (2) that God chose the Gentiles to worship him. James would be using the term **name** figuratively to refer to worship by association with the way that worshipers call upon the name of God. Alternate translation: "a people who would worship him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Simeon](#)
- [God](#)
- [the Gentiles](#)
- [a people](#)
- [for...name](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Simon Peter](#)
- [God...God](#)
- [the non-Jews...them](#)
- [a group of people](#)
- [who would belong to him](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> [Simeon](#) has described how [God](#) first looked to take from [the Gentiles a people](#) for his [name](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [Simon Peter](#) has told you how [God](#) previously showed that he cared about [the non-Jews](#). [God](#) did that by choosing from among [them a group of people who would belong to him](#).

## Acts 15:15

### the words of the prophets (ULT) What God said long ago...the writings of one of the prophets (UST)

James is using the term **words** figuratively to mean the message that God spoke through the prophets. (This is a quotation from the prophet Amos.) If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the message of the prophets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### as it is written (ULT) as we can read in (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “as one of the prophets wrote” or “as the prophet Amos wrote” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...prophets](#)
- [as](#)
- [it is written](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [as](#)
- [we can read in](#)
- [writings of one of the prophets](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And with this the words of the [prophets](#) agree, [as it is written](#),

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> What God said long ago, [as we can read in the writings of one of the prophets](#), agrees with that:



## **Acts 15:16**

## After these things I will return (ULT) Later on, I will help the Israelites again (UST)

See the discussion in the General Notes to this chapter about whether to represent this as the beginning of a third-level quotation or a second-level quotation, or whether to use some other punctuation or convention that is available in your language to indicate who the various speakers are in verses 16–18. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

## I will return...I will rebuild...I will rebuild (ULT) I will help the Israelites again...I will restore...I will do that by making one of the descendants of David the king of Israel again...I was rebuilding (UST)

The pronoun **I** refers to God, who is speaking through the prophet Amos. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “I, God, will return” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

## I will return (ULT) I will help the Israelites again (UST)

God is speaking figuratively of showing favor to the Israelites once again as if he had gone somewhere else but will now **return**. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “I will show favor to the Israelites once again” (See: [Metaphor](#))

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. However, if the repetition might be confusing, you could connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: “I will rebuild the fallen tent of David, yes, I will rebuild its ruins and restore it” (See: [Parallelism](#))

## I will build again the tent of David, which has fallen down; and I will rebuild its ruins and will restore it

God is speaking figuratively of the royal dynasty of David as if it were a **tent** that had **fallen** down. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “I will restore the dynasty of David, which is no longer ruling over the people of Israel, yes, I will make one of David’s descendants king again and restore his dynasty” (See: [Metaphor](#))

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the tent of David that has fallen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [I will return](#)
- [tent](#)
- [of David](#)

### ULT

**16** “After these things **I will return**, and I will rebuild the fallen **tent of David**, and I will rebuild its ruins and restore it,

### UST

**16** Later on, **I will help the Israelites again**. I will restore the **kingdom of David** that has been conquered and destroyed. {I will do that by making one of the descendants of David the king of Israel again.} It will be as if I was rebuilding a house after it had been torn down.

## Translation Words - UST

- I will help the Israelites again
- kingdom
- of David



## **Acts 15:17**



**remnant of men (ULT)**  
**rest of the people in the world (UST)**

Although the term **men** is masculine, God is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. You may wish to indicate this in your translation. Alternate translation: “the remnant of humanity” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**may seek...the Lord (ULT)**  
**will want me to be...their Lord (UST)**

God is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “may seek me, the Lord” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**may seek...the Lord (ULT)**  
**will want me to be...their Lord (UST)**

God is speaking figuratively as if the Gentiles would literally **seek** or look for him. The expression means that the Gentiles will begin to worship God. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “may begin to worship the Lord” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**upon whom my name has been called upon them (ULT)**  
**whom...I have chosen to belong to me (UST)**

It might seem that this phrase contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: “upon whom my name has been called” (See: [Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#))

**upon whom my name has been called upon them (ULT)**  
**whom...I have chosen to belong to me (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whom I have called by my name” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**upon whom my name has been called upon them (ULT)**  
**whom...I have chosen to belong to me (UST)**

See how you translated the similar expression in [15:14](#). (1) Alternate translation: “who will belong to me” (2) Alternate translation: “who will worship me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [remnant](#)
- [may seek](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [Gentiles](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> so that the [remnant](#) of men [may seek](#) the [Lord](#), even all the [Gentiles](#) upon whom my [name has been called](#) upon them," says [the Lord](#) doing these things

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> I will do this so that the [rest](#) of the people in the world [will want me to be](#) their [Lord](#). This will include even the [non-Jewish people](#) whom [I have chosen to belong to me](#). You can be certain that this will happen because [I, the Lord God](#), have said that I will do it.

- name
- has been called

## Translation Words - UST

- rest
- will want me to be
- Lord
- I, the Lord God
- non-Jewish people
- I
- have chosen to belong to me

## Acts 15:18

### known (ULT)

### I told my people...that I would do this (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that people have known" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [known](#)
- [eternity](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I told my people...that I would do this](#)
- [long ago](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> [known](#) from [eternity](#).<sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>18</sup> [I told my people long ago that I would do this.](#)"

## Acts 15:19

**not to trouble the ones from the Gentiles  
turning to God (ULT)**

**we should not tell the non-Jewish people who  
are becoming disciples of Jesus that they have  
to obey all of our Jewish laws and rituals (UST)**

In your translation, you can make explicit in what way James does not want to **trouble** these **Gentiles**. Alternate translation: “that we should not require the Gentiles who are believing in God to be circumcised and obey the laws of Moses” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**ones...turning to God (ULT)**  
**who are becoming disciples of Jesus (UST)**

James is speaking figuratively of these Gentiles as if they are physically **turning** to God. He means that they are believing in the true God and starting to live in a way that pleases him. If your readers would misunderstand this expression, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “believing in God and obeying him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [judge](#)
- [to trouble](#)
- [ones...turning](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [think that](#)
- [we should...tell...that they have to obey all of our Jewish laws and rituals](#)
- [non-Jewish people](#)
- [who are becoming disciples of](#)
- [Jesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Therefore, I [judge](#) not to [trouble](#) the [ones](#) from the [Gentiles](#) [turning](#) to [God](#),

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> James continued to speak. He said, “Therefore I [think that we should](#) not [tell](#) the [non-Jewish people who are becoming disciples of Jesus that they have to obey all of our Jewish laws and rituals](#).”



## **Acts 15:20**

James lists four regulations in this verse and he gives the reason for them in the next verse. To put the reason before the result, you could create a verse bridge for verses 19–21. It might say something like this: “Therefore, I judge that we should not trouble the Gentiles who are turning to God. However, since Moses has had those proclaiming him in every city from ancient generations—he is read in the synagogues on every Sabbath—we should write to the Gentiles to abstain from the pollution of idols and sexual immorality and strangled things and blood.” (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

**from the pollution of idols (ULT)**  
**eat meat that people have offered to idols (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **pollution**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “from things that idols have polluted” (See: [Possession](#))

**from the pollution of idols (ULT)**  
**eat meat that people have offered to idols (UST)**

If your language would not use a possessive form here, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “from things that idols have polluted” (See: [Possession](#))

**from the pollution of idols (ULT)**  
**eat meat that people have offered to idols (UST)**

James is likely talking about food that has been offered to **idols**, and he is speaking figuratively as if being offered to idols has polluted this food. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “from eating food that has been offered to idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**and the strangled (ULT)**

James is using the adjective **strangled** as a noun to mean animals that have been killed by strangulation. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “animals that have been killed by strangulation” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**the strangled (ULT)**  
**eat meat from animals that people have strangled to kill them for butchering (UST)**

James is referring figuratively by association to meat from animals that have been killed by strangulation. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “from eating the meat of animals that have been killed by strangulation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> but to write to them to abstain from the pollution of idols and sexual immorality and the strangled and blood.

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> Instead, we should write a letter to them about only a few things. They should not eat meat that people have offered to idols. They should not have sexual relations with someone to whom they are not married. They should not eat meat from animals that people have strangled to kill them for butchering. They should not eat or drink any blood.

## **the strangled (ULT)** **eat meat from animals that people have strangled to kill them for** **butchering (UST)**

God did not allow the Jews to consume blood in any form. Therefore, they could not eat the meat from an animal that had been strangled, because the blood would not have been properly drained from the body of the animal. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: "and from eating the meat of animals that have been killed by strangulation, because this meat still contains blood" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **and blood (ULT)**

James is not saying that the Gentiles should have no contact at all with blood. Rather, he implicitly means that the Gentiles should not consume blood. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: "and from consuming blood" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [of idols](#)
- [sexual immorality](#)
- [blood](#)

## **Translation Words - UST**

- [eat meat that people have offered to idols](#)
- [have sexual relations with someone to whom they are not married](#)
- [They should not eat or drink any blood](#)





## **Acts 15:21**

**For Moses has by city, from ancient generations, ones proclaiming him, being read in the synagogues on every Sabbath (ULT)**

**We should tell the Gentiles not to do these things because they would be very offensive to Jews. The laws that Moses wrote forbid these things. Jews would expect Gentiles to know that God would not want them to do these things because} people read those laws aloud in the Jewish meeting places on every Sabbath day. They have done this in cities in many different places for a very long time (UST)**

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For *Moses* has by city, from ancient generations, ones proclaiming him, being read in the synagogues on every Sabbath."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> {We should tell the Gentiles not to do these things because they would be very offensive to Jews. The laws that Moses wrote forbid these things. Jews would expect Gentiles to know that God would not want them to do these things because} people read those laws aloud in the Jewish meeting places on every Sabbath day. They have done this in cities in many different places for a very long time."

James is saying implicitly that Gentile believers should observe at least the four regulations he has listed because they embody essential aspects of the law of Moses (not worshipping idols, not practicing sexual immorality, and respecting the blood of sacrifices), and the law of Moses is well known because it is read aloud regularly in the Jewish synagogues. If the Gentiles did not observe even these regulations, that would upset Jewish believers and make Jews who were not yet believers more hostile to Christianity. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand what James is saying. UST models one way to do this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Moses...has...city, from ancient generations, ones proclaiming him...on... being read (ULT)**

**The laws that Moses wrote forbid these things...The laws that Moses wrote forbid these things...on...They have done this...in cities in many different places...for a very long time...Jews would expect Gentiles to know that God would not want them to do these things because} people read those laws aloud (UST)**

James is using the name **Moses** figuratively to mean the law associated with Moses. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "people have been proclaiming the law of Moses by city from ancient generations; it is read" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**being read (ULT)**

**Jews would expect Gentiles to know that God would not want them to do these things because} people read those laws aloud (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "People read him" or "People read from the law of Moses" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by city (ULT)****in cities in many different places (UST)**

The expression **by city** means “in every city,” and James implicitly means every city in which there are Jews. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: “in every city in which there are Jews” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Moses
- generations
- ones proclaiming
- synagogues
- Sabbath

**Translation Words - UST**

- The laws that Moses wrote forbid these things
- The laws that Moses wrote forbid these things
- Jewish meeting places
- Sabbath day
- They have done this...for a very long time



## **Acts 15:22**

**the whole church (ULT)**  
**all the other believers in Jerusalem (UST)**

Here the word **church** figuratively describes the people who were part of the church. Alternate translation: “all the people of the church” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the whole church (ULT)**  
**all the other believers in Jerusalem (UST)**

Luke assumes that his readers will know that he is referring to the **church** in Jerusalem. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand this sentence. Alternate translation: “the church in Jerusalem” or “all the people of the church in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Judas called Barsabbas (ULT)**  
**Judas the son of Sabbas (UST)**

The words **Judas** and **Barsabbas** are the names of men. **Barsabbas** was another name by which **Judas** was known. **Barsabbas** is probably a patronymic, that is, an indication of who his father was. If your language and culture identify people by patronymics, it may be helpful to translate this name as “the son of Sabbas,” as UST does. See how you translated this same name for another man in [1:23](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Judas called Barsabbas (ULT)**  
**Judas the son of Sabbas (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Judas, whom people called Barsabbas” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Silas (ULT)**  
**Silas (UST)**

The word **Silas** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the brothers (ULT)**  
**the believers at Jerusalem (UST)**

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the members of the church” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [it seemed good](#)
- [to the apostles](#)

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> Then [it seemed good to the apostles](#) and the [elders](#), with the whole [church](#), [to send to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas chosen men](#) from among them—Judas [called Barsabbas](#), and [Silas](#), leading men among the [brothers](#)—

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> The [apostles](#) and the [elders](#), along with all the [other believers in Jerusalem](#), [agreed with what James said](#). So [they decided that they should choose men](#) from the church in Jerusalem [and send them to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas](#). Those men [would let the believers there know what the leaders at Jerusalem had decided](#). So [they chose Judas the son of Sabbas and Silas](#). These were both leaders of the [believers at Jerusalem](#).

- Silas
- brothers
- elders
- church
- to send
- Antioch
- Paul
- Barnabas
- chosen
- called

## Translation Words - UST

- apostles
- elders
- the son of Sabbas
- Silas
- believers at Jerusalem
- other believers in Jerusalem
- agreed with what James said...they decided that they should
- choose...So they chose
- and send them...would let the believers...know what the leaders at Jerusalem had decided
- Antioch...there
- Paul
- Barnabas





## **Acts 15:23**

**writing by their hand (ULT)**  
**They wrote the following letter, which they asked Judas and Silas to take to the believers at Antioch (UST)**

Luke does not mean that the apostles and elders ask Judas and Silas to write out this letter for them. Rather, Luke is using the word **hand** figuratively you mean that Judas and Silas carried the letter and delivered it. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “sending the following letter with them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**their hand (ULT)**  
**which they asked...Judas and Silas...to take to the believers at Antioch (UST)**

Since Luke is referring to two people, it might be more natural in your language to use the dual or plural form here, as your language may require. Alternate translation: “their hands” (See: [Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural](#))

**The apostles and the elders, brothers, to those throughout Antioch and Syria and Cilicia, who are brothers from among the Gentiles. Greetings**

This is the introduction of the letter. In the culture of this time, letter writers would give their own names first. Your language and culture may have its own way of introducing the author of a letter and saying to whom it is written. Alternate translation: “This letter is from your brothers, the apostles and elders. We are writing to you Gentile believers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia. Greetings to you” or “To our Gentile brothers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia. Greetings from the apostles and elders, your brothers”

**brothers...to the brothers (ULT)**  
**who are your fellow believers...believers (UST)**

The apostles and elders are using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. By doing this, they are assuring the Gentile believers that they accept them as fellow believers. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “to our fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Syria and Cilicia (ULT)**  
**Syria and Cilicia (UST)**

The words **Syria** and **Cilicia** are the names of Roman provinces. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [hand](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [elders](#)
- [brothers](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> writing by their [hand](#): “The [apostles](#) and the [elders, brothers, to the brothers](#) among the [Gentiles](#) throughout [Antioch](#) and [Syria](#) and [Cilicia](#): Greetings!”

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> They wrote the following letter, [which they asked](#) Judas and Silas [to take to the believers at Antioch](#): “We [apostles](#) and [elders who are your fellow believers](#) send our greetings to you. We are writing this to you [non-Jewish believers](#) who live in [the city of Antioch](#) and other places in the provinces of [Syria](#) and [Cilicia](#).”

- to the brothers
- the Gentiles
- Antioch
- Syria

## Translation Words - UST

- which they asked...to take to the believers at Antioch
- apostles
- elders
- who are your fellow believers
- believers
- non-Jewish
- the city of Antioch
- Syria

**Acts 15:24**

**we have heard...us...we did not commission (ULT)**

**We have heard...We have heard...our church... We want you to know that we did not send... to you (UST)**

Here and in the rest of the letter, by **we** and **us** (and “our”), the apostles and elders mean themselves and probably the rest of the church in Jerusalem, but not the Gentiles to whom they are writing, so use the exclusive forms of those words in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**from us (ULT)**

**from our church (UST)**

The apostles and elders seem to mean implicitly that these people have gone out from their community, but not from among themselves. That is, the word **some** refers to people who were part of the church in Jerusalem would you dear, but who were not apostles or elders. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: “from our community” or “from here in Judea” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**with words (ULT)**

**and taught...things that were different from what you learned when you first believed in Jesus...what they told you (UST)**

The apostles and elders are using the term **words** figuratively to mean what the people who have gone out from them have been teaching by using words. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “by what they have been teaching” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**upsetting your souls (ULT)**

**made you upset (UST)**

The apostles and elders are using one part of the people to home they are writing, their **souls**, to mean the people themselves. Alternate translation: “upsetting you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [have disturbed](#)
- [souls](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [and taught...things that were different from what you learned when you first believed in Jesus...what they told you](#)
- [you](#)

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> Now we have heard that some, having gone out from us, [have disturbed](#) you with words, upsetting your [souls](#), whom we did not commission,

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> We have heard that some men from our church came to you [and taught](#) you [things that were different from what you learned when you first believed in Jesus](#). We have heard that [what they told you](#) made [you](#) upset. We want you to know that we did not send these men to you.

## Acts 15:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- it seemed good
- having chosen
- to send them
- beloved
- Barnabas
- Paul

### Translation Words - UST

- we all agreed that it would be good
- to choose
- and ask...to go...We are sending
- Barnabas
- Paul
- whom...love very much

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> it seemed good to us, having become unanimous, having chosen men, to send them to you with our beloved Barnabas and Paul,

### UST

<sup>25</sup> We met together and we all agreed that it would be good to choose some men and ask them to go to you. We are sending them along with Barnabas and Paul, whom we love very much.

## Acts 15:26

### men having handed over (ULT)

### Those two have put...in danger (UST)

By **men**, the letter implicitly means Paul and Barnabas. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Paul and Barnabas have handed over" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### having handed over their souls (ULT)

### have put their lives in danger (UST)

The letter is using the term **souls** figuratively to mean the lives of Paul and Barnabas, by association with the way a living person has a soul. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "having handed over their lives" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### having handed over their souls (ULT)

### have put their lives in danger (UST)

The letter is speaking figuratively as if Paul and Barnabas have literally **handed over** their lives. This means that they have been willing to risk their lives. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "having put their lives at risk" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for the name of our Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)

### because they serve our Lord Jesus the Messiah (UST)

This is a figurative expression. If your readers might misunderstand it, you could state the meaning plainly. This could mean: (1) that the **name** of Jesus figuratively represents his person. Alternate translation: "out of loyalty to our Lord Jesus Christ" (2) that the **name** of Jesus figuratively represents his cause in the world. Alternate translation: "for the cause of our Lord Jesus Christ" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [souls](#)
- [name](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [lives](#)
- [they serve](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> men having handed over their [souls](#) for the [name](#) of our [Lord Jesus Christ](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Those two have put their [lives](#) in danger because [they serve](#) our [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#).

## Acts 15:27

The letter is using the adjective **same** as a noun to mean the details of the decision that the apostles and elders have reached. ULT adds **thing** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “confirming that this is our decision” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### by word (ULT) will tell you (UST)

The letter is using the term **word** figuratively to mean “by word of mouth,” that is, “in person.” If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “in person” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we have sent](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [reporting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We have also sent...to you](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [will tell you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Therefore [we have sent](#) Judas and [Silas](#), they also [reporting](#) the same thing by word.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> [We have also sent](#) Judas and [Silas to you](#). They [will tell you](#) the same things that we are writing.



## Acts 15:28

**no greater...burden (ULT)**  
**not...all of...only...the Jewish laws. That would be difficult and unnecessary (UST)**

The letter is speaking figuratively of the restrictions it describes as if they were a physical **burden** that the Gentiles would need to carry. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “no greater obligation” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for no greater burden to be laid upon you (ULT)**  
**we should not require you to obey all of the Jewish laws. That would be difficult and unnecessary...we only require you to obey (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “to lay no greater burden upon you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [it seemed good](#)
- [to the...Holy...Spirit](#)
- [burden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We believe that...has shown...that](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [the Jewish laws. That would be difficult and unnecessary](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> For [it seemed good to the Holy Spirit](#) and to us for no greater [burden](#) to be laid upon you than these necessary things:

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> [We believe that the Holy Spirit has shown us that](#) we should not require you to obey all of [the Jewish laws. That would be difficult and unnecessary.](#) Instead, we only require you to obey the following instructions:

## Acts 15:29

### from things sacrificed to idols (ULT) food that people have sacrificed to idols (UST)

The letter is using the adjective **sacrificed**, with the qualifier **to idols**, as a noun to mean the meat of animals that have been sacrificed to idols. (ULT adds **things** to show this.) Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “the meat of animals that have been sacrificed to idols” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### blood (ULT) eat or drink any blood (UST)

See how you translated this term in [15:20](#). Alternate translation: “consuming blood” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the strangled (ULT) eat meat from animals that people have killed by strangling them (UST)

See how you translated this expression in [15:20](#). Alternate translation: “the meat of animals that have been killed by strangulation” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Farewell (ULT) We wish you well (UST)

This is an imperative, but it communicates a friendly wish rather than a command. This was the customary way of ending a letter in this culture. Your language may have its own way of ending a letter that you can use in your translation. (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [sexual immorality](#)
- [well](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [eat or drink any blood](#)
- [have sexual relations with someone to whom you are not married](#)
- [what is right](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> to abstain from things sacrificed to idols and [blood](#) and the strangled and [sexual immorality](#), from which keeping yourselves, you will do [well](#). Farewell.”

### UST

<sup>29</sup> You should not eat food that people have sacrificed to idols. You should not [eat or drink any blood](#). You should not eat meat from animals that people have killed by strangling them. You should not [have sexual relations with someone to whom you are not married](#). If you avoid doing these things, you will be doing [what is right](#). We wish you well.”



## **Acts 15:30**

**they...having been dismissed...came down (ULT)**

**Barnabas, Paul, Judas, and Silas...the apostles and elders sent...on their way. They traveled from the city of Jerusalem (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "once the apostles and elders had dismissed them, they came down" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they (ULT)**

**Barnabas, Paul, Judas, and Silas (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to Paul, Barnabas, Judas, and Silas. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: "Paul, Barnabas, Judas, and Silas" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**came down (ULT)**

**They traveled from the city of Jerusalem (UST)**

Luke says that these four men **came down** to Antioch because that city is lower in elevation than Judea. Alternate translation: "traveled" (See: [Idiom](#))

**came down (ULT)**

**They traveled from the city of Jerusalem (UST)**

You may wish to retain the idiom for travel to a lower elevation, and if so, your language might say "went" instead of **came**. Alternate translation: "went down" (See: [Go and Come](#))

**the crowd (ULT)**

**the believers (UST)**

Luke assumes that his readers will know that by **the crowd**, he means the people of the church in Antioch. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand this sentence. Alternate translation: "the people of the church in Antioch" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Antioch](#)
- [gathering...together](#)
- [letter](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [the city of Antioch...there](#)
- [They assembled](#)
- [letter](#)

## ULT

<sup>30</sup> So they, having been dismissed, indeed came down to [Antioch](#), and [gathering](#) the crowd [together](#), they delivered the [letter](#).

## UST

<sup>30</sup> Then the apostles and elders sent Barnabas, Paul, Judas, and Silas on their way. They traveled from the city of Jerusalem to [the city of Antioch](#). [They assembled](#) the believers [there](#) and read the [letter](#) to them.

**Acts 15:31**

**they rejoiced (ULT)**  
**they were glad (UST)**

The pronoun **they** refers to the believers in Antioch. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “the believers in Antioch rejoiced” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**at the encouragement (ULT)**  
**because its message encouraged them (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **encouragement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “because they were so encouraged” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they rejoiced](#)
- [encouragement](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [they were glad](#)
- [its message encouraged them](#)

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> And having read it, [they rejoiced](#) at the [encouragement](#).

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> When the believers there read the letter, [they were glad](#), because [its message encouraged them](#).

## Acts 15:32

### also being prophets themselves (ULT)

When Luke says **also**, he means implicitly that Judas and Silas were prophets as Paul and Barnabas were [13:1](#). You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: “who were prophets as Paul and Barnabas were” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the brothers (ULT)

### the Gentile believers (UST)

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “their fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### with many a word...and strengthened them (ULT)

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean a message of encouragement that Judas and Silas spoke to the believers in Antioch by using words. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “by speaking to them at length to strengthen them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### strengthened them (ULT)

### They helped them to trust in Jesus even more (UST)

Luke does not mean that Judas and Silas strengthened the believers physically but that they strengthened them spiritually. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “strengthened them in their faith” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Silas](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [encouraged](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [strengthened them](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Silas](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [They said...to encourage](#)
- [Gentile believers](#)
- [They helped them to trust in Jesus even more](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Both Judas and [Silas](#), also being [prophets](#) themselves, [encouraged](#) the [brothers](#) with many a word and [strengthened](#) them.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Judas and [Silas](#) were [prophets](#). They [said](#) many things [to encourage](#) the [Gentile believers](#). They [helped them to trust in Jesus even more](#).

**Acts 15:33**

**they were sent away with peace from the brothers (ULT)**  
**the believers at Antioch wished them well and they left (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the brothers sent them away with peace" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the brothers (ULT)**  
**the...believers at Antioch (UST)**

Luke is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the believers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to the ones having sent them (ULT)**  
**Then, when they were ready to return to Jerusalem (UST)**

Luke is referring implicitly to the apostles and elders in Jerusalem, who had sent Judas and Silas to Antioch. You can include this information if your readers need it to understand the sentence. Alternate translation: "back to the apostles and elders in Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [some time](#)
- [they were sent away](#)
- [ones having sent](#)
- [peace](#)
- [brothers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [for a long time](#)
- [and they left](#)
- [Then, when they were ready to return to Jerusalem](#)
- [believers at Antioch](#)
- [wished them well](#)

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> And having stayed [some time](#), [they were sent away](#) with [peace](#) from the [brothers](#) to the [ones having sent](#) them.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> Judas and Silas stayed in Antioch [for a long time](#). [Then, when they were ready to return to Jerusalem](#), the [believers at Antioch](#) [wished them well and they left](#).



## Acts 15:34

As the General Introduction to Acts explains, this verse is found in many traditional versions of the Bible, but it is not found in the most accurate ancient manuscripts of the Bible. ULT and UST indicate this by putting the verse in brackets. If a translation of the Bible already exists in your area, you could consider including this verse if that translation does. If there is not already a Bible translation in your area, we recommend that you indicate in some way that this verse may not be original, such as by putting it in brackets or in a footnote. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

### ULT

<sup>34[2]</sup> [But it seemed good to Silas for them to remain there, so only judas traveled.]

### UST

<sup>34[1]</sup> [But Silas thought it would be best for them to stay there. So Judas went back to Jerusalem alone.]

## Acts 15:35

### But (ULT) However (UST)

Luke uses the word **But** to introduce information about what happened once the church resolved the question about whether the Gentiles needed to obey all the laws of Moses. Your language may have its own way of indicating how such information relates to a story. (See: [End of Story](#))

### the word of the Lord (ULT) the good news about Jesus (UST)

Luke is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that God wanted the believers to share by using words. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the message of the Lord" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### of the Lord (ULT) about Jesus (UST)

Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Use a form for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: "about the Lord Jesus" (See: [Politeness](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- Barnabas
- Antioch
- teaching
- proclaiming
- word of the Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- Barnabas
- Antioch. There
- they...taught the believers
- shared
- good news about Jesus

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> But Paul and Barnabas were staying in Antioch, teaching and proclaiming the word of the Lord, with many others also.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> However, Paul and Barnabas remained in Antioch. There they and many others taught the believers and shared the good news about Jesus.



## **Acts 15:36**

**after...some days (ULT)****After...a while (UST)**

Luke is using the term **days** idiomatically to refer to a specific time. Alternate translation: "after some time" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the brothers (ULT)****the believers (UST)**

Paul is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the people who believed in Jesus" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the word of the Lord (ULT)****the good news about Jesus (UST)**

Paul is using the term **word** figuratively to mean the message that he and Barnabas shared by using words. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the message of the Lord" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of the Lord (ULT)****about Jesus (UST)**

Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Use a form for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: "about the Lord Jesus" (See: [Politeness](#))

**how they are (ULT)****That way we can find out how well they are continuing to believe in and obey Jesus (UST)**

Paul is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation, with no comma preceding: "to see how they are doing" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [days](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Returning](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [we proclaimed](#)
- [word of the Lord](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [while](#)

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> Then after some [days](#), [Paul](#) said to [Barnabas](#), "Returning, then, let us visit the [brothers](#) in every city in which [we proclaimed](#) the [word of the Lord](#), how they are."

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> After a [while](#) [Paul](#) said to [Barnabas](#), "Let us go back and visit the [believers](#) in every city where [we previously proclaimed](#) the [good news about Jesus](#). That way we can find out how well they are continuing to believe in and obey Jesus."

- Paul
- Barnabas
- Let us go back
- believers
- we previously proclaimed
- good news about Jesus

## Acts 15:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Barnabas
- John...called Mark
- called

### Translation Words - UST

- Barnabas agreed that it would be good to go back and visit these believers
- John...whose other name was Mark
- whose other name was

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> But Barnabas was wanting also to take with them John called Mark.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> {Barnabas agreed that it would be good to go back and visit these believers.} But Barnabas said that he wanted to take John, whose other name was Mark, along with them again.

## Acts 15:38

**Paul...was thinking it wise...not to him take with them (ULT)**

**Paul...Paul...told Barnabas that he thought...said this because...it was a bad idea to take Mark with them (UST)**

Luke is using a figure of speech that expresses a positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. Alternate translation: "Paul was thinking it would be foolish to take him with them" (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- work

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul...Paul
- to work

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> But Paul was thinking it wise not to him take with them, the one having withdrawn from them in Pamphylia and not having accompanied them in the work.

### UST

<sup>38</sup> However, Paul told Barnabas that he thought it was a bad idea to take Mark with them. Paul said this because Mark had left them when they were previously in the region of Pamphylia. Mark had not continued to work with them.



## Acts 15:39

### so as for them to be separated from each other and for Barnabas, taking Mark with him, to sail away to Cyprus (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form **to be separated**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “so that they separated from each other and Barnabas, taking Mark with him sailed away to Cyprus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [happened](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Mark](#)
- [Cyprus](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul and Barnabas strongly disagreed with each other about whether they should bring John Mark with them](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Mark](#)
- [the island of Cyprus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> And a dispute [happened](#), so as for them to be separated from each other and for [Barnabas](#), taking [Mark](#) with him, to sail away to [Cyprus](#).

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> [Paul and Barnabas strongly disagreed with each other about whether they should bring John Mark with them](#). So they separated from each other. [Barnabas](#) went on a journey of his own and took [Mark](#) with him. They sailed on a ship to [the island of Cyprus](#).

**Acts 15:40**

**having been commended...by the brothers (ULT)**

**asked...to help them...The believers in Antioch...asked...to help them (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "after the brothers had commended him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to the grace (ULT)**  
**graciously (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "to the gracious care" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**of the Lord (ULT)**  
**God (UST)**

Luke is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Use a form for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: "of the Lord Jesus" (See: [Politeness](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- having chosen
- Silas
- having been commended
- brothers
- to the grace
- of the Lord

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul
- decided to travel with
- Silas
- believers in Antioch
- asked...to help them
- God
- graciously

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> But Paul, having chosen Silas, went out, having been commended by the brothers to the grace of the Lord.

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> Paul decided to travel with Silas. The believers in Antioch asked God graciously to help them. Then Paul and Silas departed from Antioch.

## Acts 15:41

### he was going through (ULT) Paul traveled {with Silas} through (UST)

The pronoun **he** refers to Paul. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: “Paul was going through” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### he was going through (ULT) Paul traveled {with Silas} through (UST)

Luke says **he**, meaning Paul, to refer both to Paul and to Silas, who was traveling with him. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “they went through” or “Paul and Silas went through” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### strengthening the churches (ULT) they helped the groups of believers to trust in Jesus even more (UST)

Luke is using the term **churches** to refer figuratively to the people associated with the churches. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “strengthening the people of the churches” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### strengthening the churches (ULT) they helped the groups of believers to trust in Jesus even more (UST)

Luke does not mean that Paul and Silas strengthened the people of the churches physically but that they strengthened them spiritually. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “strengthening the people of the churches in their faith” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Syria](#)
- [Cilicia](#)
- [strengthening](#)
- [churches](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [provinces of Syria](#)
- [Cilicia. In those places](#)
- [they helped...to trust in Jesus even more](#)
- [groups of believers](#)

## ULT

<sup>41</sup> And he was going through [Syria](#) and [Cilicia](#), [strengthening](#) the [churches](#).  
15:18 <sup>[1]</sup>  
15:34 <sup>[2]</sup>

## UST

<sup>41</sup> Paul traveled {with Silas} through the [provinces of Syria](#) and [Cilicia](#). [In those places, they helped](#) the [groups of believers to trust in Jesus even more](#).  
15:34 <sup>[1]</sup>

## **Acts 16**

### **Acts 16 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Timothy's circumcision**

Paul circumcised Timothy because they were telling the message of Jesus to Jews and Gentiles. Paul wanted the Jews to know that he respected the law of Moses even though the church leaders in Jerusalem had decided that Christians did not need to be circumcised.

#### **The woman who had a spirit of divination**

Most people want very much to know the future, but the law of Moses said that speaking with the spirits of dead people to learn about the future is a sin. This woman seems to have been able to tell the future very well. She was a slave, and her masters made much money from her work. Paul wanted her to stop sinning, so he told the spirit to leave her. Luke does not say that she began to follow Jesus or tell us anything more about her.



## **Acts 16:1**

**he...came down...also (ULT)**

This continues the missionary journeys of Paul with Silas. Here, **came** can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

**a certain disciple was there, Timothy by name, the son of a believing Jewish woman but of a father, a Greek (ULT)****a believer whose name was Timothy lived in Lystra. His mother was a Jewish woman who believed in Jesus. His father, however, was a Greek man. {Because this man was not Jewish, he did not observe the law of Moses (UST)**

**Timothy** is introduced into the story and joins Paul and Silas. Verses 1 and 2 give background information about Timothy. (See: [Background Information](#))

**Derbe (ULT)****the cities of Derbe...there (UST)**

**Derbe** is the name of a city in Asia Minor. See how you translated it in [Acts 14:6](#).

**behold (ULT)****Now (UST)**

The word **behold** alerts us to a new person in the narrative. Your language may have a way of doing this.

**of a believing Jewish woman (ULT)  
was a Jewish woman who believed in Jesus (UST)**

The words “in Christ” are understood. Alternate translation: “a Jewish woman who believed in Christ” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Lystra](#)
- [a...disciple](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [by name](#)
- [the son](#)
- [believing](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [of a father](#)
- [a Greek](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> And he also came down to Derbe and to [Lystra](#), and behold, a certain [disciple](#) was there, [Timothy by name](#), the son of a [believing Jewish](#) woman but of a [father, a Greek](#),

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> Paul and Silas went to the cities of Derbe and [Lystra](#) and visited the believers there. Now a [believer whose name was Timothy](#) lived in Lystra. His mother was a [Jewish woman who believed in Jesus](#). His father, however, was a [Greek man](#). {Because this man was not Jewish, he did not observe the law of Moses}.

## Translation Words - UST

- Lystra
- believer
- whose name was
- Timothy
- His mother
- Jewish
- who believed in Jesus
- His father
- was a Greek man. {Because this man was not Jewish, he did not observe the law of Moses



**Acts 16:2**

**who was being well attested by the...brothers (ULT)**

**The...said good things about Timothy... believers (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "The brothers spoke well of him" or "Timothy had a good reputation among the brothers" or "The brothers said good things about him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by the...brothers (ULT)**

**The...said good things about...believers (UST)**

Here, **brothers** refers to believers. Alternate translation: "by the believers"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [brothers](#)
- [Lystra](#)
- [Iconium](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [believers](#)
- [Lystra](#)
- [Iconium](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> who was being well attested by the [brothers](#) in [Lystra](#) and [Iconium](#).

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> The [believers](#) in [Lystra](#) and [Iconium](#) said good things about Timothy,

## Acts 16:3

### he circumcised him (ULT) someone to circumcise Timothy (UST)

It is possible that Paul himself **circumcised** Timothy, but it is more likely that he had someone else circumcise Timothy.

### because of the Jews who were in those places

Alternate translation: "because of the Jews living in the areas where Paul and Timothy would be traveling"

### for they all knew that his father was a Greek (ULT)

Since **Greek** men did not have their sons circumcised, the Jews would have known Timothy was not circumcised, and they would have rejected Paul and Timothy before hearing their message about Christ. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- he circumcised
- Jews
- they...knew
- father
- a Greek

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- someone to circumcise
- Jews
- knew
- non-Jewish
- father

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Paul wanted this one to go out with him and, taking him, **he circumcised** him because of the **Jews** being in those places, for **they** all **knew** that his **father** was a **Greek**.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Paul wanted to take Timothy with him when he went to other places, so he arranged for **someone to circumcise** Timothy. Paul did that so that the **Jews** who lived in those other places would accept Timothy. Those Jews **knew** that his **non-Jewish father** had not circumcised him.

**Acts 16:4**

**they were going through...they were delivering (ULT)**

**Timothy went with Paul and Silas, and they traveled to...they encouraged (UST)**

The word **they** here refers to Paul, Silas ([Acts 15:40](#)), and Timothy ([Acts 16:3](#)).

**to them to keep (ULT)**

**the believers to do...them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "for the church members to obey" or "for the believers to obey"

**that had been decided by the apostles and elders in Jerusalem (ULT)**

**what the apostles and elders in Jerusalem had told (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that the apostles and elders in Jerusalem had written" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- to keep
- decrees
- had been decided
- apostles
- elders
- Jerusalem

**Translation Words - UST**

- to do
- what...had told
- apostles
- elders
- Jerusalem
- to do

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> And as they were going through the cities, they were delivering to them to keep the decrees that had been decided by the apostles and elders in Jerusalem.

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> So Timothy went with Paul and Silas, and they traveled to many other towns. In each town they encouraged the believers to do what the apostles and elders in Jerusalem had told them to do.

**Acts 16:5****the...churches were being strengthened in the faith and were increasing in number each day (ULT)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the believers became stronger in their faith, and there were more and more people becoming believers every day” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the...churches were being strengthened in the faith (ULT)****They...helped the believers in those towns to trust Jesus even more (UST)**

This speaks of helping someone to believe more confidently as if it were making them physically stronger. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [churches](#)
- [were being strengthened](#)
- [in the faith](#)
- [were increasing](#)
- [day](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [helped...even more](#)
- [the believers in those towns](#)
- [to trust Jesus](#)
- [More people became believers](#)
- [day](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> So indeed the [churches were being strengthened in the faith](#) and [were increasing](#) in number each [day](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> They [helped the believers in those towns to trust Jesus even more](#). [More people became believers](#) every [day](#).

**Acts 16:6****Phrygia (ULT)****the...of Phrygia (UST)**

**Phrygia** is a region in Asia. See how you translated this name in [Acts 2:10](#).

**having been forbidden by the Holy Spirit (ULT)****But the Holy Spirit showed them that he did not want...the Holy Spirit wanted (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “for the Holy Spirit had forbidden them” or “because the Holy Spirit did not permit them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the word (ULT)****the good news about Jesus...the good news (UST)**

Here, **word** stands for “message.” Alternate translation: “the message about Christ” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Galatian](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [word](#)
- [Asia](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [good news about Jesus...good news](#)
- [province of Asia](#)
- [Holy Spirit...Holy Spirit](#)
- [Galatia](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> And they went through Phrygia and the [Galatian](#) region, having been forbidden by the [Holy Spirit](#) to speak the [word](#) in [Asia](#).

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> Paul and his companions wanted to share the [good news about Jesus](#) in the [province of Asia](#). But the [Holy Spirit](#) showed them that he did not want them to do that. So they went instead through the regions of Phrygia and [Galatia](#){, trying to discover where the [Holy Spirit](#) wanted them to share the [good news](#)}.

**Acts 16:7****having come (ULT)****They arrived (UST)**

Here, **had come** can be translated as “had gone” or “had arrived.”  
(See: [Go and Come](#))

**Mysia...Bithynia (ULT)****province of Mysia...the province of Bithynia (UST)**

**Mysia** and **Bithynia** are two more regions in Asia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the Spirit of Jesus (ULT)****the Holy Spirit (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Spirit of Jesus](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Holy Spirit](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> And having come near Mysia, they were attempting to go into Bithynia, but the [Spirit of Jesus](#) did not permit them.

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> They arrived at the border of the province of Mysia. From there they wanted to go north into the province of Bithynia. But once again the [Holy Spirit](#) showed them that he did not want them to share the good news there.

## Acts 16:8

### they came down to Troas (ULT) and arrived at Troas{, a city by the sea (UST)

The phrase **came down** is used here because Troas is lower in elevation than Mysia.

### they came down (ULT) and arrived (UST)

Here, **came** can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Troas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Troas{, a city by the sea](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So passing by Mysia, they came down to [Troas](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> So they went through the province of Mysia and arrived at [Troas{, a city by the sea}](#).

**Acts 16:9****a vision...appeared to Paul (ULT)****a vision in which he saw...God gave Paul (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Paul saw a vision from God" or "Paul had a vision from God"

**calling him (ULT)****begging...Paul (UST)**

Alternate translation: "begging him" or "inviting him"

**over into Macedonia (ULT)****Come across the sea to Macedonia (UST)**

The phrase **coming over** is used because **Macedonia** is across the sea from Troas.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a vision
- to Paul
- a...Macedonian
- Macedonia

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul
- a vision in which he saw
- from the province of Macedonia
- Macedonia

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> And a vision appeared to Paul by night: A man, a certain Macedonian, was standing and calling him and saying, "Coming over into Macedonia, help us."

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> That night God gave Paul a vision in which he saw a man from the province of Macedonia. That man was begging Paul, "Come across the sea to Macedonia and help us!"



## Acts 16:10

**we sought to go out into Macedonia, reasoning together that God had summoned us to proclaim the gospel to them (ULT) we made arrangements...to travel to Macedonia. We were certain that God had called us to share the good news about Jesus with the people there (UST)**

Here the words **we** and **us** refer to Paul and his companions including Luke, the author of Acts.

### Translation Words - ULT

- vision
- we sought
- Macedonia
- God
- had
- to proclaim the gospel

### Translation Words - UST

- vision
- we made arrangements
- Macedonia
- God
- had called
- to share the good news about Jesus with

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So when he had seen the **vision**, immediately **we sought** to go out into **Macedonia**, reasoning together that **God had** summoned us **to proclaim the gospel** to them.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> {I, Luke, joined Paul and his companions in Troas.} After Paul saw that **vision**, **we made arrangements** right away to travel to **Macedonia**. We were certain that **God had called** us **to share the good news about Jesus with** the people there.

## Acts 16:11

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and his companions are now in Philippi on their missionary trip.

### Samothrace...Neapolis (ULT) the island of Samothrace...the city of Neapolis (UST)

**Samothrace** and **Neapolis** are coastal cities near Phillipi in Macedonia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Troas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Troas](#)

### ULT

**11** So setting sail from [Troas](#), we made a straight course to Samothrace, and the next day to Neapolis,

### UST

**11** We got on a boat and sailed from [Troas](#) right to the island of Samothrace. The next day we sailed to the city of Neapolis.

## Acts 16:12

### a colony (ULT)

### Many Roman citizens lived there (UST)

This **colony** was a city outside of Italy where many people who came from Rome lived. The people there had the same rights and freedoms as people who lived in cities in Italy. They could govern themselves and they did not have to pay taxes. Alternate translation: "a Roman colony" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philippi](#)
- [of Macedonia](#)
- [for...days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Philippi](#)
- [Macedonia](#)
- [for a while](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> and from there to [Philippi](#), which is the first city in the district of [Macedonia](#), a colony, and we were staying in this city for some [days](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then we left Neapolis and went to [Philippi](#). It was a very important city in the province of [Macedonia](#). Many Roman citizens lived there. We decided to stay in [Philippi for a while](#).

## Acts 16:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- on the day
- Sabbath
- gate
- a place of prayer
- having come together

### Translation Words - UST

- On the...day
- Sabbath
- the city gate
- Jewish people would gather to pray
- who had gathered to pray

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And on the day of the Sabbath, we went outside the gate by a river, where we thought a place of prayer to be. And having sat down, we spoke to the women having come together.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> On the Sabbath day we went outside the city gate down to the river. {Since there was no synagogue in the city,} we knew that Jewish people would gather to pray at a place like that. When we arrived, we saw some women who had gathered to pray. So we sat down and began to tell them about Jesus.



## **Acts 16:14**

**a certain woman, Lydia by name (ULT)**  
**A woman whose name was Lydia was one of the women (UST)**

Here, **a certain woman** introduces **Lydia** as a new person in the story. Alternate translation: “there was a woman named Lydia” (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**a seller of purple (ULT)**  
**She was a merchant who sold luxurious purple cloth (UST)**

Here “cloth” is understood. Alternate translation: “a merchant who sold purple cloth” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**of Thyatira (ULT)**  
**of Thyatira (UST)**

**Thyatira** is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**worshiping God (ULT)**  
**She believed in the God of Israel and worshiped him (UST)**

When Luke says Lydia was **worshiping God**, he is saying that she was a Gentile who gave praise to God and followed him, but did not obey all of the Jewish laws.

**whose heart the Lord opened to pay attention (ULT)**  
**who was listening...The Lord God enabled her to understand...and she trusted in Jesus (UST)**

For the Lord to cause someone to **pay attention** and believe a message is spoken of as if he were opening a person’s **heart**. Alternate translation: “and the Lord caused her to listen well and to believe” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**heart...opened (ULT)**  
**enabled her to understand...and she trusted in Jesus (UST)**

Here, **heart** stands for a person’s mind. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**heart...opened (ULT)**  
**enabled her to understand...and she trusted in Jesus (UST)**

The author speaks about the **heart** or “mind” as if it were a box that a person could open so it is ready for someone to fill it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> And a certain woman, Lydia **by name**, **a seller of purple**, of the city of Thyatira, **worshiping God**, was listening, whose **heart** the **Lord** opened to pay attention to the things being said by **Paul**.

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> A woman **whose name** was Lydia was one of the women who was listening to Paul. She was from the city of Thyatira, **She was a merchant who sold luxurious purple cloth. She believed in the God of Israel and worshiped him. The Lord God enabled her to understand what Paul was saying**, **and she trusted in Jesus**.

## **to the things being said by Paul (ULT)** **what Paul was saying (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "what Paul was saying" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- by name
- a seller of purple
- worshiping
- God
- heart
- Lord
- Paul

### **Translation Words - UST**

- whose name
- She was a merchant who sold luxurious purple cloth
- She believed in...and worshiped him
- the God of Israel
- Lord God
- enabled her to understand...and she trusted in Jesus
- Paul



## Acts 16:15

### And when she was baptized, and her household (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "And when they baptized Lydia and members of her household" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### her household (ULT) the others who lived in her house (UST)

Here, **her household** refers to all the people who live in her house. Alternate translation: "the members of her household" or "her family and household servants" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- she was baptized
- household
- she urged us
- you have judged
- faithful
- to the Lord
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul baptized Lydia
- others who lived in...house
- Then she said to us
- you recognize that
- believe sincerely in
- Jesus
- house

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And when she was baptized, and her household, she urged us, saying, "If you have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, entering into my house, stay." And she persuaded us.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Paul baptized Lydia and the others who lived in her house. Then she said to us, "If you recognize that I believe sincerely in Jesus, please come to my house and stay there." So we accepted her invitation and stayed at her house.



## **Acts 16:16**

## And it happened that (ULT) Another day (UST)

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**a certain young female slave having a Python spirit met us, who, divining, was bringing much gain to her masters (ULT)  
we met a young woman who was a slave. An evil spirit was giving her the power to tell what would happen to people in the future. People paid a lot of money to the men who were her owners so that she would tell them what was going to happen to them (UST)**

This verse give background information to explain that this young fortune teller brought much financial gain to her masters by guessing people's futures. (See: [Background Information](#))

**a certain young female slave (ULT)  
a young woman who was a slave (UST)**

The phrase **a certain** introduces a new person to the story. Alternate translation: "there was a young female slave" (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**a Python spirit (ULT)  
An...spirit was giving her the power to tell what would happen to people in the future (UST)**

An evil **spirit** spoke to her often about the immediate future of people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [place of prayer](#)
- [a...young female slave](#)
- [Python](#)
- [a...spirit](#)
- [gain](#)
- [to...masters](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [place where people gathered to pray](#)
- [young woman who was a slave](#)
- [An...spirit](#)
- [was giving her the power to tell what would happen to people in the future](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And it happened that as we were going to the [place of prayer](#), a certain [young female slave](#) having a [Python spirit](#) met us, who, divining, was bringing much [gain](#) to her [masters](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Another day, as we were going to the [place where people gathered to pray](#), we met a [young woman who was a slave](#). An evil [spirit](#) was giving her the power to tell what would happen to people in the future. People paid a lot of money to the men who were her [owners](#) so that she would tell them what was going to happen to them.

- People paid a lot of money
- to the men who were...owners

## Acts 16:17

### the way of salvation (ULT) how God can save you (UST)

How a person can be saved is spoken of here as if it were a way or path that a person walks on. Alternate translation: "how God can save you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- was shouting
- servants
- of the...Most High...God
- Most High
- are proclaiming
- of salvation

#### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- She was continually shouting
- serve
- God who is the greatest of all gods
- who is the greatest of all gods
- are telling
- how God can save you

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> She, following after Paul and us, was shouting, saying, "These men are servants of the Most High God who are proclaiming to you the way of salvation."

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> This young woman followed Paul and the rest of us everywhere we went. She was continually shouting, "These men serve the God who is the greatest of all gods! They are telling you how God can save you!"

## Acts 16:18

**But Paul, having become annoyed and having turned (ULT)**

**Finally, Paul became so upset that he turned toward the young woman (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "But she greatly annoyed Paul so he turned" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in the name of Jesus Christ (ULT)**

**In the name of Jesus the Messiah (UST)**

Here, **name** stands for speaking with the authority or as the representative of Jesus Christ. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**it came out in the same hour (ULT)**

**Immediately the evil spirit left her (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the spirit came out immediately"

### Translation Words - ULT

- days
- Paul
- having turned
- to the spirit
- I command
- the name
- of Jesus Christ
- Christ
- in the...hour

### Translation Words - UST

- days
- Paul
- he turned toward the young woman
- to the evil spirit that was in her
- the name
- of Jesus the Messiah
- the Messiah
- I command
- Immediately

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And she was doing this for many days. But Paul, having become annoyed and having turned, said to the spirit, "I command you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out from her." And it came out in the same hour.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> She continued to do this for many days. Finally, Paul became so upset that he turned toward the young woman and spoke to the evil spirit that was in her. He said, "In the name of Jesus the Messiah, I command you to come out of her!" Immediately the evil spirit left her.





## **Acts 16:19**

**her masters (ULT)**

**her owners (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the owners of the slave girl"

**seeing...her masters...that their hope of profit had gone (ULT)**

**realized...her owners...that she could no longer predict what would happen to people. That meant she could no longer earn money for them (UST)**

It can be stated clearly why they no longer hoped to make money. Alternate translation: "when her masters saw that she could no longer earn money for them by telling fortunes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**into the marketplace (ULT)**

**to the open area of the city (UST)**

The **marketplace** was a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services took place. Alternate translation: "into the public square"

**to the rulers (ULT)**

**where its rulers were {so that the rulers could judge them (UST)}**

Alternate translation: "into the presence of the authorities" or "so that the authorities could judge them"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [masters](#)
- [hope](#)
- [of profit](#)
- [seizing](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [rulers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [owners](#)
- [she could no longer predict what would happen to people. That meant she could no longer earn money for them](#)
- [she could no longer predict what would happen to people. That meant she could no longer earn money for them](#)
- [That made them very angry. They grabbed](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> But her [masters](#), seeing that their [hope of profit](#) had gone, [seizing Paul](#) and [Silas](#), dragged them into the marketplace to the [rulers](#).

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> Then her [owners](#) realized that [she could no longer predict what would happen to people. That meant she could no longer earn money for them. That made them very angry. They grabbed Paul and Silas and took them to the open area of the city where its rulers were {so that the rulers could judge them}](#).

- rulers...so that the rulers could judge them

**Acts 16:20**

**having brought them to the magistrates (ULT)**  
**The owners of the young woman brought**  
**them to the city rulers (UST)**

Alternate translation: "when they had brought them to the judges"

**to the magistrates (ULT)**  
**to the city rulers (UST)**

These **magistrates** were rulers or judges.

**These men are greatly troubling our city (ULT)**  
**them, "These men...and they are greatly troubling the people in our city**  
**(UST)**

Here the word **our** refers to the people of the city and includes the magistrates who ruled it. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to the magistrates](#)
- [are greatly troubling](#)
- [Jews](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the city rulers](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [and they are greatly troubling](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> And having brought them [to the magistrates](#), they said, "These men [are greatly troubling](#) our city, being [Jews](#),

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> The owners of the young woman brought them to [the city rulers](#). They told them, "These men are [Jews](#), [and they are greatly troubling](#) the people in our city.

## Acts 16:21

### neither to accept nor to practice (ULT) to do (UST)

Alternate translation: "to believe nor to obey" or "to accept nor to do"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- they are proclaiming
- to accept
- Romans

#### Translation Words - UST

- They are teaching that
- Roman
- to do

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> and they are proclaiming customs that are not lawful for us neither to accept nor to practice, being Romans."

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> They are teaching that we should do things that our Roman laws do not allow us to do!"

## Acts 16:22

**them...them...tearing off...garments,  
commanded them (ULT)  
Paul and Silas...Paul and Silas...told soldiers to  
tear the shirts off (UST)**

Here the words **their** and **them** refer to Paul and Silas.

**commanded them to be beaten with rods  
(ULT)  
told soldiers...and beat them with wooden  
rods (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “commanding the soldiers to beat them with rods” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [magistrates](#)
- [garments](#)
- [commanded them](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [rulers](#)
- [told soldiers](#)
- [shirts](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And the crowd rose up together against them, and the [magistrates](#), tearing off their [garments](#), [commanded them](#) to be beaten with rods.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Many people in the crowd joined those who were accusing Paul and Silas. {This convinced the Roman rulers that they must be bad men.} So the [rulers](#) [told soldiers](#) to tear the [shirts](#) off Paul and Silas and beat them with wooden rods.

**Acts 16:23**

**many...having laid...blows upon them (ULT)**  
**the soldiers beat...badly with rods...the**  
**soldiers beat...Paul and Silas...badly with**  
**rods...them...them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "when they had hit them many times with rods"

**commanding the jailer to guard them**  
**securely (ULT)**  
**They told the jailer to make sure they did not**  
**get out (UST)**

Alternate translation: "having told the jailer to make sure they did not escape"

**jailer (ULT)**  
**jailer (UST)**

A **jailer** was a person responsible for all the people held in the jail or prison.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- prison
- jailer
- commanding
- to guard

**Translation Words - UST**

- the prison
- jailer
- They told
- to make sure...did not get out

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> And having laid many blows upon them, they threw them into prison, commanding the jailer to guard them securely,

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> So the soldiers beat Paul and Silas badly with rods. After that, they took them and put them into the prison. They told the jailer to make sure they did not get out.

**Acts 16:24**

**who, having received such a command (ULT)  
Because the officials had told him to do that (UST)**

Alternate translation: "who, when he heard this command"

**into...fastened their feet...the stocks (ULT)  
into...he made them sit down on the floor and stretch out their legs. Then he fastened their ankles...holes between two large pieces of wood, so that Paul and Silas could not move their legs (UST)**

Alternate translation: "securely locked their feet in the stocks"

**stocks (ULT)  
holes between two large pieces of wood, so that Paul and Silas could not move their legs (UST)**

The **stocks** was a wooden frame with holes for a person's feet that prevented them from moving.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- having received
- a command
- prison

**Translation Words - UST**

- Because the officials had told...to do that
- Because the officials had told...to do that
- the prison. There

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> who, having received such a command, threw them into the inner prison and fastened their feet in the stocks.

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> Because the officials had told him to do that, the jailer put Paul and Silas into the room that was farthest inside the prison. There, he made them sit down on the floor and stretch out their legs. Then he fastened their ankles in holes between two large pieces of wood, so that Paul and Silas could not move their legs.



## Acts 16:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- Silas
- praying
- God
- prisoners

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- Silas
- were praying
- God
- other prisoners

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But around midnight, Paul and Silas, praying, were singing hymns to God, and the prisoners were listening to them.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> About midnight, Paul and Silas were praying and praising God by singing songs. The other prisoners were listening to them.

## Acts 16:26

**a great earthquake happened, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken (ULT)**  
**there was a very strong earthquake that shook the whole jail...the earthquake (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "a severe earthquake shook the foundations of the prison" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the foundations of the prison were shaken (ULT)**  
**shook the whole jail (UST)**

When the **foundations** shook, this caused the entire prison to shake. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**were opened...all the doors (ULT)**  
**it caused...to open...all of the doors of the jail (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "all the doors opened" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the chains of all were unfastened (ULT)**  
**all of the chains that fastened the prisoners to fall off (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "everyone's chains came loose" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [foundations](#)
- [of the prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [whole jail](#)
- [whole jail](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> And suddenly a great earthquake happened, so that the [foundations of the prison](#) were shaken, and immediately all the doors were opened, and the chains of all were unfastened.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Suddenly there was a very strong earthquake that shook the [whole jail](#). As soon as the earthquake struck, it caused all of the doors of the jail to open and all of the chains that fastened the prisoners to fall off.

## Acts 16:27

**awake...the jailer became (ULT)**

**woke up...The jailer...woke up (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the jailer woke up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**he was about to kill himself (ULT)**

**to kill himself{, because he knew that the city rulers would kill him if (UST)**

The jailer preferred to commit suicide rather than suffer the consequences of letting the prisoners escape. Alternate translation: "he was ready to kill himself"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prison](#)
- [prisoners](#)
- [sword](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of the jail](#)
- [prisoners...prisoners](#)
- [sword](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But the jailer became awake, and seeing the [prison](#) doors having been opened, having drawn {his} [sword](#), he was about to kill himself, thinking the [prisoners](#) to have escaped.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> The jailer woke up and saw that the earthquake had opened the doors [of the jail](#). He thought that the [prisoners](#) had left the jail. So he pulled out his [sword](#) to kill himself{, because he knew that the city rulers would kill him if the [prisoners](#) had escaped}.

## Acts 16:28

### we are (ULT) are (UST)

Here the word **we** refers to Paul, Silas, and all of the other prisoners but excludes the jailer. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- shouted
- with a...voice

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul saw the jailer and
- shouted to him
- shouted to him

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> But Paul shouted with a loud voice, saying, "Do not do harm to yourself, for we are all here."

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Paul saw the jailer and shouted to him, "Do not kill yourself! We prisoners are all here!"



## **Acts 16:29**

**having called for...lights (ULT)**  
**The jailer shouted to someone to bring... torches. {It was midnight and dark, and he wanted to be sure that all the prisoners were still in the prison (UST)}**

The reason why the jailer needed **light** can be made explicit.  
 Alternate translation: "after he called for someone to bring light so he could see who was still in the prison" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**lights (ULT)**  
**torches. {It was midnight and dark, and he wanted to be sure that all the prisoners were still in the prison (UST)}**

The word **lights** stands for something that makes light. Alternate translation: "torches" or "lamps" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**he rushed in (ULT)**  
**He hurried in {to the inner cell where he had put Paul and Silas (UST)}**

Alternate translation: "he quickly entered the jail"

**he fell down to Paul and Silas (ULT)**  
**When he saw that Paul and Silas were still there,} he knelt down in front of them to honor them {for sparing his life by not escaping (UST)}**

The jailer humbled himself by bowing down at the feet of **Paul and Silas**. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lights](#)
- [terrified](#)
- [he fell down](#)
- [to Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [torches. {It was midnight and dark, and he wanted to be sure that all the prisoners were still in the prison](#)
- [The jailer was shaking with fear{, because the rulers had told him to guard them carefully](#)
- [When he saw that...were still there,} he knelt down in front of them to honor them {for sparing his life by not escaping](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> So having called for [lights](#), he rushed in and, being [terrified](#), [he fell down to Paul and Silas](#),

### UST

<sup>29</sup> The jailer shouted to someone to bring [torches. {It was midnight and dark, and he wanted to be sure that all the prisoners were still in the prison}](#). He hurried in {to the inner cell where he had put Paul and Silas}. [The jailer was shaking with fear{, because the rulers had told him to guard them carefully. When he saw that Paul and Silas were still there,} he knelt down in front of them to honor them {for sparing his life by not escaping}](#).

**Acts 16:30**

**having brought them out (ULT)**  
**he brought Paul and Silas out of the jail (UST)**

Alternate translation: "after he had led them outside the jail"

**what is necessary for me to do in order to be saved (ULT)**  
**I want God to save me. What do I need to do (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "what must I do in order for God to save me from my sins" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Sirs](#)
- [be saved](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Sirs](#)
- [I want God to save me](#)

**ULT**

<sup>30</sup> and having brought them out, he said, "[Sirs](#), what is necessary for me to do in order to [be saved](#)?"

**UST**

<sup>30</sup> Then he brought Paul and Silas out of the jail. He asked them, "[Sirs](#), [I want God to save me](#). What do I need to do?"



**Acts 16:31****you will be saved (ULT)  
God will save...God will...save (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will save you" or "God will save you from your sins" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**your household (ULT)  
everyone in your family (UST)**

Here, **your household** refers to all the people who lived in the house. Alternate translation: "all the members of your household" or "your family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Believe](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [you will be saved](#)
- [household](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [If you put your trust...if they trust](#)
- [Jesus...as your Lord...Jesus](#)
- [as your Lord](#)
- [God will save...God will...save](#)
- [everyone in...family](#)

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> And they said, "Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved, you and your household."

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> They answered, "If you put your trust in Jesus as your Lord, God will save you. God will also save everyone in your family if they trust in Jesus."

## Acts 16:32

### they spoke the word of the Lord to him (ULT) Paul and Silas spoke about Jesus to him (UST)

Here, **word** stands for a message. Alternate translation: “they told him the message about the Lord Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [word of the Lord](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [about...Jesus](#)
- [family](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> And they spoke the [word of the Lord](#) to him, with everyone in his [house](#).

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> Then Paul and Silas spoke [about Jesus](#) to him and everyone in his [family](#).

**Acts 16:33**

**he was baptized immediately—he and all the ones of him (ULT)**

**right away Paul and Silas baptized him and everyone in his family (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “Paul and Silas immediately baptized the jailer and all the members of his household” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- hour
- he was baptized

**Translation Words - UST**

- even though it was the middle
- Paul and Silas baptized

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> And taking them at that hour of the night, he washed them from the blows, and he was baptized immediately—he and all the ones of him.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> The jailer washed their wounds, even though it was the middle of the night. Then right away Paul and Silas baptized him and everyone in his family.

## Acts 16:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- his} house
- rejoiced
- having believed
- in God

### Translation Words - UST

- house
- He...were all very happy
- because they had believed
- in God

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> And bringing them up into {his} house, he set a table before them and rejoiced with {his} household, having believed in God.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> Then the jailer brought Paul and Silas into his house and gave them some food to eat. He and his whole family were all very happy because they had believed in God.

## Acts 16:35

### Now (ULT)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke tells the last event in the story that started in [Acts 16:16](#).

### officers...Release those...men (ULT) some...Let those...two prisoners...go now (UST)

Alternate translation: "Allow those men to leave"

### Translation Words - ULT

- day
- magistrates
- sent

### Translation Words - UST

- The next morning
- city rulers...to the prison
- told...to go

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Now when day came, the magistrates sent officers, saying, "Release those men."

### UST

<sup>35</sup> The next morning, the city rulers told some officers to go to the prison and tell the jailer, "Let those two prisoners go now!"

## Acts 16:36

### coming out (ULT) you two can leave the prison (UST)

Alternate translation: "having come out of the jail"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- reported
- Paul
- magistrates
- have sent
- peace

#### Translation Words - UST

- he went and told
- Paul
- city rulers
- have told me
- Do not worry, no one will arrest you again

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> And the jailer **reported** the words to **Paul**, "The **magistrates have sent** that you may be released. Now therefore, coming out, go in **peace**."

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> When the jailer heard this, **he went and told Paul**, "The **city rulers have told me** to let you go. So you two can leave the prison now. **Do not worry, no one will arrest you again**."



## **Acts 16:37**



**us...they threw us...us...us (ULT)**  
**us...they put us...us...us (UST)**

The word **us** refers only to Paul and Silas. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**said to them (ULT)**  
**said to the jailer, with the officers listening (UST)**

Probably Paul is speaking to the jailer, but he intends for the jailer to tell the magistrates what he says. Alternate translation: "said to the jailer" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Having beaten us in public (ULT)**  
**The city rulers had their soldiers beat us in front of a crowd (UST)**

Here **They** refers to the magistrates who commanded their soldiers to beat them. Alternate translation: "The magistrates ordered their soldiers to beat us in public" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**without trial, men being Romans, they threw us into prison (ULT)**  
**Without convicting us of any crime, they put us in prison. They did those things to us even though we are Roman citizens (UST)**

Alternate translation: "without a trial to prove us guilty, even though we are Roman citizens, and they had their soldiers put us in jail"

**they cast us out secretly? For not (ULT)**  
**they want to send us away without telling anyone! We will not accept that (UST)**

Paul uses a question to emphasize that he will not allow the magistrates to send them out the city in secret after they had mistreated Paul and Silas. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will certainly not let them send us out of the city in secret!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Instead, coming themselves (ULT)**  
**We will not accept that...Those city rulers must come themselves (UST)**

Here, **themselves** is used for emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- Romans

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> But Paul said to them, "Having beaten us in public without trial, men being Romans, they threw us into prison, and now they cast us out secretly? For not! Instead, coming themselves, let them lead us out."

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> But Paul said to the jailer, with the officers listening, "The city rulers had their soldiers beat us in front of a crowd. Without convicting us of any crime, they put us in prison. They did those things to us even though we are Roman citizens. And now they want to send us away without telling anyone! We will not accept that! Those city rulers must come themselves and free us from prison."

- prison
- they cast...out

## **Translation Words - UST**

- Paul
- prison
- Roman
- they want to send...away

**Acts 16:38**

**they were terrified...hearing that they were Romans (ULT)**

**they became very afraid. {They knew that they had done the wrong thing by beating Roman citizens and putting them in prison without a trial...the city rulers learned that they were Roman citizens (UST)}**

To be a Roman meant to be a legal citizens of the Roman Empire. Citizenship provided freedom from torture and the right to a fair trial. The city leaders were afraid that more important Roman authorities might learn how the city leaders had mistreated Paul and Silas. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- reported
- to...magistrates
- they were terrified
- Romans

**Translation Words - UST**

- officers
- went and told
- Roman citizens
- they became very afraid. {They knew that they had done the wrong thing by beating Roman citizens and putting them in prison without a trial}

**ULT**

<sup>38</sup> So the officers reported these words to the magistrates and they were terrified, hearing that they were Romans.

**UST**

<sup>38</sup> So the officers went and told the city rulers that Paul and Silas were refusing to leave the prison unless the rulers came and released them personally. When the city rulers learned that they were Roman citizens, they became very afraid. {They knew that they had done the wrong thing by beating Roman citizens and putting them in prison without a trial.}

## Acts 16:39

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- they entreated

### Translation Words - UST

- and told them that they were sorry for what they had done

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> And coming, they entreated them, and bringing them out, they were asking them to go away from the city.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> So the city rulers came to Paul and Silas and told them that they were sorry for what they had done to them. The city rulers brought them out of the prison and asked them to leave the city.

**Acts 16:40**

**they came...seeing...they exhorted them (ULT)**  
**they went...they met with her and the other**  
**believers. They encouraged (UST)**

Here the word **they** refers to Paul and Silas. The word **them** refers to the believers in Philippi.

This is the end of Paul and Silas' time in Philippi. (See: [End of Story](#))

**they came to Lydia (ULT)**  
**they went to Lydia's house (UST)**

Here, **came** can be translated as "went." (See: [Go and Come](#))

**Lydia (ULT)**  
**Lydia's house (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the home of Lydia"

**seeing...the brothers (ULT)**  
**they met with her and the other believers...the believers to continue trusting**  
**in the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **the brothers** refers to believers whether male or female. Alternate translation: "when they had visited with the believers" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [prison](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [they exhorted them](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [prison](#)
- [They encouraged](#)
- [believers to continue trusting in the Lord Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> So going out from the [prison](#), they came to Lydia. And seeing the [brothers](#), [they exhorted them](#) and went out.

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> After Paul and Silas left the [prison](#), they went to Lydia's house. There they met with her and the other believers. [They encouraged](#) the [believers to continue trusting in the Lord Jesus](#). Then Paul and Silas and Timothy left the city of Philippi. {I, Luke, remained there for some time.}

## Acts 17

### Acts 17 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Misunderstandings about the Messiah

The Jews expected the Christ or Messiah to be a powerful king because the Old Testament says so many times. But it also says many times that the Messiah would suffer, and that was what Paul was telling the Jews. (See: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

#### The religion of Athens

Paul said that the Athenians were “religious,” but they did not worship the true God. They worshiped many different false gods. In the past they had conquered other peoples and begun to worship the gods of the people they had conquered. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

In this chapter Luke describes for the first time how Paul told the message of Christ to people who knew nothing of the Old Testament.

**Acts 17:1****Now (ULT)**

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke, the author, starts to tell a new part of the story.

**passing through (ULT)**  
**Paul, Silas, and Timothy traveled through (UST)**

Alternate translation: “when they had traveled through”

**they came (ULT)**  
**Then they came (UST)**

Here the word **they** refers to Paul and Silas. They arrive in Thessalonica, apparently without Luke, since he says “they” and not “we.” Compare [Acts 16:40](#).

**Amhipolis and Apollonia (ULT)**  
**the cities of Amhipolis and Apollonia (UST)**

**Amhipolis** and **Apollonia** are coastal cities in Macedonia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**they came to Thessalonica (ULT)**  
**Then they came to the city of Thessalonica (UST)**

Here, **came** can be translated as “went” or “arrived.” Alternate translation: “they went to Thessalonica” or “they arrived at Thessalonica” (See: [Go and Come](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Thessalonica](#)
- [a synagogue](#)
- [of the Jews](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the city of Thessalonica](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [a...meeting place](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> Now passing through Amhipolis and Apollonia, they came to [Thessalonica](#), where [a synagogue of the Jews](#) was.

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> Paul, Silas, and Timothy traveled through the cities of Amhipolis and Apollonia. Then they came to [the city of Thessalonica](#). There was a [Jewish meeting place](#) there.

**Acts 17:2**

**according to...the custom (ULT)**  
**as he usually did...as he usually did (UST)**

Paul usually went to the synagogue on the Sabbath when Jews would be present. Alternate translation: “as his habit was” or “as his common practice was”

**on three Sabbaths (ULT)**  
**On the Sabbath day...For three weeks...on each Sabbath day (UST)**

Alternate translation: “on each Sabbath day for three weeks”

**he was reasoning with them from the Scriptures (ULT)**  
**He proved to the people from the Scriptures {that Jesus was the Messiah (UST)}**

Paul explained what the **Scriptures** means in order to prove to the Jews that Jesus is the Messiah. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he was reasoning with them (ULT)**  
**He proved to the people...that Jesus was...Messiah (UST)**

Alternate translation: “debated with them” or “discussed with them”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of Paul](#)
- [Sabbaths](#)
- [Scriptures](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the Sabbath day...on each Sabbath day](#)
- [Paul...he](#)
- [Scriptures](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> And according to the custom of Paul, he went to them, and on three Sabbaths he was reasoning with them from the Scriptures,

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> On the Sabbath day, Paul went to the meeting place as he usually did. For three weeks he went there on each Sabbath day. He proved to the people from the Scriptures {that Jesus was the Messiah}.



## Acts 17:3

### fully opening them (ULT) Paul showed very clearly that in the Scriptures the prophets wrote (UST)

This could mean: (1) to explain the scriptures in a way that people can understand is spoken of as if Paul were opening something so people can see what is inside of it, or (2) Paul was literally opening a book or scroll and reading from it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### it was necessary for (ULT) would have to (UST)

Alternate translation: "it was part of God's plan for"

### to rise (ULT) become alive again (UST)

Alternate translation: "to come back to life"

### from the dead (ULT) become alive again (UST)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all **dead** people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [to suffer](#)
- [to rise](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [proclaim](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [die](#)
- [become alive again](#)
- [become alive again](#)
- [am telling...about](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> fully opening them and demonstrating that it was necessary for the [Christ to suffer](#) and [to rise from the dead](#), and {saying}, "This [Jesus](#), whom I [proclaim](#) to you, is the [Christ](#)."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Paul showed very clearly that in the Scriptures the prophets wrote that the [Messiah](#) would have to [die](#) but then [become alive again](#). He said, "I [am telling you about Jesus](#). This man is the [Messiah](#)."

**Acts 17:4**

**some from them were persuaded (ULT)**  
**Some of the Jews in the synagogue believed**  
**what Paul said about Jesus...also believed the**  
**message about Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "some of the Jews believed" or "some of the Jews understood" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**were associated with Paul (ULT)**  
**They began to meet with Paul...They too**  
**began to meet with Paul (UST)**

Alternate translation: "became associated with Paul"

**of...worshiping...Greeks (ULT)**  
**non-Jewish people...who worshiped God (UST)**

This refers to **Greeks** who worship God but have not converted to Judaism through circumcision.

**of...women...not a few...the leading (ULT)**  
**women...many influential (UST)**

Here, **not a few** is an understatement to emphasize that many **leading women** joined them. Alternate translation: "many leading women" (See: [Litotes](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- Silas
- worshiping
- of...Greeks

**Translation Words - UST**

- with Paul...with Paul
- Silas...Silas
- non-Jewish people
- who worshiped God

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> And some from them were persuaded and were associated with [Paul](#) and [Silas](#), both a large number of [worshiping Greeks](#) and not a few of the leading women.

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> Some of the Jews in the synagogue believed what Paul said about Jesus. They began to meet [with Paul](#) and [Silas](#). Many [non-Jewish people who worshiped God](#) and many influential women also believed the message about Jesus. They too began to meet [with Paul](#) and [Silas](#).



## **Acts 17:5**

**they agitated the city...they sought (ULT)  
and cause a great disturbance in the city...  
They wanted (UST)**

Here the word **they** refers to the unbelieving Jews and wicked men from the marketplace.

**having become jealous (ULT)  
became jealous {because so many people  
were believing what Paul taught (UST)**

The feeling of jealousy is spoken of as if jealousy were actually moving the person. Alternate translation: "feeling very jealous" or "feeling very angry" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**having become jealous (ULT)  
became jealous {because so many people  
were believing what Paul taught (UST)**

It can be stated explicitly that these Jews were **jealous** because some of the Jews and Greeks believed Paul's message. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**having brought certain wicked men from the marketplace (ULT)  
they went to the open area of the city and found some bad men to help them  
(UST)**

Here, **having taken** does not mean the Jews took these people by force. It means the Jews persuaded these wicked men to help them.

**certain wicked men (ULT)  
some bad men (UST)**

The word **men** here refers specifically to males. Alternate translation: "some evil men"

**from the marketplace (ULT)  
the open area of the city (UST)**

The **marketplace** was a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services take place. Alternate translation: "from the public square"

**they agitated the city (ULT)  
and cause a great disturbance in the city (UST)**

Here, **the city** stands for the people in the city. Alternate translation: "they caused the people of the city to be in an uproar" or "they caused the people of the city to riot" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> But the **Jews**, **having become jealous**, and having brought certain **wicked** men from the marketplace, and having gathered a crowd, they agitated the city. And attacking the **house** of Jason, **they sought** to lead them out to the people.

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> But **some leaders of the Jews became jealous {because so many people were believing what Paul taught}**. So they went to the open area of the city and found some **bad** men to help them. They used those men to gather a crowd and cause a great disturbance in the city. The crowd ran **to the house** of a man named Jason **where they thought Paul and Silas were staying**. **They wanted** to bring Paul and Silas outside to where the crowd of people was.

**attacking the house (ULT)****The crowd ran to the house...where they thought Paul and Silas were staying (UST)**

This phrase probably means the people were throwing rocks at the **house** and trying to break down the door of the house. Alternate translation: "having violently attacking the house"

**of Jason (ULT)****of a man named Jason (UST)**

**Jason** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**to lead them out (ULT)****to bring Paul and Silas outside (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to bring Paul and Silas"

**to the people (ULT)****to where the crowd of people was (UST)**

This could mean: (1) a governmental or legal group of citizens gathered to make a decision or (2) an unruly mob.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [having become jealous](#)
- [wicked](#)
- [house](#)
- [they sought](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [some leaders of the Jews](#)
- [became jealous {because so many people were believing what Paul taught](#)
- [bad](#)
- [to the house...where they thought Paul and Silas were staying](#)
- [They wanted](#)

**Acts 17:6**

**certain brothers (ULT)**  
**some of the other believers who were with him (UST)**

Here, **brothers** refers to believers. Alternate translation: "some other believers"

**to the city officials (ULT)**  
**to where the city rulers were (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in the presence of the city officials"

**The ones...they (ULT)**  
**These men...These men (UST)**

The Jewish leaders were using the pronouns **Those** and **they** to refer to Paul and Silas.

**having turned the world upside down (ULT)**  
**who have been disturbing the way that people live (UST)**

This phrase is another way of saying Paul and Silas were causing trouble everywhere they went. Alternate translation: "have caused trouble everywhere in the world" (See: [Idiom](#))

**having turned the world upside down (ULT)**  
**who have been disturbing the way that people live (UST)**

The Jewish leaders were exaggerating the influence Paul and Silas were having with their teaching. Alternate translation: "have caused trouble everywhere they have gone" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [brothers](#)
- [shouting](#)
- [world](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [other believers who were with him](#)
- [They told the rulers](#)
- [who have been disturbing the way that people live](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> But not having found them, they dragged Jason and certain [brothers](#) to the city officials, [shouting](#), "The ones having turned the [world](#) upside down, they are also present here,

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> They discovered that Paul and Silas were not at the house. However, they found Jason and dragged him and some of the [other believers who were with him](#) to where the city rulers were. [They told the rulers](#), "These men [who have been disturbing the way that people live](#) have now come here also,

**Acts 17:7**

**Jason and all these men have welcomed (ULT) and this man Jason has invited...to stay at his house. These other men whom we have brought to you are also friendly with (UST)**

This phrase signals that Jason and his companions were in agreement with the apostles' troubling message.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- have welcomed
- decrees
- of Caesar
- king
- Jesus

**Translation Words - UST**

- has invited...to stay at his house...are...friendly with
- Caesar
- our king
- whose name is Jesus
- king

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> whom Jason and all these men **have welcomed**. They are acting against the **decrees of Caesar**, saying there is another **king, Jesus.**"

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> and this man Jason **has invited** them **to stay at his house**. These other men whom we have brought to you are also **friendly with** them. They are all disloyal to **Caesar our king**. They say that another person, **whose name is Jesus**, is the real **king!**"



## Acts 17:8

**they agitated (ULT)**

**they became very upset (UST)**

Alternate translation: "were worried"

### Translation Words - ULT

- they agitated

### Translation Words - UST

- they became very upset

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And they agitated the crowd and the city officials hearing these things.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> When the crowd of people that had gathered and the city rulers heard that, they became very upset.

**Acts 17:9****And having received a bond from Jason...the rest (ULT)**

Jason and the others had to pay the money to the city officials as a promise of good behavior; that money might be returned if all went well or it might be used to repair the damages brought on by bad behavior.

**the rest (ULT)****the other believers (UST)**

The words **the rest of them** refers to other believers that the Jews brought before the officials.

**they released them (ULT)****Then the city rulers let Jason and the other believers go (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the officials let Jason and the other believers go”

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> And having received a bond from Jason and the rest, they released them.

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> The city rulers made Jason and the other believers pay a fine. {But they told them that they would give the money back to them if Paul and Silas did not cause any more trouble.} Then the city rulers let Jason and the other believers go.

## Acts 17:10

### General Information:

Paul and Silas travel on to the town of Berea.

**the...brothers (ULT)**

**the...believers (UST)**

The word **brothers** here refers to men and women believers.

Alternate translation: "the believers" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [sent away](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [Berea](#)
- [synagogue](#)
- [of...Jews](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers](#)
- [sent...out of Thessalonica](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [the town of Berea](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [meeting place](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But the [brothers](#) immediately [sent away](#) both [Paul](#) and [Silas](#) by night to [Berea](#), who, having arrived, went into the [synagogue](#) of the [Jews](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So that same night, the [believers](#) [sent Paul and Silas out of Thessalonica](#) to the [town of Berea](#). When Paul and Silas arrived there, they went to the [Jewish meeting place](#).



## **Acts 17:11**

**Now (ULT)****But (UST)**

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke tells background information about the people in Berea and how they were willing to listen to Paul and examine what he said. (See: [Background Information](#))

**these...were more noble than (ULT)**  
**the Jews who lived in Berea...were very willing to listen (UST)**

These **open-minded** people were willing to think more objectively about new ideas than other people. Alternate translation: "the Bereans were more willing to listen"

**received the word (ULT)**  
**listened...to the message about Jesus (UST)**

Here, **word** refers to a teaching. Alternate translation: "listened to the teaching" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**with all readiness (ULT)**  
**carefully (UST)**

These Bereans were prepared to examine earnestly Paul's teachings about the scripture.

**examining the Scriptures each day (ULT)**  
**Every day they read the Scriptures for themselves (UST)**

Alternate translation: "carefully reading and evaluating the scriptures every day"

**these things might be so (ULT)**  
**what Paul said about Jesus was true (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the things Paul said were true"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Thessalonica](#)
- [received](#)
- [word](#)
- [Scriptures](#)
- [examining](#)
- [day](#)

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> Now these were more noble than {those} in [Thessalonica](#), who [received](#) the [word](#) with all readiness, [examining](#) the [Scriptures](#) each [day](#), whether these things might be so.

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> Most of the Jews in [Thessalonica](#) had not been willing to listen to God's message. But the Jews who lived in Berea were very willing to listen. They [listened](#) carefully to the [message about Jesus](#). Every [day](#) they [read](#) the [Scriptures for themselves](#) to find out whether what Paul said about Jesus was true.

## Translation Words - UST

- Most of the Jews in Thessalonica had not been willing to listen to God's message
- listened...to
- message about Jesus
- Scriptures
- day
- they read...for themselves

**Acts 17:12****not a few men (ULT)  
many non-Jewish men (UST)**

Here, **not a few** is an understatement to emphasize that many men believed the message. Alternate translation: “many men” (See: [Litotes](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [believed](#)
- [Greek](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [believed in Jesus...believed in him](#)
- [non-Jewish](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> Then indeed many of them [believed](#), even influential [Greek](#) women and not a few men.

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> Because of Paul's teaching, many of the Jewish people [believed in Jesus](#), and also some of the important [non-Jewish](#) women and many non-Jewish men [believed in him](#).



**Acts 17:13**

**they came there also, exciting (ULT)  
So they went to Berea and said things...that  
made them very angry with Paul (UST)**

This speaks about their agitating people as though it were a person stirring a liquid and causing the things at the bottom of the liquid to rise to the surface. Alternate translation: "they came there and agitated" or "they went there and disturbed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**troubling the crowds (ULT)  
and said things...to the people there...that  
made them very angry with Paul (UST)**

Alternate translation: "worried the crowds" or "caused the people to become upset"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [Thessalonica](#)
- [learned](#)
- [word of God](#)
- [was...being proclaimed](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Berea](#)
- [troubling](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jews](#)
- [Thessalonica](#)
- [heard](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Berea](#)
- [was...preaching](#)
- [message from God about Jesus](#)
- [and said things...that made them very angry with Paul](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> But when the [Jews](#) from [Thessalonica](#) [learned](#) that the [word of God](#) was also [being proclaimed](#) by [Paul](#) at [Berea](#), they came there also, exciting and [troubling](#) the crowds.

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> But then the [Jews](#) in [Thessalonica](#) [heard](#) that [Paul](#) was in [Berea](#) [preaching](#) the [message from God about Jesus](#). So they went to Berea [and said things](#) to the people there [that made them very angry with Paul](#).

## Acts 17:14

### brothers (ULT) believers in Berea (UST)

The word **brothers** here refers to men and women believers.  
Alternate translation: "believers" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### to go as far as to the sea (ULT) to the seacoast to go to another city (UST)

From here Paul would probably sail to another city. Alternate translation: "to go all the way to the coast"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [sent...away](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [sea](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [Timothy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers in Berea](#)
- [took](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [seacoast](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [Timothy](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> So then the [brothers](#) immediately [sent Paul away](#) to go as far as to the [sea](#), but both [Silas](#) and [Timothy](#) stayed there.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> So right away some of the [believers in Berea](#) [took Paul](#) to the [seacoast](#) to go to another city. But [Silas](#) and [Timothy](#) stayed in Berea.

## Acts 17:15

### ones conducting Paul (ULT) Paul...other men arrived at the coast (UST)

Alternate translation: "who were accompanying Paul" or "who were going down with Paul"

### Athens (ULT) the city of Athens (UST)

**Athens** is down the coast from Barea which is in Macedonia. Athens was one of the most important cities in Greece. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### having received a command to Silas and Timothy (ULT) Then Paul said to the men who had come with him, "Tell Silas and Timothy (UST)

This can also be stated as a direct quotation as in the UST. Alternate translation: "after telling them to command Silas and Timothy so" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- having received
- a command
- Silas
- Timothy

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- Then Paul said to the men who had come with him
- Then Paul said to the men who had come with him
- Silas
- Timothy

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But the ones conducting Paul brought him as far as Athens, and having received a command to Silas and Timothy that they should come to him as quickly as possible, they departed.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> When Paul and the other men arrived at the coast, they got on a boat and went to the city of Athens. Then Paul said to the men who had come with him, "Tell Silas and Timothy to come to me here in Athens as soon as they can." Then those men left Athens and returned to Berea.

## Acts 17:16

### Now (ULT)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

### in...while Paul was waiting for them...Athens (ULT)

### In...Athens, Paul waited for Silas and Timothy to come (UST)

This is another part of the story of **Paul** and Silas' travels. Paul is now in **Athens** where he is waiting for Silas and Timothy to join him.

### his spirit was being provoked within him, seeing the city being full of idols (ULT)

### In the meantime, he walked around in the city. He became very distressed because there were many idols in the city (UST)

Here, **his spirit** stands for Paul himself. Alternate translation: "he was provoked because he saw that there were idols everywhere in the city" or "seeing the idols everywhere in the city, he was provoked" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### his spirit was being provoked within him (ULT)

### He became very distressed (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "he became upset" or "the city upset him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- spirit
- was being provoked

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- became very distressed
- became very distressed

### ULT

**16** Now while Paul was waiting for them in Athens, his spirit was being provoked within him, seeing the city being full of idols.

### UST

**16** In Athens, Paul waited for Silas and Timothy to come. In the meantime, he walked around in the city. He became very distressed because there were many idols in the city.

**Acts 17:17****he reasoned (ULT)  
and talked about Jesus...He...spoke...and had  
conversations (UST)**

This phrase means that there is interaction from the listeners rather than only his preaching. They are talking with him as well. Alternate translation: "he debated" or "he discussed"

**with the Jews...ones worshipping (ULT)  
with the Jews...with the Greeks who had  
accepted what Jews believe (UST)**

This refers to Gentiles (non-Jews) who give praise to God and follow him but do not obey all of the Jewish laws.

**in the...marketplace (ULT)  
Paul went to the...open area of the city (UST)**

The **marketplace** was a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services take place. Alternate translation: "in the public square"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [synagogue](#)
- [with the Jews](#)
- [ones worshipping](#)
- [day](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jewish meeting place...there](#)
- [with the Jews](#)
- [with the Greeks who had accepted what Jews believe](#)
- [day](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> So indeed he reasoned in the [synagogue with the Jews](#) and the [ones worshipping](#) and in the marketplace every [day](#) with the ones meeting him.

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> So Paul went to the [Jewish meeting place](#) and talked about Jesus [with the Jews there](#). He also spoke [with the Greeks who had accepted what Jews believe](#). He also went every [day](#) to the open area of the city and had conversations with the people he met there.



## **Acts 17:18**

**with him...He seems...he was proclaiming (ULT)**  
**Paul...him...he...He seems...Paul was telling them that (UST)**

Here the words **him**, **He**, and **he** refer to Paul.

**of the Epicurean and Stoic philosophers (ULT)**  
**teachers who liked to talk about what people believe. Some of them called themselves Epicureans, and others called themselves Stoics (UST)**

These people believed all things were formed by chance and that the gods were too busy being happy to be bothered with governing the universe. They rejected the resurrection and wanted only simple pleasures. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**of the...Stoic...philosophers (ULT)**  
**teachers who liked to talk about what people believe...others called themselves Stoics (UST)**

These **Stoic philosophers** believed freedom comes from resigning oneself to fate. They rejected a personal loving God and the resurrection. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**some were saying (ULT)**  
**some of them said to one another (UST)**

Alternate translation: "some of the Stoic philosophers said"

**What might this word-picker want to say (ULT)**  
**He really does not know what he is talking about (UST)**

The word **babbler** was used to refer to birds picking up seeds as food. It refers negatively to a person who only knows a little bit of information. The philosophers said Paul had bits of information which were not worth listening to. Alternate translation: "What is this uneducated person trying to say?" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**But others {said (ULT)**  
**But others said (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But other philosophers said"

## ULT

**18** But also some of the Epicurean and Stoic philosophers were disputing with him. And some were saying, "What might this word-picker want to say?" But others {said}, "He seems to be a proclaimer of foreign gods," because [he was proclaiming Jesus](#) and the [resurrection](#).

## UST

**18** Paul met some teachers who liked to talk about what people believe. Some of them called themselves Epicureans, and others called themselves Stoics. They told Paul what they believed, and they asked him what he believed. Then some of them said to one another, "He really does not know what he is talking about." But others said, "He seems to be teaching a philosophy about some gods that we have never heard of." They said that because [Paul was telling them that Jesus had died](#) and then [had become alive again](#){, and they thought that Resurrection was the name of a god}.



**He seems to be a proclaimer (ULT)**

**He seems to be teaching a philosophy about (UST)**

Alternate translation: "He seems to be teaching a philosophy"

**of foreign gods (ULT)**

**some gods that we have never heard of (UST)**

That is, **gods** that Greeks and Romans do not worship or know about.

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- he was proclaiming
- Jesus
- resurrection

### **Translation Words - UST**

- Paul was telling them that
- Jesus had died
- had become alive again

**Acts 17:19**

**And taking hold of him, they brought him to the Areopagus (ULT)**

**So they invited Paul to come with them to the place where the philosophers in the city met (UST)**

This does not mean they arrested Paul. The philosophers invited Paul to speak formally to their leaders.

**to the Areopagus (ULT)**

**to the place where the philosophers in the city met (UST)**

The **Areopagus** was the place where the leaders met. Alternate translation: "to the leaders that met on the Areopagus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the Areopagus...saying (ULT)**

**the place where the philosophers in the city met...They told Paul (UST)**

Here the leaders on the **Areopagus** are speaking. This can stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "the Areopagus. The leaders said to Paul"

**Areopagus (ULT)**

**place where the philosophers in the city met (UST)**

The **Areopagus** is a prominent rock outcropping or hill in Athens upon which the supreme court of Athens may have met. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to know](#)
- [teaching](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to know](#)
- [message](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> And taking hold of him, they brought him to the Areopagus, saying, "Are we able [to know](#) what this new [teaching](#) {is} that is being spoken by you?"

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> So they invited Paul to come with them to the place where the philosophers in the city met. They told Paul, "Please come with us, because we would like [to know](#) what this new [message](#) is that you are teaching people."

**Acts 17:20****For you are bringing some startling things into our ears (ULT)**

Paul's teachings about Jesus and the resurrection are spoken of as an object that a person can bring to another person. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**we wish (ULT)****We want (UST)**

Here the word **we** refers to the Epicurean and Stoic philosophers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> For you are bringing some startling things into our ears. Therefore, we wish [to know](#) what these things want to be."

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> You are teaching us some things that we do not understand. We want [to know](#) what they mean."

**For you are bringing some startling things into our ears (ULT)**

Here, **ears** refers to what they hear. Alternate translation: "For you are teaching some things that we have never heard before" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to know](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to know](#)

## Acts 17:21

### Now all the Athenians and the sojourning foreigners (ULT)

The word **all** is a generalization referring to many. Alternate translation: “And many of the Athenians and the strangers living there” or “And many of the Athenians and the strangers living there” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### the Athenians (ULT)

### The people of Athens (UST)

Here, **the Athenians** are people from Athens, a city near the coast below Macedonia (present day Greece). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> (Now all the Athenians and the sojourning foreigners **were devoting their leisure** to nothing other than either to say something or to hear something newer.)

### UST

<sup>21</sup> The people of Athens and the people from other regions who had come to live there **greatly enjoyed** talking about new ideas.

### were devoting their leisure to nothing other than either to say something or to hear (ULT)

### greatly enjoyed talking about...ideas (UST)

Here, **time** is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could spend. Alternate translation: “used their time doing nothing but either telling or listening to” or “were always doing nothing but telling or listening to” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### were devoting their leisure to nothing other than (ULT)

### greatly enjoyed (UST)

The phrase **spent their time in nothing** is an exaggeration. Alternate translation: “did not do much but” or “spent much of their time only” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### to tell something or to listen to something new

Alternate translation: “discussing new philosophical ideas” or “talking about what was new to them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were devoting their leisure](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [greatly enjoyed](#)

## Acts 17:22

**Men, Athenians, I see how you are more religious in everything (ULT)**

**People of Athens, I have seen many of the things you do and I can tell how religious you are (UST)**

Paul begins his speech to the philosophers on the Areopagus.

**in everything...more religious (ULT)**

**many of the things you do...religious...are (UST)**

Paul is referring to the Athenians' public display of honoring the gods through prayers, building altars, and offering sacrifices.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul...He

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And Paul, having been stood in the middle of the Areopagus, was saying, "Men, Athenians, I see how you are more religious in everything.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The philosophers asked Paul to stand in the middle of their group. He did, and then he said, "People of Athens, I have seen many of the things you do and I can tell how religious you are.

## Acts 17:23

### For passing through (ULT) I say that because, while I was walking along (UST)

Alternate translation: "Because as I was walked through" or "As I was walking along"

### To an Unknown God (ULT) GOD (UST)

This could mean: (1) "to a certain unknown god" or (2) "to a god not known." This was a specific writing or inscription on that altar.

### Translation Words - ULT

- objects of worship
- you worship
- an altar
- To an...God
- in ignorance
- announce

### Translation Words - UST

- things that
- you worship but you do not know
- an altar that had these words that someone
- GOD
- WE DO NOT KNOW
- tell...about that God whom

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For passing through and observing your **objects of worship**, I even found an **altar** on which had been inscribed, "To an Unknown **God**." What therefore **you worship in ignorance**, this I **announce** to you.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> I say that because, while I was walking along I saw the **things that** you worship, I even saw **an altar that had these words that someone** had carved on it: THIS HONORS A **GOD THAT WE DO NOT KNOW**. So now I will **tell** you **about that God whom you worship but you do not know**.

**Acts 17:24****the world (ULT)****the world (UST)**

In the most general sense, the **world** refers to the heavens and the earth and everything in them.

**he...being Lord (ULT)****He...He is the...rules over all beings (UST)**

Here, **he** is referring to the unknown god mentioned in [Acts 17:23](#) that Paul is explaining is the Lord God. Alternate translation: “because the one who is Lord”

**of heaven and earth (ULT)****in heaven and on...and (UST)**

The words **heaven** and **earth** are used together to mean all beings and things in heaven and earth. (See: [Merism](#))

**built with hands (ULT)****people have built (UST)**

Here, **hands** stands for people. Alternate translation: “built by the hands of people” or “that people built” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [world](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [of heaven](#)
- [temples](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [world](#)
- [rules over all beings](#)
- [in heaven](#)
- [temples](#)

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> The [God](#) who made the [world](#) and all that {is} in it, he, being [Lord of heaven](#) and earth, does not live in [temples](#) built with hands.

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> He is the [God](#) who made the [world](#) and everything in it. He [rules over all beings in heaven](#) and on earth, and he does not live in [temples](#) that people have built.

**Acts 17:25**

**Neither is he served by hands of men (ULT)**  
**He does not...to have...made for...by people (UST)**

Here, **served** has the sense of a doctor treating a patient to make the patient well again. Alternate translation: "Neither do men take care of him with their hands" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by hands of men (ULT)**  
**made...by people (UST)**

Here, **hands** stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: "by humans" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**himself giving (ULT)**  
**him...because he makes people...he gives them (UST)**

The word **himself** is added for emphasis. Alternate translation: "because he himself gives" (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [hands](#)
- [life](#)
- [breath](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [made](#)
- [live](#)
- [breath](#)

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> Neither is he served by [hands](#) of men, as though he needed anything, himself giving to all [life](#) and [breath](#) and all things.

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> He does not need to have anything [made](#) for him by people because he makes people [live](#) and [breath](#), and he gives them everything they need.



**Acts 17:26**

**he made...their} appointed...their (ULT)**  
**In the beginning, God created...He put each**  
**people group in its place for its...them God**  
**produced (UST)**

Here the word **he** refers to the one true God, the creator. Both occurrences of the word **their** refer to every nation of people living on the surface of the earth.

**one man (ULT)**  
**one couple, and (UST)**

This refers to Adam, the first person God created.

**the...having determined {their} appointed seasons and the boundaries...of...**  
**their...habitation (ULT)**  
**them God produced...the...He put each people group in its place for its time**  
**(UST)**

You can state this as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "And he determined when and where they would live"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- nation
- the face
- of...earth
- their} appointed
- seasons

**Translation Words - UST**

- people groups
- live everywhere on
- earth
- He put each people group in its place for its
- He put each people group in its place for its

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> And from one man he made every nation of men to live on all the face of the earth, having determined {their} appointed seasons and the boundaries of their habitation,

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> In the beginning, God created one couple, and from them God produced all the people groups that now live everywhere on the earth. He put each people group in its place for its time.

## Acts 17:27

### to seek God and perhaps they might feel around for him and find him

Here, **to seek God** represents desiring to know him, and **feel around for him and find him** represents praying and having a relationship with him. Alternate translation: “so that they should want to know God and perhaps pray to him and become one of his people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Yet he is not far from each one of us

Paul uses the negative **not far** to emphasize that God is close to man. Alternate translation: “Yet he is very near to everyone of us” (See: [Litotes](#))

### of us (ULT)

### of us (UST)

In using the word **us**, Paul includes himself, his audience, and every nation. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to seek](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He wanted people to realize that they need him](#)
- [him. God](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [to seek God](#) and perhaps they might feel around for him and find him. Yet he is not far from each one of us.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> [He wanted people to realize that they need him](#). Then maybe they would look for him and find [him](#). [God](#) wants us to look for him, although he is very close to each one of us.

## Acts 17:28

### General Information:

Here the words **him** and **his** refer to God ([Acts 17:24](#)). When Paul says **we** here, he includes himself as well as his hearers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### For in him (ULT)

### It is because of God (UST)

Alternate translation: "Because of him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we live](#)
- [as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that we live](#)
- [as one of](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> For in him [we live](#) and move and exist, [as](#) also a certain one of your own poets has said, 'For we also are {his} offspring.'

### UST

<sup>28</sup> It is because of God [that we live](#), move, and exist, [as one of](#) you has said, 'Because we are his children.'

**Acts 17:29****offspring...being...of God (ULT)  
Therefore...because we are God's children...  
that God is (UST)**

Because God created everyone, all people are spoken of as if they were God's literal children. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the divine being (ULT)  
made into something by man (UST)**

Here, **divine being** refers to God's nature or attributes. Alternate translation: "the true God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**images of the skill and imagination of man  
(ULT)  
made into something by man (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "which a man then uses his skill to make it into something that he has designed" or "images that people make by using their art and imagination" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of God](#)
- [divine being](#)
- [like](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [that God is](#)
- [like gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [made into something by man](#)
- [made into something by man](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> Therefore, being offspring of God, we ought not to consider the [divine being](#) to be [like gold](#), or [silver](#), or stone—images of the skill and imagination of man.

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> Therefore, because we are God's children, we should not think [that God is like gold](#), [silver](#), or stone, [made into something by man](#).

**Acts 17:30****Therefore (ULT)  
the (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Because what I have just said is true"

**the...God, having overlooked...times of  
ignorance (ULT)  
the...During...times when people did not know  
what God wanted them to do, he did not  
punish them for what (UST)**

Alternate translation: "God, having decided not to punish people during the times of ignorance"

**times of ignorance (ULT)  
During...times when people did not know what (UST)**

This refers to the time before God fully revealed himself through Jesus Christ and before people truly knew how to obey God.

**all men (ULT)  
all people...their (UST)**

Here, **all men** refers to all people whether male or female. Alternate translation: "all people" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- God
- times
- commands
- to repent

**Translation Words - UST**

- During...times when people did
- God wanted them to do, he did
- God commands
- to turn away from...evil deeds

**ULT**

<sup>30</sup> Therefore God, having overlooked the times of ignorance, now commands all men everywhere to repent,

**UST**

<sup>30</sup> During the times when people did not know what God wanted them to do, he did not punish them for what they did. But now God commands all people everywhere to turn away from their evil deeds.

## Acts 17:31

### in which he is about to judge the world in righteousness by the man whom he has appointed

Alternate translation: "when the man he has chosen will judge the world in righteousness"

### he is about to judge the world (ULT) he has chosen he is going to judge all of us... the (UST)

Here, **world** refers to the people. Alternate translation: "he will judge all people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### He has provided signs (ULT) making sure we understand this by (UST)

Alternate translation: "God has demonstrated his choice of this man"

### from the dead (ULT) from the dead (UST)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all **dead** people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

## Translation Words - ULT

- a day
- to judge
- world
- righteousness
- he has appointed
- signs
- having raised
- the dead

## Translation Words - UST

- day
- to judge
- all of us
- justly
- he has chosen
- making sure we understand this by
- raising
- the dead

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> because he has set a day in which he is about to judge the world in righteousness by the man whom he has appointed. He has provided signs to all, having raised him from the dead."

### UST

<sup>31</sup> He tells us that on a certain day that he has chosen he is going to judge all of us justly by the man he has chosen, making sure we understand this by raising this man from the dead."

## Acts 17:32

### We will hear (ULT) to come back (UST)

Here the word **We** refers to the men of Athens but not to Paul, so this is exclusive. Though some of them probably did want to hear Paul again, they may only have been being polite. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

This is the end of the part of the story about Paul in Athens. (See: [End of Story](#))

### Now (ULT) When the men heard Paul say that (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke shifts from Paul's teachings to the reaction of the people of Athens.

### when they heard of (ULT) When the men heard Paul say that (UST)

These are the people who were present at the Areopagus listening to Paul.

### some mocked him

These did not believe it was possible for someone to die and then return to life. Alternate translation: "some ridiculed Paul" or "some laughed at Paul"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the resurrection](#)
- [of the dead](#)
- [mocked him](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [man had become alive](#)
- [he had died](#)
- [of them laughed at him](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Now when they heard of [the resurrection of the dead](#), some [mocked him](#); but others said, "We will hear you again concerning this matter."

### UST

<sup>32</sup> When the men heard Paul say that a [man had become alive](#) again after [he had died](#), some [of them laughed at him](#). But others asked him to come back and tell them about it another day.

## Acts 17:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> So, Paul went out from their midst.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> After they said that, Paul walked away.



**Acts 17:34****Dionysius the Areopagite (ULT)**  
**Dionysius who was a member of the council (UST)**

**Dionysius** is a man's name. **Areopagite** implies that Dionysius was one of the judges at the council of Areopagus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Damaris (ULT)**  
**Damaris (UST)**

**Damaris** is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [believed](#)
- [named](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [believed the message about Jesus](#)
- [named](#)

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> But certain men who joined him [believed](#), among whom included Dionysius the Areopagite, and a woman [named](#) Damaris, and others with them.

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> However, some of the people went with Paul and [believed the message about Jesus](#). Among those who believed in Jesus was a man named Dionysius who was a member of the council. Also, there were a woman [named](#) Damaris and some other people with them who believed.

## Acts 18

### Acts 18 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The baptism of John

Some Jews who lived far away from Jerusalem and Judea had heard of John the Baptist and followed his teachings. They had not yet heard about Jesus. One of these Jews was Apollos. He followed John the Baptist, but he did not know that the Messiah had come. John had baptized people to show that they were sorry for their sins, but this baptism was different from Christian baptism. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [Christ](#), [Messiah](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

**Acts 18:1****Connecting Statement:**

This is another part of the story of Paul's travels as he goes to Corinth.

**After these things (ULT)****After that (UST)**

Alternate translation: "After these events took place in Athens"

**having departed (ULT)****Paul left (UST)**

Alternate translation: "when Paul had departed"

**Athens (ULT)****Athens and (UST)**

**Athens** was one of the most important cities in Greece. See how you translated this in [Acts 17:15](#).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Corinth](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Corinth](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> After these things, having departed from Athens, he went to [Corinth](#).

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> After that, Paul left the city of Athens and went to the city of [Corinth](#).



## **Acts 18:2**

**And when he found (ULT)**  
**There he met (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Paul happened to find by chance or (2) Paul intentionally found.

**a certain Jew named Aquila (ULT)**  
**a Jew whose name was Aquila (UST)**

Here the phrase **a certain** indicates Luke is introducing **Aquila** as a new person in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**a certain Jew named Aquila, a native of Pontus, who had recently come from Italy, and Priscilla, his wife, because Claudius had ordered all the Jews to depart from Rome (ULT)**

**a Jew whose name was Aquila, who was from the region of Pontus. Aquila and his wife Priscilla had come a short time previously from the city of Rome, in Italy. They left Rome because Claudius, the Roman emperor, had ordered that all the Jews must leave Rome (UST)**

Verses 2 and 3 give background information about **Aquila** and **Priscilla**. (See: [Background Information](#))

**a native of Pontus (ULT)**  
**who was from the region of Pontus (UST)**

**Pontus** was a province on the southern coast of the Black Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**who had recently come (ULT)**  
**had come a short time previously (UST)**

This probably happened sometime in the past year.

**Italy...Rome (ULT)**  
**Rome, in Italy...Rome (UST)**

**Italy** is the name of land. **Rome** is the capital city of Italy. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Claudius had ordered (ULT)**  
**Claudius, the Roman emperor, had ordered that (UST)**

**Claudius** was the current Roman emperor. See how you translated this in [Acts 11:28](#).

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> And when he found a certain Jew named Aquila, a native of Pontus, who had recently come from Italy, and Priscilla, his wife, because Claudius had ordered all the Jews to depart from Rome, he approached them,

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> There he met a Jew whose name was Aquila, who was from the region of Pontus. Aquila and his wife Priscilla had come a short time previously from the city of Rome, in Italy. They left Rome because Claudius, the Roman emperor, had ordered that all the Jews must leave Rome. Paul went to see Priscilla and Aquila.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jew
- Jews
- named
- Aquila
- of Pontus
- Priscilla
- Rome

## Translation Words - UST

- a Jew
- all the Jews must leave
- whose name was
- Aquila
- who was from the region of Pontus
- Priscilla
- Rome

## Acts 18:3

### he was of the same trade (ULT) made tents...Paul also (UST)

Alternate translation: "he did the same kind of work that they did"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- worked
- tentmakers

#### Translation Words - UST

- made tents
- they worked together

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and because he was of the same trade, he stayed with them and worked, for they were tentmakers by trade.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Aquila and Priscilla made tents to earn money. Paul also made tents, so he stayed with them, and they worked together.



## Acts 18:4

### And he reasoned (ULT) he spoke (UST)

This means that rather than just preaching, Paul talked and interacted with the people. Alternate translation: "And Paul debated" or "And Paul discussed"

### persuading both Jews and Greeks (ULT) where...to both Jews and non-Jews. He taught them about Jesus (UST)

This could mean: (1) "he caused both Jews and Greeks to believe" or (2) "he kept trying to persuade the Jews and the Greeks."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [Greeks](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Sabbath, Paul went](#)
- [Jewish meeting place](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [non-Jews. He taught them about Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And he reasoned in the [synagogue](#) every [Sabbath](#), persuading both [Jews](#) and [Greeks](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Every [Sabbath](#), [Paul went](#) to the [Jewish meeting place](#), where he spoke to both [Jews](#) and [non-Jews](#). [He taught them about Jesus](#).

## Acts 18:5

### General Information:

Silas and Timothy rejoin Paul.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Silas
- Timothy
- Macedonia
- Paul
- to...word
- solemnly testifying
- to...Jews
- Jesus
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- Silas
- Timothy
- the region of Macedonia
- Paul
- by the Spirit
- to tell
- Jews that
- Jesus
- Messiah

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But when both Silas and Timothy came down from Macedonia, Paul devoted himself to the word, solemnly testifying to the Jews Jesus to be the Christ.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> When Silas and Timothy came from the region of Macedonia, Paul was strongly moved by the Spirit to tell the Jews that Jesus was the Messiah.

## Acts 18:6

### shaking out {his} garment (ULT) So he shook the dust from his clothes (UST)

This is a symbolic action to indicate that Paul will no longer try to teach the Jews there about Jesus. He is leaving them to God's judgment. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Your blood be upon your head (ULT) and...If God punishes you, it is your responsibility...on (UST)

Here, **blood** stands for the guilt of their actions. Paul tells the Jews they are solely responsible for the judgment they will face for their stubbornness if they refuse to repent. Alternate translation: "You alone bear the responsibility for your punishment for sin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Your blood be upon your head (ULT) and...If God punishes you, it is your responsibility...on (UST)

Here, **head** refers to the whole person. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [insulting him](#)
- [his} garment](#)
- [blood](#)
- [head](#)
- [clean](#)
- [Gentiles](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [say evil things about](#)
- [dust from his clothes](#)
- [If God punishes you](#)
- [it is...responsibility](#)
- [not mine](#)
- [are not Jewish](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But as they are opposing and [insulting him](#), shaking out [{his} garment](#), he said to them, "Your [blood](#) be upon your [head](#)! I am [clean](#)! From now on I will go to the [Gentiles](#)."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But the Jews began to turn against Paul and to [say evil things about](#) him. So he shook the [dust from his clothes](#) and he said to them, "[If God punishes you, it is your responsibility, not mine!](#) From now on I will talk to those who [are not Jewish!](#)"

**Acts 18:7****he went (ULT)  
and went (UST)**

Here the word **he** refers to Paul.

**Titius Justus (ULT)  
Titius...Justus, the owner of (UST)**

**Titius Justus** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**who worships God (ULT)  
who worshiped God (UST)**

A worshiper of God is a Gentile who gives praise to God and follows him but does not necessarily obey all of the Jewish laws.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the house](#)
- [house](#)
- [named](#)
- [who worships](#)
- [God](#)
- [synagogue](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jewish meeting place](#)
- [a house](#)
- [house](#)
- [Titius](#)
- [who worshiped](#)
- [God](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> And having departed from there, he went to [the house](#) of a certain man [named](#) Titius Justus [who worships God](#), whose [house](#) was next to the [synagogue](#).

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> So Paul left the [Jewish meeting place](#) and went into [a house](#) that was next to it, and preached there. [Titius](#) Justus, the owner of the [house](#), was a non-Jewish man [who worshiped God](#).

## Acts 18:8

### Crispus (ULT)

#### After that...whose name was Crispus (UST)

**Crispus** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### leader of the synagogue (ULT)

#### ruler of the Jewish meeting place (UST)

The **leader of the synagogue** was a layperson who sponsored and administered the synagogue, but not necessarily the teacher.

### all those in his house (ULT)

#### all...his family (UST)

Here, **house** refers to the people who lived together. Alternate translation: "the people who lived with him in his house" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### were being baptized (ULT)

#### were baptized (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "were receiving baptism" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [believed](#)
- [were believing](#)
- [in...Lord](#)
- [in...house](#)
- [of...Corinthians](#)
- [were being baptized](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [his family](#)
- [believed...also...in Jesus](#)
- [they...believed](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [in Corinth](#)
- [were baptized](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But Crispus, the leader of the synagogue, [believed](#) in the [Lord](#) with all those in his [house](#); and many of the [Corinthians](#), hearing about it, [were believing](#) and [were being baptized](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> After that, the ruler of the Jewish meeting place, whose name was Crispus, and all of [his family](#) [believed](#) in the [Lord](#). Many other people [in Corinth](#) heard about Crispus and his family, [they also believed in Jesus](#) and [were baptized](#).

## Acts 18:9

**Do not be afraid, but continue speaking and do not be silent (ULT)**

**Do not be afraid of...but keep talking about me (UST)**

The Lord is giving one command in two different ways to emphasize that Paul should certainly continue preaching. Alternate translation: "You must not be afraid and, instead, continue to speak and not become silent" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**continue speaking and do not be silent (ULT)**  
**keep talking about me (UST)**

The Lord gives the same command in two different ways to strongly command Paul to speak. Alternate translation: "you must certainly continue to speak" (See: [Doublet](#))

**do not be silent (ULT)**  
**keep talking about me (UST)**

It can be stated explicitly what the Lord wants Paul to speak. Alternate translation: "do not stop speaking about the gospel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a vision
- Lord
- to Paul
- Do...be afraid

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- had a vision
- Lord Jesus
- be afraid of

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And through a vision in the night, the Lord said to Paul, "Do not be afraid, but continue speaking and do not be silent."

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> One night Paul had a vision in which the Lord Jesus said to him, "Do not be afraid of the people who are against you, but keep talking about me,

## Acts 18:10

**I have many people in this city (ULT)  
there are many people in this city who belong  
to me (UST)**

Alternate translation: “there are many people in this city who have put their faith in me” or “many people in this city will put their faith in me”

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For I am with you, and no one will attack you to harm you, for I have many people in this city.”

### UST

<sup>10</sup> because I will help you and no one will be able to hurt you here. Keep telling them about me, because there are many people in this city who belong to me.”

**Acts 18:11**

**And so he stayed there for a year and six months, teaching the word of God among them (ULT)**

**So Paul stayed in Corinth for a year and a half, teaching the people the message from God about Jesus (UST)**

This is a concluding statement for this part of the story. (See: [End of Story](#))

**the word of God (ULT)**

**the message from God about Jesus (UST)**

Here, **word of God** is a synecdoche for the entire Scriptures. Alternate translation: “the Scriptures” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [for a year](#)
- [months](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [word of God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [a year](#)
- [and a half](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [message from God about Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> And so he stayed there [for a year](#) and six [months](#), [teaching](#) the [word of God](#) among them.

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> So Paul stayed in Corinth for [a year and a half](#), [teaching](#) the people the [message from God about Jesus](#).



**Acts 18:12****of Achaia (ULT)****of Achaia (UST)**

**Achaia** was the Roman province in which Corinth was located. Corinth was the largest city in southern Greece and the capital of the province. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Connecting Statement:**

The unbelieving Jews bring Paul to the judgment seat before Gallio.

**Gallio (ULT)****Gallio became the (UST)**

**Gallio** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the Jews (ULT)****the Jewish leaders (UST)**

Here, **the Jews** stands for the Jewish leaders that did not believe in Jesus. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**rose up together against (ULT)****got together...seized (UST)**

Alternate translation: "came together against" or "joined together to attack"

**brought him before the judgment seat (ULT)****They took him before the governor and accused him (UST)**

The Jews took Paul by force to bring Paul before the court. Here, **judgment seat** refers to the place where Gallio sat when he made legal decisions in court. Alternate translation: "took him so that the governor could judge him at the judgment seat" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [Paul](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jewish leaders](#)
- [Paul](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> But Gallio being governor of Achaia, the [Jews](#) rose up together against [Paul](#) and brought him before the judgment seat,

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> When Gallio became the Roman governor of the province of Achaia, the [Jewish leaders](#) got together and seized [Paul](#). They took him before the governor and accused him,

## Acts 18:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- to worship
- God
- law

### Translation Words - UST

- to worship
- God in ways
- our Jewish laws

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> saying, "This one persuades men to worship God contrary to the law."

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> saying, "This man is teaching people to worship God in ways that go against our Jewish laws."

## Acts 18:14

### Gallio (ULT)

### Gallio (UST)

**Gallio** was the Roman governor of the Province.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- Jews
- Jews
- crime
- evil
- I would have endured

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- Jews
- Jews
- had broken
- our Roman laws
- I would have listened to

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But when Paul was about to open {his} mouth, Gallio said to the Jews, "O Jews, if it were some crime or evil wrongdoing, according to reason I would have endured you.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> When Paul was about to speak, Gallio said to the Jews, "If this man had broken our Roman laws, I would have listened to what you Jews want to tell me.

**Acts 18:15****your law (ULT)****your own Jewish laws (UST)**

Here, **law** refers to the law of Moses and as well as the Jewish customs of Paul's time.

**I do not want to be a judge of these matters (ULT)****yourselves must talk to him about this...I will not judge these things (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I refuse to make a judgment about these matters"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- names
- law
- a judge

**Translation Words - UST**

- names
- own Jewish laws
- yourselves must talk to him about this

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> But if these are questions about a word and **names** and your **law**, you will see to it yourselves. I do not want to be **a judge** of these matters."

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> However, you are talking about words and **names** and your **own Jewish laws**, so you **yourselves must talk to him about this**. I will not judge these things!"

## Acts 18:16

**he sent them away from the judgment seat  
(ULT)  
to take the Jewish leaders away from the  
court (UST)**

Here, **judgment seat** refers to the place where Gallio sits to make legal decisions in court. Alternate translation: "Gallio made them leave his presence in the court" or "Gallio made them leave the court" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And so he sent them away from the judgment seat.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> After Gallio had said that, he told some soldiers to take the Jewish leaders away from the court.

**Acts 18:17**

**they...having seized...all (ULT)**  
**Then the people grabbed...Then the people grabbed (UST)**

Here the word **they** probably refers to the Gentiles at the court. They reacted against the Jews who had brought Paul before the judgment seat ([Acts 18:12](#)).

**they...having seized...all (ULT)**  
**Then the people grabbed...Then the people grabbed (UST)**

This may be an exaggeration to emphasize the strong feelings the people had. Alternate translation: "many people seized" or "many of them grabbed" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**But they all, having seized Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue, were beating him in front of the judgment seat (ULT)**  
**Then the people grabbed the leader of the Jews, Sosthenes. They beat him right there in front of the judge's seat (UST)**

This could mean: (1) the Gentiles beat Sosthenes in the court in front of the judgment seat because he was the Jewish leader or (2) it is possible that Sosthenes was a believer in Christ, so the Jews beat him in front of the court.

**Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue (ULT)**  
**the leader of the Jews, Sosthenes (UST)**

**Sosthenes** was the Jewish ruler of the synagogue at Corinth. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**were beating him (ULT)**  
**They beat (UST)**

Alternate translation: "repeatedly hit him" or "repeatedly punched him"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they...having seized](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Then the people grabbed](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> But [they](#) all, [having seized](#) Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue, were beating him in front of the judgment seat. But none of these things mattered to Gallio.

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> [Then the people grabbed](#) the leader of the Jews, Sosthenes. They beat him right there in front of the judge's seat. But Gallio did nothing about it.



## **Acts 18:18**



**He had cut the hair of...in Cenchrea...he had (ULT)**

**He got...hair cut off in Cenchrea...he had made (UST)**

Here the words **He** and **he** refer to Paul. **Cenchreae** was a seaport that was part of the greater Corinth city area. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This continues Paul's missionary journey as Paul, Priscilla, and Aquila leave Corinth. This seems to indicate that Silas and Timothy remain since it says "he" here and not "we."

**left the brothers (ULT)**

**with the believers in Corinth...he got on a ship...sailed (UST)**

The word **brothers** refers to men and women believers. Alternate translation: "left the fellow believers" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**and sailed to Syria, and Priscilla and Aquila were with him**

Paul got on a ship that sailed for **Syria**. **Priscilla and Aquila** went with him.

**He had cut the hair of {his} head in Cenchrea because he had a vow (ULT)**

**He got...hair cut off in Cenchrea because of a vow that he had made (UST)**

This is a symbolic action that indicates the completion of a **vow**. Alternate translation: "he had someone cut off the hair on his head in Cenchrea because he had completed a vow" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- days
- brothers
- Syria
- Priscilla
- Aquila
- {his} head
- a vow

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- believers in Corinth
- days
- Priscilla
- Aquila

### ULT

**18** And Paul, after having stayed there many days, left the brothers {and} sailed to Syria, and Priscilla and Aquila {were} with him. He had cut the hair of {his} head in Cenchrea because he had a vow.

### UST

**18** Paul stayed with the believers in Corinth for many more days. Then he got on a ship with Priscilla and Aquila and sailed for the province of Syria. He got his hair cut off in Cenchrea because of a vow that he had made.

- for the province of Syria
- He got...hair cut off in Cenchrea
- a vow that

## Acts 18:19

### he left them (ULT) and Priscilla and Aquila stayed (UST)

Alternate translation: "Paul left Priscilla and Aquilla"

### reasoned (ULT) and spoke (UST)

Alternate translation: "discussed with" or "debated with"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Ephesus
- synagogue
- with...Jews

### Translation Words - UST

- city of Ephesus
- Jewish meeting place
- Jews about Jesus

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And when they came to Ephesus, he left them there, but he himself, having gone into the synagogue, reasoned with the Jews.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> They arrived at the city of Ephesus, and Priscilla and Aquila stayed there. Paul himself entered the Jewish meeting place and spoke to the Jews about Jesus.

## Acts 18:20

### when they asked (ULT)

### asked him (UST)

Here the word “they” refers to the Jews in Ephesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a...time

### Translation Words - UST

- longer

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But when they asked him to stay for a longer time, he did not consent.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> They asked him to stay longer, but he did not agree to stay.

## Acts 18:21

**having left them (ULT)**  
**as he left (UST)**

Alternate translation: "when he had departed from them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Ephesus

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Ephesus

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But having left them and having said, "I will return again to you, [God](#) is willing" he set sail from [Ephesus](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> But as he left, he told them, "I will come back, if [God](#) wants me to." Then he got on a ship and sailed away from [Ephesus](#).

## Acts 18:22

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues his missionary journey.

### having landed at Caesarea (ULT) When the ship came to the city of Caesarea (UST)

The word **landed** is used to show that he arrived by ship. Alternate translation: "when he had arrived at Caesarea"

### having gone up (ULT) He went up to Jerusalem (UST)

He traveled to the city of Jerusalem. The phrase **gone up** is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than Caesarea.

### having greeted the church (ULT) greeted the believers there (UST)

Here, **church** refers to the believers in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "greeted the members of the church of Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he went down (ULT) Then he went (UST)

The phrase **went down** is used here because Antioch is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Caesarea](#)
- [church](#)
- [Antioch](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the city of Caesarea](#)
- [believers there](#)
- [the city of Antioch in the region of Syria](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And having landed at [Caesarea](#), having gone up and having greeted the [church](#), he went down to [Antioch](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> When the ship came to [the city of Caesarea](#), Paul got off. He went up to Jerusalem and greeted the [believers there](#). Then he went to [the city of Antioch in the region of Syria](#).

**Acts 18:23****And having spent some time there (ULT)  
Paul spent some time with the believers there (UST)**

This speaks about **time** as if it were a commodity that a person could spend. Alternate translation: "And after staying there for a while" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**he departed (ULT)  
he left Antioch (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Paul went away" or "Paul left"

**Phrygia (ULT)  
Phrygia (UST)**

**Phrygia** is a province in Asia which is now modern day Turkey. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:10](#).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [time](#)
- [of Galatia](#)
- [strengthening](#)
- [disciples](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [time with the believers there](#)
- [of Galatia](#)
- [He urged the believers to believe more and more in the message from God about Jesus](#)
- [He urged the believers to believe more and more in the message from God about Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> And having spent some [time](#) there, he departed, going through the region [of Galatia](#) and Phrygia in succession, [strengthening](#) all the [disciples](#).

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> Paul spent some [time with the believers there](#). Then he left Antioch and walked to many cities in the regions [of Galatia](#) and Phrygia. [He urged the believers to believe more and more in the message from God about Jesus](#).





## **Acts 18:24**

**Apollos (ULT)****Apollos (UST)**

**Apollos** is introduced to the story. Verses 24 and 25 give background information about him. (See: [Background Information](#))

**Now (ULT)****While Paul was going through Galatia and Phrygia, a Jewish (UST)**

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line.

**a...Jew...certain...named Apollos (ULT)****While Paul was going through Galatia and Phrygia, a Jewish...While Paul was going through Galatia and Phrygia, a Jewish...named Apollos (UST)**

The phrase **a certain** indicates that Luke is introducing **Apollos** as a new person in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**an Alexandrian by birth (ULT)****man...from the city...Alexandria (UST)**

Alexandria was a city in Egypt on the north coast of Africa. Alternate translation: "a man who was born in the city of Alexandria" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**an eloquent man (ULT)****man...and spoke (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a good speaker"

**being mighty in the Scriptures (ULT)**

He understood the Old Testament writings well. Alternate translation: "he knew the scriptures thoroughly"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [a...Jew](#)
- [named](#)
- [Apollos](#)
- [Ephesus](#)
- [mighty](#)
- [Scriptures](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [While Paul was going through Galatia and Phrygia, a Jewish](#)
- [named](#)

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> Now a certain [Jew named Apollos](#), an Alexandrian by birth, an eloquent man, came down to [Ephesus](#), being [mighty](#) in the [Scriptures](#).

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> [While Paul was going through Galatia and Phrygia, a Jewish man named Apollos](#) came to [Ephesus](#). [He was](#) from the city of Alexandria and spoke [very well about](#) the Scriptures.

- Apollos
- Ephesus. He was
- very well about
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

**Acts 18:25**

**He had been instructed in the way of the Lord (ULT)**

**Other believers had taught Apollos how the Lord Jesus wanted people to live...he...those things...However, he was not teaching everything (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Other believers had taught Apollos how the Lord Jesus wanted people to live" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**and being fervent in spirit (ULT)  
and...enthusiastically taught...to the people (UST)**

Here, **spirit** refers to the entire person of Apollos. Alternate translation: "and being very enthusiastic" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the baptism of John (ULT)  
the baptism of John the Baptizer (UST)**

This is comparing John's **baptism** which was with water to Jesus' baptism which is with the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "the baptism that John performed"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- instructed
- taught
- of...Lord
- in spirit
- Jesus
- knowing
- baptism
- of John

**Translation Words - UST**

- Other believers had taught Apollos how the Lord Jesus wanted people
- not teaching everything
- enthusiastically taught...to the people
- enthusiastically taught...to the people
- Jesus
- because he only knew about
- baptism
- of John the Baptizer

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> He had been [instructed](#) in the way of the [Lord](#), and being fervent [in spirit](#), he spoke and [taught](#) accurately the things concerning [Jesus](#), [knowing](#) only the [baptism of John](#).

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> [Other believers had taught Apollos how the Lord Jesus wanted people to live](#), and he [enthusiastically taught](#) those things [to the people](#). However, he was [not teaching everything](#) about [Jesus](#), because he only knew about the [baptism of John the Baptizer](#).

## Acts 18:26

### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells what happens in Ephesus with **Priscilla and Aquila**.

### the way of God (ULT) about the things...they taught him more (UST)

How God wants people to live is spoken of as if it were a road that a person travels. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### more accurately (ULT) they taught him more (UST)

Alternate translation: "more correctly" or "more fully"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to speak boldly
- synagogue
- Priscilla
- Aquila
- of God

### Translation Words - UST

- went to...he told the people there
- Jewish meeting place
- about the things
- Priscilla
- Aquila

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> And he began to speak boldly in the synagogue, but hearing him, Priscilla and Aquila took him aside and explained to him the way of God more accurately.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Apollos went to the Jewish meeting place, and he told the people there about the things that he had learned. When Priscilla and Aquila heard what he taught, they asked him to come to their home where they taught him more about Jesus.



## **Acts 18:27**

**he...encouraged him...him...he...he greatly helped (ULT)**  
**that he...told him that it would be good...for him to do that...those...he helped...whom (UST)**

Here the he words **he** and **him** refer to Apollos ([Acts 18:24](#)).

**to pass over into Achaia (ULT)**  
**would like to go to the region of Achaia (UST)**

The phrase **pass over** is used here because Apollos had to cross the Aegean Sea to get to Achaia from Ephesus. Alternate translation: "to go to the region of Achaia"

**Achaia (ULT)**  
**the region of Achaia (UST)**

**Achaia** was a Roman Province in the southern section of Greece. See how you translated this in [Acts 18:12](#).

**the brothers (ULT)**  
**the believers in Ephesus (UST)**

The word **brothers** here refers to both men and women believers. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**the brothers (ULT)**  
**the believers in Ephesus (UST)**

You can make explicit that **the brothers** are believers in Ephesus. Alternate translation: "fellow believers in Ephesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**and} wrote to the disciples (ULT)**  
**So they wrote a letter to the believers in Achaia saying that they should (UST)**

Alternate translation: "and wrote a letter to the Christians in Achaia"

**the...who had believed by grace (ULT)**  
**to the...God had kindly enabled to believe in Jesus (UST)**

Alternate translation: "those who had believed in salvation by grace" or "those who by God's grace believed in Jesus"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [encouraged him](#)

## ULT

<sup>27</sup> And when he desired to pass over into Achaia, the [brothers encouraged him](#) {and} wrote to the [disciples](#) to welcome him. When he arrived, he greatly helped those [who had believed by grace](#).

## UST

<sup>27</sup> When Apollos decided that he would like to go to the region of Achaia, the [believers in Ephesus told him that it would be good](#) for him to do that. So they wrote a letter to the [believers in Achaia saying that they should](#) welcome Apollos. After he got there, he helped those whom [God had kindly enabled to believe in Jesus](#).



- to...disciples
- who had believed
- grace

## Translation Words - UST

- believers in Ephesus
- told him that it would be good
- believers in Achaia saying that they should
- God had kindly enabled
- to believe in Jesus

**Acts 18:28**

**powerfully...he was...refuting the Jews publicly (ULT)**

**Apollos was talking very powerfully...with the leaders of the Jews...he was able to show them that (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in public debate Apollos powerfully proved that the Jews were wrong"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jews
- Scriptures
- Jesus
- Christ

**Translation Words - UST**

- leaders of the Jews
- while many other people listened. By reading
- Jesus
- Messiah

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> For he was powerfully refuting the Jews publicly, showing by the Scriptures that Jesus is the Christ.

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> Apollos was talking very powerfully with the leaders of the Jews while many other people listened. By reading from the Scriptures, he was able to show them that Jesus was the Messiah.

## **Acts 19**

### **Acts 19 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Baptism**

John baptized people to show that they were sorry for their sins. Jesus' followers baptized people who wanted to follow Jesus.

#### **Temple of Diana**

The temple of Diana was an important place in the city of Ephesus. Many people came to Ephesus to see this temple, and they bought statues of the goddess Diana while they were there. The people who sold statues of Diana were afraid that if people did not believe Diana was a real goddess, they would stop giving the sellers money for statues.

## Acts 19:1

### And it happened that (ULT) While (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

#### Connecting Statement:

Paul travels to Ephesus.

### Paul passed through the upper parts to come down to Ephesus (ULT) Paul left Phrygia and Galatia and went through Asia...he came back to Ephesus (UST)

The **upper parts** was an area of Asia which today is part of modern-day Turkey to the north of **Ephesus**. Paul must have traveled by land around the top of the Aegean sea in order to come to Ephesus (also in Turkey today) which is directly east of Corinth by sea.

### passed through (ULT) went through Asia...he came back (UST)

Alternate translation: "traveled through"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Apollos
- Corinth
- Paul
- Ephesus
- disciples

#### Translation Words - UST

- Apollos
- Corinth
- Paul left Phrygia and Galatia and
- Ephesus
- who said that they were believers

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And it happened that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul passed through the upper parts to come down to Ephesus, and to find certain disciples.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> While Apollos was at Corinth, Paul left Phrygia and Galatia and went through Asia, and he came back to Ephesus. He met some people who said that they were believers.

**Acts 19:2****Did you receive the Holy Spirit (ULT)  
them...Did you receive the Holy Spirit (UST)**

This means to have the Holy Spirit come upon them.

**Did...the Holy Spirit...we have not even  
heard...there is (ULT)  
them...the Holy Spirit...We have not even  
heard that there is (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we have never heard about the Holy Spirit"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- you receive
- the Holy Spirit
- a Holy Spirit
- when you believed

**Translation Words - UST**

- Did you receive
- the Holy Spirit
- a Holy Spirit
- when you believed God's message

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> And he said to them, "Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed?" But they said to him, "No, we have not even heard if there is a Holy Spirit."

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> He asked them, "Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed God's message?" They answered, "No, we did not. We have not even heard that there is a Holy Spirit."

## Acts 19:3

### Into what then were you baptized (ULT) So...you were baptized...what did you know (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "What kind of baptism did you receive?" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Into the baptism of John (ULT) John the Baptizer taught (UST)

You can translate this as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "We received the kind of baptism about which John taught" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- were you baptized
- baptism
- of John

### Translation Words - UST

- you were baptized
- Baptizer taught
- John

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And he said, "Into what then were you baptized?" And they said, "Into the baptism of John."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> So Paul asked, "So when you were baptized, what did you know?" They replied, "We believed what John the Baptizer taught."

## Acts 19:4

### a baptism of repentance (ULT) baptism...were turning...God and away from their evil thoughts and deeds (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **repentance**, you could express the same idea with the verb "repent." Alternate translation: "the baptism that people requested when they wanted to repent" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### the one who is coming (ULT) someone else, one who is coming (UST)

Here, **the one** refers to Jesus.

### the one who is coming after him (ULT) someone else, one who is coming after him (UST)

This means to come after John the Baptist in time and not following after him physically.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- John
- baptized
- a baptism
- of repentance
- people
- they should believe
- in Jesus
- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- John's
- was a sign that
- baptism
- people
- were turning...God and away from their evil thoughts and deeds
- to believe
- to...Jesus
- Jesus

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But Paul replied, "John baptized a baptism of repentance, telling the people that they should believe in the one who is coming after him, that is, in Jesus."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Paul said, "John's baptism was a sign that people were turning to God and away from their evil thoughts and deeds. He also told them to believe in someone else, one who is coming after him, and that person is Jesus."

**Acts 19:5****they were baptized (ULT)****they were baptized (UST)**

Here, **they** refers to the disciples in Ephesus who were talking with Paul ([Acts 19:1](#)),

**they were baptized (ULT)****they were baptized (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “they received baptism” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in the name of the Lord Jesus (ULT)****in the name of the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **name** refers to Jesus’ power and authority. Alternate translation: “as believers in the Lord Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they were baptized](#)
- [name](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [of...Lord Jesus](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [they were baptized](#)
- [name](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> And having heard this, [they were baptized](#) in the [name](#) of the [Lord Jesus](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> So when those men heard that, [they were baptized](#) in the [name](#) of the [Lord Jesus](#).



## Acts 19:6

**when Paul had laid {his} hands on them (ULT)  
After that, Paul placed his hands on their  
heads one by one (UST)**

He probably placed **his hands** on their shoulders or heads. Alternate translation: "when Paul had placed his hands on their heads as he prayed"

**And...and they began to speak in tongues...  
prophecy (ULT)  
and...The Holy Spirit gave them power to  
speak in languages that they had not  
learned...they also spoke messages that the  
Holy Spirit told them (UST)**

Unlike in [Acts 2:3-4](#), there are no details of who understood their messages.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- his} hands
- Holy Spirit
- began to speak in tongues
- prophesy

### Translation Words - UST

- After that, Paul
- his hands on
- Holy Spirit
- The Holy Spirit gave them power to speak in languages that they had not learned
- messages that the Holy Spirit told them

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And when Paul had laid {his} hands on them, the Holy Spirit came on them and they began to speak in tongues and prophesy.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> After that, Paul placed his hands on their heads one by one, and the power of the Holy Spirit came upon each of them. The Holy Spirit gave them power to speak in languages that they had not learned, and they also spoke messages that the Holy Spirit told them.

## Acts 19:7

**And they were about 12 men in all (ULT)  
There were about twelve men whom Paul  
baptized and who received the Holy Spirit  
(UST)**

This tells how many **men** were baptized. (See: [Background Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And they were about 12 men in all.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> There were about twelve men whom Paul baptized and who received the Holy Spirit.

## Acts 19:8

**having gone...into the synagogue, he was speaking boldly for three months (ULT)  
entered the Jewish meeting place in Ephesus on each Sabbath and taught...For three months after...entered the Jewish meeting place in Ephesus on each Sabbath and taught (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Paul regularly attended the synagogue meetings for three months and spoke there boldly"

**reasoning and persuading them (ULT)  
and persuaded people (UST)**

Alternate translation: "convincing people with convincing arguments and with clear teaching"

**about the kingdom of God (ULT)  
that, Paul...about Jesus and how God would show himself as king (UST)**

Here, **kingdom** stands for God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "about God's rule as king" or "about how God would show himself as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [he was speaking boldly](#)
- [months](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [months after](#)
- [that, Paul...God...would show himself as king](#)
- [entered the Jewish meeting place in Ephesus on each Sabbath and taught](#)
- [entered the Jewish meeting place in Ephesus on each Sabbath and taught](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And having gone into the [synagogue](#), [he was speaking boldly](#) for three [months](#), reasoning and persuading them about the [kingdom of God](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> For three [months after that](#), [Paul entered the Jewish meeting place in Ephesus on each Sabbath and taught](#) and persuaded people about Jesus and how [God would show himself as king](#).



## **Acts 19:9**

## some were hardened and being disobedient (ULT)

## some of the Jews would...believe...and did not want to to hear it any more (UST)

To stubbornly refuse to believe is spoken of as though the people were becoming **hardened** and unable to move. Alternate translation: "some Jews were stubborn and did not believe" or "some Jews stubbornly refused to accept and obey the message" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## speaking evil of the Way before the crowd (ULT)

## the message...They said many bad things about what Paul was teaching (UST)

What Christ wants people to believe is spoken of as though it were a road that a person travels. The phrase **the Way** seems to have been a title for Christianity at the time. Alternate translation: "speaking evil about Christianity to the crowd" or "speaking to the crowd evil things about those who follow Christ and who obey his teaching about God" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Acts 9:2](#))

## speaking evil (ULT)

## They said many bad things (UST)

Alternate translation: "speaking bad things about"

## in the lecture hall of Tyrannus (ULT)

## in the meeting place of Tyrannus (UST)

Alternate translation: "in the large room where Tyrannus had taught people"

## of Tyrannus (ULT)

## of Tyrannus (UST)

**Tyrannus** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [were hardened](#)
- [being disobedient](#)
- [speaking evil](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [day](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [of the Jews would...believe](#)
- [did not want to to hear it any more](#)

## ULT

<sup>9</sup> But when some [were hardened](#) and [being disobedient](#), [speaking evil](#) of the Way before the crowd, having departed from them, he took the [disciples](#) with him, reasoning with them each [day](#) in the lecture hall of Tyrannus.

## UST

<sup>9</sup> But some [of the Jews would not believe](#) the message and [did not want to to hear it any more](#). [They said many bad things](#) about what Paul was teaching. So Paul left them and took the [believers](#) with him [to meet](#) in the meeting place of Tyrannus.

- They said many bad things
- believers
- to meet

## Acts 19:10

**all those who lived in Asia heard the word of the Lord (ULT)**

**Paul taught people there...most of the...who lived in the region of Asia heard the message about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **all** is a generalization that means very many people throughout Asia heard the gospel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the word of the Lord (ULT)**

**the message about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **word** stands for a message. Alternate translation: "the message about the Lord" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [years](#)
- [in Asia](#)
- [word of the Lord](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [Greeks](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [years](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [non-Jews](#)
- [of Asia](#)
- [message about the Lord Jesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And this happened for two [years](#), so that all those who lived [in Asia](#) heard the [word of the Lord](#), both [Jews](#) and [Greeks](#).

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> For two [years](#) Paul taught people there. In this way, most of the [Jews](#) and [non-Jews](#) who lived in the region [of Asia](#) heard the [message about the Lord Jesus](#).



**Acts 19:11**

**And God was doing not ordinary miracles by the hands of Paul (ULT)**

**God also gave Paul the power to do miracles (UST)**

Here, **hands** stands for Paul's whole person. Alternate translation: "And God was causing Paul to do unusual miracles" or "And God was doing amazing miracles through Paul" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**not ordinary (ULT)**  
**gave...miracles (UST)**

Alternate translation: "unusual"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [miracles](#)
- [hands](#)
- [of Paul](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [the power](#)
- [to do](#)

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> And [God](#) was doing not ordinary [miracles](#) by the [hands of Paul](#),

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> [God](#) also gave [Paul the power to do miracles](#).



## **Acts 19:12**

**their} illnesses...them...came out of them**

**(ULT)**

**the sick people would become well...them...  
would leave (UST)**

Here the words **their** and **them** refer to those who were sick.

**even handkerchiefs and aprons from his body  
were taken to the sick and**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “when they took to sick people even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched Paul”

**even...handkerchiefs and aprons from his body (ULT)**

**and...could not come...pieces of cloth that Paul touched would be taken (UST)**

This could mean: (1) these were cloth items that Paul had touched or (2) these were cloth items that Paul had worn or used.

**handkerchiefs (ULT)**

**pieces of cloth (UST)**

The **handkerchiefs** were small pieces of cloth used to wipe one’s face.

**aprons (ULT)**

**pieces of cloth (UST)**

The **aprons** were clothing worn on the front of the body to protect the clothes of the wearers.

**the sick (ULT)**

**If those who were sick (UST)**

This refers to **sick** people. Alternate translation: “sick people” or “those who were sick” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**their} illnesses departed from them (ULT)**

**placed on the sick people...the sick people would become well...them (UST)**

Alternate translation: “those who were sick became healthy”

## Translation Words - ULT

- [evil spirits](#)
- [evil](#)

## ULT

<sup>12</sup> so that even handkerchiefs and aprons from his body were taken to the sick and {their} illnesses departed from them, and the [evil](#) spirits came out of them.

## UST

<sup>12</sup> If those who were sick could not come to Paul, pieces of cloth that Paul touched would be taken and placed on the sick people. As a result, the sick people would become well, and the [evil spirits](#) would leave them.

## Translation Words - UST

- evil...spirits
- evil



## **Acts 19:13**

**General Information:**

This is the beginning of another event that happened while Paul was in Ephesus. It is about Jewish exorcists.

**exorcists (ULT)**  
**and they commanded...evil spirits in those places to depart from people (UST)**

These **exorcists** were people who sent evil spirits away from people or places.

**the name of the Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**to come out by...power of the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **name** refers to Jesus' power and authority. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**by the Jesus whom Paul proclaims (ULT)**  
**the...the man whom Paul teaches about (UST)**

**Jesus** was a common name at the time, so these exorcists wanted people to know of whom they spoke.

**by the Jesus (ULT)**  
**the...the man (UST)**

This phrase stands for the power and authority of Jesus. Alternate translation: "by the authority of Jesus" or "by the power of Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jewish](#)
- [to call on](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [proclaims](#)
- [name](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [of...Lord Jesus](#)
- [by...Jesus](#)
- [evil...spirits](#)
- [evil](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jews](#)
- [and they commanded...evil spirits in those places to depart from people](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [teaches about](#)
- [evil spirits to come out of people](#)
- [evil...to come out of people](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> But some traveling [Jewish](#) exorcists also tried [to call on the name of the Lord Jesus](#) over those who had [evil spirits](#), saying, "I command you by the [Jesus](#) whom [Paul proclaims](#)."

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> There were also some [Jews](#) who walked from town to town, [and they commanded the evil spirits in those places to depart from people](#). Some of those Jews told the [evil spirits to come out of people](#) by saying "I command you [to come out by the power of the Lord Jesus, the man whom Paul teaches about!](#)"



- to come out by...power of the
- Lord
- Lord Jesus
- the man

## Acts 19:14

### of Sceva (ULT) of a man named Sceva (UST)

**Sceva** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [a Jewish](#)
- [chief priest](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [They were sons](#)
- [a Jew, who called himself](#)
- [a chief priest](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And seven certain [sons](#) of Sceva, a [Jewish chief priest](#), were doing this.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> There were seven men who were doing this. [They were sons](#) of a man named Sceva, [a Jew, who called himself a chief priest](#).

## Acts 19:15

### Jesus I know, and Paul I know

Alternate translation: "I know Jesus and Paul" or "I know Jesus, and I know Paul"

### but who are you (ULT) but no one has given you power to do anything to me (UST)

The spirit asked this question to emphasize that the exorcists had no authority over evil spirits. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "but I do not know you!" or "but you have no authority over me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- an...evil...spirit
- evil
- Jesus
- I know
- I know
- Paul

### Translation Words - UST

- evil spirit
- evil
- I know
- I know
- Jesus
- Paul

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But answering, an [evil spirit](#) said to them, "[Jesus I know](#), and [Paul I know](#); but who are you?"

### UST

<sup>15</sup> But one day as they were doing that, the [evil spirit](#) did not come out of that person. Instead, the evil spirit said to them, "[I know Jesus](#), and [I know Paul](#), but no one has given you power to do anything to me!"

## Acts 19:16

### the man in whom was the evil spirit, after leaping on them

This means that the **evil spirit** caused the **man** whom it was controlling to leap on the exorcists.

### them (ULT) of them (UST)

Here, **them** refers to the exorcists who send evil spirits from people or places. See how you translated this in [Acts 19:13](#).

### naked...they fled (ULT) He tore off their clothes...They became frightened and ran (UST)

The exorcists fled with their clothes ripped off them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil spirit
- evil
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- evil spirit
- evil
- house

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And the man in whom was the **evil** spirit, after leaping on them, overpowering them, prevailed over each of them so that they fled from that **house** naked and wounded.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> After saying that, suddenly the man who had the **evil** spirit jumped on the sons of Sceva. He knocked all of them down and hurt each of them. He tore off their clothes and wounded them. They became frightened and ran out of the **house**.

**Acts 19:17**

**the name of the Lord Jesus was magnified (ULT)**

**they honored the name of the Lord Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “they magnified the name of the Lord Jesus” or “they considered the name of the Lord Jesus to be great” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the name (ULT)**

**the name (UST)**

Here, **the name** stands for the power and authority of Jesus. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [known](#)
- [in Ephesus](#)
- [to...Jews](#)
- [Greeks](#)
- [fear](#)
- [name](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [of...Lord Jesus](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [in Ephesus](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [non-Jews](#)
- [what had happened](#)
- [became afraid](#)
- [name](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> And this became [known](#) to all those living [in Ephesus](#), both [Jews](#) and [Greeks](#). And [fear](#) fell upon them all, and the [name](#) of the [Lord Jesus](#) was magnified.

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> All the people who lived [in Ephesus](#), both [Jews](#) and [non-Jews](#), heard [what had happened](#). They [became afraid](#) because they saw that the man with the evil spirit was very strong. At the same time, they honored the [name](#) of the [Lord Jesus](#).

## Acts 19:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- who believed
- confessing
- declaring

### Translation Words - UST

- believers
- told about
- told about

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And many of those who believed were coming, confessing and declaring their deeds.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> At that time, while other believers were listening, many believers told about the evil things that they had been doing.

**Acts 19:19**

**having brought {their} books together (ULT)  
who were sorcerers took...scrolls that told  
how...to work magic (UST)**

The word **books** refers to scrolls on which magical incantations and formulas were written. Alternate translation: "having collected their books"

**before everyone (ULT)  
in a place where everyone could see them  
(UST)**

Alternate translation: "in front of everyone"

**their} books...value of them (ULT)  
who were sorcerers took...their...to work  
magic...scrolls cost (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the value of the books" or "the value of the scrolls"

**50,000 (ULT)  
fifty thousand (UST)**

Alternate translation: "fifty thousand" (See: [Numbers](#))

**pieces of silver (ULT)  
silver coins (UST)**

Each of the **pieces of silver** was the approximate daily wage for a common laborer. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [magical arts](#)
- [pieces of silver](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [who were sorcerers took...to work magic](#)
- [silver coins](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> And many of those who practiced the [magical arts](#), having brought {their} books together, burned them before everyone. And they counted the value of them, and they found it to be 50,000 [pieces of silver](#).

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> Some of the people [who were sorcerers took](#) their scrolls that told how [to work magic](#) and burned them in a place where everyone could see them. When people added up how much the scrolls cost, it came to fifty thousand [silver coins](#).

## Acts 19:20

This ends the story about the Jewish exorcists. (See: [End of Story](#))

**So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing according to power (ULT)  
In this way, many people heard the message about the Lord Jesus and believed in him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "So because of these powerful deeds, more and more people heard the message about the Lord Jesus" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [prevailing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [message](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [believed in him](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So the [word](#) of the [Lord](#) was spreading and [prevailing](#) according to power.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> In this way, many people heard the [message](#) about the [Lord Jesus](#) and [believed in him](#).





## **Acts 19:21**

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul talks about going Jerusalem but does not leave Ephesus yet.

**Now (ULT)****After Paul completed his work (UST)**

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

**this was completed...Paul (ULT)****After Paul completed his work...After Paul completed his work (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Paul had completed the work that God had for him to do in Ephesus, he"

**determined...in the Spirit (ULT)****After Paul completed his work...in Ephesus, the Spirit (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Paul decided with the help of the Holy Spirit or (2) Paul decided within his own spirit, which means he made up his mind.

**Achaia (ULT)****Achaia (UST)**

**Achaia** was the Roman province in which Corinth was located. It was the largest city in southern Greece and the capital of the province. See how you translated this in [Acts 18:12](#).

**and...I...it is necessary for...to see Rome (ULT)****but first he planned...see the believers in...and...I have been to Jerusalem...go to Rome (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I must also travel to Rome"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [was completed](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [Macedonia](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Rome](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [After Paul completed his work](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> Now as soon as this [was completed](#), [Paul](#) determined in the [Spirit](#) to pass through [Macedonia](#) and Achaia to travel to [Jerusalem](#), having said, "After I have been there, it is necessary for me also to see [Rome](#)."

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> [After Paul completed his work](#) in Ephesus, the [Spirit](#) led him to decide to go to [Jerusalem](#), but first he planned to go see the believers in the [regions of Macedonia](#) and Achaia. Paul said, "After I have been to Jerusalem, I will also [go to Rome](#)."

- After Paul completed his work
- Spirit
- Jerusalem
- regions of Macedonia
- go to Rome

**Acts 19:22****Erastus (ULT)****Erastus (UST)**

**Erastus** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**he himself stayed in Asia for a time (ULT)**  
**Paul stayed in the city of Ephesus, in the province of Asia (UST)**

It is made explicit in the next few verses that Paul remains in Ephesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he himself stayed (ULT)****Paul stayed in (UST)**

Here, **himself** is added for emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having sent](#)
- [Macedonia](#)
- [helping](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [for a time](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [He sent](#)
- [his helpers](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [Macedonia](#)
- [the city of Ephesus](#)
- [the province of Asia](#)

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> And [having sent](#) to [Macedonia](#) two of those [helping](#) him, [Timothy](#) and Erastus, he himself stayed in [Asia for a time](#).

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> [He sent](#) two of [his helpers](#), [Timothy](#) and Erastus, to [Macedonia](#). But Paul stayed in [the city of Ephesus](#), in [the province of Asia](#).

## Acts 19:23

### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells about a riot that broke out while Paul was in Ephesus.

**there was...no small disturbance (ULT)**  
**Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble...and...Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble...and (UST)**

Luke uses the negative **no small** to indicate that the riot was very large. See how you translated this in [Acts 12:18](#)  
 Alternate translation: "the people became very upset" (See: [Litotes](#))

**the Way (ULT)**  
**the teaching about him (UST)**

This was a term used to refer to Christianity. See how you translated this title in [Acts 9:1](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble...and](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But at about that [time](#), there was no small disturbance concerning the Way.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble](#) because of Jesus [and](#) the teaching about him.



## **Acts 19:24**



**Demetrius...a certain silversmith named...  
making silver shrines of Artemis (ULT)  
There was a man there...Demetrius...There  
was a man there...whose name was...  
Demetrius...He made statues of the goddess  
Artemis (who is also known...Diana) out of  
silver (UST)**

This verse introduces background information about **Demetrius**. Ephesus had a large temple dedicated to the goddess **Artemis**, sometimes translated as "Diana." She was a false goddess of fertility. (See: [Background Information](#))

**Demetrius (ULT)  
There was a man there...Demetrius (UST)**

**Demetrius** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Demetrius...a certain silversmith named (ULT)  
There was a man there...Demetrius...There was a man there...whose name  
was...Demetrius...He made...of...out of silver (UST)**

The use of the words **a certain** introduces a new person in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**a...silversmith (ULT)  
He made...of...out of silver (UST)**

A **silversmith** is a craftsman who works with silver metal to make statues and jewelry.

**brought in...not a little business (ULT)  
as...Demetrius made a lot of money for all the men who made and sold these  
idols...as...Demetrius made a lot of money for all the men who made and sold  
these idols (UST)**

Luke uses the negative **not a little** to say that he brought in much business. Alternate translation: "made a lot of money" (See: [Litotes](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [named](#)
- [silver](#)

## ULT

<sup>24</sup> For a certain silversmith [named](#) Demetrius, making [silver](#) shrines of Artemis, brought in not a little business for the craftsmen.

## UST

<sup>24</sup> There was a man there [whose name was](#) Demetrius. [He made](#) statues of the goddess Artemis (who is also known as Diana) [out of silver](#). Demetrius made a lot of money for all the men who made and sold these idols.

## Translation Words - UST

- whose name was
- He made...of...out of silver

## Acts 19:25

### the workmen of that occupation (ULT) Demetrius called together the workmen... made the idols (UST)

An **occupation** is a profession or job. Alternate translation: "others who did that kind of work"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- workmen
- you know

#### Translation Words - UST

- Demetrius called together the workmen...made the idols
- you know

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> And he, having gathered together the **workmen** of that occupation, said, "Men, **you know** that our prosperity is from this business.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> **Demetrius called together the workmen** who **made the idols**. He said to them, "Men, **you know** that we make a lot of money doing our work.

## Acts 19:26

### And you see...hear that (ULT) know that Paul...even (UST)

Alternate translation: "you have come to know and understand that"

### and} turned away a considerable crowd (ULT) no longer want to buy what we make (UST)

Paul's stopping people from worshiping idols is spoken of as though Paul were literally turning the people in a different direction.

Alternate translation: "and caused many people to stop worshiping the local gods" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### He is saying that the things that are being made with hands are not gods (ULT) the people...that the gods...we worship are not gods and that we should not worship them (UST)

Here the word **hands** can refer to the whole person. Alternate translation: "He is saying that the idols that people make are not real gods" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [at Ephesus](#)
- [of Asia](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [hands](#)
- [gods](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who live in Ephesus to no longer buy the statues that we make](#)
- [from many other towns in our province](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [we worship...and that we should not worship them](#)
- [gods](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> And you see and hear that, not only [at Ephesus](#), but in almost all [of Asia](#), this [Paul](#) has persuaded {and} turned away a considerable crowd. He is saying that the things that are being made with [hands](#) are not [gods](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> You know that Paul has taught many people [who live in Ephesus to no longer buy the statues that we make](#). Now even the people [from many other towns in our province](#) no longer want to buy what we make. [Paul](#) tells people that the gods that [we worship](#) are not [gods](#) and that we should not worship them.



## **Acts 19:27**

**is this trade in peril for us to come to disrepute (ULT)**  
**If people listen to him...they will stop...our business...that they should come any longer to (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “might the people no longer want to buy idols that we make” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the temple of the great goddess Artemis may be considered as nothing (ULT)**  
**the temple of Artemis...known as Diana) to worship her...is great (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the people may think there is no benefit in going to the temple to worship the great goddess Artemis” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**even...the...And...her...majesty...is about to be destroyed (ULT)**  
**of...also...People will no longer think that Artemis...even...her (UST)**

Artemis’s greatness only comes from what people think of her.

**she whom all Asia and the world worships (ULT)**  
**Yet all the province of Asia and...the whole world worship...her (UST)**

This was an exaggeration to show how popular the goddess Artemis was. Alternate translation: “whom many parts Asia and other parts of the world worship” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**she whom all Asia and the world worships (ULT)**  
**Yet all the province of Asia and...the whole world worship...her (UST)**

Here the words **Asia** and **the world** refer to the people in Asia and the known world. Alternate translation: “whom many people in Asia and in other parts of the world worship” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [of...goddess](#)
- [majesty](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [world](#)
- [worships](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Artemis...known as Diana](#)

## ULT

<sup>27</sup> And not only is this trade in peril for us to come to disrepute, but that even the temple of the great [goddess](#) Artemis may be considered as nothing. And indeed, her [majesty](#) is about to be destroyed—she whom all [Asia](#) and the [world worships](#).”

## UST

<sup>27</sup> If people listen to him, they will stop our business. People will not think that they should come any longer to the temple of [Artemis](#) (also [known as Diana](#)) to worship her. [People will no longer think that Artemis](#) is great. Yet all [the province of Asia](#) and even the [whole world worship her!](#)”

- People will no longer think that Artemis
- the province of Asia
- whole world
- worship



**Acts 19:28****they cried out (ULT)****They began to shout (UST)**

Here **they** refers to the craftsmen who made the idols ([Acts 19:24-25](#)).

**having become filled with anger (ULT)****All the men...became angry at Paul (UST)**

This speaks of the craftsmen as though they were containers. Here, **anger** is spoken of as if it were the contents that fill a container. Alternate translation: "they became very angry" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they cried out (ULT)****They began to shout (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they shouted aloud" or "they shouted loudly"

**General Information:**

Ephesus was part of the Roman empire and in the province of Asia.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they cried out](#)
- [of the Ephesians](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [They began to shout](#)
- [of the Ephesians](#)

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> And having heard this and having become filled with anger, [they cried out](#), saying, "Great {is} Artemis [of the Ephesians](#)."

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> All the men there became angry at Paul when they heard what Demetrius said. [They began to shout](#), "The goddess Artemis [of the Ephesians](#) is great!"



## **Acts 19:29**

**the city was filled with confusion (ULT)**  
**Many of the people in the city became angry at Paul (UST)**

Here, **city** refers to the people of the city. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the city was filled with confusion (ULT)**  
**Many of the people in the city became angry at Paul (UST)**

The city is spoken of as if it were a container. And, **confusion** is spoken of as if it were the contents that filled the container. Alternate translation: "people all over the city became upset and started shouting" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**and they rushed together (ULT)**  
**Some of the people took hold of...Then the whole crowd of people ran (UST)**

This was a mob or near riot situation.

**into the theater (ULT)**  
**to the city theater (UST)**

The Ephesus **theater** was used for public meetings and for entertainment such as plays and music. It was an outdoor semi-circular area with bench seats that could hold thousands of people.

**And...Gaius...Aristarchus the Macedonian, Paul's travel companions (ULT)**  
**and began shouting...Gaius...Aristarchus, two men from Macedonia who traveled with Paul (UST)**

These were men who had been with Paul.

**Gaius...Aristarchus (ULT)**  
**Gaius...Aristarchus (UST)**

**Gaius** and **Aristarchus** are names of men. Gaius and Aristarchus came from Macedonia but were working with Paul in Ephesus at this time. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having seized](#)
- [the Macedonian](#)
- [Paul's](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [two men from Macedonia](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> And the city was filled with confusion, and they rushed together into the theater, [having seized](#) Gaius and Aristarchus [the Macedonian](#), [Paul's](#) travel companions.

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> Many of the people in the city became angry at Paul and began shouting. Some of the people took hold of Gaius and Aristarchus, [two men from Macedonia](#) who traveled with [Paul](#). Then the whole crowd of people ran, [dragging those men along with them](#), to the city theater.

- Paul
- dragging those men along with them

## Acts 19:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- believers

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But when Paul was desiring to enter in among the people, the disciples did not permit him.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Paul wanted to go into theater to talk to the people, but the other believers would not let him go there.

## Acts 19:31

### the theater (ULT)

### the theater (UST)

The Ephesus **theater** was used for public meetings and for entertainment such as plays and music. It was an outdoor semi-circular area with bench seats that could hold thousands of people. See how you translated **theater** in [Acts 19:29](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sent](#)
- [exhorted him](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They sent someone](#)
- [tell](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> And also, some of the officials of Asia who {were} his friends [sent](#) to him [exhorted him](#) not to offer himself in the theater.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> Some city rulers who were friends of Paul heard what was happening. [They sent someone](#) to [tell](#) Paul not to go into the theater.

## Acts 19:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- were shouting
- assembly
- they had come together
- did...know

### Translation Words - UST

- The crowd of people in the theater
- they were meeting
- shouted
- did...even know

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> So then different ones were shouting a different thing, for the assembly was confused, and the majority did not know for what reason they had come together.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> The crowd of people in the theater kept shouting. Some shouted one thing, and some shouted something else. But most of them did not even know why they were meeting!



**Acts 19:33****Alexander (ULT)****One of the Jews there was named Alexander...  
to tell them (UST)**

**Alexander** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**motioned with {his} hand (ULT)****put his hands up trying (UST)**

You can make explicit that Alexander was showing the crowd that he wanted them to be quiet. Alternate translation: “gestured to the crowd to be quiet” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to give a defense (ULT)****that the Jews did not cause the trouble (UST)**

It is not clear whom or what Alexander wanted to defend. If your language requires this information, it might be best to use a general phrase like “to explain what was going on.”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [with...his} hand](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jews](#)
- [his hands](#)

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> And some from the crowd instructed Alexander, whom the [Jews](#) had pushed forward. And Alexander motioned with [{his} hand](#), wanting to give a defense to the assembly.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> One of the Jews there was named Alexander. Some of the [Jews](#) pushed him to the front of the crowd so that he could speak to the people. Alexander put [his hands](#) up trying to get the crowd to stop shouting. He wanted to tell them that the Jews did not cause the trouble.

## Acts 19:34

**there was one voice from all of them (ULT)  
many of the non-Jewish people...and knew  
that the Jews did...shouted (UST)**

The shouting together of the people at the same time is spoken of as though they were speaking with **one voice**. Alternate translation: "they were shouting in unison" or "they were shouting together" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a Jew
- voice
- hours
- they are crying out
- of the Ephesians

### Translation Words - UST

- a Jew
- So the non-Jews
- shouted
- hours
- of the Ephesians

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> But when they had become aware that he is a Jew, there was one voice from all of them, as for two hours they are crying out, "Great {is} Artemis of the Ephesians."

### UST

<sup>34</sup> But many of the non-Jewish people knew that Alexander was a Jew and knew that the Jews did not worship the goddess Artemis. So the non-Jews shouted for two hours, "Great is the goddess Artemis of the Ephesians!"



## **Acts 19:35**

**Connecting Statement:**

The clerk of Ephesus speaks to quiet the crowd.

**the town clerk (ULT)**  
**the city rulers made (UST)**

This **town clerk** was like a “writer” or “secretary” for the town.

**what man indeed is there who does not know  
that the city of Ephesus is temple keeper of  
the great Artemis and of that which is fallen  
down from heaven (ULT)**  
**everyone in the world knows that the sacred  
image of our goddess Artemis fell down from  
heaven (UST)**

The clerk asked this question to assure the crowd they were right and to comfort them. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “for every man knows that the Ephesians guard the temple of the great Artemis and of her image that fell down from heaven.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**who does not know that (ULT)**  
**the world knows that (UST)**

The town clerk uses **not** to emphasize that all of the people knew this. Alternate translation: “everyone knows” (See: [Litotes](#))

**temple keeper...of the great Artemis (ULT)**  
**the sacred image of our...the sacred image of our...goddess Artemis (UST)**

The Ephesian people maintained and guarded the **temple** of **Artemis**.

**of that which is fallen down from heaven (ULT)**  
**fell down from heaven (UST)**

Within the temple of Artemis was an image of the goddess. It had been fashioned from a meteorite which fell from the sky. People thought that his rock had come directly from Zeus, the ruler of the Greek gods (idols).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- town clerk
- of Ephesus
- of Ephesus
- does...know that

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> But when the **town clerk** had quieted the crowd, he says, “Men **of Ephesus**, what man indeed is there who does not **know that** the city **of Ephesus** is temple keeper of the great Artemis and of that which is fallen down from heaven?”

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> Then one of the **city rulers made** the crowd stop shouting. He said to them, “**My fellow citizens**, everyone in **the world knows that** the sacred image of our goddess Artemis fell down from heaven!”

## Translation Words - UST

- city rulers made
- My fellow citizens
- the world knows that
- the world knows that

## Acts 19:36

**So since these things are undeniable (ULT)  
Everyone knows that...these things are not  
true. So (UST)**

Alternate translation: "So since you know these things are true"

**to do nothing rash (ULT)  
Do not do anything stupid (UST)**

Alternate translation: "do not do anything before you have had time to think about it"

**rash (ULT)  
Do...anything stupid (UST)**

To be **rash** is to act without careful thought.

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> So since these things are undeniable, it is necessary for you to be calmed and to do nothing rash.

### UST

<sup>36</sup> Everyone knows that, and no one can say that these things are not true. So you should be quiet now. Do not do anything stupid.

## Acts 19:37

**these men (ULT)**

**these two men here (UST)**

The words **these men** refer to Gaius and Aristarchus, Paul's traveling companions ([Acts 19:29](#)).

### Translation Words - ULT

- blasphemers
- of...goddess

### Translation Words - UST

- spoken evil
- goddess

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> For you brought these men {who are} neither robbers of temples nor blasphemers of our goddess.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> You should not have brought these two men here, because they have not done anything evil. They have not gone into our temples and taken things from there, and they have not spoken evil of our goddess.



**Acts 19:38****Therefore (ULT)****Therefore (UST)**

The town clerk had said in [Acts 19:37](#) that Gaius and Aristarchus were not robbers or blasphemers. Alternate translation: "Because what I have just said is true"

**have a word against anyone (ULT)**  
**want to accuse anyone of doing anything bad...to if they want to (UST)**

Here having **a word against** someone means they want to accuse them of something. Alternate translation: "want to accuse someone" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**proconsuls (ULT)**  
**there are judges who have been chosen by the government (UST)**

The **proconsuls** were the Roman governor's representatives who made legal decisions in court. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**Let them accuse one another (ULT)****You can accuse anyone there (UST)**

This does not mean Demetrius and those with him will accuse each other. It means this is a place where people in general can speak their accusation. Alternate translation: "There people can accuse one another"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Let them accuse](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [You can](#)

**ULT**

<sup>38</sup> Therefore, if Demetrius and the craftsmen with him have a word against anyone, the courts are open and there are proconsuls. [Let them accuse](#) one another.

**UST**

<sup>38</sup> Therefore, if Demetrius and his fellow workmen want to accuse anyone of doing anything bad, they should do it in the right way. There are courts that they can go to if they want to, and there are judges who have been chosen by the government. [You can](#) accuse anyone there.

**Acts 19:39**

**But if you seek anything about other matters (ULT)**

**But if you want to ask about anything else, you should ask for your rulers (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But if you have other matters to discuss"

**it will be settled in the regular assembly (ULT)  
to take care of it when those rulers come together (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "let us settle it in the regular assembly" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the regular assembly (ULT)  
it when those rulers come together (UST)**

This **regular assembly** refers to a public gathering of citizens over which the county clerk presided.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [you seek](#)
- [assembly](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [you want to ask](#)
- [come together](#)

**ULT**

<sup>39</sup> But if [you seek](#) anything about other matters, it will be settled in the regular [assembly](#).

**UST**

<sup>39</sup> But if [you want to ask](#) about anything else, you should ask for your rulers to take care of it when those rulers [come together](#).

**Acts 19:40**

**we are in danger of being accused of rioting concerning this day (ULT)**

**This is not a good meeting! Take care of this trouble the right way (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “we are in danger of the Roman authorities accusing us of starting this riot today” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of being accused](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [This is not a good meeting](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> For indeed we are in danger [of being accused](#) of rioting concerning this day. There is no reason about which we will be able to give an account concerning this disorder.” <sup>[1]</sup>

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> [This is not a good meeting!](#) Take care of this trouble the right way because we do not want to go against the government. If the rulers asked me what you were all shouting about, I would not be able to give them a good answer.”

## Acts 19:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [assembly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [crowd](#)

#### ULT

**41** And having said this, he dismissed the [assembly](#).<sup>[2]</sup>

19:40 <sup>[1]</sup>

19:41 <sup>[2]</sup>

#### UST

**41** That is what the city ruler said to the [crowd](#). Then he told them all to go home, and they did go to their homes.

## Acts 20

### Acts 20 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

In this chapter Luke describes Paul's last visits to believers in the provinces of Macedonia and Asia before he went to Jerusalem.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Race

Paul spoke of living for Jesus as if he were running in a race. By this he meant that he needed to keep working hard even when things were difficult and he wanted to quit. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [discipline, self-discipline](#))

#### “Compelled by the Spirit”

Paul thought that the Holy Spirit wanted him to go to Jerusalem even if Paul did not want to go there. The same Holy Spirit told other people that when Paul arrived in Jerusalem, people would try to harm him.

## Acts 20:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul leaves Ephesus and continues his travels.

### And after the uproar had ended (ULT) After the people at Ephesus had stopped rioting (UST)

Alternate translation: "After the riot" or "Following the riot"

### and} said farewell (ULT) Soon after that, he told them "Goodbye (UST)

Alternate translation: "and he said goodbye"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- disciples
- after he encouraged them
- Macedonia

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- believers
- He urged them to continue to trust in the Lord Jesus
- the region of Macedonia

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And after the uproar had ended, Paul summoned the disciples and after he encouraged them {and} said farewell, he departed to go to Macedonia.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After the people at Ephesus had stopped rioting, Paul called the believers together. He urged them to continue to trust in the Lord Jesus. Soon after that, he told them "Goodbye" and left to go to the region of Macedonia.

## Acts 20:2

### had exhorted them with many words (ULT) he urged...them to continue to trust in the Lord Jesus (UST)

Alternate translation: "had greatly encouraged the believers by saying many things" or "had said many things to challenge the believers"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- had exhorted
- Greece

#### Translation Words - UST

- he urged
- Greece

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And when he had gone through those regions and had exhorted them with many words, he came to Greece.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> After he arrived there, he urged them to continue to trust in the Lord Jesus. Then he went to Greece.

**Acts 20:3**

**And after he had spent three months there (ULT)**

**He stayed in Greece for three months...and (UST)**

This speaks about time as if it were something a person could spend. Alternate translation: "And after he had stayed there three months" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a plot was formed against him by the Jews (ULT)**  
**of the Jews there were planning to kill him as he traveled (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the Jews formed a plot against him" or "the Jews formed a secret plan to harm him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by the Jews (ULT)**  
**of the Jews there (UST)**

Here, **the Jews** refers to only some of the Jews. Alternate translation: "by some of the Jews" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**as he is about to sail to Syria (ULT)**  
**Then he planned...to Syria by ship...So he decided to go (UST)**

Alternate translation: "as he was ready to sail to Syria"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [months](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [Syria](#)
- [to return](#)
- [Macedonia](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [months](#)
- [return](#)
- [Syria by ship](#)
- [Jews there](#)
- [through Macedonia](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> And after he had spent three [months](#) there, a plot was formed against him by the [Jews](#) as he is about to sail to [Syria](#), so he decided [to return](#) through [Macedonia](#).

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> He stayed in Greece for three [months](#). Then he planned to [return](#) to [Syria](#) by [ship](#), but he heard that some of the [Jews there](#) were planning to kill him as he traveled. So he decided to go by land, and he went again [through Macedonia](#).



## Acts 20:4

### And accompanying him (ULT)

**The men who were going to travel with him to Jerusalem were (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And traveling with him"

**were} Sopater...of Pyrrhus...Secundus...  
Tychicus...Trophimus (ULT)**

**Sopater, the son...of Pyrrhus...Secundus, who  
were...Tychicus...Trophimus, who were from  
(UST)**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**from Berea...from Thessalonica...from Derbe...  
from Asia (ULT)**

**from...town of Berea...from the city of  
Thessalonica...the city of Derbe...the region of Galatia (UST)**

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**were} Sopater of Pyrrhus...Aristarchus...Secundus...Gaius...Timothy...  
Tychicus...Trophimus (ULT)**

**Sopater, the son of Pyrrhus...Aristarchus...Secundus, who were...Gaius, who  
was from...Timothy, who was from...Tychicus...Trophimus, who were from  
(UST)**

These are names of men. See how you translated these names in [Acts 19:29](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from Berea](#)
- [from Thessalonica](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [Tychicus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [from...town of Berea](#)
- [from the city of Thessalonica](#)
- [Timothy, who was from](#)
- [Tychicus](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And accompanying him {were} Sopater of Pyrrhus [from Berea](#), and Aristarchus and Secundus [from Thessalonica](#), and Gaius from Derbe, and [Timothy](#), and [Tychicus](#), and Trophimus from Asia.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The men who were going to travel with him to Jerusalem were Sopater, the son of Pyrrhus, from the [town of Berea](#); Aristarchus and Secundus, who were [from the city of Thessalonica](#); Gaius, who was from the city of Derbe; [Timothy, who was from](#) the region of Galatia; and [Tychicus](#) and Trophimus, who were from the province of Asia.

**Acts 20:5**

**had gone before us...for us (ULT)**  
**went ahead of Paul and me, Luke, by ship**  
**from Macedonia...the two of us there (UST)**

All instances of **us** in this verse refer to the writer and Paul and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**they...had gone before us (ULT)**  
**Those seven men...went ahead of Paul and**  
**me, Luke, by ship from Macedonia (UST)**

Alternate translation: "these men had traveled ahead of us"

**Troas (ULT)**  
**to the city of Troas before we did (UST)**

**Troas** is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Troas](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to the city of Troas before we did](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> But they had gone before us {and} were waiting for us at [Troas](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> Those seven men went ahead of Paul and me, Luke, by ship from Macedonia, so they got [to the city of Troas before we did](#) and waited for the two of us there.

## Acts 20:6

**we...we came...we stayed (ULT)**  
**we got on a ship...we arrived at Troas...Then**  
**we all stayed in Troas (UST)**

All instances of **we** in this verse refer to the writer and Paul and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**the days of unleavened bread (ULT)**  
**the Jewish Festival of Bread made without**  
**Yeast (UST)**

This refers to a time of Jewish religious feast time during the Passover season. See how you translated this in [Acts 12:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philippi](#)
- [days](#)
- [days](#)
- [for...days \(2\)](#)
- [of unleavened bread](#)
- [Troas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the city of Philippi](#)
- [Jewish Festival of Bread made without Yeast](#)
- [days](#)
- [days \(2\)](#)
- [Jewish Festival of Bread made without Yeast](#)
- [the city of Troas](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And we sailed away from [Philippi](#) after the [days of unleavened bread](#), and in five [days](#) we came to them in [Troas](#), where we stayed for seven [days](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But Paul and I traveled by land as far as [the city of Philippi](#). After the [Jewish Festival of Bread made without Yeast](#), we got on a ship that was going to [the city of Troas](#). After five [days](#) we arrived at Troas and met the other men who had traveled ahead of us. Then we all stayed in Troas for seven [days](#).

**Acts 20:7****we (ULT)****we (UST)**

Here the word **we** refers to the writer, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#) and [Acts 20:4-6](#))

**Connecting Statement:**

Luke tells about Paul's preaching in Troas and about what happened to Eutychus.

**to break bread (ULT)****would share a meal together with the other believers (UST)**

Bread was part of their meals. This could mean: (1) this refers simply to eating a meal together. Alternate translation: "eat a meal" or (2) this refers to the meal they would eat together in order to remember Christ's death and resurrection. Alternate translation: "to eat the Lord's Supper" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**and so he continued {his} message (ULT)****and...so he continued speaking (UST)**

Alternate translation: "and so he continued to speak"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [when...were gathered together](#)
- [bread](#)
- [Paul](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [we would gather together](#)
- [would share a meal together with the other believers](#)
- [Paul](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> And on the first of the week, [when we were gathered together](#) to break [bread](#), [Paul](#) spoke to them. He is about to depart the next day, and so he continued {his} message until midnight.

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> On the first day of the week, [we would gather together](#) and we [would share a meal together with the other believers](#). [Paul](#) spoke to the believers until midnight. He was planning to leave Troas the next day, so he continued speaking.

## Acts 20:8

### upper room (ULT) upstairs room (UST)

This **upper room** may have been the third floor of the house.

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamps
- meeting together

### Translation Words - UST

- oil lamps
- gathered

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And there were many lamps in the upper room where we were meeting together.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Many oil lamps were burning in the upstairs room in which we had gathered.



## **Acts 20:9**

**on the window (ULT)**  
**on the sill of an open window (UST)**

This **window** was an opening in the wall with a ledge that was wide enough for a person to sit on it.

**Eutychus (ULT)**  
**was Eutychus was there (UST)**

**Eutychus** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**was falling into a deep sleep (ULT)**  
**Eutychus became sleepier and sleepier.**  
**Finally, he fell sound asleep (UST)**

This speaks about **sleep** as if it were a deep hole into which a person could fall. Alternate translation: “was sleeping soundly” or “was becoming more and more tired until finally he was sleeping soundly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Paul...having been overcome by...sleep (ULT)**  
**on the...a long time...out of...window (UST)**

The young man fell asleep, not Paul.

**and was picked up dead (ULT)**  
**and picked him up...he was dead (UST)**

When they went down to check his condition, they saw he was **dead**. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “and when they went to pick him up, they found that he was dead” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**third story (ULT)**  
**third story of the house (UST)**

The **third story** refers to a level two floors above the ground floor. If your culture does not count the ground floor, you may state this as the “second story.”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [named](#)
- [a...sleep](#)
- [sleep](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [dead](#)

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> And sitting on the window a certain young man [named](#) Eutychus, was falling into a deep [sleep](#). As [Paul](#) is speaking even longer, having been overcome by [sleep](#), he fell down from the third story and was picked up [dead](#).

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> A young man [whose name](#) was Eutychus was there. He was seated on the sill of an open window on the third story of the house. As [Paul](#) continued talking for a long time, Eutychus became sleepier and sleepier. Finally, he fell sound [asleep](#). He fell out of the [window](#) down to the ground. Some of the believers went down immediately and picked him up. But [he was dead](#).



## Translation Words - UST

- whose name
- As Paul
- asleep
- window
- he was dead

## Acts 20:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- life

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- alive again

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But having gone down, Paul stretched out on him, and having embraced him, said, "Do not be upset, for his life is in him."

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Paul also went down. He lay down and stretched out on top of the young man and put his arms around him. Then he said to the people who were standing around, "Do not worry; he is alive again!"

**Acts 20:11**

**when he had gone up...he also talked with them...he left (ULT)**

**Paul went upstairs again...he talked with...he left (UST)**

Here all occurrences of the word **he** refer to Paul.

**Connecting Statement:**

This is the end of the part of the story about Paul's preaching at Troas and about Eutychus.

**had broken bread (ULT)**

**he prepared a meal and he ate it...the believers (UST)**

Bread was a common food during meals. Here, **broken bread** probably means they shared a meal with more kinds of food than just bread. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**In this way, he left (ULT)**

**he left (UST)**

Alternate translation: "This is what happened as he was going away"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [bread](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [and he ate it](#)

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> And when he had gone up and had broken [bread](#) and had eaten, he also talked with them much longer until dawn. In this way, he left.

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> Paul went upstairs again and he prepared a meal [and he ate it](#). Afterwards he talked with the believers until the sun came up. Then he left.

## Acts 20:12

### the boy (ULT)

### the young man home (UST)

Here, **the boy** refers to Eutychus ([Acts 20:9](#)). This could mean: (1) he was a young man over 14 years old. (2) he was a boy between 9 and 14 years old. (3) he was a servant or a slave.

### not moderately (ULT)

### greatly (UST)

Luke uses the negative **not moderately** to say that they were greatly comforted. Alternate translation: "greatly" (See: [Litotes](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [alive](#)
- [were...comforted](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [were...comforted because](#)
- [he was alive again](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But they brought back the boy [alive](#) and were not moderately [comforted](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> The other people took the young man home, and were greatly [comforted because he was alive again](#).

**Acts 20:13****we...we intended (ULT)****We...Paul did not get on the ship with us in Troas (UST)**

Here the word **we** refers to the writer and those traveling with him, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**we...having gone ahead (ULT)****We...then went (UST)**

The word **we** here refers to Luke and his traveling companions, and not to Paul. Paul did travel on the ship. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**Assos (ULT)****Assos (UST)**

**Assos** is a town located directly below present-day Behram in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**he himself was intending to go on foot (ULT)****because he wanted to go more quickly overland to the town of Assos (UST)**

Here, **himself** is used to emphasize that this is what Paul wanted. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**to go on foot (ULT)****because he wanted to go more quickly overland to the town of Assos (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to walk"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Paul](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Paul did not get on the ship with us in Troas](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> But we, having gone ahead to the ship, sailed away to Assos, from where we intended to take [Paul](#) on board, for thus he had arranged; he himself was intending to go on foot.

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> We then went to the ship. But [Paul did not get on the ship with us in Troas](#), because he wanted to go more quickly overland to the town of Assos. The rest of us got on the ship and sailed for Assos.

## Acts 20:14

### Mitylene (ULT)

### the city of Mitylene (UST)

**Mitylene** is a town located in present-day Mitilini in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And when he met us at Assos, taking him on board, we went to Mitylene.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> We met Paul in Assos. He got on the ship with us, and we sailed to the city of Mitylene.

**Acts 20:15**

**we arrived...we landed...we came (ULT)  
we reached Mitylene...and arrived...sailed  
(UST)**

Here the word **we** refers to Paul, the writer, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**Chios (ULT)  
the Island of Chios (UST)**

**Chios** is an island off the coast of modern-day Turkey in the Aegean Sea. Alternate translation: “the island of Chios” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**we landed at Samos (ULT)  
and arrived...we sailed to the Island of Samos. The next day we left Samos  
and (UST)**

Alternate translation: “we arrived at the island of Samos”

**Samos (ULT)  
The next day we left Samos and (UST)**

**Samos** is an island south of Chios in the Aegean Sea off the coast of modern day Turkey. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Miletus (ULT)  
the city of Miletus (UST)**

**Miletus** was a port city in western Asia Minor near the mouth of the Meander River. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> And having sailed from there we arrived the next day opposite Chios. And the following day, we landed at Samos, and the next day, we came to Miletus.

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> The day after we reached Mitylene, we sailed from there and arrived at a place near the Island of Chios. The day after that, we sailed to the Island of Samos. The next day we left Samos and sailed to the city of Miletus.

## Acts 20:16

**For Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus (ULT)**

**Miletus was just south of the city of Ephesus. Paul (UST)**

Paul sailed south past the port city of **Ephesus**, further south in order to land at Miletus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**so that he would not spend time (ULT)**  
**did not want to stop at Ephesus...he did not want to spend time (UST)**

This speaks about **time** as if it were a commodity that a person could spend or use up. Alternate translation: “so that he would not have to remain for a time” or “so that he would not have a delay” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- Ephesus
- spend time
- Asia
- Jerusalem
- for...day
- of Pentecost

### Translation Words - UST

- Miletus was just south of the city of Ephesus. Paul
- Miletus was just south of the city of Ephesus. Paul
- did not want to spend time
- Asia
- Jerusalem
- time
- Pentecost festival

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> For Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus, so that he would not spend time in Asia; for he was hurrying to be, if it was possible for him, in Jerusalem for the day of Pentecost.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Miletus was just south of the city of Ephesus. Paul did not want to stop at Ephesus because he did not want to spend time in Asia. If possible, he wanted to arrive in Jerusalem by the time of the Pentecost festival, and the time of that festival was near.



**Acts 20:17****he summoned (ULT)  
to ask...to come to talk with him (UST)**

Here the word **he** refers to Paul.

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul calls the elders of the church of Ephesus and begins to speak to them.

**Miletus (ULT)  
the ship arrived at Miletus, Paul (UST)**

**Miletus** was a port city in western Asia Minor near the mouth of the Meander River. See how you translated this in Acts 20:15. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having sent](#)
- [Ephesus](#)
- [he summoned](#)
- [elders](#)
- [of...church](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [sent a messenger](#)
- [Ephesus](#)
- [to ask...to come to talk with him](#)
- [elders](#)
- [group of believers there](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> And from Miletus, [having sent](#) to [Ephesus](#), [he summoned](#) the [elders](#) of the [church](#).

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> When the ship arrived at Miletus, Paul [sent a messenger](#) to [Ephesus](#) to [ask](#) the [elders](#) of the [group of believers](#) there to [come to talk with him](#).

## Acts 20:18

### You yourselves know (ULT) you know (UST)

Here, **yourselves** is used for emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### I set foot in Asia (ULT) I arrived here in the province of Asia until the day I left (UST)

Here, **foot** stands for the entire person. Alternate translation: "I entered Asia" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- You...know
- day
- Asia
- time

#### Translation Words - UST

- From the first day
- the province of Asia until the day I left
- know
- time that

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And when they came to him, he said to them, "You yourselves **know**, from the first **day** from when I set foot in **Asia**, how I was with you the whole **time**,

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> When the elders came to him, Paul said to them, "**From the first day** when I arrived here in **the province of Asia until the day I left**, you **know** how I acted among you the entire **time that** I was with you.

**Acts 20:19****tears (ULT)****how I sometimes wept (UST)**

Here **tears** stands for feeling sad and crying. Alternate translation: “sadness” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**trials that happened to me (ULT)****I suffered because the...often tried to harm me (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **trials**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “while I was tested” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**of the Jews (ULT)****Jews who were not believers (UST)**

Here, **the Jews** does not mean every Jew. This lets us know who plotted. Alternate translation: “of some of the Jews” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [serving](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [humility](#)
- [trials](#)
- [of...Jews](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [You know how I kept serving](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [humbly](#)
- [I suffered because](#)
- [Jews who were not believers](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> [serving](#) the [Lord](#) with all [humility](#) and tears and [trials](#) that happened to me in the plots of the [Jews](#);

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> [You know how I kept serving](#) the [Lord Jesus](#) very [humbly](#) and how I sometimes wept. You also know how [I suffered because the Jews who were not believers](#) often tried to harm me.

**Acts 20:20**

**how I kept back nothing that was useful which I did not declare to you (ULT)**  
**You also know that, when I preached God's message to you, I never left out anything that would help you (UST)**

Alternate translation: "how I declared to you everything that was beneficial to you"

**according to houses (ULT)**  
**I also went to your homes and (UST)**

Paul taught people in various private homes. Alternate translation: "in each house" or "in everyone's home"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- was useful
- I did...declare
- I taught
- houses

**Translation Words - UST**

- I preached God's message
- I never left out anything that would help you
- your homes and
- taught

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> how I kept back nothing that was useful which I did not declare to you, and I taught you in public and according to houses,

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> You also know that, when I preached God's message to you, I never left out anything that would help you. You know that I taught you God's message when many people were present, and I also went to your homes and taught you there.

## Acts 20:21

**about repentance toward God and faith in our Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**telling them all that they must turn toward God and away from their sinful behavior and believe in our Lord Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas behind the words **repentance** and **faith**, you could express the same ideas with verbs. Alternate translation: "that they need to repent before God and believe in our Lord Jesus Christ" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**our (ULT)**

**our (UST)**

The word **our** refers to Paul and the elders to whom he is speaking. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to...Jews](#)
- [Greeks](#)
- [about repentance](#)
- [God](#)
- [faith](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to Jews](#)
- [to non-Jews](#)
- [they must turn...and away from their sinful behavior](#)
- [God](#)
- [believe](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> testifying to both [Jews](#) and [Greeks](#) [about repentance](#) toward [God](#) and [faith](#) in our [Lord Jesus](#).

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> I preached both [to Jews](#) and [to non-Jews](#), telling them all that [they must turn toward God and away from their sinful behavior](#) and [believe](#) in our [Lord Jesus](#)."

**Acts 20:22****I (ULT)****I (UST)**

Here the word **I** refers to Paul.

**having been bound...by the Spirit (ULT)**  
**has clearly shown me...because the Holy Spirit (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. They can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because the Spirit compels me to go there" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**not knowing what will happen to me in it (ULT)**

**that I must go there, and I must obey him. I do not know what will happen to me there (UST)**

Alternate translation: "and I do not know what will happen to me there" or "not knowing what will happen to me in Jerusalem"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [having been bound](#)
- [by...Spirit](#)
- [knowing](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [has clearly shown me](#)
- [know](#)

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> And now, behold, I am going to [Jerusalem](#), [having been bound](#) by the [Spirit](#), not [knowing](#) what will happen to me in it,

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> "And now I am going to [Jerusalem](#), because the [Holy Spirit has clearly shown me](#) that I must go there, and I must obey him. I do not [know](#) what will happen to me there.

## Acts 20:23

### chains and afflictions await me (ULT) people will put me in prison and will cause me to suffer (UST)

Here, **chains** refers to Paul's being arrested and put in prison.  
Alternate translation: "people will put me in prison and cause me to suffer" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [chains](#)
- [afflictions](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [people will put me in prison](#)
- [will cause me to suffer](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> except that the [Holy Spirit](#) testifies to me in every city, saying that [chains](#) and [afflictions](#) await me.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> But I do know that in each city I have visited, the [Holy Spirit](#) has told me that in Jerusalem [people will put me in prison](#) and [will cause me to suffer](#).





## **Acts 20:24**

**so as to finish my race and the ministry that I received from the Lord Jesus (ULT)  
even if...if first I am able to finish the work that the Lord Jesus...me to do. He called me to (UST)**

This speaks about Paul's **race** and **ministry** as if they are objects that Jesus gives and Paul receives. Alternate translation: "so that I may complete the work that the Lord Jesus has commanded me to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**my race and the ministry (ULT)  
even if...the work that...me to do. He called me (UST)**

Here, **race** and **ministry** mean basically the same thing. Paul repeats this for emphasis. (See: [Doublet](#))

**to finish my race (ULT)  
I am able to finish the work that...me (UST)**

Paul speaks about completing the work that Jesus has commanded him to do as if he were running a **race**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the...to solemnly testify to the gospel of the grace...of God (ULT)  
the...has told...tell people the good message that...God saves us by doing for us...what we do not deserve (UST)**

This is the ministry that Paul received from Jesus. Alternate translation: "to tell people what I have personally learned about the good news of God's grace"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my} life](#)
- [the value](#)
- [of...grace](#)
- [of God](#)
- [to finish](#)
- [ministry](#)
- [I received](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [to solemnly testify](#)
- [to...gospel](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people kill me](#)
- [people kill me](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But I do not consider [{my} life](#) to myself [the value](#) of a single word, so as [to finish](#) my race and the [ministry](#) that I [received](#) from the [Lord Jesus](#), [to solemnly testify](#) to the [gospel](#) of the [grace of God](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> But I do not care even if [people kill me](#), if first [I am able to finish](#) the work that the [Lord Jesus has told me to do](#). [He called me to tell people the good message that God saves us by doing for us what we do not deserve](#).

- God saves us by doing for us
- we do not deserve
- I am able to finish
- Lord
- Lord Jesus
- has told
- to do. He called me
- to do. He called me
- tell people...good message that

**Acts 20:25****And now, behold, I know (ULT)****But now I know...today is (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And now, pay careful attention, because I know"

**I know that...you all (ULT)****I know that...you fellow believers (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I know that all of you"

**among whom I went about proclaiming the kingdom (ULT)****I have preached to you the message about how God will show himself as king (UST)**

Here, **kingdom** stands for God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "to whom I preached the message about God's reign as king" or "to whom I preached about how God will show himself as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**will see my face no more (ULT)****the last time that...will see me (UST)**

The word **face** here represents Paul's physical body. Alternate translation: "will not see me anymore on this earth" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [know](#)
- [proclaiming](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [face](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [I have preached to you](#)
- [about how God will show himself as king](#)
- [know](#)
- [me](#)

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> And now, behold, I [know](#) that you all, among whom I went about [proclaiming](#) the [kingdom](#), will see my [face](#) no more.

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> I [have preached to you](#) the message [about how God will show himself as king](#). But now I [know](#) that today is the last time that you fellow believers will see [me](#).

**Acts 20:26**

**I am innocent from the blood of all (ULT)  
I...all...if anyone who has heard me preach  
dies without trusting in Jesus...not my fault  
(UST)**

Here, **blood** stands for a person's death, which, in this case, is not physical death but spiritual death when God declares a person guilty of sin. Paul had told them God's truth. Alternate translation: "I am not responsible for anyone whom God judges guilty of sin because they did not trust in Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of all (ULT)  
all (UST)**

Here **all** refers to any person, whether male or female. Alternate translation: "of any person" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- I testify
- day
- innocent
- blood

**Translation Words - UST**

- want you...to understand...it is
- want you...to understand...it is
- if anyone...dies without trusting in Jesus
- my fault

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> Therefore I testify to you this present day that I am innocent from the blood of all.

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> So I want you all to understand that if anyone who has heard me preach dies without trusting in Jesus, it is not my fault,

**Acts 20:27**

**For I did not hold back from declaring...to you (ULT)**

**because I told you...for us (UST)**

Paul uses the negative **not hold back** to emphasize that he told them everything. Alternate translation: "For I certainly declared to you" (See: [Litotes](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [declaring](#)
- [counsel](#)
- [of God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [I told](#)
- [God](#)
- [has planned](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> For I did not hold back from [declaring](#) to you the whole [counsel of God](#).

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> because [I told](#) you everything that [God has planned](#) for us.



## **Acts 20:28**



**the flock among which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers to shepherd the church of God (ULT)**

**You leaders must continue to believe and obey God's message...the other believers for whom the Holy Spirit has given you to care for...the group of the Lord's believers as a shepherd watches over his sheep (UST)**

Believers are likened to a **flock** of sheep here. Church leaders are entrusted by God with the care of the community of believers just as a **shepherd** would care for his flock of sheep and protect them from wolves. Alternate translation: "the group of believers the Holy spirit has entrusted to you. Be sure to take care of the church of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the church of God, which he purchased with his own blood (ULT)**

**the group of the Lord's believers...God bought them with the blood that flowed from his Son's body on the cross (UST)**

The shedding of the **blood** of Christ here is likened to a payment to God for our sins. Alternate translation: "the people Christ saved from their sins by shedding his blood on the cross" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**his own blood (ULT)**

**the blood...on the cross (UST)**

Here, **blood** stands for Christ's death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- flock
- Holy Spirit
- overseers
- to shepherd
- church
- of God
- blood

### Translation Words - UST

- You leaders must continue to believe and obey God's message
- other believers
- Holy Spirit
- group...believers
- Lord's
- as a shepherd watches over his sheep

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Guard yourselves and all the **flock** among which the **Holy Spirit** has made you **overseers to shepherd** the **church of God**, which he purchased with his own **blood**. <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>28</sup> You leaders must continue to believe and obey God's message. You must also help all the **other believers** for whom the **Holy Spirit** has given you to care for. Watch over yourselves and the **group of the Lord's believers as a shepherd watches over his sheep**. God bought them with the **blood** that flowed from his Son's body on the cross.

- blood

**Acts 20:29**

**will come in...vicious wolves...among you, not sparing the flock (ULT)**

**will come...among you and will do great harm to...They will be like fierce wolves that kill the sheep (UST)**

This is a picture of people who teach false doctrine and who harm the community of believers as though they were **wolves** that eat the sheep of the **flock**. Alternate translation: “many enemies will come among you and try to harm the community of believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [know](#)
- [wolves](#)
- [flock](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [know very well](#)
- [wolves](#)
- [sheep](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> I [know](#) that after my departure, vicious [wolves](#) will come in among you, not sparing the [flock](#).

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> I [know very well](#) that after I leave, people who teach lies will come among you and will do great harm to the believers. They will be like fierce [wolves](#) that kill the [sheep](#).

## Acts 20:30

**to draw away the disciples after them (ULT)  
those messages so that some...will become  
their followers (UST)**

A false teacher convincing believers to start believing his false teaching is spoken of as if he were leading sheep away from the flock to follow him. Alternate translation: "in order to convince people who are disciples of Christ to become his disciples instead" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will arise
- perverted things
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- there will be
- some who will lie to other believers by teaching them the wrong things
- will become their followers

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Even from you yourselves, men will arise speaking perverted things to draw away the disciples after them.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Even in your own group of leaders there will be some who will lie to other believers by teaching them the wrong things. They will teach those messages so that some people will believe them and will become their followers.



## **Acts 20:31**

**be alert, remembering (ULT)**  
**watch out that none of you stops believing**  
**the true message about our Lord Jesus!**  
**Remember (UST)**

Alternate translation: "be on guard and remember" or "be on guard as you remember"

**be alert (ULT)**  
**watch out that none of you stops believing**  
**the true message about our Lord Jesus (UST)**

Christian leaders being **alert** about anyone that may harm the community of believers is spoken of as if they were guards in an army watching out for the enemy army. Alternate translation: "be awake" or "watch out" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**remembering that (ULT)**  
**Remember that (UST)**

Alternate translation: "continuing to remember that" or "not forgetting that"

**for three years I did not stop...night and day...admonishing (ULT)**  
**day and night for three years...I taught you that message and warned you**  
**(UST)**

Paul did not teach them continuously **for three years**, but over the space of three years. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**I did not stop...admonishing (ULT)**  
**day and night...I taught you that message and warned you (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not stop**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "I continued to warn"

**with tears (ULT)**  
**with tears to be faithful to the Lord (UST)**

Here, **tears** refers to Paul's crying because of the strong emotion of concern he felt while he was warning the people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [be alert](#)
- [admonishing](#)
- [day](#)

## ULT

<sup>31</sup> So [be alert](#), remembering that for three years I did not stop [admonishing](#) each one with tears night and [day](#).

## UST

<sup>31</sup> So [watch out that none of you stops believing the true message about our Lord Jesus!](#) Remember that [day and night](#) for three years [I taught you that message and warned you](#) with tears to be faithful to the Lord."

## Translation Words - UST

- watch out that none of you stops believing the true message about our Lord Jesus
- day and night
- I taught you that message and warned you





## **Acts 20:32**

**I am entrusting...you...to God and to the word of his grace (ULT)  
you I ask God to protect you and to keep you believing the message that he saves us by doing for us what we do not deserve (UST)**

Here, **word** stands for a message. Alternate translation: "I ask God to take care of you and that he will help you to keep believing the message I spoke to you about his grace" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I am entrusting (ULT)  
I ask...to protect you (UST)**

To "entrust" something to someone is to give them the responsibility of taking care of someone or something.

**which is able to build you up (ULT)  
the message that I told you, you will become strong...you forever the (UST)**

A person's faith becoming stronger is spoken of as if the person were a wall and someone were building him higher and stronger. Alternate translation: "which is able to make you become stronger and stronger in your faith" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to give you the inheritance (ULT)  
If you continue believing...God will give...good things that he has promised to give to (UST)**

This speaks about the **word of his grace** as if it were God himself that would give the inheritance to believers. Alternate translation: "God will give you the inheritance" (See: [Personification](#))

**the inheritance (ULT)  
If you continue believing...good things that he has promised to give to (UST)**

The blessings that God gives believers is spoken of as if they were money or property that a child inherits from his father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I am entrusting](#)
- [to God](#)
- [of...grace](#)
- [inheritance](#)
- [who are sanctified](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I ask...to protect you](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> And now [I am entrusting](#) you to God and to the word of his [grace](#), which is able to build you up and to give you the [inheritance](#) among all those [who are sanctified](#).

### UST

<sup>32</sup> "Now as I leave you [I ask God to protect you](#) and to keep you believing the message that he saves us by doing for us what [we do not deserve](#). If you continue believing the message that I told you, you will become strong, and God will give you forever the [good things that he has promised to give to all of those who belong to him](#).

- God
- we do not deserve
- good things that he has promised to give to
- those who belong to him

**Acts 20:33**

**silver...I coveted no one's (ULT)  
anyone's money or...As for myself, I never  
wanted (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I did not desire anyone's silver" or "I did not want for myself anyone's silver"

**no one's silver, gold, or clothing**

Here, **clothing** is considered a treasure; the more you had, the richer you were.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- I coveted
- silver
- gold

**Translation Words - UST**

- As for myself, I...wanted
- anyone's money or
- anyone's money or

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> I coveted no one's silver or gold or clothing.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> As for myself, I never wanted anyone's money or fine clothing.

**Acts 20:34****You yourselves know (ULT)****You yourselves know (UST)**

The word **yourselves** is used here to add emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**to my needs and to those...these hands ministered (ULT)****my...to earn...and...needed...with...hands...the money that my friends...I (UST)**

The word **hands** here represents the entire person. Alternate translation: "I worked to earn money and pay for my own expenses and for those who" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [You...know](#)
- [hands](#)
- [ministered](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [You...know](#)
- [with...hands...the money that my friends...I](#)
- [with...hands...the money that my friends...I](#)

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> You yourselves [know](#) that these [hands ministered](#) to my needs and to those who were with me.

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> You yourselves [know](#) that I have worked with my [hands](#) to earn [the money that my friends](#) and I needed.



## **Acts 20:35**



**it is necessary to work hard to help those who are weak (ULT)**  
**we should work hard in order to have enough money to give some to...who are needy (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you should work so as to have money to help people who are in need"

**those who are weak (ULT)**  
**who are needy (UST)**

You can state the nominal adjective **weak** as an adjective. Alternate translation: "weak people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**who are weak (ULT)**  
**who are needy (UST)**

Alternate translation: "sick"

**the words of the Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**those...We should remember...our Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **words** refers to what Jesus has said. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**It is more blessed to give than to receive (ULT)**  
**A person is happier when he gives to others than when he receives from them (UST)**

This means a person receives the favor of God and experiences more joy when he gives to other people rather than always receiving from other people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- to work hard
- of...Lord
- of...Lord Jesus
- blessed
- to receive

### Translation Words - UST

- we should work hard
- our Lord
- our Lord Jesus
- A person...happier
- than when he receives from them

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> In all things, I showed you that in this way it is necessary to **work hard** to help those who are weak, and to remember the words of the **Lord Jesus**, that he himself said: 'It is more **blessed** to give than to **receive**.'

### UST

<sup>35</sup> In everything that I did, I showed you that **we should work hard** in order to have enough money to give some to those who are needy. We should remember that **our Lord Jesus** himself said, 'A **person** is **happier** when he gives to others **than when he receives from them**.'

## Acts 20:36

### Connecting Statement:

Paul ends his time with the elders of the church of Ephesus by praying with them.

**having bowed his knees...he prayed (ULT)**  
**had finished speaking...he knelt down with...  
the...and prayed (UST)**

It was a common custom to kneel down while praying. It was a sign of humility before God. Alternate translation: "he knelt down and prayed to God" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having bowed](#)
- [he prayed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had finished speaking](#)
- [and prayed](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> And having said these things, [having bowed](#) his knees, [he prayed](#) with them all.

### UST

<sup>36</sup> When Paul [had finished speaking](#), he knelt down with all of the elders [and prayed](#).

## Acts 20:37

### having fallen upon Paul's neck (ULT) they hugged Paul (UST)

Alternate translation: "having embraced Paul" or "putting their arms around him"

### they were kissing him (ULT) kissed him (UST)

To kiss someone on the cheek was an expression of brotherly or friendly love in the Middle East.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul's
- they were kissing

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- kissed

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> But there was much weeping among them all, and having fallen upon Paul's neck, they were kissing him,

### UST

<sup>37</sup> They all cried a lot, and they hugged Paul and kissed him.

**Acts 20:38**

**they were never going to see his face again (ULT)**

**they would never see him again (UST)**

The word **face** here represents Paul's physical body. Alternate translation: "they would not see him anymore on this earth" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [face](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [they would...see him](#)

**ULT**

<sup>38</sup> grieving mostly because of the word which he had spoken, that they were never going to see his [face](#) again. And then they escorted him to the ship. 20:28 <sup>[1]</sup>, this could be translated as,

**UST**

<sup>38</sup> They were very sad because he had said that [they would](#) never [see him](#) again. Then they all went with him to the ship.

## Acts 21

### Acts 21 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Acts 21:1-19 describes Paul's journey to Jerusalem. After he arrived in Jerusalem, the believers there told him that the Jews wanted to harm him and what he should do so they would not harm him (verses 20-26). Even though Paul did what the believers told him to do, the Jews tried to kill him. The Romans rescued him and gave him a chance to speak to the Jews.

The last verse of the chapter ends with an incomplete sentence. Most translations leave the sentence incomplete, as the ULT does.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### “They are all determined to keep the law”

The Jews in Jerusalem were following the law of Moses. Even those who were following Jesus still kept the law. Both groups thought that Paul had been telling Jews in Greece not to keep the law. But it was only the Gentiles to whom Paul was saying that.

##### Nazarite vow

The vow that Paul and his three friends made was probably a Nazarite vow, because they shaved their heads ([Acts 21:23](#)).

##### Gentiles in the temple

The Jews accused Paul of bringing a Gentile man into a part of the temple into which God only allowed Jews to go. They thought that God wanted them to punish Paul by killing him. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

##### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens.

## Acts 21:1

### Connecting Statement:

The writer Luke, Paul, and his companions continue their travels.

**we...we came (ULT)**

**we...we went in the ship from Cos (UST)**

Here the word **we** refers to Luke, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**having run a straight course, we came to Cos (ULT)**

**traveled on the water to the Island of Cos, where the ship stopped for the night...we went in the ship from Cos (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we went straight to the city of Cos" or "we went directly to the city of Cos"

**Cos (ULT)**

**the Island of Cos, where the ship stopped for the night (UST)**

**Cos** is a Greek island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the South Aegean Sea region. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Rhodes (ULT)**

**the Island of Rhodes, where the ship stopped again (UST)**

**Rhodes** is a Greek island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the South Aegean Sea region south of Cos and northeast of Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Patara (ULT)**

**Patara, where the ship stopped (UST)**

**Patara** is a city on the southwest coast of modern day Turkey south of the Aegean Sea in the Mediterranean Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And it happened that when we set sail, having been torn from them, having run a straight course, we came to Cos, and the next day to Rhodes, and from there to Patara.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After we said goodbye to the elders from Ephesus, we got on the ship and traveled on the water to the Island of Cos, where the ship stopped for the night. The next day we went in the ship from Cos to the Island of Rhodes, where the ship stopped again. The day after that we went to the town of Patara, where the ship stopped.

## Acts 21:2

**And when we found a ship crossing over to Phoenicia (ULT)**

**At Patara we left that ship, and someone told us that there was a ship that would be going to the region of Phoenicia (UST)**

Here, **a ship crossing over** stands for the crew that would sail the ship. Alternate translation: "And when we found a ship with a crew sailing over to Phoenicia" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a ship crossing over (ULT)**  
**a ship that would be going (UST)**

Here, **crossing** does not mean it was presently crossing but that it would be crossing to Phoenicia soon. Alternate translation: "a ship that would be going across the water" or "a ship that would be going"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Phoenicia](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the region of Phoenicia](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And when we found a ship crossing over to [Phoenicia](#), having gone aboard, we set sail.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> At Patara we left that ship, and someone told us that there was a ship that would be going to [the region of Phoenicia](#). So we got on that ship, and it left.

## Acts 21:3

### we sailed on (ULT)

### We...continued sailing (UST)

Here the word **we** refers to Luke, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### leaving it behind on the left (ULT)

### passed...to the south of the island (UST)

The **left** is the “port” side of a boat. Alternate translation: “passed the island on our left”

### there...the ship was to unload {its} cargo (ULT)

### there several days...The ship was going to

### stay...had to unload the cargo (UST)

Here, **ship** stands for the crew that was sailing the ship. Alternate translation: “the crew would unload the cargo from the ship there” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Cyprus](#)
- [Syria](#)
- [Tyre](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [the Island of Cyprus](#)
- [the region of Phoenicia, in the province of Syria](#)
- [the city of Tyre](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And having sighting [Cyprus](#) and leaving it behind on the left, we sailed on to [Syria](#) and landed at [Tyre](#), for the ship was to unload {its} cargo there.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> We traveled over the sea until we could see [the Island of Cyprus](#). We passed to the south of the island and continued sailing until we arrived at [the region of Phoenicia, in the province of Syria](#), at [the city of Tyre](#). The ship was going to stay there several days because its workers had to unload the cargo.



## Acts 21:4

**Through the Spirit they kept saying to Paul (ULT)**

**Because God's Spirit revealed to them that people would cause Paul...they told Paul (UST)**

Alternate translation: "These believers told Paul what the Holy Spirit had revealed to them, for him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- days
- Spirit
- to Paul
- Jerusalem

### Translation Words - UST

- Someone told us where the believers in Tyre lived
- days
- God's Spirit revealed
- Jerusalem
- Paul

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And having found the disciples, we stayed there seven days. Through the Spirit they kept saying to Paul not to go to Jerusalem.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Someone told us where the believers in Tyre lived, so we went and stayed with them for seven days. Because God's Spirit revealed to them that people would cause Paul to suffer in Jerusalem, they told Paul that he should not go there.

**Acts 21:5****they all (ULT)****all the men and their (UST)**

Here the word **they** refers to the believers from Tyre.

**when...our days to supply happened (ULT)**  
**when...it was time for the ship to leave again,**  
**we prepared to continue on our way to**  
**Jerusalem (UST)**

Alternate translation: "when we had finished taking supplies onto the ship"

**having knelt down on the shore {and} having**  
**prayed (ULT)**  
**knelt down there...on the sand and prayed**  
**(UST)**

It was a common custom to kneel down while praying. This was a sign of humility before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [days](#)
- [children](#)
- [having knelt down](#)
- [and} having prayed](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [time for the ship to leave again, we prepared to continue on our way to Jerusalem](#)
- [children went](#)
- [knelt down there](#)
- [and prayed](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> Now when our [days](#) to supply happened, having departed, we went on our way, they all with {their} wives and [children](#) accompanying us as far as outside the city. And [having knelt down](#) on the shore {and} [having prayed](#),

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> But when it was [time for the ship to leave again, we prepared to continue on our way to Jerusalem](#). When we left Tyre, all the men and their wives and [children went](#) with us to the edge of the sea. We all [knelt down there](#) on the sand [and prayed](#).

## Acts 21:6

**we said farewell to each other (ULT)**

**After we all said goodbye (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we said goodbye to one another"

### Translation Words - ULT

- returned

### Translation Words - UST

- returned

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> we said farewell to each other, and we went up into the ship, and they returned to their own.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> After we all said goodbye, Paul and we his companions got on the ship, and the other believers returned to their own homes.

**Acts 21:7****we...we arrived...we stayed (ULT)****After we...we continued on that ship...stayed (UST)**

Here the word **we** refers to Luke, Paul and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**Ptolemais (ULT)****Ptolemais (UST)**

**Ptolemais** was a city south of Tyre, Lebanon. Ptolemais is modern day Acre, Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the brothers (ULT)****There were believers there...them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the fellow believers"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Tyre
- brothers
- for...day

**Translation Words - UST**

- Tyre
- There were believers there
- night

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> And when we had finished the voyage from Tyre, we arrived at Ptolemais, and having greeted the brothers, we stayed with them for one day.

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> After we left Tyre, we continued on that ship to the city of Ptolemais. There were believers there, and we greeted them and stayed with them that night.

## Acts 21:8

### Caesarea (ULT)

### Caesarea, where (UST)

This begins Paul's time in **Caesarea**.

### from the seven (ULT)

### the city of...of the seven men (UST)

Here, **the seven** refers to the men chosen to distribute food and aid to the widows in [Acts 6:5](#).

### evangelist (ULT)

### who spent his time telling others how to become followers of Jesus (UST)

An **evangelist** is a person who tells people the good news about Jesus.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Caesarea](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Philip the evangelist](#)
- [evangelist](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Caesarea, where](#)
- [in the home](#)
- [of Philip, who spent his time telling others how to become followers of Jesus...whom the believers in Jerusalem had chosen to care for the widows](#)
- [who spent his time telling others how to become followers of Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And on the next day, having departed, we went to [Caesarea](#) and, having entered into the [house of Philip the evangelist](#), who was from the seven, we stayed with him.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> The next day we left Ptolemais and sailed to the city of [Caesarea](#), [where](#) we stayed [in the home of Philip, who spent his time telling others how to become followers of Jesus](#). He was one of the seven men [whom the believers in Jerusalem had chosen to care for the widows](#).

**Acts 21:9****this man (ULT)****that (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Philip"

**Now (ULT)****the Holy Spirit had told them (UST)**

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke tells background information about Philip and his daughters. (See: [Background Information](#))

**four virgin daughters who prophesy (ULT)****He had four daughters...not married. Each of them frequently spoke messages (UST)**

Alternate translation: "four virgin daughters who regularly receive and pass along messages from God"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [virgin](#)
- [who prophesy](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [not married](#)
- [Each of them frequently spoke messages](#)

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> Now this man had four [virgin](#) daughters [who prophesy](#).

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> He had four daughters who were [not married](#). [Each of them frequently spoke messages](#) that the Holy Spirit had told them.

## Acts 21:10

### as we stayed there (ULT)

### After we had been in Philip's house (UST)

Here the word **we** refer to Luke, Paul, and those with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### certain...a...prophet named Agabus (ULT) a believer...from the district of...whose name was Agabus...He frequently spoke messages that the Holy Spirit had told him (UST)

This introduces **Agabus** as a new person in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### Agabus (ULT)

### was Agabus (UST)

**Agabus** was a man from Judea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [for...days](#)
- [a...prophet](#)
- [named](#)
- [Judea](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [for several days](#)
- [whose name](#)
- [Judea and arrived in Caesarea](#)
- [He frequently spoke messages that the Holy Spirit had told him](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And as we stayed there for many [days](#), a certain [prophet named](#) Agabus came down from [Judea](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> After we had been in Philip's house [for several days](#), a believer [whose name](#) was Agabus came down from the district of [Judea and arrived in Caesarea](#). He frequently spoke [messages that the Holy Spirit had told him](#).





## **Acts 21:11**

**us (ULT)**  
**we were (UST)**

Here the word **us** refer to Luke, Paul, and those with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**having taken Paul's belt (ULT)**  
**he took off...Paul's belt...of (UST)**

Alternate translation: "removed Paul's belt from Paul's waist"

**Thus says the Holy Spirit, 'So the Jews in Jerusalem will bind the man who owns this belt, and they will hand him over into the hands of the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**where...it...The Holy Spirit says, 'The Jewish leaders in Jerusalem will tie up the hands...the owner of this belt, like this, and they will put him in the hands of non-Jewish people as a prisoner (UST)**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The inner quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit says that this will be how the Jews in Jerusalem will bind the man who owns this belt, and they will hand him over into the hands of the Gentiles." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**the Jews (ULT)**  
**The Jewish leaders (UST)**

Here, **the Jews** does not mean all the Jews, but that these were the people who would do that. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" or "some of the Jews" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**they will hand him over (ULT)**  
**they will put him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they will deliver him"

**into the hands of the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**in the hands of non-Jewish people as a prisoner (UST)**

The word **hands** here represents control. Alternate translation: "into the legal custody of the Gentiles" or "to the Gentiles" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ULT**

**11** And having come to us and having taken Paul's belt, having bound his own feet and hands, he said, "Thus says the Holy Spirit, 'So the Jews in Jerusalem will bind the man who owns this belt, and they will hand him over into the hands of the Gentiles.'"

**UST**

**11** Coming over to where we were, he took off Paul's belt. Then he tied his own feet and hands with it and said, "The Holy Spirit says, 'The Jewish leaders in Jerusalem will tie up the hands and feet of the owner of this belt, like this, and they will put him in the hands of non-Jewish people as a prisoner.'"

## **of the Gentiles (ULT) of non-Jewish people as a prisoner (UST)**

This stands for the authorities among **the Gentiles**. Alternate translation: “of the Gentile authorities” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul's
- having bound
- will bind
- hands
- the hands (2)
- Holy Spirit
- Jews
- Jerusalem
- of the Gentiles

### **Translation Words - UST**

- Paul's
- Then he tied
- will tie up the hands
- hands with...and...feet
- the hands (2)
- Holy Spirit
- Jewish leaders
- Jerusalem
- of non-Jewish people as a prisoner

## Acts 21:12

### we heard...we (ULT)

### heard...we (UST)

Here the word **we** refers to Luke and the other believers but does not include the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were begging](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [asked](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And when we heard these things, both we and the local people [were begging](#) him not to go up to [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When the rest of us heard that, we and the other believers there [asked](#) Paul, "Please do not go up to [Jerusalem!](#)"



## **Acts 21:13**

**What are you doing, weeping and breaking my heart (ULT)**  
**Please stop crying and trying to discourage me from going (UST)**

Paul asks this question to show the believers they should stop trying to persuade him. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Stop what you are doing. Your weeping is breaking my heart!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**breaking my heart (ULT)**  
**trying to discourage me from going (UST)**

To make someone sad or to discourage someone is spoken of as if it were a **heart** being broken. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**breaking my heart (ULT)**  
**trying to discourage me from going (UST)**

Here, **heart** stands for a person's emotions. Alternate translation: "discouraging me" or "making me very sad" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**not only to be bound (ULT)**  
**I am...to prison...because (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "not only for them to tie me up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**for the name of the Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**I serve the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **name** refers to the person of Jesus. Alternate translation: "for the sake of the Lord Jesus" or "because I believe in the Lord Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- heart
- to be bound
- to die
- Jerusalem
- name
- of...Lord
- of...Lord Jesus

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> Then Paul answered, "What are you doing, weeping and breaking my heart? For I am ready, not only to be bound, but also to die in Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus."

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> But Paul replied, "Please stop crying and trying to discourage me from going! I am willing to go to prison and also to die in Jerusalem because I serve the Lord Jesus."

- trying to discourage me from going
- to prison
- to die
- Jerusalem
- I serve
- Lord
- Lord Jesus



## Acts 21:14

### would not be persuaded...he (ULT) would go to Jerusalem...that he (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Paul would not allow us to persuade him" or "we were unable to persuade Paul" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### would not be persuaded (ULT) would go to Jerusalem (UST)

You may need to make explicit what they could not persuade Paul not to do. Alternate translation: "would not be persuaded not to go up to Jerusalem" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Let the will of the Lord happen (ULT) May the Lord's will be done (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "May everything happen as the Lord has planned it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the will of...Lord](#)
- [of...Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord's](#)
- [Lord's will](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But since he would not be persuaded, we remained silent, saying, "Let [the will of the Lord](#) happen."

### UST

<sup>14</sup> When we realized that he would go to Jerusalem, we did not try any longer to stop him. We said, "May the [Lord's will](#) be done!"

## Acts 21:15

### we went up (ULT) to go by land up (UST)

Here the word **we** refers to Luke, Paul, and those traveling with them, and not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [days in Caesarea](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And after having made preparations these [days](#), we went up to [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> After those [days in Caesarea](#), we prepared our possessions and left to go by land up to [Jerusalem](#).

## Acts 21:16

**to Mnason, a certain early disciple from Cyprus, with whom we would stay (ULT)  
to stay in the house of a man whose name was Mnason. He was from the Island of Cyprus...when people were first beginning to hear the message about him (UST)**

The disciples from Caesarea knew **Mnason** and led Paul and Silas to his house where they would spend the night.

**to Mnason...from Cyprus (ULT)  
name was Mnason...the Island of Cyprus (UST)**

**Mnason** is a man from the island of **Cyprus**. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**certain...a...early disciple (ULT)  
in the house of a man...when people were first beginning to hear the message about him (UST)**

This means Mnason was one of the first to believe in Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [a...disciple](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [from Cyprus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Caesarea also](#)
- [the Island of Cyprus](#)
- [believed in Jesus](#)
- [when people were first beginning to hear the message about him](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And {some} of the [disciples](#) from [Caesarea](#) also came along with us, bringing us to Mnason, a certain early [disciple from Cyprus](#), with whom we would stay.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Some of the believers from [Caesarea](#) also went with us. They took us to stay in the house of a man whose name was Mnason. He was from [the Island of Cyprus](#), and he had [believed in Jesus when people were first beginning to hear the message about him](#).

## Acts 21:17

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and his companions arrive in Jerusalem.

### **the brothers welcomed us (ULT)** **a group of the believers greeted us (UST)**

Here, **the brothers** refers to the believers in Jerusalem whether male or female. Alternate translation: "the fellow believers welcomed us" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [welcomed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [believers](#)
- [greeted](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And when we had arrived in [Jerusalem](#), the [brothers welcomed](#) us gladly.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> When we arrived in [Jerusalem](#), a group of the [believers greeted](#) us happily.

## Acts 21:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- James
- elders

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- James, who was the leader of the church there
- leaders

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And the next day Paul went with us to James, and all the elders were present.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> The next day Paul and the rest of us went to speak with James, who was the leader of the church there. All of the other leaders of the church in Jerusalem were also there.

## Acts 21:19

**he reported according to each thing (ULT)**  
**he told them all of the things (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he gave a detailed account of everything"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Gentiles
- ministry

### Translation Words - UST

- God had enabled...to do among the non-Jewish people
- God had enabled...to do among the non-Jewish people
- God had enabled...to do among the non-Jewish people

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And having greeted them, he reported according to each thing that God had done among the Gentiles through his ministry.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Paul greeted them, and then he told them all of the things that God had enabled him to do among the non-Jewish people.

## Acts 21:20

### Connecting Statement:

The elders in Jerusalem begin their response to Paul.

**they...when...heard it...they glorified...and said to him (ULT)**  
**the other elders...When they heard that, James...thanked...Then one of them said to Paul...Also, you know that we (UST)**

Here each instance of the word **they** refers to James and the elders. The word **him** refers to Paul.

**brother (ULT)**

**Brother (UST)**

Here, **brother** means "fellow believer."

**they are (ULT)**

**that Moses gave us (UST)**

The word **they** refers to Jewish believers who wanted all believing Jews to keep the Jewish laws and customs.

### Translation Words - ULT

- they glorified
- God
- brother
- who have believed
- Jews
- zealous
- for..law

### Translation Words - UST

- thanked
- God
- Brother
- Jewish people here
- have believed...the Lord Jesus
- continue very carefully to obey
- laws

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And when they heard it, they glorified God and said to him, "You see, brother, how many myriads there are who have believed among the Jews, and they are all zealous for the law.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> When they heard that, James and the other elders thanked God. Then one of them said to Paul, "Brother, you know that there are very many thousands of us Jewish people here who have believed in the Lord Jesus. Also, you know that we all continue very carefully to obey the laws that Moses gave us.





## **Acts 21:21**

**And they have been told about you, that you teach apostasy from Moses to all the Jews who {are} among the Gentiles, telling them not to circumcise {their} children, nor to walk in the customs (ULT)**

**But our fellow Jewish believers have been told that when you are among non-Jews, you tell the Jewish believers who live there that they should stop obeying the laws of Moses. People say that you tell those Jewish believers not to circumcise their sons and not to practice our other customs. We do not believe that they are telling the truth about you (UST)**

Apparently here there are some Jews that are distorting what Paul is teaching. He does not discourage the Jews from obeying the law of **Moses**. His message is that circumcision and the other customs are not necessary for Jesus to save them. You can make explicit that the leaders of the Jewish believers in Jerusalem knew that Paul was teaching God's true message. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they have been told (ULT)  
our fellow Jewish believers (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "people have told the Jewish believers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**apostasy...from Moses (ULT)  
when...But...who live there that they should stop obeying the laws of Moses (UST)**

Here, **Moses** stands for the law of Moses. Alternate translation: "rebellion against the Law of Moses" or "to stop obeying the laws that Moses gave us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**nor to walk in the customs (ULT)  
not to practice our other customs. We do not believe that they are telling the truth about you (UST)**

To obey **the customs** is spoken of as if the customs were a path that people could **walk** along. Alternate translation: "and not to obey the customs" or "and not to practice the customs" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> And they have been told about you, that **you teach** apostasy from **Moses** to all **the Jews** who {are} among the **Gentiles**, telling them not **to circumcise {their} children**, nor **to walk** in the customs.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> But our fellow Jewish believers **have been told** that when you are among **non-Jews**, **you tell the Jewish believers who live there that they should stop obeying the laws of Moses**. People say that you tell those Jewish believers not **to circumcise their sons and not to practice our other customs**. **We do not believe that they are telling the truth about you**.

## **in the customs (ULT)**

**our other customs. We do not believe that they are telling the truth about you (UST)**

Alternate translation: "do the things that Jews normally do"

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- you teach
- Moses
- to...the Jews
- Gentiles
- to circumcise
- their} children
- to walk

### **Translation Words - UST**

- have been told
- non-Jews
- you tell the Jewish believers
- who live there that they should stop obeying the laws of Moses
- to circumcise
- sons and
- customs. We do not believe that they are telling the truth about you

## Acts 21:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> What therefore is it? They will certainly hear that you have come.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> But our fellow Jewish believers will hear that you have come, and they will be angry with you. So you need to do something to show them that what they heard about you is not true.

**Acts 21:23****we say (ULT)****we suggest (UST)**

Here the word **we** refers to James and the elders ([Acts 21:18](#)). (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**four men with us having a vow from themselves (ULT)****four men among us who have made a vow to God (UST)**

This was the kind of **vow** where a person would not drink alcohol or cut his hair until the end of a set period of time. Alternate translation: "four men who have made a promise to God"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [a vow](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [who have made a vow to God](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> So do this that we say to you. There are four men with us having [a vow](#) from themselves.

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> So please do what we suggest to you. There are four men among us [who have made a vow to God](#).



## **Acts 21:24**

**Having taken these men, be purified with them (ULT)**

**Go with these men to the temple...them to be able to worship in the temple (UST)**

They had to make themselves ritually pure so they could worship in the temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**pay the expenses for them (ULT)**

**Then, when it is time for them to offer...pay (UST)**

The **expenses** would go toward buying a male and female lamb, a ram, and grain and drink offerings. Alternate translation: "pay for what they will need" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they will shave {their} heads (ULT)**

**the sacrifices...they can shave their heads to show that they have done (UST)**

This was a sign that the person had completed what they promised God they would do. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**what they have been told about you (ULT)**

**what they have been told about you (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that people are saying about you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you yourself walk in and obey the law (ULT)**

**for what they offer...our Jewish laws (UST)**

This speaks of obeying the law as if **the law** were a path and people can **walk** along it. Alternate translation: "live a life that conforms to the law of Moses and other Jewish customs" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [be purified](#)
- [their} heads](#)
- [will know](#)
- [you...walk in](#)
- [law](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [these men to the temple](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Having taken these men, [be purified](#) with them, and pay the expenses for them, so that they will shave [{their} heads](#), and then everyone [will know](#) that what they have been told about you is false, but that you yourself [walk in](#) and obey the [law](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Go with [these men to the temple](#) and do the ceremonies there necessary for you and them to be able to worship in the temple. Then, when it is time for them to offer the sacrifices, [pay for what they offer](#). After that, they can shave [their heads to show that they have done what they said they would do](#). [When people see you in the courts of the temple](#) with those men, they will know that what they have been told about you is not true. Instead, all of them will know that you obey all [our Jewish laws](#).



- for what they offer
- their heads to show that they have done
- what they said they would do. When people see you in the courts of the temple
- our Jewish laws



## **Acts 21:25**

## we (ULT) we elders here in Jerusalem (UST)

Here the word **we** refers to James and the elders. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

## to keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols, and from blood, and from what is strangled

All of these are rules about what they can eat. They are forbidden to eat meat of animals sacrificed to **idols**, meat with **blood** still in it, and meat from a **strangled** animal because it would still have blood in the meat. See how you translated similar phrases in [Acts 15:20](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## to keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "to stay away from the meat of an animal that someone sacrificed to an idol" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## from what is strangled (ULT) that people have killed by strangling them (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "from animals that a person has strangled" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## from what is strangled (ULT) that people have killed by strangling them (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this phrase, you can state explicitly the assumed information that what was **strangled** were animals, and that the reason this was wrong is that the blood was not drained from them. Alternate translation: "from animals strangled and killed for food with the blood still in them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Gentiles](#)
- [who have believed](#)
- [sent](#)
- [having given judgment](#)
- [from blood](#)
- [from sexual immorality](#)

## ULT

<sup>25</sup> But concerning the [Gentiles who have believed](#), we [sent, having given judgment](#) to keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols, and [from blood](#), and from what is strangled, and [from sexual immorality](#)."

## UST

<sup>25</sup> As for the [non-Jewish believers](#), we elders here in Jerusalem [have talked about which of our laws they should obey, and we wrote them a letter](#), telling them what we decided. We wrote that they should not eat meat that people have offered as a sacrifice to any idol, [that they should not eat blood from animals](#), and that they should not eat meat from animals that people have killed by strangling them. We also [told them that they should not sleep with someone to whom they are not married](#)."

## Translation Words - UST

- non-Jewish believers
- non-Jewish believers
- have talked about which of our laws they should obey, and we wrote...a letter
- have talked about which of our laws they should obey, and we wrote...a letter
- that they should not eat blood from animals
- told them that they should not sleep with someone to whom they are not married



## **Acts 21:26**

**having taken the men (ULT)**  
**he took the four men (UST)**

These are the four **men** who had made a vow.

**having been purified with them (ULT)**  
**and together they purified themselves (UST)**

Before entering the temple area the Jews were required to be ceremonially or ritually clean. This cleansing had to do with Jews having contact with Gentiles.

**went into the temple (ULT)**  
**went to the temple courts and (UST)**

They did not go **into the temple** itself where only the high priest was allowed to enter. They entered the temple courtyard. Alternate translation: "went into the temple courtyard" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**of the days of purification (ULT)**  
**what day...purifying themselves (UST)**

This is a separate **purification** process from the purification process which they were required to fulfill in order to enter the temple area.

**until...which was offered...the offering (ULT)**  
**to...After that, Paul...and when they would offer...the animals as sacrifices (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "until they presented the animals for an offering" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- day
- of...days
- having been purified
- of purification
- temple
- fulfillment
- offering

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul agreed
- day
- what day

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> Then Paul, having taken the men the next day, having been purified with them, went into the temple, announcing the fulfillment of the days of purification, until the offering which was offered for each one of them.

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> So Paul agreed to do what they asked, and the next day he took the four men, and together they purified themselves. After that, Paul went to the temple courts and told the priest what day they would finish purifying themselves and when they would offer the animals as sacrifices for each of them.



- purified themselves
- purifying themselves
- temple courts and
- priest...they would finish
- animals as sacrifices

## Acts 21:27

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the story of Paul's arrest.

### the seven days (ULT)

### the seven days (UST)

These are **the seven days** for purification.

### in the temple (ULT)

### Paul returned to the temple courtyard...in (UST)

Paul was not **in the temple** itself. He was in the temple courtyard.  
Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### stirred up the whole crowd (ULT)

### They called out to many...Jews who were...the temple courtyard (UST)

Inciting people to become very angry at Paul is spoken of as if they **stirred up** the crowd's emotions. Alternate translation: "caused a large number of people to be very angry at Paul" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### laid {their} hands on him (ULT)

### they were very angry at him...other...to help them take hold of Paul (UST)

Here, **laid their hands on** means to "seize" or to "grab." See how you translated **laid hands on** in [Acts 5:18](#).  
Alternate translation: "seized Paul" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [temple](#)
- [their} hands](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [days](#)
- [temple courtyard](#)
- [Some Jews](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [to help them](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But when the seven [days](#) were about to be finished, the [Jews](#) from [Asia](#), having seen Paul in the [temple](#), stirred up the whole crowd, and laid [their} hands](#) on him,

### UST

<sup>27</sup> When the seven [days](#) for purifying themselves were nearly finished, Paul returned to the [temple courtyard](#). [Some Jews](#) from [Asia](#) saw him there, and they were very angry at him. They called out to many other Jews who were in the temple courtyard [to help them](#) take hold of Paul.

## Acts 21:28

### the people, and the law, and this place

Alternate translation: “the people of Israel, and the law of Moses, and the temple”

### And besides, he has both brought Greeks into the temple (ULT)

### He has even brought non-Jews here into the court of our temple (UST)

Only Jewish males were allowed in certain areas of the courtyard of the Jerusalem **temple**. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- shouting
- of Israel
- who teaches
- people
- law
- Greeks
- temple
- has defiled
- holy...place

#### Translation Words - UST

- They shouted
- Israelites
- Jewish people
- He teaches people
- laws
- holy temple...place
- non-Jews
- court of our temple
- causing...to become polluted

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> shouting, “Men of Israel, help us. This is the man who teaches all men everywhere against the people, and the law, and this place. And besides, he has both brought Greeks into the temple and has defiled this holy place.”

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> They shouted, “Fellow Israelites, come and help us to punish this man! This is the one who is teaching people wherever he goes that they should despise the Jewish people. He teaches people that they should no longer obey the laws of Moses nor respect this holy temple. He has even brought non-Jews here into the court of our temple, causing this place to become polluted!”

## Acts 21:29

**For they had previously seen Trophimus the Ephesian with him in the city, whom they thought that Paul brought into the temple (ULT)**

**They said these because they had seen Paul walking around in Jerusalem with Trophimus, who was a non-Jew, from Ephesus. Their laws did not permit non-Jews to be in the temple, and they thought that Paul had brought Trophimus into the temple courtyard that day (UST)**

This is background information. Luke is explaining why the Jews from Asia thought Paul brought a Greek into the temple. (See: [Background Information](#))

**Trophimus (ULT)**

**Trophimus (UST)**

**Trophimus** was a Greek man that they accused Paul of having brought into the inner temple area that was only for Jews. See how you translated his name in [Acts 20:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephesian](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [temple](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [from Ephesus](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [temple courtyard that](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> For they had previously seen Trophimus the [Ephesian](#) with him in the city, whom they thought that [Paul](#) brought into the [temple](#).

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> They said these because they had seen Paul walking around in Jerusalem with Trophimus, who was a non-Jew, [from Ephesus](#). Their laws did not permit non-Jews to be in the temple, and they thought that [Paul](#) had brought Trophimus into the [temple courtyard that day](#).

**Acts 21:30****And the whole city was stirred up (ULT)  
all over the city...there was trouble (UST)**

The word **city** represents the people in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "And the people in the city became angry at Paul" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**And the whole city was stirred up (ULT)  
all over the city...there was trouble (UST)**

The word **whole** here is an exaggeration for emphasis. Alternate translation: "And many people in the city became angry at Paul" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the...having laid hold of...Paul (ULT)  
heard that...at the temple courtyard...They  
caught...Paul (UST)**

Alternate translation: "having seized Paul" or "after they grabbed Paul"

**the doors were immediately shut (ULT)  
The gates to the temple courtyard were shut (UST)**

They **shut the doors** so that there would not be rioting in the temple area. Alternate translation: "the temple doors were immediately shut to protect the temple" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the doors were immediately shut (ULT)  
The gates to the temple courtyard were shut (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "some of the Jews immediately shut the temple doors" or "the temple guards immediately shut the doors" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of...people](#)
- [having laid hold of](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [temple](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [People](#)
- [They caught](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [temple area](#)

**ULT**

<sup>30</sup> And the whole city was stirred up, and there became a mob of the [people](#), and [having laid hold of Paul](#), they dragged him outside the [temple](#), and the doors were immediately shut.

**UST**

<sup>30</sup> [People](#) all over the city heard that there was trouble at the temple courtyard, and they came running there. [They caught Paul](#) and dragged him outside of the [temple area](#). The gates to the temple courtyard were shut, so that the people would not riot inside the temple area.



## **Acts 21:31**

**a report came up to the commander of the guard (ULT)  
someone ran to the fortress near the temple...  
told the Roman commander (UST)**

Here, **report** refers to the messenger who went to speak the report. Alternate translation: “someone gave news to the commander of the guard” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a report came up to the commander (ULT)  
someone ran to the fortress near the temple...  
told the Roman (UST)**

The phrase **came up to** is used because the commander was in a fortress connected to the temple that was higher in elevation than the temple courtyard.

**to the commander (ULT)  
to the fortress near the temple...Roman (UST)**

A Roman **commander** was a military officer or leader of about 600 soldiers.

**all Jerusalem was stirred up (ULT)  
many people in Jerusalem were rioting at the temple (UST)**

The word **Jerusalem** here represents the people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “a lot of people in Jerusalem were stirred up” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**all Jerusalem was stirred up (ULT)  
many people in Jerusalem were rioting at the temple (UST)**

The word **all** is an exaggeration to show a large crowd was upset. Alternate translation: “a lot of people in Jerusalem were in an uproar” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [as they were seeking](#)
- [a report](#)
- [to...commander](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [While they were trying](#)
- [told the](#)
- [Roman](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> And [as they were seeking](#) to kill him, [a report](#) came up to the [commander](#) of the guard that all [Jerusalem](#) was stirred up.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> [While they were trying](#) to kill Paul, someone ran to the fortress near the temple and [told the Roman](#) commander that many people [in Jerusalem](#) were rioting at the temple.



## Acts 21:32

### ran down (ULT) and ran (UST)

The word **he** refers to the chief captain of the guard mentioned in [Acts 21:31](#).

### ran down (ULT) and ran (UST)

From the fortress, there are stairs going **down** into the court.

### the commander (ULT) the commander (UST)

The **commander** was a Roman military officer or leader of about 600 soldiers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [soldiers](#)
- [soldiers \(2\)](#)
- [centurions](#)
- [ran down](#)
- [commander](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [some officers](#)
- [a large group of soldiers](#)
- [soldiers coming \(2\)](#)
- [and ran](#)
- [yelling and beating Paul](#)
- [commander](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Right away, having taken [soldiers](#) and [centurions](#), he [ran down](#) to them. And when they saw the [commander](#) and the [soldiers](#), they stopped beating [Paul](#).

### UST

<sup>32</sup> The commander quickly took [some officers](#) and [a large group of soldiers](#) and [ran](#) to the temple area where the crowd was. When the crowd of people who were [yelling and beating Paul](#) saw the [commander](#) and the [soldiers coming](#), they stopped beating him.

**Acts 21:33****laid hold of him (ULT)  
took hold of him (UST)**

Alternate translation: “took hold of Paul” or “arrested Paul”

**commanded him to be bound (ULT)  
He commanded soldiers to fasten (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “commanded his soldiers to bind him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**with two chains (ULT)  
a chain to each of Paul’s arms (UST)**

This means they bound Paul to two Roman soldiers, one on each side of him.

**he asked who he is and what it is that he had done (ULT)  
he asked the people in the crowd, “Who is this man, and what has he done (UST)**

You can state this as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: “He asked, ‘Who is this man? What has he done?’” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**he asked who he is (ULT)  
he asked the people in the crowd, “Who is this man (UST)**

The commander is speaking to the crowd, not to Paul.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [commander](#)
- [laid hold of](#)
- [commanded him](#)
- [to be bound](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [commander](#)
- [took hold](#)
- [He commanded soldiers](#)
- [to fasten](#)

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> Then, having approached him, the [commander laid hold of](#) him and [commanded him to be bound](#) with two chains. And then he asked who he is and what it is that he had done.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> The [commander](#) came to where Paul was and [took hold](#) of him. [He commanded soldiers to fasten](#) a chain to each of Paul’s arms. Then he asked the people in the crowd, “Who is this man, and what has he done?”

**Acts 21:34****he...he (ULT)****that he...could question him there (UST)**

The first instance of **he** refers to the commander, and the second **he** refers to Paul.

**commanded that he be brought (ULT)****he commanded that Paul be taken...could question him there (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "he ordered his soldiers to bring Paul" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**into the fortress (ULT)****into the fortress so (UST)**

This **fortress** was connected to the outer temple court.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [were shouting](#)
- [to find out anything](#)
- [commanded that](#)
- [fortress](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [some were shouting](#)
- [understand...So](#)
- [he commanded that Paul](#)
- [fortress so](#)

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> But different ones in the crowd [were shouting](#) different things. But he, not being able [to find out anything](#) for certain because of the noise, [commanded that](#) he be brought into the [fortress](#).

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> Some of the many people there were shouting one thing, and [some were shouting](#) something else. Because they continued shouting so loudly, the commander could not [understand](#) what they were saying. [So he commanded that Paul](#) be taken into the [fortress so](#) that he could question him there.

## Acts 21:35

**But when he came to the steps, he had to be carried (ULT)**

**The soldiers led Paul to the steps of the fortress, but...to carry Paul up the steps into the fortress (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "But when Paul came to the steps of the fortress, the soldiers had to carry him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to be carried](#)
- [soldiers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [soldiers](#)
- [to carry](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> But when he came to the steps, he had [to be carried](#) by the [soldiers](#) because of the violence of the crowd.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> The soldiers led Paul to the steps of the fortress, but many people continued to follow them, trying to kill Paul. So the commander told the [soldiers to carry](#) Paul up the steps into the fortress.

## Acts 21:36

### Away with him (ULT)

### Kill him! Kill him (UST)

The crowd is using somewhat milder and less exact language to ask for Paul's death. Alternate translation: "Put him to death" or "Kill him" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of people](#)
- [shouting out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [crowd that](#)
- [kept shouting](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> For the crowd [of people](#) followed after, [shouting out](#), "Away with him!"

### UST

<sup>36</sup> The [crowd that](#) followed [kept shouting](#), "Kill him! Kill him!"

**Acts 21:37**

**And as Paul is about to be brought into the fortress (ULT)**

**As Paul was about to be taken into the fortress (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "As the soldiers were ready to bring Paul inside the fortress" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the fortress (ULT)**

**the fortress (UST)**

This **fortress** was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in [Acts 21:34](#).

**to the commander (ULT)**

**to the commander (UST)**

The **commander** was a Roman military officer of about 600 soldiers.

**Do you know Greek (ULT)**

**commander said...I am surprised that you can speak Greek (UST)**

The commander uses this questions to express surprise that Paul is not who he thought he was. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "So you speak Greek." or "I didn't know you spoke Greek." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Paul](#)
- [fortress](#)
- [to...commander](#)
- [Do you know](#)
- [Greek](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [As Paul](#)
- [fortress](#)
- [commander](#)
- [commander said...I am surprised that you can speak Greek](#)
- [commander said...I am surprised that you can speak Greek](#)

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> And as [Paul](#) is about to be brought into the [fortress](#), he says to the [commander](#), "If it is permitted for me to say something to you ...?" But he replied, "[Do you know Greek?](#)"

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> [As Paul](#) was about to be taken into the [fortress](#), he said in Greek to the [commander](#), "May I speak to you?" The [commander](#) said, "[I am surprised that you can speak Greek!](#)"



## **Acts 21:38**



**Are you not then the Egyptian who before this day revolted and led the 4,000 men of the 'Assassins' out into the wilderness (ULT)  
I thought that you were that fellow from Egypt who wanted to rebel against the government not long ago, and who took four thousand violent men with him out into the desert, so that we could not catch him (UST)**

The commander uses this question and the question "Do you speak Greek?" (verse 37) to express surprise that Paul is not who he thought he was. This could mean: (1) as in ULT, the commander believes that even though Paul speaks Greek, Paul is the Egyptian.

"Even though you speak Greek, I still think you are the Egyptian who before this day revolted and led the four thousand men of the 'Assassins' out into the wilderness." (2) Because Paul speaks Greek, the commander thinks that perhaps Paul is not the Egyptian. "So you speak Greek. Perhaps I was wrong to think you were that Egyptian who before this day revolted and led the four thousand men of the 'Assassins' out into the wilderness." It is best to retain the questions if the reader can infer one of the two meanings from them. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Are you not then the Egyptian (ULT)  
I thought that you were that fellow from Egypt...not (UST)**

Shortly before Paul's visit, an unnamed man from Egypt had launched a revolt against Rome in Jerusalem. Later he escaped into the wilderness and the commander wonders if Paul might be the same man. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the 4,000 men (ULT)  
four thousand violent men with him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the four thousand terrorists" (See: [Numbers](#))

**day...of...Assassins (ULT)  
wanted to rebel against the government...long ago...so that we could not catch him (UST)**

This refers to a group of Jewish rebels who killed Romans and anyone who supported Romans.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egyptian](#)
- [day](#)
- [wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow from Egypt](#)
- [wanted to rebel against the government...long ago](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Are you not then the [Egyptian](#) who before this [day](#) revolted and led the 4,000 men of the 'Assassins' out into the [wilderness](#)?"

### UST

<sup>38</sup> I thought that you were that [fellow from Egypt](#) who [wanted to rebel against the government not long ago](#), and who took four thousand violent men with him out into the [desert](#), so that we could not catch him."

- [desert](#)

**Acts 21:39****I ask...you (ULT)****I request that...you (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I beg you" or "I plead with you"

**allow me (ULT)****let me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "please allow me" or "please permit me"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- Jewish
- from Tarsus
- in Cilicia
- a citizen
- people

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul
- I am a Jew
- I was born in Tarsus
- which is an important city
- in the province of Cilicia
- people

**ULT**

<sup>39</sup> But Paul said, "I am a Jewish man from Tarsus in Cilicia, a citizen of a not insignificant city. And I ask you, allow me to speak to the people."

**UST**

<sup>39</sup> Paul answered, "No, I am not! I am a Jew. I was born in Tarsus, which is an important city in the province of Cilicia. I request that you let me speak to the people."

**Acts 21:40****when he had given...permission...him (ULT)  
permitted...commander (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **permission**, you could express the same idea with a verb. Alternate translation: “when the commander permitted him to speak” or “after the commander allowed him to speak” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Paul, standing on the steps (ULT)  
Paul to speak. So Paul stood on the steps (UST)**

The word **steps** here refers to the steps on the stairway to the fortress.

**motioned with {his} hand to the people (ULT)  
and motioned with his hand for the crowd to  
be quiet...in the crowd (UST)**

It can be stated explicitly why Paul **motioned with his hand**. Alternate translation: “motioned with his hand for the people to be quiet” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**And...when there was a deep silence (ULT)  
Then the...for the crowd to be quiet...became quiet, Paul (UST)**

Alternate translation: “And when the people were completely silent”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- with...{his} hand
- to...people
- Hebrew

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul to speak
- hand
- for the crowd to be quiet
- Hebrew

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> And when he had given him permission, Paul, standing on the steps, motioned with {his} hand to the people. And when there was a deep silence, he spoke to them in the Hebrew language, saying,

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> Then the commander permitted Paul to speak. So Paul stood on the steps and motioned with his hand for the crowd to be quiet. And after the people in the crowd became quiet, Paul spoke to them in their own Hebrew language.

## Acts 22

### Acts 22 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the second account of Paul's conversion in the book of Acts. Because this is such an important event in the early church, there are three accounts of Paul's conversion. (See: [Acts 9](#) and [Acts 26](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “In the Hebrew language”

Most Jews at this time spoke Aramaic and Greek. Most of the people who spoke Hebrew were educated Jewish scholars. This is why the people paid attention when Paul started speaking in Hebrew.

#### “The Way”

No one knows for sure who first started calling believers “followers of the Way.” This is probably what the believers called themselves, because the Bible often speaks of a person living his life as if that person were walking on a path or “way.” If this is true, the believers were “following the way of the Lord” by living in a way that pleased God.

#### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens. The “chief captain” could have been punished for treating a Roman citizen the same way he would treat a non-citizen.

## Acts 22:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul speaks to the Jewish crowd in Jerusalem.

### brothers, and fathers (ULT)

### Paul said, "Jewish elders and...fellow (UST)

This is a polite way of addressing men who are Paul's age as well as the older men in the audience.

### listen to my defense to you now (ULT)

### my...listen to me now...to those who are accusing me (UST)

Alternate translation: "I will now explain to you what I have done" or "please listen as I tell you my story"

### Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- fathers

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul said, "Jewish elders
- fellow

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> "Men, **brothers**, and **fathers**, listen to my defense to you now."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> **Paul said**, "**Jewish elders** and my **fellow Jews**, listen to me now while I speak to those who are accusing me!"

## Acts 22:2

### General Information:

This verse gives background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

**in the Hebrew language (ULT)  
the crowd of people...in their own...Hebrew  
language, they (UST)**

The **Hebrew language** was the language of the Jews.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Hebrew](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Hebrew](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And when they heard that he was speaking to them in the [Hebrew](#) language, they became even more quiet. And he said,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> When the crowd of people heard Paul speaking to them in their own [Hebrew](#) language, they became quiet and listened. Then Paul said to them,





## **Acts 22:3**

**but educated in this city at the feet of  
Gamaliel (ULT)  
the city of...but I grew up here in Jerusalem.  
When I was young, I learned the...gave...  
Gamaliel was my teacher. I obeyed (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "but I was a student of rabbi Gamaliel here in Jerusalem" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**at the feet of Gamaliel (ULT)  
When I was young, I learned the...gave...  
Gamaliel was my teacher. I obeyed (UST)**

Here, **feet** stands for the place where a student would sit while learning from a teacher. Alternate translation: "by Gamaliel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of Gamaliel (ULT)  
Gamaliel was my teacher. I obeyed (UST)**

**Gamaliel** was one of the most prominent teachers of the Jewish law. See how you translated this name in [Acts 5:34](#).

**instructed according to the strict ways of the law of our fathers (ULT)  
laws that Moses...to our ancestors...those laws (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "he instructed me how to carefully obey every law of our forefathers" or "the instruction I received followed the exact details of the law of our forefathers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**of the law of our fathers (ULT)  
our ancestors...those laws (UST)**

This refers to **the law** that God gave to the people of Israel through Moses. Alternate translation: "of the law of our ancestors"

**the...being zealous...for God (ULT)  
those laws because I have wanted to obey God, and I am sure (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I am completely dedicated to obeying God" or "I am passionate about my service to God"

**just as all of you are today (ULT)  
as...all of you also obey those laws (UST)**

Paul compares himself with the crowd. Alternate translation: "in the same way all of you are today"

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> "I am a [Jewish](#) man, born in [Tarsus of Cilicia](#), but educated in this city at the feet of Gamaliel, [instructed](#) according to the strict ways of the [law of our fathers](#), being [zealous for God](#), [just as](#) all of you are today.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> "I am [a Jew](#), [as](#) are all of you. I was born in the city of [Tarsus](#), [in the province of Cilicia](#), but I grew up here in Jerusalem. When I was young, I learned the [laws that Moses](#) gave [to our ancestors](#). Gamaliel was my teacher. I obeyed those laws [because I have wanted to obey God](#), and I am sure that all of you also obey those laws.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jewish
- Tarsus
- of Cilicia
- instructed
- of...law
- of our fathers
- zealous
- for God
- just as

## Translation Words - UST

- a Jew
- as
- Tarsus
- in the province of Cilicia
- laws that Moses...to
- our ancestors
- our ancestors
- because I have wanted to obey
- God

**Acts 22:4**

**I persecuted this Way (ULT)  
That is why I tried to arrest those who  
believed the message of God about Jesus...  
who believed the message (UST)**

Here, **this Way** represents the people who belonged to the group called "the Way." Alternate translation: "I persecuted the people who belonged to this Way" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**this Way (ULT)  
is why...those who believed the message of  
God about Jesus...who believed the message  
(UST)**

The term **this Way** was used to refer to Christianity. See how you translated **the Way** in [Acts 9:2](#).

**as far as death (ULT)  
I looked for ways to kill them (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **death**, you could express the same idea with the verb "kill" or "die." Alternate translation: "and I looked for ways to kill them" or "to the point of killing them" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**binding and delivering to prison both men and women**

Alternate translation: "tying up both men and women and taking them to prison"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [persecuted](#)
- [death](#)
- [binding](#)
- [prison](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [I tried to arrest](#)
- [to kill them](#)
- [Whenever I found...I had them thrown](#)
- [jail](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> I [persecuted](#) this Way as far as [death](#), [binding](#) and delivering to [prison](#) both men and women,

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> That is why I [tried to arrest](#) those who believed the message of God about Jesus. I looked for ways [to kill them](#). [Whenever I found](#) men or women who believed the message, [I had them thrown](#) into [jail](#).



## **Acts 22:5**

**testifies (ULT)**  
**knows this (UST)**

Alternate translation: "can testify" or "can tell you"

**also...from whom...having received letters (ULT)**  
**The...They gave me letters to take...them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "who also gave me letters"

**to the brothers in Damascus (ULT)**  
**to their fellow Jews in the city of Damascus (UST)**

Here, **brothers** refers to "fellow Jews."

**to bring back...the...in...in bonds...Jerusalem...who were there (ULT)**  
**arrest people...in the...gave me power to go there...as prisoners...Jerusalem (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to bind with chains those of the Way and bring them back to Jerusalem"

**in order that they might be punished (ULT)**  
**so that they would be punished here (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "in order that they may receive punishment" or "in order that the Jewish authorities could punish them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [high priest](#)
- [testifies](#)
- [elders](#)
- [having received](#)
- [letters](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [in bonds](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [they might be punished](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [high priest](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> as also the [high priest testifies](#) for me, and all the [elders](#) from whom also [having received letters](#) to the [brothers](#) in [Damascus](#), I was going there indeed to bring back [in bonds](#) to [Jerusalem](#) those who were there in order that [they might be punished](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> The [high priest knows this](#), and so do the other men who belong to [our Jewish council](#). They gave [me letters to take](#) to [their fellow Jews](#) in the [city of Damascus](#). Those letters gave me power to go there and arrest people who believed in Jesus. I was then to take [them as prisoners](#) to [Jerusalem](#), so that [they would be punished here](#).

- knows this
- our Jewish council
- me letters to take
- their fellow Jews
- city of Damascus
- them
- prisoners
- Jerusalem
- they would be punished here



## Acts 22:6

### Connecting Statement:

Paul describes his encounter with Jesus.

### And it happened to me that (ULT) I went to Damascus (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Damascus
- a...light
- heaven

### Translation Words - UST

- to Damascus
- a...light
- sky

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And it happened to me that, traveling and nearing **Damascus**, about noon, suddenly a great **light** from **heaven** shone around me.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> So I went to Damascus. About noon, as I got near **to Damascus**, suddenly a bright **light** from the **sky** flashed all around me.

**Acts 22:7**

**heard a voice saying to me (ULT)**  
**I heard the voice of someone speaking to me**  
**from up in the sky, saying (UST)**

Here, **voice** stands for the person speaking. Alternate translation: "I heard someone say to me" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a voice
- Saul
- Saul
- are you persecuting

**Translation Words - UST**

- the voice of someone speaking
- Saul
- Saul
- do you do things to hurt

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> And I fell to the ground and heard a voice saying to me, 'Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?'

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> The light was so bright that I fell to the ground. Then I heard the voice of someone speaking to me from up in the sky, saying, 'Saul! Saul! Why do you do things to hurt me?'

## Acts 22:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Jesus the Nazarene
- Nazarene
- are persecuting

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- Jesus of Nazareth the
- of Nazareth
- are hurting

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And so I answered, 'Who are you, Lord?' And he said to me, 'I am Jesus the Nazarene, whom you are persecuting.'

### UST

<sup>8</sup> I answered, 'Who are you, Lord?' He replied, 'I am Jesus of Nazareth the one whom you are hurting.'

## Acts 22:9

**the...they did not understand...voice of the one who was speaking to me (ULT)**  
**the...not understand what...voice said (UST)**

Here, **voice** stands for the person speaking. Alternate translation: "they did not understand what the one who spoke to me was saying" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [light](#)
- [voice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bright light](#)
- [voice](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But those who were with me saw the [light](#), but they did not understand the [voice](#) of the one who was speaking to me.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> The men who were traveling with me saw the [bright light](#), but they did not understand what the [voice](#) said.

## Acts 22:10

### and there you will be told (ULT)

### A man there will tell you (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “there someone will tell you” or “there you will find out” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Having arisen](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [has been appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Get up and](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [I have planned](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But I said, ‘What should I do, [Lord](#)?’ And the [Lord](#) said to me, ‘[Having arisen](#), go into [Damascus](#), and there you will be told about everything that [has been appointed](#) for you to do.’

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then I asked, ‘[Lord](#), what do you want me to do?’ The [Lord](#) told me, ‘[Get up and](#) go into [Damascus](#). A man there will tell you all that [I have planned](#) for you to do.’

## Acts 22:11

**I could not see because of the glory of that light (ULT)  
that, I could not see, because the bright light had caused me to become blind...the (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I was left blind because of that light's brightness"

**being led by the hands by those who were with me, I came into Damascus (ULT)  
men who were with me took me by the hand and led me to Damascus (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "those with me guided me into Damascus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**being led by the hands by those who were with me (ULT)  
men who were with me took me by the hand (UST)**

Here, **hands** stands for those leading Paul. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [glory](#)
- [of...light](#)
- [Damascus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bright](#)
- [light had caused me to become blind](#)
- [Damascus](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And when I could not see because of the [glory](#) of that [light](#), being led by the hands by those who were with me, I came into [Damascus](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> After that, I could not see, because the [bright light had caused me to become blind](#). So the men who were with me took me by the hand and led me to [Damascus](#).

**Acts 22:12**

**a...Ananias...certain (ULT)**  
**name was Ananias came to see me...A man whose (UST)**

The words **a certain Ananias** are used to introduce Ananias as a new character in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**a...Ananias (ULT)**  
**name was Ananias came to see me (UST)**

Though this is not the same **Ananias** who died earlier in Acts [Acts 5:3](#), you may translate it the same way though as you did in [Acts 5:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**a devout man according to the law (ULT)**  
**A man whose...He was a man who honored God and obeyed the Jewish laws... in (UST)**

Ananias was very serious about following God's **law**.

**being testified to by all the Jews who lived there (ULT)**  
**All the Jews living...Damascus said good things about him (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "having a good reputation among all the Jews who lived there" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [law](#)
- [being testified to](#)
- [Jews](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jewish laws](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [said good things](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> And a certain Ananias, a devout man according to the [law](#), [being testified to](#) by all the [Jews](#) who lived there,

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> A man whose name was Ananias came to see me. He was a man who honored God and obeyed the [Jewish laws](#). All the [Jews](#) living in Damascus [said good things](#) about him.

**Acts 22:13****Saul, brother (ULT)  
My friend Saul (UST)**

Here, **brother** is a polite way to address someone. Alternate translation: "Saul, my friend"

**look up (ULT)  
see again (UST)**

This phrase is an idiom that means "receive your sight." (See: [Idiom](#))

**that very hour (ULT)  
Instantly (UST)**

This was a customary way of saying something happened immediately. Alternate translation: "at that instant" or "instantly" or "immediately" (See: [Idiom](#))

**And...I...looked up to him (ULT)  
I could see and...I saw him (UST)**

This phrase is an idiom that means he received his sight. Alternate translation: "And ... I was able to see him" or "And ... I saw him" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Saul](#)
- [brother](#)
- [hour](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [friend](#)
- [My...Saul](#)
- [Instantly](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> came to me and having stood by me, said to me, 'Saul, brother, look up.' And that very hour I looked up to him.

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> He came and stood beside me and said to me, 'My friend Saul, see again!' Instantly I could see and I saw him standing beside me.



**Acts 22:14****he...said (ULT)****The...he said (UST)**

The word **he** refers to Ananias ([Acts 22:12](#)).

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul finishes telling what had happened to him in Damascus. He quotes what Ananias said to him. This is still part of his speech to the crowd in Jerusalem.

**his will (ULT)****will show you what he wants you to do...He (UST)**

Alternate translation: "what God is planning and will cause to happen"

**to hear the voice from his own mouth (ULT)****you have heard him speak to you himself (UST)**

Both **voice** and **mouth** refer to the one speaking. Alternate translation: "to hear him speak directly to you" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- God
- of...fathers
- appointed
- to know
- his...will
- Righteous One
- the voice

**Translation Words - UST**

- God whom we worship and whom
- ancestors worshiped
- has chosen
- will show you what he wants you to do
- will show you what he wants you to do...He
- righteous one, Jesus the Messiah
- speak

**ULT**

**14** And he said, 'The God of our fathers appointed you to know his will, and to see the Righteous One, and to hear the voice from his own mouth,

**UST**

**14** Then he said: 'The God whom we worship and whom our ancestors worshiped has chosen you and will show you what he wants you to do. He has shown you the righteous one, Jesus the Messiah, and you have heard him speak to you himself.

## Acts 22:15

### to all men (ULT)

### to...people everywhere (UST)

Here, **men** means all people whether male or female. Alternate translation: "to all people" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a witness

### Translation Words - UST

- tell

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> for you will be a witness for him to all men about what you have seen and heard.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> He wants you to tell people everywhere what you have seen and heard from him.

**Acts 22:16****now (ULT)****now (UST)**

Here, **now** does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

**why are you waiting (ULT)****do not delay (UST)**

This question was asked to exhort Paul to be baptized. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “do not wait!” or “do not delay!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**be baptized (ULT)****let me baptize you (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “let me baptize you” or “receive baptism” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**wash away your sins (ULT)****and ask God to forgive you for your sins (UST)**

As washing one’s body removes dirt, calling on the name of Jesus for forgiveness cleanses one’s inner being from sin. Alternate translation: “ask forgiveness for your sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**having called on his name (ULT)****pray to the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **name** refers to the Lord. Alternate translation: “having called on the Lord” or “trusting in the Lord”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Having arisen](#)
- [be baptized](#)
- [sins](#)
- [having called on](#)
- [name](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Stand up](#)
- [let me baptize you](#)
- [pray to](#)
- [the Lord Jesus](#)
- [sins](#)

**ULT**

**16** And now why are you waiting? [Having arisen, be baptized](#), and wash away your [sins](#), [having called on his name](#).’

**UST**

**16** So now do not delay! [Stand up, let me baptize you](#), and [pray to the Lord Jesus](#) and ask God to forgive you for your [sins!](#)”

**Acts 22:17****Connecting Statement:**

Paul begins to tell the crowd about his vision of Jesus.

**And it happened to me that (ULT)****Later, I (UST)**

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**in...I fell...a trance (ULT)****One day I went to the...there, I saw...a vision (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I had a vision" or "God gave me a vision"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- when I had returned
- Jerusalem
- was praying
- temple

**Translation Words - UST**

- returned
- Jerusalem
- temple courtyard
- while...was praying

**ULT**

**17** And it happened to me that when I had returned to Jerusalem and I was praying in the temple, I fell into a trance.

**UST**

**17** "Later, I returned to Jerusalem. One day I went to the temple courtyard and while I was praying there, I saw a vision.

**Acts 22:18**

**I saw him saying to me (ULT)**  
**The Lord spoke to me...saying...Do not stay here (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I saw Jesus as he said to me"

**they will not accept your testimony about me (ULT)**  
**not believe what you tell them about me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "those who live in Jerusalem will not believe what you tell them about me"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jerusalem
- they will...accept
- testimony

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jerusalem
- believe what
- tell them

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> And I saw him saying to me, 'Hurry and go away from **Jerusalem** in haste, because **they will** not **accept** your **testimony** about me.'

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> The Lord spoke to me, saying, 'Do not stay here! Leave **Jerusalem** now, because the people here will not **believe what you tell them** about me!'

**Acts 22:19****they themselves know (ULT)****they know (UST)**

Here the words **they themselves** refers to the non-believing Jews in Jerusalem.

**they themselves know (ULT)****they know (UST)**

The word **themselves** is used for emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**according to the synagogues (ULT)****to many of our synagogues looking for people...I was even beating them (UST)**

Paul went to the **synagogues** to find Jews who believed in Jesus. Alternate translation: "in each of the synagogues" or "in every synagogue"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- they...know
- who believed
- synagogues

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lord
- know
- many of our synagogues looking for people
- who believe

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> And I said, 'Lord, **they** themselves **know** that I was imprisoning and beating those **who believed** in you according to the **synagogues**.

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> But I said to him, 'Lord, they **know** that I went to **many of our synagogues looking for people who believe** in you. I was putting in jail those whom I found who believed in you, and I was even beating them.

**Acts 22:20****the blood of Stephen your witness was spilled****(ULT)****Stephen was killed...told people about you****(UST)**

Here, **blood** stands for Stephen's life. To **spill blood** means to kill.  
 Alternate translation: "your witness Stephen was killed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the blood of Stephen your witness was spilled****(ULT)****Stephen was killed...told people about you****(UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they killed Stephen who testified about you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> And when the [blood of Stephen](#) your [witness](#) was spilled, I myself also was standing by and agreeing, and [guarding](#) the [outer garments](#) of those who killed him.'

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> They remember that when [Stephen was killed](#) because he [told people](#) about you, I stood there watching and approving of what they were doing. I even [guarded](#) the [outer clothes that those](#) who were murdering him had thrown aside!

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [blood](#)
- [of Stephen](#)
- [witness](#)
- [guarding](#)
- [outer garments](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Stephen](#)
- [was killed](#)
- [told people](#)
- [I...guarded](#)
- [outer clothes that those](#)

## Acts 22:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- will send
- the Gentiles

### Translation Words - UST

- going to send
- non-Jews

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But he said to me, 'Go, because I will send you far away to the Gentiles.'

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> But the Lord said to me, 'No, do not stay here! Leave Jerusalem, because I am going to send you far away from here to other people groups, the non-Jews!'



**Acts 22:22**

**to him...for him (ULT)**  
**he talked...to live any longer (UST)**

Here both instances of the words **him** refer to Paul.

**Remove such a one from the earth (ULT)**  
**what Paul was saying...other people groups...**  
**shouting...Kill him...He does not deserve (UST)**

The phrase **from the earth** adds emphasis to "Remove such a one."  
 Alternate translation: "Kill him"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- voice
- earth
- to live

**Translation Words - UST**

- shouting, "Kill him
- He does not deserve
- to live any longer

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> And they listened to him until this word, and then they lifted up their voice, saying, "Remove such a one from the earth, for it is not right for him to live."

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> The people listened to what Paul was saying until he talked about the Lord sending him to other people groups. Then they began shouting, "Kill him! He does not deserve to live any longer!"

**Acts 22:23****And as they were shouting (ULT)  
While they were shouting...their (UST)**

The phrase **as they were** is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time.

**throwing off {their} outer garments, and  
throwing dust into the air (ULT)  
outer garments and threw dust into the air,  
which showed how angry they were (UST)**

These actions show that the Jews there are outraged because they feel Paul has spoken against God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [their} outer garments](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [outer garments and threw dust](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> And as they were shouting and throwing off [{their} outer garments](#), and throwing dust into the air,

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> While they were shouting, they took off their [outer garments and threw dust](#) into the air, which showed how angry they were.



## **Acts 22:24**

## **commander (ULT)**

### **leader (UST)**

The **commander** was a Roman military officer or leader of about 600 soldiers.

## **commanded...him to be brought in (ULT)**

### **commanded...that Paul be taken (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "ordered his soldiers to bring Paul" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## **the fortress (ULT)**

### **the prison (UST)**

This **fortress** was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in [Acts 21:34](#).

## **commanding him to be examined by flogging (ULT)**

### **He told the soldiers that they should whip Paul...him tell (UST)**

The commander wanted to torture Paul by whipping him to ensure that he was telling the truth. Alternate translation: "ordering that Paul be whipped to force him to tell the truth" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **commanding him to be examined by flogging (ULT)**

### **He told the soldiers that they should whip Paul...him tell (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "ordering his soldiers to whip Paul to force him to tell the truth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- commander
- commanded
- fortress
- he might know
- they were shouting

## **Translation Words - UST**

- leader
- commanded
- prison
- make
- angry

## **ULT**

<sup>24</sup> the **commander** **commanded** him to be brought in to the **fortress**, commanding him to be examined by flogging, so that **he might know** for what reason **they were shouting** against him like that.

## **UST**

<sup>24</sup> So the **leader** **commanded** that Paul be taken into the **prison**. He told the soldiers that they should whip Paul in order to **make** him tell what he had done that made the Jews so **angry**.

## Acts 22:25

**they had stretched...out (ULT)**  
**they stretched his arms out and (UST)**

Here the word **they** refers to the soldiers.

**for the whip (ULT)**  
**tied them so that (UST)**

The **whip** was made from strips of leather or animal hide.

**If it is lawful for you to whip a man who is a Roman and uncondemned (ULT)**  
**You will be acting unlawfully if you whip me, a Roman citizen whom no one has put on trial and condemned (UST)**

Paul uses this question to make the centurion check the validity of having his soldiers whip Paul. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is not lawful for you to whip a man who is a Roman and who was not given his legal right to a trial!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- centurion
- who is a Roman

### Translation Words - UST

- But Paul
- soldier
- a Roman citizen whom no one has put on trial

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But when they had stretched him out for the whip, Paul said to the centurion who was standing by, "If it is lawful for you to whip a man who is a Roman and uncondemned ...?"

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then they stretched his arms out and tied them so that they could whip him on his back. But Paul said to the soldier near him, "You will be acting unlawfully if you whip me, a Roman citizen whom no one has put on trial and condemned!"

## Acts 22:26

### What are you about to do (ULT) the commander...Surely you would not command us to whip him (UST)

This question is used to urge the commander to reconsider his plan to whip Paul. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not do this!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [centurion](#)
- [to...commander](#)
- [he reported](#)
- [a Roman](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [officer](#)
- [commander](#)
- [and reported it to him](#)
- [a Roman citizen](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> And when the [centurion](#) heard this, having gone to the [commander](#), [he reported](#), saying, "What are you about to do? For this man is [a Roman](#)."

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> When the [officer](#) heard that, he went to the [commander and reported it to him](#). He said to the commander, "This man is [a Roman citizen](#)! Surely you would not command us to whip him!"

## Acts 22:27

**to him...the (ULT)**

**Paul...The (UST)**

Here the words **him** and **he** refer to Paul.

**having come...the commander (ULT)**

**He himself went into...The commander (UST)**

Here, **come** can be translated as "gone." (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [commander](#)
- [a Roman](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commander](#)
- [really a Roman citizen](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> And so, having come, the [commander](#) said to him, "Tell me, are you [a Roman](#)?" And he said, "Yes."

### UST

<sup>27</sup> The [commander](#) was surprised when he heard that. He himself went into the prison and said to Paul, "Tell me, are you [really a Roman citizen](#)?" Paul answered, "Yes, I am."



**Acts 22:28**

**I bought this citizenship with a large amount of money (ULT)**

**I paid a lot of money to become a Roman citizen (UST)**

The captain may be making this statement because he knows how hard it is to become a Roman citizen, and he suspects Paul is not telling truth. Alternate translation: "I paid a lot of money to the Roman authorities to become a citizen of Rome"

**I...bought this citizenship (ULT)**

**I...paid...to become a Roman citizen (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **citizenship**, you could express the same idea with a verb. Alternate translation: "I became a citizen by paying for it" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**And...I...was indeed born {as one (ULT)**

**Then...also a Roman citizen. I...born a Roman citizen (UST)**

If a father is a Roman citizen, then his children become Roman citizens automatically when they are **born**. Paul's father was a Roman. Alternate translation: "But I am a citizen by birth!"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- commander
- citizenship
- Paul

**Translation Words - UST**

- commander
- to become a Roman citizen
- Paul

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> And the [commander](#) answered, "I bought this [citizenship](#) with a large amount of money." But [Paul](#) said, "I, however, was indeed born {as one}."

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> Then the [commander](#) said, "I am also a Roman citizen. I paid a lot of money [to become a Roman citizen](#)." [Paul](#) said, "But I was born a Roman citizen."

## Acts 22:29

**those who were about...to examine (ULT)**  
**The soldiers were about...to whip Paul and to ask him questions about what he had done (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the men who planned to examine" or "the men who were preparing to question"

### Translation Words - ULT

- commander
- was afraid
- having learned
- a Roman
- bound

### Translation Words - UST

- commander
- became afraid
- because he knew
- was a Roman citizen
- he had broken the law when he commanded...to tie up

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then those who were about to examine him drew back from him immediately, and the commander also was afraid, having learned that he was a Roman, and that he had bound him.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> The soldiers were about to whip Paul and to ask him questions about what he had done. But when they heard what Paul said, they left him. The commander also became afraid, because he knew that Paul was a Roman citizen and that he had broken the law when he commanded the soldiers to tie up Paul's hands.

**Acts 22:30**

**he was being accused...he released him...he placed him (ULT)**  
**to know why...were accusing Paul. So the... told him...to stand (UST)**

Here the first occurrence of the word **he** refers to Paul, and the second and third occurrences refer to the chief captain. Both occurrences of the word **him** refer to Paul.

**he released him (ULT)**  
**told him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the commander ordered his soldiers to untie Paul's bonds"

**having brought down Paul (ULT)**  
**Then he took Paul to where the council was meeting (UST)**

From the fortress, there is a stairway going **down** to the temple courts.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- to know
- he was being accused
- Jews
- commanded
- chief priests
- Sanhedrin
- to assemble
- Paul

**Translation Words - UST**

- to know why...were accusing Paul. So the
- to know why...were accusing Paul. So the
- Jews
- called the
- called the
- chief priests
- council members to meet
- Paul

**ULT**

<sup>30</sup> And on the next day, wanting to know for certain that which he was being accused by the Jews, he released him and commanded the chief priests and all the Sanhedrin to assemble. And having brought down Paul, he placed him among them.

**UST**

<sup>30</sup> The commander still wanted to know why the Jews were accusing Paul. So the next day he told the soldiers to take the chains off Paul. He also called the chief priests and the other council members to meet. Then he took Paul to where the council was meeting and told him to stand before them.

## Acts 23

### Acts 23 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted material in 23:5.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Resurrection of the dead

The Pharisees believed that after people died, they would become alive again and God would either reward them or punish them. The Sadducees believed that once people died, they stayed dead and would never become alive again. (See: [raise](#), [rise](#), [lift](#), [get up](#), [stir up](#), and [reward](#), [prize](#), [deserve](#))

#### “Called a curse”

Some Jews promised God that they would not eat or drink until they killed Paul, and they asked God to punish them if they did not do what they had promised to do.

#### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens. The “chief captain” could have been punished for treating a Roman citizen the same way he would treat a non-citizen.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Whitewash

This is a common metaphor in Scripture for appearing to be good or clean or righteous when one is evil or unclean or unrighteous. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Acts 23:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul stands before the chief priests and the council members ([Acts 22:30](#)).

### brothers (ULT)

### My fellow (UST)

Here, **brothers** means "fellow Jews."

**the...I have lived as a citizen...before God...in all good conscience until this day (ULT)  
at the...all my life I have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done that I knew was wrong (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I know that even to this day I have done what God has wanted me to do as a Jewish man"

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And having looked directly at the Sanhedrin, Paul said, "Men, brothers, I have lived as a citizen before God in all good conscience until this day."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Paul looked at the Jewish council members and said: "My fellow Jews, all my life I have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done that I knew was wrong."

### Translation Words - ULT

- Sanhedrin
- Paul
- brothers
- have lived as a citizen
- before God
- good
- in...conscience
- day

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- Jewish council members
- My fellow
- have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done
- have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done
- have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done
- have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done
- that I knew was wrong

## Acts 23:2

### Ananias (ULT)

### Ananias (UST)

**Ananias** is the name of a man. Though this is the same name, this not the same Ananias as in [Acts 5:1](#) nor the same Ananias as in [Acts 9:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [high priest](#)
- [commanded](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [high priest heard what Paul said](#)
- [told the men](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> But the [high priest](#) Ananias [commanded](#) those who stood by him to strike him on the mouth.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> When Ananias the [high priest](#) heard [what Paul said](#), he [told the men](#) who were standing near Paul to hit him on the mouth.

## Acts 23:3

### you whitewashed wall (ULT) hypocrite (UST)

This refers to a **wall** that was painted white to make it look clean. Paul told Ananias that just as a wall can be painted to look clean, so Ananias appeared to look morally clean, but he was really full of evil intent. Alternate translation: “you wall painted white” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### do you sit judging me by the law, yet command me to be struck, against the law (ULT)

**You sit there...judge me, using the laws that God gave Moses. But you yourself disobey those laws, because you commanded me to be struck without having proved that I have done anything that is wrong (UST)**

Paul uses a question to point out Ananias' hypocrisy. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “you sit there to judge me by the law, yet you command me to be struck against the law.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### command me to be struck (ULT) you commanded me to be struck without having proved that I have done anything that is wrong (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. You can use the same word for **strike** as you did in the phrase “God will strike you.” Alternate translation: “command people to strike me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- God
- judging
- law
- command

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- God
- judge
- laws
- you commanded

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then Paul said to him, “God is about to strike you, you whitewashed wall. And do you sit **judging** me by the **law**, yet **command** me to be struck, against the law?”

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Then Paul said to Ananias, “God will punish you for that, you hypocrite! You sit there and **judge** me, using the laws that God gave Moses. But you yourself disobey those **laws**, because **you** **commanded** me to be struck without having proved that I have done anything that is wrong!”

## Acts 23:4

### Are you insulting the high priest of God (ULT) to him, “You should not speak badly to God’s servant, our high priest (UST)

The men use this question to scold Paul for what he has said in [Acts 23:3](#). If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should not insult God’s high priest!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [high priest](#)
- [of God](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God’s servant](#)
- [our high priest](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But those who stood by said, “Are you insulting the [high priest of God](#)?”

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> The men who were standing near Paul said to him, “You should not speak badly to [God’s servant, our high priest](#)!”



**Acts 23:5****For it is written (ULT)  
because I know...it is written in our Jewish law  
(UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "For Moses wrote in the law" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**not...You shall...speak evil of a ruler of your  
people (ULT)  
not...about our high priest...Do...speak evil of  
any of your rulers (UST)**

Paul quotes from the writings of Moses.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- I did...know
- brothers
- a high priest
- it is written
- evil
- of a ruler
- of...people

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul
- My fellow Jews, I am sorry that I said that
- I did...know
- the high priest. If I had known that, I would not have talked badly
- it is written in our Jewish law
- evil of any of
- your
- rulers

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> And Paul said, "I did not know, brothers, that he is a high priest. For it is written, You shall not speak evil of a ruler of your people."

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> Paul replied, "My fellow Jews, I am sorry that I said that. I did not know that the man who told one of you to hit me is the high priest. If I had known that, I would not have talked badly about our high priest, because I know that it is written in our Jewish law, 'Do not speak evil of any of your rulers!'"



## **Acts 23:6**

**brothers (ULT)**  
**My fellow (UST)**

Here, **brothers** means “fellow Jews.”

**Pharisees...a son (ULT)**  
**Pharisees...all in my family were Pharisees, as well (UST)**

Here, **son** means he is the literal son of a Pharisee and also the descendant of Pharisees. Alternate translation: “and my father and forefathers were Pharisees”

**I am being judged (ULT)**  
**I have been put on trial here because (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “you are judging me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**concerning the hope and resurrection of the dead (ULT)**  
**and...all in my family were Pharisees, as well...I am sure that one day God will cause those who have died to become alive again (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **resurrection**, you can express the idea as “come back to life.” Alternate translation: “because I have confidence that the dead will come back to life again” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**concerning the hope and resurrection of the dead (ULT)**  
**and...all in my family were Pharisees, as well...I am sure that one day God will cause those who have died to become alive again (UST)**

If your language does not use the nominal adjective **dead**, you can express it as “those who have died.” Alternate translation: “I have confidence that those who have died will come back to life again” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [when...realized](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [am being judged](#)
- [the hope](#)
- [resurrection](#)
- [of the dead](#)
- [Sadducees](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [a Pharisee](#)
- [of Pharisees \(2\)](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> But [when Paul realized](#) that the one group was [Sadducees](#) and the other [Pharisees](#), [he shouted](#) in the [Sanhedrin](#), “Men, [brothers](#), I am a [Pharisee](#), a [son of Pharisees](#). I am being judged concerning [the hope](#) and [resurrection of the dead](#).”

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> [Paul knew](#) that some of the council members were [Sadducees](#) and others were [Pharisees](#). So [he called out](#) in the council hall, “[My fellow Jews](#), I am a [Pharisee](#), and [all in my family were Pharisees, as well](#). I have been put on trial here because I am sure that [one day God will cause those who have died to become alive again](#).”

- he shouted
- Sanhedrin
- brothers
- a son

## Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- knew
- all in my family were Pharisees, as well
- have been put on trial here because
- I am sure that one day God will cause...to become alive again
- those who have died
- Sadducees
- Pharisees
- a Pharisee
- all in my family were Pharisees, as well (2)
- So he called out
- council
- My fellow
- all in my family were Pharisees, as well

## Acts 23:7

**the crowd was divided (ULT)  
started to argue with one another about  
whether or not people who have died will  
become alive again...the other (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the people in the crowd strongly disagreed with one another"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [between...Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And when he said this, an argument began [between](#) the [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#), and the crowd was divided.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> When he said that, the [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#) started to argue with one another about whether or not people who have died will become alive again, and each of them were arguing with the other.

## Acts 23:8

### For the Sadducees ... but the Pharisees

This is background information about the **Sadducees** and **Pharisees**.  
(See: [Background Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- the Sadducees
- resurrection
- angels
- spirits
- the Pharisees
- confess

#### Translation Words - UST

- The Sadducees
- alive again
- They also believe that there are no angels and
- other kinds of spirits
- Pharisees
- believe

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For the Sadducees say there is no resurrection, nor angels, nor spirits, but the Pharisees confess all of them.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> The Sadducees believe that after people die, they will not become alive again. They also believe that there are no angels and no other kinds of spirits. But the Pharisees believe all these things.

## Acts 23:9

### And so a large uproar occurred (ULT) began shouting at one another as they argued...were (UST)

The word **so** marks an event that happened because of something else that happened previously. In this case, the previous event is Paul's stating his belief in the resurrection. Alternate translation: "So they began shouting loudly at one another"

### what if...a spirit has spoken to him, or an angel (ULT) this...Maybe an angel or some other spirit spoke to him (UST)

The Pharisees are rebuking the Sadducees by affirming that spirits and angels do exist and can speak to people. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "perhaps a spirit or an angel has spoken to him!" (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...scribes
- of...Pharisees
- having arisen
- evil
- a spirit
- an angel

### Translation Words - UST

- teachers of the laws
- Pharisees
- stood up
- wrong
- Maybe an angel
- spirit

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And so a large uproar occurred, and some of the [scribes](#) of the group of the [Pharisees, having arisen](#), contended, saying, "We find nothing [evil](#) in this man. But what if [a spirit](#) has spoken to him, or [an angel](#)?"

### UST

<sup>9</sup> They began shouting at one another as they argued. Some of the [teachers of the laws](#) who were [Pharisees stood up](#). One of them said, "We think that this man has done nothing [wrong](#). [Maybe an angel](#) or some other [spirit](#) spoke to him and what he says is true."





## **Acts 23:10**

**And when a great argument happened (ULT)  
Then the Pharisees and Sadducees became  
violent with one another (UST)**

The phrase **a great argument** can be re-stated as “to argue violently.” Alternate translation: “And when they began to argue violently” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**commander (ULT)  
commander (UST)**

The **commander** was a Roman military officer or leader of about 600 soldiers.

**that...Paul...would be torn to pieces...by them (ULT)  
they would...tear...Paul...to pieces (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that they might tear Paul to pieces” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**that...Paul...would be torn to pieces...by them (ULT)  
they would...tear...Paul...to pieces (UST)**

The phrase **be torn to pieces** might be an exaggeration of how the people might harm Paul. Alternate translation: “that they would cause Paul great physical harm” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**to seize him by force (ULT)  
take Paul away...him up (UST)**

Alternate translation: “to use physical force to take him away”

**into the fortress (ULT)  
into the barracks (UST)**

This **fortress** was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in [Acts 21:34](#).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [commander](#)
- [having feared](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [to seize...by force](#)
- [fortress](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> And when a great argument happened, the [commander](#), [having feared](#) that [Paul](#) would be torn to pieces by them, [commanded](#) the [soldiers](#) to go down [to seize](#) him [by force](#) from the midst of them, and to bring him into the [fortress](#).

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> Then the Pharisees and Sadducees became violent with one another. So the [commander was afraid that](#) they would tear [Paul](#) to pieces. [He told soldiers](#) to go down from the prison and [take Paul away](#) from the council members and bring him up into the [barracks](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- commander
- was afraid that
- would...Paul
- He told
- soldiers
- take Paul away
- barracks

**Acts 23:11****the...following night (ULT)****That...night (UST)**

This means the **night** after the day Paul went before the council.  
Alternate translation: "that night"

**to testify in Rome (ULT)****tell people in Rome...me too (UST)**

The words "about me" are understood. Alternate translation: "to bear witness about me in Rome" or "to testify about me in Rome" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Lord](#)
- [Have courage](#)
- [you have testified to](#)
- [to testify](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Rome](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Lord](#)
- [Have courage](#)
- [told people here](#)
- [tell people...me too](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Rome](#)

**ULT**

**11** But the following night the [Lord](#), having stood beside him, said, "[Have courage](#), for as [you have testified to](#) things concerning me in [Jerusalem](#), so it is necessary also for you [to testify](#) in [Rome](#)."

**UST**

**11** That night, Paul saw the Lord Jesus come and stand near him. The [Lord](#) said to him, "[Have courage!](#) You have [told people here](#) in [Jerusalem](#) about me, and you must [tell people](#) in [Rome](#) about [me too](#)."

## Acts 23:12

### Connecting Statement:

While Paul was in the prison at the fortress, the disbelieving religious Jews vow to kill him.

### having formed a conspiracy (ULT) next morning...some of (UST)

They formed this **conspiracy** for the purpose of killing Paul.  
Alternate translation: "having organized a group with a shared purpose"

### cursed themselves (ULT) who hated...They told themselves that they would (UST)

It can be made explicit what would cause them to be cursed. Alternate translation: "asked God to curse them if they did not do what they promised" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- day
- Jews
- cursed
- Paul

### Translation Words - UST

- next morning
- Jews
- who hated
- Paul

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And when it became day, the Jews, having formed a conspiracy, cursed themselves, saying neither to eat nor to drink until they had killed Paul.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> The next morning some of the Jews who hated Paul met and talked about how to kill him. They told themselves that they would not eat or drink anything until he was dead. They asked God to curse them if they did not do what they promised.

## Acts 23:13

**40 who had formed (ULT)  
forty men who (UST)**

Alternate translation: "forty men who had become part of" (See: [Numbers](#))

**who had formed this conspiracy (ULT)  
who wanted to kill Paul (UST)**

Alternate translation: "who had made this plan" or "who planned to kill Paul"

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And there were more than 40 who had formed this conspiracy.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> There were more than forty men who wanted to kill Paul.

**Acts 23:14****They (ULT)  
them (UST)**

Here the word **They** refers to the forty Jews in [Acts 23:13](#).

**We have cursed ourselves with a curse, to eat nothing until we have killed Paul (ULT)  
God has heard us promise that we will not eat or drink anything until we have killed Paul (UST)**

To make a vow and to ask God to curse them if they do not fulfill their vow is spoken of as if the **curse** were an object that they carry on their shoulders. Alternate translation: "We have sworn to eat nothing until we have killed Paul. We asked God to curse us if we do not do what we promised to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [chief priests](#)
- [elders](#)
- [with a curse](#)
- [We have cursed](#)
- [Paul](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [chief priests](#)
- [Jewish elders](#)
- [God has heard us promise that](#)
- [God has heard us promise that](#)
- [Paul](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> They, having gone to the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#), said, "We have cursed ourselves [with a curse](#), to eat nothing until we have killed [Paul](#)."

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> They went to the [chief priests](#) and [Jewish elders](#) and told them, "God has [heard us promise that](#) we will not eat or drink anything until we have killed [Paul](#)."





## **Acts 23:15**

**you...you...you are going (ULT)**  
**you go...us...you want to talk to Paul some more (UST)**

All instances of **you** are plural and refers to the chief priests and elders. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**we (ULT)**  
**We will be waiting (UST)**

Here, **we** refers to the forty Jews who planned to kill Paul. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**Now, therefore (ULT)**  
**So we request that (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Because what we have just said is true" or "Because we have put ourselves under this curse"

**Now (ULT)**  
**So we request that (UST)**

Here, **Now** does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

**he will bring him down to you (ULT)**  
**him...bring Paul down to us (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the commander will bring Paul from the fortress to meet with you"

**as if you are going to examine more seriously the things concerning him (ULT)**  
**on behalf of...Tell the commander...you want to talk to Paul some more...he (UST)**

Alternate translation: "as though you want to learn more about what Paul has done"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Sanhedrin](#)
- [report](#)
- [to...commander](#)
- [as if](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to the commander and ask...the whole Jewish council](#)
- [to the commander and ask...the whole Jewish council](#)

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> Now, therefore, you along with the [Sanhedrin report](#) to the [commander as if](#) you are going to examine more seriously the things concerning him, so that he will bring him down to you. But we are ready to kill him before his arrival."

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> So we request that you go [to the commander and ask](#) him, on behalf of [the whole Jewish council](#), to bring Paul down to us. Tell the commander that [you want to talk to Paul some more](#). We will be waiting to kill Paul while he is on the way here."

- to the commander and ask...the whole Jewish council
- you want to talk to Paul some more

## Acts 23:16

**the son of the sister...Paul (ULT)**

**the son of Paul's sister (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the son of Paul's sister" or "Paul's nephew"

**having heard...of...of the ambush (ULT)**

**heard...what they were planning to do (UST)**

Alternate translation: "hearing that they were ready to ambush Paul" or "finding out that they were waiting to kill Paul"

**the...fortress (ULT)**

**what they were planning to do...fortress (UST)**

This **fortress** was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in [Acts 21:34](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- of...sister
- Paul
- to Paul
- fortress
- reported this

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- of Paul's
- Paul
- sister
- fortress
- told

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But having heard of the ambush, the son of the sister of Paul went and, having entered into the fortress, reported this to Paul.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> But the son of Paul's sister heard what they were planning to do, so he went into the fortress and told Paul.

## Acts 23:17

**he has...to him (ULT)**

**he needs...to him (UST)**

Here the word **he** refers to Paul's nephew. The word **him** refers to the chief captain.

### Translation Words - ULT

- having called
- of...centurions
- Paul
- commander
- to report

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- heard that, he called
- officers
- commander
- to tell

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And so, having called one of the centurions, Paul said, "Take this young man to the commander, for he has something to report to him."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> When Paul heard that, he called one of the officers and said to him, "Please take this young man to the commander, because he needs to tell him something."

**Acts 23:18****So having taken him, he brought him**

Alternate translation: "So taking the young man, the centurion brought him"

**he...prisoner, Paul, having summoned me (ULT)****So...prisoner Paul called me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "The prisoner named Paul after he asked me to come talk with him"

**the...this...young man (ULT)****the...this...young man (UST)**

Since the chief captain calls him a **young man**, this suggests Paul's nephew may have been 12 to 15 years old.

**ULT**

**18** So having taken him, he brought him to the **commander** and said, "The **prisoner, Paul, having summoned** me, asked me to bring this young man to you. He has something to say to you."

**UST**

**18** So the officer took the young man to the **commander**. The officer said to the commander, "The **prisoner Paul called** me and said, 'Please take this young man to the commander, because he needs to tell him something.'"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- **commander**
- **prisoner**
- **Paul**
- **having summoned**

**Translation Words - UST**

- **commander**
- **prisoner**
- **Paul**
- **called**

## Acts 23:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- commander
- hand
- to report

### Translation Words - UST

- commander
- hand
- to tell

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> So the commander, having taken hold of his hand and having withdrawn to a private place. asked him, "What is it that you have to report to me?"

### UST

<sup>19</sup> The commander took the young man by the hand, led him off by himself, and asked him, "What do you need to tell me?"



**Acts 23:20****The Jews have agreed (ULT)  
There are some Jews who (UST)**

Here, **the Jews** does not mean all **Jews**, but all of the group that was there. Alternate translation: "Some of the Jews have agreed" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**you might bring...Paul...down (ULT)  
bring...Paul (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you would bring Paul down from the fortress"

**as if they were going to inquire something  
more concerning him (ULT)  
want to ask him some more questions...that is  
not true (UST)**

Alternate translation: "pretending they want to learn more about what Paul has done"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Sanhedrin](#)
- [as if](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [There are some Jews](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [their council](#)
- [that is not true](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> So then he said, "The [Jews](#) have agreed to ask you that tomorrow you might bring [Paul](#) down to the [Sanhedrin](#), [as if](#) they were going to inquire something more concerning him.

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> He said, "[There are some Jews](#) who want to bring [Paul](#) before [their council](#) tomorrow. They will say that they want to ask him some more questions. But [that is not true](#).

**Acts 23:21**

**lie in wait...for him (ULT)  
will be hiding and waiting to kill Paul when...  
he passes by on (UST)**

Alternate translation: "are ready to ambush Paul" or "are waiting to kill Paul"

**who have cursed themselves neither to eat  
nor to drink until they have killed him**

Alternate translation: "who have sworn to eat or drink nothing until they have killed Paul. And they asked God to curse them if they do not do what they promised to do"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [have cursed](#)
- [promise](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [They even promised to God that they will](#)
- [to agree to do](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> Therefore you should not be persuaded by them, because more than 40 from these men lie in wait for him, who [have cursed](#) themselves neither to eat nor to drink until they have killed him. Even now they are ready, waiting for the [promise](#) from you."

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> Do not do what they ask you to do, because there are more than forty Jewish men who will be hiding and waiting to kill Paul when he passes by on the way to the council. [They even promised to God that they will](#) not eat or drink anything until they have killed Paul. They are ready to do it, and right now they are waiting for you [to agree to do](#) what they are asking you to do."

## Acts 23:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- commander
- having commanded him
- you have reported

### Translation Words - UST

- commander said
- Do not tell anyone
- you have told

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So the commander dismissed the young man, having commanded him, "Tell no one that you have reported these things to me."

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The commander said to the young man, "Do not tell anyone that you have told me about their plan." Then he sent the young man away.

**Acts 23:23****having summoned (ULT)  
called (UST)**

Alternate translation: "having called to himself"

**200 spearmen (ULT)  
two hundred other soldiers carrying spears.  
All of you must be ready to (UST)**

Alternate translation: "two hundred soldiers that are armed with spears" (See: [Numbers](#))

**the third hour of the night (ULT)  
leave at nine o'clock tonight (UST)**

This was about 9:00 PM.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having summoned](#)
- [of...centurions](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [70](#)
- [hour](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [called](#)
- [officers](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [soldiers riding horses](#)
- [leave at nine o'clock tonight](#)
- [the city of Caesarea](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> And [having summoned](#) a certain two of the [centurions](#), he said, "Prepare 200 [soldiers](#) so that they might go as far as [Caesarea](#), and 70 horsemen, and 200 spearmen from the third [hour](#) of the night,

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> Then the commander [called](#) two of his [officers](#) and told them, "Get a group of two hundred [soldiers](#) ready to travel. Take along seventy [soldiers riding horses](#), and two hundred other soldiers carrying spears. All of you must be ready to [leave at nine o'clock tonight](#), to go down to [the city of Caesarea](#)."

## Acts 23:24

### Paul...Felix...governor (ULT) and...palace of Governor Felix (UST)

**Felix**, who resided at Caesarea, was the Roman **governor** of the area.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- animals
- Paul
- governor

#### Translation Words - UST

- horses
- for Paul
- palace of Governor

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> and provide **animals** in order to, having set **Paul** on them, take him safely to Felix the **governor**."

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> And take along **horses for Paul** to ride, and escort him to the **palace of Governor Felix**."

## Acts 23:25

### General Information:

The chief captain writes a letter to Governor Felix about the arrest of Paul.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a letter

### Translation Words - UST

- a letter

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then he wrote a letter, having this form:

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then the commander wrote a letter to send to the governor. This is what he wrote:

**Acts 23:26****Claudius Lysias...Felix (ULT)****I am Claudius Lysias...You, Felix...our (UST)**

**Claudius Lysias** is the name of the chief captain. Governor **Felix** was the Roman governor over the whole region. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Claudius Lysias to the most excellent Governor Felix, greetings (ULT)****I am Claudius Lysias writing to you. You, Felix, are our governor whom we honor, and I send you my greetings (UST)**

This is a formal introduction to the letter. The commander begins by referring to himself. You can translate it in the first person. Alternate translation: "I, Claudius Lysias, to the most excellent Governor Felix. Greetings to you" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**Claudius Lysias to the most excellent Governor Felix, greetings (ULT)****I am Claudius Lysias writing to you. You, Felix, are our governor whom we honor, and I send you my greetings (UST)**

The words "am writing" are understood. Alternate translation: "I, Claudius Lysias, am writing to you, the most excellent Governor Felix. Greetings to you" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**to the most excellent Governor Felix (ULT)****writing to you. You, Felix, are our governor whom we honor, and I send you my (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to Governor Felix who deserves greatest honors"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- to...Governor

**Translation Words - UST**

- are...governor

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> "Claudius Lysias to the most excellent **Governor Felix**, greetings.

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> "I am Claudius Lysias writing to you. You, Felix, are our **governor** whom we honor, and I send you my greetings.

**Acts 23:27**

**This man, having been seized by the Jews (ULT)**

**I have sent you this man, Paul, because certain Jews seized (UST)**

Here, **the Jews** means “some of the Jews.” Alternate translation: “This man was seized by some of the Jews” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**This man, having been seized by the Jews (ULT)**

**I have sent you this man, Paul, because certain Jews seized (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Some of the Jews seized this man” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**about to be killed by them (ULT)**  
**and were about to kill him (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “they were ready to kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**having come with detachment of soldiers, I rescued (ULT)**  
**so I and my soldiers went and rescued him (UST)**

Alternate translation: “I with my soldiers arrived at the place where Paul and these Jews were and I rescued him”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having been seized](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [detachment of soldiers](#)
- [I rescued](#)
- [a Roman](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jews](#)
- [seized](#)
- [a Roman citizen](#)
- [so I and my soldiers went and](#)
- [rescued him](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> This man, [having been seized](#) by the [Jews](#) and about to be killed by them, having come with [detachment of soldiers](#), [I rescued](#), having learned that he is [a Roman](#).

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> I have sent you this man, Paul, because certain [Jews seized](#) him and were about to kill him. But I heard someone tell me that he is [a Roman citizen](#), [so I and my soldiers went and rescued him](#).



**Acts 23:28****I took him down (ULT)  
so I took (UST)**

Here the word **I** refers to Claudius Lysias, the chief captain.

**they accused him (ULT)  
he had done wrong...him (UST)**

The word **they** refers to the group of Jews who accused Paul.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- to know
- they accused
- Sanhedrin

**Translation Words - UST**

- to know
- he had done wrong
- Jewish council

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> And wanting to know the charge with which they accused him, I took him down to their Sanhedrin.

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> I wanted to know what those Jews were saying that he had done wrong, so I took him to their Jewish council.

## Acts 23:29

**I learned that he was being accused concerning questions of their own law (ULT)  
I listened while they asked this man questions and he answered them. The things they accused him about had to do with their Jewish laws (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "I learned that they were accusing him about things in their own law" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**but there was no accusation worthy of death or imprisonment (ULT)  
But Paul has not disobeyed any of our Roman laws. So our officials should not execute him or even put him in prison (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas behind the words **accusation**, **death**, and **imprisonment**, you could express the same ideas with verbs. Alternate translation: "but nobody accused him of anything that should cause Roman authorities to kill him or to send him to prison" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [was being accused](#)
- [accusation](#)
- [of...law](#)
- [worthy](#)
- [of death](#)
- [imprisonment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [things they accused him](#)
- [even put him in](#)
- [Jewish laws](#)
- [So our officials should not execute him](#)
- [So our officials should not execute him](#)
- [prison](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> I learned that he [was being accused](#) concerning questions of their own [law](#), but there was no [accusation worthy of death](#) or [imprisonment](#).

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> I listened while they asked this man questions and he answered them. The [things they accused him](#) about had to do with their [Jewish laws](#). But Paul has not disobeyed any of our Roman laws. [So our officials should not execute him](#) or [even put him in prison](#).

**Acts 23:30****you (ULT)****you, so that you may give him a fair trial there (UST)**

The word **you** is singular and refers to Governor Felix. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**And when a plot was to be against the man was revealed to me (ULT)****Someone told me that some Jews were planning to kill this man, so I sent him (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "And when I later learned that there was a plot to kill this man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Connecting Statement:**

The chief captain ends his letter to Governor Felix.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [when...was revealed](#)
- [I sent him](#)
- [having commanded](#)
- [his} accusers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Someone told](#)
- [I sent him](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [what they are accusing](#)

**ULT**

<sup>30</sup> And [when](#) a plot was to be against the man [was revealed](#) to me, immediately [I sent him](#) to you, also [having commanded](#) {his} [accusers](#) to speak against him in your {presence}."

**UST**

<sup>30</sup> [Someone told](#) me that some Jews were planning to kill this man, so [I sent him](#) to you, so that you may give him a fair trial there. I have also [commanded](#) the Jews who have accused him to go there to Caesarea and tell you [what they are accusing](#) him about. Goodbye."

## Acts 23:31

### Antipatris (ULT)

### Antipatris (UST)

**Antipatris** was a city built by Herod in honor of his father, Antipater. It stood at a site located today in central Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This ends Paul's time under arrest in Jerusalem and begins his time of arrest in Caesarea with Governor Felix.

### the...So...soldiers, according to what had been commanded to them (ULT)

### the...So...soldiers did what the commander told them (UST)

The word **So** marks an event that happened because of something else that happened previously. In this case, the previous event is the commander's ordering the soldiers to escort Paul.

### having taken Paul, brought him by night (ULT)

### They got Paul and took him with them during the night down (UST)

Here, **brought** can be translated as "took." Alternate translation: "they got Paul and took him at night"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [soldiers](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [soldiers did](#)
- [They...Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> So the [soldiers](#), according to what had been commanded to them, having taken [Paul](#), brought him by night to Antipatris.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> So the [soldiers did](#) what the commander told them. [They](#) got [Paul](#) and took him with them during the night down to Antipatris.

## Acts 23:32

### they returned (ULT) the foot soldiers returned to Jerusalem (UST)

Here, **they** refers to the foot soldiers who left the horsemen and returned to their fortress.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- horsemen
- they returned
- fortress

#### Translation Words - UST

- the foot soldiers returned to Jerusalem
- the foot soldiers returned to Jerusalem
- and the soldiers who rode

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> And on the next day, having allowed the horsemen to continue with him, they returned to the fortress.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> The next day, the foot soldiers returned to Jerusalem, and the soldiers who rode horses went on with Paul.

## Acts 23:33

### When they had entered (ULT)

### When they arrived (UST)

Here, **they** refers to the horsemen who took Paul all the way to Caesarea.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Caesarea
- letter
- to...governor
- Paul

### Translation Words - UST

- the city of Caesarea
- letter
- governor
- Paul

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> When they had entered into **Caesarea** and had delivered the **letter** to the **governor**, they also presented **Paul** to him.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> When they arrived in **the city of Caesarea**, they gave the **letter** to the **governor**, and they placed **Paul** before him.

**Acts 23:34**

**when he had read the letter...he is...he was}  
from (ULT)**

**The governor read the letter...are you...from  
(UST)**

Here the first **he** refers to Governor Felix, and the second and third occurrences of **he** refer to Paul.

**had asked what province he is from (ULT)  
he said to Paul...What province are you from?"  
Paul (UST)**

You can state this as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "he asked Paul, 'What province are you from?' When" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- province
- Cilicia

**Translation Words - UST**

- province
- Cilicia

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> And when he had read the letter and had asked what province he is from, and had learned that {he was} from Cilicia,

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> The governor read the letter and then he said to Paul, "What province are you from?" Paul answered, "I am from Cilicia."

**Acts 23:35****he said (ULT)****Then the governor said (UST)**

This sentence, which begins with the words “When he learned” in verse 43, can be stated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: “Paul said, ‘I am from Cilicia.’ Then the governor said” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**I will hear you fully (ULT)****you...I will listen to what each of you says (UST)**

Alternate translation: “I will listen to all you have to say”

**having commanded...him to be kept (ULT)****Then he commanded...Paul be guarded (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “having commanded soldiers to keep him” or “and commanded soldiers to restrain him”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [accusers](#)
- [having commanded](#)
- [palace](#)
- [of Herod](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [people who have accused](#)
- [Then he commanded](#)
- [palace](#)
- [that King Herod the Great had built](#)

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> he said, “I will hear you fully when your [accusers](#) also may come here,” [having commanded](#) him to be kept in the [palace of Herod](#).

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> Then the governor said, “When the [people who have accused](#) you arrive, I will listen to what each of you says and then I will judge your case.” [Then he commanded](#) that Paul be guarded in the [palace that King Herod the Great had built](#).



## Acts 24

### Acts 24 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul told the governor that he had not done what the Jews were accusing him of doing and that the governor should not punish him for what he did do.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Respect

Both the Jewish leaders ([Acts 24:2-4](#)) and Paul ([Acts 24:10](#)) began their speeches with words that show respect to the governor.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Governmental leaders

The words "governor," "commander," and "centurion" may be difficult to translate into some languages. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))



## **Acts 24:1**

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul is on trial in Caesarea. Tertullus presents Governor Felix with the charges against Paul.

**And after five days (ULT)****Five days later (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And five days after the Roman soldiers took Paul to Caesarea"

**Ananias (ULT)****Ananias (UST)**

**Ananias** is the name of a man. This is not the same Ananias as in [Acts 5:1](#) nor the same Ananias as in [Acts 9:10](#). See how you translated this in [Acts 23:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**an orator (ULT)****a speechmaker whose name was Tertullus (UST)**

Alternate translation: Tertullus was an expert in Roman law who was there to accuse Paul in court. "a lawyer"

**a certain Tertullus (ULT)****a speechmaker whose name was Tertullus (UST)**

**Tertullus** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**came down (ULT)****went down there from Jerusalem, along (UST)**

Alternate translation: "went to Caesarea where Paul was"

**to the governor (ULT)****There they told the governor (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in the presence of the governor who was judge in the court"

**appeared to the governor against Paul (ULT)****There they told the governor what Paul had done that they thought was wrong (UST)**

Alternate translation: "came there to argue before the governor the case that Paul had broken the law"

**Translation Words - ULT**

• [days](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> And after five [days](#), Ananias, the [high priest](#), with certain [elders](#), and an orator, a certain Tertullus, came down, who appeared to the [governor](#) against [Paul](#).

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> Five [days](#) later Ananias the [high priest](#) went down there from Jerusalem, along with [some other Jewish elders](#) and a speechmaker whose name was Tertullus. There they told the [governor](#) what [Paul](#) had done that they thought was wrong.

- high priest
- elders
- to...governor
- Paul

## **Translation Words - UST**

- days
- high priest
- some other Jewish elders
- governor
- Paul

**Acts 24:2****We have obtained great peace (ULT)  
many years that...we have lived well (UST)**

Here, **we** refers to the citizens under Felix. Alternate translation: “we, the people that you govern, have obtained great peace” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**you...your (ULT)  
you have ruled us...By planning wisely, you  
have improved many things in this province...  
you have ruled us...By planning wisely, you  
have improved many things in this province  
(UST)**

Here the words **you** and **your** refers to Felix, the governor. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**through...and good reforms have happened to {our} nation...your foresight  
(ULT)  
during the...you have ruled us...By planning wisely, you have improved many  
things in this province (UST)**

Alternate translation: “and your planning has greatly improved our nation”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to accuse him](#)
- [peace](#)
- [to...our} nation](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to accuse](#)
- [you have ruled us...By planning wisely, you have improved many things in this province](#)
- [we have lived well](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> And when he had been summoned, Tertullus began [to accuse him](#), saying, “We have obtained great [peace](#) through you, and good reforms have happened to {our} [nation](#) through your foresight;

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> The governor commanded Paul to be brought in. When Paul arrived, Tertullus began [to accuse](#) him. He said to the governor, “Honorable Governor Felix, during the many years that [you have ruled us, we have lived well. By planning wisely, you have improved many things in this province.](#)

## Acts 24:3

### **with all thankfulness (ULT) we always thank you (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **thankfulness**, you could express the same idea with an adjective or verb. Alternate translation: “so we are very thankful and we welcome everything that you do” or “so we thank you very much and welcome everything that you do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### **most excellent Felix (ULT) Therefore, Governor Felix...that you have done for all of us (UST)**

**Felix** was the Roman governor over the whole region. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Acts 23:25](#). Alternate translation: “Governor Felix who deserves greatest honor”

#### **ULT**

<sup>3</sup> both in every way and everywhere we acknowledge this, most excellent Felix, with all thankfulness.

#### **UST**

<sup>3</sup> Therefore, Governor Felix, we always thank you for everything that you have done for all of us, wherever you have done those things.

**Acts 24:4****not...we may...bother (ULT)****I will not take up too...of your time (UST)**

The word **we** refers to Ananias, certain elders, and Tertullus. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**However, in order that we may not bother you any longer (ULT)****But, so that I will not take up too much of your time...to what (UST)**

This could mean: (1) "so that I will not take up too much of your time" or (2) "so that I will not tire you"

**to...listen...briefly...to us in your kindness (ULT)****that you...listen...I have to say...that you...kindly...listen...I have to say (UST)**

Alternate translation: "kindly listen to my short speech"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [I beg](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [I ask](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> However, in order that we may not bother you any longer, [I beg](#) you to briefly listen to us in your kindness.

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> But, so that I will not take up too much of your time, [I ask](#) that you kindly listen to what I have to say.



**Acts 24:5**

**we have found...to be...this man...a troublemaker (ULT)**

**We have observed that...this man...causes trouble (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we have learned that Paul is always causing trouble"

**among all the Jews who {are} throughout the world (ULT)**

**wherever he goes...with the Jews...the entire...whom (UST)**

The word **all** here is probably an exaggeration used to strengthen their accusation against Paul. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**he is a leader...of the sect of the Nazarenes (ULT)**

**He also leads...group...people call...the...followers of the Nazarene (UST)**

The phrase **the sect of the Nazarenes** is another name for the Christians. Alternate translation: "he leads the entire group whom people call the followers of the Nazarene" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**of...sect (ULT)**

**group (UST)**

A **sect** is a smaller group of people within a larger group. Tertullus considers the Christians to be a small group within Judaism.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [among...Jews](#)
- [world](#)
- [of...Nazarenes](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [wherever he goes](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [people call...followers...Nazarene](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> For we have found this man to be a troublemaker and inciting rebellion [among](#) all the [Jews](#) who {are} throughout the [world](#). Also, he is a leader of the sect of the [Nazarenes](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> We have observed that this man, [wherever he goes](#), causes trouble with the [Jews](#). He also leads the entire group whom [people call](#) the [followers](#) of the [Nazarene](#).

## Acts 24:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- to desecrate
- temple
- we arrested

### Translation Words - UST

- temple in Jerusalem
- pollute it
- arrested

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He even tried to desecrate the temple, and so we arrested him. <sup>[1]</sup> [We wanted to judge him according to our law.]

### UST

<sup>6</sup> He even tried to do things in the temple in Jerusalem that would pollute it, so we arrested him. <sup>[1]</sup> [And we wanted to judge him according to our law.]

## Acts 24:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>7[2]</sup> But Lysias, the officer, having come, took him by force out of our hands,

### UST

<sup>7[2]</sup> But Lysias, the commander of the Roman fortress, came with his soldiers and took him away from us.

**Acts 24:8****you yourself will be able (ULT)  
him...will be able (UST)**

Here the word **you** is singular and refers to Governor Felix. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**to learn of what we are accusing him (ULT)  
learn that...which we are accusing him are  
true (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to learn that we are bringing very serious charges against him" or "to learn whether or not he is guilty of the things of which we are accusing him"

**Connecting Statement:**

Tertullus finishes presenting the charges against Paul before Governor Felix.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to learn](#)
- [are accusing](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [learn that](#)
- [are accusing](#)

**ULT**

<sup>8[3]</sup> commanding his accusers to come to you.] Having inquired from him about all these matters, you yourself will be able [to learn](#) of what we [are accusing](#) him."

**UST**

<sup>8[3]</sup> sending us to you.] If you question him yourself, you will be able to [learn that](#) all these things about which we [are accusing](#) him are true.

## Acts 24:9

### the Jews (ULT)

### the...Jewish leaders (UST)

Here, **the Jews** refers to the Jewish leaders who were at Paul's trial.  
(See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish leaders](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And the [Jews](#) also agreed, affirming that these charges were so.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then the [Jewish leaders](#) there told the governor that what Tertullus had said was true.

## Acts 24:10

### Connecting Statement:

Paul responds to Governor Felix about the charges brought against him.

### having motioned...the governor (ULT) motioned with his hand...Then the governor (UST)

Alternate translation: "and the governor gestured"

### a judge to this nation (ULT) have judged this Jewish province...I know that you will listen to me and will judge me fairly (UST)

Here, **this nation** refers to the people of the Jewish nation. Alternate translation: "a judge for the people of the Jewish nation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### gladly...I...make my defense (ULT) gladly...I...defend (UST)

Alternate translation: "I gladly explain my situation"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [governor](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Knowing that](#)
- [years](#)
- [a judge](#)
- [to...nation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [governor](#)
- [So Paul](#)
- [Governor Felix, I know that](#)
- [have judged](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [years](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And the [governor](#) having motioned for him to speak, [Paul](#) answered, "[Knowing that](#) for many [years](#) you have been [a judge](#) to this [nation](#), I gladly make my defense about the things concerning me.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then the [governor](#) motioned with his hand to Paul that he should speak. [So Paul](#) replied, and said, "[Governor Felix, I know that](#) you [have judged](#) this [Jewish](#) province for many [years](#). Therefore I gladly defend myself. I know that you will listen to me and will judge me fairly.

## Acts 24:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- to find out
- days
- to worship
- Jerusalem

### Translation Words - UST

- You know
- days
- Jerusalem
- to worship God

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> You are able to find out that it has not been more than 12 days from when I went up to worship in Jerusalem.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> You know that it has not been more than twelve days since I went up to Jerusalem to worship God.

**Acts 24:12****they found (ULT)****No one can say that they saw (UST)**

Here the word **they** refers to the Jews who were accusing Paul.

**nor causing a rebellion of the crowd (ULT)****No one can say that they saw me causing people to riot (UST)**

Alternate translation: "and I did not provoke the crowd to rebel against Rome"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- temple
- synagogues

**Translation Words - UST**

- temple courts
- any Jewish synagogue

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> And they found me neither in the temple arguing with anyone, nor causing a rebellion of the crowd, neither in the synagogues, nor throughout the city.

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> No one can say that they saw me arguing with anyone in the temple courts because I did not do that. No one can say that they saw me causing people to riot in any Jewish synagogue or causing trouble anywhere else in Jerusalem, because I did not do that.



## Acts 24:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- they are...accusing

### Translation Words - UST

- they are...accusing

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And they are not able to prove to you about that which **they are** now **accusing** me.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> So they cannot prove to you the things about which **they are** now **accusing** me.

**Acts 24:14****I confess...this to you (ULT)****I admit...to you...this (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I acknowledge this to you"

**that according to the Way (ULT)****that...is true...the way that Jesus (UST)**The phrase **the Way** was a title used for Christianity during Paul's time.**they call a sect (ULT)****It is true...taught us (UST)**A **sect** is a smaller group of people within a larger group. Tertullus considers the Christians to be a small group within Judaism. See how you translated **sect** in [Acts 24:5](#).**in that way I serve the God of our fathers (ULT)****I do worship the God...ancestors worshiped...that I follow (UST)**Paul uses the phrase **in that way** to mean that he, as a believer in Jesus, serves God just as their Jewish ancestors did. He is not leading a **sect** or teaching something new that is opposed to their ancient religion.**Translation Words - ULT**

- I confess
- they call
- I serve
- God
- of our fathers
- faithful
- law
- has been written
- prophets

**Translation Words - UST**

- I admit
- I do worship
- God
- ancestors worshiped
- taught us
- I also believe
- laws that God gave him
- other prophets
- wrote

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> But I **confess** this to you, that according to the Way that **they call** a sect, in that way I **serve** the **God of our fathers**, **faithful** to all that is according to the **law** and that **has been written** in the **prophets**.

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> But I **admit** to you that this is true: I **do worship** the **God** that our **ancestors worshiped**. It is true that I follow the way that Jesus **taught us**. I **also believe** everything that Moses wrote in the **laws that God gave him** and everything that the **other prophets wrote** in their books.

## Acts 24:15

### also these men (ULT) men also (UST)

Here, **these men** refers to the Jews who are accusing Paul in court.  
Alternate translation: “the same as these men”

### that there is going to be a resurrection of both the righteous and the unrighteous (ULT) alive again, both those who were good and those who were wicked (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **resurrection**, you could express the same idea with the verb “resurrect.” Alternate translation: “that God will resurrect all who have died, both the righteous and the unrighteous” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### of both the righteous and the unrighteous (ULT) both those who were good and those who were wicked (UST)

These nominal adjectives refer to **righteous** people and **unrighteous** people. AT “both of righteous people and unrighteous people” or “both of those who have done what is right and those who have done what is evil” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the hope](#)
- [God](#)
- [a resurrection](#)
- [of...the righteous](#)
- [the unrighteous](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I believe, just like](#)
- [God will cause everyone who has died](#)
- [alive again](#)
- [who were good](#)
- [those who were wicked](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> I have [the hope](#) in [God](#) which also these men themselves accept, that there is going to be [a resurrection](#) of both [the righteous](#) and [the unrighteous](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [I believe, just like](#) these men also believe, that some day [God will cause everyone who has died](#) to become [alive again](#), both those [who were good](#) and [those who were wicked](#).

## Acts 24:16

**I myself...strive...always (ULT)**  
**I always try...think is right (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I myself always work hard" or "I always do my best"

**to have a blameless conscience before God (ULT)**  
**day will come...to do what pleases God (UST)**

Here, **conscience** refers to a person's inner morality that chooses between right and wrong. Alternate translation: "to be blameless before God" or "to always do what is right before God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**before God (ULT)**  
**day will come...to do what pleases...God (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in the presence of God"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blameless](#)
- [a...conscience](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [day will come...to do what pleases](#)
- [day will come...to do what pleases](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> In this also I myself always strive to have a [blameless conscience](#) before [God](#) and men.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Because I believe that [day will come](#), I always try [to do what pleases God](#) and what other people think is right.

**Acts 24:17**

**Now (ULT)**  
**for several years, I returned to Jerusalem (UST)**

The word **Now** marks a shift in Paul's argument. Here he explains the situation in Jerusalem when some of the Jews arrested him.

**after...years...many (ULT)**  
**After I had been in other places for several years, I returned to Jerusalem...for several years, I returned to Jerusalem (UST)**

Alternate translation: "after many years away from Jerusalem"

**I came to bring alms to my nation, and offerings (ULT)**  
**to bring some money to my fellow Jews who are poor (UST)**

Here, **I came** can be translated as "I went." Alternate translation: "I went to help my people by bringing them money as a gift to the poor" (See: [Go and Come](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [years](#)
- [alms](#)
- [nation](#)
- [offerings](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [for several years, I returned to Jerusalem](#)
- [to bring some money to my fellow Jews who are poor](#)
- [to bring some money to my fellow Jews who are poor](#)
- [to bring some money to my fellow Jews who are poor](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> Now after many [years](#), I came to bring [alms](#) to my [nation](#), and [offerings](#).

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> After I had been in other places [for several years](#), I returned to Jerusalem to [bring some money to my fellow Jews who are poor](#).

**Acts 24:18**

**in...having been cleansed...the temple (ULT)**  
**Some Jews from Asia saw...the temple courts**  
**after I had completed the ritual that allows**  
**one to worship God (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in the temple after I had finished a ceremony to purify myself"

**not with a crowd nor with an uproar (ULT)**  
**There was no crowd with me, and I was not**  
**causing people to riot (UST)**

You can state this as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "I had not gathered a crowd nor was I trying to start a riot" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having been cleansed](#)
- [temple](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [temple courts](#)
- [after I had completed the ritual that allows one to worship God](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> They found me in this, [having been cleansed](#) in the [temple](#), not with a crowd nor with an uproar.

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> Some Jews from Asia saw me in the [temple courts after I had completed the ritual that allows one to worship God](#). There was no crowd with me, and I was not causing people to riot.

## Acts 24:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- Asia
- to make accusations

### Translation Words - UST

- But it was those...the people to riot
- Jews
- to accuse

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But there are certain Jews from Asia who ought to be present before you and to make accusations, if they have anything against me.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> But it was those Jews who caused the people to riot. They should be here in front of you to accuse me, if they think that I did something wrong.

## Acts 24:20

**these (ULT)**

**Jewish men who are here (UST)**

Here, **these** refers to the members of the council who were present in Jerusalem at Paul's trial.

**let these here say what wrong they found (ULT)**

**want to do that, these Jewish men who are here should tell you what they think...wrong (UST)**

Alternate translation: "let these men prove what I did wrong"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Sanhedrin](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [council](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Or let these here say what wrong they found when I stood before the [Sanhedrin](#),

### UST

<sup>20</sup> But if they do not want to do that, these Jewish men who are here should tell you what they think I did that was wrong when I defended myself in their [council](#).



## Acts 24:21

### concerning the resurrection of the dead (ULT) God will cause all people who have died... become alive again (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **resurrection**, you can express the same idea as “God brings back to life.” Alternate translation: “because I believe that God will bring back to life those who have died” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### I am being judged before you today (ULT) You are judging me today...I believe that...to (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “you are judging me today” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [thing](#)
- [I shouted](#)
- [am being judged](#)
- [the resurrection](#)
- [of the dead](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [when I shouted](#)
- [when I shouted](#)
- [are judging me](#)
- [God will cause all people who have died](#)
- [become alive again](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> other than about this one [thing](#) that I [shouted](#) when I stood among them, ‘I [am being judged](#) before you today concerning [the resurrection of the dead](#).’”

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> They might say that I did something wrong [when I shouted](#), ‘You [are judging me](#) today because I believe that [God will cause all people who have died](#) to [become alive again](#).’”

**Acts 24:22****Felix (ULT)****Felix (UST)**

**Felix** is the Roman governor of the area who resides at Caesarea. See how you translated this name in [Acts 23:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the Way (ULT)****what people called the Way (UST)**

Here, **the Way** is a title for Christianity. See how you translated this in [Acts 9:2](#).

**Lysias (ULT)****Lysias (UST)**

**Lysias** is the name of the commander. See how you translated this name in [Acts 23:26](#).

**may come down (ULT)****comes down here (UST)**

Jerusalem was higher than Caesarea so it was normal for them to speak of coming **down** from Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "may come down from Jerusalem"

**the things...I will decide...concerning you (ULT)****about...I will decide...case (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I will make a decision concerning these accusations against you" or "I will judge whether you are guilty"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [knowing](#)
- [commander](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [knew much](#)
- [Commander](#)

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> And then Felix, more accurately [knowing](#) the things concerning the Way, adjourned them, saying, "When Lysias the [commander](#) may come down, I will decide the things concerning you."

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> Felix already [knew much](#) about what people called the Way, and so he stopped the trial. He said to them, "Later, when [Commander](#) Lysias comes down here, I will decide this case."

## Acts 24:23

**to have...rest (ULT)**  
**all the time...and make sure that Paul was guarded (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to grant Paul some freedom not otherwise granted to prisoners"

### Translation Words - ULT

- He had commanded
- centurion
- rest
- to minister

### Translation Words - UST

- Then he told the
- officer who was
- and make sure that Paul was guarded
- to help Paul

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> He had commanded the centurion for him to be kept in custody, but to have rest, and not to forbid his own friends to minister to him.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then he told the officer who was guarding Paul to take Paul back to the prison and make sure that Paul was guarded all the time. But he said that Paul was not to be chained, and if his friends came to visit him, the officer should allow them to help Paul in any way that they wanted to.

## Acts 24:24

### But after some days (ULT)

### Several days later (UST)

Alternate translation: "But after several days"

### Drusilla, his own wife (ULT)

### wife Drusilla, who (UST)

**Drusilla** is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### who was a Jewess (ULT)

### was a Jew (UST)

A **Jewess** refers to a female Jew. Alternate translation: "who was a Jew" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- days
- a Jewess
- Paul
- faith
- in Christ
- Christ
- Jesus

## Translation Words - UST

- days
- a Jew
- Paul...Paul said to him
- trusting
- Jesus
- in...the Messiah
- the Messiah

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But after some days, having returned with Drusilla, his own wife, who was a Jewess, Felix summoned Paul and he heard him concerning the faith in Christ Jesus.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Several days later Felix came back with his wife Drusilla, who was a Jew, and called for Paul to speak with him. Felix listened to what Paul said to him about trusting in Jesus the Messiah.

## Acts 24:25

### Felix, having become frightened (ULT) Felix became afraid after hearing those things (UST)

Felix may have been **frightened** because he felt conviction of his sins.

### Go away for now (ULT) That is all I want to hear now...I have (UST)

Alternate translation: "Leave me for a while"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- righteousnes
- self-control
- judgment
- frightened
- time

#### Translation Words - UST

- what God wants people to do in order to please him
- control how they act
- there would be a time when God will judge all people
- afraid after hearing
- time

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But as he is reasoning with him about **righteousness**, and **self-control**, and the **judgment** that is coming, Felix, having become **frightened**, answered, "Go away for now. But having found **time**, I will summon you."

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Paul talked to him about **what God wants people to do in order to please him**. He also explained how people should **control how they act** and that **there would be a time when God will judge all people**. Felix became **afraid after hearing** those things, so he said to Paul, "That is all I want to hear now. When I have **time**, I will ask you to come to me again."

**Acts 24:26**

**money will be given to him by Paul (ULT)  
Paul would give him some money (UST)**

Felix was hoping Paul would offer him a bribe to set him free.

**also...to him...therefore often summoning  
him, he was speaking (ULT)  
Felix was hoping...would give him...so he sent  
for Paul to come to...many times. Paul talked  
with Felix many times, but he did not give  
Felix any money (UST)**

Alternate translation: "and so Felix often sent for Paul and spoke with Paul"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- he...is hoping
- Paul

**Translation Words - UST**

- Felix was hoping
- Paul

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> At the same time, he also is hoping that money will be given to him by Paul, and therefore often summoning him, he was speaking to him.

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> Felix was hoping that Paul would give him some money, so he sent for Paul to come to him many times. Paul talked with Felix many times, but he did not give Felix any money, and Felix did not tell his soldiers to release Paul from prison.

## Acts 24:27

### Felix received a successor—Porcius Festus (ULT)

### had passed...Porcius Festus became governor in place of Felix (UST)

**Porcius Festus** was the new roman governor who succeeded **Felix**. Alternate translation: "Porcius Festus replaced Felix as the governor" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### wanting...to gain favor with the Jews (ULT) wanted...to please...the Jewish leaders (UST)

Here, **the Jews** refers to the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "wanting the Jewish leaders to like him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Felix left Paul imprisoned

Alternate translation: "Felix kept Paul in prison"

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor
- with...Jews
- Paul
- imprisoned

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- in prison
- to please
- Jewish leaders

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But when two years had passed, Felix received a successor—Porcius Festus. But wanting to gain favor with the Jews, Felix left Paul imprisoned.

24:6 <sup>[1]</sup>

24:7 <sup>[2]</sup>

24:8 <sup>[3]</sup>

### UST

<sup>27</sup> When two years had passed, Porcius Festus became governor in place of Felix. Felix let Paul remain in prison because he wanted to please the Jewish leaders.

24:6 <sup>[1]</sup>

24:7 <sup>[2]</sup>

24:8 <sup>[3]</sup>

## Acts 25

### Acts 25 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Favor

This word is used in two different ways in this chapter. When the Jewish leaders asked Festus for a favor, they were asking him to do something special for them on that day. They wanted him to do for them something that he would not usually do. When Festus “wanted to gain the favor of the Jews,” he wanted them to like him and be willing to obey him in the months and years to come. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

#### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens. Roman officials could have been punished for treating a Roman citizen the same way they would treat a non-citizen.



**Acts 25:1****Festus (ULT)****Festus (UST)**

**Festus** becomes the governor of Caesarea. See how you translated this name in [Acts 24:27](#).

**then (ULT)****began to rule as governor of (UST)**

The word **then** marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

**Festus...having arrived in the province (ULT)****Festus...began to rule as governor of...the province (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Festus arrived in the area to begin his rule or (2) Festus simply arrived in the area.

**went up from Caesarea to Jerusalem (ULT)****he left the city of Caesarea and went up to Jerusalem (UST)**

The phrase **went up** is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than Caesarea.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [in...province](#)
- [days](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [province](#)
- [days](#)
- [Caesarea and](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> Festus, then, having arrived in the [province](#), after three [days](#), went up from [Caesarea](#) to [Jerusalem](#).

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> Festus began to rule as governor of the [province](#). Three [days](#) later, he left the city of [Caesarea and](#) went up to [Jerusalem](#).

## Acts 25:2

**they begged him (ULT)**  
**had done things that were very wrong (UST)**

Here the word **him** refers to Festus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- chief priests
- of...Jews
- Paul
- they begged

### Translation Words - UST

- chief priests
- Jewish
- and said that Paul
- had done things that were very wrong

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Both the **chief priests** and the most prominent of the **Jews** made clear to him {the things} against **Paul**, and **they begged** him,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> There, the **chief priests** and other **Jewish** leaders stood before Festus **and said that Paul had done things that were very wrong**.

**Acts 25:3****a favor against him (ULT)  
They urgently asked Festus (UST)**

Here the word **him** refers to Paul.

**that he might summon him to Jerusalem (ULT)  
to bring Paul to trial in Jerusalem...him (UST)**

This means that Festus would order his soldiers to bring Paul to **Jerusalem**. Alternate translation: "that he might order his soldiers to bring Paul to Jerusalem"

**him...to kill...along the way (ULT)  
Paul...to attack...on the road and kill him (UST)**

They were going to ambush Paul on the way to Jerusalem.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a favor
- he might summon
- Jerusalem

**Translation Words - UST**

- They urgently asked Festus
- bring
- Jerusalem

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> requesting a favor against him—that he might summon him to Jerusalem—for an ambush was forming to kill him along the way.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> They urgently asked Festus to bring Paul to trial in Jerusalem. But they were really planning to attack him on the road and kill him.

## Acts 25:4

**Festus...answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea, and that he himself was about to go there in haste (ULT)**

**Festus...replied, "Paul is under guard in Caesarea, let him stay there. I myself will go down to Caesarea very soon (UST)**

You can state this as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "Festus said, 'Paul is being held prisoner in Caesarea, and I myself will soon return there.'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- Caesarea

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- Caesarea

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea, and that he himself was about to go there in haste.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Festus replied, "Paul is under guard in Caesarea, let him stay there. I myself will go down to Caesarea very soon."

## Acts 25:5

**He said, “Therefore, the leaders among you, having come down together (ULT)  
So,” he said, “you should go there with me, those of you who are able to (UST)**

Alternate translation: “He said, ‘Therefore, your leaders should go to Caesarea with us and’”

**among...if there is something wrong...the man (ULT)  
of you...If you have anything to accuse Paul... do it (UST)**

Alternate translation: “If Paul has done anything wrong”

**let them accuse him (ULT)  
accuse Paul...there (UST)**

Alternate translation: “you should accuse him of violating laws” or “you should bring charges against him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [let them accuse](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [accuse Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He said, “Therefore, the leaders among you, having come down together, if there is something wrong with the man, [let them accuse](#) him.”

### UST

<sup>5</sup> “So,” he said, “you should go there with me, those of you who are able to. If you have anything to [accuse Paul](#) of, you can do it there.”

## Acts 25:6

**after he had stayed...he went down...he commanded...to be brought to him (ULT)**  
**Festus remained...he went back down...Festus commanded that...be brought (UST)**

Here all occurrences of the word **he** and **him** refer to Festus.

**he went down to Caesarea (ULT)**  
**he went back down to the city of Caesarea (UST)**

Jerusalem is higher geographically than Caesarea. It was common to speak of coming **down** from Jerusalem.

**having sat in the judgment seat (ULT)**  
**to him, where he sat in the judge's seat (UST)**

Here, **judgment seat** refers to Festus' ruling as judge over Paul's trial. Alternate translation: "having sat upon the seat where he acted as judge" or "having sat down as judge" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Paul to be brought to him (ULT)**  
**Paul be brought (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "his soldiers bring Paul to him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [judgment seat](#)
- [he commanded](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [days](#)
- [the city of Caesarea](#)
- [Festus commanded that](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [judge's seat](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And after he had stayed with them not more than eight or ten [days](#), he went down to [Caesarea](#). The next day, having sat in the [judgment seat](#), [he commanded Paul](#) to be brought to him.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Festus remained in Jerusalem with the temple leaders eight or ten more [days](#). Then he went back down to [the city of Caesarea](#). The next day [Festus commanded that Paul](#) be brought to him, where he sat in the [judge's seat](#).

## Acts 25:7

**And when he had come (ULT)  
After Paul was brought before the judge's  
seat...but (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And when he came and stood before Festus"

**bringing many and serious charges (ULT)  
accuse him of many serious charges (UST)**

Charging a person with a crime is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could bring to court. Alternate translation: "they spoke against Paul many serious things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish leaders](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And when he had come, the [Jews](#) who had come down from [Jerusalem](#) stood around him, bringing many and serious charges which they were not able to prove,

### UST

<sup>7</sup> After Paul was brought before the judge's seat, the [Jewish leaders](#) who had come down from [Jerusalem](#) gathered around him to accuse him of many serious charges, but they were not able to prove any of them.

**Acts 25:8****against the temple (ULT)****against the temple (UST)**

Paul says he did not break any rules about who could enter the Jerusalem **temple**. Alternate translation: "against the entry rules of the temple" (See: *Synecdoche*)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- law of the Jews
- of...Jews
- temple
- Caesar
- have I sinned

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul
- law of the Jews
- Jews
- temple
- against the emperor
- against the emperor

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> Paul, saying in defense, "Neither against the **law of the Jews**, nor against the **temple**, nor against **Caesar**, **have I sinned** in anything."

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> Then Paul spoke for himself. He said, "I have done nothing against the **law of the Jews**, nor against the **temple**, nor **against the emperor**."



**Acts 25:9****wanting to do a favor for the Jews (ULT)  
wanted to please the Jewish leaders (UST)**

Here, **the Jews** means the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: “wanting to please the Jewish leaders” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**to go up to Jerusalem (ULT)  
to go up to Jerusalem (UST)**

Jerusalem was higher geographically than Caesarea. It was common to speak of going **up to Jerusalem**.

**and to be judged there before me about these things (ULT)  
so I can judge you there about these things (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “where I will judge you with regard to these charges” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a favor
- for..Jews
- Paul
- Jerusalem
- to be judged

**Translation Words - UST**

- to please the Jewish leaders
- to please the Jewish leaders
- Paul
- Jerusalem
- judge

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> But Festus, wanting to do a favor for the Jews, answering Paul, said, “Are you willing to go up to Jerusalem and to be judged there before me about these things?”

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> But Festus wanted to please the Jewish leaders, so he asked Paul, “Are you willing to go up to Jerusalem so I can judge you there about these things?”

## Acts 25:10

**I am standing before the judgment seat of Caesar, where it is necessary for me to be judged (ULT)**

**No, I am...standing before you, who represent the Emperor. This is where I ought to be judged (UST)**

The **judgment seat** refers to Caesar's authority to judge Paul. Alternate translation: "I am already being judged by Roman authority, which is the only place where I should be judged" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I am standing before the judgment seat of Caesar, where it is necessary for me to be judged (ULT)**

**No, I am...standing before you, who represent the Emperor. This is where I ought to be judged (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Roman authority is already judging me, and they are the only ones who should judge me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- judgment seat
- of Caesar
- to be judged
- I have done...wrong
- to the Jews
- as
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- represent
- the Emperor
- to be judged
- I have done...wrong
- to the Jewish people
- as
- know

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But Paul said, "I am standing before the **judgment seat of Caesar**, where it is necessary for me **to be judged**. **I have done** nothing **wrong to the Jews**, as you also very well **know**."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Paul replied, "No, I am now standing before you, who **represent the Emperor**. This is where I ought **to be judged**. **I have done** nothing **wrong to the Jewish people**, as you **know** very well."



## **Acts 25:11**

**Therefore, if I have done wrong and have done anything worthy of death, I do not refuse to die. But if there is nothing of which they can accuse me, no one is able to hand me over to them**

Paul is stating a hypothetical situation. If he were guilty, he would accept the punishment, but he knows that he is not guilty. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

**I appeal to Caesar (ULT)  
Caesar himself judge me (UST)**

Paul asks to be taken before **Caesar** for judgment.

**have done anything worthy of death (ULT)  
I had done anything deserving of death (UST)**

Alternate translation: "have done some wrong that deserves the death penalty"

**if...But...there is nothing of which they can accuse me (ULT)  
If...but...there is nothing that they accuse me of that deserves such a punishment (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But if the charges against me are not true"

**no one is able to hand me over to them (ULT)  
No one can condemn me just to satisfy them. I ask that (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Festus does not have the legal authority to hand Paul over to these false accusers or (2) Paul was saying that if he has done nothing wrong, the governor should not give into the request of the Jews.

**I appeal to Caesar (ULT)  
Caesar himself judge me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I ask that I go before Caesar so he himself can judge me"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [I have done wrong](#)
- [worthy](#)
- [of death](#)
- [to die](#)
- [can accuse](#)
- [I appeal](#)
- [to Caesar](#)

## ULT

<sup>11</sup> Therefore, if [I have done wrong](#) and have done anything [worthy of death](#), I do not refuse [to die](#). But if there is nothing of which they [can accuse](#) me, no one is able to hand me over to them. [I appeal to Caesar.](#)"

## UST

<sup>11</sup> If [I had done anything deserving of death](#), I would not refuse to [to die](#); but there is nothing that they [accuse](#) me of that deserves such a punishment. No one can condemn me just to satisfy them. I ask that [Caesar himself judge me.](#)"

## Translation Words - UST

- I had done anything deserving of death
- to die
- I had done anything deserving of death
- I had done anything deserving of death
- accuse
- Caesar himself
- judge me

## Acts 25:12

### with the council (ULT) with his advisors (UST)

This is not the Sanhedrin that is referred to as **council** throughout Acts. This is a political council in the Roman government. Alternate translation: "with his own government advisors"

### Translation Words - ULT

- council
- To Caesar
- Caesar (2)
- you have appealed

### Translation Words - UST

- advisors
- You have appealed to
- Caesar
- Caesar (2)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then, after having talked with the council, Festus answered, "To Caesar you have appealed. To Caesar you will go!"

### UST

<sup>12</sup> After Festus conferred with his advisors, he said, "You have appealed to Caesar, and so to Caesar you shall go!"

**Acts 25:13****King Agrippa and Bernice (ULT)  
King Herod Agrippa...along with his sister  
Bernice (UST)**

**King Agrippa** and **Bernice** are new people in the story. Though he ruled over only a few territories, King Agrippa is the current reigning king in Palestine. Bernice is Agrippa's sister.(See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**King Agrippa and Bernice (ULT)  
King Herod Agrippa...along with his sister  
Bernice (UST)**

**Agrippa** is a man and **Bernice** is a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Now (ULT)  
days (UST)**

This word marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

**paid their respects to Festus (ULT)  
They had come to pay their respects to Festus (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to make a formal visit to greet Festus"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [days](#)
- [King](#)
- [Caesarea](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [days](#)
- [King Herod](#)
- [Caesarea](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> Now after some [days](#) had passed, [King Agrippa](#) and [Bernice](#), having come down to [Caesarea](#), paid their respects to Festus.

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> After several [days](#), [King Herod Agrippa](#) arrived at [Caesarea](#), along with his sister [Bernice](#). They had come to pay their respects to Festus.



## Acts 25:14

### Connecting Statement:

Festus explains Paul's case to King Agrippa.

**There is a certain man who has been left behind by Felix, a prisoner (ULT)**  
**There is a man here whom Felix kept in prison (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "When Felix left office, he left a man in prison here" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Felix (ULT)**  
**here whom Felix kept in prison (UST)**

**Felix** was the Roman governor of the area who resided in Caesarea. See how you translated this name in [Acts 23:24](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [to...king](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [a prisoner](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [King Agrippa](#)
- [days](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [here whom Felix kept in prison](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And while they were staying there for many [days](#), Festus presented to the [king](#) the things concerning [Paul](#), saying, "There is a certain man who has been left behind by Felix, [a prisoner](#)."

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [King Agrippa](#) and Bernice stayed many [days](#) in Caesarea. After some time had passed, Festus told Agrippa about [Paul](#). He said, "There is a man [here](#) [whom Felix kept in prison](#)."

## Acts 25:15

### concerning him...brought charges (ULT) When I went...came before me and (UST)

To charge someone in court is spoken of as if it were an object that a person brings to court. Alternate translation: "spoke to me against this man" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### requesting a judgment against him (ULT) asked me to condemn him to death (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **judgment**, you could express the same idea with a verb. Alternate translation: "asking me to judge him" or "requesting that I judge him to be guilty" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [elders](#)
- [of...Jews](#)
- [a judgment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [elders](#)
- [to death](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> When I was in [Jerusalem](#), the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#) of the [Jews](#) brought charges concerning him, requesting [a judgment](#) against him.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> When I went to [Jerusalem](#), the [chief priests](#) and the [Jewish elders](#) came before me and asked me to condemn him [to death](#).

## Acts 25:16

### to hand over any man (ULT) a person...Instead, we allow (UST)

Here, **hand over** represents sending someone to people who will punish or kill him. Alternate translation: “to let someone punish anyone” or “to condemn anyone to death” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### or before the one who is accused may have {his} accusers face to face (ULT) them...immediately...the accused man to stand face to face with his accusers (UST)

Here, **have his accusers face to face** is an idiom that means to meet in person with the people who accuse him. Alternate translation: “before the person whom others have accused of a crime had met directly with those who accused him” (See: [Idiom](#))

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> I replied to them that it is not the custom [of the Romans](#) to hand over any man, or before the one [who is accused](#) may have [{his} accusers face to face](#) and receives an opportunity of a defense concerning the [accusation](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> But I told them that when someone has been accused of a serious crime, it is not a custom [for Romans](#) to condemn a person immediately. Instead, we allow the [accused man to stand face to face with his accusers](#) and defend himself against what [they say about him](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Romans](#)
- [who is accused](#)
- [his} accusers](#)
- [accusation](#)
- [face to face](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [for Romans](#)
- [accused man to stand](#)
- [with his accusers](#)
- [they say about him](#)
- [face to face](#)

**Acts 25:17****Therefore (ULT)****So (UST)**

Fetus had just said that an accused man should be able to face his accusers and make his defense. Alternate translation: "Because what I have just said is true"

**when they had come together...here (ULT)  
came here...when those Jews...to Caesarea (UST)**

Alternate translation: "when the Jewish leaders had come to meet with me here"

**having sat in the judgment seat (ULT)****I sat in the judge's seat (UST)**

Here, **judgment seat** refers to Festus ruling over Paul's trial as judge. Alternate translation: "having sat upon the seat to act as judge" or "having sat down as judge" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I commanded the man to be brought in (ULT)  
and ordered the guard to bring in the prisoner (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "I ordered the soldiers to bring Paul before me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [when they had come together](#)
- [judgment seat](#)
- [I commanded](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [came here](#)
- [judge's seat](#)
- [and ordered the guard](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> Therefore, [when they had come together](#) here, causing no delay, the next day, having sat in the [judgment seat](#), [I commanded](#) the man to be brought in.

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> So when those Jews [came here](#) to Caesarea, I did not delay the trial at all. The day after they arrived, I sat in the [judge's seat and ordered the guard](#) to bring in the prisoner.

## Acts 25:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [accusers](#)
- [of evil](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had done wrong](#)
- [was serious](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> When the [accusers](#) had stood up, they brought no charge concerning him [of evil](#) which I expected.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> But when the Jewish leaders told me what the prisoner [had done wrong](#), I did not think that anything they said [was serious](#).

## Acts 25:19

**their own religion (ULT)**  
**Instead, what...were things in their own religion (UST)**

Here, **religion** means the belief system people have toward life and the supernatural.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a...Jesus
- who was dead
- Paul
- to be alive

### Translation Words - UST

- name was Jesus
- had died
- Paul
- was alive

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Instead, they had certain disputes with him about their own religion and about a certain **Jesus who was dead**, whom **Paul** asserted **to be alive**.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Instead, what they argued with him about were things in their own religion and about a man whose **name was Jesus** who **had died**, but whom **Paul** said **was alive**.

**Acts 25:20**

**and there to be judged concerning these things (ULT)**

**so I can judge you there about these things (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “for me to judge him there concerning these charges” or “for a judge to decide if these charges against him are true or not” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to be judged](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [judge you](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> And so I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked if he was willing to go to [Jerusalem](#) and there [to be judged](#) concerning these things.

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> I did not understand these matters, or how to find out the truth. So I asked Paul, ‘Are you willing to go to [Jerusalem](#), so I can [judge you](#) there about these things?’

## Acts 25:21

**But when Paul had appealed for him to be kept for the decision of the emperor (ULT)  
But Paul asked for Caesar himself to judge his case...to be kept (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "But when Paul insisted that he stay under Roman guard until the time when the emperor could decide his case" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**I commanded him to be kept (ULT)  
so I ordered him...under guard (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "I ordered the soldiers to keep him in custody" or "I told the soldiers to guard him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [when...had appealed](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [I commanded](#)
- [Caesar](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul](#)
- [asked for Caesar himself](#)
- [so I ordered](#)
- [Caesar](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But [when Paul had appealed](#) for him to be kept for the decision of the emperor, [I commanded](#) him to be kept until when I might send him to [Caesar](#)."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> But [Paul asked for Caesar himself](#) to judge his case, [so I ordered](#) him to be kept under guard until I could send him to [Caesar](#)."



## Acts 25:22

**Tomorrow," he says, "you will hear him (ULT)  
Festus answered, "I will arrange...you to hear  
him tomorrow (UST)**

The phrase **he says** can be moved to the beginning of the sentence.  
Alternate translation: "Festus says, 'I will arrange for you to listen to Paul tomorrow.'" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And Agrippa replied to Festus, "I, myself, also was wanting to hear this man." "Tomorrow," he says, "you will hear him."

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Then Agrippa said to Festus, "I myself would like to hear what this man has to say." Festus answered, "I will arrange for you to hear him tomorrow."

## Acts 25:23

### Agrippa and Bernice (ULT)

### Agrippa and Bernice (UST)

Though he ruled over only a few territories, **Agrippa** was the current reigning king in Palestine. **Bernice** was his sister. See how you translated these names in [Acts 25:13](#).

### with much ceremony (ULT)

### were honoring them...with them (UST)

Alternate translation: "with a great ceremony to honor them"

### the hall (ULT)

### the...hall of judgment (UST)

This **hall** was a large room where people gathered for ceremonies, trials, and other events.

### Paul was brought in (ULT)

### should bring Paul in (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the soldiers brought Paul to appear before them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [the commanders](#)
- [having been commanded](#)
- [Paul](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Some Roman commanders](#)
- [commanded that the guards](#)
- [Paul in](#)

## ULT

<sup>23</sup> So on the next day, Agrippa and Bernice having come with much ceremony, and having entered into the hall with both [the commanders](#) and men who were prominent in the city, and [having been commanded](#) by Festus, [Paul](#) was brought in.

## UST

<sup>23</sup> The next day Agrippa and Bernice entered the hall of judgment, and all the other people were honoring them. [Some Roman commanders](#) and important men in Caesarea came with them. Then Festus [commanded that the guards](#) should bring [Paul in](#).

## Acts 25:24

**all the multitude of the Jews (ULT)**  
**you see this man! Many leaders...of the Jews (UST)**

The word **all** is an exaggeration used to emphasize that a great number of Jews wanted Paul to die. Alternate translation: "a great number of the Jews" or "many of the Jewish leaders" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**he ought not to live any longer (ULT)**  
**not...to...let...him live any longer (UST)**

This statement is made in the negative to emphasize the positive equivalent. Alternate translation: "he should die immediately" (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- King
- of...Jews
- Jerusalem
- shouting that
- to live

### Translation Words - UST

- King
- Jews
- Jerusalem
- not...let
- to...live

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And Festus said, "King Agrippa, and all who are present with us, you see this man, concerning whom all the multitude of the Jews petitioned me both in Jerusalem and here also, shouting that he ought not to live any longer.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> After Paul entered, Festus said, "King Agrippa and all the rest of you who are here, you see this man! Many leaders of the Jews, both in Jerusalem and here, asked me not to let him live any longer.

**Acts 25:25**

**But...he himself having appealed to the emperor (ULT)**

**But...that...Even so, he has asked Caesar to judge his case...him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "but because he said that he wanted the emperor to judge him"

**to the emperor (ULT)**

**to judge his case (UST)**

The **emperor** was the ruler of the Roman empire. He ruled over many countries and provinces.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- worthy
- of death
- having appealed
- to send him

**Translation Words - UST**

- to deserve
- death
- Even so, he has asked Caesar
- to send...to Rome

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> But I learned that he had done nothing **worthy of death**; but he himself **having appealed** to the emperor, I decided **to send him**.

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> But I found nothing that he had done **to deserve death**. **Even so, he has asked Caesar** to judge his case, so I have decided **to send him to Rome**.

**Acts 25:26****you...you (ULT)****you all...you (UST)**

Here the first **you** is plural and probably refers to “King Agrippa, and all who are present with us” in 25:24. The second **you** is singular and is directed only to Agrippa. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**I have him before you, and especially before you, King Agrippa (ULT)****I have brought him here to speak to you all, and especially to you, King Agrippa (UST)**

Alternate translation: “I have brought Paul to all of you, but especially to you, King Agrippa.”

**so that...anything...I might have...to write (ULT)****I have done this so that you may question him...I should write...Then I may know what to write to (UST)**

Alternate translation: “so that ... I will have something else to write” or “so that ... I will know what I should write”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to...lord](#)
- [King](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [emperor](#)
- [King](#)

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> Concerning him, I do not have anything definite to write to my [lord](#). For this reason, I have him before you, and especially before you, [King](#) Agrippa, so that after this examination has happened, I might have something to write.

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> But I do not know what exactly I should write to the [emperor](#) about him. That is why I have brought him here to speak to you all, and especially to you, [King](#) Agrippa! I have done this so that you may question him. Then I may know what to write to the emperor.

**Acts 25:27**

**unreasonable...it seems...to me to send a prisoner and...not...to...state (ULT)  
that it would be unreasonable...I think...to send a prisoner to the emperor in Rome without...the...telling exactly what were... wrong things people say that he has done (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **unreasonable ... not**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "it seems reasonable to me that if I send a prisoner then I should also state" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**the charges against him (ULT)  
telling exactly what were...the...wrong things people say that he has done (UST)**

This could mean: (1) the accusations that the Jewish leaders have brought against him or (2) the charges under Roman law that apply to Paul's case.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to send](#)
- [a prisoner](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to send](#)
- [a prisoner to the emperor in Rome](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> For it seems unreasonable to me [to send a prisoner](#) and to not state the charges against him."

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> I think that it would be unreasonable [to send a prisoner to the emperor in Rome](#) without telling exactly what were the wrong things people say that he has done."

## Acts 26

### Acts 26 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the third account of Paul's conversion in the book of Acts. Because this is such an important event in the early church, there are three accounts of Paul's conversion. (See: [Acts 9](#) and [Acts 22](#))

Paul told the King Agrippa why he had done what he had done and that the governor should not punish him for that.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

## Acts 26:1

### Connecting Statement:

Festus has brought Paul before King Agrippa. In verse 2, Paul gives his defense to King Agrippa.

### Agrippa (ULT)

### Agrippa (UST)

**Agrippa** was the current reigning king in Palestine, though he ruled over only a few territories. See how you translated this name in [Acts 25:13](#).

### having stretched out {his} hand (ULT)

### stretched out his hand...to (UST)

Alternate translation: “holding out his hand” or “gesturing with his hand”

### made {his} defense (ULT)

### to show that he was about...speak. He said (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **defense**, you could express the same idea with a verb. Alternate translation: “began to defend himself against those who were accusing him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- Paul
- his} hand

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- Paul
- his hand

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And Agrippa said to Paul, “You are permitted to speak for yourself.” Then Paul, having stretched out {his} hand, made {his} defense.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Agrippa said to Paul, “We will now allow you to speak on your own behalf.” Then Paul stretched out his hand to show that he was about to speak. He said,



**Acts 26:2****I consider myself blessed (ULT)****I consider myself fortunate that today (UST)**

Paul said he was **blessed** because he considered his appearance before Agrippa to be an opportunity to speak about the gospel.

**to make my defense (ULT)****that I can explain (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to defend myself" or "to explain why I am innocent of these charges"

**Concerning all the things of which I am****accused by the Jews (ULT)****why the Jewish leaders are wrong when they say I have done evil things (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "About the crimes that the Jews are saying that I committed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the Jews (ULT)****the Jewish leaders (UST)**

Here, **the Jews** does not mean all **the Jews**. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [I am accused](#)
- [the Jews](#)
- [King](#)
- [blessed](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [King](#)
- [fortunate that today](#)
- [why...are wrong when they say I have done evil things](#)
- [the Jewish leaders](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> "Concerning all the things of which I [am accused](#) by [the Jews](#), [King](#) Agrippa, I consider myself [blessed](#) that I am going to make my defense before you today;

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> "[King](#) Agrippa, I consider myself [fortunate that today](#) that I can explain to you [why the Jewish leaders are wrong when they say I have done evil things](#)."

## Acts 26:3

### their} controversies (ULT)

### the questions (UST)

You can make explicit what kinds of **controversies** Paul is speaking about. Alternate translation: “questions about religious matters” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jewish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [us Jews](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> especially since you are an expert according to all the [Jewish](#) customs and also {their} controversies. So I ask you to hear me patiently.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> I am especially fortunate because you know all about the customs of [us Jews](#) and the questions that we argue about. So I ask you to listen patiently to me.”

## Acts 26:4

### all the Jews (ULT)

### All...fellow Jews...the (UST)

This is a generalization. This could mean: (1) this refers to Jews in general who knew about Paul. Alternate translation: "the Jews" or (2) this refers to Pharisees who knew Paul. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### my...among...nation (ULT)

### about how I have conducted my life...They know how I lived in (UST)

This could mean: (1) among his own people, not necessarily in the geographical land of Israel or (2) in the land of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [know](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow Jews](#)
- [know](#)
- [They know how I lived](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Indeed then, all the [Jews know](#) the manner of my life which {was} from my youth, that from the beginning has been among my [nation](#) and in [Jerusalem](#),

### UST

<sup>4</sup> "All my [fellow Jews know](#) about how I have conducted my life from the time I was a child. [They know how I lived](#) in the city where I was born and also later in [Jerusalem](#).

**Acts 26:5**

**the strictest sect of our religion (ULT)  
the...most rigid customs of our religion very  
carefully (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a group within Judaism who live by very strict rules"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Knowing
- to testify
- I lived
- as a Pharisee

**Translation Words - UST**

- They have known
- since I was very young I obeyed
- I lived just like the other
- Pharisees

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> Knowing me from the beginning, if they were willing to testify, that I lived as a Pharisee, according to the strictest sect of our religion.

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> They have known me from my very beginning, and they could tell you, if they wanted to, that since I was very young I obeyed the most rigid customs of our religion very carefully. I lived just like the other Pharisees.

**Acts 26:6****now (ULT)****Today I am (UST)**

The word **Now** marks a shift from Paul discussing his past to talking about himself in the present.

**I stand here being judged (ULT)  
on trial (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "I am here, where they are putting me on trial" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**because of my hope of the promise that was made to our fathers by God (ULT)****because I am confidently expecting that God will do what he promised to our ancestors (UST)**

This speaks about a **promise** as if it were something a person could look for and see. Alternate translation: "because I am waiting expectantly for God to do what he promised our forefathers he would do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [being judged](#)
- [my hope](#)
- [of...promise](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [trial](#)
- [I am confidently expecting](#)
- [God](#)
- [he promised](#)
- [ancestors](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> And now I stand here [being judged](#) because of [my hope](#) of the [promise](#) that was made to our [fathers](#) by [God](#),

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> Today I am on [trial](#) because [I am confidently expecting](#) that [God](#) will do what [he promised](#) to our [ancestors](#).



## **Acts 26:7**

**to which our 12 tribes...hope to attain (ULT)**  
**Our twelve Jewish tribes...to do for us what he promised...I confidently expect that God will do what he promised...are also confidently waiting for God...and they also believe that! But it is (UST)**

The phrase **our 12 tribes** stands for the people in those tribes.  
 Alternate translation: "which is also what our fellow Jews in the 12 tribes are waiting for" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to which...hope to attain (ULT)**  
**to do for us...I confidently expect that God will do what he promised...are also confidently waiting for God...and they also believe that! But it is (UST)**

This speaks about a promise as if it were a destination that can be reached. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**serving night and day (ULT)**  
**and worship him, day and night (UST)**

The extremes **night** and **day** mean they "worshiped God continually." (See: [Merism](#))

**by the Jews (ULT)**  
**that...they...say I have done wrong (UST)**

Here, **the Jews** does not mean all **the Jews**. Alternate translation: "by the leaders of the Jews" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [12 tribes](#)
- [hope](#)
- [hope](#)
- [serving](#)
- [day](#)
- [I am being accused](#)
- [the Jews](#)
- [O King](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [twelve Jewish tribes](#)
- [are also confidently waiting for God](#)
- [what I expect God to do](#)
- [and worship him](#)
- [day](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> to which our [12 tribes](#) [hope](#) to attain, in earnest [serving](#) night and [day](#). Concerning this [hope](#), I am being [accused](#) by [the Jews](#), O King.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Our [twelve Jewish tribes](#) are also [confidently waiting for God](#) to do for us what he promised, as they honor him and [worship him](#), [day](#) and night. [Honored king](#), I confidently expect that God will do what he promised, and they also believe that! But it is for [what I expect God to do](#) that [they say I have done wrong](#).



- Honored king
- they
- that...say I have done wrong

**Acts 26:8**

**Why is it judged unbelievable among you that God raises the dead (ULT)**

**Why would any of you think that God could not raise the dead (UST)**

Paul uses a question to challenge the Jews present. They believe God can raise **the dead** but do not think God brought Jesus back to life. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of you think it is unbelievable that God raises the dead." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**raises the dead (ULT)**

**raise the dead (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "makes dead people come alive again"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [is it judged](#)
- [God](#)
- [raises](#)
- [the dead](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [think that](#)
- [God](#)
- [raise](#)
- [the dead](#)

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> Why [is it judged](#) unbelievable among you that [God raises the dead](#)?

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> Why would any of you [think that God](#) could not [raise the dead](#)?

## Acts 26:9

### Then

Paul uses the word **Then** to mark another shift in his defense. He is now beginning to describe how he formerly persecuted Jesus' people.

### to the name of Jesus...opposed (ULT) There was a time in the past when...to...from believing in Jesus...stop people (UST)

The word **name** here stands for the teaching about the person.  
Alternate translation: "to stop people from teaching about Jesus"  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [of Jesus the Nazarene](#)
- [Nazarene](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [from believing in](#)
- [Jesus from Nazareth town](#)
- [from Nazareth town](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then, I thought to myself that it was necessary to do many things opposed to the [name of Jesus the Nazarene](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> There was a time in the past when I, too, was sure that I should do everything that I could to stop people [from believing in Jesus from Nazareth town](#).

## Acts 26:10

**when...were being put to death...they...I cast my vote against them (ULT)**

**And when their people killed believers...And when their people killed believers...I voted in favor of that (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state the phrase **were being put to death** in active form. Alternate translation: "I voted in agreement with the other Jewish leaders to condemn the believers to die" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [of...saints](#)
- [prison](#)
- [having received](#)
- [authority](#)
- [chief priests](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [believers](#)
- [prison, as](#)
- [chief priests there had given me power](#)
- [chief priests there had given me power](#)
- [chief priests there had given me power](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And I did these things in [Jerusalem](#), and I even locked up many of the [saints](#) in [prison](#), [having received](#) the [authority](#) from the [chief priests](#). and when they were being put to death, I cast my vote against them.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So that is what I did when I lived in [Jerusalem](#). I shut up many of the [believers](#) in [prison](#), as the [chief priests there had given me power](#) to do. And when their people killed believers, I voted in favor of that.

## Acts 26:11

**often punishing them (ULT)**  
**I punished those Jewish people...where I could find them (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Paul punished some believers many times or (2) Paul punished many different believers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- punishing
- synagogues
- to blaspheme
- I persecuted them
- foreign cities

### Translation Words - UST

- I punished those Jewish people...where I could find
- synagogue
- against them
- to make them insult God
- foreign cities to find them so I could do everything in my power

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And often **punishing** them in all the **synagogues**, I forced them **to blaspheme**, and being greatly enraged against them, **I persecuted them** even as far as to **foreign cities**.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> **I punished those Jewish people** in every **synagogue where I could find** them. I would force them, with all my anger **against them, to make them insult God** and curse his name. I even went off to **foreign cities to find them so I could do everything in my power** to stop them.

## Acts 26:12

### While doing this (ULT) in...that is where (UST)

Paul uses this phrase to mark another shift in his defense. He is now telling about when he saw Jesus and became his disciple.

### While doing this (ULT) in...that is where (UST)

The word **While** is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time. In this case, Paul went to Damascus during the time when he persecuted Christians.

### with authority and a commission (ULT) gave me power...arrest...and (UST)

Paul had written letters from the Jewish leaders, granting him authority to persecute the Jewish believers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Damascus
- authority
- from...chief priests

### Translation Words - UST

- The chief priests
- gave me power
- Damascus

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> While doing this, traveling to **Damascus** with **authority** and a commission that {was} from the **chief priests**,

### UST

<sup>12</sup> "The **chief priests** gave me power to arrest believers in **Damascus**, and that is where I went. But while I was on my way,

## Acts 26:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...day
- O King
- a light
- from heaven

### Translation Words - UST

- at about noon
- O King
- a bright light
- in the sky

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> in the middle of the day, along the road, O King, I saw a light from heaven, beyond the brightness of the sun, shining around me and those who were traveling with me.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> at about noon, O King, I saw on the road a bright light in the sky. It was even brighter than the sun! It shone all around me, and also around those who were traveling with me.

**Acts 26:14****I heard a voice speaking to me (ULT)  
Then I heard the voice of someone speaking  
to me (UST)**

Here, **voice** stands for the person speaking. Alternate translation: "I heard someone speaking to me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**me...Saul, Saul, why do you persecute (ULT)  
me...He said, 'Saul, Saul, why are you  
persecuting (UST)**

This is a rhetorical question. The speaker is alerting Saul to what Saul is doing to him, and implying that Saul should not do that. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Saul, Saul, you are persecuting me." or "Saul, Saul, stop persecuting me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**It is hard for you to kick against a goad (ULT)  
It is hard for you to kick against the goads (UST)**

For Paul to resist Jesus and to persecute believers is spoken of as if he were an ox kicking at the sharp stick that a person uses to prod (or **goad**) the animal. It means that Paul is only harming himself. Alternate translation: "You will only harm yourself like an ox kicking a goad" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [a voice](#)
- [Hebrew](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [do you persecute](#)
- [It is hard](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the voice](#)
- [Hebrew](#)
- [He said, 'Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [are you persecuting](#)
- [It is hard](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> And when we all had fallen to the ground, I heard [a voice](#) speaking to me in the [Hebrew](#) language, 'Saul, Saul, why [do you persecute](#) me? [It is hard](#) for you to kick against a goad.'

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> We all fell to the ground. Then I heard [the voice](#) of someone speaking to me in the [Hebrew](#) language. [He said, 'Saul, Saul, why \[are you persecuting\]\(#\) me? \[It is hard\]\(#\) for you to kick against the goads.'](#)



## Acts 26:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- you, Lord
- Lord
- Jesus
- are persecuting

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- the Lord
- Jesus! I am
- are fighting against

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And I said, 'Who are you, Lord?' And the Lord replied, 'I am Jesus whom you are persecuting.'

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Then I said, 'Who are you, Lord?' And the Lord said, 'I am Jesus! I am the one you are fighting against.'

## Acts 26:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- get up
- to appoint
- as a servant
- a witness

### Translation Words - UST

- get up
- in order to make
- a servant
- a witness

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But **get up** and stand on your feet; because for this I appeared to you, **to appoint** you **as a servant** and **a witness** of both that which you have seen about me and of that which will be shown to you;

### UST

<sup>16</sup> But **get up** and stand on your feet! I have appeared to you **in order to make** you into **a servant** and **a witness** both of what you have seen of what you know about me now and what I will show you later.

## Acts 26:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- rescuing
- people
- Gentiles
- am sending

### Translation Words - UST

- I will protect
- people
- non-Jews
- will send

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> rescuing you from the people and from the Gentiles, to whom I am sending you,

### UST

<sup>17</sup> I will protect you from the people and the non-Jews to whom I will send you,



## **Acts 26:18**

**to open their eyes (ULT)**  
**in order to open their eyes (UST)**

Helping people to understand the truth is spoken of as if a person were literally helping someone **to open their eyes**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to turn...from darkness to light (ULT)**  
**to turn them...from darkness to light (UST)**

Helping someone to stop doing what is evil and to start trusting and obeying God is spoken of as if the person is literally leading someone out of a dark place into a place of **light**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to turn...from...from the authority of Satan to God (ULT)**

**to turn them...from...from the power of the enemy to God (UST)**

Helping someone to stop obeying **Satan** and to start obeying God is spoken of as if a person were literally turning a person and taking them from the place where Satan rules and leading him to the place where God rules. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for them to receive forgiveness of sins and (ULT)**  
**God will forgive their sins and give to them...that all my people will have forever (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **forgiveness**, you could express the same idea with the verb "forgive." Alternate translation: "so that God may forgive their sins and give them" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**an inheritance (ULT)**  
**people (UST)**

The blessings that Jesus gives to those who believe in him are spoken of as if they were **an inheritance** that children receive from their father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**those who have been sanctified by faith that {is} in me (ULT)**  
**the things...the...who belong to me by faith (UST)**

Jesus choosing some people to belong to him is spoken of as if he set them apart from other people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to...by faith that {is...me (ULT)**  
**to...the...me by faith (UST)**

Here Paul finishes quoting the Lord. Alternate translation: "because they believe in me"

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> to open their eyes **to turn** from **darkness to light**, and from the **authority of Satan to God**, for them **to receive forgiveness of sins** and **an inheritance** among those **who have been sanctified by faith** that {is} in me.'

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> in order to open their eyes, **to turn them** from **darkness to light**, and from the **power of the enemy to God**. In this way **God will forgive their sins** and **give to them** the things that all my people will have forever, the **people who belong to me by faith**.

## Translation Words - ULT

- to turn
- darkness
- who have been sanctified
- by faith
- light
- from...authority
- of Satan
- God
- to receive
- forgiveness
- of sins
- an inheritance

## Translation Words - UST

- to turn them
- darkness
- who belong
- by faith
- light
- power
- enemy
- God
- God will forgive
- their sins
- give to
- people

**Acts 26:19****Therefore (ULT)****So (UST)**

Paul had just explained what the Lord had commanded him in his vision. Alternate translation: "Because what I have just said is true"

**I was not disobedient to the heavenly vision (ULT)****I did what God told me in a vision to do (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not disobedient**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "I obeyed the heavenly vision" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**to the heavenly vision (ULT)****I did what...God told me in a vision...to do (UST)**

This refers to what the person in the **vision** told Paul. Alternate translation: "to what the person from heaven told me in the vision" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [King](#)
- [disobedient](#)
- [heavenly](#)
- [to...vision](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [King](#)
- [I did what...to do](#)
- [God told me](#)
- [in a vision](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> Therefore, [King Agrippa](#), I was not [disobedient](#) to the [heavenly vision](#);

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> "So, [King Agrippa](#), I [did what God told me in a vision to do](#).



## Acts 26:20

### to turn to God (ULT) ask God for help (UST)

To start trusting God is spoken of as if a person turns to start walking toward God. Alternate translation: “to trust in God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### doing deeds worthy of repentance (ULT) I told them also that they should do those things that show that they have stopped sinning (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **repentance**, you could express the same idea with the verb “repented.” Alternate translation: “and start doing good deeds to show they truly have repented” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Damascus](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [to...Gentiles](#)
- [I declared](#)
- [to repent](#)
- [of repentance](#)
- [to turn](#)
- [God](#)
- [deeds](#)
- [worthy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in Damascus](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [show that they have stopped sinning](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [non-Jews there also](#)
- [I told them](#)
- [that they should stop sinning](#)
- [show that they have stopped sinning](#)
- [ask](#)
- [God](#)
- [those things that](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> but, to those in [Damascus](#) first, and also [in Jerusalem](#), and in all the region [of Judea](#), and to the [Gentiles](#), [I declared to repent and to turn to God](#), doing [deeds worthy of repentance](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> First, I spoke to the Jews [in Damascus](#) and those [in Jerusalem](#), and in all the countryside [of Judea](#), and to the [non-Jews there also](#). [I told them that they should stop sinning](#) and [ask God](#) for help. I told them also that they should do [those things that show that they have stopped sinning](#).

## Acts 26:21

### the Jews (ULT) some Jews (UST)

Here, **the Jews** does not mean all of **the Jews**. Alternate translation: "some Jews" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jews](#)
- [having seized](#)
- [temple](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [some Jews](#)
- [seized](#)
- [temple courtyard](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For the sake of this, [the Jews](#), [having seized](#) me in the [temple](#), attempted to kill me.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> It is because I preached this message that [some Jews seized](#) me when I was in the [temple courtyard](#) and tried to kill me.

**Acts 26:22****to both small and great (ULT)  
both ordinary people and important people (UST)**

Here, **small** and **great** are used together to mean “all people.”  
Alternate translation: “to all people, whether common or great” (See: [Merism](#))

**nothing other than...what (ULT)  
so I have continued...exactly what (UST)**

You can state this in positive form. Alternate translation: “the same thing that”

**both...what...the prophets (ULT)  
both...exactly what the prophets (UST)**

Paul is referring to the collective writings of the Old Testament **prophets**.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [day](#)
- [testifying](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [Moses](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [very day](#)
- [to tell](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [Moses](#)

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> Therefore having received help which is from [God](#) until this [day](#), I stand, [testifying](#) to both small and great, saying nothing other than what both the [prophets](#) and [Moses](#) said is going to happen—

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> However, [God](#) has been helping me, so I have continued to proclaim these things to this [very day](#). I have continued [to tell](#) both ordinary people and important people exactly what the [prophets](#) and [Moses](#) said would happen.

**Acts 26:23**

**that the Christ {is} subject to suffering (ULT)**  
**They said that the Messiah would suffer and die (UST)**

You can make explicit that Christ must also die. Alternate translation: "that the Christ must suffer and die" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**from the resurrection of the dead (ULT)**  
**to rise from the dead (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to be brought back to life"

**of the dead (ULT)**  
**the dead (UST)**

The phrase **the dead** refers to the spirits of people who have died. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

**is going to proclaim light (ULT)**  
**They also said that he would proclaim (UST)**

To tell people about how God saves people is spoken of as if a person were speaking about the **light**. Alternate translation: "he would proclaim the message about how God saves people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Christ
- is} subject to suffering
- the resurrection
- of the dead
- to proclaim
- light
- to...people
- to...Gentiles

**Translation Words - UST**

- Messiah
- would suffer and die
- to rise
- the dead
- They also said that he would
- proclaim
- his own people
- non-Jewish people, that God is truly able to save them

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> that the **Christ {is} subject to suffering** and that {as} the first from **the resurrection of the dead**, is going to **proclaim light** both to the **people** and to the **Gentiles**."

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> They said that the **Messiah would suffer and die**, that he would be the first **to rise from the dead**. **They also said that he would proclaim**, both to **his own people** and to the **non-Jewish people**, that **God is truly able to save them**."

**Acts 26:24****you are insane (ULT)****crazy (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you are speaking nonsense" or "you are crazy"

**your great learning is turning you to insanity (ULT)****in...you are...You have studied too much...has made you insane (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you have learned so much that it is now making you crazy"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- with a...voice
- Paul

**Translation Words - UST**

- a...voice
- Paul

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> And as he is saying these things in his defense, Festus says with a loud voice, "Paul, you are insane; your great learning is turning you to insanity."

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> Before Paul could say anything further, Festus shouted out in a loud voice: "Paul, you are crazy! You have studied too much, and it has made you insane!"

**Acts 26:25****I am not insane...but (ULT)****I am not insane...On the contrary (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not insane**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "I am sane ... and" or "I am able to think well ... and" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**most excellent Festus (ULT)****Your Excellency Festus (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Festus, who deserves highest honors"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- of truth

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul
- true

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> But Paul says, "I am not insane, most excellent Festus, but I am speaking words of truth and of sanity.

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> But Paul answered, "Your Excellency Festus, I am not insane! On the contrary, what I am saying is true and quite sane!



## **Acts 26:26**



**the king...to whom...from him (ULT)**  
**King Agrippa...the things that...to...him about them (UST)**

Paul is still speaking to King Agrippa, but he is referring to him in the third person. Alternate translation: “you ... to you ... from you” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**I am...speaking boldly (ULT)**  
**I have been talking...I can speak freely (UST)**

Paul was not afraid to speak to the king about Christ. Alternate translation: “I speak with confidence”

**I am persuaded that (ULT)**  
**I am sure...none of...in (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “I am sure that” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**are hidden...none of these things...from him...for this was not done in a corner (ULT)**  
**could have escaped his notice...him about them. I am sure...none of these things...in...I am sure...that...none of...happened...in...secret (UST)**

Paul uses two negative phrases to emphasize that the events of Jesus’ life were well-known. Alternate translation: “he is well-aware of these things, because they were done openly” (See: [Litotes](#))

**are hidden...none of these things...from him (ULT)**  
**could have escaped his notice...him about them. I am sure...none of these things...in (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “he is aware of this” or “you are aware of this” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**not...this was...done in a corner (ULT)**  
**I am sure...none of...in...I am sure...that...none of...happened...in...secret (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “this has not happened in a corner” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> For the [king knows](#) about these things, to whom I am indeed speaking [boldly](#), for I am persuaded that none of these things are hidden from him; for this was not done in a corner.

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> For [King Agrippa knows](#) the things that I have been talking about, and [I can speak freely](#) to him about them. I am sure that none of these things could have escaped his notice, because none of these things happened in secret.”

## **in a corner (ULT)**

## **I am sure...none of...in...secret (UST)**

This means doing something in secret as if a person went and did something **in a corner** of a room where no one could see him. Alternate translation: "in a dark place" or "in secret" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- king
- knows
- boldly

### **Translation Words - UST**

- King Agrippa
- knows
- I can speak freely

**Acts 26:27****Do you believe the prophets, King Agrippa (ULT)****King Agrippa, do you believe what the prophets wrote (UST)**

Paul asks this question to remind **Agrippa** that Agrippa already believes what **the prophets** said about Jesus. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You already believe what the Jewish prophets said, King Agrippa." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Do you believe](#)
- [you believe](#) (2)
- [prophets](#)
- [King](#)
- [I know](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [King](#)
- [do you believe](#)
- [you believe those things](#) (2)
- [prophets wrote](#)
- [I know](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> [Do you believe](#) the [prophets](#), [King Agrippa](#)? [I know](#) that [you believe](#)."

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> "[King Agrippa](#), [do you believe](#) what the [prophets wrote](#)? [I know](#) that [you believe those things](#)."

## Acts 26:28

**In a short time, are you persuading me to become a Christian (ULT)**

**In just a short time you have almost persuaded me to become a Christian (UST)**

Agrippa asks this question to show Paul that he cannot convince Agrippa so easily without more proof. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you do not think you can convince me so easily to believe in Jesus!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- a Christian

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- a Christian

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> But Agrippa said to Paul, "In a short time, are you persuading me to become a Christian?"

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Then Agrippa answered Paul, "In just a short time you have almost persuaded me to become a Christian!"

## Acts 26:29

### but without these chains (ULT) except for these chains (UST)

Here, **these chains** stands for being a prisoner. Alternate translation: “but, of course, I do not want you to be a prisoner like I am” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)
- [to God](#)
- [such](#)
- [as](#)
- [chains](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul replied](#)
- [to God](#)
- [will...become like me](#)
- [will...become like me](#)
- [chains](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But [Paul](#) replied, “I pray [to God](#) for, either in a short time or in a long time, not you only, but also all those hearing me today to become [such as](#) I also am, but without these [chains](#).”

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> [Paul replied](#), “Whether it takes a short time or a long time, it does not matter. I pray [to God](#) that you and also all of the others who are listening to me today will also [become like me](#), except for these [chains](#)!”

## Acts 26:30

### Bernice...Bernice (ULT) also...Bernice (UST)

**Bernice** was the sister of King Agrippa ([Acts 25:13](#)).

### And then the king got up, and the governor

Alternate translation: "And then King Agrippa stood up, and Governor Festus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- king
- got up
- governor

### Translation Words - UST

- king stood
- governor
- got up

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And then the king got up, and the governor, and Bernice, and those sitting with them;

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Then the king stood. The governor, Bernice, and all the others also got up

**Acts 26:31**

**This man is not doing anything worthy of death or of chains (ULT)**

**This man has done...nothing deserving death or his chains (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **death**, you can express the same idea with the verb "die."  
Alternate translation: "This man does not deserve to die or chains"  
(See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**This man is not doing anything worthy of death or of chains (ULT)**

**This man has done...nothing deserving death or his chains (UST)**

Here, **chains** stands for being in prison. Alternate translation: "This man does not deserve to die or to be in prison"  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [worthy](#)
- [of death](#)
- [of chains](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [nothing deserving death or his chains](#)
- [nothing deserving death or his chains](#)
- [nothing deserving death or his chains](#)

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> and when they had left, they talked to one another, saying, "This man is not doing anything [worthy of death](#) or [of chains](#)."

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> and left the room. After they left, they said to each other, "This man has done [nothing deserving death or his chains](#)."

**Acts 26:32****This man was able to have been released****(ULT)****this man...he could have been released (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "This man could have gone free" or "I could have freed this man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [he had...appealed](#)
- [to Caesar](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [had...appealed to](#)
- [Caesar](#)

**ULT**

<sup>32</sup> But Agrippa said to Festus, "This man was able to have been released if [he had not appealed to Caesar](#)."

**UST**

<sup>32</sup> Agrippa said to Festus, "If this man had not [appealed to Caesar](#), he could have been released."



## Acts 27

### Acts 27 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sailing

People who lived near the sea traveled by boat powered by the wind. During some months of the year, the wind would blow in the wrong direction or so hard that sailing was impossible.

#### Trust

Paul trusted God to bring him safely to land. He told the sailors and soldiers to trust that God would also keep them alive. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

#### Paul breaks bread

Luke uses almost the same words here to describe Paul taking bread, thanking God, breaking it, and eating it that he used to describe the last supper Jesus ate with his disciples. However, your translation should not make your reader think that Paul was leading a religious celebration here.



## **Acts 27:1**

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul, as a prisoner, begins his journey to Rome.

**when...it was decided (ULT)****When...the Governor decided (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "when the king and the governor decided" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to Italy (ULT)****for Italy (UST)**

**Italy** was the name of the province Rome was in. See how you translated **Italy** in [Acts 18:2](#).

**they handed over both Paul and some other prisoners to a centurion named Julius of the Augustan regiment (ULT)****he put Paul and some other prisoners into the control of an army captain whose name was Julius. He held the rank of centurion and was part of a large number of soldiers who were under the direct command of the emperor (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they put a centurion named Julius, of the Augustan regiment, in charge of Paul and some other prisoners"

**they handed over both Paul and some other prisoners (ULT)****he put Paul and some other prisoners...the (UST)**

This could mean: (1) **they** refers to the governor and the king or (2) **they** refers to other Roman officials.

**to a centurion named Julius (ULT)****into the control of an army captain whose name was Julius. He held...rank of centurion and was part of (UST)**

**Julius** is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**of the Augustan regiment (ULT)****a large number of soldiers who were under the direct command of the emperor (UST)**

The **Augustan regiment** was the name of the battalion or army from which the centurion came. Some versions translate this as "the Imperial regiment." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> And when it was decided for us to sail to Italy, they handed over both **Paul** and some other **prisoners to a centurion named Julius** of the Augustan regiment.

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> When the Governor decided that we should sail for Italy, he put **Paul** and some other **prisoners into the control of an army captain whose name was Julius**. He held the rank of centurion and was part of a large number of soldiers who were under the direct command of the emperor.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- prisoners
- to a centurion
- named

## Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- prisoners
- into the control of an army captain
- whose name



## **Acts 27:2**

## from Adramyttium (ULT) city of Adramyttium in Asia (UST)

**Adramyttium** was a city possibly located on the west coast of modern-day Turkey. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## having boarded...a ship...being about to sail (ULT)

### We boarded...a ship from...about to sail (UST)

Here, **a ship ... being about to sail** stands for the crew that will sail the ship. Alternate translation: “having boarded a ship ... with a crew that was about to sail” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## we set sail...us (ULT)

### In this way we went to sea...us (UST)

The words **we** and **us** include the author of Acts, Paul, and the others traveling with Paul, but not the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

## a ship from Adramyttium (ULT) a ship from...city of Adramyttium in Asia (UST)

This could mean: (1) a **ship** that had come from Adramyttium or (2) a **ship** that was registered or licensed in Adramyttium.

## being about to sail (ULT) about to sail (UST)

Alternate translation: “going to sail soon” or “departing soon”

## we set sail (ULT) In this way we went to sea (UST)

Alternate translation: “we began our journey on the sea”

## Aristarchus (ULT) Aristarchus (UST)

**Aristarchus** came from Macedonia but had been working with Paul in Ephesus. See how you translated his name in [Acts 19:29](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Asia](#)
- [a Macedonian](#)
- [of Thessalonica](#)

## ULT

<sup>2</sup> And having boarded a ship from Adramyttium, being about to sail to places along [Asia](#), we set sail. Aristarchus, [a Macedonian of Thessalonica](#), was with us.

## UST

<sup>2</sup> We boarded a ship from the city of Adramyttium in Asia. The ship was about to sail to places on the coast of [Asia](#). In this way we went to sea. Aristarchus, [from Thessalonica in Macedonia](#), went with us.



## Translation Words - UST

- of Asia
- from Thessalonica
- in Macedonia

**Acts 27:3****we landed (ULT)****we arrived (UST)**

Here the word **we** refers to the writer, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**kindly...Julius having treated Paul (ULT)****kindly...Julius treated Paul (UST)**

See how you translated **Julius** in [Acts 27:1](#). Alternate translation: "Julius having treated Paul with a friendly concern"

**to go to {his} friends to receive {their} care****(ULT)****to go see his friends, who would care for him (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **care**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "to go to his friends so they could care for him" or "to go to his friends so they could help him with whatever he needed" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Sidon](#)
- [Paul](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Sidon](#)
- [Paul](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> And the next day, we landed at [Sidon](#), and Julius having treated [Paul](#) kindly, allowed him to go to {his} friends to receive {their} care.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> The next day we arrived at [Sidon](#). Julius treated [Paul](#) kindly and gave him permission to go see his friends, who would care for him.

**Acts 27:4**

**having put to sea, we sailed under (ULT)  
Then the ship set sail...We went...which was  
sheltered from the wind (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we started sailing and went under"

**we sailed under Cyprus (ULT)  
We went along the coast of Cyprus, which was  
sheltered from the wind (UST)**

Here, **under Cyprus** means they sailed along the side of that island that blocks the strong wind, so the ship was not forced off its course.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Cyprus](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [along the coast of Cyprus](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> And from there, having put to sea, we sailed under [Cyprus](#) because of the winds that were against us.

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> Then the ship set sail from there. We went [along the coast of Cyprus](#), which was sheltered from the wind, because the wind was against us.

**Acts 27:5****Pamphylia (ULT)****Pamphylia (UST)**

**Pamphylia** was a province in Asia Minor. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:10](#).

**we came to Myra of Lycia (ULT)**  
**arrived at Myra, which is in Lycia. We got off the ship there (UST)**

You can make explicit that they got off the ship in **Myra**. Alternate translation: “we came to Myra, a city of Lycia, where we got off the ship” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to Myra (ULT)****at Myra (UST)**

**Myra** is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**of Lycia (ULT)****which is in Lycia. We got off the ship there (UST)**

**Lycia** was a Roman province, located on the southwestern coast of modern-day Turkey. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Cilicia](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [coast of Cilicia](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> And when we had sailed across the sea past [Cilicia](#) and Pamphylia, we came to Myra of Lycia.

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> After that, we crossed over the sea close to the [coast of Cilicia](#) and Pamphylia. The ship arrived at Myra, which is in Lycia. We got off the ship there.

**Acts 27:6**

**having found...a ship from Alexandria sailing to Italy (ULT)**

**found...a ship...had come from Alexandria and would soon sail to Italy (UST)**

It is implied that a crew would sail the ship to Italy. Alternate translation: "having found a ship that a crew had sailed from Alexandria and was about to sail to Italy" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**from Alexandria (ULT)**

**had come from Alexandria (UST)**

**Alexandria** is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [centurion](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Julius](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> And there, the [centurion](#) having found a ship from Alexandria sailing to Italy, he put us on it.

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> In Myra, [Julius](#) found a ship that had come from Alexandria and would soon sail to Italy. So he arranged for us to go aboard that ship, and we left.



## **Acts 27:7**

**And...sailing slowly...and having arrived with difficulty (ULT)**  
**but...We sailed slowly...and came...we got there with difficulty (UST)**

You can make explicit that the reason they were **sailing slowly** and **with difficulty** was because the wind was blowing against them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**near Cnidus (ULT)**  
**near to Cnidus (UST)**

**Cnidus** was an ancient settlement located in what today is modern-day Turkey. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the wind no longer allowing us to go that way (ULT)**  
**because the winds were against us. After that, the wind was very strong and did not allow (UST)**

Alternate translation: "with a strong wind blowing against us so we could no longer go that way"

**Cnidus...we sailed along...Crete (ULT)**  
**Cnidus...the ship to move straight ahead westward...Instead, we sailed along the coast of the Island of Crete (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we sailed along the side of Crete where there was less wind"

**opposite Salmone (ULT)**  
**where the wind was not blowing strongly, and we passed near Salmone, a piece of land sticking out into the water (UST)**

**Salmone** is a coastal city in Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [Crete](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [days](#)
- [Instead, we sailed along the coast of the Island of Crete](#)

## ULT

<sup>7</sup> And sailing slowly for many [days](#) and having arrived with difficulty near Cnidus, the wind no longer allowing us to go that way, we sailed along [Crete](#), opposite Salmone.

## UST

<sup>7</sup> We sailed slowly for many [days](#) and came near to Cnidus, but we got there with difficulty, because the winds were against us. After that, the wind was very strong and did not allow the ship to move straight ahead westward. [Instead, we sailed along the coast of the Island of Crete](#), where the wind was not blowing strongly, and we passed near Salmone, a piece of land sticking out into the water.



**Acts 27:8**

**with difficulty...sailing along it (ULT)**  
**The wind was still strong...it...So we moved slowly along the coast of Crete (UST)**

You can make explicit that even though the winds were not as strong as before, they were still strong enough to make sailing difficult. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Fair Havens (ULT)**

**Fair Havens (UST)**

**Fair Havens** was a port near Lasea, located on the south coast of Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**was...the city of Lasea (ULT)**  
**a town...Lasea (UST)**

**Lasea** was a coastal city in Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- called

**Translation Words - UST**

- was called

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> And sailing along it with difficulty, we came to a certain place **called** Fair Havens, which was near the city of Lasea.

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> The wind was still strong, and it prevented the ship from moving ahead fast. So we moved slowly along the coast of Crete, and we arrived at a town that **was called** Fair Havens, near Lasea.

**Acts 27:9****much...time having passed (ULT)****Much...time passed (UST)**

Because of the direction the wind was blowing, the journey from Caesarea to Fair Havens had taken more time than planned.

**the voyage already being dangerous because even the fast had already passed**

This **fast** took place on the Day of Atonement, which was usually either in the last part of September or the first part of October according to Western calendars. After this time, there was a higher risk of seasonal storms.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- time
- fast
- Paul
- was warning them

**Translation Words - UST**

- time
- Jewish fasting period had already passed
- Jewish fasting period had already passed
- So Paul said to the men on the ship

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> But much **time** having passed, and the voyage already being dangerous because even the **fast** had already passed, **Paul was warning them**,

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> Much **time** passed, and it had now become dangerous to sail, because the **Jewish fasting period had already passed** and the sea would become very stormy. **So Paul said to the men on the ship**,

## Acts 27:10

**I see that...with injury and much loss...the voyage is about to be (ULT)**

**I see that...with much injury and loss...if we sail now, it will be disastrous for us (UST)**

Alternate translation: "if we travel now, we will suffer much injury and loss"

**loss, not only of the cargo and the ship, but also of our lives**

Here, **loss** means destruction when referring to things and death when referring to people.

**not only of the cargo and the ship**

The word **cargo** refers to something that a person transports from one place to another by boat. Alternate translation: "not only the ship and the goods on the ship"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...lives

### Translation Words - UST

- lives

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> saying to them, "Men, I see that the voyage is about to be with injury and much loss, not only of the cargo and the ship, but also of our **lives**."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> and said to them, "Men, I see that if we sail now, it will be disastrous for us with much injury and loss, not only of the cargo and the ship, but also of our **lives**."

## Acts 27:11

### spoken by Paul (ULT)

### Paul...what the...they advised (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that Paul said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [centurion](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Roman captain](#)
- [Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But the [centurion](#) paid more attention to the pilot and to the owner of the ship than the things spoken by [Paul](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> But the [Roman captain](#) did not believe [Paul](#). Instead, he believed what the pilot and the owner of the ship said, and he decided to do what they advised.

**Acts 27:12**

**unsuitable...the harbor being...for wintering (ULT)**

**not a good place...The harbor was...to remain during the winter (UST)**

You can make explicit why it was not easy to stay in the harbor.  
Alternate translation: "because the harbor did not sufficiently protect docked ships during winter storms" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**harbor (ULT)**

**harbor (UST)**

A **harbor** is a place on the coast that is protected from wind and waves so that ships can safely stay there.

**Phoenix (ULT)**

**Phoenix (UST)**

**Phoenix** is a city port on the south coast of Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**to spend the winter there (ULT)**

**and spend the winter there (UST)**

This speaks about the season of **winter** as if it were a commodity that someone can spend. Alternate translation: "to stay there for the cold season" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**looking toward the southwest and toward the northwest**

This means the opening of the harbor was toward those directions. Alternate translation: "it opened to the northwest and southwest"

**toward the southwest and toward the northwest**

These directions are based on the rising and setting sun. The **southwest** is a little to the left of the setting sun, and **northwest** is a little to the right of the setting sun.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [in Crete](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Crete](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> But the harbor being unsuitable for wintering, the majority made a decision to sail from there, if somehow they might be able to arrive at Phoenix, to spend the winter there—a harbor [in Crete](#), looking toward the southwest and toward the northwest.

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> The harbor was not a good place to remain during the winter, so most of the sailors advised going to sea from there. They hoped that they could reach Phoenix and spend the winter there. Phoenix is a town in [Crete](#). On it blow winds both from the southwest and northwest.

## Acts 27:13

### after they had weighed anchor (ULT) they lifted the anchor up out of the sea (UST)

Here, **weighed anchor** means to pull the anchor out of the water. An **anchor** is a heavy object attached to a rope that is secured to the boat. The anchor is tossed into the water and sinks to the bottom of the sea keeping the ship from drifting about.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Crete](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [along the coastline of the island of Crete](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And when a south wind had blown gently, thinking they obtained {their} purpose, after they had weighed anchor, they sailed along close to [Crete](#).

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Because there was only a gentle wind blowing from the south, the ship's crew thought that they could travel like they wanted to. So they lifted the anchor up out of the sea, and the ship sailed close [along the coastline of the island of Crete](#).

**Acts 27:14****not long after (ULT)****After a short time (UST)**

Alternate translation: "after a little while"

**a violent wind (ULT)****a stormy wind...from the north side and hit the ship (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a very strong, dangerous wind"

**called the northeaster (ULT)****That wind is called Euroclydon, "the Northeast Wind (UST)**

The word for **northeaster** in the original language is **Euroclydon**. You can transliterate this word for your language. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

**rushed down from it (ULT)****blew down from the shore. It blew across the island (UST)**

Alternate translation: "came in from the island of Crete, and it blew strongly against our ship"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [called](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [is called](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> But not long after, a violent wind [called](#) the northeaster rushed down from it.

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> After a short time, however, a stormy wind blew down from the shore. It blew across the island from the north side and hit the ship. That wind [is called](#) Euroclydon, "the Northeast Wind."

## Acts 27:15

**And having been seized and the ship not being able to face into the wind (ULT)  
It blew strongly against the front of the ship,  
and we could not sail against it. So the sailors  
let the wind move the ship in the direction  
that the wind was blowing (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And when the wind blew so strongly against the front of the ship that we could not sail against it"

**having given way, we were driven along (ULT)  
in the direction that the wind was blowing  
(UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "we stopped trying to sail forward, and we let the wind push us whichever way it blew" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And having been seized and the ship not being able to face into the wind, having given way, we were driven along.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> It blew strongly against the front of the ship, and we could not sail against it. So the sailors let the wind move the ship in the direction that the wind was blowing.



**Acts 27:16**

**of a...island...sailing under the lee...certain (ULT)**

**a small island...sailed along the coast line of (UST)**

Alternate translation: "sailing where the wind was not so strong, on the side of the island"

**of a...island...certain...called Cauda (ULT)**  
**a small island...sailed along the coast line of... named Cauda (UST)**

This island of **Cauda** was located on the south coast of Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**of the lifeboat (ULT)**  
**the ship (UST)**

A **lifeboat** is a smaller boat that is sometimes pulled behind the ship, and sometimes it was brought onto the ship and tied down. The smaller boat was used for various reasons, including escaping from a sinking ship.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sailing under the lee
- called

**Translation Words - UST**

- sailed along the coast line of
- named

**ULT**

<sup>16</sup> But sailing under the lee of a certain island called Cauda, we were able with difficulty to gain control of the lifeboat.

**UST**

<sup>16</sup> The ship then sailed along the coast line of a small island named Cauda. We were able, with difficulty, to fasten the lifeboat securely to the ship.

**Acts 27:17****Having hoisted it up (ULT)****When they had hoisted the lifeboat up (UST)**

Alternate translation: "When they had lifted up the lifeboat" or "After they had pulled the lifeboat aboard the ship"

**they used ropes, binding the ship (ULT)****they used its ropes to bind the hull of the ship (UST)**

They tied **ropes** around the bottom of the ship so that the ship would not come apart during the storm.

**Syrtis (ULT)****run aground on the sandbars of Syrtis (UST)**

**Syrtis** is located on the coast of Libya, northern Africa. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the...having lowered...sea anchor (ULT)****the...so they lowered the sea anchor (UST)**

A **sea anchor** was a sail or other object that would drag along in the water behind the ship in order to slow down the ship from going where the wind was blowing them.

**they were driven along (ULT)****and the wind drove them along (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "they had to go in whatever direction the wind blew them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [fearing](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [And they were afraid that they might](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> Having hoisted it up, they used ropes, binding the ship. And [fearing](#) lest they might run aground on Syrtis, having lowered the sea anchor, thus they were driven along.

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> When they had hoisted the lifeboat up, they used its ropes to bind the hull of the ship. [And they were afraid that they might](#) run aground on the sandbars of Syrtis, so they lowered the sea anchor and the wind drove them along.

## Acts 27:18

**exceedingly...with us being...battered by the storm (ULT)**

**roughly...The wind and the waves continued to toss the ship about (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "since the wind blew us roughly back and forth so that all of us were badly battered and bruised by the storm" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they began the jettisoning of the cargo (ULT)**  
**the sailors began to throw overboard the things that the ship was carrying (UST)**

Here, **they** is the sailors. This is done to lighten the weight of the ship in an effort to prevent the ship from sinking.

**the jettisoning of the cargo (ULT)**  
**the sailors began to throw overboard the things that the ship was carrying (UST)**

The word **cargo** refers to something that a person transports from one place to another by boat. See how you translated this in [Acts 27:10](#). Alternate translation: "goods on the ship"

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> But with us being exceedingly battered by the storm, the next day, they began the jettisoning of the cargo.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> The wind and the waves continued to toss the ship about roughly. So on the next day the sailors began to throw overboard the things that the ship was carrying.

**Acts 27:19**

**they threw overboard the equipment of the ship with their own hands (ULT)  
the storm, the sailors threw overboard most of the sails, ropes...poles, in order to make the ship lighter. They did this with their own hands (UST)**

Here, **equipment** refers to the sailors' equipment needed to sail the ship: tackle, hoists, beams of wood, block and tackle, ropes, lines, sails, and the like. This indicates how desperate the situation was.

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> And on the third day, they threw overboard the equipment of the ship with their own hands.

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> On the third day of the storm, the sailors threw overboard most of the sails, ropes, and poles, in order to make the ship lighter. They did this with their own hands.

**Acts 27:20****But neither sun nor stars appearing for many days**

They could not see the **sun** and **stars** because of the dark storm clouds. Sailors needed to see the sun and stars in order to know where they were and what direction they were headed.

**storm...no small...assaulting us (ULT)**  
**and the sky was full of dark clouds day and night...and the sky was full of dark clouds day and night...We had lost (UST)**

Alternate translation: "as the terrible storm blew us roughly back and forth"

**all remaining hope for us to be saved was taken away (ULT)**  
**We had lost...all hope that we would survive (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "everyone stopped believing we would survive" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [days](#)
- [hope](#)
- [to be saved](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [days](#)
- [hope](#)
- [would survive](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> But neither sun nor stars appearing for many [days](#), and no small storm assaulting us, all remaining [hope](#) for us [to be saved](#) was taken away.

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> The wind continued to blow very strongly for many [days](#), and the sky was full of dark clouds day and night so that we could not see the sun or the stars. We had lost all [hope](#) that we [would survive](#).

**Acts 27:21**

**And after being a long time without food (ULT)**

**None of us on the ship had eaten for many days (UST)**

It is implied that neither the sailors, nor Luke, Paul, and those with them had eaten anything. Alternate translation: "And when we had gone a long time without food" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**in the midst of them (ULT)**  
**in front of us (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in the middle of the people on the ship"

**and to suffer this injury and loss**

Alternate translation: "and as a result to suffer this harm and loss"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- Crete

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul
- Crete

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> And after being a long time without food, then having stood up in the midst of them, Paul said, "You men should indeed have obeyed me, to not set sail from Crete, and to suffer this injury and loss.

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> None of us on the ship had eaten for many days. Then one day, Paul stood up in front of us and said, "Friends, you should have listened to me when I said that we should not set sail from Crete. Then, we would not have suffered this injury and loss.

**Acts 27:22**

**loss...there will be no...of life among you (ULT)  
do not be afraid...none of us will die...not us  
(UST)**

Paul is speaking to the sailors. It is implied that Paul also means that he and those with him will not die either. Alternate translation: “none of us will die” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**but {only} of the ship (ULT)  
storm will destroy the ship but (UST)**

Here “loss” is implied. Alternate translation: “but the only thing that will be lost is the ship”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- I urge
- to take courage
- of life

**Translation Words - UST**

- I urge
- do not be afraid
- die

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> But now this I urge you, to take courage, for there will be no loss of life among you, but {only} of the ship.

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> But now, I urge you, do not be afraid, because none of us will die. The storm will destroy the ship but not us.

## Acts 27:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- an angel
- of...God
- I serve

### Translation Words - UST

- God, the one
- I serve, sent
- an angel who came and

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For this night an angel of the God of whom I am and whom I serve, stood beside me

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> I know this, because last night God, the one to whom I belong and whom I serve, sent an angel who came and stood by me.



## Acts 27:24

**You must stand before Caesar (ULT)**  
**You must go to Rome...stand before the emperor there so that he can judge you (UST)**

The phrase **stand before Caesar** refers to Paul's going to court and letting Caesar judge him. Alternate translation: "You must stand before Caesar so he can judge you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**has graciously granted to you...all those who are sailing with you (ULT)**  
**I want you to know that...has granted...to you...that all those who are traveling by ship with you will also survive (UST)**

Alternate translation: "has graciously decided to allow all those who are sailing with you to live"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Do...be afraid](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Caesar](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul](#)
- [do...be afraid](#)
- [the emperor there](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> saying, 'Do not [be afraid](#), [Paul](#). You must stand before [Caesar](#), and behold, [God](#) has graciously granted to you all those who are sailing with you.'

### UST

<sup>24</sup> The angel said to me, '[Paul](#), do not [be afraid](#). You must go to Rome and stand before [the emperor there](#) so that he can judge you. I want you to know that [God](#) has granted to you that all those who are traveling by ship with you will also survive.'

## Acts 27:25

### according to the way it was told to me (ULT) as the angel told me (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "just as the angel told me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [take courage](#)
- [I trust](#)
- [God](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [cheer up](#)
- [I believe](#)
- [God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Therefore [take courage](#), men! For [I trust God](#) that thus it will be, according to the way it was told to me.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> So [cheer up](#), my friends, because [I believe](#) that [God](#) will make this happen, exactly as the angel told me.

## Acts 27:26

**upon...island...we must run aground...some  
(ULT)**

**on...island, and...However, the ship will crash...  
some...we will go ashore there (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the ship is going to be wrecked on some island"

### **ULT**

<sup>26</sup> But we must run aground upon some island."

### **UST**

<sup>26</sup> However, the ship will crash on some island, and we will go ashore there."

**Acts 27:27**

**And when the fourteenth night came (ULT)  
the fourteenth night after the storm had  
(UST)**

The ordinal number **fourteenth** can be translated as “fourteen” or “14.” Alternate translation: “After 14 days since the storm started, that night” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**as we were being driven this way and that  
(ULT)  
On...begun, the ship was still being blown  
across the (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “as the wind blew us back and forth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the Adriatic Sea (ULT)**

**On...begun, the ship was still being blown across the...Adriatic sea (UST)**

The **Adriatic Sea** is the sea between Italy and Greece. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> And when the fourteenth night came, as we were being driven this way and that in the Adriatic Sea, about the middle of the night the sailors thought that they were approaching some land.

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> On the fourteenth night after the storm had begun, the ship was still being blown across the Adriatic sea. About midnight, the sailors thought that the ship was getting close to land.

## Acts 27:28

### taking soundings (ULT) they lowered a rope (UST)

They measured the depth of water by dropping a line with a weight tied to the end of it into the water. Alternate translation: "measuring the depth of the sea water"

### they found 20 fathoms...they found 15 fathoms (ULT) to measure how deep the water was...saw... forty meters...thirty meters (UST)

A "fathom" is a unit of measurement for measuring the depth of water. One fathom is about two meters. Alternate translation: "they found the water was 40 meters deep" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> And taking soundings, they found 20 fathoms; but when they had gone a little further, and again taking soundings, they found 15 fathoms.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> So they lowered a rope to measure how deep the water was. When they pulled the rope up again, they measured it and saw that the water was forty meters deep. A little later, they measured again and found thirty meters.

**Acts 27:29****anchors (ULT)****anchors (UST)**

An **anchor** is a heavy object attached to a rope that is secured to the boat. The anchor is tossed into the water and sinks to the bottom of the sea, keeping the ship from drifting about. See how you translated this in [Acts 27:13](#).

**from the stern (ULT)****the ship might go...from the ship's stern. Then (UST)**

Alternate translation: "from the back of the ship"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [fearing that](#)
- [they prayed for](#)
- [daytime](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [They were afraid that](#)
- [they prayed that](#)
- [soon be dawn so that they could see where the ship was going](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> And [fearing that](#) we might crash somewhere against a rugged place, having lowered four anchors from the stern, [they prayed for daytime](#) to come.

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> [They were afraid that](#) the ship might go onto some rocks, so they threw out four anchors from the ship's stern. Then [they prayed that](#) it would [soon be dawn](#) so that [they could see where the ship was going](#).

## Acts 27:30

### the lifeboat (ULT)

### the lifeboat (UST)

A **lifeboat** is a smaller boat that is sometimes pulled behind the ship and sometime it was brought onto the ship and tied down. The smaller boat was used for various reasons, including escaping from a sinking ship. See how you translated this in [Acts 27:16](#).

### from...the bow (ULT)

### from...the ship's front (UST)

Alternate translation: "from the front of the ship"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [as...were seeking](#)
- [sea](#)
- [as if](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were planning](#)
- [sea](#)
- [to do](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But as the sailors [were seeking](#) to flee from the ship, and as they had lowered the lifeboat into the [sea](#) on a pretext [as if](#) intending to lower anchors from the bow,

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Some of the sailors [were planning](#) to escape from the ship, so they lowered the lifeboat into the [sea](#). In order that no one would know what they planned [to do](#), they pretended that they wanted to lower some anchors from the ship's front.

## Acts 27:31

**If these do not stay in the ship, you are not able to be saved (ULT)**

**If the sailors do not stay in the ship, you have no hope of surviving (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **unless ... not able**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "These men must stay in the ship in order for you to survive" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**you (ULT)**

**you (UST)**

Here the word **you** is plural and refers to the centurion and the Roman soldiers. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**you are not able to be saved (ULT)**

**you have no hope of surviving (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form **be saved** in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you will not survive" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- to...centurion
- to...soldiers
- to be saved

### Translation Words - UST

- But Paul
- the army captain
- soldiers
- of surviving

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Paul said to the centurion and to the soldiers, "If these do not stay in the ship, you are not able to be saved."

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> But Paul said to the army captain and the soldiers, "If the sailors do not stay in the ship, you have no hope of surviving."



## Acts 27:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [soldiers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [soldiers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Then the [soldiers](#) cut away the ropes of the lifeboat and let it fall away.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> So the [soldiers](#) cut the ropes and let the lifeboat fall into the water.

**Acts 27:33**

**And up until it was about to become daytime (ULT)**

**Just before dawn...to (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And until almost sunrise"

**Today {is} the fourteenth day (ULT)**  
**For the past fourteen days (UST)**

The ordinal number **fourteenth** can be stated as "fourteen."

Alternate translation: "For 14 days" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- daytime
- the
- Paul
- urged

**Translation Words - UST**

- Just before dawn
- past...days
- Paul
- urged

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> And up until it was about to become daytime, Paul urged them all to take food, saying, "Today {is} the fourteenth day, anxiously waiting, you are continuing fasting, having eaten nothing.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> Just before dawn, Paul urged everyone on the ship to eat some food. He said, "For the past fourteen days you have been waiting and watching and not eating anything.

**Acts 27:34**

**of none...a hair from the head...of you will perish (ULT)**

**Not even one...hair from your heads will perish (UST)**

This was a customary way of saying no harm would come upon them. Alternate translation: "none of you will be injured in any way in this disaster" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [I urge](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [head](#)
- [will perish](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [I urge](#)
- [must...to live](#)
- [heads](#)
- [will perish](#)

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> Therefore, [I urge](#) you to take food, for this is for your [salvation](#). For a hair from the [head](#) of none of you [will perish](#)."

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> So, now [I urge](#) you to eat some food. You [must](#) do this [to live](#). Not even one hair from your [heads](#) [will perish](#)."

## Acts 27:35

### having broken bread (ULT) he broke the bread and (UST)

Alternate translation: “after he had torn the bread into pieces” or “tearing off a piece from the loaf of bread”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- to God

#### Translation Words - UST

- some bread
- God for it

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> And having said this and having taken bread, he gave thanks to God before everyone, and having broken bread, he began to eat.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> After Paul had said that, while everyone was watching, he took some bread and thanked God for it. Then he broke the bread and began to eat some of it.

## Acts 27:36

### And they were all encouraged and (ULT) Then...were all cheered up and (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "And this encouraged all of them and they" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [encouraged](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [cheered up](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> And they were all [encouraged](#) and themselves took food.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Then they were all [cheered up](#) and ate some food.

## Acts 27:37

### And in all, we were 276 souls in the ship (ULT)

This is background information about the number of people on the ship. (See: [Background Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [souls](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [soul, self, person](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> And in all, we were 276 [souls](#) in the ship.

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> Altogether there were 276 of us on the ship.

## Acts 27:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [throwing out](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [sea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [by throwing](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [sea](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> And when they had eaten enough food, they lightened the ship, [throwing out](#) the [wheat](#) into the [sea](#).

### UST

<sup>38</sup> When everyone had eaten enough, they lightened the ship [by throwing](#) the rest of the [wheat](#) into the [sea](#).

**Acts 27:39****a...bay (ULT)****a bay (UST)**

A **bay** is a large area of water partly surrounded by land, but open to a larger body of water.

**they did not recognize the land (ULT)****we could see land...not know (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they saw land but could not recognize it as any place they knew"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [daytime](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [dawn](#)

**ULT**

<sup>39</sup> And when it was [daytime](#), they did not recognize the land, but they saw a certain bay having a beach, onto which they discussed whether they might be able to drive the ship.

**UST**

<sup>39</sup> At [dawn](#) we could see land, but the sailors did not know where we were. However, they could see a bay and a wide area of sand at the water's edge. They decided to try to run the ship up onto the beach.



**Acts 27:40**

**having cut loose the anchors, they left them (ULT)**

**they cast off the anchors and let them fall loose (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they cut the ropes and left the anchors behind"

**of the rudders (ULT)**

**the rudders (UST)**

These **rudders** were large oars or pieces of wood at the back of the ship used for steering the ship.

**the foresail (ULT)**

**the front sail so that the (UST)**

A "sail" was a large piece of cloth that catches the wind to move the ship. A **foresail** is the sail at the front of a ship that had more than one sail. Alternate translation: "the sail at the front of the ship"

**in...the...they headed...beach (ULT)**

**into...the...They they steered the ship...shore (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they steered the ship toward the beach"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sea](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [sea](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> And having cut loose the anchors, they left them in the [sea](#). At the same time, having loosened the bands of the rudders and having raised the foresail to the wind, they headed to the beach.

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> So they cast off the anchors and let them fall loose into the [sea](#). At the same time, they untied the ropes that fastened the rudders, and they raised the front sail so that the wind would blow into it. They they steered the ship toward the shore.

**Acts 27:41**

**having come...to a place between two seas (ULT)**

**But...ran hard onto a sandbank that...But...ran hard onto a sandbank that (UST)**

Sometimes where two seas meet, the current of one can flow across the current of the other. This may cause the sand under the water to pile up making the water more shallow, and dangerous for ships.

**bow of the ship (ULT)**  
**front of the ship (UST)**

Alternate translation: "front of the ship"

**the stern**

Alternate translation: "the back of the ship"

**ULT**

<sup>41</sup> But having come to a place between two seas, the ship ran aground, and the bow of the ship having stuck there, it remained immovable, but the stern was breaking up by the violence of the waves.

**UST**

<sup>41</sup> But the ship sailed into turbulent waters and ran hard onto a sandbank that was just under the waves. The front of the ship stuck there and could not move, and big waves beat against the back of the ship, so that it began to break apart.

## Acts 27:42

**the...the plan of...soldiers was (ULT)**

**The...soldiers had it in mind (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the soldiers were planning"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...soldiers
- prisoners

### Translation Words - UST

- soldiers
- all...prisoners

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Now the plan of the **soldiers** was that they would kill the **prisoners** lest some of them, having swum away, would escape.

### UST

<sup>42</sup> The **soldiers** had it in mind to kill **all** the **prisoners** so that none of them could swim away and escape.

## Acts 27:43

**stopped their plan (ULT)**  
**so he stopped the soldiers from doing this (UST)**

Alternate translation: "kept them from doing what they planned to do"

**having jumped overboard (ULT)**  
**jump into the water (UST)**

Alternate translation: "having jumped off the ship into the water"

### Translation Words - ULT

- centurion
- to save
- Paul
- he commanded

### Translation Words - UST

- army captain
- to save
- Paul
- Instead, he commanded

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> But the centurion, wanting to save Paul, stopped their plan, and so he commanded those who were able to swim, first having jumped overboard, to get to the land,

### UST

<sup>43</sup> But army captain wanted to save Paul, so he stopped the soldiers from doing this. Instead, he commanded that everyone who could swim should jump into the water and swim to shore.

## Acts 27:44

**some...on planks (ULT)**  
**others to hold onto planks or other pieces...**  
**others to hold onto planks or other pieces**  
**(UST)**

Alternate translation: "some on wooden boards"

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> and then the rest, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship, and in this way, it happened that all were brought safely to the land.

### UST

<sup>44</sup> Then he told the others to hold onto planks or other pieces from the ship and go toward the shore. We did what he said, and in that way all of us arrived safely on land.

## **Acts 28**

### **Acts 28 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

No one knows for sure why Luke ends his history without telling what happened to Paul after he had been in Rome for two years.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **“Letters” and “brothers”**

The Jewish leaders were surprised that Paul wanted to speak with them, because they had received no letters from the high priest in Jerusalem telling them that Paul was coming.

When the Jewish leaders spoke of “brothers,” they were referring to fellow Jews, not to Christians.

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

##### **“He was a god”**

The native people believed that Paul was a god, but they did not believe that he was the one true God. We do not know why Paul did not tell the native people that he was not a god.

**Acts 28:1****we then learned (ULT)****After we had arrived safely on...we learned (UST)**

Here the word **we** refers to Paul, the writer, and those who traveled with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**Connecting Statement:**

After the shipwreck, people on the island of Malta helped Paul and everyone on the ship. They stay there for 3 months.

**And having been brought safely through (ULT)****After we had arrived safely on (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "And when we had arrived safely" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the island was called Malta (ULT)****the shore...was an island called Malta (UST)**

**Malta** is an island located south of the modern-day island of Sicily. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having been brought safely through](#)
- [was called](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [After we had arrived safely on](#)
- [was...called](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> And [having been brought safely through](#), we then learned that the island [was called](#) Malta.

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> [After we had arrived safely on](#) the shore, we learned that it was an island [called](#) Malta.

**Acts 28:2****the...native people (ULT)****The...gave...people who lived there (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the local people"

**offered to us not ordinary kindness (ULT)  
to us better than...usual hospitality...invited (UST)**Being kind to someone is spoken of as if it were an object that someone offers. Alternate translation: "were especially kind to us" (See: [Metaphor](#))**not ordinary kindness (ULT)  
better than...usual hospitality (UST)**This phrase is uses a negative to emphasize the opposite of what is said. Alternate translation: "a great deal of kindness" (See: [Litotes](#))**having lit...a fire (ULT)****They lit...a fire (UST)**

Alternate translation: "when they put together twigs and branches and burned them"

**they welcomed us all (ULT)  
us...come and warm ourselves (UST)**

This could mean: (1) "welcomed all of the people from the ship" or (2) "welcomed Paul and all his companions."

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [a fire](#)
- [they welcomed](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [a fire](#)
- [come and warm ourselves](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> And the native people offered to us not ordinary kindness, for having lit [a fire](#), [they welcomed](#) us all, because of the rain that was beginning, and because of the cold.

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> The people who lived there gave to us better than the usual hospitality. They lit [a fire](#) and invited us to [come and warm ourselves](#), because it was raining and it was cold.



**Acts 28:3**

**a viper, having come out from the heat (ULT)  
a poisonous snake came out from the fire to  
escape from the heat (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a poisonous snake, driven from the bundle of sticks by the heat of the fire"

**the...fastened on to his...hand (ULT)  
the...and it bit Paul...on...his...hand...and  
stayed there (UST)**

Alternate translation: "bit Paul's hand and did not let go"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Paul
- fire
- a viper
- hand

**Translation Words - UST**

- Paul
- fire
- a poisonous snake
- on...hand

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> But when Paul had gathered a certain quantity of sticks and had placed them on the fire, a viper, having come out from the heat, fastened on to his hand.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> When Paul collected some sticks of wood and put them on the fire, a poisonous snake came out from the fire to escape from the heat, and it bit Paul on his hand and stayed there.

**Acts 28:4**

**This man certainly is a murderer (ULT)  
they said...Probably this man has murdered  
someone...has escaped...being drowned in...  
him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "For sure, this man is a murderer" or "This man is truly a murderer"

**justice (ULT)  
justice will cause (UST)**

The word **justice** refers to the name of a god that they worshiped.  
Alternate translation: "the god called Justice" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [hand](#)
- [having been saved](#)
- [sea](#)
- [justice](#)
- [to live](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [hand](#)
- [Probably this man has murdered someone...has escaped...being drowned in...him](#)
- [sea, the god of](#)
- [justice will cause](#)
- [to die](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> And when the native people saw the creature hanging from his [hand](#), they said to one another, "This man certainly is a murderer, who [having been saved](#) from the [sea](#), [justice](#) has not permitted him [to live](#)."

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> The people from the island saw the creature dangling from Paul's [hand](#), they said to each other, "[Probably this man has murdered someone](#). Although he [has escaped](#) from [being drowned in the sea](#), [the god of justice will cause him to die](#)."

## Acts 28:5

### shaking off the snake into the fire

Alternate translation: "after shaking his hand so that the snake fell from his hand into the fire"

### suffered no harm (ULT) nothing happened to him (UST)

Alternate translation: "was not hurt at all"

### Translation Words - ULT

- fire
- suffered

### Translation Words - UST

- fire, and
- nothing

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then, he, shaking off the snake into the fire, suffered no harm.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But Paul simply shook the snake off into the fire, and nothing happened to him.

**Acts 28:6****to become inflamed (ULT)****swell up (UST)**

This could mean: (1) his body would swell because of the snake venom or (2) he would become very hot with fever.

**nothing unusual happening to him (ULT)**  
**nothing was wrong with him. So the people...  
 to one another (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **nothing unusual**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "everything about him was as it should be" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**having changed their minds (ULT)**  
**changed what they were thinking (UST)**

To think differently about a situation is spoken of as if a person is changing his mind. Alternate translation: "thinking again" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they said that he is a god (ULT)**  
**said...This man is not a murderer! He is a god (UST)**

You can state this as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "they said, 'This man must be a god.'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**they said that he is a god (ULT)**  
**said...This man is not a murderer! He is a god (UST)**

Perhaps there was a belief that someone who lived after a poisonous snake bite was divine or a god.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [dead](#)
- [a god](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [die](#)
- [a god](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> But they were expecting him to begin to become inflamed or to suddenly fall down [dead](#). But watching him for a long time and seeing nothing unusual happening to him, having changed their minds, they said that he is [a god](#).

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> The people were expecting that Paul's body would soon swell up with a fever or that he would suddenly fall down and [die](#). But after they had waited a long time, they saw that nothing was wrong with him. So the people changed what they were thinking and said to one another, "This man is not a murderer! He is [a god](#)!"

**Acts 28:7**

**us...entertained us (ULT)**  
**us to come and stay in his home...took very good care of us (UST)**

Here both instance of the word **us** refer to Paul, Luke, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**Now in the {area} near that same place (ULT)**  
**Now in a place near to where they were, there were some...the chief official (UST)**

**Now** is used to introduce a new person or event in the account.

**of the most important man of the island (ULT)**  
**belonged to a man...on the island (UST)**

This could mean: (1) the main leader of the people or (2) someone who was the most important person on the island, perhaps because of his wealth.

**named Publius (ULT)**  
**whose name was Publius. He was (UST)**

**Publius** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [named](#)
- [having welcomed](#)
- [for...days](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [whose name](#)
- [He invited](#)
- [days](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> Now in the {area} near that same place were lands of the most important man of the island, [named](#) Publius, who [having welcomed](#) us, kindly entertained us for three [days](#).

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> Now in a place near to where they were, there were some fields that belonged to a man [whose name](#) was Publius. He was the chief official on the island. [He invited](#) us to come and stay in his home. He took very good care of us for three [days](#).

## Acts 28:8

**And it happened that the father of Publius was lying sick, having been afflicted with fever and dysentery (ULT)**

**At that time Publius' father had fever and dysentery, and...was lying in bed...Then Paul (UST)**

This is background information about Publius' father that is important to understanding the story. (See: [Background Information](#))

**having been afflicted with fever and dysentery (ULT)**  
**fever and dysentery (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "was suffering from fever and dysentery" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**dysentery (ULT)**  
**dysentery (UST)**

"Dysentery" is an infectious intestinal disease.

**having placed {his} hands on him (ULT)**  
**placed his hands on him and (UST)**

Alternate translation: "having touched him with his hands"

### Translation Words - ULT

- father
- having been afflicted with
- Paul
- having prayed
- his} hands
- he healed

### Translation Words - UST

- father
- dysentery
- So Paul
- prayed
- hands on him and
- healed

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And it happened that the father of Publius was lying sick, [having been afflicted with](#) fever and dysentery. Paul went to him and [having prayed](#), having placed [{his} hands](#) on him, [he healed](#) him.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> At that time Publius' father had fever and [dysentery](#), and he was lying in bed. [So Paul](#) visited him and [prayed](#) for him. Then Paul placed his [hands on him and](#) [healed](#) him.

## Acts 28:9

### were being healed (ULT) he healed them (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "he healed them too" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [were being healed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [he healed them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And after this happened, the rest of those on the island who had sickness also were coming and [were being healed](#).

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> After Paul had done that, the other people on the island who were sick came to him, and [he healed them](#), too.

**Acts 28:10**

**honored us with many honors (ULT)  
brought us gifts...showed in other ways that  
they greatly respected us (UST)**

Probably they **honored** Paul and those with him by giving them gifts.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- honors
- honored
- honored...honors

**Translation Words - UST**

- gifts
- showed in other ways that they greatly respected us
- gifts...showed in other ways that they greatly respected us

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> They also **honored** us with many **honors**, and when we were setting sail, they gave us the things for {our} needs.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> They brought us **gifts** and **showed in other ways that they greatly respected us**. When we were ready to leave three months later, they brought us food and other things that we would need on the ship.



## Acts 28:11

**in...that had wintered...the island (ULT)**  
**After we had stayed there three months, we**  
**got on a ship...On the front (UST)**

Alternate translation: "that the crew left at the island for the cold season"

**in an...ship...Alexandrian (ULT)**  
**After we had stayed there three months, we**  
**got on a ship...that was from Alexandria and**  
**(UST)**

This could mean: this refers to (1) a ship that came from Alexandria, or (2) a ship that was registered or licensed in Alexandria.

**Heavenly Twins (ULT)**  
**that was going to Italy and sailed away...Castor and Pollux (UST)**

The **Heavenly Twins** refers to Castor and Pollux, the twin sons of Zeus, a Greek god. They were thought to be protectors of ships. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [months](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [After we had stayed there three months, we got on a ship](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And after three [months](#), we set sail in an Alexandrian ship that had wintered at the island, with a "Heavenly Twins" figurehead.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [After we had stayed there three months, we got on a ship](#) that was from Alexandria and that was going to Italy and sailed away. On the front of the ship there were carved images of the twin gods whose names were Castor and Pollux.

## Acts 28:12

### Syracuse (ULT) the city of Syracuse (UST)

**Syracuse** is a city on the southeast coast of the modern-day island of Sicily, just southwest of Italy. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [days](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And having landing at Syracuse, we stayed three [days](#).

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> When we arrived at the city of Syracuse, we stayed there three [days](#).

## Acts 28:13

### Rhegium (ULT) the city of Rhegium in Italy (UST)

**Rhegium** was a port city located at the southwestern tip of Italy.  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### a south wind having sprung up (ULT) the wind was blowing from the south (UST)

Alternate translation: "when the wind began to blow from the south"

### Puteoli (ULT) the town of Puteoli. There we left the ship (UST)

**Puteoli** is located in modern-day Naples on the west coast of Italy. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [day](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Having sailed from there, we arrived at Rhegium, and after one [day](#), a south wind having sprung up, we came to Puteoli the next day.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then we sailed and arrived at the city of Rhegium in Italy. The next [day](#), the wind was blowing from the south, so in only two more days we reached the town of Puteoli. There we left the ship.

**Acts 28:14****Having found brothers there (ULT)  
In Puteoli we met some fellow believers (UST)**

Alternate translation: "When we met fellow believers there"

**brothers (ULT)  
fellow believers (UST)**

These **brothers** were followers of Jesus, including both men and women. Alternate translation: "fellow believers" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**we were begged (ULT)  
who wanted us to stay (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "they begged us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**and in this way, we came to Rome (ULT)  
for...this, we finally arrived at Rome (UST)**

Once Paul reached Puteoli, the rest of the journey **to Rome** was on land. Alternate translation: "and after we stayed seven days with them, we went to Rome" or "and so our trip ended as we arrived in Rome"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [brothers](#)
- [we were begged](#)
- [for...days](#)
- [Rome](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [fellow believers](#)
- [who wanted us to stay](#)
- [days. After](#)
- [Rome](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> Having found [brothers](#) there, [we were begged](#) to stay with them for seven [days](#), and in this way, we came to [Rome](#).

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> In Puteoli we met some [fellow believers who wanted us to stay](#) with them for seven [days](#). [After](#) this, we finally arrived at [Rome](#).

## Acts 28:15

### having heard the things about us (ULT) had heard about us...the (UST)

Alternate translation: "after they heard why we were there"

### having thanked God, took courage (ULT) he thanked God and was encouraged (UST)

Here, **courage** is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could **take**. Alternate translation: "thanked God and was encouraged" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Forum of Appius...Three Taverns (ULT) town called The Market on Appian Road... others met us at the town called The Three Inns (UST)

**Forum of Appius** and **Three Taverns** were a popular market and inn on the main highway called the Appian Way, about 50 kilometers south of the city of Rome. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [God](#)
- [courage](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [In Rome, some fellow believers](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [God](#)
- [and was encouraged](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> From there, the [brothers](#), having heard the things about us, came to a meeting with us as far as Forum of Appius and Three Taverns. Having seen them, [Paul](#), having thanked [God](#), took [courage](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [In Rome, some fellow believers](#) had heard about us, so they came to meet us. Some of them met us at the town called The Market on Appian Road, and others met us at the town called The Three Inns. When [Paul](#) saw those believers, he thanked [God and was encouraged](#).

## Acts 28:16

### Connecting Statement:

Paul arrives in Rome as a prisoner but with the freedom to stay in his own place. He calls the local Jews together to explain what has happened to him.

### we entered (ULT)

### After we arrived (UST)

Here the word **we** refers to the writer, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Paul was allowed to stay by himself (ULT)

### Paul was permitted to live in a house by himself (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the Roman authorities gave Paul permission to stay by himself instead of in prison" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Rome
- Paul
- soldier

### Translation Words - UST

- Rome
- Paul
- a soldier there

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And when we entered into Rome, Paul was allowed to stay by himself with the soldier guarding him.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> After we arrived in Rome, Paul was permitted to live in a house by himself. But there was always a soldier there to guard him.



## **Acts 28:17**



## And it happened that (ULT) Paul had...and talk (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

## the most important of the Jews (ULT) Jewish...leaders (UST)

These were the Jewish civil or religious leaders present in Rome.

## brothers (ULT) My dear brothers, although (UST)

Here **brothers** means “fellow Jews.”

## opposed...to the people (ULT) opposed...our people (UST)

Alternate translation: “against our people” or “against the Jews”

## I...was delivered as a prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans (ULT) I have...our leaders in Jerusalem seized me...and later sent me...city of Caesarea for Roman authorities to put me on trial (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “some of the Jews arrested me in Jerusalem and placed me in the custody of the Roman authorities” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## into the hands of the Romans (ULT) city of Caesarea...Roman authorities to put me on trial (UST)

Here, **hands** stands for power or control. (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- days
- called together
- hands
- of...Romans
- of...Jews
- when...had come together
- brothers
- to...people
- of...our} fathers
- as a prisoner

## ULT

<sup>17</sup> And it happened that after three days, he called together those who were the most important of the Jews. And when they had come together, he said to them, “Men, brothers, having done nothing opposed to the people or the customs of {our} fathers, I was delivered as a prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans.

## UST

<sup>17</sup> After Paul had been there three days, he sent a message to the Jewish leaders to come and talk with him. When they came to him, Paul said to them, “My dear brothers, although I have not opposed our people nor spoken against the customs of our ancestors, our leaders in Jerusalem seized me. But before they could kill me, a Roman commander rescued me and later sent me to the city of Caesarea for Roman authorities to put me on trial.

- Jerusalem

## Translation Words - UST

- days
- sent a message to
- Roman authorities
- put me on trial
- Jewish
- to come...with him
- My dear brothers, although
- our people
- of our ancestors
- our leaders in Jerusalem
- seized me

## Acts 28:18

**there is no reason in me for a death penalty (ULT)**

**I had not done any bad thing for which I should be executed (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I had done nothing to cause them to execute me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- a death penalty

### Translation Words - UST

- executed

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> After they had questioned me, they were intending to release me, because there is no reason in me for a death penalty.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> The Roman authorities questioned me and wanted to release me, because I had not done any bad thing for which I should be executed.

**Acts 28:19****the Jews (ULT)****Jewish leaders there (UST)**

Here, **the Jews** does not mean all of **the Jews**. Alternate translation: “the Jewish leaders” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**objecting (ULT)****when the...spoke against the desire of the Romans to set me free (UST)**

Alternate translation: “complaining about what the Roman authorities wanted to do”

**I was forced to appeal to Caesar (ULT)****I had to request that the emperor judge me here in Rome (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “I had to ask for Caesar to judge me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**not as if I have anything to accuse my nation (ULT)****But my reason for doing that was not that I wanted to accuse our leaders about anything (UST)**

Here, **my nation** stands for the people. Alternate translation: “but it was not because I wanted to accuse the people of my nation before Caesar” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [to Caesar](#)
- [as if](#)
- [to accuse](#)
- [nation](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jewish leaders there](#)
- [that the emperor judge me here in Rome](#)
- [that was](#)
- [that I wanted to accuse](#)
- [our leaders](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> But the [Jews](#) objecting, I was forced to appeal [to Caesar](#)—not [as if](#) I have anything [to accuse](#) my [nation](#).

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> But when the [Jewish leaders there](#) spoke against the desire of the Romans to set me free, I had to request [that the emperor judge me here in Rome](#). But my reason for doing [that was](#) not [that I wanted to accuse our leaders](#) about anything.

**Acts 28:20****the hope of Israel (ULT)**

**I am a prisoner...I believe in what the people of Israel confidently expect God will do for us (UST)**

This could mean: (1) the people of Israel confidently expect the Messiah to come or (2) the people of Israel confidently expect God to bring those who have died back to life.

**I am bound with this chain (ULT)**

**I am a prisoner...I believe in what...people of Israel (UST)**

Here, **bound with this chain** stands for being a prisoner. Alternate translation: "I am a prisoner" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of Israel (ULT)**

**I am a prisoner...I believe in what...people of Israel (UST)**

Here, **Israel** stands for the people. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel" or "the Jews" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [I summoned](#)
- [I am bound with](#)
- [hope](#)
- [of Israel](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [So I have requested](#)
- [I am a prisoner...I believe in what...people of Israel](#)
- [I am a prisoner...I believe in what...people of Israel](#)
- [confidently expect God will do for us](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> Therefore, for this reason, [I summoned](#) you, to see and to speak with you. For [I am bound with](#) this chain because of the [hope of Israel](#)."

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> [So I have requested](#) you to come here so that I can tell you why [I am a prisoner](#). It is because [I believe in what the people of Israel confidently expect God will do for us](#)."

**Acts 28:21****We (ULT)****We (UST)**

Here, **We** refers to the Jewish leaders in Rome. (See: [Acts 28:17](#) and [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**neither...have any of the brothers come (ULT)**  
**not...Also...of our fellow Jews who have**  
**arrived here (UST)**

Here, **brothers** stands for fellow Jews. Alternate translation: “and none of our fellow Jews have come”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [received](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [of...brothers](#)
- [and} reported](#)
- [evil](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [have...received](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [fellow Jews](#)
- [has said](#)
- [bad](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> But they said to him, “We neither [received](#) letters from [Judea](#) about you, nor have any of the [brothers](#) come {and} [reported](#) or said anything [evil](#) about you.

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> Then the Jewish leaders said, “We have not [received](#) any letters from our fellow Jews in [Judea](#) about you. Also, none of our [fellow Jews](#) who have arrived here from Judea [has said](#) anything [bad](#) about you.

**Acts 28:22****this sect (ULT)****this group that you belong to (UST)**

A **sect** is a smaller group within a larger group. Here it refers to those who believe in Jesus. Alternate translation: "this group to which you belong"

**it is known to us (ULT)****we know...are (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "we know" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**it is spoken against everywhere (ULT)****in many places people...speaking against it (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "many Jews all over the Roman Empire are saying bad things about it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [known](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [know](#)

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> But we want to hear from you what you think, for concerning this sect, it is [known](#) to us that it is spoken against everywhere."

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> But we want to hear what you think about this group that you belong to, because we [know](#) that in many places people are speaking against it."





## **Acts 28:23**

**when they had appointed...to them...them (ULT)**  
**they decided...that day arrived, even...them (UST)**

Here all occurrences of the words **they** and **them** refer to the Jewish leaders in Rome.

**when they had appointed...a day for him (ULT)**  
**they decided...would come back on another day...he (UST)**

Alternate translation: "when they had chosen a time for him to speak to them"

**testifying about the kingdom of God (ULT)**  
**to...Paul told...about how God would rule everyone (UST)**

Here, **kingdom of God** stands for God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "telling them about God's rule as king" or "telling them how God would show himself as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**from the prophets (ULT)**  
**the prophets (UST)**

Here, **the prophets** refers to what they wrote. Alternate translation: "from what the prophets wrote" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [when they had appointed](#)
- [a day](#)
- [testifying about](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [law of Moses](#)
- [from...prophets](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they decided](#)
- [would come back on another day](#)
- [Paul told](#)
- [to...about how God...would rule everyone](#)
- [law of Moses](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [foretold Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> And [when they had appointed a day](#) for him, more people came to him at his lodging. He was explaining to them, [testifying about the kingdom of God](#) and persuading them about [Jesus](#), both from the [law of Moses](#) and from the [prophets](#), from morning until evening.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> So [they decided](#) that they [would come back on another day](#) to hear Paul speak to them. When that day arrived, even more people than before came to where Paul was staying. [Paul told them about how God would rule everyone](#); he talked about how the [law of Moses](#) and the [prophets foretold Jesus](#). Paul talked with all who would listen from morning until evening.

## Acts 28:24

### And some were convinced about the things which he was saying

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "And Paul was able to convince some of them by what he said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [did not believe](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [did not believe that it was true](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And some were convinced about the things which he was saying, but others [did not believe](#).

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Some of those Jews were persuaded to believe what Paul said about Jesus was true, but others [did not believe that it was true](#).

**Acts 28:25**

**after Paul had spoken one word (ULT)  
and when they were...about to leave, Paul had  
one more thing to say...when (UST)**

Here, **word** stands for a message or statement. Alternate translation: “after Paul had said one more thing” or “after Paul had made this statement” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The Holy Spirit spoke well through Isaiah the  
prophet to your fathers (ULT)  
The Holy Spirit said the truth to your  
ancestors...he spoke these words to Isaiah the  
prophet (UST)**

This sentence contains quotations within quotations. (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Paul](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [fathers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Paul](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [prophet](#)

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> And being in disagreement with one another, they left after [Paul](#) had spoken one word, “The [Holy Spirit](#) spoke well through [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#) to your [fathers](#)”

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> When they began to disagree with each other, and when they were about to leave, [Paul](#) had one more thing to say: “The [Holy Spirit](#) said the truth to your [ancestors](#), when he spoke these words to [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#).”

## Acts 28:26

In this verse, Paul begins to quote the prophet Isaiah.

**saying, 'Go to this people and say, "By hearing you will hear, but you will certainly not understand; and by seeing you will see, but you will certainly not perceive (ULT)**

**Go to your people and say to them: 'You hear with your ears, but you never understand what God is saying. You see with your eyes but you never really see the things that God is doing (UST)**

This is the end of the sentence that begins with the words "The Holy Spirit spoke" in verse 25 and that contains quotations within quotations. You can translate one of the inner quotations as an indirect quotation, or you can translate two of the inner quotations as indirect quotations. "The Holy Spirit spoke well through Isaiah the prophet to your forefathers when the Spirit told Isaiah to go tell them that they will hear but will not understand and they will see but they will not perceive" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**By hearing you will hear...by seeing you will see (ULT)**

**You hear with your ears...You see with your eyes (UST)**

The words **hear** and **see** are repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: "When you listen you will hear ... when you look you will see"

**but you will certainly not understand...but you will certainly not perceive (ULT)**

**but you never understand what God is...but you never really see the things that God is doing (UST)**

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that the Jewish people will not understand God's plan. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [you will...understand](#)
- [you will...perceive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [your people](#)
- [understand what God is](#)
- [you...see the things that God is doing](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> saying, 'Go to this [people](#) and say, "By hearing you will hear, but [you will](#) certainly not [understand](#); and by seeing you will see, but [you will](#) certainly not [perceive](#)."

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Go to [your people](#) and say to them: 'You hear with your ears, but you never [understand what God is](#) saying. You see with your eyes but you never really [see the things that God is doing](#).'



## **Acts 28:27**

**General Information:**

Translate Paul's quotation of Isaiah as a direct quotation or indirect quotation according to how you translated it in [Acts 28:25-26](#).

**For the heart of this people has become dull****(ULT)****These people do not...because they have become stubborn. their ears are almost deaf...****to (UST)**

People who stubbornly refuse to understand what God is saying or doing are spoken of as if their **heart** is **dull**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the heart (ULT)****These...do not...because they have become stubborn (UST)**

Here, **heart** is a metonym for the mind. Alternate translation: "the thinking" or "the thoughts" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**with {their} ears they hardly heard, and they shut their eyes (ULT)****understand...their ears are almost deaf...and they have closed their eyes (UST)**

People who stubbornly refuse to understand what God is saying or doing are spoken of as if they are unable to hear and are shutting **their eyes** so that they will not see. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**might understand with {their} heart (ULT)****understand with their hearts (UST)**

Here, **heart** stands for the mind. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**might turn again (ULT)****they would come back...me (UST)**

To start obeying God is spoken of as though the person were physically **turning** toward God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will heal them (ULT)****I would heal them (UST)**

This does not mean God will only **heal** them physically. He will also heal them spiritually by forgiving their sins.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heart](#)
- [with...their} heart](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> For the [heart](#) of this [people](#) has become dull, and with {their} ears they hardly heard, and they shut their eyes. Otherwise they might see with {their} eyes, and might hear with {their} ears, and [might understand](#) with {their} heart and [might turn again](#), and [I will heal](#) them."

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> These [people do not](#) understand, [because they have become stubborn](#). their ears are almost deaf; and they have closed their eyes because they do not want to see. They do not want to hear with their ears or [understand](#) with their [hearts](#), for then [they would come back to me](#) and [I would heal](#) them.'



- of...people
- might understand
- might turn again
- I will heal

## Translation Words - UST

- people
- These...do not...because they have become stubborn
- hearts
- understand
- they would come back...me
- I would heal

**Acts 28:28**

**this salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles (ULT)**

**that...God...to save the non-Jews (UST)**

God's message about how he saves people is spoken of as if it were an object that is **sent**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**this salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles (ULT)**

**that...God...to save the non-Jews (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God is sending his messengers to the Gentiles to tell them about how he will save them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they also will hear (ULT)**  
**and they will listen (UST)**

This response of the Gentiles is in contrast to the way the Jews of that time refused to listen to God. Alternate translation: "some of them also will listen"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [known](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [of God](#)
- [has been sent](#)
- [to...Gentiles](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [should know](#)
- [God](#)
- [to save](#)
- [to save](#)
- [the non-Jews](#)

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> Therefore, let it be [known](#) to you that this [salvation of God has been sent](#) to the [Gentiles](#), they also will hear."

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> Therefore, you [should know](#) that [God](#) is offering [to save the non-Jews](#), and they will listen."

## Acts 28:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>29[1]</sup> [And when he had said these things, the Jews went away, having a great dispute among themselves.]

### UST

<sup>29[1]</sup> [When he had said these things, the Jews went away. They were having a great dispute among themselves.]

## Acts 28:30

### Connecting Statement:

In verses 30-31, Luke ends the story of Paul in the book of Acts. (See: [End of Story](#))

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And he stayed for two whole years in his own rented house, and he was welcoming all those who are coming to him,

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> For two whole years Paul stayed there in a house that he rented. Many people came to see him, and he received them all gladly and talked with them.

## Acts 28:31

### proclaiming the kingdom of God (ULT) He preached and taught people about how God would show himself as king (UST)

Here, **kingdom of God** refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "preaching about God's rule as king" or "preaching about how God will show himself as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [proclaiming](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [boldness](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [He preached](#)
- [taught people about how God would show himself as king](#)
- [he taught them](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [boldness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> [proclaiming](#) the [kingdom of God](#) and [teaching](#) the things about the [Lord Jesus Christ](#) with all [boldness](#), without hindrance.

28:29 <sup>[1]</sup>

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> [He preached](#) and [taught people about how God would show himself as king](#), and [he taught them](#) about the [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#). He did that with great [boldness](#), and no one tried to stop him.

28:29 <sup>[1]</sup>



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 33**

## Abstract Nouns

### Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

### Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Introduction to Acts](#); [Acts 1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:18](#); [1:22](#); [2:20](#); [2:23](#); [2:26](#); [2:31](#); [2:38](#); [2:42](#); [2:46](#); [3:10](#); [3:20](#); [3:21](#); [3:26](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:12](#); [4:13](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [4:33](#); [4:35](#); [4:36](#); [5:17](#); [5:23](#); [5:31](#); [6:1](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:10](#); [7:2](#); [7:5](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:25](#); [7:26](#); [7:49](#); [8:8](#); [8:12](#); [8:22](#); [8:32](#); [8:33](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [9:31](#); [10:35](#); [10:36](#); [10:38](#); [11:18](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [12:11](#); [12:14](#); [12:20](#); [13:10](#); [13:24](#); [13:26](#); [13:43](#); [13:47](#); [14:3](#); [14:9](#); [14:22](#); [14:26](#); [14:27](#); [15:3](#); [15:11](#); [15:31](#); [15:40](#); [19:4](#); [19:38](#); [20:19](#); [20:21](#); [21:40](#); [22:4](#); [22:28](#); [23:6](#); [23:10](#); [23:29](#); [24:3](#); [24:15](#); [24:21](#); [25:15](#); [26:1](#); [26:18](#); [26:20](#); [26:31](#); [27:3](#))



## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)  
[Verbs](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: Acts 1:2; 1:5; 1:9; 1:11; 1:12; 1:16; 1:17; 1:18; 1:19; 1:20; 1:22; 1:23; 1:26; 2:1; 2:4; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:12; 2:13; 2:14; 2:16; 2:20; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 2:29; 2:31; 2:33; 2:37; 2:38; 2:40; 2:41; 2:47; 3:2; 3:7; 3:10; 3:11; 3:14; 3:19; 3:20; 3:23; 3:25; 4:5; 4:8; 4:9; 4:10; 4:11; 4:12; 4:14; 4:17; 4:23; 4:26; 4:27; 4:31; 4:34; 4:35; 4:36; 5:4; 5:9; 5:14; 5:16; 5:17; 5:23; 5:34; 5:36; 5:37; 5:38; 5:39; 5:41; 6:1; 6:3; 6:9; 7:13; 7:16; 7:20; 7:21; 7:22; 7:23; 7:24; 7:30; 7:42; 7:54; 8:1; 8:4; 8:6; 8:7; 8:10; 8:12; 8:13; 8:16; 8:18; 8:22; 8:32; 8:33; 8:36; 8:37; 8:40; 9:2; 9:6; 9:8; 9:11; 9:17; 9:18; 9:19; 9:21; 9:23; 9:24; 9:31; 9:36; 9:42; 10:1; 10:5; 10:6; 10:11; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 10:22; 10:27; 10:29; 10:31; 10:32; 10:33; 10:40; 10:41; 10:42; 10:45; 10:47; 10:48; 11:5; 11:10; 11:11; 11:13; 11:14; 11:16; 11:19; 11:22; 11:24; 11:26; 12:5; 12:6; 12:9; 12:12; 12:20; 12:23; 12:24; 12:25; 13:1; 13:4; 13:8; 13:9; 13:12; 13:26; 13:27; 13:28; 13:29; 13:31; 13:33; 13:36; 13:38; 13:39; 13:40; 13:41; 13:42; 13:43; 13:44; 13:45; 13:46; 13:48; 13:49; 14:4; 14:9; 14:11; 14:26; 15:1; 15:3; 15:4; 15:6; 15:11; 15:15; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 15:21; 15:22; 15:28; 15:30; 15:33; 15:39; 15:40; 16:2; 16:4; 16:5; 16:6; 16:14; 16:15; 16:18; 16:22; 16:26; 16:27; 16:30; 16:31; 16:33; 17:4; 17:16; 17:25; 17:29; 18:8; 18:25; 19:3; 19:5; 19:17; 19:27; 19:39; 19:40; 20:3; 20:9; 20:22; 21:13; 21:14; 21:21; 21:24; 21:25; 21:26; 21:30; 21:33; 21:34; 21:35; 21:37; 22:3; 22:5; 22:10; 22:11; 22:12; 22:16; 22:20; 22:24; 23:3; 23:5; 23:6; 23:10; 23:27; 23:29; 23:30; 24:21; 25:6; 25:9; 25:10; 25:14; 25:17; 25:20; 25:21; 25:23; 26:2; 26:6; 26:10; 26:26; 26:32; 27:1; 27:11; 27:12; 27:15; 27:17; 27:18; 27:20; 27:25; 27:27; 27:31; 27:36; 28:1; 28:8; 28:9; 28:14; 28:16; 28:17; 28:19; 28:22; 28:24; 28:28)

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.  
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#)

**(Go back to:** [Acts 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:5; 1:7; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:13; 1:14; 1:18; 2:4; 2:8; 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 2:21; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:27; 2:30; 2:31; 2:33; 2:34; 2:39; 2:40; 2:42; 2:43; 2:46; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:6; 3:8; 3:14; 3:15; 3:17; 3:20; 3:24; 3:25; 4:1; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:8; 4:13; 4:14; 4:17; 4:19; 4:21; 4:23; 4:25; 4:26; 4:27; 4:36; 5:2; 5:3; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:10; 5:13; 5:15; 5:17; 5:20; 5:21; 5:23; 5:25; 5:28; 5:29; 5:30; 5:32; 5:34; 5:35; 5:39; 5:42; 6:9; 6:11; 6:14; Notes; 7:1; 7:2; 7:5; 7:6; 7:8; 7:9; 7:12; 7:15; 7:17; 7:19; 7:24; 7:26; 7:29; 7:30; 7:31; 7:33; 7:38; 7:41; 7:42; 7:43; 7:44; 7:45; 7:48; 7:53; 7:55; 7:56; 7:58; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:6; 8:24; 8:25; 8:27; 8:28; 8:30; 8:31; 8:32; 8:35; 8:40; 9:2; 9:3; 9:4; 9:9; 9:10; 9:15; 9:17; 9:21; 9:22; 9:24; 9:25; 9:29; 9:30; 9:35; 9:37; 9:39; 9:41; 10:2; 10:3; 10:12; 10:14; 10:16; 10:17; 10:20; 10:22; 10:23; 10:28; 10:30;](#)

10:34; 10:36; 10:38; 10:41; 10:42; 10:45; 10:46; 10:48; 11:3; 11:6; 11:8; 11:10; 11:12; 11:15; 11:17; 11:20; 11:28; 11:29;  
11:30; 12:1; 12:6; 12:10; 12:15; 12:17; 12:20; 12:21; 12:23; 12:25; 13:3; 13:10; 13:24; 13:27; 13:29; 13:31; 13:32; 13:33;  
13:35; 13:36; 13:37; 13:44; 13:46; 13:52; 14:1; 14:10; 14:13; 14:15; 14:19; 15:1; 15:8; 15:11; 15:19; 15:20; 15:21; 15:22;  
15:24; 15:26; 15:29; 15:30; 15:32; 15:33; 16:3; 16:12; 16:19; 16:29; 16:37; 16:38; 17:2; 17:5; 18:9; 18:27; 19:22; 19:33;  
21:21; 21:24; 21:25; 21:28; 21:30; 21:38; 21:40; 22:24; 23:12; 24:5; 24:18; 24:24; 26:3; 26:23; 27:5; 27:6; 27:7; 27:8;  
27:21; 27:22; 28:4; 28:11)

## Background Information

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

**Example** — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

### A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
  - > \* Setting includes:
    - > \* where the story takes place
    - > \* when the story takes place
    - > \* who is present when the story begins
    - > \* what is happening when the story begins

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.



## Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said ...."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

**And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.  
**Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:15](#); [1:18](#); [3:2](#); [4:22](#); [5:34](#); [8:9](#); [8:26](#); [9:33](#); [Notes](#); [13:7](#); [13:13](#); [16:1](#); [16:16](#); [17:11](#); [18:2](#); [18:24](#); [19:7](#); [19:24](#); [21:9](#); [21:29](#); [22:2](#); [23:8](#); [27:37](#); [28:8](#))

# Biblical Money

## Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

## Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

## Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

- (1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
- (3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
- (4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

█ The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

█ "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

█ "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

█ "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

█ [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii**,<sup>1</sup> and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)

█ <sup>[1]</sup> A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 7:16](#); [19:19](#))

## Connect — Background Information

### Time Relationship

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate clauses that give background information?*

### Background Clause

#### Description

A background clause is one that describes something that is ongoing. Then, in the same sentence, another clause indicates an event that begins to happen during that time. These events are also simultaneous events, but they have the further relationship of background event and main event because the event that is already happening serves as the background for the other event, the one that is in focus. The background event simply provides the time frame or other context for the main event or events.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate a shift in time in different ways. You (the translator) need to understand how these shifts in time are indicated in the original languages in order to communicate them clearly in your own language. Background clauses often indicate a time that began long before the event that is in focus. Translators need to understand how both the source language and the target language communicate background events. Some English words that indicate background events are “now,” “when,” “while,” and “during.” Those words can also indicate simultaneous events. To tell the difference, ask yourself if all of the events seem to be equal in importance and started at about the same time. If so, they are probably simultaneous events. But if an event(s) is ongoing and another event(s) just started, then the ongoing event(s) is probably background to the other event(s). Some common phrases that indicate background events are “in those days” and “at that time.”

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

**When** Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods. (OBS Story 18 Frame 3)

Solomon began to worship foreign gods at a time when he was old. Being old is the background event. Worshiping other gods is the main event.

And his parents went **every year** to Jerusalem to the Feast of the Passover. And when he was 12 years old, they went up according to the custom of the feast. (Luke 2:41-42 ULT)

The first event—going to Jerusalem—is ongoing and started long ago. We know this because of the words “every year.” Going to Jerusalem is the background event. Then an event begins that started during the time “when he was twelve years old.” So the main event is the specific time Jesus and his family traveled to Jerusalem for the Passover festival **when he was twelve years old**.

And it came about that, **while** they were there, the days were fulfilled for her to give birth. (Luke 2:6 ULT)

Being in Bethlehem is the background event. The birth of the baby is the main event.

And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of

Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness.  
(Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

This example begins with five background clauses (marked by commas), signalled as background by the words “while” and “during.” Then the main event happens: “the word of God came to John.”

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the Background Clauses are marked is also clear in your language, then translate the Background Clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a Background Clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

(2) If your language marks Background Clauses in a different way than using connecting words (such as by using different verb forms), then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness.  
(Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a background clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

**It happened during the time that** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, **and during the time that** Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, **and during the time that** his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, **and during the time that** Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **and also during the time that** Annas and Caiaphas were high priests—**that** the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

(2) If your language marks background clauses in a different way than using connecting words, such as with different verb forms, then use that way.

Pontius Pilate **was governing** Judea, and Herod **was ruling over** Galilee, and his brother Philip **was ruling over** the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias **was ruling over** Abilene, and Annas and Caiaphas **were being** high priests—the word of God **came** to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

## Example of Differences in Time Relationship Connecting Words:

Category	Example
Background setting	Yahweh's word was rare <b>in those days</b> ;
Background repeated	there was no frequent prophetic vision.
Introduction of main event	<b>At that time, when</b> Eli
Background	<b>whose</b> eyesight had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well,
Simultaneous background	was lying down in his own bed.
Simultaneous background	The lamp of God <b>had not yet</b> gone out,
Simultaneous background	<b>and</b> Samuel was lying down to sleep in the temple of Yahweh,
Simultaneous background	where the ark of God was.
Main event	<b>Yahweh called to Samuel,</b>
Sequential event	who said, "Here I am." (1 Sam 3:1-4 ULT)

In the above example, the first two lines talk about a condition that was going on for a long time. This is the general, long-term background. We know this from the phrase "in those days." After the introduction of the main event ("At that time,"), there are several lines of simultaneous background. The first one is introduced by "when," and then three more follow, with the last connected by "and." The background clause introduced by "where" explains a little more about the background clause before it. Then the main event happens, followed by more events. Translators will need to think about the best way to show these relationships in their language.

(Go back to: [Acts 2:5](#); [3:1](#); [4:32](#); [5:12](#); [8:1](#))

## Connect — Contrast Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a contrast relationship?*

### Contrast Relationship

#### Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

#### Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.



(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

{David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

(Go back to: [Acts 3:14](#); [5:17](#); [5:39](#); [7:43](#); [13:30](#); [14:3](#))

## Connect — Exception Clauses

### Exceptional Relationship

This page answers the question: *How can I translate exception clauses?*

### Description

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude one or more items or people from a group.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group by using words like “except,” “but not,” “other than,” “besides,” “unless,” “however ... not,” and “only” (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate in this way that one or more items or people are excluded from a group. Instead, they have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

### Examples From OBS and the Bible

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4b ULT)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** 400 young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

- (1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”
- (2) Reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

### Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

- (1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not a man escaped except for 400 young men**, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not a man escaped**)
- Part 2: (**except for 400 young men**)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Only 400 young men** escaped; they rode on camels and fled.

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4 ULT)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it {only you can redeem it}**, and I am after you.

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me." (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will let you go **only if** you bless me."

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

(Go back to: [Acts 11:19](#))

## Connect — Factual Conditions

### Conditional Relationships

This page answers the question: *How can I translate factual conditions?*

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, “if ... then.” Often, however, the word “then” is not stated.

### Factual Conditions

#### Description

A Factual Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true in the speaker’s mind. In English, a sentence containing a Factual Condition can use the words “even though,” “since,” or “this being the case” to indicate that it is a factual condition and not a hypothetical condition.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not state something as a condition if it is certain or true. Translators from these languages may misunderstand the original languages and think that the condition is uncertain. This would lead to mistakes in their translations. Even if the translators understand that the condition is certain or true, the readers may misunderstand it. In this case, it would be best to translate it as a statement of fact rather than as a conditional statement.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

“**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!” (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

Elijah came near to all the people and said, “How long will you keep changing your mind? **If Yahweh is God**, follow him. But if Baal is God, then follow him.” Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

This sentence has the same construction as a hypothetical condition. The condition is “if Yahweh is God.” If that is true, then the Israelites should worship Yahweh. But the prophet Elijah does not question whether or not Yahweh is God. In fact, he is so certain that Yahweh is God that later in the passage he pours water all over his sacrifice. He is confident that God is real and that he will burn even an offering that is completely wet. Over and over again, the prophets taught that Yahweh is God, so the people should worship him. The people did not worship Yahweh, however, even though He is God. By putting the statement or instruction into the form of a Factual Condition, Elijah is trying to get the Israelites to understand more clearly what they should do.

“A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?” says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

Yahweh has said that he is a father and a master to Israel, so even though this sounds like a hypothetical condition because it begins with “if,” it is not hypothetical. This verse begins with the proverb that a son honors his father. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh. The other proverb in the verse says that a servant honors his master. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh, so it seems that he is not their master. But Yahweh is the master. Yahweh uses the form of a hypothetical condition to demonstrate that the Israelites are wrong. The second part of the condition that should occur naturally is not happening, even though the conditional statement is true.

## Translation Strategies

If using the form of a hypothetical condition is confusing or would make the reader think that the speaker doubts what he is saying in the first part of the sentence, then use a statement instead. Words such as “since” or “you know that ...” or “it is true that ...” can be helpful to make the meaning clear.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

“**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!” (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

“**It is true that** Yahweh is God, so worship him!”

“A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?” says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

“A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **Since** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **Since** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?”

(Go back to: [Acts 8:22](#))

## Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a goal (purpose) relationship?*

### Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

#### Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison.**  
(Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian.** (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with “in order to.”

Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes.** Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God’s ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean,** and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened,** which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with “and.” Then the word “so” marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
- (2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!” (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!”

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.”

- (2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17bULT)

“... keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**.” or: “... keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**.”

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance.**

(Go back to: [Acts 7:14](#))



## Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the reason-result relationship?*

### Reason-and-Result Relationships

#### Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — “I did Y because I wanted X to happen.” But usually it is looking backward — “X happened, and so I did Y.” Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are “because,” “so,” “therefore,” and “for.” Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a [Verse Bridge](#).

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus!  
(Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. “Because” connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves.  
(Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by “so that.” Notice that the term “so that” often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

“Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God.” (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.
- (2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.
- (3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

- (1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.
- (2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.
- (3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

- (1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.
- (2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.
- (3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

**Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

- (1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.
- (2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.
- (3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(Go back to: Acts 1:8; 1:17; 1:26; 2:8; 2:14; 2:15; 2:25; 2:30; 2:33; 2:36; 3:8; 4:3; 4:18; 4:20; 4:22; 4:34; 5:15; 5:38; 5:40; 6:2; 6:5; 7:34; 7:43; 8:8; 8:16; 9:28; 9:33; 11:24; 12:23)

## Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

### Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate clauses with a sequential time relationship?*

### Sequential Clause

#### Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as “then,” “later,” “after,” “afterward,” “before,” “first,” and “when.” Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

**When** Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders.  
(OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word “**when**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word “**after**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word “**before**.” However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector “**and**” connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general

connector “and” is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

## Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

- (1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
- (2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

- (2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see [Sequence of Events](#).

(Go back to: [Acts 1:10](#); [5:35](#); [8:25](#); [8:39](#))

## Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

### Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate clauses with a simultaneous time relationship?*

### Simultaneous Clause

#### Description

A simultaneous clause is a time relationship that connects two or more events that occur at the same time.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate in many different ways that events occur simultaneously. These ways may vary based on whether or not something is causing the events to occur simultaneously. Connecting words that may indicate simultaneous events are words such as “while,” “as,” and “during.” Often the Bible does not state a relationship between the events but simply says they occurred at the same time. It is important that you (the translator) know when a time relationship is implied and when it is not implied so that you can communicate it clearly. A simultaneous clause communicates that events happened at the same time but it does not indicate that one event caused the other. That would be a reason-and-result relationship.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

Joseph served his master well, **and** God blessed Joseph. (OBS Story 8 Frame 4)

Two events happened while Joseph was a slave to a wealthy government official: Joseph served well, and God blessed Joseph. There is no indication of a reason-and-result (cause and effect) relationship between the two, or that the first event happened, and then the second event happened.

But in truth I say to you that there were many widows in Israel **during** the days of Elijah. (Luke 4:25b ULT)

The connecting word “**during**” tells us clearly that two things happened at the same time, but one event did not cause the other.

And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

The people were both waiting and wondering at the same time. The general connector “**and**” indicates this.

**While** they were looking intensely into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

Three events happened at the same time — the disciples looking, Jesus going up, and two men standing. The connector words “**while**” and “**as**” tell us this.

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the simultaneous clauses are marked also is clear in your language, then translate the simultaneous clauses as they are.

- (1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that the simultaneous clauses are happening at the same time, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
- (2) If it is not clear which clause the simultaneous clause is connected to, and that they are happening at the same time, mark all of the clauses with a connecting word.
- (3) If your language marks events as simultaneous in a different way than using connecting words, then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Below, each Bible verse will be restated in three different ways, according to the translation strategies in the list above. Each restatement will have the same number as the translation strategy that it is using.

And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

- (1) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were wondering at his delaying in the temple.
- (2) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were **also** wondering at his delaying in the temple.
- (3) Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, wondering at his delaying in the temple.

**While** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

- (1) And **during the time** they were looking intently into heaven **while** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.
- (2) And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, **at that same time** two men stood by them in white clothing.
- (3) They were looking intently into heaven; he was going up **when** they saw two men standing by them in white clothing.

(Go back to: [Acts 5:21](#); [7:20](#))

## Copy or Borrow Words

### Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#).)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Examples From the Bible

▮ Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

▮ Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

▮ The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

### Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

- (1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
- (2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
- (3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

.A man's name in Hebrew letters — זְפַנְיָהּ  
 "Zephaniah" — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

Zephaniah — This is a man's name.  
 "Zephaniah" — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Zephaniah — If your language does not have the "z," you could use "s." If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f." Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay."  
 "Sefania"  
 "Sefanaia"  
 "Sefanaya"

(Go back to: [Acts 1:19](#); [13:8](#); [27:14](#))

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

### Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."  
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[Verbs](#)

[Quotations and Quote Margins](#)

## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](https://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about:  
[Quotes within Quotes](#)

**(Go back to: Acts 1:4; 2:18; 7:6; 8:14; 9:38; 11:3; 12:9; 12:18; 14:22; 17:15; 21:33; 23:34; 23:35; 25:4; 28:6)**

## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called [litotes](#).

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

"For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

"... so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

...ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)

...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law

or:

...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Verbs](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [4:12](#); [4:17](#); [4:20](#); [6:13](#); [7:19](#); [7:28](#); [7:42](#); [7:60](#); [8:16](#); [10:14](#); [10:47](#); [11:8](#); [14:17](#); [15:9](#); [25:27](#); [26:19](#); [26:25](#); [27:31](#); [28:6](#))

## Doublet

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, “Master!**  
We are perishing!”

(Go back to: [Acts 1:7](#); [2:7](#); [2:12](#); [2:20](#); [2:22](#); [2:43](#); [2:45](#); [3:10](#); [3:14](#); [4:7](#); [4:13](#); [4:18](#); [4:30](#); [4:32](#); [5:12](#); [5:15](#); [6:8](#); [7:27](#); [7:35](#); [7:36](#); [8:13](#); [8:21](#); [10:2](#); [10:14](#); [10:22](#); [10:28](#); [11:8](#); [13:10](#); [14:3](#); [15:2](#); [15:12](#); [18:9](#); [20:24](#))



## Ellipsis

### Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will sinners stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[<sup>1</sup>] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

### Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: Acts 2:20; 2:25; 3:17; 4:25; 5:21; 5:32; 7:8; 7:44; 7:45; 7:51; 10:2; 12:10; 13:20; 13:21; 13:38; 14:4; 14:12; 15:8; 15:11; 15:36; 16:1; 16:14; 19:3; 21:14; 23:11; 23:26)

## End of Story

### Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Background Information](#)

### The following are purposes for end of story information:

- to summarize the story
- to give a comment about what happened in the story
- to connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know:

- that this information is ending the story
- what the purpose of the information is
- how the information is related to the story

### Translation Strategies

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

### Examples From the Bible

- To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. **In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to the land.** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

- To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. Then they counted the value of them, and found it was 50,000 pieces of silver. **So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing with power.** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

And Mary said, "My soul magnifies the Lord, and my spirit rejoiced in God my savior." **And Mary stayed with her about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who those who heard it were amazed concerning the things that were spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept all the things, pondering them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you, experts in the Jewish law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After he went from there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to fiercely oppose him and argued against him about many things, lying in wait to trap him in something from his mouth.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

(Go back to: [Acts 2:41](#); [4:4](#); [4:31](#); [5:11](#); [5:42](#); [6:7](#); [12:25](#); [15:35](#); [16:40](#); [17:32](#); [18:11](#); [19:20](#); [28:30](#))

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.  
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**”

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

“They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [Acts 1:25](#); [5:5](#); [5:10](#); [7:60](#); [9:39](#); [13:36](#); [21:36](#))

## Exclamations

### Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

### Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

**Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

**How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

### Translation Strategies

- (1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
- (2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
- (3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
- (4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.



(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)

“They were extremely astonished, saying, “**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.””

Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

“**Oh no,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

“**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

“**Help,** Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(Go back to: [Acts 7:51](#); [8:14](#); [8:20](#); [10:14](#); [11:8](#))

## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

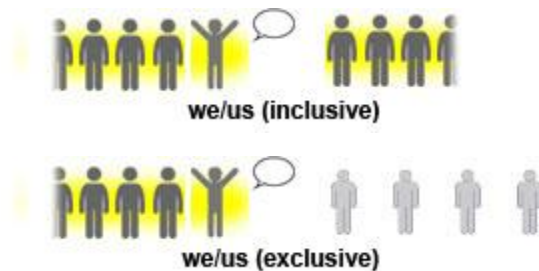
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

## Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: Acts 1:17; 1:21; 1:22; 2:8; 2:17; 2:32; 2:37; 2:39; 3:4; 3:12; 3:15; 3:22; 4:12; 4:20; 4:25; 5:28; 5:32; 6:11; 7:2; 7:27; 10:33; 10:39; 10:42; 11:11; 11:13; 11:15; 11:17; Notes; 13:17; 13:26; 13:46; 13:47; 14:22; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:11; 15:24; 16:20; 16:28; 16:37; 17:20; 17:27; 17:28; 17:32; 20:5; 20:6; 20:7; 20:13; 20:15; 20:21; 21:1; 21:3; 21:7; 21:10; 21:11; 21:12; 21:15; 21:23; 21:25; 23:15; 24:2; 24:4; 27:2; 27:3; 28:1; 28:7; 28:16; 28:21)

## First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#)  
[Pronouns](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:20](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [2:27](#); [2:36](#); [4:29](#); [10:15](#); [11:9](#); [13:35](#); [15:17](#); [23:26](#); [26:26](#))

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- [Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [2:38](#); [5:9](#); [5:25](#); [5:28](#); [5:30](#); [7:4](#); [7:51](#); [23:15](#); [23:30](#); [24:2](#); [24:8](#); [25:26](#); [27:31](#))

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Forms of ‘You’ — Singular](#)

[Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural](#)

## Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

### Description

Some languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a plural form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to only two people. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

This page answers the question: *How do I know if the word 'you' is dual or plural?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Forms of You](#)

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person. However, they do not show us whether it refers to only two people or more than two people. When the pronouns do not show us how many people the word “you” refers to, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular, dual, and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know how many people the speaker was addressing.

### Examples From the Bible

Then **James and John**, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him, saying to him, “Teacher, we desire that you to do for us whatever we ask you.” 36 So he said to them, “What do **you** want me to do for **you**?” (Mark 10:35-36 ULT)

Jesus is asking the two, James and John, what they want him to do for them. If the target language has a dual form of “you,” use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

Jesus sent out two of his disciples and said to them, “Go into the village opposite us. As soon as **you** enter it, **you** will find a colt tied there, on which no one has yet sat. Untie it and bring it to me.” (Mark 11:1b-2 ULT)

The context makes it clear that Jesus is addressing two people. If the target language has a dual form of “you,” use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes who are in the dispersion: Greetings. Consider it all joy, my brothers, when **you** experience various troubles. You know that the testing of **your** faith produces endurance. (James 1:1-3 ULT)

James wrote this letter to many people, so the word “you” refers to many people. If the target language has a plural form of “you,” it would be best to use it here.

## Strategies for finding out how many people “you” refers to

- (1) Look at the translationNotes to see if they tell whether “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
- (2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
- (3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes “you” singular from “you” plural, see which form of “you” that Bible has in that sentence.
- (4) Look at the context to see who the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youdual](https://ufw.io/figs_youdual).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of 'You' — Singular](#)

**(Go back to: [Acts 4:7](#); [5:8](#); [7:26](#); [8:15](#); [8:17](#); [8:24](#); [9:38](#); [9:39](#); [15:23](#))**



## Forms of 'You' — Formal or Informal

(You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).)

### Description

Some languages make a distinction between the formal form of "you" and the informal form of "you." This page is primarily for people whose language makes this distinction.

In some cultures people use the formal "you" when speaking to someone who is older or in authority, and they use the informal "you" when speaking to someone who is their own age or younger or who has less authority. In other cultures, people use the formal "you" when speaking to strangers or people they do not know well, and the informal "you" when speaking with family members and close friends.

This page answers the question: *What are the formal and informal "you"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Forms of You](#)  
[Pronouns](#)

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- The Bible was written in Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek. These languages do not have formal and informal forms of "you."
- English and many other source languages do not have formal and informal forms of "you."
- Translators who use a source text in a language that does have formal and informal forms of "you" will need to understand how those forms are used in that language. The rules in that language may not be exactly the same as the rules in the translator's language.
- Translators will need to understand the relationship between two speakers in order to choose the appropriate form in their language.
- Use of "you" by people speaking to Jesus is sometimes particularly difficult for translators. Because Jesus is God, some will want to always use the formal form when people are speaking to him, but it is important to recognize the actual relationship and feelings towards Jesus. Pharisees and Sadduces became Jesus' enemies early on and would have been unlikely to have spoken with particular respect to him. Also, when Jesus was with Pilate, he was treated as a criminal, not with respect.

### Translation Principles

- Understand the relationship between a speaker and the person or people he is speaking to.
- Understand the speaker's attitude toward the person he is speaking to.
- Choose the form in your language that is appropriate for that relationship and attitude.

### Examples From the Bible

Yahweh God called to the man and said to him, "Where are **you**?" (Genesis 3:9 ULT)

God is in authority over the man, so languages that have formal and informal forms of "you" would probably use the informal form here.

It seemed good to me also, having carefully investigated everything from the beginning, to write for **you** an orderly account, most excellent Theophilus, so that **you** might know the certainty concerning the things that **you** have been taught. (Luke 1:3-4 ULT)

Luke called Theophilus "most excellent." This shows us that Theophilus was probably a high official to whom Luke was showing great respect. Speakers of languages that have a formal form of "you" would probably use that form here.

‘Our Father who is in heaven, may **your** name be honored as holy.’ (Matthew 6:9b ULT)

This is part of a prayer that Jesus taught his disciples. Some cultures would use the formal “you” because God is in authority. Other cultures would use the informal “you” because God is our Father.

## Translation Strategies

Translators whose language has formal and informal forms of “you” will need to understand the relationship between two speakers in order to choose the appropriate form of “you” in their language.

### Deciding whether to use the formal or informal “You”

Pay attention to the relationships between the speakers.

- Is one speaker in authority over the other?
- Is one speaker older than the other?
- Are the speakers family members, relatives, friends, strangers, or enemies?

If you have a Bible in a language that has formal and informal forms of “you,” see what forms it uses. Remember, though, that the rules in that language might be different than the rules in your language.

## Translation Strategies Applied

English does not have formal and informal forms of “you,” so we cannot show in English how to translate using formal and informal forms of “you.” Please see the examples and discussion above.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural](#)

[Forms of 'You' — Singular](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:24](#); [2:27](#); [2:28](#); [4:24](#))

## Forms of 'You' — Singular

### Description

Some languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

This page answers the question: *How do I know if the word 'you' is singular?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[Forms of You](#)

[Pronouns](#)

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of “you” even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See Forms of 'You' — Singular to a Crowd.)

### Examples From the Bible

But he said, “All these things I have kept from my youth.” But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, “One thing is still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, sell all and distribute to the poor, and **you** will have treasure in heaven—and come, follow me.” (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said “I.” This shows us that when Jesus said “you” he was referring only to the ruler. So languages that have singular and plural forms of “you” need the singular form here.

The angel said to him, “Dress **yourself** and put on **your** sandals.” So he did that. He said to him, “Put on **your** outer garment and follow me.” (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The context makes it clear that the angel was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of “you” would need the singular form here for “yourself” and “your.” Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs “dress” and “put on” need the form that indicates a singular subject.

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. For this purpose I left **you** in Crete, that **you** might set in order things not yet complete and ordain elders in every city as I directed **you**. But **you**, say what fits with sound teaching. (Titus 1:4a, 5; 2:1 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus. Most of the time the word “you” in this letter refers only to Titus.

## Strategies for finding out how many people “you” refers to

- (1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
- (2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
- (3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes “you” singular from “you” plural, see which form of “you” that Bible has in that sentence.
- (4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural](#)

**(Go back to: [Acts 7:42](#); [7:43](#); [9:17](#); [10:33](#); [11:14](#); [13:47](#))**

## Go and Come

### Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples From the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark ...” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark ...”

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(Go back to: [Acts 4:23](#); [8:15](#); [8:27](#); [9:17](#); [12:20](#); [15:30](#); [16:1](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:40](#); [17:1](#); [22:27](#); [24:17](#))

## Hendiadys

### Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called a hendiadys. In a hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

... his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or a **glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

### Examples From the Bible

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

### Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
- (2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
- (3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

For I will give you **wise words** ...

Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

If you are **willingly obedient** ...

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you **obey willingly** ...

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Next we recommend you learn about:



Doublet

(Go back to: [Acts 1:24](#); [1:25](#); [2:40](#); [3:12](#); [4:19](#); [4:28](#); [5:29](#); [6:8](#); [6:10](#); [7:17](#); [7:59](#); [8:34](#); [8:37](#); [9:1](#); [12:24](#); [13:11](#); [14:5](#); [14:14](#); [14:17](#); [15:13](#))

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')**, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

(Go back to: Acts 1:1; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:8; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:14; 1:16; 1:22; 1:23; 2:1; 2:7; 2:9; 2:10; 2:11; 2:22; 2:27; 2:31; 3:2; 3:6; 3:10; 3:11; 3:13; 3:22; 3:24; 4:1; 4:6; 4:10; 4:15; 4:25; 4:27; 4:36; 5:1; 5:12; 5:34; 5:36; 5:37; 6:1; 6:2; 6:5; 6:9; 6:11; 6:12; 6:14; 7:2; 7:4; 7:8; 7:9; 7:11; 7:16; 7:29; 7:36; 7:40; 7:45; 7:47; 7:48; 7:58; 8:1; 8:5; 8:10; 8:14; 8:27; 8:40; 9:2; 9:10; 9:11; 9:27; 9:29; 9:32; 9:33; 9:35; 9:36; 10:1; 10:45; 11:19; 11:20; 11:26; 11:28; 12:1; 12:2; 12:12; 12:13; 12:17; 12:20; 13:1; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:9; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 13:20; 13:21; 13:22; 13:51; 14:6; 14:11; 14:12; 15:5; 15:13; 15:14; 15:22; 15:23; 16:7; 16:11; 16:14; 17:1; 17:5; 17:15; 17:18; 17:19; 17:21; 17:34; 18:2; 18:7; 18:8; 18:12; 18:17; 18:18; 18:24; 19:9; 19:14; 19:22; 19:24; 19:29; 19:33; 20:4; 20:5; 20:9; 20:13; 20:14; 20:15; 20:16; 20:17; 21:1; 21:7; 21:10; 21:16; 22:12; 23:2; 23:26; 23:31; 24:1; 24:22; 24:24; 24:27; 25:13; 27:1; 27:2; 27:5; 27:6; 27:7; 27:8; 27:12; 27:16; 27:17; 27:27; 28:1; 28:7; 28:12; 28:13; 28:15)

## Hyperbole

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

### Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

### Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches**. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

## Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
  - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
  - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.



The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.  
or:

**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

**(Go back to:** Acts 1:1; 1:19; 2:5; 2:43; 2:44; 2:47; 3:9; 3:11; 3:18; 3:24; 4:16; 4:21; 4:32; 4:34; 5:16; 5:23; 5:34; 7:22; 7:51; 7:52; 8:1; 8:10; 8:40; 9:21; 9:26; 9:32; 9:35; 9:39; 10:2; 10:8; 10:12; 10:22; 10:37; 10:38; 10:44; 11:28; 13:10; 15:3; 17:6; 17:21; 18:17; 19:10; 19:27; 20:31; 21:30; 21:31; 23:10; 24:5; 25:24; 26:4)

## Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

## Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

## Hypothetical Situation in the Future

**Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved.** But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

## Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

## Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](https://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

(Go back to: [Acts 23:9; 25:11](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

█ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

█ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

█ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

█ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

█ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

█ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

█ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

█ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

█ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

█ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

█ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

█ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: Acts 1:2; 1:6; 1:8; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:15; 1:16; 1:21; 1:22; 1:26; 2:1; 2:2; 2:5; 2:12; 2:14; 2:18; 2:20; 2:21; 2:22; 2:24; 2:27; 2:29; 2:31; 2:32; 2:37; 2:38; 2:39; 2:41; 3:12; 3:13; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:24; 3:26; 4:10; 4:11; 4:12; 4:13; 4:19; 4:24; 4:26; 4:29; 4:36; 5:2; 5:6; 5:7; 5:17; 5:21; 5:24; 5:30; 5:35; 5:36; 5:37; 6:1; 6:9; 6:10; 7:2; 7:9; 7:10; 7:14; 7:15; 7:20; 7:23; 7:26; 7:30; 7:34; 7:35; 7:37; 7:41; 7:45; 7:46; 7:54; 7:57; 7:58; 7:60; 8:5; 8:7; 8:15; 8:26; 8:27; 8:34; 9:10; 9:11; 9:14; 9:21; 9:23; 9:28; 9:30; 9:32; 9:39; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:13; 10:20; 10:23; 10:30; 10:31; 10:33; 10:38; 10:40; 10:48; 11:2; 11:7; 11:18; 11:20; 11:21; 11:27; 11:28; 12:3; 12:4; 12:11; 12:19; 13:2; 13:4; 13:6; 13:10; 13:15; 13:16; 13:22; 13:26; 13:30; 13:31; 13:33; 13:34; 13:35; 13:36; 13:37; 13:38; 13:41; 13:43; 13:47; 14:11; 14:15; 14:25; 14:27; 15:1; 15:2; 15:4; 15:6; 15:7; 15:13; 15:30; 15:36; 17:6; 21:27; 22:13; 25:16; 27:34)

## Imperatives — Other Uses

### Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

### Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in.” (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

### Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. **Be clean.**” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like “light must be.”

### Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

## Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

**Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;  
**love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

**Teach** a child the way he should go,  
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
- (3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

**Be clean.** (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

“You are now clean.”  
“I now cleanse you.”

God said, “**Let there be light,**” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, “**There is now light**” and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful, and multiply. Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, “**My will for you is that you be fruitful, and multiply. Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

God said, “**Let there be light,**” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, ‘Let there be light,’ **so** there was light.  
God said, “Light must be;” **as a result**, there was light.



(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

**If** you teach a child the way he should go,  
**then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.”

(Go back to: [Acts 1:20](#); [3:6](#); [7:34](#); [7:59](#); [7:60](#); [8:24](#); [9:40](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [14:10](#); [15:29](#))

## Information Structure

### Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, "What did Peter paint yesterday?" The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, "his house." Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say "His house is what Peter painted (yesterday)."

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, "Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place." (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

This page answers the question: *How do languages arrange the parts of a sentence?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that “woe” is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.
- (2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

## Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

- (2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food.”

Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

When all men speak well of you, which is just as people’s ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-distinguish\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:16](#); [3:16](#); [3:18](#); [7:38](#); [7:40](#); [7:44](#); [8:7](#); [8:12](#); [9:24](#); [9:41](#); [10:38](#); [13:23](#))

## Introduction of a New Event

### Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Order of Events](#)

### Examples From the Bible

**In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

**And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

**The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

**Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

**Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

**Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector’s tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

**After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

**Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Introduction of New and Old Participants](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:15](#); [2:1](#); [4:5](#); [6:1](#); [8:1](#); [8:14](#); [8:26](#); [9:1](#); [9:3](#); [9:32](#); [9:36](#); [9:43](#); [11:1](#); [11:19](#); [11:27](#); [12:1](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [13:1](#); [13:13](#); [14:1](#))

## Introduction of New and Old Participants

### Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** ... **This man** came to Jesus at night ... Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he has become an old participant.

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

## Examples From the Bible

### New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man,” as in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

**Now there was a man** from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife.” This phrase shows her relationship to him.

Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

## Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his,” and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she.”

His **wife** was barren and **she** had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah’s wife is referred to by the noun phrase “the wife.”

The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the wife** and he said to her ... (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant’s name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See [Verbs](#).)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.
- (2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
- (3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.

Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth ... (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) — Starting the sentence with Joseph’s name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

- (2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.

It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”



(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.

Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Pronouns — When to Use Them](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#); [5:1](#); [5:34](#); [6:8](#); [7:20](#); [8:9](#); [8:27](#); [9:10](#); [9:33](#); [10:1](#); [14:8](#); [16:14](#); [16:16](#); [18:2](#); [18:24](#); [19:24](#); [21:10](#); [22:12](#); [25:13](#))

# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."  
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples From the Bible

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshipping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!"** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They

emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

(2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.**" (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 4:9](#); [7:43](#); [8:13](#); [13:46](#))

# Kinship

## Description

This page answers the question: *What are kinship terms and how can I translate them?*

Kinship terms refer to those words used to describe people related to one another in familial relationships. These terms vary widely in their specificity from language to language. They range from the (Western) nuclear or immediate family (father-son, husband-wife) out to broad clan relationships in other cultures.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Depending on the language translators may need to use specific terms to designate the accurate kinship relationship. In some languages a different term may be used based on siblings' birth order. In others, the side of the family (father's or mother's), age, marital status, etc. may determine the term used. Different terms may be used based on the gender of the speaker and/or addressee. Translators may need to make sure they know the exact relationship between two related people in the Bible to find the correct term. Sometimes these terms are difficult even for native speakers to remember and translators may need to seek community help in finding the correct term. Another complicating issue is that the Bible may not give enough information about the relationship for translators to determine the correct term in the language being translated into. In this case, translators will have to use a more general term or simply pick a satisfactory term based on the limited information available.

Sometimes terms that seem like kinship terms are used for people who are not necessarily related. For instance, an older person may refer to a younger man or woman as "my son" or "my daughter."

## Examples from the Bible

Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel **your brother?**" He said, "I do not know. Am I **my brother's** keeper?" (Genesis 4:9 ULT)

Abel was Cain's younger brother.

Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock and said to them, "I see **your father's** attitude toward me has changed, but the God of my father has been with me." (Genesis 31:4-5 ULT)

Jacob is referring here to his father-in-law. In some languages there may be a specific term for a man's father-in-law, however, in this case it is better to retain the form **your father** as Jacob may be using it to distance himself from Laban.

And Moses was shepherding the flock of Jethro **his father-in-law**, the priest of Midian. (Exodus 3:1a ULT)

Unlike the previous instance, if your language has a term for a man's father-in-law this is a good place to use it.

And **his sister** stationed herself at a distance to know what would be done to him. (Exodus 2:4 ULT)

From context we know that this was Miriam, Moses's older sister. In some languages this may require a specific term. In others, the term for older sister may be only used when the younger sibling is addressing and/or referring to his or her sister.

Then she and **her daughters-in-law** arose to return from the fields of Moab (Ruth 1:6a ULT)

Ruth & Orpah are Naomi's daughters-in-law.

Then she said, “Look, your sister-in-law has turned back to her people and to her gods.” (Ruth 1:15 ULT)

Orpah had been the wife of Ruth’s husband’s brother. This may be a different term in your language than if she had been Ruth’s husband’s sister.

Then Boaz said to Ruth, “Will you not listen to me, **my daughter?**” (Ruth 2:8a ULT)

Boaz is not Ruth’s father; he is simply using the term to address a younger woman.

And behold, **your relative** Elizabeth—she also has conceived a son in her old age, and this is the sixth month for her who was called barren. (Luke 1:36 ULT)

While the KJV translated this as **cousin**, the term simply means a related woman.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Find out the exact relationship specified and translate using the term your language uses.
- (2) If the text does not specify the relationship as clearly as your language would, either:
  - (a) settle on a more general term.
  - (b) use a specific term if required by your language, choosing the one that is most likely to be correct.

## Translation Strategies Applied

This is not an issue in English, so the following illustrations draw on other languages.

In Korean, there are several terms for brother and sister; the use of them depends on the speaker’s (or referent’s) sex and birth order. Examples are from the Korean Living Bible, found on [biblegateway.com](http://biblegateway.com)

Genesis 30:1 Rachel is jealous of her “eonni,” which is the term a woman uses for her older sister.

Genesis 34:31 Simeon and Levi refer to Dinah as “nui,” a general term for sister.

Genesis 37:16 Joseph refers to his brothers as “hyeong,” which is the term a man uses for his older brother(s).

Genesis 45:12 Joseph refers to Benjamin as “dongsaeng,” which roughly means sibling, usually younger.

In Russian, in-law terms are complex. For instance, “nevéstka” is the term for a brother’s (or brother-in-law’s) wife; a woman uses the same term for her daughter-in-law but her husband would call the same daughter-in-law “snoxá.” Examples from the Russian Synodal Version.

Genesis 38:25 Tamar sends a message to her father-in-law, Judah. The term used is “svekor.” This is used for a woman’s husband’s father.

Exodus 3:1 Moses is watching his father-in-law’s herd. The term used is “test’.” This is used for a man’s wife’s father.

(Go back to: [Acts 1:14](#); [7:9](#))

# Litany

## Description

A litany is a figure of speech in which the various components of a thing are listed in a series of very similar statements. The speaker does this to indicate that what he is saying should be understood as comprehensive and without exceptions.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called litany?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use litanies, and readers could be confused by them. They may wonder why the speaker seems to be saying the same thing over and over again.

## Examples From the Bible

Though they dig into Sheol, there my hand will take them. Though they climb up to heaven, there I will bring them down. Though they hide on the top of Carmel, there I will search and take them. Though they are hidden from my sight in the bottom of the sea, there will I give orders to the serpent, and it will bite them. Though they go into captivity, driven by their enemies before them, there will I give orders to the sword, and it will kill them. (Amos 9:2-4 ULT)

In this passage Yahweh is telling the people of Israel that when he punishes them, none of them will escape.

But you should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his misfortune. And you should not have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their perishing. And you should not have made your mouth great in a day of distress. You should not have entered the gate of my people in the day of their calamity. Yes, you! You should not have looked on his evil in the day of his calamity. And you women should not have looted his wealth in the day of his calamity. And you should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. And you should not have delivered up his survivors in a day of distress. (Obadiah 1:12-14)

In this passage Yahweh is telling the people of Edom that they should have helped the people of Judah when they were conquered by the Babylonians.

## Translation Strategies

If the litany is understood as it is in the ULT, then translate the litany as it is. If it is not understood, then try one or more of the following strategies.

- (1) Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany.
- (2) You can put each sentence of the litany on a separate line. Also, if each sentence in the litany has two parts, you can format the litany so that the equivalent parts of each sentence line up. Use this or any other type of formatting that will show that each sentence is reinforcing the same meaning.
- (3) You can eliminate words like “and,” “but,” and “or” at the beginning of sentences so that it will be clearer that the component parts of the litany are all being listed in a row.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) combined with (3):

Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany;

You can eliminate words like “and,” “but,” and “or” at the beginning of sentences so that it will be clearer that the component parts of the litany are all being listed in a row.

You did nothing to help the Israelites when strangers carried away their wealth. They conquered all the cities of Judah, and they even plundered Jerusalem. And you were just as bad as those foreigners, because you did nothing to help:

You should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his misfortune. You should not have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their perishing. You should not have made your mouth great in a day of distress. You should not have entered the gate of my people in the day of their calamity. Yes, you! You should not have looked on his evil in the day of his calamity. You women should not have looted his wealth in the day of his calamity. You should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. You should not have delivered up his survivors in a day of distress. (Obadiah 1:11-14)

In the above example, verse 11 provides the summary and meaning for the litany that follows in verses 12-14.

(1) combined with (2):

Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany;

You can put each sentence of the litany on a separate line. Also, if each sentence in the litany has two parts, you can format the litany so that the equivalent parts of each sentence line up. Use this or any other type of formatting that will show that each sentence is reinforcing the same meaning.

Not one of them will get away, not one of them will escape:

Though they dig into Sheol,	there my hand will take them.
Though they climb up to heaven,	there I will bring them down.
Though they hide on the top of Carmel,	there I will search and take them.
Though they are hidden from my sight in the bottom of the sea,	there will I give orders to the serpent, and it will bite them.
Though they go into captivity, driven by their enemies before them,	there will I give orders to the sword, and it will kill them.

(Amos 9:1b-4 ULT)

In the above example, the sentence before the litany explains its overall meaning. That sentence can be placed as an introduction. The second half of each sentence can be formatted in a descending staircase pattern as above, or



lined up evenly like the first half of each sentence, or in another way. Use whatever format best shows that these sentences are all communicating the same truth, that it is not possible to escape from God.

**(Go back to: [Acts 7:35](#))**

## Litotes

### Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a [double negative](#) is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

### Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

### Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good.**”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: Acts 1:5; 5:42; 12:18; 14:28; 15:2; 15:38; 17:4; 17:12; 17:27; 19:23; 19:24; 19:35; 20:12; 20:27; 25:24; 26:26; 28:2)

# Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

## Description

Some languages have ways of saying things that are natural for them but sound strange when translated into Other Languages. One of the reasons for this is that some languages say things explicitly that some Other Languages would leave as implicit information.

This page answers the question: *What can I do if some of the explicit information seems confusing, unnatural, or unnecessary in our language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

If you translate all of the explicit information from the source language into the explicit information in the target language, it could sound foreign, unnatural, or perhaps even unintelligent if the target language would not make that information explicit. Instead, it is best to leave that kind of information implicit in the target language.

## Examples from the Bible

**And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to start most sentences with a conjunction such as “and” to show the connection between sentences. In English, it is not natural to do so, it is quite tiresome for the English reader, and it gives the impression that the author is uneducated. In English, it is best to leave the idea of connection between sentences implicit in most cases and not translate the conjunction explicitly.

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to say that something was burned with fire. In English, the idea of fire is included in the action of burning, and so it is unnatural to state both ideas explicitly. It is enough to say that something was burned and leave the idea of fire implicit.

But the centurion **answered and said**, “Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof” (Matthew 8:8a ULT)

In the biblical languages, it was normal to introduce direct speech with two verbs of speaking. One verb indicated the action, and the other introduced the words of the speaker. English speakers do not do this, so it is very unnatural and confusing to use two verbs. For the English speaker, the idea of speaking is included in the idea of answering. Using two verbs in English implies two separate speeches, rather than just one. So in English, it is better to use only one verb of speaking.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.
- (2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, leave the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.

- There would be no change to the text using this strategy, so no examples are given here.

(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, make the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

**And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)

Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it, and he approached the door of the tower **to burn it**. (Or) ... **to set it on fire**.

In English, it is clear that the action of this verse follows the action of the previous verse without the use of the connector “and” at the beginning, so it was omitted. Also, the words “with fire” were left out, because this information is communicated implicitly by the word “burn.” An alternative translation for “to burn it” is “to set it on fire.” It is not natural in English to use both “burn” and “fire,” so the English translator should choose only one of them. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, “How would the door burn?” If they knew it was by fire, then they have understood the implicit information. Or, if you chose the second option, you could ask, “What happens to a door that is set on fire?” If the readers answer, “It burns,” then they have understood the implicit information.

But the centurion **answered and said**, “Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof” (Matthew 8:8a ULT)

The centurion **answered**, “Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof”

In English, the information that the centurion responded by speaking is included in the verb “answered,” so the verb “said” can be left implicit. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, “How did the centurion answer?” If they knew it was by speaking, then they have understood the implicit information.

**He opened his mouth** and taught them, saying, (Matthew 5:2 ULT)

**He began to** teach them, saying, (Or) He taught them, saying,

In English, it would be very strange to include the information that Jesus opened his mouth when he spoke. That information is included in the verbs “taught” and “saying,” so that phrase can be omitted and that information left implicit. However, “he opened his mouth” is an idiom that indicates the beginning of a speech, so that information may be included, or it may also be left implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When to Keep Information Implicit](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:1](#); [2:4](#); [3:8](#); [10:34](#); [11:4](#); [11:15](#); [11:22](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [14:10](#); [14:17](#); [15:17](#))

## Merism

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am **the alpha and the omega**,” says the Lord God,  
“the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.  
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [Acts 4:8](#); [4:23](#); [4:24](#); [7:42](#); [7:49](#); [8:10](#); [9:24](#); [14:15](#); [17:24](#); [26:7](#); [26:22](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in



a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator’s special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you,” the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, “He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**” (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad.** (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a pointed stick.**

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay.** You are our **potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood.** You are our **carver;** and we all are the work of your hand.”

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string.** You are the **weaver;** and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#).

**(Go back to:** [Acts 1:5](#); [1:10](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [1:20](#); [1:24](#); [1:25](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [2:24](#); [2:25](#); [2:26](#); [2:28](#); [2:29](#); [2:33](#); [2:35](#); [2:36](#); [2:37](#); [2:39](#); [2:46](#); [3:10](#); [3:13](#); [3:17](#); [3:19](#); [3:20](#); [3:22](#); [3:25](#); [3:26](#); [Notes](#); [4:8](#); [4:11](#); [4:25](#); [4:27](#); [4:31](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:9](#); [5:17](#); [5:21](#); [5:25](#); [5:28](#); [5:30](#); [5:36](#); [5:37](#); [5:41](#); [6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:12](#); [7:2](#); [7:5](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:15](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [7:25](#); [7:26](#); [7:34](#); [7:37](#); [7:38](#); [7:39](#); [7:42](#); [7:45](#); [7:46](#); [7:47](#); [7:48](#); [7:49](#); [7:51](#); [7:55](#); [7:56](#); [7:58](#); [8:16](#); [8:21](#); [8:22](#); [8:23](#); [8:27](#); [8:37](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [9:17](#); [9:30](#); [9:31](#); [9:35](#); [9:36](#); [10:4](#); [10:17](#); [10:19](#); [10:23](#); [10:30](#); [10:36](#); [10:38](#); [10:44](#); [10:45](#); [11:1](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:21](#); [11:24](#); [11:29](#); [12:7](#); [12:17](#); [12:24](#); [Notes](#); [13:8](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [13:11](#); [13:15](#); [13:17](#); [13:23](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [13:26](#); [13:32](#); [13:33](#); [13:36](#); [13:38](#); [13:45](#); [13:46](#); [13:50](#); [13:52](#); [14:2](#); [14:15](#); [14:16](#); [14:27](#); [15:1](#); [15:3](#); [15:7](#); [15:9](#); [15:10](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:19](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [15:26](#); [15:28](#); [15:32](#); [15:33](#); [15:36](#); [15:41](#); [16:5](#); [16:14](#); [16:17](#); [17:3](#); [17:5](#); [17:13](#); [17:18](#); [17:20](#); [17:21](#); [17:27](#); [17:29](#); [18:23](#); [18:26](#); [19:9](#); [19:26](#); [19:28](#); [19:29](#); [19:34](#); [Notes](#); [20:3](#); [20:9](#); [20:16](#); [20:24](#); [20:28](#); [20:29](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [20:32](#); [21:13](#); [21:21](#); [21:24](#); [21:27](#); [22:16](#); [Notes](#); [23:3](#); [23:14](#); [25:7](#); [25:15](#); [25:16](#); [26:6](#); [26:7](#); [26:14](#); [26:18](#); [26:20](#); [26:23](#); [26:26](#); [27:12](#); [28:2](#); [28:6](#); [28:15](#); [28:27](#); [28:28](#))

# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment?**”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: Acts 1:4; 1:9; 1:15; 1:16; 1:18; 2:14; 2:17; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:26; 2:30; 2:31; 2:39; 2:40; 2:41; 3:2; 3:6; 3:16; 3:18; 3:21; 3:25; 4:3; 4:4; 4:7; 4:10; 4:12; 4:15; 4:17; 4:18; 4:19; 4:25; 4:28; 4:29; 4:30; 4:31; 4:32; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:9; 5:10; 5:12; 5:14; 5:18; 5:20; 5:24; 5:28; 5:30; 5:40; 5:41; 6:2; 6:4; 6:5; 6:7; 6:11; 6:13; 6:14; Notes; 7:7; 7:10; 7:18; 7:23; 7:25; 7:29; 7:35; 7:38; 7:39; 7:41; 7:44; 7:45; 7:46; 7:51; 8:4; 8:5; 8:8; 8:12; 8:14; 8:16; 8:20; 8:21; 8:23; 8:25; 8:28; 8:29; 8:30; 8:32; 8:35; 8:36; 8:38; 9:1; 9:2; 9:13; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:21; 9:24; 9:27; 9:28; 9:41; 10:22; 10:36; 10:37; 10:39; 10:43; 10:44; 10:45; 11:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:14; 11:16; 11:19; 11:21; 11:22; 11:23; 11:24; 12:1; 12:11; 12:24; 13:5; 13:11; 13:12; 13:15; 13:17; 13:20; 13:23; 13:26; 13:27; 13:29; 13:40; 13:41; 13:42; 13:44; 13:46; 13:48; 13:49; 13:50; 14:3; 14:8; 14:12; 14:13; 14:25; 15:3; 15:4; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:14; 15:15; 15:17; 15:20; 15:21; 15:22; 15:23; 15:24; 15:26; 15:27; 15:32; 15:35; 15:36; 15:41; 16:6; 16:14; 16:15; 16:18; 16:29; 16:31; 16:32; 16:37; 17:5; 17:11; 17:19; 17:20; 17:29; 17:31; 18:6; 18:8; 18:12; 18:16; 18:22; 19:5; 19:8; 19:10; 19:13; 19:17; 19:27; 19:29; 20:19; 20:23; 20:25; 20:26; 20:28; 20:31; 20:32; 20:35; 21:2; 21:3; 21:11; 21:13; 21:21; 21:30; 21:31; 22:3; 22:4; 22:20; 24:10; 24:16; 25:6; 25:10; 25:17; 26:7; 26:9; 26:14; 26:19; 26:29; 26:31; 27:2; 27:24; 28:17; 28:19; 28:20; 28:23; 28:25; 28:27; 28:31)

## Nominal Adjectives

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

**He will not be rich;** his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

**The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]



The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

    | The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

    | Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: Acts 1:18; 1:22; 1:23; 1:24; 2:11; 2:14; 2:23; 2:25; 2:33; 2:34; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 4:2; 4:10; 5:15; 5:16; 5:31; 5:34; 5:37; 6:2; 7:13; 7:48; 7:51; 7:52; 7:55; 7:56; 8:4; 8:6; 8:7; 8:10; 8:25; 9:13; 9:14; 9:17; 9:21; 10:30; 10:41; 10:42; 10:45; 12:12; 13:10; 13:30; 13:34; 13:50; 14:15; 14:21; 15:20; 15:27; 15:29; 19:12; 20:35; 23:6; 24:15)

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.  
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Acts 19:19](#); [21:38](#); [23:13](#); [23:23](#); [27:28](#))

## Order of Events

### Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

This page answers the question: *Why are some events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

[Verbs](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

### Examples From the Bible

He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

### Translation Strategies

(1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of [Verbs](#).)

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See [Verse Bridges](#).)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

20 But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_events](https://ufw.io/figs_events).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

[Verse Bridges](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 5:3](#); [5:5](#); [5:10](#); [5:17](#); [6:6](#); [7:17](#))

# Ordinal Numbers

## Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

## Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

## Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)



**(Go back to: [Acts 2:15](#); [3:1](#); [7:13](#); [10:3](#); [10:9](#); [10:30](#); [13:33](#); [27:27](#); [27:33](#))**

# Parallelism

## Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

## Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does  
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;  
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,  
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.  
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.  
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:17](#); [1:20](#); [2:27](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#); [7:49](#); [13:33](#); [15:16](#); [18:9](#); [28:26](#))

## Personification

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

**Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

**Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bit-part1]]

(Go back to: [Acts 2:24](#); [2:26](#); [2:43](#); [3:16](#); [3:20](#); [3:21](#); [4:22](#); [4:28](#); [5:5](#); [5:11](#); [5:31](#); [7:11](#); [7:17](#); [7:31](#); [10:10](#); [10:13](#); [10:15](#); [11:7](#); [13:10](#); [13:40](#); [14:12](#); [20:32](#))

# Poetry

## Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

This page answers the question: *What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

## In poetry we commonly find:

- many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- arrangements of clauses into particular patterns such as:
  - parallel lines (See [Parallelism](#))
  - acrostics (beginning lines with successive letters of the alphabet)
  - chiasms (in which the first line relates to the last line, the second to the next-to-last line, etc.):
    - > You should not give what is holy to the dogs,
    - >
    - >> and should not throw your pearls in front of the pigs.
    - >>
    - >> Otherwise they will trample them under their feet,
    - >
    - > and having turned, they might tear you to pieces. (Matt 7:6 ULT)

- repetition of some or all of a line:

Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his hosts. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- lines of similar length:

Listen to my call to you,  
Yahweh; think about my groanings.  
Listen to the sound of my call, my King and my God,  
for it is to you that I pray. (Psalm 5:1-2 ULT)

- the same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines:

“Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**.” (from an English rhyme)

- the same sound repeated many times:

“Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater” (from an English rhyme)

We also find:

- old words and expressions
- dramatic imagery
- different use of grammar — including:
  - incomplete sentences

- lack of connective words

## Some places to look for poetry in your language

Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games  
 Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors  
 Prayers, blessings, and curses  
 Old legends

## Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language, you may need to write it without the poetry.
- Different languages use different poetic devices. A poetic device that conveys elegance or emotion in a biblical language may be confusing or misunderstood in another language.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

## Examples From the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely made up of poetry.

... for you saw my affliction; you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7b ULT)

This example of [Parallelism](#) has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations; vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High. (Psalm 7:8 ULT)

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See [Parallelism](#).)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins; let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13a ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See [Personification](#).)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good,  
 for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

Oh, give thanks to the God of gods,  
 for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords,  
 for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.



(Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

## Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

- (1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
- (2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
- (3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked, or stand in the pathway with sinners, or sit in the assembly of mockers. But his delight is in the law of Yahweh, and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1-2.

- (1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

“Happy is the person not encouraged **to sin**, Disrespect for God he will not **begin**, To those who laugh at God he is **no kin**. God is his constant **delight**, He does what God says **is right**, He thinks of it all day **and night**.”

- (2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people nor stop along the road to speak with sinners nor join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather, he takes great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.

- (3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or join with those who do not respect God. Instead, they love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-symlanguage\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 2 General Notes](#))

## Politeness

### Description

This is the placeholder for an article about politeness in biblical literature. This article is still being developed.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate politeness into my language?*

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

Text

### Examples From the Bible

Text

### Translation Strategies

Text

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Text

(Go back to: [Acts 5:14](#); [Notes](#); [9:5](#); [9:10](#); [10:4](#); [10:33](#); [Notes](#); [11:21](#); [13:12](#); [13:44](#); [13:47](#); [13:48](#); [13:49](#); [14:3](#); [14:23](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#); [15:40](#))

## Possession

### Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “of,” by using **an apostrophe and the letter “s”**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather **'s** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
  - The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
  - The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
  - A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
  - The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
  - the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
  - a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
  - my head — the head that is part of my body
  - the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession**. This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

### Examples From the Bible

**Ownership** — In the example below, the son owned the money.

▮ The younger son ... wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)  
2015 / 2623

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

**Social Relationship** — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

**Association** — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

**Material** — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

**Contents** — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

**Part of a whole** — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace**. (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

**Part of a group** — In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

## Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

**Subject** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

**Object** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

**Instrument** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

**Representation** — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

## Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

- (1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
- (2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
- (3) See what the notes say about it.

## Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

“On their heads were **gold crowns**”

- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink ... will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath**. (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.

or:

Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, “punishment of Yahweh” and “your God.”)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God**. (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

|| You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you.**

(Go back to: [Acts 2:19](#); [2:24](#); [2:33](#); [4:22](#); [7:34](#); [8:21](#); [9:15](#); [9:31](#); [10:45](#); [13:12](#); [14:27](#); [15:20](#))

## Pronouns

### Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are "I," "you," "he," "it," "this," "that," "himself," "someone," and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

### Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

#### Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
  - [Exclusive and Inclusive "We"](#)
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

#### Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
  - [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

#### Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

#### Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

## Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Acts 9:20](#))



## Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

This page answers the question: *How do I decide whether or not to use a pronoun?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See [Verbs](#).) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

### Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom “he” in the second sentence refers to.

Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)

Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **he** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

(Go back to: Acts 1:6; 1:12; 1:22; 1:23; 1:26; 2:1; 2:3; 2:6; 2:15; 2:25; 2:31; 2:33; 2:37; 2:45; 3:7; 3:8; 3:15; 3:16; 4:1; 4:2; 4:3; 4:5; 4:7; 4:10; 4:11; 4:13; 4:14; 4:15; 4:18; 4:21; 4:24; 4:33; 5:4; 5:7; 5:12; 5:15; 5:19; 5:24; 5:26; 5:27; 5:33; 5:39;

6:12; 7:2; 7:3; 7:4; 7:5; 7:6; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:19; 7:27; 7:38; 7:39; 7:41; 7:47; 7:53; 8:10; 8:12; 8:15; 8:16; 8:17; 8:24; 8:34; 8:38; 9:2; 9:5; 9:8; 9:15; 9:23; 9:27; 9:28; 9:35; 10:4; 10:9; 10:15; 10:22; 10:27; 10:39; 10:40; 10:43; 11:9; 11:15; 11:17; 11:18; 11:22; 11:25; 11:26; 12:4; 12:15; 12:19; 12:20; 13:3; 13:4; 13:14; 13:19; 13:23; 13:24; 13:25; 13:27; 13:28; 13:31; 13:34; 13:35; 13:37; 13:38; 13:39; 13:42; 13:50; 13:51; 14:9; 14:10; 14:20; 14:23; 14:27; 15:2; 15:5; 15:7; 15:16; 15:30; 15:31; 15:41)

## Quotations and Quote Margins

### Description

This page answers the question: *What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, “The food is ready. Come and eat.”
- “The food is ready. Come and eat,” **she said**.
- “The food is ready,” **she said**. “Come and eat.”

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning “said.”

But his mother **answered** and **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“ ”). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning “said.”
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

## Examples From the Bible

### Quote margin before the quote

**Then Zechariah said to the angel**, “How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days.” (Luke 1:18 ULT)

Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, “Teacher, what should we do?” (Luke 3:12 ULT)

So **he said to them**, “Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered.” (Luke 3:13 ULT)

### Quote margin after the quote

Yahweh relented concerning this. “It will not happen,” **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

### Quote margin between two parts of the quote

“I will hide my face from them,” **he said**, “and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful.” (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh’s declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

**He said**, “Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.

“Therefore, those who can,” **he said**, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

But his mother **answered and said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

But his mother **replied**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”

But his mother **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”

But his mother **answered** like this. “No. Rather, he will be called John,” she **said**.

Next we recommend you learn about:  
[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 25:22](#))

## Quote Markings

### Description

Some languages use quotation marks to mark off direct quotes from the rest of the text. English uses the mark " immediately before a quote and " immediately after it.

- John said, "I do not know when I will arrive."

Quotation marks are not used with indirect quotes.

- John said that he did not know when he would arrive.

When there are several layers of quotations inside of other quotations, it might be hard for readers to understand who is saying what. Alternating two kinds of quotation marks can help careful readers to keep track of them. In English, the outermost quotation has double quote marks, and the next quotation within it has single marks. If there is a third embedded quote, that quotation again has double quotation marks.

- Mary said, "John said, 'I do not know when I will arrive.'"
- Bob said, "Mary told me, 'John said, "I do not know when I will arrive.''"

Some languages use other kinds of quotation marks: Here are some examples: , ' ' " " < > « » 7 — .

### Examples From the Bible

The examples below show the kind of quotation markings used in the ULT.

#### A quotation with only one layer

A first layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it.

So the king replied, "That is Elijah the Tishbite." (2 Kings 1:8b ULT)

#### Quotations with two layers

A second layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it and the phrase in bold type for you to see them clearly.

They asked him, "Who is the man who said to you, '**Pick it up and walk?**'" (John 5:12 ULT)

He sent two of the disciples, saying, "Go into the village ahead of you. As you enter, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me. If any one asks you, '**Why are you untying it?**' you will say thus, '**The Lord has need of it.**'" (Luke 19:29b-31 ULT)

#### A quotation with three layers

A third layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold type for you to see them clearly.

Abraham said, "Because I thought, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.' Besides, she is indeed my sister, the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife. When God caused me to leave my father's

This page answers the question: *How can quotes be marked, especially when there are quotes within quotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

house and travel from place to place, I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "**He is my brother.**"' (Genesis 20:11-13 ULT)

## A quotation with four layers

A fourth layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold for you to see it clearly.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: '**Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.**' " " " (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

## Quote Marking Strategies

Here are some ways you may be able to help readers see where each quote starts and ends so they can more easily know who said what.

- (1) Alternate two kinds of quote marks to show layers of direct quotation. English alternates double quote marks and single quote marks.
- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quote marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)
- (3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

## Examples of Quote Marking Strategies Applied

- (1) Alternate two kinds of quotation marks to show layers of direct quotation as shown in the ULT text below.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'" " (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

- (2) Translate one or more of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quotation marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. In English, the word "that" can introduce an indirect quote. In the example below, everything after the word "that" is an indirect quote of what the messengers said to the king. Within that indirect quote, there are some direct quotes marked with double and single quotation marks.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'" " (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man came to meet them who said to them, "Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, 'Yahweh says this: "Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'" "

- (3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They said to him,

A man came to meet us who said to us, "Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, 'Yahweh says this: "Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'""

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [2:21](#); [2:28](#); [2:35](#); [7:42](#); [7:43](#); [7:49](#); [7:50](#); [13:25](#); [13:33](#); [13:34](#); [13:41](#); [13:47](#); [Notes](#); [15:16](#))



## Quotes within Quotes

### Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are “layers” of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word “I,” the listener needs to know whether “I” refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.

Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

### Examples From the Bible

#### A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, “I, however, was indeed born a citizen.” (Acts 22:28b ULT)

#### Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.” (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

#### A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, “... I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, “**He is my brother.**”’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

## A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: **'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'**"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

## Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

- (1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar.**" (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.'**"

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quote Markings](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:20](#); [2:17](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [2:25](#); [2:26](#); [2:27](#); [2:28](#); [2:34](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [3:25](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#); [7:3](#); [7:7](#); [7:26](#); [7:27](#); [7:28](#); [7:32](#); [7:33](#); [7:34](#); [7:35](#); [7:37](#); [7:40](#); [10:22](#); [10:31](#); [10:32](#); [13:22](#); [14:11](#); [21:11](#); [28:25](#); [28:26](#))

## Reflexive Pronouns

### Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

### Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

### Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

**He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [Acts 8:13](#); [15:11](#); [16:37](#); [17:25](#); [19:22](#); [20:13](#); [20:18](#); [20:34](#); [22:19](#))

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)



Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: Acts 1:11; 2:7; 2:8; 3:12; 4:16; 4:25; 5:3; 5:4; 5:9; 7:26; 7:27; 7:28; 7:35; 7:42; 7:49; 7:50; 7:52; 8:31; 8:33; 8:36; 9:4; 9:21; 10:47; 11:17; 13:10; 13:25; 14:15; 15:10; 16:37; 19:15; 19:35; 21:13; 21:37; 21:38; 22:16; 22:25; 22:26; 23:3; 23:4; 26:8; 26:14; 26:27; 26:28)

## Simile

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

### Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Acts 2:2](#); [6:15](#); [13:47](#))

## Statements — Other Uses

### Description

Normally statements are used to give information. Sometimes they are used in the Bible for other functions.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for statements?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use a statement for some of the functions that statements are used for in the Bible.

### Examples From the Bible

Statements are normally used to give **information**. All of the sentences in John 1:6-8 below are statements, and their function is to give information.

There was a man who was sent from God, whose name was John. He came as a witness in order to testify about the light, that all might believe through him. John was not the light, but came that he might testify about the light. (John 1:6-8 ULT)

A statement can also be used as a **command** to tell someone what to do. In the examples below, the high priest used statements with the verb “will” to tell people what to do.

He commanded them, saying, “This is what you **must** do. A third of you who come on the Sabbath **will** keep watch over the king’s house, and a third **will** be at the Sur Gate, and a third at the gate behind the guardhouse.” (2 Kings 11:5 ULT)

A statement can also be used to give **instructions**. The speaker below was not just telling Joseph about something Joseph would do in the future; he was telling Joseph what he needed to do.

She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

A statement can also be used to make a **request**. The man with leprosy was not just saying what Jesus was able to do. He was also asking Jesus to heal him.

Behold, a leper came to him and bowed before him, saying, “Lord, if you are willing, **you can make me clean.**” (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

A statement can also be used to **perform** something. By telling Adam that the ground was cursed because of him, God actually cursed it.

... **cursed is the ground** because of you; (Genesis 3:17b ULT)

By telling a man that his sins were forgiven, **Jesus forgave** the man’s sins.

When Jesus saw their faith, he said to the paralyzed man, “**Son, your sins are forgiven.**” (Mark 2:5 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **use a sentence type** that would express that function.

(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **add a sentence type** that would express that function.

(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **use a verb form** that would express that function.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a sentence type that would express that function.

She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

The phrase “you will call his name Jesus” is an instruction. It can be translated using the sentence type of a normal instruction.

She will give birth to a son. **Name him Jesus**, because he will save his people from their sins.

(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, add a sentence type that would express that function.

Lord, **please heal me**, because I know you are able to heal me if you are willing to. (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

The function of “I know you can” is to make a request. In addition to the statement, a request can be added.

Lord, **I know you can heal me**. If you are willing, please do so.

Lord, if you are willing, please heal me. **I know you can do so**.

(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a verb form that would express that function.

She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

She will give birth to a son, and **you must call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins.

Son, your sins are forgiven. (Mark 2:5 ULT)

Son, I forgive your sins.

Son, God has forgiven your sins.

(Go back to: [Acts 3:22](#); [3:23](#); [7:34](#); [8:33](#); [10:26](#))

## Symbolic Action

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: Acts 1:15; 1:23; 2:14; 4:35; 4:37; 5:31; 5:34; 6:6; 7:33; 7:54; 7:55; 7:56; 7:57; 7:60; 8:17; 9:12; 9:17; 9:34; 9:40; 10:25; 11:28; 12:21; 13:3; 13:14; 13:16; 13:25; 13:51; 14:14; 15:5; 15:7; 16:29; 18:6; 18:18; 20:36; 21:5; 21:24; 22:23)



# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: Acts 1:16; 1:24; 2:23; 2:27; 2:30; 2:41; 2:42; 2:43; 2:46; 3:15; 3:23; 4:1; 4:10; 5:18; 5:30; 5:40; 6:7; 7:48; 7:50; 7:51; 7:53; 9:2; 9:14; 9:15; 9:21; 9:23; 10:22; 10:41; 10:47; 11:8; 11:30; 12:1; 12:2; 12:3; 12:11; 12:16; 12:19; 12:20; 12:22; 13:45; 13:50; 14:2; 14:17; 14:22; 15:7; 15:24; 15:41; 16:26; 17:16; 17:24; 17:25; 18:6; 18:11; 18:12; 18:25; 19:11; 19:20; 19:26; 20:3; 20:7; 20:11; 20:18; 20:19; 20:25; 20:34; 20:38; 21:11; 21:26; 21:27; 22:7; 22:9; 22:11; 22:14; 23:20; 23:27; 24:9; 24:27; 25:8; 25:9; 26:2; 26:7; 26:21; 28:19)

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

### Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] <sup>[2]</sup>

[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” <sup>16</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” <sup>16</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to Acts](#); [Acts 3:22](#); [Notes](#); [7:46](#); [8:37](#); [10:19](#); [10:30](#); [10:32](#); [10:33](#); [12:25](#); [13:18](#); [13:33](#); [15:34](#))

## Third-Person Imperatives

### Description

This is the placeholder for an article about third-person imperatives in biblical literature. This article is still being developed.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate third-person imperatives into my language?*

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

Text

### Examples From the Bible

Text

### Translation Strategies

Text

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Text

(Go back to: [Acts 1:20](#); [2:14](#); [2:36](#); [4:10](#); [13:38](#))

## Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:26](#); [2:13](#); [5:6](#); [7:58](#); [8:23](#); [8:27](#); [8:28](#); [8:32](#); [9:2](#); [9:18](#); [9:37](#); [9:43](#); [10:1](#); [10:9](#); [12:4](#); [12:13](#); [12:20](#); [13:1](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [13:43](#); [19:38](#); [Notes](#))



## Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

### Biblical Witness

**“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus ... said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son.**” (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

**I love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

**No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son.** (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made.**” (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

But in these last days, {God the Father} has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory and **the very exact representation of his being.** He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father?’” (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod\]\]](#)

## Human Relationships

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.**

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

## Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."

(2) If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).

(3) If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father and Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [1:7](#); [2:33](#); [9:20](#); [13:33](#))

## Verbs

### Description

Verbs are words that refer to an action or event or that is used in describing or identifying things. An “action” is something you do. “Event” is more general than “action.” “Events” are things that happen, such as death. A linking verb (“is”) describes a condition of being.

This page answers the question: *What are verbs and what kinds of things are associated with them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

**Examples** The verbs in the examples below are bolded.

- John **ran**. (“Run” is an action.)
- John **ate** a banana. (“Eat” is an action.)
- John **saw** Mark. (“See” is an event.)
- John **died**. (“Die” is an event.)
- John **is** tall. (The phrase “is tall” describes John. The word “is” is a verb that links “John” with “tall.”)
- John **looks** handsome. (The phrase “is handsome” describes John. The word “looks” here is a verb that links “John” with “handsome.”)
- John **is** my brother. (The phrase “is my brother” identifies John.)

### People or Things Associated With a Verb

A verb usually says something about someone or something. All of the example sentences above say something about John. “John” is the **subject** of those sentences. In English the subject usually comes before the verb.

Sometimes there is another person or thing associated with the verb. In the examples below, the bolded word is the verb, and the quoted phrase is the **object**. In English the object usually comes after the verb.

- He **ate** “lunch.”
- He **sang** “a song.”
- He **read** “a book.”
- **He saw** “the book.”

Some verbs never have an object.

- The sun **rose** at six o’clock.
- John **slept** well.
- John **fell** yesterday.

For many verbs in English, where the object is not important in the sentence, the object may not be stated.

- He never **eats** at night.
- He **sings** all the time.
- He **reads** well.
- He cannot **see**.

In some languages, a verb that needs an object must always take one, even if the object is not very important. People who speak those languages might restate the sentences above like this.

- He never **eats food** at night.
- He **sings songs** all the time.
- He **reads words** well.
- He cannot **see anything**.

## Subject and Object Marking on Verbs

In some languages, the form of the verb may vary depending on the persons or things associated with it. For example, English speakers sometimes put “s” at the end of the verb when the subject is just one person. In other languages, marking on the verb may show whether the subject is “I,” “you,” or “he”; singular, dual, or plural; male or female, or human or non-human.

- They **eat** bananas every day. (The subject “they” is more than one person.)
- John **eats** bananas every day. (The subject “John” is one person.)

## Time and Tense

When we tell about an event, we usually tell whether it is in the past, the present, or the future. Sometimes we do this with words like “yesterday,” “now,” or “tomorrow.”

In some languages the verb may be a little bit different depending on the time associated with it. This kind of marking on a verb is called “tense.” English speakers sometimes put “ed” at the end of the verb when the event happened in the past.

- Sometimes Mary **cooks** meat.
- Yesterday Mary **cooked** meat. (She did this in the past.)

In some languages speakers might add a word to tell something about the time. English speakers use the word “will” when the verb refers to something in the future.

- Tomorrow Mary **will cook** meat.

## Aspect

When we tell about an event, sometimes we want to show how the event progressed over a period of time or how the event relates to another event. This is called “aspect.” English speakers sometimes use the verbs “is” or “has” then add “s,” “ing,” or “ed” to the end of the verb in order to show how the event relates to another event or to the present time.

- Mary **cooks** meat every day. (This tells about something Mary often does.)
- Mary **is cooking** the meat. (This tells about something Mary is in the process of doing right now.)
- Mary **cooked** the meat, and John **came** home. (This simply tells about things that Mary and John did.)
- While Mary **was cooking** the meat, John came home. (This tells about something Mary was in the process of doing when John came home)
- Mary **has cooked** the meat, and she wants us to come eat it. (This tells about something Mary did that is still relevant now.)
- Mary **had cooked** the meat by the time John came home. (This tells about something that Mary completed in the past before something else happened.)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[Active or Passive](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pastforfuture\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:11](#))

## Verse Bridges

### Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

This page answers the question: *Why are some verse numbers combined in the UST, such as "3-5" or "17-18"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg\]\]](https://en.ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg)

29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

### Examples From the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

<sup>4-5</sup> Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

<sup>4</sup> However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), <sup>5</sup> if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

<sup>16-17</sup> But Yahweh said to him, "I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park." (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

<sup>16</sup> Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. <sup>17</sup> But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die." (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

(1) If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in [translationStudio](https://www.unfoldingword.com/translationstudio/).

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

2 You must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 ULT)

2-3 You must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:21](#); [1:24](#); [4:34](#); [8:2](#); [13:33](#); [15:20](#))

## When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-genericnoun]]

### Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise son makes **his** father rejoice  
but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

### Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

### Examples From the Bible

Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

- (1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”

“Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia.”

- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

“If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”  
(Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

>

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: Acts 1:15; 1:16; 2:5; 2:14; 2:17; 3:13; 3:17; 3:25; 4:4; 4:12; 4:17; 5:4; 5:29; 5:30; 5:38; 7:19; 7:23; 7:25; 10:28; 11:1; 11:29; 12:17; 14:15; 15:17; 16:40; 17:10; 17:14; 17:30; 18:18; 18:27; 20:26; 21:17; 22:15; 28:14)



## When to Keep Information Implicit

### Description

Sometimes it is better not to state assumed knowledge or implicit information explicitly. This page gives some direction about when not to do this.

This page answers the question: *When should I not make implicit information explicit?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)  
[Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit](#)

### Translation Principles

- If a speaker or author intentionally left something unclear, do not try to make it more clear.
- If the original audience did not understand what the speaker meant, do not make it so clear that your readers would find it strange that the original audience did not understand.
- If you need to explicitly state some assumed knowledge or implicit information, try to do it in a way that does not make your readers think that the original audience needed to be told those things.
- Do not make implicit information explicit if it confuses the message or leads the reader to forget what the main point is.
- Do not make assumed knowledge or implicit information explicit if your readers already understand it.

### Examples From the Bible

From the eater came forth food;  
and from the strong one came forth sweetness. (Judges 14:14 ULT)

This was a riddle. Samson purposely said this in a way that it would be hard for his enemies to know what it meant. Do not make it clear that the eater and the strong thing was a lion and that the sweet thing to eat was honey.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." They reasoned among themselves saying, "It is because we did not take bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Some possible implicit information here is that the disciples should beware of the false teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. But Jesus' disciples did not understand this. They thought that Jesus was talking about real yeast and bread. So it would not be appropriate to state explicitly that the word "yeast" here refers to false teaching. The disciples did not understand what Jesus meant until they heard what Jesus said in Matthew 16:11.

"How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread? Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." Then they understood that he was not telling them to beware of yeast in bread, but to beware of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. (Matthew 16:11-12 ULT)

Only after Jesus explained that he was not talking about bread did they realize that he was talking about the false teaching of the Pharisees. Therefore, it would be wrong to explicitly state the implicit information in Matthew 16:6.

### Translation Strategies

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies applied.

(Go back to: [Acts 13:2](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 36**

# Aaron

## Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 7:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 1:5
- Numbers 16:45

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:5** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:9** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:7** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0175, G00020

(Go back to: [Acts 7:40](#))

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldea](#), Sarah, [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [3:25](#); [7:2](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:32](#); [13:26](#))

## accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

### Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 4:4
- Jeremiah 2:9-11
- Luke 6:6-8
- Romans 8:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3198, H6818, G14580, G21470, G25960, G27240

(Go back to: [Acts 19:38](#); [19:40](#); [22:30](#); [23:28](#); [23:29](#); [23:30](#); [23:35](#); [24:2](#); [24:8](#); [24:13](#); [24:19](#); [25:5](#); [25:11](#); [25:16](#); [25:18](#); [26:2](#); [26:7](#); [28:19](#))

## admonish, warned, aware

### Definition:

The term “admonish” means to firmly warn or advise someone.

- Usually “admonish” means to advise someone not to do something.
- In the body of Christ, believers are taught to admonish each other to avoid sin and to live holy lives.
- The word “admonish” could be translated as “encourage not to sin” or “urge someone to not sin.”

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 9:32-34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2094, H5749, G35600, G38670, G55370

(Go back to: [Acts 20:31](#))

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [Acts 2:35](#); [13:10](#))



## advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

### Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [Acts 2:23](#); [4:28](#); [13:36](#); [20:27](#))

## afflict, affliction, distress

### Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one’s soul” means to abstain from eating food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, [suffer](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

(Go back to: [Acts 28:8](#))

## age, aged

### Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 2:7
- Hebrews 6:5
- Job 5:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G01650, G10740

(Go back to: [Acts 3:21](#); [15:18](#))

## alien, foreigner, sojourn

### Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

(Go back to: [Acts 7:6](#); [7:29](#); [26:11](#))

## alms

### Definition:

The term “alms” refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

- Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
- Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
- This term could be translated as “money” or “gifts to poor people” or “help for the poor.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:1-3
- Matthew 6:1
- Matthew 6:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G16540

(Go back to: [Acts 3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:10](#); [9:36](#); [10:2](#); [10:4](#); [10:31](#); [24:17](#))

## altar

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), grain offering, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [Acts 17:23](#))

## amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [Acts 2:7](#); [2:12](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#); [2:43](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [4:13](#); [4:30](#); [5:12](#); [6:8](#); [7:31](#); [7:36](#); [8:9](#); [8:11](#); [8:13](#); [9:21](#); [10:45](#); [12:16](#); [13:12](#); [13:41](#); [14:3](#); [15:12](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130



(Go back to: Acts 3:13; 3:25; 4:25; 5:30; 7:2; 7:4; 7:8; 7:11; 7:12; 7:14; 7:15; 7:19; 7:20; 7:29; 7:32; 7:38; 7:39; 7:44; 7:45; 7:51; 7:52; 13:17; 13:32; 13:36; 15:10; 16:1; 16:3; 22:1; 22:3; 22:14; 24:14; 26:6; 28:8; 28:17; 28:25)

## Andrew

### Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

- Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
- Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
- Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- John 1:40
- Mark 1:17
- Mark 1:29-31
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 4:19
- Matthew 10:2-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G04060

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chief, [head](#), messenger, Michael, [ruler](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

(Go back to: [Acts 5:19](#); [6:15](#); [7:30](#); [7:35](#); [7:38](#); [7:53](#); [8:26](#); [10:3](#); [10:7](#); [10:22](#); [11:13](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:15](#); [12:23](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [27:23](#))

# Annas

## Facts:

Annas was the Jewish high priest in Jerusalem for 10 years, from approximately AD 6 to AD 15. Then he was removed from the high priesthood by the Roman government, although he continued to be an influential leader among the Jews.

- Annas was father-in-law to Caiaphas, the official high priest during the ministry of Jesus.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Annas's son-in-law Caiaphas was the official high priest. Annas is also mentioned as a high priest, however, because he was a former high priest who still had power and authority over the people.
- During his trial before the Jewish leaders, Jesus was first brought to Annas for questioning.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [high priest](#), [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 4:5-7
- John 18:22-24
- Luke 3:2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G04520

(Go back to: [Acts 4:6](#))

## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God. (This and the other uses are symbolic actions, see [Symbolic Action](#).)
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), consecrate, [high priest](#), King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(Go back to: [Acts 4:27](#); [10:38](#))

## Antioch

### Facts:

Antioch was the name of two cities in the New Testament. One was in Syria, near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The other was in the Roman province of Pisidia, near the city of Colossae.

- The local church at Antioch of Syria was the first place where believers in Jesus were called “Christians.” The church there was also active in sending out missionaries to reach the Gentiles.
- The leaders of the church in Jerusalem sent a letter to the believers in the church at Antioch in Syria to help them know they didn’t have to keep the Jewish laws in order to be Christians.
- Paul, Barnabas and John Mark traveled to the Antioch in Pisidia to share the gospel. Some Jews from other cities came there to stir up trouble, and they tried to kill Paul. But many other people, both Jews and Gentiles, listened to the teaching and believed in Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [Colossae](#), [John Mark](#), [Paul](#), [province](#), [Rome](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 3:10-13
- Acts 6:5-6
- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 11:26
- Galatians 2:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G04910

(Go back to: [Acts 6:5](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [11:22](#); [11:26](#); [11:27](#); [13:1](#); [14:19](#); [14:21](#); [14:26](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [15:30](#); [15:35](#); [18:22](#))

# Apollos

## Facts:

Apollos was a Jew from the city of Alexandria in Egypt who had a special ability in teaching people about Jesus.

- Apollos was well educated in the Hebrew Scriptures and was a gifted speaker.
- He was instructed by two Christians in Ephesus named Aquila and Priscilla.
- Paul emphasized that he and Apollos, as well as other evangelists and teachers, were working toward the same goal of helping people to believe in Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aquila](#), [Ephesus](#), [Priscilla](#), [word of God](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:13
- 1 Corinthians 16:12
- Acts 18:25
- Titus 3:13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G06250

(Go back to: [Acts 18:24](#); [19:1](#))



## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

(Go back to: [Acts 1:2](#); [1:25](#); [1:26](#); [2:37](#); [2:42](#); [2:43](#); [4:33](#); [4:35](#); [4:36](#); [4:37](#); [5:2](#); [5:12](#); [5:18](#); [5:29](#); [5:40](#); [6:6](#); [8:1](#); [8:14](#); [8:18](#); [9:27](#); [11:1](#); [14:4](#); [14:14](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [16:4](#))

## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [Acts 3:20](#); [6:3](#); [7:10](#); [7:27](#); [7:35](#); [13:47](#); [14:23](#); [15:2](#); [17:26](#); [17:31](#); [22:10](#); [22:14](#); [26:16](#); [28:23](#))

## Aquila

### Facts:

Aquila was a Jewish Christian from the province of Pontus, a region along the southern coast of the Black Sea.

- Aquila and Priscilla lived in Rome, Italy, for a time, but then the Roman emperor, Claudius, forced all Jews to leave Rome.
- After that Aquila and Priscilla traveled to Corinth, where they met the apostle Paul.
- They worked as tentmakers with Paul and also helped him with his missionary work.
- Both Aquila and Priscilla taught believers the truth about Jesus; one of those believers was a gifted teacher named Apollos.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Apollos](#), [Corinth](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 2 Timothy 4:19-22
- Acts 18:2
- Acts 18:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G02070

(Go back to: [Acts 18:2](#); [18:18](#); [18:26](#))

## Arabia, Arabian

### Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term “Arabian” is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham’s son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esau, [Galatia](#), Ishmael, Shem, [Sinai](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:14-15
- Acts 2:11
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Jeremiah 25:24-26
- Nehemiah 2:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6152, H6153, H6163, G06880, G06900

(Go back to: [Acts 2:11](#))

## Asia

### Facts:

In Bible times, "Asia" was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, "the ancient Roman province called Asia" or "Asia Province."
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Rome](#), [Paul](#), [Ephesus](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 2 Timothy 1:15-18
- Acts 6:8-9
- Acts 16:7
- Acts 27:1-2
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Romans 16:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G07730

(Go back to: [Acts 2:9](#); [6:9](#); [16:6](#); [19:10](#); [19:22](#); [19:26](#); [19:27](#); [20:16](#); [20:18](#); [21:27](#); [24:19](#); [27:2](#))

## asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 4:14
- Acts 7:60
- Daniel 12:2
- Psalms 44:23
- Romans 13:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G08790, G18520, G18530, G25180, G28370, G52580

(Go back to: [Acts 7:60](#); [13:36](#); [20:9](#))

## assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: [council](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [1:6](#); [2:6](#); [4:5](#); [4:26](#); [4:27](#); [4:31](#); [5:16](#); [5:21](#); [7:38](#); [10:27](#); [11:26](#); [12:12](#); [13:44](#); [14:27](#); [15:6](#); [15:30](#); [16:13](#); [19:32](#); [19:39](#); [19:41](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [22:30](#); [25:17](#); [28:17](#))



## authority

### Definition:

The term “authority” usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: dominion, [king](#), [ruler](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

(Go back to: [Acts 1:7](#); [5:4](#); [8:19](#); [9:14](#); [26:10](#); [26:12](#); [26:18](#))

## avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

(Go back to: [Acts 7:24](#))

## Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

### Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word "Babylon" refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the "king of Babylon" ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called "Chaldea" and the people living there were the "Chaldeans." As a result, the term "Chaldea" was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, [Chaldea](#), Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

(Go back to: [Acts 7:43](#))

## baptize, baptized, baptism

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:38
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 9:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:3** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:7** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:5** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G09070

(Go back to: Acts 1 General Notes; 1:5; 1:22; Notes; 2:38; 2:41; 8:12; 8:13; 8:16; 8:36; 8:38; 9:18; 10:37; 10:47; 10:48; 11:16; 13:24; 16:15; 16:33; 18:8; 18:25; 19:3; 19:4; 19:5; 22:16)

## Barnabas

### Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

- Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
- When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
- Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
- His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christian](#), [Cyprus](#), [good news](#), [Levite](#), [Paul](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:36
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 13:3
- Acts 15:33
- Colossians 4:10-11
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:8** Then a believer named **Barnabas** took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.
- **46:9** **Barnabas** and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church. I
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me **Barnabas** and Saul to do the work I have called them to do." So the church in Antioch prayed for **Barnabas** and Saul and placed their hands on them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09210

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#); [9:27](#); [11:22](#); [11:30](#); [12:25](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:7](#); [13:43](#); [13:46](#); [13:50](#); [14:12](#); [14:14](#); [14:20](#); [15:2](#); [15:12](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#); [15:37](#); [15:39](#))

## Bartholomew

### Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
- He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
- A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [good news](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#), [Pentecost](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- Luke 6:14-16
- Mark 3:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09180

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## **basket, basketfuls**

### **Definition:**

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be “floating container.”

(See also: ark, [Moses](#), Nile River, Noah)

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 11:33
- Acts 9:25
- Amos 8:1
- John 6:13-15
- Judges 6:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G28940, G34260, G45530, G47110

(Go back to: [Acts 9:25](#))



## bear, bearer, carry

### Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [burden](#), [Elisha](#), [endure](#), [fruit](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G01420, G04300, G09410, G10800, G16270, G25920, G31400, G41600, G47220, G48280, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090, G55760

(Go back to: [Acts 3:2](#); [9:15](#); [15:10](#); [18:14](#); [21:35](#))

## beast

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), Daniel, livestock, [nation](#), [power](#), [reveal](#), Beelzebul)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

(Go back to: [Acts 11:6](#); [23:24](#))

## beg, beggar, needy

### Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: plead)

### Bible References:

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 6:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 45:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:4** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **29:8** “The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.’”
- **32:7** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.
- **44:1** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0034, H7592, G01540, G18710, G43190, G44340

(Go back to: [Acts 13:42](#); [16:15](#); [16:39](#); [21:12](#); [24:4](#); [25:2](#); [28:14](#))

## believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

#### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

#### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

(Go back to: [Acts 2:44](#); [4:4](#); [4:32](#); [5:14](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [9:26](#); [9:42](#); [10:43](#); [11:17](#); [11:21](#); [13:12](#); [13:39](#); [13:41](#); [13:48](#); Notes; [14:1](#); [14:23](#); [15:5](#); [15:7](#); [15:11](#); [16:1](#); [16:31](#); [16:34](#); [17:12](#); [17:34](#); [18:8](#); [18:27](#); [19:2](#); [19:4](#); [19:18](#); [21:20](#); [21:25](#); [22:19](#); [26:27](#))

## beloved

### Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Songs 1:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G00250, G00270, G52070

(Go back to: [Acts 15:25](#))

## Benjamin, Benjaminite

### Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Rachel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [Acts 13:21](#))



## Berea

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Berea (or Beroea) was a prosperous Greek city in southeast Macedonia, about 80 kilometers south of Thessalonica.

- Paul and Silas fled to the city of Berea after their fellow Christians helped them escape from certain Jews who had caused trouble for them in Thessalonica.
- When the people living in Berea heard Paul preach, they researched the Scriptures to confirm that what he was telling them was true.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), [Silas](#), [Thessalonica](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 17:11
- Acts 17:13-15
- Acts 20:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09600

(Go back to: [Acts 17:10](#); [17:13](#); [20:4](#))

## betray, betrayer

### Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), Jewish leaders, [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- John 6:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:4
- Matthew 26:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:6** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” \* \* **38:6** Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **38:14** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **39:8** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7411, G38600, G42730

(Go back to: [Acts 7:52](#))

## bind, bond, bound

### Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(Go back to: [Acts 8:23](#); [9:2](#); [9:14](#); [9:21](#); [12:6](#); [20:22](#); [20:23](#); [21:11](#); [21:13](#); [21:33](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:29](#); [23:29](#); [26:29](#); [26:31](#); [28:20](#))

## blameless

### Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:10
- 1 Thessalonians 3:11-13
- 2 Peter 3:14
- Colossians 1:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 2:15
- Philippians 3:6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5352, H5355, H8535, G02730, G02740, G02980, G02990, G03380, G04100, G04230

(Go back to: [Acts 24:16](#))

## blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, [slander](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:12-14
- Acts 6:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 2:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 74:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G09870, G09880, G09890

(Go back to: [Acts 6:11](#); [13:45](#); [19:37](#); [26:11](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”

- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [Acts 3:25](#); [3:26](#); [20:35](#); [26:2](#))



## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [Acts 1:19](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [5:28](#); [15:20](#); [15:29](#); [18:6](#); [20:26](#); [20:28](#); [21:25](#); [22:20](#))

## body

### Definition:

The term “body” refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or to a group consisting of individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [hand](#); [face](#); [loins](#); [righthand](#); [tongue](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- Ephesians 4:4
- Judges 14:8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Psalm 31:9
- Romans 12:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G44300, G49540, G49830, G55590

(Go back to: [Acts 9:40](#))

## **bold, boldness, emboldened**

### **Definition:**

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ’s redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: confidence, [good news](#), [redeem](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 2:28
- 1 Thessalonians 2:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- Acts 4:13

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0982, H5797, G06620, G22920, G36180, G39540, G39550, G51110, G51120

(**Go back to:** [Acts 4:13](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [9:27](#); [9:28](#); [13:46](#); [14:3](#); [18:26](#); [19:8](#); [26:26](#); [28:31](#))

## bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [Acts 7:60](#); [9:40](#); [10:25](#); [16:29](#); [20:36](#); [21:5](#))

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [Acts 2:42](#); [2:46](#); [20:7](#); [20:11](#); [27:35](#))

## breath, breathe

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: Adam, [Paul](#), [word of God](#), [life](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:17
- Ecclesiastes 8:8
- Job 4:9
- Revelation 11:11
- Revelation 13:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3307, H5301, H5396, H5397, H7307, G17200, G41570

(Go back to: [Acts 17:25](#))

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [Acts 1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [2:29](#); [2:37](#); [3:17](#); [3:22](#); [6:3](#); [7:2](#); [7:13](#); [7:23](#); [7:25](#); [7:26](#); [7:37](#); [9:17](#); [9:30](#); [10:23](#); [11:1](#); [11:12](#); [11:29](#); [12:2](#); [12:17](#); [13:15](#); [13:26](#); [13:38](#); [14:2](#); [15:1](#); [15:3](#); [15:7](#); [15:13](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [15:32](#); [15:33](#); [15:36](#); [15:40](#);



16:2; 16:40; 17:6; 17:10; 17:14; 18:18; 18:27; 21:7; 21:17; 21:20; 22:1; 22:5; 22:13; 23:1; 23:5; 23:6; 28:14; 28:15; 28:17; 28:21)

## burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [Acts 15:28](#))

## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [Acts 2:29](#); [5:6](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#))

# Caesar

## Facts:

The term “Caesar” was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was “Caesar Augustus,” who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title “Caesar.”
- When “Caesar” is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: “the Emperor” or “the Roman Ruler.”
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, “Caesar” can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#), [Paul](#), [Rome](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 25:6
- Luke 2:1
- Luke 20:23-24
- Luke 23:2
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:17
- Philippians 4:22

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G25410

(Go back to: [Acts 17:7](#); [25:8](#); [25:10](#); [25:11](#); [25:12](#); [25:21](#); [26:32](#); [27:24](#); [28:19](#))

## Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi

### Facts:

Caesarea was an important city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 39 km south of Mount Carmel. Caesarea Philippi was a city located in the northeastern part of Israel, near Mount Hermon.

- These cities were named for the Caesars who ruled the Roman empire.
- The coastal Caesarea became the capital city of the Roman province of Judea around the time of the birth of Jesus.
- The apostle Peter first preached to the Gentiles in Caesarea.
- Paul sailed from Caesarea to Tarsus and also passed through this city on two of his missionary journeys.
- Jesus and his disciples traveled in the region surrounding Caesarea Philippi in Syria. Both cities were named after Herod Philip.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Caesar](#), [Gentile](#), [the sea](#), [Carmel](#), [Mount Hermon](#), [Rome](#), [Tarsus](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:30
- Acts 10:1-2
- Acts 25:1
- Acts 25:14
- Mark 8:27
- Matthew 16:13-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G25420, G53760

(Go back to: [Acts 8:40](#); [9:30](#); [10:1](#); [10:24](#); [11:11](#); [12:19](#); [18:22](#); [21:8](#); [21:16](#); [23:23](#); [23:33](#); [25:1](#); [25:4](#); [25:6](#); [25:13](#))

## Caiaphas

### Facts:

Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

- Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
- The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
- Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Annas](#), [high priest](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:5-7
- John 18:12
- Luke 3:2
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:57-58

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G25330

(Go back to: [Acts 4:6](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: Acts 1:19; 1:23; 2:21; 2:39; 3:2; 3:11; 4:18; 4:36; 5:40; 6:2; 6:9; 7:59; 8:10; 9:11; 9:14; 9:21; 9:41; 10:1; 10:5; 10:7; 10:18; 10:24; 10:28; 10:32; 11:13; 11:26; 12:12; 12:25; 13:1; 13:2; 14:12; 15:17; 15:22; 15:37; 16:10; 19:13; 20:17; 22:16; 23:17; 23:18; 23:23; 24:14; 25:3; 25:11; 25:12; 25:21; 25:25; 26:32; 27:8; 27:14; 27:16; 28:1; 28:17; 28:20)



## Canaan, Canaanite

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

(Go back to: [Acts 7:11](#); [13:19](#))

## cast out, driving out, throw out

### Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagog or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: [demon](#), demon-possessed, [lots](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:17-19
- Mark 3:13-16
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G15440

(Go back to: [Acts 7:58](#); [13:50](#); [16:37](#); [27:38](#))

## caught up

### Definition:

The term "caught up" often refers to God taking a person up to heaven in a sudden, miraculous way.

- The phrase "caught up with" refers to coming up to someone after hurrying to reach him. A term with a similar meaning is "overtake."
- The apostle Paul talked about being "caught up" to the third heaven. This could also be translated as "taken up."
- Paul said that when Christ comes back, Christians will be "caught up" together to meet him in the air.
- The figurative expression, "my sins have caught up with me" could be translated as "I am receiving the consequences of my sin" or "because of my sin I am suffering" or "my sin is causing me trouble."

(see: [miracle](#), [overtake](#), [suffer](#), [trouble](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:1-2
- Acts 8:39-40

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1692, G07260

(Go back to: [Acts 8:39](#))

## centurion

### Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

- This could also be translated with a term that means “leader of a hundred men” or “army leader” or “officer in charge of a hundred.”
- One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
- The centurion in charge of Jesus’ crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
- God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 10:1
- Acts 27:1
- Acts 27:42-44
- Luke 7:4
- Luke 23:47
- Mark 15:39
- Matthew 8:7
- Matthew 27:54

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G15430, G27600

(Go back to: [Acts 10:1](#); [10:22](#); [21:32](#); [22:25](#); [22:26](#); [23:17](#); [23:23](#); [24:23](#); [27:1](#); [27:6](#); [27:11](#); [27:31](#); [27:43](#))

## Chaldea, Chaldean

### Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), Shinar, Ur)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:4-5
- Ezekiel 1:1
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G54660

(Go back to: [Acts 7:4](#))

## chariot, charioteers

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

(Go back to: [Acts 8:28](#); [8:29](#); [8:38](#))

## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [Acts 2:39](#); [7:5](#); [7:19](#); [13:33](#); [21:5](#); [21:21](#))



## chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

### Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

(Go back to: [Acts 1:2](#); [1:24](#); [6:5](#); [9:15](#); [13:17](#); [15:7](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:40](#))

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus."
- "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ."

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah." (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

(Go back to: [Acts 2:31](#); [2:36](#); [2:38](#); [3:6](#); [3:18](#); [3:20](#); [4:10](#); [4:26](#); [5:42](#); [8:5](#); [8:12](#); [9:22](#); [9:34](#); [10:36](#); [10:48](#); [11:17](#); [15:26](#); [16:18](#); [Notes](#); [17:3](#); [Notes](#); [18:5](#); [18:28](#); [24:24](#); [26:23](#); [28:31](#))

## Christian

### Definition:

Some time after Jesus went back to heaven, people made up the name “Christian” which means “follower of Christ.”

- It was in the city of Antioch where Jesus’ followers were first called “Christians.”
- A Christian is a person who believes that Jesus is the Son of God, and who trusts Jesus to save him from his sins.
- In our modern times, often the term “Christian” is used for someone who identifies with the Christian religion, but who is not really following Jesus. This is not the meaning of “Christian” in the Bible.
- Because the term “Christian” in the Bible always refers to someone who truly believes in Jesus, a Christian is also called a “believer.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “Christ-follower” or “follower of Christ” or perhaps something like, “Christ-person.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is translated differently than terms used for disciple or apostle.
- Be careful to translate this term with a word that can refer to everyone who believes in Jesus, not just certain groups.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Antioch](#), [Christ](#), [church](#), [disciple](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:7-8
- 1 Peter 4:16
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 26:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:9** It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “**Christians**.”
- **47:14** Paul and other **Christian** leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **49:15** If you believe in Jesus and what he has done for you, you are a **Christian**!
- **49:16** If you are a **Christian**, God has forgiven your sins because of what Jesus did.
- **49:17** Even though you are a **Christian**, you will still be tempted to sin.
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told **Christians** to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it.
- **50:11** When Jesus returns, every **Christian** who has died will rise from the dead and meet him in the sky.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G55460

(Go back to: [Acts 11:26](#); [26:28](#))

## church, Church

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to all people who believe in Jesus. Sometimes “church” refers to a part of that larger group who regularly met together in a certain place, such as the “church at Ephesus.”

- This term literally refers to an assembly or congregation of people who were “called out” of the general population to meet together for a special purpose.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home to pray together and to hear and discuss scripture. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [believe](#), [Christian](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G15770

(Go back to: [Acts 5:11](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [9:31](#); [11:22](#); [11:26](#); [12:1](#); [12:5](#); [13:1](#); [14:23](#); [14:27](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [15:22](#); [15:41](#); [16:5](#); [18:22](#); [20:17](#); [20:28](#))

## Cilicia

### Facts:

Cilicia was a small Roman province located in the southeastern part of what is now the modern-day country of Turkey. It borders the Aegean Sea.

- The apostle Paul was a citizen from the city of Tarsus located in Cilicia.
- Paul spent several years in Cilicia after his encounter with Jesus on the road to Damascus.
- Some of the Jews from Cilicia were among those who confronted Stephen and influenced the people to stone him to death.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Paul](#), [Stephen](#), [Tarsus](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:8-9
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 27:3-6
- Galatians 1:21-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G27910

(Go back to: [Acts 6:9](#); [15:41](#); [21:39](#); [22:3](#); [23:34](#); [27:5](#))

## circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Abraham, covenant](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48



- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 5:3
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 1:20
- Jeremiah 9:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:3
- Acts 15:1
- Acts 11:3
- Romans 2:27
- Galatians 5:3
- Ephesians 2:11
- Philippians 3:3
- Colossians 2:11
- Colossians 2:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:3** “You must **circumcise** every male in your family.”
- **5:5** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G02030, G05640, G19860, G40590, G40610

(Go back to: [Acts 7:8](#); [10:45](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [15:1](#); [15:5](#); [16:3](#); [21:21](#))

## **citizen, citizenship**

### **Definition:**

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

- Depending on the context, this could also be translated as “inhabitant” or “official resident.”
- A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called “citizens” of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God’s kingdom.

(See: kingdom, [Paul](#), [province](#), [Rome](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 21:39-40
- Isaiah 3:3
- Luke 15:15
- Luke 19:14

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H6440, G41750, G41770, G48470

(Go back to: [Acts 21:39](#); [22:28](#); [23:1](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [Acts 5:16](#); [8:7](#); [Notes](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:28](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [15:9](#); [18:6](#); [24:18](#))

## clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

### Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G02940, G14630, G15620, G17370, G17420, G17460, G19020, G20660, G22240, G24390, G24400, G40160, G47490, G55090

(Go back to: [Acts 7:58](#); [9:39](#); [12:8](#); [12:21](#); [14:14](#); [16:22](#); [18:6](#); [22:20](#); [22:23](#))

## comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

### Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 1:4
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G03020, G38700, G38740, G38750, G38880, G38900, G39310

(Go back to: [Acts 9:31](#); [20:12](#))

## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [Acts 1:2](#); [1:4](#); [4:15](#); [4:18](#); [5:28](#); [5:34](#); [5:40](#); [7:44](#); [8:38](#); [10:42](#); [10:48](#); [13:47](#); [15:5](#); [16:18](#); [16:22](#); [16:23](#); [16:24](#); [17:15](#); [17:30](#); [21:33](#); [21:34](#); [22:24](#); [22:30](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:10](#); [23:22](#); [23:30](#); [23:35](#); [24:23](#); [25:6](#); [25:17](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [27:43](#))

## commander

### Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
- The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), [centurion](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 2:14
- Mark 6:21-22
- Proverbs 6:7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G55060

(Go back to: [Acts 21:31](#); [21:32](#); [21:33](#); [21:37](#); [22:24](#); [22:26](#); [22:27](#); [22:28](#); [22:29](#); [23:10](#); [23:15](#); [23:17](#); [23:18](#); [23:19](#); [23:22](#); [24:22](#); [25:23](#))



## commit, committed, commitment

### Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: adultery, [faithful](#), [promise](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:7
- 1 Peter 2:21-23
- Jeremiah 2:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 58:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G02640, G20380, G27160, G34290, G34310, G38600, G38720, G39080, G41020, G41600, G42030

(Go back to: [Acts 14:23](#); [15:40](#); [20:32](#))

## condemn, condemned, condemnation

### Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:20
- Job 9:29
- John 5:24
- Luke 6:37
- Matthew 12:7
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 34:22
- Romans 5:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G01760, G08430, G26070, G26130, G26310, G26320, G26330, G29170, G29190, G29200, G52720, G60480

(Go back to: [Acts 13:27](#))

## confess, confession

### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

(Go back to: [Acts 19:18](#); [23:8](#); [24:14](#))

## conscience

### Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:19
- 1 Timothy 3:9
- 2 Corinthians 5:11
- 2 Timothy 1:3
- Romans 9:1
- Titus 1:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G48930

(Go back to: [Acts 23:1](#); [24:16](#))

## Corinth, Corinthians

### Facts:

Corinth was a city in the country of Greece, about 50 miles west of Athens. The Corinthians were the people who lived at Corinth.

- Corinth was the location of one of the early Christian churches.
- The New Testament books, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians were letters written by Paul to the Christians living in Corinth.
- On his first missionary journey, Paul stayed in Corinth for approximately 18 months.
- Paul met the believers Aquila and Priscilla while in Corinth.
- Other early church leaders associated with Corinth include Timothy, Titus, Apollos, and Silas.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Apollos](#), [Timothy](#), Titus)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:3
- 2 Corinthians 1:23-24
- 2 Timothy 4:19-22
- Acts 18:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G28810, G28820

(Go back to: [Acts 18:1](#); [18:8](#); [19:1](#))

## Cornelius

### Facts:

Cornelius was a Gentile, or non-Jewish man, who was a military officer in the Roman army.

- He prayed regularly to God and was very generous in giving to the poor.
- When Cornelius and his family heard the apostle Peter explain the gospel, they became believers in Jesus.
- The people of Cornelius' household were the first non-Jewish people to become believers.
- This showed Jesus' followers that he had come to save all people, including Gentiles.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Greek](#), [centurion](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 10:1
- Acts 10:8
- Acts 10:18
- Acts 10:22
- Acts 10:24
- Acts 10:26
- Acts 10:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G28830

(Go back to: [Acts 10:1](#); [10:3](#); [10:17](#); [10:22](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [10:30](#); [10:31](#))

## cornerstone

### Definition:

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building’s foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:11
- Ephesians 2:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H6438, H7218, G02040, G11370, G27760, G30370

(Go back to: [Acts 4:11](#))

## corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness

### Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: [testimony](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:19
- Exodus 20:16
- Matthew 15:18-20
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Proverbs 14:5-6
- Psalms 27:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H6030, H7650, H8267, G19650, G31440, G55710, G55750, G55760, G55770

(Go back to: [Acts 6:13](#))



## council

### Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The “Jewish Council” in Jerusalem, also known as the “Sanhedrin,” had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word “council” could also be translated as “legal assembly” or “political assembly.”
- To be “in council” means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than “counsel,” which means “wise advice.”

(See also: [assembly](#), [counsel](#), [Pharisee](#), [law](#), [priest](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 3:2
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:9
- Matthew 5:22
- Matthew 26:59

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, G10100, G48240, G48920

(Go back to: [Acts 4:15](#); [5:21](#); [5:27](#); [5:34](#); [5:41](#); [6:12](#); [6:15](#); [22:30](#); [23:1](#); [23:6](#); [23:15](#); [23:20](#); [23:28](#); [24:20](#); [25:12](#))

## **courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement**

### **Facts:**

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression "take courage" means "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
- The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
- Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
- To "speak with courage" could be translated as "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and "encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
- The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: confidence, [exhort](#), [fear](#), [strength](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 9:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 7:13
- Acts 5:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 3:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0533, H0553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22920, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G39540, G43890, G48370, G51110

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#); [14:22](#); [15:31](#); [18:27](#); [20:1](#); [23:11](#); [27:22](#); [27:25](#); [27:36](#); [28:15](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Acts 3:25](#); [7:8](#))

## cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [Acts 7:41](#); [14:13](#))

## Crete, Cretan

### Facts:

Crete is an island that is located off the southern coast of Greece. A "Cretan" is someone who lives on this island.

- The apostle Paul traveled to the island of Crete during his missionary journeys.
- Paul left his co-worker Titus on Crete to teach the Christians and to help appoint leaders for the church there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:11
- Acts 27:8
- Amos 9:7-8
- Titus 1:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G29120, G29140

(Go back to: [Acts 2:11](#); [27:7](#); [27:12](#); [27:13](#); [27:21](#))

## crime, criminal

### Definition:

The term "crime" usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term "criminal" refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone's property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: thief)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:9
- Hosea 6:8-9
- Job 31:26-28
- Luke 23:32
- Matthew 27:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2400, H4639, H5771, H7563, H7564, G25560, G25570, G44670

(Go back to: [Acts 18:14](#))



## crucify, crucified

### Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "crucify" could be translated as "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: cross, [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:23
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!"
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:4** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:6** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!"
- **43:9** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G03880, G43620, G47170, G49570

(Go back to: [Acts 2:23](#); [2:36](#); [4:10](#))

## cry, cry out, outcry

### Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#), [pray](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(Go back to: [Acts 7:57](#); [7:60](#); [8:7](#); [12:22](#); [14:14](#); [16:17](#); [16:28](#); [17:6](#); [19:28](#); [19:32](#); [19:34](#); [21:28](#); [21:34](#); [21:36](#); [22:24](#); [23:6](#); [24:21](#); [25:24](#))

## cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

### Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:16
- Acts 8:6
- Luke 5:13
- Luke 6:19
- Luke 8:43
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 9:35
- Matthew 13:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:6** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:8** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **44:3** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:2** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H0622, G12950, G17430, G23220, G23230, G23860, G23900, G23920, G25110, G36470, G49820, G51980, G51990

(Go back to: [Acts 4:9](#); [4:14](#); [4:22](#); [4:30](#); [5:16](#); [8:7](#); [9:34](#); [10:38](#); [28:8](#); [28:9](#); [28:27](#))

## curse, cursed, cursing

### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **2:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **4:4** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

(Go back to: [Acts 23:12](#); [23:14](#); [23:21](#))

## Cyprus

### Facts:

Cyprus is an island in the Mediterranean Sea, about 64 kilometers south of the modern-day country of Turkey.

- Barnabas was from Cyprus so it is probable that his cousin John Mark was also from there.
- Paul and Barnabas preached together on the island of Cyprus at the beginning of their first missionary journey. John Mark came along to help them on that trip.
- Later on, Barnabas and Mark visited Cyprus again.
- In the Old Testament, Cyprus is mentioned as being a rich source of cypress trees.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [John Mark](#), [the sea](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:36-37
- Acts 13:5
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 27:4
- Ezekiel 27:6-7
- Isaiah 23:10-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G29530, G29540

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [13:4](#); [15:39](#); [21:3](#); [21:16](#); [27:4](#))

## Cyrene

### Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

- In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
- Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Crete](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Matthew 27:32-34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G29560, G29570

(Go back to: [Acts 2:10](#); [6:9](#); [11:20](#); [13:1](#))



## Damascus

### Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, Assyria, [believe](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 9:3
- Acts 26:12
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1834, G11540

(Go back to: [Acts 9:2](#); [9:3](#); [9:8](#); [9:10](#); [9:19](#); [9:22](#); [9:27](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [22:10](#); [22:11](#); [26:12](#); [26:20](#))

## darkness

### Definition:

The term "darkness" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: corrupt, dominion, kingdom, [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G22170, G46520, G46530, G46550, G46560

(Go back to: [Acts 2:20](#); [13:11](#); [26:18](#))

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [Acts 1:16](#); [2:25](#); [2:29](#); [2:34](#); [4:25](#); [7:45](#); [13:22](#); [13:34](#); [13:36](#); [15:16](#))

## day

### Definition:

The term "day" generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- "Day" is sometimes used in contrast to "night." In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as "today."
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days." Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" non-figuratively.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as "day" or "daytime" using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of "day" could include "daytime," "time," "season," "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [time](#), judgment day, [last day](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

(Go back to: Acts 1:2; 1:3; 1:5; 1:15; 1:22; 2:1; 2:15; 2:17; 2:18; 2:20; 2:29; 2:41; 2:46; 2:47; 3:2; 3:24; 5:36; 5:37; 5:42; 6:1; 7:8; 7:26; 7:41; 7:45; 8:1; 9:9; 9:19; 9:23; 9:24; 9:37; 9:43; 10:3; 10:30; 10:40; 10:48; 11:27; 12:3; 12:18; 12:21; 13:14; 13:31; 13:41; 15:7; 15:36; 16:5; 16:12; 16:13; 16:18; 16:35; 17:11; 17:17; 17:31; 18:18; 19:9; 20:6; 20:16; 20:18; 20:26; 20:31; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:10; 21:15; 21:26; 21:27; 21:38; 23:1; 23:12; 24:1; 24:11; 24:24; 25:1; 25:6; 25:13; 25:14; 26:7; 26:13; 26:22; 27:7; 27:20; 27:29; 27:33; 27:39; 28:7; 28:12; 28:13; 28:14; 28:17; 28:23)

## day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

### Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: [day](#), judgment day, [Lord](#), [resurrection](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 Thessalonians 5:2
- 2 Peter 3:10
- 2 Thessalonians 2:2
- Acts 2:20-21
- Philippians 1:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3068, H3117, G22500, G29620

(Go back to: [Acts 2:20](#))

## deceive, lie, deception, illusions

### Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [Acts 13:10](#))

## declare, proclaim, announce

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [Acts 13:41](#); [14:27](#); [15:4](#); [19:18](#); [20:20](#); [20:27](#); [26:20](#))

## defile, defiled, desecrate

### Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [profane](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 7:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

(Go back to: [Acts 21:28](#))



## deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [Acts 7:10](#); [7:34](#); [12:11](#); [23:27](#); [26:17](#))

## demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

### Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: demon-possessed, [Satan](#), [false god](#), [false god](#), [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- James 2:19
- James 3:15
- Luke 4:36
- Mark 3:22
- Matthew 4:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:9** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:8** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:5** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G01690, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G41900, G41510, G41520, G41890

(Go back to: [Acts 5:16](#); [8:7](#); [16:16](#); [16:18](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [19:15](#); [19:16](#))

## descend, descendant

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

(Go back to: [Acts 4:6](#))

## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [Acts 7:30](#); [7:36](#); [7:38](#); [7:42](#); [7:44](#); [8:26](#); [13:18](#); [21:38](#))

## desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

### Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), devastate, ruin, waste)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 1:20
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Lamentations 3:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

(Go back to: [Acts 1:20](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death

## Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

## 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

## 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [Acts 2:24](#); [2:29](#); [3:15](#); [4:2](#); [4:10](#); [5:10](#); [7:4](#); [7:15](#); [9:37](#); [10:41](#); [10:42](#); [12:23](#); [13:28](#); [13:30](#); [13:34](#); [14:19](#); [17:3](#); [17:31](#); [17:32](#); [20:9](#); [21:13](#); [22:4](#); [23:6](#); [23:29](#); [24:21](#); [25:11](#); [25:19](#); [25:25](#); [26:8](#); [26:23](#); [26:31](#); [28:6](#); [28:18](#))

## discern, discernment, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
- “Discernment” could be translated as “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: [judge](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:7-9
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Proverbs 1:5
- Psalms 19:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H2940, H4209, H5234, H8085, G03500, G12520, G12530, G29240

(Go back to: [Acts 17:11](#))



## disciple

### Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the 12.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:1
- Acts 9:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 6:40
- Matthew 11:3
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **30:8** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3928, G31000, G31010, G31020

(Go back to: Acts 6:1; 6:2; 6:7; 9:1; 9:10; 9:19; 9:25; 9:26; 9:36; 9:38; 11:26; 11:29; 13:52; 14:20; 14:21; 14:22; 14:28; 15:10; 16:1; 18:23; 18:27; 19:1; 19:9; 19:30; 20:1; 20:30; 21:4; 21:16)

## discipline, self-discipline

### Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 6:4
- Hebrews 12:5
- Proverbs 19:18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4148, G14680

(Go back to: [Acts 20 General Notes](#))

## disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

### Definition:

The term "disobey" means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being "disobedient."

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term "disobedient" is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term "disobedience" means "the act of not obeying" or "behavior that is against what God wants."
- A "disobedient people" could be translated by "people who keep on disobeying" or "people who do not do what God commands."

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 3:7
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 6:49
- Psalms 89:30-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:11** God said to the man, "You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me."
- **13:7** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.'"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4784, H5674, G05060, G05430, G05440, G05450, G38470, G38760

(Go back to: [Acts 19:9](#); [26:19](#))

## divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

### Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: [apostle](#), [false god](#), [magic](#), [sorcery](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- Acts 16:16
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G44360

(Go back to: [Acts 16:16](#))

## divine

### Definition:

The term “divine” refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include “divine authority,” “divine judgment,” “divine nature,” “divine power,” and “divine glory.”
- In one passage in the Bible, the term “divine” is used to describe something about a false deity.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “divine” could include “God’s” or “from God” or “pertaining to God” or “characterized by God.”
- For example, “divine authority” could be translated as “God’s authority” or “authority that comes from God.”
- The phrase “divine glory” could be translated as “God’s glory” or “the glory that God has” or “glory that comes from God.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](#), [false god](#), [glory](#), [God](#), [judge](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
- 2 Peter 1:4
- Romans 1:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G23040, G29990

(Go back to: [Acts 17:29](#))

## **dream**

### **Definition:**

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 2:16-17
- Daniel 1:17-18
- Daniel 2:1
- Genesis 37:6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 2:13
- Matthew 2:19-21

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **8:2** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **8:7** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:1** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G17970, G17980, G36770

(Go back to: [Acts 2:17](#))

## drunk, drunkard

### Facts:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: wine)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

(Go back to: [Acts 2:15](#))



## earth, land

### Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as "land" when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term "earth" is often paired with the term "heaven" as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated "land" when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as "the land of Canaan."
- The term "earthly" is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth."

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [world](#), [heaven](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [Acts 1:8](#); [2:19](#); [3:25](#); [4:24](#); [4:26](#); [7:49](#); [8:33](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [11:6](#); [13:47](#); [14:15](#); [17:26](#); [22:22](#))

## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, [patriarchs](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [Acts 2:10](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:15](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:22](#); [7:24](#); [7:28](#); [7:34](#); [7:36](#); [7:39](#); [7:40](#); [13:17](#); [21:38](#))

## Elam, Elamites

### Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites,” and they lived in a region that was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Noah, Shem)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- Acts 2:9
- Ezra 8:4-7
- Isaiah 22:6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5867, H5962, G16390

(Go back to: [Acts 2:9](#))

## elder, older, old

### Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [Acts 2:17](#); [4:5](#); [4:8](#); [4:23](#); [6:12](#); [11:30](#); [14:23](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [16:4](#); [20:17](#); [21:18](#); [22:5](#); [23:14](#); [24:1](#); [25:15](#))

## endure, endurance

### Definition:

The term "endure" means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term "endurance" can mean "patience" or "bearing up under a trial" or "persevering when being persecuted."
- The encouragement to Christians to "endure to the end" is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To "endure suffering" can also mean to "experience suffering."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "endure" could include "persevere" or "keep believing" or "continue to do what God wants you to do" or "stand firm."
- In some contexts, to "endure" could be translated as to "experience" or to "go through."
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term "endure" could also be translated as "last" or "continue." The phrase "will not endure" could be translated as "will not last" or "will not continue to survive."
- Ways to translate "endurance" could include "perseverance" or "continuing to believe" or "remaining faithful."

(See also: persevere)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- James 1:3
- James 1:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G04300, G09070, G15260, G20050, G20760, G25940, G33060, G47220, G52780, G52810, G52970, G53420

(Go back to: [Acts 13:18](#))

## enslave, slave, bondservant, bound

### Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants. Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [righteous](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Genesis 15:13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3533, H5647, G13980, G14020, G26150

(Go back to: [Acts 7:6](#))

## envy, covet

### Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

(Go back to: [Acts 20:33](#))

## Ephesus, Ephesian

### Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [Paul](#), [Timothy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Timothy 1:3
- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Acts 19:1
- Ephesians 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G21790, G21800, G21810

(Go back to: [Acts 18:19](#); [18:21](#); [18:24](#); [19:1](#); [19:17](#); [19:26](#); [19:28](#); [19:34](#); [19:35](#); [20:16](#); [20:17](#); [21:29](#))



## epistle, letter

### Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include “written message” or “written down words” or “writing.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [exhort](#), [teach](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:27
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 28:21-22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0104, H0107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G11210, G19920

(Go back to: [Acts 9:2](#); [15:30](#); [22:5](#); [23:25](#); [23:33](#))

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), reign, [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [Acts 13:46](#); [13:48](#))

## Ethiopia, Ethiopian

### Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
- The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cush](#), [Egypt](#), [eunuch](#), [Philip](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:27
- Acts 8:30
- Acts 8:32-33
- Acts 8:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 3:9
- Zephaniah 3:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G01280

(Go back to: [Acts 8:27](#))

## eunuch

### Definition:

Usually the term “eunuch” refers to a man who has been castrated. The term later became a general term to refer to any government official, even those without the deformity.

- Jesus said that some eunuchs were born that way, perhaps because of damaged sex organs or because of not being able to function sexually. Others chose to live like eunuchs in a celibate lifestyle.
- In ancient times, eunuchs were often kings’ servants who were set as guards over the women’s quarters.
- Some eunuchs were important government officials, such as the Ethiopian eunuch who met the apostle Philip in the desert.

(See also: [Philip](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:27
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 8:39
- Isaiah 39:7-8
- Jeremiah 34:17-19
- Matthew 19:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5631, G21340, G21350

(Go back to: [Acts 8:27](#); [8:34](#); [8:36](#); [8:38](#); [8:39](#))

# evangelist

## Definition:

An “evangelist” is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

- The literal meaning of “evangelist” is “someone who preaches the good news.”
- Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God’s kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
- All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
- Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called “evangelists.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “evangelist” could be translated as “someone who preaches the good news” or “teacher of the good news” or “person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)” or “good news proclaimer.”

(See also: [good news](#), [spirit](#), [gift](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:5
- Ephesians 4:11-13

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G20990

(Go back to: [Acts 21:8](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [Acts 3:26](#); [8:22](#); [9:13](#); [17:5](#); [18:14](#); [19:9](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [19:15](#); [19:16](#); [23:5](#); [23:9](#); [25:18](#); [28:21](#))



## ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [Acts 8:32](#))

## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, proud)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [Acts 2:33](#); [5:31](#); [13:17](#))

## exhort, exhortation

### Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 1 Timothy 5:2
- Luke 3:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G38670, G38700, G38740, G43890

(Go back to: [Acts 2:40](#); [9:38](#); [11:23](#); [13:15](#); [15:32](#); [16:40](#); [19:31](#); [20:2](#); [27:9](#); [27:22](#); [27:33](#); [27:34](#))

## exult, exultant

### Definition:

The terms “exult” and “exultant” refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To “exult” includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God’s goodness.
- The term “exultant” can also include being arrogant in one’s feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term “exult” could also be translated as “celebrate joyfully” or “praise with great joy.”
- Depending on the context, the term “exultant” could be translated as “praising triumphantly” or “celebrating with self praise” or “arrogant.”

(See also: arrogant, [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:1
- Isaiah 13:3
- Job 6:10
- Psalm 68:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5539, H5947, H5970

(Go back to: [Acts 2:26](#); [2:46](#); [16:34](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [Acts 2:28](#); [3:20](#); [5:41](#); [6:15](#); [7:45](#); [13:24](#); [17:26](#); [20:25](#); [20:38](#); [25:16](#))

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

(Go back to: [Acts 3:16](#); [Notes](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [11:24](#); [13:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:22](#); [14:27](#); [15:9](#); [16:5](#); [20:21](#); [24:24](#); [26:18](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”



## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [Acts 10:45](#); [16:15](#); [Notes](#); [24:14](#))

## faithless, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

### Definition:

The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God. Their lack of belief is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [disobey](#), adultery)

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezra 9:1-2
- Jeremiah 2:19
- Proverbs 2:22
- Revelation 21:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G05710

(Go back to: [Acts 28:24](#))

## false prophet

### Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1-3
- 2 Peter 2:1
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 6:26
- Matthew 7:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G55780

(Go back to: [Acts 13:6](#))

## family, household

### Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 1:21
- Joshua 2:12-13
- Luke 2:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0251, H0272, H0504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G10850, G36140, G36240, G39650

(Go back to: [Acts 7:13](#))

## famine

### Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [Acts 7:11](#); [11:28](#))

## fast, fasting

### Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 3:4-5
- Luke 5:34
- Mark 2:19
- Matthew 6:18
- Matthew 9:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:8** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G35210, G35220

(Go back to: [Acts 13:2](#); [13:3](#); [14:23](#); [27:9](#))

## favor, favorable, favoritism

### Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

(Go back to: [Acts 2:47](#); [7:10](#); [7:46](#); [24:27](#); [Notes](#); [25:3](#); [25:9](#))

## fear, afraid, frighten

### Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect," or "deep respect;" "revere," or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, Yahweh, [Lord](#), [marvel](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [Acts 2:43](#); [5:5](#); [5:11](#); [5:26](#); [9:26](#); [9:31](#); [10:2](#); [10:4](#); [10:22](#); [10:35](#); [13:16](#); [13:26](#); [16:38](#); [18:9](#); [19:17](#); [22:29](#); [23:10](#); [27:17](#); [27:24](#); [27:29](#))



## fellowship

### Definition:

In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “fellowship” could include “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- Philippians 1:3-6
- Philippians 2:1
- Philippians 3:10
- Psalms 55:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2266, H8667, G28420, G28440, G33520, G47900

(Go back to: [Acts 2:42](#))

## filled with the Holy Spirit

### Definition:

The term “filled with the Holy Spirit” is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God’s will.

- The expression “filled with” is an expression that often means “controlled by.”
- People are “filled with the Holy Spirit” when they follow the Holy Spirit’s leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “empowered by the Holy Spirit” or “controlled by the Holy Spirit.” But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
- A sentence such as “he was filled with the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “he was living fully by the Spirit’s power” or “he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit” or “the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely.”
- This term is similar in meaning to the expression “live by the Spirit,” but “filled with the Holy Spirit” emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:31
- Acts 5:17
- Acts 6:8-9
- Luke 1:15
- Luke 1:39-41
- Luke 4:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G00400, G41300, G41370, G41510

(Go back to: [Acts 2:4](#); [4:8](#); [4:31](#); [7:55](#); [9:17](#); [11:24](#); [13:9](#); [13:52](#))

## fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [Acts 2:3](#); [2:19](#); [7:30](#); [28:2](#); [28:3](#); [28:5](#))

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [Acts 2:17](#); [2:26](#); [2:31](#))

## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

### Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: [goat](#), [cow](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [Acts 20:28](#); [20:29](#))

## footstool

### Definition:

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God’s will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God’s “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1916, H3534, H7272, G42280, G52860

(Go back to: [Acts 2:35](#); [7:49](#))

## foreknew, foreknowledge

### Definition:

The terms “foreknew” and “foreknowledge” come from the verb “foreknow” which means to know something before it happens.

- God is not limited by time. He knows everything that happens in the past, present, and future.
- This word is often used in the context of God knowing already who will be saved through receiving Jesus as Savior.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “foreknew” could also be translated as “knew before” or “knew ahead of time” or “knew beforehand” or “already knew.”
- The term “foreknowledge” could be translated as “knowing before” or “knowing ahead of time” or “already knowing” or “knowing in advance.”

(See also: [know](#), [predestine](#))

### Bible References:

- Romans 8:29
- Romans 11:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G42670, G42680

(Go back to: [Acts 2:23](#))

## **forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned**

### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.



- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

## Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

(Go back to: [Acts 2:38](#); [5:31](#); [8:22](#); [10:43](#); [13:38](#); [26:18](#))

## found, founder, foundation

### Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), create)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

(Go back to: [Acts 16:26](#))

## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [Acts 2:30](#); [14:17](#))

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [Acts 1:16](#); [3:18](#); [12:25](#); [13:25](#); [13:27](#); [13:33](#); [14:26](#); [19:21](#); [21:26](#))

## Galatia, Galatians

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Cilicia, and Pamphylia.
- The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called "Galatians."
- One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
- The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [believe](#), [Cilicia](#), [good news](#), [Paul](#), [works](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 2 Timothy 4:9-10
- Acts 16:6-8
- Galatians 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G10530, G10540

(Go back to: [Acts 16:6](#); [18:23](#))

## Galilee, Galilean

### Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), [Samaria](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 2:1-2
- John 4:3
- Luke 13:3
- Mark 3:7
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:13-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:10** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **39:6** Finally, the people said, "We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee.**"
- **41:6** Then the angel told the women, "Go and tell the disciples, 'Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.'"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1551, G10560, G10570

(Go back to: [Acts 1:11](#); [2:7](#); [5:37](#); [9:31](#); [10:37](#); [13:31](#))

## gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

The term "gate" refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A "bar" for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [Acts 3:2](#); [3:10](#); [9:24](#); [10:17](#); [12:10](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [14:13](#); [16:13](#))



## Gaza

### Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, [Philip](#), Philistines, [Ethiopia](#), Gath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:24-25
- Acts 8:26
- Genesis 10:19
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Judges 6:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G10480

(Go back to: [Acts 8:26](#))

## generation

### Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

### Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:7
- Mark 8:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G10740

(Go back to: [Acts 2:40](#); [8:33](#); [13:36](#); [14:16](#); [15:21](#))

## Gentile

### Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew."
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 2:16
- Luke 2:32
- Matthew 5:47
- Matthew 6:5-7
- Romans 11:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G14820, G14840, G16720

(Go back to: [Acts 4:25](#); [4:27](#); [9:15](#); [10:45](#); [11:1](#); [11:18](#); [13:46](#); [13:47](#); [13:48](#); [14:2](#); [14:5](#); [14:27](#); [15:3](#); [15:7](#); [15:12](#); [15:14](#); [15:17](#); [15:19](#); [15:23](#); [18:6](#); [21:11](#); [21:19](#); [21:21](#); [21:25](#); [22:21](#); [26:17](#); [26:20](#); [26:23](#); [28:28](#))

## gift

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1
- 2 Samuel 11:8
- Acts 8:20
- Acts 10:4
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 1:17
- John 4:9-10
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 8:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G03340, G13900, G13940, G14310, G14340, G14350, G33110, G54860

(Go back to: [Acts 2:38](#); [8:20](#); [10:45](#); [11:17](#))

## **gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around**

### **Definition:**

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: [loins](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

(Go back to: [Acts 12:8](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), [majesty](#), [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [4:21](#); [7:2](#); [7:55](#); [11:18](#); [12:23](#); [13:48](#); [21:20](#); [22:11](#))

## God

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12



- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: Acts 2:11; 2:17; 2:22; 2:23; 2:24; 2:30; 2:32; 2:33; 2:36; 2:39; 2:47; 3:8; 3:9; 3:13; 3:15; 3:18; 3:21; 3:22; 3:25; 3:26; 4:10; 4:19; 4:21; 4:24; 5:4; 5:29; 5:30; 5:31; 5:32; 5:39; 6:11; 7:2; 7:6; 7:7; 7:9; 7:17; 7:20; 7:25; 7:32; 7:35; 7:37; 7:42; 7:45; 7:46; 7:55; 7:56; 8:10; 8:20; 8:21; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:15; 10:22; 10:28; 10:31; 10:33; 10:34; 10:38; 10:40; 10:41; 10:42; 10:46; 11:9; 11:17; 11:18; 11:23; 12:5; 12:23; 13:16; 13:17; 13:21; 13:23; 13:26; 13:30; 13:33; 13:36; 13:37; 13:43; 14:15; 14:26; 14:27; 15:4; 15:7; 15:8; 15:10; 15:12; 15:14; 15:19; 16:10; 16:14; 16:17; 16:25; 16:34; 17:23; 17:24; 17:27; 17:29; 17:30; 18:7; 18:13; 18:21; 18:26; 19:11; 20:21; 20:24; 20:27; 20:28; 20:32; 21:19; 21:20; 22:3; 22:14; 23:1; 23:3; 23:4; 24:14; 24:15; 24:16; 26:6; 26:8; 26:18; 26:20; 26:22; 26:29; 27:23; 27:24; 27:25; 27:35; 28:15; 28:28)

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [1:7](#); [2:33](#); [3:13](#))

## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, [Molech](#), [demon](#), image, kingdom, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [Acts 7:40](#); [7:41](#); [7:43](#); [12:22](#); [Notes](#); [14:11](#); [15:20](#); [Notes](#); [19:26](#); [19:27](#); [19:37](#); [28:6](#))

## godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

### Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [nominaladj](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:9
- Acts 3:12
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 1 Timothy 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 4:18
- Jude 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G05160, G07630, G07640, G07650, G21240, G21500, G21520, G21530, G23160, G23170

(Go back to: [Acts 3:12](#))

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [Acts 3:6](#); [17:29](#); [20:33](#))



## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: kingdom, [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G20970, G20980, G42830

(Go back to: [Acts 5:42](#); [8:4](#); [8:12](#); [8:25](#); [8:35](#); [8:40](#); [10:36](#); [11:20](#); [13:32](#); [14:7](#); [14:15](#); [14:21](#); [15:7](#); [15:35](#); [16:10](#); [17:18](#); [20:24](#))

## good, right, pleasant, better, best

### Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), prosper, [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [Acts 4:9](#); [6:3](#); [9:36](#); [10:38](#); [11:24](#); [14:17](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [15:29](#); [23:1](#))

## **govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha**

### **Definition:**

A “governor” is a person who rules over a large area of land (such as a territory, region, or province) within a nation or empire.

- In the Old Testament, the term “Tirshatha” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Persian province.
- In the New Testament, the term “proconsul” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or “supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), [province](#), [Rome](#), [ruler](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G04450, G04460, G07460, G14810, G22320, G22330, G22300, G42320

(Go back to: [Acts 7:10](#); [23:24](#); [23:26](#); [23:33](#); [24:1](#); [24:10](#); [26:30](#))

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

(Go back to: [Acts 4:33](#); [6:8](#); [11:23](#); [13:43](#); [Notes](#); [14:26](#); [15:11](#); [15:40](#); [18:27](#); [20:24](#); [20:32](#))

## grain, grainfields

### Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

(Go back to: [Acts 7:12](#))

## grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [Acts 2:29](#); [7:16](#); [13:29](#))



## Greece, Grecian

### Facts:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called “Greeks” and their language is “Greek.” People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term “Greek” is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Corinth](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Hebrew](#), [Philippi](#), [Thessalonica](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 8:21
- Daniel 10:20-21
- Daniel 11:1-2
- Zechariah 9:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3120, G16710

(Go back to: [Acts 20:2](#))

## Greek, Grecian, Hellenist

### Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The adjective "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" or "Hellenists" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic. The term "Hellenists" comes from the pronunciation of the Greek word for a Greek-speaker.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Gentile](#), [Greece](#), [Hebrew](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:1
- Acts 9:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 3:11
- Galatians 2:3-5
- John 7:35

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G16720, G16730, G16740, G16750, G16760

(Go back to: [Acts 6:1](#); [9:29](#); [11:20](#); [14:1](#); [16:1](#); [16:3](#); [17:4](#); [17:12](#); [18:4](#); [19:10](#); [19:17](#); [20:21](#); [21:28](#); [21:37](#))

## groan

### Definition:

The term to “groan” refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate “groan” could include, “give a low cry of pain” or “grieve deeply.”
- As a noun, this could be translated as “a low cry of distress” or “a deep murmur of pain.”

(See also: [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:2
- Hebrews 13:17
- Job 23:2
- Psalms 32:3-4
- Psalms 102:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0584, H0585, H0602, H0603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G47260, G47270, G49590

(Go back to: [Acts 7:34](#))

## Hades, Sheol

### Definition:

The terms "Hades" (in Greek) and "Sheol" (in Hebrew) are proper names for the place where the spirits of dead people would go after they had died.

- In these ancient cultures, people thought of this as an underground dwelling place where the spirits of dead people existed in a shadowy, semi-conscious form.
- Although these terms are place names, in the Bible they often mean the same thing as "death" or "the grave."
- Throughout most of biblical history, "Sheol" and "Hades" refer to a neutral place where all of the dead go to await judgment, both the righteous and the unrighteous. In the New Testament, however, "Hades" begins to be seen as a place for only the unrighteous, in contrast with "Abraham's side" (Luke 16:22) or "paradise" (Luke 23:43), which describe the place for the righteous.

### Translation Suggestions

- Both "Sheol" and "Hades" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "place of the dead," "place for dead spirits," "the underworld," "the pit," "the grave," or "death."
- Some translations keep the proper names "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it. Examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), hell, [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:31
- Genesis 44:29
- Jonah 2:2
- Luke 10:15
- Luke 16:23
- Matthew 11:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Revelation 1:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G00860

(Go back to: [Acts 2:27](#); [2:31](#))

## hand

### Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [power](#), [right hand](#), [honor](#), [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: Acts 2:23; 3:7; 4:3; 4:28; 4:30; 5:12; 5:18; 6:6; 7:25; 7:35; 7:41; 7:50; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 9:8; 9:12; 9:17; 9:41; 11:21; 11:30; 12:1; 12:7; 12:11; 12:17; 13:3; 13:11; 13:16; 14:3; 15:23; 17:25; 19:6; 19:11; 19:26; 19:33; 20:34; 21:11; 21:27; 21:40; 23:19; 26:1; 28:3; 28:4; 28:8; 28:17)

## Haran

### Facts:

Haran was a younger brother of Abram and the father of Lot.

- Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
- A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Caleb](#), [Canaan](#), [Levite](#), [Lot](#), [Terah](#), [Ur](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:12
- Acts 7:1-3
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 27:43-45
- Genesis 28:10-11
- Genesis 29:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2039

(Go back to: [Acts 7:2](#); [7:4](#))

## hard, harden, hardness

### Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The use of “hard” (in various forms) with “heart” refers to people being stubbornly unrepentant or disobedient (usually) to God.
- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, [stiff-necked](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:7
- Exodus 14:4
- Hebrews 4:7
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G09170, G14190, G14210, G14220, G14230, G22050, G25320, G25530, G28720, G28730, G34250, G34330, G40530, G41830, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

(Go back to: [Acts 19:9](#); [26:14](#))



## head

### Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: [chief](#), [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [Acts 4:11](#); [18:6](#); [18:18](#); [21:24](#); [27:34](#))

## heart

### Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [Acts 2:26](#); [2:37](#); [2:46](#); [4:32](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [7:23](#); [7:39](#); [7:51](#); [7:54](#); [8:21](#); [8:22](#); [11:23](#); [13:22](#); [14:17](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [16:14](#); [21:13](#); [28:27](#))

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [Acts 1 General Notes](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [2:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:19](#); [2:34](#); [3:21](#); [4:12](#); [4:24](#); [7:42](#); [7:49](#); [7:55](#); [7:56](#); [9:3](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [10:16](#); [11:5](#); [11:6](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [14:15](#); [14:17](#); [17:24](#); [22:6](#); [26:13](#); [26:19](#))

## Hebrew

### Facts:

The term “Hebrew” refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word “Hebrew” can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called “Hebrew.” However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term “Hebrew” probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Israelites” or “Jews.” When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 5:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 1:8-10
- Philippians 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

(Go back to: [Acts 6:1](#); [21:40](#); [22:2](#); [26:14](#))

## Herod, Herod Antipas

### Facts:

During most of Jesus' lifetime, Herod Antipas was the ruler of the part of the Roman Empire that included Galilee province.

- Like his father Herod the Great, Antipas was sometimes referred to as "King Herod" even though he was not really a king.
- Herod Antipas ruled about one-fourth of the provinces of Israel, so he was also called "Herod the tetrarch." "Tetrarch" was a title for a person who ruled one-fourth of a country.
- Antipas is the "Herod" who gave the order for John the Baptist to be killed by beheading.
- It was also Herod Antipas who questioned Jesus before his crucifixion.
- The other Herods in the New Testament were Antipas' son (Agrippa) and grandson (Agrippa 2) who ruled during the time of the apostles.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [Herod the Great](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [king](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 3:1-2
- Luke 3:20
- Luke 9:9
- Luke 13:32
- Luke 23:9
- Mark 6:20
- Matthew 14:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G22640, G22650, G22670

(Go back to: [Acts 4:27](#); [12:1](#); [12:6](#); [12:11](#); [12:19](#); [12:21](#); [13:1](#); [23:35](#))

## high priest, chief priests

### Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: [Annas](#), [Caiaphas](#), [priest](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:27
- Acts 7:1
- Acts 9:1
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 3:2
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:8** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:7** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:1** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:3** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.

- **45:2** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:1** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G07480, G07490

(Go back to: [Acts 4:6](#); [4:23](#); [5:17](#); [5:21](#); [5:24](#); [5:27](#); [7:1](#); [9:1](#); [9:14](#); [9:21](#); [19:14](#); [22:5](#); [22:30](#); [23:2](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#); [23:14](#); [24:1](#); [25:2](#); [25:15](#); [26:10](#); [26:12](#))



# Holy One

## Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “the Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: [holy](#), [God](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 2 Kings 19:22
- Acts 2:27
- Acts 3:13-14
- Isaiah 5:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14
- Luke 4:33-34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H0376, H6918, G00400, G37410

(Go back to: [Acts 2:27](#); [13:35](#))

## holy place

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [bread](#), consecrate, courtyard, curtain, [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:16-18
- Acts 6:12-15
- Exodus 26:33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:1
- Ezra 9:8-9
- Hebrews 9:1-2
- Leviticus 16:18
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Revelation 15:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G00400, G00400, G34850, G51170

(Go back to: [Acts 6:13](#); [21:28](#))

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**”
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

(Go back to: Acts 1:2; 1:5; 1:8; 1:16; 2:4; 2:17; 2:18; 2:33; 2:38; 4:8; 4:25; 4:31; 5:3; 5:9; 5:32; 6:3; 6:5; 6:10; 7:51; 7:55; 8:15; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:29; 8:39; 9:17; 9:31; 10:19; 10:38; 10:44; 10:45; 10:47; 11:12; 11:15; 11:16; 11:24; 11:28; 13:2; 13:4; 13:9; 13:52; 15:8; 15:28; 16:6; 16:7; 19:2; 19:6; 19:21; 20:22; 20:23; 20:28; 21:4; 21:11; 28:25)

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [Acts 3:14](#); [3:21](#); [4:27](#); [4:30](#); [7:33](#); [10:22](#); [13:34](#); [Notes](#))

## honor

### Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](#), [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

(Go back to: [Acts 28:10](#))

## hope, hoped

### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated a, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [confidence](#), [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

(Go back to: [Acts 2:26](#); [16:19](#); [23:6](#); [24:15](#); [24:26](#); [26:6](#); [26:7](#); [27:20](#); [28:20](#))



## horseman

### Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), horse)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G24600

(Go back to: [Acts 23:23](#); [23:32](#))

# hour

## Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

## Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: [hour](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G56100

(Go back to: [Acts 16:18](#); [16:33](#); [22:13](#))

## hour, moment, immediately, for a while

### Definition:

The term "hour" is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean "time" or "moment."

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 AM). For example, "the ninth hour" meant "around three in the afternoon."
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 PM). For example, "the third hour of the night" meant "around nine in the evening" in our present-day system..
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as "around nine" or "about six o'clock" could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like "in the evening" or "in the morning" or "in the afternoon" to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, "in that hour" could be translated as "at that time" or "in that moment."
- Referring to Jesus, the expression "his hour had come" could be translated as "the time had come for him to" or "the appointed time for him had come."

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:15
- John 4:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8160, G56100

(Go back to: [Acts 2:15](#); [3:1](#); [5:7](#); [10:3](#); [10:9](#); [10:30](#); [19:34](#); [23:23](#))

## house, household

### Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshipped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [descendant](#), house of God, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [Acts 2:2](#); [2:36](#); [2:46](#); [4:34](#); [5:42](#); [7:20](#); [7:42](#); [7:46](#); [7:47](#); [7:49](#); [8:3](#); [9:11](#); [9:17](#); [10:6](#); [10:17](#); [10:22](#); [10:30](#); [10:32](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:13](#); [12:12](#); [16:15](#); [16:32](#); [17:5](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#); [19:16](#); [20:20](#); [21:8](#))

## household

### Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:10
- Galatians 6:10
- Genesis 7:1
- Genesis 34:19
- John 4:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 4:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G23220, G36090, G36140, G36150, G36160, G36230, G36240

(Go back to: [Acts 7:10](#); [10:2](#); [11:14](#); [16:15](#); [16:31](#); [16:34](#))

## humble, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

### Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

(Go back to: [Acts 20:19](#))

## Iconium

### Facts:

Iconium was a city in the south central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- On Paul's first missionary journey, he and Barnabas went to Iconium after the Jews forced them to leave the city of Antioch.
- Then the unbelieving Jews and Gentiles in Iconium also planned to stone Paul and his coworkers, but they escaped to the nearby city of Lystra.
- After that the people from both Antioch and Iconium came to Lystra and stirred up the people there to stone Paul.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [Lystra](#), [stone](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 3:10-13
- Acts 14:1
- Acts 14:19-20
- Acts 16:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24300

(Go back to: [Acts 13:51](#); [14:1](#); [14:19](#); [14:21](#); [16:2](#))

## in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

### Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:5
- 2 Corinthians 2:17
- 2 Timothy 1:1
- Galatians 1:22
- Galatians 2:17
- Philemon 1:6
- Revelation 1:10
- Romans 9:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G15190, G29620, G55470

(Go back to: [Acts 10:43](#); [19:4](#); [24:24](#))



## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), Promised Land, [possess](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

**(Go back to: [Acts 7:5](#); [13:19](#); [20:32](#); [26:18](#))**

## innocent

### Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

(Go back to: [Acts 20:26](#))

## **instruct, instruction, instructors**

### **Facts:**

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [teach](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Exodus 14:4
- Genesis 26:5
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 11:1
- Proverbs 1:30

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0241, H0376, H0559, H0631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G12560, G12990, G13190, G13210, G13780, G17810, G17850, G27270, G27530, G35590, G35600, G38110, G38520, G38530, G42640, G43670, G48220

(Go back to: [Acts 7:22; 22:3](#))

## Isaac

### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **6:5** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **7:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G24640

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [7:8](#); [7:32](#))

# Isaiah

## Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaz, Assyria, [Christ](#), Hezekiah, Jotham, Judah, [prophet](#), Uzziah)

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 1:1
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 1:1
- Mark 7:6
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 4:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:2** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:8** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G22680

(Go back to: [Acts 8:28](#); [8:30](#); [28:25](#))

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *\_Israel\_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave \_Israel\_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *\_Israel\_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: Acts 1:6; 2:22; 2:36; 3:12; 4:10; 4:27; 5:21; 5:31; 5:35; 7:23; 7:37; 7:42; 9:15; 10:36; 13:16; 13:17; 13:23; 13:24; 21:28; 28:20)



## it is written

### Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 9:12
- Matthew 4:6
- Revelation 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G11250

(Go back to: [Acts 1:20](#); [7:42](#); [13:29](#); [13:33](#); [15:15](#); [23:5](#); [24:14](#))

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, [deceive](#), Esau, [Isaac](#), Rebekah, Laban)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [7:8](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:32](#); [7:46](#))

## James (brother of Jesus)

### Facts:

James was a son of Mary and Joseph. He was one of Jesus' younger half-brothers.

- Jesus' other half-brothers were named Joseph, Judas, and Simon.
- During Jesus' lifetime, James and his brothers did not believe that Jesus was the Messiah.
- Later, after Jesus was raised from the dead, James believed in him and became a leader of the church in Jerusalem.
- The New Testament book of James is a letter that James wrote to Christians who had fled to other countries to escape persecution.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [church](#), [Judas the son of James](#), [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 2:9-10
- James 1:1-3
- Jude 1:1-2
- Mark 9:1-3
- Matthew 13:54-56

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G23850

(Go back to: [Acts 12:17](#); [15:13](#); [21:18](#))

## James (son of Alphaeus)

### Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
- He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- Luke 6:14-16
- Mark 3:17-19
- Mark 14:32-34
- Matthew 10:2-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G23850

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## James (son of Zebedee)

### Facts:

James, a son of Zebedee, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He had a younger brother named John who was also one of Jesus' apostles.

- James and his brother John worked by fishing with their father Zebedee.
- James and John were nicknamed the "Sons of Thunder," perhaps because they got angry quickly.
- Peter, James, and John were Jesus' closest disciples and were with him for amazing events such as when Jesus was on a mountaintop with Elijah and Moses and when Jesus caused a dead little girl to come back to life.
- This is a different James than the one who wrote a book in the Bible. Some languages may have to write their names differently to make it clear that they were two different men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Elijah](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Alphaeus\)](#), [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 9:28-29
- Mark 1:19-20
- Mark 1:29-31
- Mark 3:17
- Matthew 4:21-22
- Matthew 17:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G23850

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#); [12:2](#))

## jealous, jealousy

### Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 5:9
- Exodus 20:5
- Ezekiel 36:5
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 1:2-3
- Romans 13:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G22050, G38630

(Go back to: [Acts 5:17](#); [7:9](#); [13:45](#); [17:5](#))

## Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: Acts 1:4; 1:8; 1:12; 1:19; 2:5; 2:14; 4:5; 4:16; 5:16; 5:28; 6:7; 8:1; 8:14; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 9:2; 9:13; 9:21; 9:26; 9:28; 10:39; 11:2; 11:22; 11:27; 12:25; 13:13; 13:27; 13:31; 15:2; 15:4; 16:4; 19:21; 20:16; 20:22; 21:4; 21:11; 21:12; 21:13; 21:15; 21:17; 21:31; 22:5; 22:17; 22:18; 23:11; 24:11; 25:1; 25:3; 25:7; 25:9; 25:15; 25:20; 25:24; 26:4; 26:10; 26:20; 28:17)



## Jesse

### Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, [descendant](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 3:32
- Matthew 1:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G24210

(Go back to: [Acts 13:22](#))

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."

- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

(Go back to: Acts 1:1; 1:11; 1:14; 1:16; 1:21; 2:22; 2:32; 2:36; 2:38; 3:6; 3:13; 3:20; 4:2; 4:10; 4:13; 4:18; 4:27; 4:30; 4:33; 5:30; 5:40; 5:42; 6:14; 7:55; 7:59; 8:12; 8:16; 8:35; 9:5; 9:17; 9:20; 9:27; 9:34; 10:36; 10:38; 10:48; 11:17; 11:20; 13:23; 13:33; 15:11; 15:26; 16:18; 16:31; 17:3; 17:7; 17:18; 18:5; 18:25; 18:28; 19:4; 19:5; 19:13; 19:15; 19:17; 20:21; 20:24; 20:35; 21:13; 22:8; 24:24; 25:19; 26:9; 26:15; 28:23; 28:31)

## Jew, Jewish

### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:5
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 3:11
- John 2:14
- Matthew 28:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

(Go back to: [Acts 2:5](#); [2:11](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [10:22](#); [10:28](#); [10:39](#); [11:19](#); [12:3](#); [12:11](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#); [13:43](#); [13:45](#); [13:50](#); [14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:19](#); [16:1](#); [16:3](#); [16:20](#); [17:1](#); [17:5](#); [17:10](#); [17:13](#); [17:17](#); [18:2](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:12](#); [18:14](#); [18:19](#); [18:24](#); [18:28](#); [19:10](#); [19:13](#); [19:14](#); [19:17](#); [19:33](#); [19:34](#); [20:3](#); [20:19](#); [20:21](#); [21:11](#); [21:20](#); [21:21](#); [21:27](#); [21:39](#); [22:3](#); [22:12](#); [22:30](#); [23:12](#); [23:20](#); [23:27](#); [24:5](#); [24:9](#); [24:19](#); [24:24](#); [24:27](#); [25:2](#); [25:7](#); [25:8](#); [25:9](#); [25:10](#); [25:15](#); [25:24](#); [26:2](#); [26:3](#); [26:4](#); [26:7](#); [26:21](#); [28:17](#); [28:19](#))

## John (the apostle)

### Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [reveal](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), Zebedee)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 2:9-10
- John 1:19-21
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 4:21-22
- Revelation 1:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.
- **44:1** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.
- **44:6** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.
- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"
- **44:9** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24910

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:11](#); [4:13](#); [4:19](#); [8:14](#); [12:2](#))

## John (the Baptist)

### Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since “John” was a common name, he is often called “John the Baptist” to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called “John the Baptist” because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [baptize](#), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:11-13
- Luke 1:62-63
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 3:15-16
- Luke 7:27-28
- Matthew 3:13
- Matthew 11:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:2** The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!”
- **22:7** After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the angel had commanded.
- **24:1 John**, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to **John**. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by **John**. When **John** saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09100 G24910

(Go back to: [Acts 1:5](#); [1:22](#); [10:37](#); [11:16](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [18:25](#); [19:3](#); [19:4](#))

## John Mark

### Facts:

John Mark, also known as "Mark," was one of the men who traveled with Paul on his missionary journeys. He is most likely the author of the Gospel of Mark.

- John Mark accompanied his cousin Barnabas and Paul on their first missionary journey.
- When Peter was put in prison in Jerusalem, the believers there were praying for him at John Mark's mother's house.
- Mark was not an apostle, but was taught by both Paul and Peter and worked together with them in ministry.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [Paul](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Acts 12:24-25
- Acts 13:5
- Acts 13:13
- Acts 15:36-38
- Acts 15:39-41
- Colossians 4:10-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24910, G31380

(Go back to: [Acts 12:12](#); [12:25](#); [13:5](#); [13:13](#); [15:37](#); [15:39](#))

# Joppa

## Facts:

In biblical times, the city of Joppa was an important commercial seaport located on the Mediterranean Sea, south of the Plain of Sharon.

- The ancient site of Joppa was located in the same place as the present-day city of Jaffa, which has now become incorporated into the city of Tel Aviv.
- In the Old Testament, Joppa was the city where Jonah got on a boat that was going to Tarshish.
- In the New Testament, a Christian woman named Tabitha died in Joppa, and Peter raised her back to life.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [the sea](#), [Jerusalem](#), Sharon, Tarshish)

## Bible References:

- Acts 9:37
- Acts 10:8
- Acts 11:4-6
- Acts 11:11
- Jonah 1:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3305, G24450

(Go back to: [Acts 9:36](#); [9:38](#); [9:42](#); [9:43](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [10:23](#); [10:32](#); [11:5](#); [11:13](#))



## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Ephraim, Manasseh, [Jacob](#), Rachel)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

(Go back to: [Acts 7:9](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:18](#))

# Joshua

## Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Haggai, Jericho, [Moses](#), Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 7:25-27
- Deuteronomy 3:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 1:3
- Numbers 27:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:8** "Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G24240

(Go back to: [Acts 7:45](#))

## joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

### Definition:

#### joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [Acts 2:28](#); [5:41](#); [8:8](#); [8:39](#); [11:23](#); [12:14](#); [13:48](#); [13:52](#); [15:3](#); [15:31](#))

## Judas Iscariot

### Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- One of the other apostles of Jesus was Judas son of James. He was not the same person as Judas Iscariot.
- One of Jesus' brothers was named Judas. He was later known as "Jude." He was not the same person as Judas Iscariot.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [betray](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Judas the son of James](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 6:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 3:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **38:2** One of Jesus' disciples was a man named **Judas**. ... After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, **Judas** went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid **Judas** thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **38:14** **Judas** came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were all carrying swords and clubs. **Judas** came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, teacher," and kissed him.
- **39:8** Meanwhile, **Judas**, the betrayer, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24550, G24690

(Go back to: [Acts 1:16](#); [1:25](#))

## Judas son of James

### Facts:

Judas son of James was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. Note that he was not the same man as Judas Iscariot.

- Often in the Bible, men with the same name were distinguished by mentioning whose son they were. Here, Judas was identified as the "son of James."
- Another man named Judas was Jesus' brother. He was also known as "Jude."
- The New Testament book called "Jude" was probably written by Jesus' brother Judas, since the author identified himself as the "brother of James." James was another brother of Jesus.
- It is also possible that the book of Jude was written by Jesus' disciple, Judas, the son of James.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Judas Iscariot, son, the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- Luke 6:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24550

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## Judea, Judah

### Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Galilee](#), Edom, Judah, Judah, [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

(Go back to: [Acts 1:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:14](#); [8:1](#); [9:31](#); [10:37](#); [11:1](#); [11:29](#); [12:19](#); [15:1](#); [21:10](#); [26:20](#); [28:21](#))

# judge

## Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [judge](#), [law](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:8
- Acts 7:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 5:25
- Ruth 1:1

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G03500, G12520, G13480, G29190, G29220, G29230

(Go back to: [Acts 7:27](#); [7:35](#); [10:42](#); [13:20](#); [18:15](#); [24:10](#))



## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [4:19](#); [7:7](#); [13:46](#); [15:19](#); [16:4](#); [16:15](#); [17:31](#); [21:25](#); [23:3](#); [23:6](#); [24:21](#); [24:25](#); [25:9](#); [25:10](#); [25:15](#); [25:20](#); [26:6](#); [26:8](#))

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [Acts 8:33](#); [13:38](#); [13:39](#); [28:4](#))

## kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman

### Definition:

The term “kin” refers to a person’s blood relatives, considered as a group. The word “kinsman” refers specifically to a male relative.

- “Kin” can only refer to a person’s close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a “kinsman-redeemer.”
- This term “kin” could also be translated as “relative” or “family member.”

### Bible References:

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 2:20
- Ruth 3:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H1350, H4129, H4130, H7138, H7607, G47730

(Go back to: [Acts 7:3](#); [7:14](#); [10:24](#))

## king, kingship

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [Acts 4:26](#); [7:10](#); [7:18](#); [9:15](#); [12:1](#); [12:20](#); [13:21](#); [13:22](#); [17:7](#); [25:13](#); [25:14](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#); [26:2](#); [26:7](#); [26:13](#); [26:19](#); [26:26](#); [26:27](#); [26:30](#))

## kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- **29:2** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”

- **34:3** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:4** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:5** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G09320, G23160, G37720

(Go back to: [Acts 1:3](#); [1:6](#); [8:12](#); [14:22](#); [19:8](#); [20:25](#); [28:23](#); [28:31](#))



# kiss

## Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G27050, G53680, G53700

(Go back to: [Acts 20:37](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: Acts 1:7; 2:22; 2:28; 2:30; 2:36; 3:10; 3:16; 3:17; 4:10; 5:7; 7:13; 7:18; 7:40; 9:24; 9:30; 9:42; 10:28; 10:37; 12:9; 12:11; 12:14; 13:27; 13:38; 15:7; 15:18; 16:3; 17:13; 17:19; 17:20; 17:23; 18:25; 19:15; 19:17; 19:25; 19:32; 19:35; 20:18; 20:22; 20:25; 20:29; 20:34; 21:24; 21:34; 21:37; 22:14; 22:19; 22:24; 22:30; 23:5; 23:6; 23:28; 24:10; 24:11; 24:22; 25:10; 26:4; 26:5; 26:27; 28:22; 28:28)

## labor, laborer, work, hard work

### Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:9
- 1 Thessalonians 3:5
- Galatians 4:10-11
- James 5:4
- John 4:38
- Luke 10:2
- Matthew 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G00750, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730, G48660, G49040

(Go back to: [Acts 10:35](#); [13:41](#); [18:3](#); [19:25](#); [20:35](#))

## **lamb, Lamb of God**

### **Definition:**

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7716, G07210, G23160

(Go back to: [Acts 8:32](#))

## **lament, lamentation**

### **Definition:**

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to “lament” could be translated as to “deeply mourn” or to “wail in grief” or to “be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

### **Bible References:**

- Amos 8:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:18
- Job 27:15-17
- Lamentations 2:5
- Lamentations 2:8
- Micah 2:4
- Psalm 102:1-2
- Zechariah 11:2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0056, H0421, H0578, H0592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G23540, G23550, G28700, G28750

(Go back to: [Acts 8:2](#))

# lamp

## Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [light](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 8:16-18
- Matthew 5:15
- Matthew 6:22
- Matthew 25:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G29850, G30880

(Go back to: [Acts 20:8](#))



## last day, latter days

### Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [judge](#), [turn](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 1:2
- Isaiah 2:2
- James 5:3
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 4:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H3117, G20780, G22500

(Go back to: [Acts 2 General Notes; 2:17](#))

## law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

### Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, [lawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [Acts 6:13](#); [7:53](#); [Notes](#); [13:15](#); [13:38](#); [15:5](#); [18:13](#); [18:15](#); [21:20](#); [21:24](#); [21:28](#); [22:3](#); [22:12](#); [23:3](#); [23:29](#); [24:14](#); [25:8](#); [28:23](#))

## lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

### Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term “unlawful” is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term “unlawful” should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God’s law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, [law](#), [Moses](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- Matthew 7:21-23

- Matthew 12:2
- Matthew 12:4
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 3:4
- Luke 6:2
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3
- Titus 2:14
- 1 John 3:4-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G01110, G01130, G02660, G04580, G04590, G18320, G35450

(Go back to: [Acts 2:23](#))

## Levi, Levite

### Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [Jacob](#), [Leah](#), [Matthew](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#))

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [Acts 1:3](#); [2:28](#); [3:15](#); [7:38](#); [8:33](#); [9:41](#); [10:42](#); [11:18](#); [13:46](#); [13:48](#); [14:15](#); [17:25](#); [17:28](#); [20:10](#); [20:12](#); [20:24](#); [22:22](#); [25:19](#); [25:24](#); [26:5](#); [27:10](#); [27:22](#); [28:4](#))



## light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten

### Definition:

The term “light” is used figuratively in various ways in the Bible. Light is often used as a metaphor for wisdom, life, righteousness, truth, or happiness.

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [wisdom](#), [life](#), [righteous](#), [true](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 John 2:8
- 2 Corinthians 4:6
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 2:5
- John 1:5
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 6:23
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0216, H0217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G06810, G07960, G16450, G29850, G30880, G53380, G54570, G54580, G54600, G54620

(Go back to: [Acts 9:3](#); [12:7](#); [13:47](#); [16:29](#); [22:6](#); [22:9](#); [22:11](#); [26:13](#); [26:18](#); [26:23](#))

## like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder." (See: [Simile](#))
- To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
- The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
- The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
- The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), image of God, image, [perish](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G15030, G15040, G25090, G25310, G25960, G36640, G36650, G36660, G36670, G36680, G36690, G36970, G48330, G51080, G56130, G56150, G56160, G56180, G56190

(Go back to: [Acts 2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:15](#); [2:22](#); [3:12](#); [3:17](#); [3:22](#); [6:15](#); [7:37](#); [7:42](#); [7:44](#); [7:48](#); [7:51](#); [8:32](#); [9:18](#); [10:11](#); [10:47](#); [11:5](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [11:29](#); [13:33](#); [14:11](#); [15:8](#); [15:15](#); [17:28](#); [17:29](#); [22:3](#); [23:15](#); [23:20](#); [25:10](#); [26:29](#); [27:30](#); [28:19](#))

## loins, waist

### Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](#), [gird](#), [children](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- 2 Chronicles 6:9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G37510

(Go back to: [Acts 2:30](#))

## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: Acts 1:6; 1:21; 1:24; 2:20; 2:21; 2:25; 2:34; 2:36; 2:39; 2:47; 3:20; 3:22; 4:24; 4:26; 4:29; 4:33; 5:9; 5:14; 5:19; 7:31; 7:33; 7:49; 7:59; 7:60; 8:16; 8:22; 8:24; 8:26; 8:39; 9:1; 9:5; 9:10; 9:11; 9:13; 9:15; 9:17; 9:27; 9:28; 9:31; 9:35; 9:42; 10:4; 10:14; 10:33; 10:36; 11:8; 11:16; 11:17; 11:20; 11:21; 11:23; 11:24; 12:7; 12:11; 12:17; 12:23; 13:2; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:47; 14:3; 14:23; 15:11; 15:17; 15:26; 15:40; 16:14; 16:15; 16:16; 16:19; 16:30; 16:31; 17:24; 18:8; 18:9; 18:25; 19:5; 19:13; 19:17; 19:20; 20:19; 20:21; 20:24; 20:35; 21:13; 21:14; 22:8; 22:10; 22:19; 23:11; 25:26; 26:15; 28:31)

## lots, casting lots

### Definition:

In the Bible, a “lot” is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. “Casting lots” refers to the process of using “lots” to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the “lots”) were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the “lots” actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “throwing lots” or “rolling lots.” The translation of “cast” should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made “by lot,” this could be translated as “by casting lots” or “by throwing lots,” etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- Jonah 1:7
- Luke 1:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 22:18-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G28190, G29750

(Go back to: [Acts 1:26](#))

## Lystra

### Facts:

Lystra was a city in ancient Asia Minor that Paul visited on one of his missionary journeys. It was located in the region of Lycaonia, which is now in the modern-day country of Turkey.

- Paul and his companions escaped to Derbe and Lystra when they were threatened by the Jews in Iconium.
- In Lystra, Paul met Timothy, who became a fellow evangelist and church planter.
- After Paul healed a crippled man in Lystra, the people there tried to worship Paul and Barnabas as gods, but the apostles rebuked them and stopped them from doing that.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [evangelist](#), [Iconium](#), [Timothy](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 3:10-13
- Acts 14:6
- Acts 14:8
- Acts 14:21-22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G30820

(Go back to: [Acts 14:6](#); [14:8](#); [14:21](#); [16:1](#); [16:2](#))

## Macedonia

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

- Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
- Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
- Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
- In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), [Berea](#), [faith](#), [good news](#), [Greece](#), [Philippi](#), [Thessalonica](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- 1 Timothy 1:3-4
- Acts 16:10
- Acts 20:1-3
- Philippians 4:14-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G31090, G31100

(Go back to: [Acts 16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:12](#); [18:5](#); [19:21](#); [19:22](#); [19:29](#); [20:1](#); [20:3](#); [27:2](#))



## magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits

### Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: [divination](#), [Egypt](#), [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), [sorcery](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 41:8
- Genesis 41:22-24
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Genesis 44:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2748, H2749, H3049, G30970

(Go back to: [Acts 13:6](#); [13:8](#))

## magistrate

### Definition:

A magistrate is an appointed official who acts as a judge and decides matters of law.

- In Bible times, a magistrate also settled disputes between people.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “ruling judge” or “legal officer” or “city leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 16:20
- Acts 16:35
- Daniel 3:1-2
- Luke 12:58

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8200, H8614, G07580, G47550

(Go back to: [Acts 16:20](#); [16:22](#); [16:35](#); [16:36](#); [16:38](#))

## majesty

### Definition:

The term “majesty” or “majestic” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- Daniel 4:36
- Isaiah 2:10
- Jude 1:25
- Micah 5:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G31680, G31720

(Go back to: [Acts 19:27](#))

## Mary, the mother of Jesus

### Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cana, [Egypt](#), Herod the Great, [Jesus](#), Joseph (NT), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

### Bible References:

- John 2:4
- John 2:12
- Luke 1:29
- Luke 1:35
- Mark 6:3
- Matthew 1:16
- Matthew 1:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel appeared to Elizabeth's relative, whose name was **Mary**. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah."
- **22:5** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God." **Mary** believed and accepted what the angel said.
- **22:6** Soon after the angel spoke to **Mary**, she went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Elizabeth heard **Mary's** greeting, Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her.
- **23:2** The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take **Mary** as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit."
- **23:4** Joseph and **Mary** had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **49:1** An angel told a virgin named **Mary** that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G31370

(Go back to: [Acts 1:14](#))

## Matthew, Levi

### Facts:

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi, son of Alpheus.

- Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
- Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
- There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Levite](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- Luke 5:27
- Luke 6:14-16
- Mark 2:14
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 9:9
- Matthew 10:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G30170, G31560

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## Mede, Medes, Media

### Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called "Medes."

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Assyria, [Babylon](#), Cyrus, Daniel, Darius, [Elam](#), Persia)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:6
- Acts 2:9
- Daniel 5:28
- Esther 1:3-4
- Ezra 6:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G33700

(Go back to: [Acts 2:9](#))

## memorial, memorial offering

### Definition:

The term “memorial” refers to an action or object that causes someone or something to be remembered.

- This word is also used as an adjective to describe something that is to remind them of something, as in a “memorial offering,” a “memorial portion” of a sacrifice or “memorial stones.”
- In the Old Testament memorial offerings were made so the Israelites would remember what God had done for them.
- God told the Israelite priests to wear special clothing that had memorial stones. These stones had the names of the twelve tribes of Israel engraved on them. These were perhaps to remind them of God’s faithfulness to them.
- In the New Testament, God honored a man named Cornelius because of his charitable deeds for the poor. These deeds were said to be a “memorial” before God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “lasting reminder.”
- A “memorial stone” could be translated as a “stone to remind them (of something).”

### Bible References:

- Acts 10:4
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Isaiah 66:3
- Joshua 4:6-7
- Leviticus 23:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2142, H2146, G34220

(Go back to: [Acts 10:4](#))



## Mesopotamia, Aram Naharaim

### Facts:

Mesopotamia is the area of land between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers. Its location is in the region of the modern day country of Iraq.

- In the Old Testament, this region was called "Aram Naharaim."
- The word "Mesopotamia" means "between rivers." The phrase "Aram Naharaim" means "Aram of two rivers."
- Abraham lived in the Mesopotamian cities of Ur and Haran before moving on to the land of Canaan.
- Babylon was another important city in Mesopotamia.
- The region called "Chaldea" was also part of Mesopotamia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Babylon](#), [Chaldea](#), Euphrates River)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:9
- Acts 7:1-3
- Genesis 24:10-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0763, G33180

(Go back to: [Acts 2:9](#); [7:2](#))

## Midian, Midianite

### Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also [Arabia](#), [Egypt](#), [flock](#), Gideon, Jethro, [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:16
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:28
- Judges 7:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **16:4** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **16:11** The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!"
- **16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

(Go back to: [Acts 7:29](#))

## might, mighty, mighty works

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [Acts 18:24](#))

## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [Acts 2:22](#); [8:13](#); [19:11](#))

## mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

### Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:5** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

(Go back to: [Acts 2:13](#); [17:32](#))

## Molech, Moloch

### Facts:

Molech was the name of one of the false gods that the Canaanites worshiped. Other spellings are “Moloch” and “Molek.”

- People who worshiped Molech sacrificed their children to him by means of fire.
- Some of the Israelites also worshiped Molech instead of the one true God, Yahweh. They followed the evil practices of Molech worshipers, including sacrificing their children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [evil](#), [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), [sacrifice](#), [true](#), [worship](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:7
- 2 Kings 23:10
- Acts 7:43
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Leviticus 18:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4432, G34340

(Go back to: [Acts 7:43](#))

## month, monthly

### Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

(Go back to: [Acts 7:20](#); [18:11](#); [19:8](#); [20:3](#); [28:11](#))



## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [Acts 3:22](#); [6:11](#); [6:14](#); [7:20](#); [7:22](#); [7:29](#); [7:31](#); [7:32](#); [7:35](#); [7:37](#); [7:40](#); [7:44](#); [15:1](#); [15:21](#); [21:21](#); [26:22](#))

## Most High

### Facts:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 4:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 7:1-3
- Hosea 7:16
- Lamentations 3:35
- Luke 1:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5945, G53100

(Go back to: [Acts 7:48](#); [16:17](#))

## Mount of Olives

### Definition:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

- In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as “the mountain that is east of Jerusalem.”
- The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
- Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
- This could also be translated as “Olive Hill” or “Olive Tree Mountain.”

(See also: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Gethsemane, [olive](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 19:29
- Luke 19:37
- Mark 13:3
- Matthew 21:1-3
- Matthew 24:3-5
- Matthew 26:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H2132, G37350, G16360

(Go back to: [Acts 1:12](#))

## multiply, multiplied, multiplication

### Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

(Go back to: [Acts 6:1](#); [6:7](#); [7:17](#); [9:31](#); [12:24](#); [16:5](#))

## name

### Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [Acts 1:15](#); [2:21](#); [2:38](#); [3:6](#); [3:16](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [4:12](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:30](#); [5:1](#); [5:28](#); [5:34](#); [5:40](#); [5:41](#); [8:9](#); [8:12](#); [8:16](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:12](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:21](#); [9:27](#); [9:28](#); [9:33](#); [9:36](#); [10:1](#); [10:43](#); [10:48](#); [11:28](#); [12:13](#); [13:6](#); [13:8](#); [15:14](#); [15:17](#); [15:26](#); [16:1](#); [16:14](#); [16:18](#); [17:34](#); [18:2](#); [18:7](#); [18:15](#); [18:24](#); [19:5](#); [19:13](#); [19:17](#); [19:24](#); [20:9](#); [21:10](#); [21:13](#); [22:16](#); [26:9](#); [27:1](#); [28:7](#))

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [Acts 2:5](#); [7:7](#); [7:45](#); [8:9](#); [10:22](#); [10:35](#); [13:19](#); [14:16](#); [17:26](#); [24:2](#); [24:10](#); [24:17](#); [26:4](#); [28:19](#))

## Nazareth, Nazarene

### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it takes about three to five days to travel there on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as “the Nazarene.”
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus’ teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareth’s synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 1:43-45
- Luke 1:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 2:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:4** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in **Nazareth** to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of **Nazareth** where he had lived during his childhood.
- **26:7** The people of **Nazareth** dragged Jesus out of the place of worship and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G34780, G34790, G34800

(Go back to: [Acts 2:22](#); [3:6](#); [4:10](#); [6:14](#); [10:38](#); [22:8](#); [24:5](#); [26:9](#))



## neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), parable, [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26-28
- Ephesians 4:25-27
- Galatians 5:14
- James 2:8
- John 9:8-9
- Luke 1:58
- Matthew 5:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G10690, G20870, G40400, G41390

(Go back to: [Acts 7:27](#))

## oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(Go back to: [Acts 2:30](#))

## obey, keep

### Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in "do not steal." In this case, to "obey" means not to steal. In the Bible, often the term "keep" means "to obey."

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [disobey](#), kingdom, law)

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:32
- Acts 6:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 1:25
- James 2:10
- Luke 6:47
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **5:6** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **5:10** "Because you (Abraham) have *\_obeyed\_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **5:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:7** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G01910, G39800, G39820, G50830, G50840, G52180, G52190, G52550, G52920, G52930, G54420

(Go back to: [Acts 5:29](#); [5:32](#); [6:7](#); [7:39](#); [15:5](#); [16:4](#))

## olive

### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

(Go back to: [Acts 1:12](#))

## oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor, dominate

### Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:7
- Ecclesiastes 4:1
- Job 10:3
- Judges 2:18-19
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G26160, G26690

(Go back to: [Acts 7:24](#); [7:34](#); [10:38](#))

## ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

### Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to “ordain” could be translated as to “assign” or to “appoint” or to “command” or to “make a rule” or to “institute.”

(See also: [command](#), [covenant](#), decree, law, [law](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 3:3
- Psalms 111:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G12990, G25250, G42700, G42820

(Go back to: [Acts 7:53](#))

## ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), [ordain](#), statute)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Acts 16:4](#); [17:7](#))

## oversee, overseer, keeper

### Definition:

The term "oversee" refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people. In the Bible, often the term "keeper" means "overseer."

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his "flock."
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms "overseers," "elders," and "shepherds/pastors" are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

### Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be "supervisor" or "caretaker" or "manager."
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God's people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "spiritual supervisor" or "someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers" or "person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church."

(See also: [church](#), [elder](#), [pastor](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 3:2
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G19830, G19840, G19850

(Go back to: [Acts 20:28](#))



## palace, house

### Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, [high priest](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 5:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 45:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G08330, G09330, G42320

(Go back to: [Acts 23:35](#))

## partial, partiality

### Definition:

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: [favor](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 1:17
- Malachi 2:9
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 2:10-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5234, H6440, G09910, G15190, G29830, G42990, G43830

(Go back to: [Acts 10:34](#))

## Passover

### Facts:

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:1** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:4** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:9** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G39570

(Go back to: [Acts 12:4](#))

## patriarch

### Definition:

The term “patriarch” in the Bible refers to someone who was a founding ancestor of the Jewish people, particularly Abraham, Isaac, or Jacob.

- It also can refer to the twelve sons of Jacob who became the twelve patriarchs of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The term “patriarch” has a similar meaning to “forefather,” but more specifically refers to the most well-known male ancestral leaders of a people group.

(See also: [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Acts 7:6-8
- Acts 7:9
- Ezra 3:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H7218, G39660

(Go back to: [Acts 2:29](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#))

## Paul, Saul

### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [christian](#), [jewish leaders](#), [rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 8:3
- Acts 9:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 1:1
- Philemon 1:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:6** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:1** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:2** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:5** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:6** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:9** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:1** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul.**"
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G39720, G45690

(Go back to: Acts 7:58; 8:1; 8:3; 9:1; 9:4; 9:8; 9:11; 9:17; 9:22; 9:24; 11:25; 11:30; 12:25; 13:1; 13:2; 13:7; 13:9; 13:13; 13:16; 13:43; 13:45; 13:46; 13:50; 14:9; 14:11; 14:12; 14:14; 14:19; 15:2; 15:12; 15:22; 15:25; 15:35; 15:36; 15:38; 15:40; 16:3; 16:9; 16:14; 16:17; 16:18; 16:19; 16:25; 16:28; 16:29; 16:36; 16:37; 17:2; 17:4; 17:10; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 17:22; 17:33; 18:5; 18:9; 18:12; 18:14; 18:18; 19:1; 19:4; 19:6; 19:11; 19:13; 19:15; 19:21; 19:26; 19:29; 19:30; 20:1; 20:7; 20:9; 20:10; 20:13; 20:16; 20:37; 21:4; 21:11; 21:13; 21:18; 21:26; 21:29; 21:30; 21:32; 21:37; 21:39; 21:40; 22:7; 22:13; 22:25; 22:28; 22:30; 23:1; 23:3; 23:5; 23:6; 23:10; 23:12; 23:14; 23:16; 23:17; 23:18; 23:20; 23:24; 23:31; 23:33; 24:1; 24:10; 24:24; 24:26; 24:27; 25:2; 25:4; 25:6; 25:8; 25:9; 25:10; 25:14; 25:19; 25:21; 25:23; 26:1; 26:14; 26:24; 26:25; 26:28; 26:29; 27:1; 27:3; 27:9; 27:11; 27:21; 27:24; 27:31; 27:33; 27:43; 28:3; 28:8; 28:15; 28:16; 28:25)

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [Acts 7:26](#); [9:31](#); [10:36](#); [12:20](#); [15:33](#); [16:36](#); [24:2](#))



## Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

### Facts:

The “Festival of Weeks” was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as “Pentecost.”

- The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called “Pentecost” which has “fifty” as part of its meaning.
- The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
- In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: festival, firstfruits, harvest, [Holy Spirit](#), [raise](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 8:12-13
- Acts 2:1
- Acts 20:15-16
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Numbers 28:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2282, H7620, G40050

(Go back to: [Acts 2:1](#); [20:16](#))

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [Acts 7:34](#))

## people, people group

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: Acts 2:47; 3:9; 3:11; 3:12; 3:23; 4:1; 4:2; 4:8; 4:10; 4:17; 4:21; 4:25; 4:27; 5:12; 5:13; 5:20; 5:25; 5:26; 5:34; 6:8; 6:12; 7:17; 7:34; 10:2; 10:41; 10:42; 12:4; 12:11; 13:15; 13:17; 13:24; 13:31; 15:14; 19:4; 21:28; 21:30; 21:36; 21:39; 21:40; 23:5; 26:17; 26:23; 28:17; 28:26; 28:27)

## perfect, complete

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: blemish)

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

(Go back to: [Acts 20:24](#))

# perish

## Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

## Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(Go back to: [Acts 5:37](#); [13:41](#); [27:34](#))

## persecute

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: [Christian](#), [church](#), [oppress](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

(Go back to: [Acts 7:52](#); [8:1](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [13:50](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [26:11](#); [26:14](#); [26:15](#))

## **perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, dishonest, distortion**

### **Definition:**

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: corrupt, [deceive](#), [disobey](#), [evil](#), [turn](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 8:47
- 1 Samuel 20:30
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:2
- Psalms 101:4-6

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1942, H2015, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G12940

(Go back to: [Acts 2:40](#); [13:8](#); [13:10](#); [20:30](#))



## Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:25
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 3:16
- Matthew 4:18-20
- Matthew 8:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:9** Peter said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told Peter, "Come!"
- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and John with him.
- **38:9** Peter replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."
- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, Peter pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G27860, G40740, G46130

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#); [1:15](#); [2:14](#); [2:37](#); [2:38](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:6](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [4:8](#); [4:13](#); [4:19](#); [5:3](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:15](#); [5:29](#); [8:14](#); [8:20](#); [9:32](#); [9:34](#); [9:38](#); [9:39](#); [9:40](#); [10:5](#); [10:9](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [10:17](#); [10:18](#); [10:19](#); [10:21](#); [10:25](#); [10:26](#); [10:32](#); [10:34](#); [10:44](#); [10:45](#); [10:46](#); [11:2](#); [11:4](#); [11:7](#); [11:13](#); [12:3](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:11](#); [12:14](#); [12:16](#); [12:18](#); [15:7](#); [15:14](#))

## Pharaoh, king of Egypt

### Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 7:13
- Acts 7:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:7
- Genesis 41:25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **8:8 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **9:2** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **9:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** *that he is more powerful than* **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G53280

(Go back to: [Acts 7:10](#); [7:13](#); [7:21](#))

## Pharisee

### Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](#), Jewish leaders, [law](#), [Sadducee](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:4
- John 3:1-2
- Luke 11:44
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 5:20
- Matthew 9:11
- Matthew 12:2
- Matthew 12:38
- Philippians 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G53300

(Go back to: [Acts 5:34](#); [15:5](#); [23:6](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [26:5](#))

## Philip, the apostle

### Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

- Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
- Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
- At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
- Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Philip](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:14
- John 1:44
- John 6:6
- Luke 6:14
- Mark 3:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G53760

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## Philip, the evangelist

### Facts:

In the early Christian church in Jerusalem, Philip was one of seven leaders chosen to care for the poor and needy Christians, especially the widows.

- God used Philip to share the gospel with people in many different towns in the provinces of Judea and Galilee, including an Ethiopian man he met on the desert road to Gaza from Jerusalem.
- Years later Philip was living in Caesarea when Paul and his companions stayed at his house on their way back to Jerusalem.
- Most Bible scholars think that Philip the evangelist was not the same man as Jesus' apostle by that name. Some languages may prefer to use slightly different spellings for the names of these two men to make it clear they are different men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Philip](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:5-6
- Acts 8:6
- Acts 8:13
- Acts 8:31
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 8:40

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G53760

(Go back to: [Acts 6:5](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [8:26](#); [8:29](#); [8:30](#); [8:31](#); [8:34](#); [8:35](#); [8:38](#); [8:39](#); [8:40](#); [21:8](#))

## Philippi, Philippians

### Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece. People in Philippi were called Philippians.

- Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
- While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
- The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
- Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: [Caesarea](#), [Christian](#), [church](#), [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), [Silas](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:1-2
- Acts 16:11
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Philippians 1:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of **Philippi** to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave **Philippi**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G53740, G53750

(Go back to: [Acts 16:12](#); [20:6](#))

## Phoenicia, Syrophenician

### Facts:

In ancient times, Phoenicia was a wealthy nation located in Canaan along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel.

- Phoenicia occupied an area of land that was in the western region of what is the present-day country of Lebanon.
- In New Testament times, the capital of Phoenicia was Tyre. Another important Phoenician city was Sidon. Phoenicia was near Syria, so people from that area were called "Syrophenician."
- Phoenicians were well-known for their woodworking skills using their country's plentiful cedar trees, for their production of a costly purple dye, and for their ability to travel and trade by sea. They were also highly skilled boat builders.
- One of the earliest alphabets was created by the Phoenician people. Their alphabet was widely used because of their contact with many people groups through trading.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: cedar, [purple](#), [Sidon](#), [Tyre](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 15:3-4
- Acts 21:2
- Isaiah 23:10-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, G49490, G54030

(Go back to: [Acts 11:19](#); [15:3](#); [21:2](#))

## pierce, pierced

### Definition:

The term “pierce” means to stab something with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

- A soldier pierced Jesus’ side when he was hanging on the cross.
- In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
- Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.

(See also: cross, [Jesus](#), [servant](#), Simeon)

### Bible References:

- Job 16:13
- Job 20:23-25
- John 19:37
- Psalms 22:16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0935, H1856, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H4272, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G13300, G13380, G15740, G26600, G35720, G40440

(Go back to: [Acts 2:37](#))



## Pilate

### Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [governor](#), [guilt](#), [Judea](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:2
- Mark 15:2
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:9** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to **Pilate**, the Roman governor. They hoped that **Pilate** would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. **Pilate** asked Jesus, "Are you the King of the Jews?"
- **39:10** **Pilate** said, "What is truth?"
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, "I find no guilt in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" **Pilate** replied, "He is not guilty." But they shouted even louder. Then **Pilate** said a third time, "He is not guilty!"
- **39:12** **Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- **40:2** **Pilate** commanded that a sign be put above Jesus' head that read, "King of the Jews."
- **41:2** **Pilate** said, "Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G40910, G41940

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [4:27](#); [13:28](#))

## Pontus

### Facts:

Pontus was a Roman province during the time of the Roman Empire and the early Church. It was located along the southern coast of the Black Sea, in the northern part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- As recorded in the book of Acts, people from the province of Pontus were in Jerusalem when the Holy Spirit first came to the apostles on the Day of Pentecost.
- A believer named Aquila was from Pontus.
- When Peter was writing to Christians who were scattered into different regions, Pontus was one of the regions he mentioned.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aquila](#), [Pentecost](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- Acts 2:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G41930, G41950

(Go back to: [Acts 2:9](#); [18:2](#))

## possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#), [inherit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

(Go back to: [Acts 2:45](#); [3:6](#); [4:32](#); [4:37](#); [7:5](#); [7:45](#))

## power, powerful, powerfully

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [strength](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Colossians 1:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 1:25
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 3:21
- Psalm 80:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G14110, G14150, G17540, G17560, G18490, G18500, G21590, G24780, G24790, G29040, G31680

(Go back to: [Acts 1:8](#); [3:12](#); [4:7](#); [4:33](#); [6:8](#); [8:10](#); [10:38](#))

## praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(Go back to: [Acts 2:47](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: Acts 1:14; 1:24; 2:42; 3:1; 4:31; 6:4; 6:6; 8:15; 8:22; 8:24; 9:11; 9:40; 10:2; 10:4; 10:9; 10:30; 10:31; 11:5; 12:5; 12:12; 13:3; 14:23; 16:13; 16:16; 16:25; 20:36; 21:5; 22:17; 27:29; 28:8)



## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

(Go back to: [Acts 3:24](#); [4:2](#); [8:5](#); [9:20](#); [10:37](#); [10:42](#); [13:5](#); [13:24](#); [13:38](#); [15:21](#); [15:36](#); [16:17](#); [16:21](#); [17:3](#); [17:13](#); [17:23](#); [19:13](#); [20:25](#); [26:23](#); [28:31](#))

## precious, valuable, expensive, fine

### Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:1
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 1:7
- Luke 7:2-5
- Psalms 36:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H1431, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H8443, G09270, G17840, G24720, G41850, G41860, G50920, G50930

(Go back to: [Acts 20:24](#))

## **predestine, predestined**

### **Definition:**

The terms “predestine” and “predestined” refer to deciding or planning beforehand that something will happen.

- This term especially refers to God predestining people to receive eternal life.
- Sometimes the word “foreordain” is used, which also means to decide beforehand.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “predestine” could also be translated as “decide before” or “decide ahead of time.”
- The term “predestined” could be translated as “decided long ago” or “planned ahead of time” or “decided beforehand.”
- A phrase such as “predestined us” could be translated as “decided long ago that we” or “already decided ahead of time that we.”
- Note that the translation of this term should be different from the translation of the term “foreknew.”

(See also: [foreknew](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 2:6-7

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G43090

(Go back to: [Acts 4:28](#))

## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [Acts 4:1](#); [6:7](#); [14:13](#))

## prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [demon](#), [lord](#), [power](#), [ruler](#), [Satan](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [Acts 5:31](#))

## Priscilla, Prisca

### Facts:

Priscilla and her husband Aquila were Jewish Christians who worked with the apostle Paul in his missionary work.

- Priscilla and Aquila had left Rome because the emperor had forced the Christians to leave there.
- Paul met Aquila and Priscilla in Corinth. They were tentmakers and Paul joined them in this work.
- When Paul left Corinth to go to Syria, Priscilla and Aquila went with him.
- From Syria, the three of them went to Ephesus. When Paul left Ephesus, Priscilla and Aquila stayed behind and continued the work of preaching the gospel there.
- They especially taught a man named Apollos in Ephesus who believed in Jesus and was a gifted speaker and teacher.
- Priscilla's name is shortened to "Prisca" in Romans 16:3.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), [Christian](#), [Corinth](#), [Ephesus](#), [Paul](#), [Rome](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 2 Timothy 4:19-22
- Acts 18:1
- Acts 18:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G42520, G42510

(Go back to: [Acts 18:2](#); [18:18](#); [18:26](#))



## prison, prisoner, imprison

### Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:4
- Ephesians 4:1
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 6:17
- Matthew 5:26
- Matthew 14:3
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0612, H0613, H0615, H0616, H0631, H0953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G11980, G11990, G12000, G12010, G12020, G12100, G22520, G36120, G47880, G48690, G50840, G54380, G54390

(Go back to: [Acts 5:18](#); [5:19](#); [5:21](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#); [5:25](#); [8:3](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:17](#); [16:23](#); [16:24](#); [16:25](#); [16:26](#); [16:27](#); [16:37](#); [16:40](#); [22:4](#); [23:18](#); [24:27](#); [25:14](#); [25:27](#); [26:10](#); [27:1](#); [27:42](#); [28:17](#))

## profane, profaned

### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [holy](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:9
- Malachi 1:10-12
- Matthew 12:5
- Numbers 18:30-32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G09520, G09530

(Go back to: [Acts 24:6](#))

## profit, profitable, unprofitable

### Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: [worthy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

### Bible References:

- Job 15:3
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 2:8
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 6:63
- Mark 8:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 2:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G01470, G02550, G05120, G08880, G08890, G08900, G12810, G25850, G27700, G27710, G34080, G42970, G42980, G48510, G55390, G56220, G56230, G56240

(Go back to: [Acts 16:16](#); [16:19](#); [20:20](#))

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”<sup>⚡</sup>
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [2:33](#); [2:39](#); [7:5](#); [7:17](#); [13:23](#); [13:32](#); [23:21](#); [26:6](#))

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [false god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [Acts 2 General Notes](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [2:30](#); [3:18](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [3:24](#); [3:25](#); [7:37](#); [7:42](#); [7:48](#); [7:52](#); [8:28](#); [8:30](#); [8:34](#); [10:43](#); [11:27](#); [13:1](#); [13:15](#); [13:20](#); [13:27](#); [13:40](#); [15:15](#); [15:32](#); [19:6](#); [21:9](#); [21:10](#); [24:14](#); [26:22](#); [26:27](#); [28:23](#); [28:25](#))

## prostrate, bow down, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, **Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [Acts 7:43](#); [8:27](#); [10:25](#); [13:43](#); [13:50](#); [16:14](#); [17:4](#); [17:17](#); [17:23](#); [18:7](#); [18:13](#); [19:27](#); [24:11](#))

## province, provincial

### Definition:

The term “province” refers to a large area into which a nation or empire might be divided for the purposes of government. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: [Asia](#), [Egypt](#), Esther, [Galatia](#), [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), [Macedonia](#), [Medes](#), [Rome](#), [Samaria](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 19:30
- Daniel 3:2
- Daniel 6:2
- Ecclesiastes 2:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G18850

(Go back to: [Acts 23:34](#); [25:1](#))



## provoke, provoked, provocation

### Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G20420, G38630, G39470, G39490, G42920

(Go back to: [Acts 17:16](#))

## punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

### Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

**(Go back to: [Acts 4:21](#); [22:5](#); [26:11](#))**

## pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [Acts 21:24](#); [21:26](#))

# purple

## Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: ephod, [Philippi](#), [royal](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:13-14
- Daniel 5:7
- Daniel 5:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0710, H0711, H0713, G42090, G42100, G42110

(Go back to: [Acts 16:14](#))

# queen

## Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, [king](#). Persia [ruler](#), Sheba)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 8:27
- Esther 1:17
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G09380

(Go back to: [Acts 8:27](#))

## rage

### Facts:

The term “rage” refers to intense anger. Often, the term is used to describe an angry person who is out of control in some way.

- When used as a verb, the term “rage” can mean to move powerfully, such as in descriptions of a “raging” storm or ocean waves that “rage.”
- To be “filled with rage” means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: [self-control](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:25
- Daniel 3:13
- Luke 4:28
- Numbers 25:11
- Proverbs 19:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H1348, H1984, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3491, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7283, H7857, G16930, G28300, G37100, G54330

(Go back to: [Acts 4:25](#))

## raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

### Definition:

#### raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19



## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [Acts 1:15](#); [2:24](#); [2:32](#); [3:7](#); [3:15](#); [3:22](#); [3:26](#); [4:10](#); [5:6](#); [5:17](#); [5:30](#); [5:34](#); [5:36](#); [5:37](#); [6:9](#); [7:18](#); [7:37](#); [8:26](#); [8:27](#); [9:6](#); [9:8](#); [9:11](#); [9:18](#); [9:34](#); [9:39](#); [9:40](#); [9:41](#); [10:13](#); [10:20](#); [10:23](#); [10:26](#); [10:40](#); [10:41](#); [11:7](#); [11:28](#); [12:7](#); [13:16](#); [13:22](#); [13:30](#); [13:33](#); [13:34](#); [13:37](#); [14:10](#); [14:20](#); [15:7](#); [15:39](#); [17:3](#); [17:31](#); [20:30](#); [22:10](#); [22:16](#); [Notes](#); [23:9](#); [26:8](#); [26:16](#); [26:30](#))

## receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

(Go back to: Acts 1:8; 2:33; 2:38; 2:41; 3:5; 3:21; 7:38; 7:53; 7:59; 8:14; 8:15; 8:17; 8:19; 10:43; 10:47; 11:1; 16:21; 16:24; 17:7; 17:11; 17:15; 19:2; 20:24; 20:35; 21:17; 22:5; 22:18; 26:10; 26:18; 28:2; 28:7; 28:21)

## redeem, redeemer, redemption

### Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [Acts 7:35](#))

## reed

### Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), Nile River)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 7:24
- Matthew 11:7
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 68:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0098, H0100, H0260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G25630

(Go back to: [Acts 7:36](#))

## reject, rejected, rejection

### Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [disobey](#), [obey](#), [stiff-necked](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:12-14
- Hosea 4:6-7
- Isaiah 41:9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 7:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0947, H0959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G01140, G04830, G05500, G05790, G05800, G05930, G06830, G07200, G16090, G38680

(Go back to: [Acts 4:11](#); [7:27](#); [7:35](#); [7:39](#); [13:46](#))

## remnant

### Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

(Go back to: [Acts 15:17](#))

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410



(Go back to: [Acts 2:38](#); [Notes](#); [3:19](#); [5:31](#); [8:22](#); [11:18](#); [13:24](#); [17:30](#); [Notes](#); [19:4](#); [20:21](#); [26:20](#))

## report, reported, tell, reputation

### Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

(Go back to: [Acts 4:23](#); [5:22](#); [5:25](#); [11:13](#); [11:22](#); [12:14](#); [12:17](#); [15:27](#); [16:36](#); [16:38](#); [21:31](#); [22:26](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#); [23:22](#); [28:21](#))

## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [Acts 7:49](#); [24:23](#))

## restore, restoration

### Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [Acts 3:21](#))

## resurrection

### Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 3:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 5:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 3:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G03860, G14540, G18150

(Go back to: [Acts 1 General Notes](#); [1:22](#); [2:31](#); [4:2](#); [4:33](#); [17:18](#); [17:32](#); [23:6](#); [23:8](#); [24:15](#); [24:21](#); [26:23](#))

## return, turn back

### Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [Acts 1:12](#); [5:22](#); [8:25](#); [8:28](#); [12:25](#); [13:13](#); [13:34](#); [14:21](#); [15:16](#); [20:3](#); [21:6](#); [22:17](#); [23:32](#))

## reveal, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 3:5
- Galatians 1:12
- Lamentations 2:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 3:15
- Revelation 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0241, H1540, H1541, G06010, G06020, G55370

(Go back to: [Acts 4:16](#); [7:13](#); [23:30](#))

## reward, prize, deserve

### Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

(Go back to: [Acts 23 General Notes](#))



## right hand

### Definition:

The term “right hand” refers to the hand on the right side of a person’s body. In the Bible, the term is often used figuratively to refer to other body parts on a person’s right side, to the direction of a person’s right, to the direction south, or to a place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand can be used figuratively as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:33
- Colossians 3:1
- Galatians 2:9
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 2:3
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 44:3
- Revelation 2:1-2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G11880

(Go back to: [Acts 2:25](#); [2:33](#); [2:34](#); [5:31](#); [7:55](#); [7:56](#))

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), [unlawful](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [Acts 1:18](#); [3:14](#); [4:19](#); [7:52](#); [8:23](#); [10:22](#); [10:35](#); [Notes](#); [13:10](#); [17:31](#); [22:14](#); [24:15](#); [24:25](#); [Notes](#))

## Rome, Roman

### Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

- The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
- The term "Roman" referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
- The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
- The New Testament book of "Romans" is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: [good news](#), [the sea](#), [Pilate](#), [Paul](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 1:15-18
- Acts 22:25
- Acts 28:14
- John 11:48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:4** When the time was near for Mary to give birth, the **Roman** government told everyone to go for a census to the town where their ancestors had lived.
- **32:6** Then Jesus asked the demon, "What is your name?" He replied, "My name is Legion, because we are many." (A "legion" was a group of several thousand soldiers in the **Roman** army.)
- **39:9** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to the **Roman** governor, Pilate, hoping to have Jesus killed.
- **39:12** The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G45140, G45160

(Go back to: [Acts 2:10](#); [16:21](#); [16:37](#); [16:38](#); [18:2](#); [19:21](#); [22:25](#); [22:26](#); [22:27](#); [22:29](#); [23:11](#); [23:27](#); [25:16](#); [28:14](#); [28:16](#); [28:17](#))

## royal, royalty, king's, queen's

### Definition:

The term "royal" describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called "royal" include a king's (or queen's) position, clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called "royal robes." Often a king's robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a "royal priesthood." Other ways to translate this could include "priests who serve God the King" or "called to be priests for God the King."
- The term "royal" could also be translated as "kingly" or "belonging to a king."

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), robe)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:13
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Amos 7:13
- Genesis 49:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0643, H1921, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, G09330, G09340, G09370

(Go back to: [Acts 12:21](#))

## rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

(Go back to: [Acts 3:17](#); [4:5](#); [4:8](#); [4:26](#); [7:27](#); [7:35](#); [13:27](#); [14:5](#); [16:19](#); [23:5](#))

## run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

### Definition:

Literally the term “run” means “move very quickly on foot,” usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: \* To “run in such a way as to win the prize” refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. \* To “run in the path of your commands” means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands. \* To “run after other gods” means to persist in worshiping other gods. \* “I run to you to hide me” means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. \* Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as “flow.” The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border “is next to” the river or other country or by saying that the country “borders” the river or other country. \* Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.” \* The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”\*

(See also: [false god](#), persevere, refuge, [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:18
- Galatians 2:2
- Galatians 5:7
- Philippians 2:16
- Proverbs 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0213, H0386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G04130, G13770, G16010, G15300, G15320, G19980, G27010, G37290, G40630, G43700, G43900, G48900, G49360, G51430, G52400, G52950, G53430

(Go back to: [Acts 3:11](#); [7:29](#); [8:30](#); [12:14](#); [21:32](#); [27:16](#))



## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

(Go back to: [Acts 1:12](#); [13:14](#); [13:27](#); [13:42](#); [13:44](#); [15:21](#); [16:13](#); [17:2](#); [18:4](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), burnt offering, drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering, peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [Acts 7:41](#); [7:42](#); [14:13](#); [14:18](#); [21:26](#); [24:17](#))

## Sadducee

### Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

- Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
- The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
- The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
- Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: [chief priests](#), [council](#), [high priest](#), hypocrite, Jewish leaders, [Pharisee](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:3
- Acts 5:17-18
- Luke 20:27
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 16:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G45230

(Go back to: [Acts 4:1](#); [5:17](#); [23:6](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#))

## saint

### Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:10
- 2 Corinthians 9:12-15
- Revelation 16:6
- Revelation 20:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G00400

(Go back to: [Acts 9:13](#); [9:32](#); [9:41](#); [26:10](#))

## Samaria, Samaritan

### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:1-3
- Acts 8:5
- John 4:4-5
- Luke 9:51-53
- Luke 10:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:8** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:9** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G45400, G45410, G45420

(Go back to: [Acts 1:8](#); [8:1](#); [8:5](#); [8:9](#); [8:14](#); [8:25](#); [9:31](#); [15:3](#))

# Samuel

## Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hannah, [judge](#), [prophet](#), Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 1:19
- 1 Samuel 9:24
- 1 Samuel 12:17
- Acts 3:24
- Acts 13:20
- Hebrews 11:32-34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G45450

(Go back to: [Acts 3:24](#); [13:20](#))



## sanctify, sanctification

### Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, [holy](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Genesis 2:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 6:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G00370, G00380

(Go back to: [Acts 20:32](#); [26:18](#))

## sandal

### Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 1:27
- Joshua 5:15
- Mark 6:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G45470, G52660

(Go back to: [Acts 7:33](#); [12:8](#); [13:25](#))

## Satan, devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

(Go back to: [Acts 5:3](#); [10:38](#); [13:10](#); [26:18](#))

## Saul (OT)

### Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 9:1
- 2 Samuel 1:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 18:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:1 Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **17:4 Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **17:5** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G45490

(Go back to: [Acts 13:21](#))

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), [Savior](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [Acts 2:21](#); [2:40](#); [2:47](#); [4:12](#); [7:25](#); [11:14](#); [13:26](#); [13:47](#); [14:9](#); [15:1](#); [15:11](#); [16:17](#); [16:30](#); [16:31](#); [27:20](#); [27:31](#); [27:34](#); [27:43](#); [28:1](#); [28:4](#); [28:28](#))

## Savior, savior

### Facts:

The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the Old Testament, God appointed judges to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them. These judges are sometimes called “saviors.” The Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: [deliver](#), [Jesus](#), [save](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:10
- 2 Peter 2:20
- Acts 5:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 1:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3467, G49900

(Go back to: [Acts 5:31](#); [13:23](#))



## scribe

### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), [Pharisee](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:5
- Luke 7:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 1:22
- Mark 2:16
- Matthew 5:19-20
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G11220

(Go back to: [Acts 4:5](#); [6:12](#); [19:35](#); [23:9](#))

## sea of reeds, Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

### Facts:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 4:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:4** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the **Red Sea**.
- **12:5** Then God told Moses, "Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**."
- **13:1** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H5488, G20630, G22810

(Go back to: [Acts 7:36](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [children](#), [descendant](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [Acts 3:25](#); [13:23](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [Acts 9:11](#); [10:19](#); [10:21](#); [12:19](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [13:11](#); [15:17](#); [16:10](#); [17:5](#); [17:27](#); [19:39](#); [21:31](#); [27:30](#))

## seize, seizure, capture

### Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: [euphemism](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

(Go back to: [Acts 3:7](#); [5:18](#); [6:12](#); [12:4](#); [16:19](#); [18:17](#); [19:29](#); [21:30](#); [21:33](#); [23:10](#); [23:27](#); [24:6](#); [26:21](#))

## self-control, self-controlled

### Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 7:8-9
- 2 Peter 1:5-7
- 2 Timothy 3:1-4
- Galatians 5:23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4623, H7307, G01920, G01930, G14660, G14670, G14680, G49970

(Go back to: [Acts 24:25](#))

## send, sent, send out

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commissioned me.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#), [castout](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G07820, G03750, G06300, G06490, G06520, G06570, G10260, G10320, G15440, G15990, G18210, G33330, G33430, G39360, G39920, G43110, G43410, G43690, G48420, G48820

(Go back to: [Acts 3:20](#); [3:26](#); [5:21](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:34](#); [7:35](#); [8:14](#); [9:17](#); [9:30](#); [9:38](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [10:17](#); [10:20](#); [10:32](#); [10:33](#); [10:36](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:22](#); [11:29](#); [11:30](#); [12:11](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:15](#); [13:26](#); [15:3](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:27](#); [15:33](#); [16:35](#); [16:36](#); [17:10](#); [17:14](#); [19:22](#); [19:31](#); [20:17](#); [21:25](#); [22:21](#); [23:30](#); [25:25](#); [25:27](#); [26:17](#); [28:28](#))

## serpent, snake, viper

### Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [deceive](#), [disobey](#), Eden, [evil](#), prey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), tempt)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 3:3
- Genesis 3:4-6
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 23:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G21910, G20620, G37890

(Go back to: [Acts 28:3](#))



## **servant, serve, slave, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [Acts 2:18](#); [3:13](#); [3:26](#); [4:25](#); [4:27](#); [4:29](#); [4:30](#); [7:7](#); [7:42](#); [10:7](#); [12:13](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [20:19](#); [24:14](#); [26:7](#); [26:16](#); [27:23](#))

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [Acts 13:2](#))

## sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), prostitute, [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G16080, G42020, G42030

(Go back to: [Acts 15:20](#); [15:29](#); [21:25](#))

## shadow, overshadow, shade

### Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:9
- Genesis 19:8
- Isaiah 30:2
- Jeremiah 6:4
- Psalms 17:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G06440, G19820, G26830, G46390

(Go back to: [Acts 5:15](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, [accuse](#), rebuke, [false god](#), [humble](#), [Isaiah](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [Acts 8:33](#))

## Shechem

### Facts:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: Hamor)

(See also: [Canaan](#), Esau, Hamor, Hivite, [Jacob](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:14-16
- Genesis 12:6-7
- Genesis 33:19
- Genesis 37:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7928, H7930

(Go back to: [Acts 7:16](#))



## shepherd, herder, pastor

### Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: [sheep](#), livestock, pastor)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.

- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

(Go back to: [Acts 20:28](#))

## Sidon, Sidonians

### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Noah, [Phoenicia](#), the sea, [Tyre](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G46050, G46060

(Go back to: [Acts 12:20](#); [27:3](#))

## sign, proof, reminder

### Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
  - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
  - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [Acts 2:19](#); [2:22](#); [2:43](#); [4:16](#); [4:22](#); [4:30](#); [5:12](#); [6:8](#); [7:36](#); [8:6](#); [8:13](#); [14:3](#); [15:12](#); [17:31](#))

## Silas, Silvanus

### Facts:

Silas was a leader among the believers in Jerusalem.

- The elders of the church in Jerusalem appointed Silas to go with Paul and Barnabas to take a letter to the city of Antioch.
- Silas later traveled with Paul to other cities to teach people about Jesus.
- Paul and Silas were put in jail in the city of Philippi. They sang praises to God while they were there and God released them from the jail. The jailer became a Christian as a result of their testimony.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Antioch](#), [Barnabas](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Paul](#), [Philippi](#), [prison](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 1:1
- 2 Thessalonians 1:1
- Acts 15:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend **Silas** went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:2** She (Lydia) invited Paul and **Silas** to stay at her house, so they stayed with her and her family.
- **47:3** Paul and **Silas** often met with people at the place of prayer.
- **47:7** So the owners of the slave girl took Paul and **Silas** to the Roman authorities, who beat them and threw them into jail.
- **47:8** They put Paul and **Silas** in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet.
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and **Silas** and asked, "What must I do to be saved?"
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and **Silas** from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and **Silas** visited Lydia and some other friends and then left the city.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G46090, G46100

(Go back to: [Acts 15:22](#); [15:27](#); [15:32](#); [15:40](#); [16:19](#); [16:25](#); [16:29](#); [17:4](#); [17:10](#); [17:14](#); [17:15](#); [18:5](#))

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [Acts 3:6](#); [7:16](#); [8:20](#); [17:29](#); [19:19](#); [19:24](#); [20:33](#))

## Simon the Zealot

### Facts:

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

- Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
- Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
- The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
- Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- Luke 6:14-16
- Mark 3:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G22080, G25810, G46130

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))



## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebellious against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [Acts 2:38](#); [3:19](#); [5:31](#); [7:60](#); [10:43](#); [13:38](#); [22:16](#); [25:8](#); [26:18](#))

## Sinai, Horeb

### Facts:

Mount Sinai or Mount Horeb is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula, but the exact location of this mountain is not known.

- It is possible that “Horeb” was the actual name of the mountain and that “Mount Sinai” simply means “mountain of Sinai,” referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.
- It is also called the “mountain of God.”
- It was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- It was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.

(See also: [desert](#), Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 4:24
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 1:17-19
- 1 Kings 8:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 1:2
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Psalms 106:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:1** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**.
- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2722, H5514, G37350, G46140

(Go back to: [Acts 7:30](#); [7:38](#))

## sister

### Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother in Christ](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 1:2
- Romans 16:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0269, H1323, G00270, G00790

(Go back to: [Acts 23:16](#))

## slander, slanderers, revile, insult

### Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:13
- 1 Timothy 3:11
- 2 Corinthians 6:8-10
- Mark 7:20-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G09870, G09880, G12280, G14260, G26360, G26370, G30590, G30600

(Go back to: [Acts 18:6](#))

## slaughter, slaughtered

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slay](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(Go back to: [Acts 8:32](#))

## slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder

### Definition:

To “slay” a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has “slain” it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a “slaughter.”
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: [slaughter](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:23
- Isaiah 26:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2076, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G03370, G06150, G13150, G23800, G26950, G49680, G49690, G54070

(Go back to: [Acts 7:42](#))

## soldier, warrior

### Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: [courage](#), [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:5
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 3:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 8:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H0510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G46860, G47530, G47540, G47570, G47580, G49610

(Go back to: [Acts 10:7](#); [12:4](#); [12:6](#); [12:18](#); [21:32](#); [21:35](#); [23:10](#); [23:23](#); [23:27](#); [23:31](#); [27:31](#); [27:32](#); [27:42](#); [28:16](#))



## Solomon

### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 1:7-8
- Matthew 6:29
- Matthew 12:42

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:3** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:4** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G46720

(Go back to: [Acts 3:11](#); [5:12](#); [7:47](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [Son of God](#), sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: [Acts 2:17](#); [3:25](#); [4:36](#); [5:21](#); [7:16](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [7:29](#); [7:37](#); [9:15](#); [10:36](#); [13:10](#); [13:21](#); [13:26](#); [16:1](#); [19:14](#); [23:6](#); [23:16](#))

## Son of God, the Son

### Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [ancestor](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:9** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:5** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”

- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

(Go back to: [Acts 9:20](#); [13:33](#))

## Son of Man, son of man

### Definition:

The title "Son of Man" was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying "I" or "me."

- In the Bible, "son of man" could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean "human being."
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as "son of man." For example he said, "You, son of man, must prophesy."
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a "son of man" coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term "Son of Man" it could be translated as "the One who became a human being" or "the Man from heaven."
- Some translators occasionally include "I" or "me" with this title (as in "I, the Son of Man") to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, "son of man" could also be translated as "you, a human being" or "you, man" or "human being" or "man."

(See also: [heaven](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:56
- Daniel 7:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 3:12-13
- Luke 6:5
- Mark 2:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 80:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, H0606, H1121, H1247, G04440, G52070

(Go back to: [Acts 7:56](#))

## **sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician**

### **Definition:**

“Sorcery” or “witchcraft” refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A “sorcerer” is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms “sorcery” and “witchcraft” could also be translated as “evil spirit power” or “casting spells.”
- Possible ways to translated “sorcerer” could include “worker of magic” or “person who casts spells” or “person who does miracles using evil spirit power.”
- Note that “sorcery” has a different meaning than the term “divination,” which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, [demon](#), [divination](#), [false god](#), [magic](#), [sacrifice](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 8:9-11
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Revelation 9:20-21

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G30950, G30960, G30970, G53310, G53320, G53330

(Go back to: [Acts 8:9](#); [8:11](#); [19:19](#))

## soul, self, person

### Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

(Go back to: [Acts 2:27](#); [2:41](#); [2:43](#); [3:23](#); [4:32](#); [7:14](#); [14:2](#); [14:22](#); [15:24](#); [15:26](#); [27:37](#))



## spirit, wind, breath

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives."
- Sometimes this term can be translated as "wind" when referring to the simple movement of air or "breath" when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: [soul](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [demon](#), [breath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [Acts 7:59](#); [17:16](#); [18:25](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#))

## Stephen

### Facts:

Stephen is most remembered as the first Christian martyr, that is, the first person to be killed because of his faith in Jesus. The facts about his life and death are recorded in the book of Acts.

- Stephen was appointed by the early Church in Jerusalem to serve the Christians as a deacon by providing food for widows and other Christians in need.
- Certain Jews falsely accused Stephen of speaking against God and against the laws of Moses.
- Stephen boldly spoke the truth about Jesus the Messiah, beginning with the history of God's dealings with the people of Israel.
- The Jewish leaders were furious and executed Stephen by stoning him to death outside the city.
- His execution was witnessed by Saul of Tarsus, who later became the apostle Paul.
- Stephen is also well-known for his last words before he died, "Lord, please do not hold this sin against them," which showed the love he had for others.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [deacon](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Paul](#), [stone](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:5
- Acts 6:9
- Acts 6:10-11
- Acts 6:12
- Acts 7:59
- Acts 11:19
- Acts 22:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G47360

(Go back to: [Acts 6:5](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [7:59](#); [8:2](#); [11:19](#); [22:20](#))

## stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornness, hard of neck

### Definition:

The term “stiff-necked” is an idiom used in the Bible to describe people who keep disobeying God and refuse to repent. Such people are very proud and will not submit to God’s authority.

- Similarly, the term “stubborn” describes a person who refuses to change his mind or actions even when urged to do so. Stubborn people will not listen to good advice or warnings that other people give them.
- The Old Testament described the Israelites as “stiff-necked” because they did not listen to the many messages from God’s prophets who urged them to repent and turn back to Yahweh.
- If a neck is “stiff” it does not bend easily. The project language may have a different idiom that communicates that a person is “unbending” in that he refuses to change his ways.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “pridefully stubborn” or “arrogant and unyielding” or “refusing to change.”

(See also: arrogant, proud, [repent](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:51
- Deuteronomy 9:13-14
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Jeremiah 3:17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H3513, H5637, H6203, H6484, H7185, H7186, H7190, H8307, G04830, G46440, G46450

(Go back to: [Acts 7:51](#))

## stone, stoning

### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, [commit](#), [crime](#), [death](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 7:59-60
- Acts 14:5
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 8:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:6
- Matthew 23:37-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0068, H0069, H0810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G26420, G29910, G30340, G30350, G30360, G30370, G40740, G43480, G55860

(Go back to: [Acts 5:26](#); [7:58](#); [7:59](#); [14:5](#); [14:19](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,  
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

**(Go back to: [Acts 3:7](#); [3:16](#); [6:10](#); [9:19](#); [9:22](#); [14:22](#); [15:10](#); [15:32](#); [15:41](#); [16:5](#); [18:23](#); [19:20](#))**

## stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel

### Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. A “citadel” is a fortress inside a city. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [false god](#), refuge, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:4
- 2 Kings 8:10-12
- 2 Samuel 5:8-10
- Acts 21:35
- Habakkuk 1:10-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0553, H0759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6877, H7682, G37940, G39250

(Go back to: [Acts 21:34](#); [21:37](#); [22:24](#); [23:10](#); [23:16](#); [23:32](#))



## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:4** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

(Go back to: [Acts 1:3](#); [3:18](#); [5:41](#); [9:16](#); [17:3](#); [26:23](#); [28:5](#))

## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [Acts 12:2](#); [16:27](#))

## synagogue

### Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jew](#), [pray](#), [temple](#), [word of God](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:9
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 6:59
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 6:1-2
- Matthew 9:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G06560, G07520, G48640

(Go back to: [Acts 6:9](#); [9:2](#); [9:20](#); [13:5](#); [13:14](#); [13:43](#); [14:1](#); [15:21](#); [17:1](#); [17:10](#); [17:17](#); [18:4](#); [18:7](#); [18:19](#); [18:26](#); [19:8](#); [22:19](#); [24:12](#); [26:11](#))

## Syria, Ashur

### Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [commander](#), [Damascus](#), [descendant](#), Elisha, leprosy, Naaman, [persecute](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:23
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 20:3
- Galatians 1:21-24
- Matthew 4:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0758, H0804, G49470, G49480

(Go back to: [Acts 15:23](#); [15:41](#); [18:18](#); [20:3](#); [21:3](#))

# tabernacle

## Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [temple](#), tent of meeting)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

(Go back to: [Acts 7:43](#); [7:44](#); [15:16](#))

## Tarsus

### Facts:

Tarsus was a prosperous city in the Roman province of Cilicia, in what is now south central Turkey.

- Tarsus was located along a major river and near the Mediterranean Sea, so it was part of an important trade route.
- At one time it was the capital of Cilicia.
- In the New Testament, Tarsus was best known as the hometown of Paul the apostle.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cilicia](#), [Paul](#), [province](#), [the sea](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:11
- Acts 9:30
- Acts 11:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G50180, G50190

(Go back to: [Acts 9:11](#); [9:30](#); [11:25](#); [21:39](#); [22:3](#))

## teach, teaching, untaught

### Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- John 7:14
- Luke 4:31
- Matthew 4:23
- Psalms 32:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G13170, G13210, G13220, G20850, G26050, G27270, G31000, G23120, G25670, G38110, G49940

(Go back to: [Acts 1:1](#); [2:42](#); [4:2](#); [4:18](#); [5:21](#); [5:25](#); [5:28](#); [5:42](#); [11:26](#); [13:12](#); [15:1](#); [15:35](#); [17:19](#); [18:11](#); [18:25](#); [20:20](#); [21:21](#); [21:28](#); [28:31](#))



## teacher, Teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:12-15
- Ephesians 4:11-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Habakkuk 2:18
- James 3:2
- John 1:37-39
- Luke 6:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:1** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:2** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **49:3** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G13200, G25670, G35470, G55720

(Go back to: [Acts 5:34](#); [13:1](#))

## temple, house, house of God

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [Acts 2:46](#); [3:1](#); [3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [4:1](#); [5:20](#); [5:21](#); [5:24](#); [5:25](#); [5:42](#); [17:24](#); [21:26](#); [21:27](#); [21:28](#); [21:29](#); [21:30](#); [22:17](#); [24:6](#); [24:12](#); [24:18](#); [25:8](#); [26:21](#))

## tent, tentmakers

### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0167, H0168, H2583, H3407, H6898

(Go back to: [Acts 18:3](#))

## terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

### Definition:

The term "terror" refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To "terrify" someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A "terror" is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as "terrifying." This term could be translated as "fear-causing" or "terror-producing."
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The "terror of Yahweh" could be translated as "the terrifying presence of Yahweh" or "the dreaded judgment of Yahweh" or "when Yahweh causes great fear."
- Ways to translate "terror" could also include "extreme fear" or "deep dread."

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), plague, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

(Go back to: [Acts 24:25](#))

## test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

(Go back to: [Acts 5:9](#); [15:10](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [Acts 1:8](#); [1:22](#); [2:32](#); [2:40](#); [3:15](#); [4:33](#); [5:32](#); [7:44](#); [7:58](#); [10:22](#); [10:39](#); [10:41](#); [10:42](#); [10:43](#); [13:22](#); [13:31](#); [14:3](#); [15:8](#); [18:5](#); [20:24](#); [20:26](#); [22:5](#); [22:12](#); [22:15](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#); [23:11](#); [26:5](#); [26:16](#); [26:22](#); [28:23](#))



## tetrarch

### Definition:

The term "tetrarch" refers to a governing official who ruled over part of the Roman Empire. Each tetrarch was under the authority of the Roman emperor.

- The title "tetrarch" means "one of four joint rulers."
- Starting under the Emperor Diocletian, there were four major divisions of the Roman Empire and each tetrarch ruled one division.
- The kingdom of Herod "the Great," who was king at the time of the birth of Jesus, was divided into four sections after his death, and ruled by his sons as "tetrarchs," or "rulers of a fourth."
- Each division had one or more smaller parts called "provinces," such as Galilee or Samaria.
- "Herod the tetrarch" is mentioned several times in the New Testament. He is also known as "Herod Antipas."
- The term "tetrarch" could also be translated as "regional governor" or "provincial ruler" or "ruler" or "governor."

(See also: [governor](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [province](#), [Rome](#), [ruler](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 3:1-2
- Luke 9:7
- Matthew 14:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G50750, G50760

(Go back to: [Acts 13:1](#))

## the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### Facts:

In the Bible, the “Great Sea” or “western sea” refers to what is now called the “Mediterranean Sea,” which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by: Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the “western sea.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#), prosper)

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0314, H1419, H3220

(Go back to: [Acts 10:6](#); [10:32](#); [17:14](#); [27:30](#); [27:38](#); [27:40](#); [28:4](#))

## the twelve, the eleven

### Definition:

The term “the twelve” refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called “the eleven.”

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title “the twelve” distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, “the eleven” chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas’ place. Then they were called “the twelve” again.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, “the twelve apostles” or “Jesus’ twelve closest disciples.”
- “The eleven” could also be translated as “Jesus’ eleven remaining disciples.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in “the Twelve” and “the Eleven.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 6:2
- Luke 9:1
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G14270, G17330

(Go back to: [Acts 1:26](#); [2:14](#); [6:2](#))

## Thessalonica, Thessalonian

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Thessalonica was the capital city of Macedonia in the ancient Roman empire. The people living in that city were called the “Thessalonians.”

- The city of Thessalonica was an important seaport and was also located along a major road that connected Rome to the eastern part of the Roman empire.
- Paul, along with Silas and Timothy, visited Thessalonica on his second missionary journey and as a result, a church was established there. Later, Paul also visited this city on his third missionary journey.
- Paul wrote two letters to the Christians in Thessalonica. These letters (1 Thessalonians and 2 Thessalonians) are included in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:1
- 2 Thessalonians 1:1
- 2 Timothy 4:9-10
- Acts 17:1
- Philippians 4:14-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G23310, G23320

(Go back to: [Acts 17:1](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [20:4](#); [27:2](#))

# Thomas

## Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

- Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
- After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [God the Father](#), [the twelve](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- John 11:15-16
- Luke 6:14-16
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 10:2-4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G23810

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## throne, enthroned

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [king](#), reign)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(Go back to: [Acts 2:30](#); [7:49](#); [12:21](#); [25:6](#); [25:10](#); [25:17](#))

## time, untimely, date

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:7
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 8:29
- Psalms 68:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0116, H0227, H0310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G07440, G05300, G10740, G12080, G14410, G15970, G16260, G19090, G20340, G21190, G21210, G22350, G22500, G25400, G34610, G35680, G37640, G38190, G39560, G39990, G41780, G41810, G41830, G42180, G42870, G43400, G44550, G51190, G51510, G53050, G55500, G55510, G56100

(Go back to: [Acts 1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:21](#); [3:20](#); [3:21](#); [7:17](#); [7:20](#); [7:23](#); [8:11](#); [12:1](#); [13:11](#); [13:18](#); [14:3](#); [14:17](#); [14:28](#); [15:33](#); [17:21](#); [17:26](#); [17:30](#); [18:20](#); [18:23](#); [19:22](#); [19:23](#); [20:16](#); [20:18](#); [24:25](#); [27:9](#))

## Timothy

### Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (1 Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [believe](#), [church](#), [Greek](#), [minister](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:2
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- Acts 16:3
- Colossians 1:1
- Philemon 1:1
- Philippians 1:1
- Philippians 2:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G50950

(Go back to: [Acts 16:1](#); [17:14](#); [17:15](#); [18:5](#); [19:22](#); [20:4](#))



## to minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [Acts 1:17](#); [1:25](#); [6:1](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [11:29](#); [12:25](#); [13:2](#); [13:36](#); [19:22](#); [20:24](#); [20:34](#); [21:19](#); [24:23](#))

## tongue, language

### Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

(Go back to: [Acts 2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:11](#); [2:26](#); [10:46](#); [19:6](#))

## tremble, stagger, shake

### Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(Go back to: [Acts 7:32](#); [16:29](#))

## trial, proving

### Definition:

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is “a testing” or “a temptation” is one particular type of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: tempt, [test](#), [innocent](#), guilt)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Lamentations 3:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0974, H4531, H4941, H7378, G01780, G13830, G29190, G39860

(Go back to: [Acts 20:19](#))

## tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [Acts 13:21](#))

## tribulation, distresses, trouble

### Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), wrath)

### Bible References:

- Mark 4:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 2:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6869, G23470, G44230

(Go back to: [Acts 7:10](#); [7:11](#); [11:19](#); [14:22](#); [20:23](#))

## Troas

### Facts:

The city of Troas was a seaport located on the northwest coast of the ancient Roman province of Asia.

- Paul visited Troas at least three times during his trips to different regions to preach the gospel.
- On one occasion in Troas, Paul preached long into the night and a young man named Eutychus fell asleep while he was listening. Because he had been sitting in an open window, Eutychus fell down a long way and died. Through God's power, Paul raised this young man back to life.
- When Paul was in Rome, he asked Timothy to bring him his scrolls and his cloak, which he had left behind in Troas.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [preach](#), [province](#), [raise](#), [Rome](#), [scroll](#), [Timothy](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 2:13
- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Acts 16:8
- Acts 20:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G51740

(Go back to: [Acts 16:8](#); [16:11](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#))

## trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

### Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [Acts 15:19](#); [15:24](#); [16:20](#); [17:8](#); [17:13](#))



## true, truth

### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" means that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true!** You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth?**"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [Acts 4:27](#); [10:34](#); [12:9](#); [12:11](#); [26:25](#))

## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [Acts 27 General Notes; 27:25](#))

## tunic

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See Also: robe)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 3:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 8:12-13
- Luke 3:11
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G55090

(Go back to: [Acts 9:39](#))

## turn, turn away, turn back, return

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”
- To “turn aside” means to change direction, it often means to either stop doing right and start doing evil or the opposite.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake. It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [false god](#), leprosy, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:2
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 1:17
- Malachi 4:6
- Revelation 11:6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G03440, G03870, G04020, G06540, G06650, G08680, G12940, G15780, G16120, G16240, G19940, G31790, G33130, G33290, G33440, G33460, G47620, G51570, G52900

(Go back to: [Acts 3:19](#); [3:26](#); [7:39](#); [7:42](#); [9:35](#); [9:40](#); [11:21](#); [13:46](#); [14:15](#); [15:19](#); [15:36](#); [16:18](#); [26:18](#); [26:20](#); [28:27](#))

## twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes

### Definition:

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- These are the names of Jacob’s twelve sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: Reuben, Simeon, [Levi](#), Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, [Joseph](#), [Benjamin](#), Ephraim, Manasseh, [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [tribe](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:7
- Genesis 49:28
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 19:28

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H7626, H8147, G14270, G24740, G54430

(Go back to: [Acts 26:7](#))

# Tychicus

## Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

- Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
- Paul described him as "beloved" and "faithful."
- Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [beloved](#), [Colossae](#), [Ephesus](#), [faithful](#), [good news](#), [minister](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Colossians 4:9
- Titus 3:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G51900

(Go back to: [Acts 20:4](#))



## Tyre, Tyrians

### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [the sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G51830, G51840

(Go back to: [Acts 12:20](#); [21:3](#); [21:7](#))

## understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [Acts 4:13](#); [7:25](#); [8:30](#); [10:34](#); [22:29](#); [24:8](#); [26:26](#); [28:26](#); [28:27](#))

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), feast, [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), yeast)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 6:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 6:21
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Luke 22:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

(Go back to: [Acts 12:3](#); [20:6](#))

## vain, vanity

### Definition:

The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as “vain” things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done “in vain,” it means that there the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain” might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose,” or “with no purpose.”
- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty;” “useless;” “hopeless;” “worthless;” “meaningless;” etc.

(See also: [false god](#), [worthy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 2:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 2:29-31
- Matthew 15:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G09450, G15000, G27560, G27580, G27610, G31510, G31520, G31530, G31550

(Go back to: [Acts 14:15](#))

## virgin, virginity

### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

(Go back to: [Acts 21:9](#))

## vision, envision

### Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 1:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G37010, G37050, G37060

(Go back to: [Acts 2:17](#); [9:10](#); [9:12](#); [10:3](#); [10:17](#); [10:19](#); [11:5](#); [12:9](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [18:9](#); [26:19](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [Acts 2:6](#); [2:14](#); [4:24](#); [7:31](#); [7:57](#); [7:60](#); [8:7](#); [9:4](#); [9:7](#); [10:13](#); [10:15](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [12:14](#); [12:22](#); [13:27](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [16:28](#); [19:34](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#); [22:14](#); [22:22](#); [24:21](#); [26:14](#); [26:24](#))

## VOW

### Definition:

A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 7:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 1:14-16
- Jonah 2:9-10
- Proverbs 7:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G21710

(Go back to: [Acts 18:18](#); [21:23](#))



## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

([Go back to: Acts 3:6; 3:8; 3:9; 3:12; 14:8; 14:10; 21:21; 21:24](#))

## watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [Acts 9:24](#); [12:6](#); [16:23](#); [20:31](#); [22:20](#))

## water, deep

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The “deep” refers to a deep body of water, such as the watery depths at the beginning of creation or bodies of water that extend deep under the earth’s surface such as oceans, seas, etc.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 4:10
- John 4:14
- John 4:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, H8415, G05040, G42150, G42220, G52020, G52040

(Go back to: [Acts 1:5](#); [8:36](#); [8:38](#); [8:39](#); [10:47](#); [11:16](#))

## wheat

### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, [grain](#), [seed](#), thresh, winnow)

### Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G46210

(Go back to: [Acts 27:38](#))

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

(Go back to: [Acts 13:22](#); [21:14](#); [22:14](#))

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [Acts 6:3](#); [6:10](#); [7:10](#); [7:22](#))

## wolf, wild dogs

### Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term “wolves” is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

### Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as “wild dog” or “wild animal.”
- Other names for wild dogs could be “jackal” or “coyote.”
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as “evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep.”

(See also: [evil](#), [false prophet](#), [sheep](#), [teach](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 20:29
- Isaiah 11:7
- John 10:11-13
- Luke 10:3
- Matthew 7:15
- Zephaniah 3:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G30740

(Go back to: [Acts 20:29](#))

## womb

### Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 2:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

(Go back to: [Acts 3:2](#); [14:8](#))



## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7

- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

(Go back to: [Acts 1:16](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [5:20](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [6:7](#); [8:4](#); [8:14](#); [8:25](#); [8:32](#); [8:35](#); [10:36](#); [11:1](#); [11:19](#); [12:24](#); [13:5](#); [13:7](#); [13:44](#); [13:46](#); [13:48](#); [13:49](#); [14:3](#); [14:25](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#); [16:6](#); [16:32](#); [17:2](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [18:5](#); [18:11](#); [18:24](#); [18:28](#); [19:10](#); [19:20](#))

## work, works, deeds

### Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [Acts 5:38](#); [7:22](#); [7:41](#); [9:36](#); [13:2](#); [13:41](#); [14:26](#); [15:38](#); [26:20](#))

## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), [Rome](#), [godly](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

(Go back to: [Acts 11:28](#); [17:6](#); [17:24](#); [17:31](#); [19:27](#); [24:5](#))

## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:4
- 2 Thessalonians 1:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 1:9-10
- Jeremiah 8:19
- Mark 1:7
- Matthew 3:10-12
- Philippians 1:25-27

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G00960, G05140, G05150, G05160, G24250, G26610, G27350

(Go back to: [Acts 5:41](#); [13:25](#); [13:46](#); [23:29](#); [25:11](#); [25:25](#); [26:20](#); [26:31](#))

## wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

### Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

(Go back to: [Acts 7:24](#); [7:26](#); [7:27](#); [12:1](#); [14:5](#); [25:10](#); [25:11](#))

## year

### Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [month](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

(Go back to: [Acts 4:22](#); [7:6](#); [7:30](#); [7:36](#); [7:42](#); [9:33](#); [11:26](#); [13:20](#); [13:21](#); [18:11](#); [19:10](#); [24:10](#); [24:17](#))

## yoke, yoked, tied

### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [persecute](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 5:1
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 9:4
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 4:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G20860, G22180

(Go back to: [Acts 15:10](#))



## zeal, zealous

### Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#); [21:20](#); [22:3](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages



Jesse Harris  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
Leonard Smith  
Suzanna Smith  
Tim Span  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Maria Tijerina  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Kailey Gregory  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College  
Leonard Smith  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors**

Door43 World Missions Community

Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)

Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)

Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)

Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)